From: Rittlinger, David B
To: Liebman, Brian R; Childs, Nathan D; Burgos, Alexander N
Subject: Fwd: 2024 NC Mechanical Code Requests for Changes
Date: Monday, April 29, 2024 2:24:12 PM
Attachments: 2024-0419 DBR Responses 04.2024 - BCC - NC Mechanical Code - Request for Changes - BL responses.docx
D-1 20230613 Item B-1 2024 NCMC Rev 4. Form 0400 for Permanent Rule December 2023.pdf
D-1 20230613 Item B-1 2024 NCMC Rev 4. Form 0400 for Permanent Rule December 2023.docx
RRC 15 NCMC Ref Std 2024.pdf
RRC 16 NCMC 2024 appA.docx
RRC 16 NCMC 2024 appA.pdf
RRC 17 NCMC 2024 appB.docx
RRC 17 NCMC 2024 appB.pdf
RRC 18 NCMC 2024 appC.docx
RRC 18 NCMC 2024 appC.pdf
RRC 01 NCMC 2024.docx
RRC 01 NCMC 2024.pdf
RRC 02 NCMC 2024.docx
RRC 02 NCMC 2024.pdf
RRC 03 NCMC 2024.docx
RRC 03 NCMC 2024.pdf
RRC 04 NCMC 2024.docx
RRC 04 NCMC 2024.pdf
RRC 05 NCMC 2024.docx
RRC 05 NCMC 2024.pdf
RRC 06 NCMC 2024.docx
RRC 06 NCMC 2024.pdf
RRC 07 NCMC 2024.docx
RRC 07 NCMC 2024.pdf
RRC 08 NCMC 2024.docx
RRC 08 NCMC 2024.pdf
RRC 09 NCMC 2024.docx
RRC 09 NCMC 2024.pdf
RRC 10 NCMC 2024.docx
RRC 10 NCMC 2024.pdf
RRC 11 NCMC 2024.docx
RRC 11 NCMC 2024.pdf
RRC 12 NCMC 2024.docx
RRC 12 NCMC 2024.pdf
RRC 13 NCMC 2024.docx
RRC 13 NCMC 2024.pdf
RRC 14 NCMC 2024.docx
RRC 14 NCMC 2024.pdf
RRC 15 NCMC Ref Std 2024.docx

Brian,
This email from 4/19/24 represents the latest 2024 NCMC in case you need this.
Let me know if you have any questions
David Rittlinger
….. Sent from my iPhone

Begin forwarded message:

From: "Rittlinger, David B" <david.rittlinger@ncdoi.gov>
Date: April 19, 2024 at 4:58:00 PM EDT
To: "Liebman, Brian R" <brian.liebman@oah.nc.gov>
Cc: "Childs, Nathan D" <nchilds@ncdoj.gov>, "Burgos, Alexander N" <alexander.burgos@oah.nc.gov>, "Holder, Karen" <Karen.Holder@ncdoi.gov>
Subject: RE: 2024 NC Mechanical Code Requests for Changes

Brian,
Good afternoon.
Attached are the following documents concerning the 2024 NC Mechanical Code
I have attached a separate pdf and MS Word copy of the amendment to be considered by the RRC as permanent rules.

Documents included:

1. Responses to RRC attorney comments: File: 2024-0419 DBR Responses-04.2024 - BCC - NC Mechanical Code - Request for Changes - BL.docx
2. Revised Form 400
3. RRC formatted review aid documents of the 2024 NC Mechanical Code with changes as noted in the comments responses.

Let me know if you have any questions or comments.

Thank you for your work on this.
Have a great day.

[cid:image001.png@01DA927A.BD58F4C0]
david.rittlinger@ncdoi.gov<mailto:david.rittlinger@ncdoi.gov>

Link to free view of 2018 NC Codes
https://codes.iccsafe.org/codes/north-carolina

From: Liebman, Brian R <brian.liebman@oah.nc.gov>
Sent: Thursday, April 18, 2024 3:57 PM
To: Rittlinger, David B <david.rittlinger@ncdoi.gov>
Cc: Childs, Nathan D <nchilds@NCDOJ.GOV>; Burgos, Alexander N <alexander.burgos@oah.nc.gov>; Holder, Karen <Karen.Holder@ncdoi.gov>
Subject: RE: 2024 NC Mechanical Code Requests for Changes

Back to you.

Thanks,
Brian

Brian Liebman
Counsel to the North Carolina Rules Review Commission
Office of Administrative Hearings
(984)236-1948
brian.liebman@oah.nc.gov<mailto:brian.liebman@oah.nc.gov>

E-mail correspondence to and from this address may be subject to the North Carolina Public Records Law N.C.G.S. Chapter 132 and may be disclosed to third parties.

From: Rittlinger, David B <david.rittlinger@ncdoi.gov<mailto:david.rittlinger@ncdoi.gov>>
Sent: Thursday, April 18, 2024 2:46 PM
To: Liebman, Brian R <brian.liebman@oah.nc.gov<mailto:brian.liebman@oah.nc.gov>>
Cc: Childs, Nathan D <nchilds@NCDOJ.GOV<mailto:nchilds@NCDOJ.GOV>>; Burgos, Alexander N <alexander.burgos@oah.nc.gov<mailto:alexander.burgos@oah.nc.gov>>; Holder, Karen <Karen.Holder@ncdoi.gov<mailto:Karen.Holder@ncdoi.gov>>
Subject: RE: 2024 NC Mechanical Code Requests for Changes
Importance: High

Brian,
Good afternoon.
Responses to your additional comments are included in the attached document.
No changes were generated to the 2024 NC Mechanical Code per these responses so they are not attached to this email.

Let me know if you have any questions.

[cid:image001.png@01DA927A.BD58F4C0]
david.rittlinger@ncdoi.gov<mailto:david.rittlinger@ncdoi.gov>

Link to free view of 2018 NC Codes
https://codes.iccsafe.org/codes/north-carolina<https://gcc02.safelinks.protection.outlook.com/?url=https%3A%2F%2Fcodes.iccsafe.org%2Fcodes%2Fnorth-
carolina&data=05%7C02%7Cdavid.rittlinger%40ncdoi.gov%7Cc5c761d4609349d68cc208dc5fe1c1c2%7C7a7681dcb9d0449a85c3ecc26cd7ed19%7C0%7C0%7C638490670965508405%7CUnknown%7CTWFpbGZsb3d8eyJWIjoiMC4wLjAwMDAiLCJQIjoiV2luMzIiLCJBTiI6Ik1haWwiLCJXVCI6Mn0%3D%7C0%7C%7C%7C&sdata=aEf%2B4QZqpzF%2FH2%2BDjWBBVbt0ebw0v1OO1wVoYPxFwnc%3D&reserved=0>

From: Liebman, Brian R <brian.liebman@oah.nc.gov<mailto:brian.liebman@oah.nc.gov>>
Sent: Thursday, April 18, 2024 11:39 AM
To: Rittlinger, David B <david.rittlinger@ncdoi.gov<mailto:david.rittlinger@ncdoi.gov>>
Cc: Childs, Nathan D <nchilds@NCDOJ.GOV<mailto:nchilds@NCDOJ.GOV>>; Burgos, Alexander N <alexander.burgos@oah.nc.gov<mailto:alexander.burgos@oah.nc.gov>>; Holder, Karen <Karen.Holder@ncdoi.gov<mailto:Karen.Holder@ncdoi.gov>>
Subject: RE: 2024 NC Mechanical Code Requests for Changes

Hi David,

Thanks for getting these back to me so soon. I have some responses, which I've added to the request document in blue.

Also, I will be looking at the stand-alone provisions for the Mechanical Code that you sent in earlier this month, and getting those back to you shortly.

Best,
Brian

Brian Liebman
Counsel to the North Carolina Rules Review Commission
Office of Administrative Hearings
(984)236-1948
brian.liebman@oah.nc.gov<mailto:brian.liebman@oah.nc.gov>

E-mail correspondence to and from this address may be subject to the North Carolina Public Records Law N.C.G.S. Chapter 132 and may be disclosed to third parties.

From: Rittlinger, David B <david.rittlinger@ncdoi.gov<mailto:david.rittlinger@ncdoi.gov>>
Sent: Tuesday, April 16, 2024 3:56 PM
To: Liebman, Brian R <brian.liebman@oah.nc.gov<mailto:brian.liebman@oah.nc.gov>>
Cc: Childs, Nathan D <nchilds@NCDOJ.GOV<mailto:nchilds@NCDOJ.GOV>>; Burgos, Alexander N <alexander.burgos@oah.nc.gov<mailto:alexander.burgos@oah.nc.gov>>; Holder, Karen <Karen.Holder@ncdoi.gov<mailto:Karen.Holder@ncdoi.gov>>
Subject: RE: 2024 NC Mechanical Code Requests for Changes
Importance: High

Brian,
Good afternoon.
Attached are the following documents concerning the 2024 NC Mechanical Code
I have attached a separate pdf and MS Word copy of the amendment to be considered by the RRC as permanent rules.

Documents included:

1. Responses to RRC attorney comments: File: 2024-0416 DBR Responses-04.2024 - BCC - NC Mechanical Code - Request for Changes.docx
2. Revised Form 400
3. RRC formatted review aid documents of the 2024 NC Mechanical Code with changes as noted in the comments responses.

Let me know if you have any questions or comments.

Thank you for your work on this.
Have a great day.

[cid:image001.png@01DA927A.BD58F4C0]
david.rittlinger@ncdoi.gov<mailto:david.rittlinger@ncdoi.gov>

Link to free view of 2018 NC Codes
https://codes.iccsafe.org/codes/north-carolina<https://gcc02.safelinks.protection.outlook.com/?url=https%3A%2F%2Fcodes.iccsafe.org%2Fcodes%2Fnorth-
carolina&data=05%7C02%7Cdavid.rittlinger%40ncdoi.gov%7Cc5c761d4609349d68cc208dc5fe1c1c2%7C7a7681dcb9d0449a85c3ecc26cd7ed19%7C0%7C0%7C638490670965519288%7CUnknown%7CTWFpbGZsb3d8eyJWIjoiMC4wLjAwMDAiLCJQIjoiV2luMzIiLCJBTiI6Ik1haWwiLCJXVCI6Mn0%3D%7C0%7C%7C%7C&sdata=BMPQJ2x5LdhUB4X80EbhxVxtUwKYrN%2BJVWZW68ZTP6Q%3D&reserved=0>

From: Liebman, Brian R <brian.liebman@oah.nc.gov<mailto:brian.liebman@oah.nc.gov>>
Sent: Sunday, April 14, 2024 5:37 PM
To: Rittlinger, David B <david.rittlinger@ncdoi.gov<mailto:david.rittlinger@ncdoi.gov>>
Cc: Childs, Nathan D <nchilds@NCDOJ.GOV<mailto:nchilds@NCDOJ.GOV>>; Burgos, Alexander N <alexander.burgos@oah.nc.gov<mailto:alexander.burgos@oah.nc.gov>>
Subject: 2024 NC Mechanical Code Requests for Changes

Hi all,

Attached, please find my requests for changes on the 2024 NC Mechanical Code. As with the rest, these are due ASAP given the proximity of the meeting.

FYI, I will be out Monday and Tuesday, but will be checking email.

Thanks, and have a great week!
Brian

Brian Liebman
Counsel to the North Carolina Rules Review Commission
Office of Administrative Hearings
(984)236-1948
brian.liebman@oah.nc.gov<mailto:brian.liebman@oah.nc.gov>

E-mail correspondence to and from this address may be subject to the North Carolina Public Records Law N.C.G.S. Chapter 132 and may be disclosed to third parties.

Burgos, Alexander N

Subject:	FW: Request for Changes - 2024 NC Energy Conservation Code
Attachments:	D-4 20221213 Item B-6 2024 NCECC Rev 2. Form_0400_for_Permanent_Rule_December_2023.docx; D-4 20221213 Item B-6 2024 NCECC Rev 2. Form_0400_for_Permanent_Rule_December_2023.pdf; 2024.04.24 Ltr from BCC to RRC re NCECC Req. Changes.pdf; 2024-0424 DBR Responses 03.2024 - BCC - NC Energy Conservation Code - Request for Changes.docx; RRC Formatted Review Aide - 2024 NCECC.docx
Importance:	High

From: Rittlinger, David B <david.rittlinger@ncdoi.gov>
Sent: Thursday, April 25, 2024 12:31 AM
To: Liebman, Brian R <brian.liebman@oah.nc.gov>
Cc: Burgos, Alexander N <alexander.burgos@oah.nc.gov>; Childs, Nathan D <nchilds@NCDOJ.GOV>; Bridget Herring - BCC (herring.ncbcc@gmail.com) <herring.ncbcc@gmail.com>; Holder, Karen <Karen.Holder@ncdoi.gov>
Subject: RE: Request for Changes - 2024 NC Energy Conservation Code
Importance: High

Brian,
Good afternoon.
Attached are the following documents concerning the 2024 NC Mechanical Code
I have attached a separate pdf and MS Word copy of the amendment to be considered by the RRC as permanent rules.

Documents included:
1. Responses to RRC attorney comments: File: 2024-0424 DBR Responses-04.2024 - BCC - NC Energy Conservation Code - Request for Changes.docx
2. NCBCC letter concerning the objection and responses to the RRC attorney comments
3. Revised Form 400
4. RRC formatted review aid documents of the 2024 NC Energy Conservation Code with changes as noted in the comments responses.

Let me know if you have any questions or comments.

Thank you for your work on this.
Have a great day.

David Bruce Rittlinger, PE, LEED AP
Division Chief – Codes and Interpretations

North Carolina
Office of State Fire Marshal
1202 Mail Service Center
Raleigh, NC 27699-1202
919.647.0008
david.rittlinger@ncdoi.gov

Link to free view of 2018 NC Codes
https://codes.iccsafe.org/codes/north-carolina

North Carolina Building Code Council

Staffed by the NC Department of Insurance

Brian Taylor, State Fire Marshal
David Bruce Rittlinger, PE, Secretary

(919) 647-0001
(919) 662-4414 Fax

1202 Mail Service Center
Raleigh, NC 27699-1202

1429 Rock Quarry Road, Suite 105
Raleigh, NC 27610

April 23, 2024

North Carolina Rules Review Commission
Attn: Brian Liebman, Esq.
1711 New Hope Church Road
Raleigh, NC 27609
VIA EMAIL TO BRIAN.LIEBMAN@OAH.NC.ORG

Dear Members of the Rules Review Commission:

Thank you for the opportunity to respond to the North Carolina Rules Review Commission staff's April 11, 2024 requests for changes addressing the 2024 North Carolina Energy Conservation Code ("NCECC") permanent rule.

Several of staff's comments relate to the fiscal note approved by the Office of State Budget and Management ("OSBM") on August 21, 2023. In particular, these comments relate to assertions made by the North Carolina Homebuilders Association ("NCHBA") in October 2023, since abandoned, which questioned the methodology and design of the four economic analyses conducted by the U.S. Department of Energy's Pacific Northwest National Laboratory ("PNNL") comparing the provisions of the 2018 NCECC with the provisions of the 2024 NCECC permanent rule (*See* Appendices C, D, H and I to August 21, 2023 fiscal note).

This letter addresses staff's comments relating to the fiscal note, as well as staff's query whether the Council is aware of any provisions in the 2024 NCECC permanent rule that "are 'not in agreement' with the laws of the State of North Carolina." The remaining April 11, 2024 comments regarding this permanent rule are addressed separately in a communication submitted contemporaneously by Council Rule-making Coordinator and Division Chief of Codes and Interpretations of the Office of State Fire Marshal David Rittlinger.

__Methodology and Design of PNNL Analyses in August 2023 Fiscal Note__

By way of background, the North Carolina Building Code Council ("Council") held two noticed hearings – one on March 14, 2023 and another on October 17, 2023 – to receive public comment on the rule and its fiscal impacts. Per N.C. Gen. Stat. § 150B-21.4(b1), the fiscal note was approved for publication by OSBM on August 21, 2023. OSBM certified that the Council adhered to the regulatory principles set forth in N.C. Gen. Stat. § 150B-19.1(a)(2), (5), and (6), and concluded that the permanent rule may have substantial impacts, with little to no impact on state government. A separate cost-benefit analysis required by N.C. Gen. Stat. § 143-138(a1)(2) was published on the North Carolina Department of Insurance website on August 24, 2023. The Notice of Hearing for the October 17, 2023 public hearing to consider the rule, fiscal note, and cost-benefit analysis was published in the September 15, 2023 *North Carolina Register*. 38 N.C. Reg. 299-300 (Sep. 15, 2023).

At the October 17, 2023 public hearing, Cliff Isaac, P.E., Director of Codes and Construction for the North Carolina Homebuilders Association, submitted a letter setting forth various assertions that the OSBM-approved fiscal note contained errors. In particular, the October 17, 2023 letter excerpted a March 28, 2023 email from PNNL Senior Engineer V.R. Salcido to Mr. Isaac. In the excerpt, Mr. Salcido stated "I wanted to let you know that we found some errors in the cost summation and the costs in the report are too low." As Mr. Isaac is aware, Mr. Salcido was not referring to the four analyses conducted by PNNL and included in the August 21, 2023 fiscal note (Appendices C, D, H and I to August 21, 2023 fiscal note) in the March 28, 2023 email.

Mr. Isaac submitted his October 17, 2023 letter to the Commission as an "attachment" to NCHBA's March 19, 2024 objection letter that **__pointedly did not assert or adopt by reference any objections__** to the methodology and design of the OSBM-approved fiscal note or assert that the fiscal note contained errors. Pursuant to the rules governing the Commission, "[t]he RRC shall not consider any objection letter which is dated prior to the time the agency adopts the rule." 26 N.C. Admin. Code 5.0110(a). Since the October 17,2023 letter predates the Council's December 12, 2023 adoption of the 2024 NCECC rule, the Commission's consideration of these objections is inappropriate. Nevertheless, based on NCHBA's October 17, 2023 letter, the Commission asked the Council to respond to several comments:

> *Can you respond to the Homebuilder's Association's assertion that the fiscal note prepared by the BCC is inaccurate? Specifically, the Homebuilders assert that the incremental costs of implementation are based on an analysis of the differences between the 2018 International Energy Conservation Code and the 2021 International Energy Code, rather*

> *than the differences between the 2024 NC code and the 2018 NC code. Please respond.*
>
> *Second, the homebuilders allege that the cost increase for single family construction (if applied voluntarily) would be $20,400 per dwelling, rather than the maximum of $6,487 per dwelling indicated of Table 8 of the BCC's cost benefit analysis, and that much of that cost is due to items not taken into account by the BCC (see p. 6 of* [the October 17, 2023 letter]*)*
>
> *In responding, please specifically answer whether the baseline conditions were incorrectly assessed, whether the note failed to "estimate any additional costs that would be created by implementation," or whether the note did not correctly describe "the types of expenditures that persons affected by the proposed rule change would have to make to comply." See G.S. 150B-21.4(b1) and (b2).*

Fundamentally, objections challenging the methodology and design of analyses contained in OSBM-approved and certified fiscal notes are not germane to the Commission's review and go beyond the Commission's narrow mandate set forth in N.C. Gen. Stat. § 150B-21.9(a). As the Commission is aware, even if the OSBM-approved fiscal note contained errors – which in this case it does not – Part 2 of the Administrative Procedure Act militates that an erroneous fiscal note prepared in good faith does "not affect the validity of a rule" N.C. Gen. Stat. § 150B-21.4(c). Indeed, the Commission recently acknowledged to the North Carolina Supreme Court that the limited nature of its review does not extend to "evaluation of the costs and benefits of a proposed rule…" Br. of N.C. Rules Review Commission, *N.C. State Bd. of Educ. v. State*, No. 110PA16-2, 2018 WL 583072, at *9 (Jan. 16, 2018) ("The RRC makes no substantive review of agency rules. Under the APA, any evaluation of the costs and benefits of a proposed rule lies with the agency and the General Assembly."). Still, without waiving these objections, and specifically reserving its right to assert them, the Council will respond to staff's inquiries.

Responding to staff's first question, the OSBM-approved fiscal note is accurate and correctly analyzes the cost-effectiveness of the provisions of the 2024 NCECC permanent rule as compared to the baseline provisions of the 2018 NCECC, as amended. As confirmed by PNNL in a June 16, 2023 memorandum from Mr. Salcido to Council Chair Bridget Herring, the December 2022 and March 2023 PNNL analyses included in the fiscal note "evaluated the costs and benefits expected under the proposed 2024 NCECC, which represents an amended version of the 2021 International Energy Conservation Code (IECC), compared to the previous 2018 NCECC." *See* Attachment A, p. 1. Indeed, this is exactly what the analyses themselves indicated. *See, e.g.*, Appendix D to the Aug. 21, 2023 fiscal note (stating that the analysis assessed the "cost effectiveness of adopting the 2024 NCECC compared to the 2018 NCECC."). In August

2022, Council Chair Bridget Herring provided PNNL researchers with the provisions of the 2018 NCECC, as amended, and the provisions of the proposed 2024 NCECC rule. *See* Attachment B, p. 1.

Using the NCECC provisions, PNNL analyzed the cost effectiveness of adopting the residential and commercial provisions of the 2024 NCECC proposed rule as compared to the 2018 NCECC baseline, and produced Information Release # PNNL-180509 (Appendix I to the Aug. 21, 2023 fiscal note) and Information Release # PNNL-SA-180329 (Appendix H to the Aug. 21, 2023 fiscal note) on December 12, 2022. To comply with the requirements of N.C. Gen. Stat. § 150B-21.4(b1)(5), PNNL replicated the analysis in March 2023 using a discount factor of seven percent to determine the net present value of future costs, and produced Information Release # PNNL-180509 Rev-1 on March 24, 2023 (Appendix D to the Aug. 21, 2023 fiscal note) and Information Release # PNNL-SA-180329 on March 22, 2023 (Appendix C to the Aug. 21, 2023 fiscal note). Put simply, NCHBA's October 17, 2023 letter is mistaken. The incremental costs of implementation in the PNNL analyses contained in the fiscal note are based on a comparison of the actual requirements of the 2024 NCECC rule as compared to the 2018 NCECC baseline.

Responding to staff's second and third questions, NCHBA's objections to the cost estimates used by PNNL are predicated on the assumption that PNNL's estimates reflect the incremental costs of implementation of the requirements of the *2021 IECC* from the 2018 IECC baseline (p. 6). As discussed above, this is not the case and NCHBA is mistaken. PNNL correctly analyzed the cost effectiveness of adopting the residential and commercial provisions of the *2024 NCECC* rule as compared to the 2018 NCECC baseline. In modeling changes to representative building types, the Department of Energy methodology utilized by PNNL established typical construction and operating assumptions, identified climate locations to be used in estimating impacts, established sources for the economic parameters to be used in estimating cost savings and first cost metrics, and facilitated appropriate accounting for location-specific construction practices and fuel prices. Accordingly, the OSBM-approved fiscal note complied with the requirements of N.C. Gen. Stat. § 150B-21.4(b1) by estimating additional costs created by implementation of the rule specific to North Carolina, and correctly assessed the types of expenditures that persons affected by the rule will have to make to comply.

<u>Rule's Compliance with North Carolina Law</u>

In the April 10, 2024 Request for Changes, staff has also asked that the Council "disclose any and all provision of the 2024 NC Energy Conservation Code that the Council is aware are 'not in agreement' with the laws of the State of North Carolina." Other than those provisions specifically identified in the separate contemporaneous communication submitted by Division Chief of Codes and Interpretations David Rittlinger, the Council is not aware of any provisions of the 2024 NCECC that are not in compliance with North Carolina law.

We thank you for your attention to this rule.

With best regards,

Bridget Herring
Chair, North Carolina Building Code Council

Mark Matheny
Vice Chair, North Carolina Building Code Council

Enclosures

CC: Mr. Cliff Isaac, P.E., North Carolina Home Builders Association (*via email*)
David Rittlinger, Division Chief of Codes and Interpretations, North Carolina Office of State Fire Marshal (*via email*)
Nathan D. Childs, Assistant Attorney General (*via email*)

ATTACHMENT A

PNNL Memorandum to Council Chair Bridget Herring (Project No. PNNL-180509)

June 16, 2023

MEMORANDUM

Date:	**June 16, 2023**		
To:	**Bridget Herring, Chair North Carolina Building Code Council**	Project No.:	**PNNL-180509**
From:	**Salcido, Victor R**		
Subject:	**PNNL North Carolina Residential Energy Code Analysis**		

We are contacting you regarding the ongoing energy code update process in North Carolina, and to confirm the previously requested impact estimates based on adopting the 2024 North Carolina Energy Conservation Code (NCECC). We have received recent inquiries regarding the previous technical analysis and related savings estimates conducted by Pacific Northwest National Laboratory (PNNL). We offer our continued technical assistance in supporting your code update, and hope this correspondence addresses any misconceptions regarding the previous analysis.

In summary, PNNL stands by the technical analysis and impact estimates previously provided to the Council (PNNL-180509 dated March 2023), which indicate that the proposed code will result in significant savings for homeowners and renters in North Carolina. That analysis evaluated the costs and benefits expected under the proposed 2024 NCECC, which represents an amended version of the 2021 International Energy Conservation Code (IECC), compared to the previous 2018 NCECC. This analysis was customized to account for North Carolina's state-specific amendments in both the base code and as proposed. This analysis was requested by the North Carolina Building Code Council, noting that the State is statutorily required to procure an analysis which is independent of any proponents.

This analysis, conducted by PNNL and provided to the Council in March 2023, demonstrated that the adoption of the 2024 NCECC is cost-effective in both single-family and low-rise multifamily residential buildings in North Carolina (compared to the 2018 NCECC). The updated code is expected to result in 18.7 percent energy cost savings, equating to approximately $400 in annual utility bill savings for the average homeowner in North Carolina. Although updating to the 2024 NCECC will incrementally increase the upfront costs of construction (i.e., often referenced as "first" costs) – ranging from approximately $4,700 to $6,500 for single-family homes and $1,500 to $2,100 for multifamily units – when amortizing these costs and benefits over a typical mortgage, homeowners will see a positive cashflow in the first two to four years, depending on building type and climate zone. Over the course of 30 years, homeowners will net between $1,800 and $4,500 in life-cycle cost savings. During the first year alone, collectively, North Carolina residents could expect to save over $15,372,000 in energy costs and 130,700 metric tons in avoided emissions[1]. Adopting the 2024 NCECC in North Carolina is expected to result in homes that are energy efficient, more affordable to own and operate, and which are designed and constructed to modern standards for health, comfort, and resilience.

To reiterate, PNNL stands behind these findings, which are consistent with those provided to the Council in March 2023.

Was there an error in the previous PNNL analysis?

No. PNNL has received questions as to whether there was an error in the previously provided technical analysis. Our understanding is that this misconception has been raised by stakeholders in North Carolina during the public engagement process. PNNL provides various types of technical analyses; however, this does not constitute an error or inaccuracy. This is further explained below. PNNL stands behind its previous analysis and has clarified this point to inquiring entities.

Why does PNNL conduct different types of analysis?

PNNL conducts many different types of technical analysis to accurately estimate national, state and localized impacts associated with updated building energy codes. Early versions of our analysis, such as those soon following an updated edition of the IECC, evaluate the updated IECC, as published, compared to previous editions of the code, with impacts typically reported nationally and by climate zone. Other versions of the analysis evaluate the updated model code, such as the 2021 IECC, compared to state codes, tailored to take into account various parameters and customized characteristics and economic parameters. This type of analysis can then be further customized, often through a state technical assistance request, to adjust the standard suite of parameters and assumptions for a given state, and to take into account proposed state-specific amendments being considered.

In July 2021, PNNL evaluated the impacts of adopting the 2021 IECC in North Carolina[2]. PNNL regularly conducts this type of analysis in order to assist states in understanding the potential impacts of updating to the latest editions of the national model energy codes, the IECC for low-rise residential buildings. This analysis compared the 2021 IECC, as published, to the 2018 NCECC, including state amendments. This analysis was conducted proactively, and *before* the 2024 NCECC was developed or technical analysis requested by the Building Code Council.

---

[1] Calculated as equivalent tonnage of avoided carbon dioxide, or CO_2e
[2] https://www.energycodes.gov/national-and-state-analysis

In March 2023, PNNL performed a second technical analysis at the request of the North Carolina Building Code Council, to determine the impacts of the proposed 2024 NCECC, including amendments (PNNL-180509). PNNL customized the analysis, as requested by Council, based on state-specific construction types (e.g., typical home foundation types, heating systems, etc.), utility rates, tax rates, and other energy and economic parameters representing low-rise building design and construction in North Carolina. This analysis also estimated the incremental costs associated with the 2024 NCECC, reported in 2023 dollars, and adjusting for the effects of recent inflation.

What's the basis for the methodology used in the technical analysis?

PNNL conducts its building energy codes technical analysis based on an accepted methodology established by the U.S. Department of Energy[3]. The methodology represents a standard approach for evaluating the impacts of building energy codes, including both published codes and proposed changes. It is developed and regularly updated through a rigorous public process, published in the *Federal Register* and subject to multiple public comment and input periods. To evaluate the cost effectiveness of energy codes, the methodology employs a life-cycle cost perspective, which is the accepted means of balancing incremental costs of construction against resulting benefits (e.g., consumer cost savings). This accounts for the value of future savings and costs over a multi-year study period (in this case a typical 30-year consumer mortgage period), discounted to a present value, and accounting for the benefits of energy efficiency and other economic impacts (e.g., operational costs as well as replacement and maintenance costs). The methodology is adaptable to accommodate national, state and localized perspectives, and represents the standard approach used to evaluate energy codes across the U.S. This methodology and analytical approach is the basis for state technical analysis performed by PNNL and provided to every U.S. state, including the analysis provided to the North Carolina Building Code Council in March 2023.

Additional background on the DOE methodology for evaluating building energy codes is available from the Building Energy Codes Program[4].

We hope this information is useful and provides additional clarity on the topic. Should you have any other questions, please contact us to discuss further.

Sincerely,

Robert Salcido
Senior Research Engineer
Pacific Northwest National Laboratory

---

[3] https://www.energycodes.gov/methodology
[4] https://www.energycodes.gov/

Attached:
Cost-Effectiveness Analysis of the 2024 NCECC (PNNL-180509, March 2023)

ATTACHMENT B

Letter from Council Chair Bridget Herring to PNNL
Project Manager Rosemarie Bartlett
August 12, 2022

North Carolina Building Code Council

Staffed by the NC Department of Insurance

Mike Causey, Commissioner of Insurance
Carl Martin, RA, Secretary

(919) 647-0001
(919) 662-4414 Fax

1202 Mail Service Center
Raleigh, NC 27699-1202

325 N. Salisbury Street
Raleigh, NC 27603

Rosemarie Bartlett
Project Manager
Pacific Northwest National Laboratory

August 12, 2022

Dear Ms. Bartlett,

As chair of the North Carolina Building Code Council, I am writing to request support from the Pacific Northwest National Laboratory to evaluate the fiscal and energy impacts of the 2024 North Carolina Energy Conservation Code relative to our current code. The proposed code is based on the 2021 International Energy Conservation Code with amendments by the North Carolina Energy Ad Hoc Committee. The North Carolina Building Code Council is charged with completing an independent cost-benefit analysis of all energy code changes under N.C. Gen. Stat. 143-138(a1)(2) and find the standard for the national model codes provided by the Department of Energy through Pacific National Northwest Laboratory to be the best methodology available.

Attached is a PDF of the proposed 2024 North Carolina Energy Conservation Code. Hope that this code can be introduced into the Building Code Council's rulemaking process at the December 13, 2022 meeting. Ideally, the analysis could be completed by then. Please let me know if you are able to provide this technical assistance to North Carolina and whether any questions are outstanding.

Yours,

Bridget Herring

Bridget Herring
Chair, North Carolina Building Code Council

SUBMISSION FOR PERMANENT RULE

1. Rule-Making Agency: NC Building Code Council

2. Rule citation & name (name not required for repeal):
2024 North Carolina Energy Conservation Code (221213 Item B-6)

3. Action:
☐ **ADOPTION** ☒ **AMENDMENT** ☐ **REPEAL** ☐ **READOPTION** ☐ **REPEAL through READOPTION**

4. Rule exempt from RRC review?
☐ **Yes. Cite authority:**
☒ **No**

5. Rule automatically subject to legislative review?
☐ **Yes. Cite authority:**
☒ **No**

6. Notice for Proposed Rule:

☒ **Notice Required**
Notice of Text published on: September 15, 2023 in NC Register, August 28, 2023 agency website
Link to Agency notice: https://www.ncosfm.gov/231017-notice1hearing
Hearing on: October 17, 2023
Adoption by Agency on: December 12, 2023
☐ **Notice not required under G.S.:**
Adoption by Agency on:

7. Rule establishes or increases a fee? (See G.S. 12-3.1)

☐ **Yes**
Agency submitted request for consultation on:
Consultation not required. Cite authority:

☒ **No**

8. Fiscal impact. Check all that apply.

☐ **This Rule was part of a combined analysis.**

☐ **State funds affected**
☒ **Local funds affected**
☒ **Substantial economic impact (≥$1,000,000)**
☒ **Approved by OSBM**
☐ **No fiscal note required**

9. REASON FOR ACTION

9A. What prompted this action? Check all that apply:

☒ **Agency**
☐ **Court order / cite:**
☐ **Federal statute / cite:**
☐ **Federal regulation / cite:**
☐ **Legislation enacted by the General Assembly**
Cite Session Law:
☐ **Petition for rule-making**
☐ **Other:**

9B. Explain: This amendment is proposed to protect the public by updating the code to current standards of practice.

A fiscal note has been prepared per N.C.G.S. 143-138 (a1)(1) and was approved by OSBM on 8/21/23. OSBM has determined the amendments may have substantial economic impacts and impacts to local government with a potential for savings over time. No additional construction costs are anticipated for the commercial provisions. Increases in construction costs are anticipated for the residential provisions. The construction costs of dwellings regulated by this proposal exceeds $80 per dwelling unit. State funds will not be affected. Local funds will be affected. Life-Cycle Cost savings are anticipated for both the commercial and residential provisions. A cost benefit analysis per N.C.G.S. 143-138 (a1)(2) has been prepared and was completed on 8/1/23.

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2025.
The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

SUBMISSION FOR PERMANENT RULE

10. Rulemaking Coordinator: David B. Rittlinger	11. Signature of Agency Head* or Rule-making Coordinator:
David B. Rittlinger **Phone: (919)647-0008** **E-Mail: david.rittlinger@ncdoi.gov** **Additional agency contact, if any:** **Phone:** **E-Mail:**	***If this function has been delegated (reassigned) pursuant to G.S. 143B-10(a), submit a copy of the delegation with this form.** **Typed Name: David B. Rittlinger** **Title: Interim NCDOI-OSFM Deputy Commissioner of Engineering and Chief Code Consultant**

RRC AND OAH USE ONLY
Action taken: ☐ RRC extended period of review: ☐ RRC determined substantial changes: ☐ Withdrawn by agency ☐ Subject to Legislative Review ☐ Other:

Documents included:

1. Formatted Review Aide and 2024 North Carolina Energy Conservation Code: Chapter 1 through Appendices*

   TEXT THAT IS ~~STRUCKTHROUGH~~ IS DELETED FROM THE 2018 EDITION TO CREATE THE 2024 EDITION.

   TEXT THAT IS <u>UNDERLINED</u> IS NEW TEXT TO CREATE THE 2024 EDITION.

   *Of note, publishing edits to the Cover page, North Carolina Building Code Council members and committees lists, North Carolina Department of Insurance contact information, Preface, Table of Contents and Index are not included as those are publishing edits that do not contain permanent rule content. These publishing edits contain NCBCC and NCDOI contact information, instructions on how to use the code, and guidance on where to find information in the code for the public-at-large. Coordination of the correct page numbers tied to the Table of Contents and Index cannot be accurately completed until the first draft of publishing is completed for NCDOI-OSFM Engineering & Codes staff review prior to completion of publishing by the International Code Council. NCDOI-OSFM Engineering & Codes staff will be coordinating the publication of all these publishing edits with the International Code Council once the proposed 2024 North Carolina Building Codes are approved.

2. Appendix C Code Change Proposal North Carolina Building Code Council (221213 Item B-6) 2024 North Carolina Energy Conservation Code (File: 2024 NCECC Proposed). A link to the petition can be found here: https://www.ncosfm.gov/b-6-2024-ncecc-1

3. 2017-2023 Approved Amendments to the 2018 North Carolina Energy Conservation Code (File: 2017-2023 Approved Amendments 230314-Energy Conservation Code). A link to these amendments can be found here: https://www.ncosfm.gov/2017-2023-approved-amendments-230314energy-conservation-code-code

4. Fiscal Note for the 2024 North Carolina Energy Conservation Code (File: BCC_2023-08-21). A link to this fiscal note can be found here: https://www.ncosfm.gov/b-6-2024-ncecc-fiscal-note

5. 8/21/23 OSBM approval of fiscal note correspondence (Approval – 2024 Energy Conservation Code).

6. Cost Benefit Analysis for the 2024 North Carolina Energy Conservation Code (File: Building Code Council - 143-138(a1) Cost-Benefit Analysis for 2024 N.C. Energy Conservation Code). A link to this cost benefit analysis can be found here: https://www.ncosfm.gov/b-6-2024-ncecc-cost-analysis

SUBMISSION FOR PERMANENT RULE

(see attached documents)

CHAPTER 1 [CE]
SCOPE AND ADMINISTRATION

PART 1—SCOPE AND APPLICATION

SECTION C101
SCOPE AND GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

C101.1 Title. ~~This code shall be known as the *North Carolina Energy Conservation Code* as adopted by the North Carolina Building Code Council on June 13, 2017 to be effective January 1, 2019. References to the *International Codes* shall mean the North Carolina Codes. The *North Carolina Energy Conservation Code* is referred to herein as "this code." The North Carolina amendments to the *International Codes* are underlined.~~ This code shall be known as the *Energy Conservation Code* of **[NORTH CAROLINA]**, and shall be cited as such. It is referred to herein as "this code."

C101.2 Scope. This code applies to *commercial buildings* and the buildings' sites and associated systems and equipment.

~~**Exceptions:**~~

~~1. Energy expended in support of *process energy* applications does not invoke energy conservation code requirements or building thermal envelope requirements unless otherwise required in specific sections of this code.~~

~~2. Per G.S. 143-138 (b18), no energy conservation code provisions shall apply to any structure for which the primary occupancy classification is Group F, S, or U pursuant to Chapter 3 of the 2018 *North Carolina Building Code*. This exclusion shall apply to the entire building area.~~

C101.3 Intent. This code shall regulate the design and construction of buildings for the effective use and conservation of energy over the useful life of each building. This code is intended to provide flexibility to permit the use of innovative approaches and techniques to achieve this objective. This code is not intended to abridge safety, health or environmental requirements contained in other applicable codes or ordinances.

C101.4 Applicability. Where, in any specific case, different sections of this code specify different materials, methods of construction or other requirements, the most restrictive shall govern. Where there is a conflict between a general requirement and a specific requirement, the specific requirement shall govern.

C101.4.1 ~~**Mixed occupancy.** Where a building includes both residential and *commercial* occupancies, each occupancy shall be separately considered and meet the applicable provisions of IECC Commercial Provisions or IECC Residential Provisions.~~ **Mixed residential and commercial buildings.** Where a building includes both *residential building* and *commercial building* portions, each portion shall be separately considered and meet the applicable provisions of IECC (International Energy Conservation Code) —Commercial Provisions or IECC—Residential Provisions.

C101.5 Compliance. *Residential buildings* shall meet the provisions of IECC—Residential Provisions. *Commercial buildings* shall meet the provisions of IECC—Commercial Provisions.

C101.5.1 Compliance materials. The *code official* shall be permitted to approve specific computer software, worksheets, compliance manuals and other similar materials that meet the intent of this code.

~~**C101.5.2 Requirements of other State Agencies, occupational licensing boards, or commissions.** The North Carolina State Building Codes do not include all additional requirements for buildings and structures that may be imposed by other State agencies, occupational licensing boards, and commissions. It shall be the responsibility of a permit holder, design professional, contractor, or occupational license holder to determine whether any additional requirements exist.~~

C101.6 Requirements of other State agencies, occupational licensing board or commissions. -see the NC Administrative Code and Policies

SECTION C102
ALTERNATIVE MATERIALS, DESIGN AND METHODS OF CONSTRUCTION AND EQUIPMENT

~~Deleted. See the *North Carolina Administrative Code and Policies.*~~

C102.1 General. The provisions of this code are not intended to prevent the installation of any material or to prohibit any design or method of construction not specifically prescribed by this code, provided that any such alternative has been *approved*. The code official shall have the authority to approve an alternative material, design or method of construction upon the written application of the owner or the owner's authorized agent. The *code official* shall first find that the proposed design ~~is satisfactory and~~ satisfactorily complies with the intent of the provisions of this code, and that the material, method or work offered is, for the purpose intended, not less than the equivalent of that prescribed in this code in quality, strength, effectiveness, *fire resistance*, durability, energy conservation and safety. The *code official* shall respond to the applicant, in writing, stating the reasons why the alternative was approved or was not *approved*. See the procedural requirements of Section 105 of the North Carolina Administrative Code and Policies for guidance.

C102.1.1 Above code programs. The *code official* or other authority having jurisdiction shall be permitted to deem a national, state or local energy efficiency program as exceeding the energy efficiency required by this code. Buildings ~~*approved*~~ in ~~writing~~compliance ~~by~~with ~~such~~ an *approved* energy efficiency program and verified with *approved* documentation in writing shall be considered to be in compliance with this code. The requirements identified in Table C407.2 shall be met.

PART 2—ADMINISTRATION AND ENFORCEMENT

See the North Carolina Administrative Code and Policies for the administration and enforcement of the North Carolina State Building Codes as adopted by the Building Code Council and enforced by State and local code enforcement officials.

SECTION C103
CONSTRUCTION DOCUMENTS

C103.1 General. Construction documents and other supporting data shall be submitted in one or more sets, or in a digital format where allowed by the building official, with each application for a permit. The construction documents shall be prepared by a registered design professional where required by the statutes of the jurisdiction in which the project is to be constructed. ~~Where special conditions exist, the *code official* is authorized to require necessary construction documents to be prepared by a registered design professional.~~

Exception: The *code official* is authorized to waive the requirements for construction documents or other supporting data if the *code official* determines they are not necessary to confirm compliance with this code.

C103.2 Information on construction documents. Construction documents shall be drawn to ~~scale on suitable material.~~scale. Electronic media documents are permitted to be submitted where *approved* by the *code official*. Construction documents shall be of sufficient clarity to indicate the location, nature and extent of the work proposed, and show in sufficient detail pertinent data and features of the building, systems and equipment as herein governed. Details shall include, but are not limited to, the following as applicable:

~~1. Insulation materials and their *R*-values.~~

~~2. Fenestration *U*-factors and solar heat gain coefficients (SHGCs).~~

~~3. Area-weighted *U*-factor and solar heat gain coefficient (SHGC) calculations.~~

~~4. Mechanical system design criteria.~~

~~5. Mechanical and service water heating system and equipment types, sizes and efficiencies.~~

~~6. Economizer description.~~

~~7. Equipment and system controls.~~

~~8. Fan motor horsepower (hp) and controls.~~

~~9. Duct sealing, duct and pipe insulation and location.~~

~~10. Lighting fixture schedule with wattage and control narrative.~~

~~11. Deleted.~~

~~12. Air sealing details.~~

1. Energy compliance ~~path.~~path (Prescriptive Compliance or Total Building Performance per Section C401.2.1 or ANSI/ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1 per Section C401.2.2).
2. Insulation materials and their *R*-values.
3. Fenestration *U*-factors and solar heat gain coefficients (SHGCs).
4. Area-weighted *U*-factor and solar heat gain coefficient (SHGC) calculations.
5. Mechanical system design criteria.
6. Mechanical and service water-heating systems and equipment types, sizes and efficiencies.
7. Economizer description.
8. Equipment and system controls.
9. Fan motor horsepower (hp) and controls.
10. Duct sealing, duct and pipe insulation and location.
11. Lighting fixture schedule with wattage and control narrative.
12. Location of *daylight* zones on floor plans.
13. Air barrier and air sealing details, including the location of the air barrier.

C103.2.1 Building thermal envelope depiction. ~~The *building's thermal envelope* shall be identified on the construction drawings.~~The *building thermal envelope* shall be represented on the construction drawings.

C103.3 Examination of documents. ~~Deleted. See the *North Carolina Administrative Code and Policies.*~~The *code official* shall examine or cause to be examined the accompanying construction documents and shall ascertain whether the construction indicated and described is in accordance with the requirements of this code and other pertinent laws or ordinances. The *code official* is authorized to utilize a registered design professional, or other *approved* entity not affiliated with the building design or construction, in conducting the review of the plans and specifications for compliance with the code.

C103.3.1 Approval of construction documents. When the *code official* issues a permit where construction documents are required, the construction documents shall be endorsed in writing and stamped "Reviewed for Code Compliance." Such *approved* construction documents shall not be changed, modified or altered without authorization from the *code official*. Work shall be done in accordance with the *approved* construction documents.

One set of construction documents so reviewed shall be retained by the *code official*. The other set shall be returned to the applicant, kept at the site of work and shall be open to inspection by the *code official* or a duly authorized representative.

C103.3.2 Previous approvals. This code shall not require changes in the construction documents, construction or designated occupancy of a structure for which a lawful permit has been heretofore issued or otherwise lawfully authorized, and the construction of which has been pursued in good faith within 180 days after the effective date of this code and has not been abandoned.

C103.3.3 Phased approval. The *code official* shall have the authority to issue a permit for the construction of part of an energy conservation system before the construction documents for the entire system have been submitted or *approved*, provided that adequate information and detailed statements have been filed complying with all pertinent requirements of this code. The holders of such permit shall proceed at their own risk without assurance that the permit for the entire energy conservation system will be granted.

C103.4 Amended construction documents. Changes made during construction that are not in compliance with the *approved* construction documents shall be resubmitted for approval as an amended set of construction documents.

C103.5 Retention of construction documents. One set of *approved* construction documents shall be retained by the *code official* for a period of not less than 180 days from date of completion of the permitted work, or as required by state or local laws.

C103.6 Building documentation and closeout submittal requirements. The construction documents shall specify that the documents described in this section be provided to the building owner or owner's authorized agent within 90 days of the date of receipt of the certificate of occupancy.

C103.6.1 Record documents. Construction documents shall be updated to convey a record of the completed work. Such updates shall include mechanical, electrical and control drawings that indicate all changes to size, type and location of components, equipment and assemblies.

C103.6.2 Compliance documentation. Energy code compliance documentation and supporting calculations shall be delivered in one document to the building owner as part of the project record documents or manuals, or as a standalone document. This document shall include the specific energy code edition utilized (IECC per Section C401.2.1 or ANSI/ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1 per Section C401.2.2) for compliance determination for each system, documentation demonstrating compliance with Section C303.1.3 for each fenestration product installed, and the interior lighting power compliance path, building area or space-by-space, used to calculate the lighting power allowance.

For projects complying with Item 2 of Section C401.2, the documentation shall include:

1. The envelope insulation compliance path.
2. All compliance calculations including those required by Sections C402.1.5, C403.8.1, C405.3 and C405.5.

For projects complying with Section C407, the documentation shall include that required by Sections C407.3.1 and C407.3.2.

C103.6.3 Systems operation control. Training conducted by the parties responsible for performing the work shall be provided to ~~those~~the owner's representatives responsible for maintaining and operating equipment included in the manuals required by Section C103.6.2.

The training shall include:

1. Review of manuals and permanent certificate.
2. Hands-on demonstration of all normal maintenance procedures, normal operating modes, and all emergency shutdown and startup procedures.
3. Training completion report.

~~SECTION C104~~
~~INSPECTIONS~~~~FEES~~

~~Deleted. See the *North Carolina Administrative Code and Policies*.~~

~~Deleted~~

~~SECTION C105~~~~C104~~
~~VALIDITY~~~~INSPECTIONS~~

~~Deleted. See the *North Carolina Administrative Code and Policies*.~~

~~**C105.1C104.1 General.** Construction or work for which a permit is required shall be subject to inspection by the code official, his or her designated agent or an *approved agency*, and such construction or work shall remain visible and able to be accessed for inspection purposes until *approved*. Approval as a result of an inspection shall not be construed to be an approval of a violation of the provisions of this code or of other ordinances of the jurisdiction. Inspections presuming to give authority to violate or cancel the provisions of this code or of other ordinances of the jurisdiction shall not be valid. It shall be the duty of the permit applicant to cause the work to remain visible and able to be accessed for inspection purposes. Neither the code official nor the jurisdiction shall be liable for expense entailed in the removal or replacement of any material, product, system or building component required to allow inspection to validate compliance with this code.~~

~~**C105.2C104.2 Required inspections.** The *code official*, his or her designated agent or an *approved agency*, upon notification, shall make the inspections set forth in Sections C105.2.1C104.2.1 through C105.2.6.C104.2.6.~~

~~**C105.2.1C104.2.1 Footing and foundation insulation.** Inspections shall verify the footing and foundation insulation *R*-value, location, thickness, depth of burial and protection of insulation as required by the code, *approved* plans and specifications.~~

~~**C105.2.2C104.2.2 Thermal envelope.** Inspections shall verify the correct type of insulation, *R*-values, location of insulation, fenestration, *U*-factor, SHGC and VT, and that air leakage controls are properly installed, as required by the code, *approved* plans and specifications.~~

~~**C105.2.3C104.2.3 Plumbing system.** Inspections shall verify the type of insulation, *R*-values, protection required, controls and heat traps as required by the code, *approved* plans and specifications.~~

~~**C105.2.4C104.2.4 Mechanical system.** Inspections shall verify the installed HVAC equipment for the correct type and size, controls, insulation, *R*-values, system and damper air leakage, minimum fan efficiency, energy recovery and economizer as required by the code, *approved* plans and specifications.~~

~~**C105.2.5C104.2.5 Electrical system.** Inspections shall verify lighting system controls, components and meters as required by the code, *approved* plans and specifications.~~

~~**C105.2.6C104.2.6 Final inspection.** The final inspection shall include verification of the installation and proper operation of all required building controls, and documentation verifying activities associated with required *building commissioning* have been conducted in accordance with Section C408.~~

~~**C105.3C104.3 Reinspection.** A building shall be reinspected where determined necessary by the *code official*.~~

~~**C105.4C104.4 Approved inspection agencies.** The *code official* is authorized to accept reports of third-party inspection agencies not affiliated with the building design or construction, provided that such agencies are *approved* as to qualifications and reliability relevant to the building components and systems that they are inspecting.~~

~~**C105.5C104.5 Inspection requests.** It shall be the duty of the holder of the permit or their duly authorized agent to notify the *code official* when work is ready for inspection. It shall be the duty of the permit holder to provide access to and means for inspections of such work that are required by this code.~~

~~**C105.6C104.6 Reinspection and testing.** Where any work or installation does not pass an initial test or inspection, the necessary corrections shall be made to achieve compliance with this code. The work or installation shall then be resubmitted to the *code official* for inspection and testing.~~

~~SECTION C106C105~~
~~REFERENCED STANDARDSNOTICE OF APPROVAL~~

~~**C106.1C105.1 Approval.** After the prescribed tests and inspections indicate that the work complies in all respects with this code, a notice of approval shall be issued by the code *official*.~~

~~**C106.2C105.2 Revocation.** The *code official* is authorized to suspend or revoke, in writing, a notice of approval issued under the provisions of this code wherever the certificate is issued in error, or on the basis of incorrect information supplied, or where it is determined that the *building* or structure, premise, or portion thereof is in violation of any ordinance or regulation or any of the provisions of this code.~~

~~SECTION C107C106~~
~~FEESVALIDITY~~

~~Deleted. See the *North Carolina Administrative Code and Policies.*~~

~~**C107.1C106.1 General.** If a portion of this code is held to be illegal or void, such a decision shall not affect the validity of the remainder of this code.~~

~~SECTION C108C107~~
~~STOP WORK ORDERREFERENCED STANDARDS~~

~~Deleted. See the *North Carolina Administrative Code and Policies.*~~

~~**C106.1C108.1C107.1 Referenced codes and standards.** The codes and standards referenced in this code shall be those listed in Chapter 6, and such codes and standards shall be considered as part of the requirements of this code to the prescribed extent of each such reference and as further regulated in Sections C106.1.1C108.1.1C107.1.1 and C106.1.2.C108.1.2.C107.2.2.~~

~~**C106.1.1C108.1.1C107.1.1 Conflicts.** Where conflicts occur between provisions of this code and referenced codes and standards, the provisions of this code shall apply.~~

~~**C106.1.2C108.1.2C107.1.2 Provisions in referenced codes and standards.** Where the extent of the reference to a referenced code or standard includes subject matter that is within the scope of this code, the provisions of this code, as applicable, shall take precedence over the provisions in the referenced code or standard.~~

~~**C106.2C108.2C107.2 Applications of references.** References to chapter or section numbers, or to provisions not specifically identified by number, shall be construed to refer to such chapter, section or provision of this code.~~

~~**C106.3C108.3C107.3 Other laws.** The provisions of this code shall not be deemed to nullify any provisions of local, state or federal law.~~

~~SECTION C109C108~~
~~BOARD OF APPEALSSTOP WORK ORDER~~

~~Deleted. See the *North Carolina Administrative Code and Policies.*~~

~~**C109.1C108.1 Authority.** Where the *code official* finds any work regulated by this code being performed in a manner contrary to the provisions of this code or in a dangerous or unsafe manner, the *code official* is authorized to issue a stop work order.~~

~~**C109.2C108.2 Issuance.** The stop work order shall be in writing and shall be given to the owner of the property, the owner's authorized agent or the person performing the work. Upon issuance of a stop work order, the cited work shall immediately cease. The stop work order shall state the reason for the order and the conditions under which the cited work is authorized to resume.~~

~~**C109.3C108.3 Emergencies.** Where an emergency exists, the *code official* shall not be required to give a written notice prior to stopping the work.~~

~~**C109.4C108.4 Failure to comply.** Any person who shall continue any work after having been served with a stop work order, except such work as that person is directed to perform to remove a violation or unsafe condition, shall be subject to fines established by the authority having jurisdiction.~~

~~SECTION C110C109~~
~~BOARD OF APPEALS~~

~~**C110.1C109.1 General.** In order to hear and decide appeals of orders, decisions or determinations made by the *code official* relative to the application and interpretation of this code, there shall be and is hereby created a board of appeals. The *code official* shall be an ex officio member of said board but shall not have a vote on any matter before the board. The board of appeals shall be appointed by the governing body and shall hold office at its pleasure. The board shall adopt rules of procedure for conducting its business, and shall render all decisions and findings in writing to the appellant with a duplicate copy to the *code official*.~~

~~**C110.2C109.2 Limitations on authority.** An application for appeal shall be based on a claim that the true intent of this code or the rules legally adopted thereunder have been incorrectly interpreted, the provisions of this code do not fully apply or an equally good or better form of construction is proposed. The board shall not have authority to waive requirements of this code.~~

~~**C110.3C109.3 Qualifications.** The board of appeals shall consist of members who are qualified by experience and training and are not employees of the jurisdiction.~~

CHAPTER 2 [CE]
DEFINITIONS

SECTION C201
GENERAL

C201.1 Scope. Unless stated otherwise, the following words and terms in this code shall have the meanings indicated in this chapter.

C201.2 Interchangeability. Words used in the present tense include the future; words in the masculine gender include the feminine and neuter; the singular number includes the plural and the plural includes the singular.

C201.3 Terms defined in other codes. Terms that are not defined in this code but are defined in the *International Building Code*, *International Fire Code*, *International Fuel Gas Code*, *International Mechanical Code*, *International Plumbing Code* or the *International Residential Code* shall have the meanings ascribed to them in those codes.

C201.4 Terms not defined. Terms not defined by this chapter shall have ordinarily accepted meanings such as the context implies.

SECTION C202
GENERAL DEFINITIONS

ABOVE-GRADE WALL. See "*Wall, above-grade*."

~~**ACCESSIBLE.** Admitting close approach as a result of not being guarded by locked doors, elevation or other effective means (see "Readily *accessible*").~~

ACCESS (TO). That which enables a device, appliance or equipment to be reached by *ready access* or by a means that first requires the removal or movement of a panel or similar obstruction.

~~**ACH75.** Air Changes per Hour of measured airflow in relation to the building volume while the building is maintained at a pressure difference of 75 pascals (0.30 in wg).~~

ADDITION. ~~An extension or increase in the *conditioned space* floor area or height of a building or structure.~~ An extension or increase in the *conditioned space* floor area, number of stories or height of a building or structure.

AIR BARRIER. ~~Materials assembled and joined together to provide a barrier to air leakage through the building envelope. An air barrier may be a single material or a combination of materials.~~ One or more materials joined together in a continuous manner to restrict or prevent the passage of air through the *building thermal envelope* and its assemblies.

AIR CURTAIN. A device, installed at the *building entrance*, that generates and discharges a laminar air stream intended to prevent the infiltration of external, unconditioned air into the conditioned spaces, or the loss of interior, conditioned air to the outside.

~~**AIR-IMPERMEABLE INSULATION.** An insulation having an air permanence equal to or less than 0.02 L/s-m2 at 75 Pa pressure differential tested according to ASTM E2178 or E283 at the thickness applied.~~

ALTERATION. Any construction, retrofit or renovation to an existing structure other than repair or addition.~~addition that requires a permit.~~ Also, a change in a building, electrical, gas, mechanical or plumbing system that involves an extension, addition or change to the arrangement, type or purpose of the original installation.~~installation that requires a permit.~~

APPROVED. ~~Acceptable to the code official for compliance with the provisions of the applicable code or referenced standard.~~Acceptable to the code official.

APPROVED AGENCY. ~~An established and recognized agency regularly engaged in conducting tests or furnishing inspection services, when such agency has been approved by the *code official*.~~An established and recognized agency that is regularly engaged in conducting tests or furnishing inspection services, or furnishing product certification, where such agency has been approved by the *code official*.

AUTOMATIC. Self-acting, operating by its own mechanism when actuated by some impersonal influence, as, for example, a change in current strength, pressure, temperature or mechanical configuration (see "*Manual*").

BELOW-GRADE WALL. See "*Wall, below-grade*."

BIOGAS. A mixture of hydrocarbons that is a gas at 60°F (15.5°C) and 1 atmosphere of pressure that is produced through the anaerobic digestion of organic matter.

BIOMASS. Nonfossilized and biodegradable organic material originating from plants, animals and/or microorganisms, including products, by-products, residues and waste from agriculture, forestry and related industries as well as the nonfossilized and biodegradable organic fractions of industrial and municipal wastes, including gases and liquids recovered from the decomposition of nonfossilized and biodegradable organic material.

BOILER, MODULATING. A boiler that is capable of more than a single firing rate in response to a varying temperature or heating load.

BOILER SYSTEM. One or more boilers, their piping and controls that work together to supply steam or hot water to heat output devices remote from the boiler.

BUBBLE POINT. The refrigerant liquid saturation temperature at a specified pressure.

BUILDING. Any structure used or intended for supporting or sheltering any use or ~~occupancy.~~occupancy, including any mechanical systems, service water-heating systems and electric power and lighting systems located on the building site and supporting the building.

BUILDING COMMISSIONING. A process that verifies and documents that the selected building systems have been designed, installed and function according to the owner's project requirements and construction documents, and to minimum code requirements.

BUILDING ENTRANCE. Any door, set of doors, doorway or other form of portal that is used to gain access to the building from the outside by the public.

BUILDING SITE. A contiguous area of land that is under the ownership or control of one entity.

BUILDING THERMAL ENVELOPE. ~~The *walls, below-grade*, exterior walls, floor, roof and any other building elements that enclose *conditioned space* or provide a boundary between *conditioned space* and exempt or unconditioned space.~~The basement walls, exterior walls, floors, ceilings, roofs and any other building element assemblies that enclose *conditioned space* or provide a boundary between *conditioned space* and exempt or unconditioned space.

CAPTIVE KEY OVERRIDE. A lighting control that will not release the key that activates the override when the lighting is on.

CAVITY INSULATION. Insulating material located between framing members.

***C*-FACTOR (THERMAL CONDUCTANCE).** The coefficient of heat transmission (surface to surface) through a building component or assembly, equal to the time rate of heat flow per unit area and the unit temperature difference between the warm side and cold side surfaces (Btu/h × ft^2 × °F) [W/(m^2 × K)].

CHANGE OF OCCUPANCY. A change in the use of a building or a portion of a building that results in any of the following:

1. A *change of occupancy* classification.
2. A change from one group to another group within an occupancy classification.
3. Any change in use within a group for which there is a change in the application of the requirements of this code.

CIRCULATING HOT WATER SYSTEM. A specifically designed water distribution system where one or more pumps are operated in the service hot water piping to circulate heated water from the water-heating equipment to the fixture supply and back to the water-heating equipment.

CLIMATE ZONE. A geographical region based on climatic criteria as specified in this code.

CODE OFFICIAL. The officer or other designated authority charged with the administration and enforcement of this code, or a duly authorized representative.

COEFFICENT OF PERFORMANCE (COP) – COOLING. ~~The ratio of the rate of heat input, in consistent units, for a complete refrigerating system or some specific portion of that system under designated operating conditions.~~The ratio of the rate of heat removal to the rate of energy input, in consistent units, for a complete refrigerating system or some specific portion of that system under designated operating conditions.

COEFFICIENT OF PERFORMANCE (COP) − HEATING. The ratio of the rate of heat delivered to the rate of energy input, in consistent units, for a complete heat pump system, including the compressor and, if applicable, auxiliary heat, under designated operating conditions.

COMMERCIAL BUILDING. For this code, all buildings that are not included in the definition of ~~"*Residential building.*"~~ "*Residential building*" and are not exempted by N.C.G.S. 143-138(b4), (b15), (b18) and (b19).

COMPUTER ROOM. ~~A room whose primary function is to house equipment for the processing and storage of electronic data and that has a design electronic data equipment power density exceeding 20 watts per square foot of conditioned floor area.~~A room whose primary function is to house equipment for the processing and storage of electronic data which has a design total information technology equipment (ITE) equipment power density less than or equal to 20 watts per square foot (20 watts per 0.092 m^2) of conditioned area or a design total ITE equipment load less than or equal to 10 kW.

CONDENSING UNIT. A factory-made assembly of refrigeration components designed to compress and liquefy a specific refrigerant. The unit consists of one or more refrigerant compressors, refrigerant condensers (air-cooled, evaporatively cooled or water-cooled), condenser fans and motors (where used) and factory-supplied accessories.

CONDITIONED FLOOR AREA. The horizontal projection of the floors associated with the *conditioned space*.

CONDITIONED SPACE. ~~A space within a building that is provided with heating or cooling equipment or systems capa- ble of maintaining, through design or heat loss/gain, 50°F (10°C) during the heating season or 85°F (29°C) during the cooling season, or communicates directly with a conditioned space. Spaces within the building thermal envelope are considered conditioned space.~~An area, room or space that is enclosed within the *building thermal envelope* and is directly or indirectly heated or cooled. Spaces are indirectly heated or cooled where they communicate through openings with conditioned spaces, where they are separated from conditioned spaces by uninsulated walls, floors or ceilings, or where they contain uninsulated ducts, piping or other sources of heating or cooling.

~~**CONTINUOUS AIR BARRIER.** A combination of materials and assemblies that restrict or prevent the passage of air through the building thermal envelope.~~

CONTINUOUS INSULATION (ci). Insulating material that is continuous across all structural members without thermal bridges other than fasteners and service openings. It is installed on the interior or exterior or is integral to any opaque surface of the building envelope.

CRAWL SPACE WALL. The opaque portion of a wall that encloses a crawl space and is partially or totally below grade.

CURTAIN WALL. Fenestration products used to create an external nonload-bearing wall that is designed to separate the exterior and interior environments.

DATA CENTER. A room or series of rooms that share data center systems, whose primary function is to house equipment for the processing and storage of electronic data and that has a design total ITE equipment power density exceeding 20 watts per square foot (20 watts per 0.092 m^2) of conditioned area and a total design ITE equipment load greater than 10 kW.

DATA CENTER SYSTEMS. HVAC systems and equipment, or portions thereof, used to provide cooling or ventilation in a data center.

DAYLIGHT RESPONSIVE CONTROL. A device or system that provides automatic control of electric light levels based on the amount of daylight in a space.

DAYLIGHT ZONE. That portion of a building's interior floor area that is illuminated by natural light.

DEMAND CONTROL VENTILATION (DCV). A ventilation system capability that provides for the automatic reduction of outdoor air intake below design rates when the actual occupancy of spaces served by the system is less than design occupancy.

DEMAND RECIRCULATION WATER SYSTEM. A water distribution system where one or more pumps prime the service hot water piping with heated water upon a demand for hot water.

DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL (DDC). A type of control where controlled and monitored analog or binary data, such as temperature and contact closures, are converted to digital format for manipulation and calculations by a digital computer or microprocessor, then converted back to analog or binary form to control physical devices.

DUCT. A tube or conduit utilized for conveying air. The air passages of self-contained systems are not to be construed as air ducts.

DUCT SYSTEM. A continuous passageway for the transmission of air that, in addition to ducts, includes duct fittings, dampers, plenums, fans and accessory air-handling equipment and appliances.

DWELLING UNIT. A single unit providing complete independent living facilities for one or more persons, including permanent provisions for living, sleeping, eating, cooking and sanitation.

DYNAMIC GLAZING. Any fenestration product that has the fully reversible ability to change its performance properties, including *U*-factor, solar heat gain coefficient (SHGC) or visible transmittance (VT).

ECONOMIZER, AIR. A duct and damper arrangement and automatic control system that allows a cooling system to supply outside air to reduce or eliminate the need for mechanical cooling during mild or cold weather.

ECONOMIZER, WATER. A system where the supply air of a cooling system is cooled indirectly with water that is itself cooled by heat or mass transfer to the environment without the use of mechanical cooling.

ENCLOSED SPACE. A volume surrounded by solid surfaces such as walls, floors, roofs and openable devices, such as doors and operable windows.

ENERGY ANALYSIS. A method for estimating the annual energy use of the *proposed design* and *standard reference design* based on estimates of energy use.

ENERGY COST. The total estimated annual cost for purchased energy for the building functions regulated by this code, including applicable demand charges.

ENERGY RECOVERY VENTILATION SYSTEM. Systems that employ air-to-air heat exchangers to recover energy from exhaust air for the purpose of preheating, precooling, humidifying or dehumidifying outdoor ventilation air prior to supplying the air to a space, either directly or as part of an HVAC system.

ENERGY SIMULATION TOOL. An *approved* software program or calculation-based methodology that projects the annual energy use of a building.

ENTHALPY RECOVERY RATIO. Change in the enthalpy of the *outdoor air* supply divided by the difference between the *outdoor air* and entering exhaust air enthalpy, expressed as a percentage.

ENTRANCE DOOR. ~~Fenestration products used for ingress, egress and access in nonresidential buildings, including, but not limited to, exterior entrances that utilize latching hardware and automatic closers and contain over 50-percent glass specifically designed to withstand heavy use and possibly abuse.~~A vertical fenestration product used for occupant ingress, egress and access in nonresidential buildings, including, but not limited to, exterior entrances utilizing latching hardware and automatic closers and containing over 50 percent glazing specifically designed to withstand heavy-duty usage.

EQUIPMENT ROOM. A space that contains either electrical equipment, mechanical equipment, machinery, water pumps or hydraulic pumps that are a function of the building's services.

EXTERIOR WALL. ~~Walls including both *above-grade walls* and *walls, below-grade*.~~Walls including both above-grade walls and basement walls.

FAN, EMBEDDED. A fan that is part of a manufactured assembly where the assembly includes functions other than air movement.

FAN ARRAY. Multiple fans in parallel between two plenum sections in an air distribution system.

FAN BRAKE HORSEPOWER (BHP). The horsepower delivered to the fan's shaft. Brake horsepower does not include the mechanical drive losses, such as that from belts and gears.

FAN ENERGY INDEX (FEI). The ratio of the electric input power of a reference fan to the electric input power of the actual fan as calculated in accordance with AMCA 208.

FAN NAMEPLATE ELECTRICAL INPUT POWER. The nominal electrical input power rating stamped on a fan assembly nameplate.

FAN SYSTEM DESIGN CONDITIONS. ~~Operating conditions that can be expected to occur during normal system operation that result in the highest supply fan airflow rate to conditioned spaces served by the system.~~Operating conditions that can be expected to occur during normal system operation that result in the highest supply fan airflow rate to conditioned spaces served by the system, other than during air economizer operation.

FAN SYSTEM ELECTRICAL INPUT POWER. The sum of the fan electrical power of all fans that are required to operate at fan system design conditions to supply air from the heating or cooling source to the conditioned spaces and/or return it to the source or exhaust it to the outdoors.

FAN SYSTEM MOTOR NAMEPLATE HP. The sum of the motor nameplate horsepower of all fans that are required to operate at design conditions to supply air from the heating or cooling source to the *conditioned spaces* and return it to the source or exhaust it to the outdoors.

FAULT DETECTION AND DIAGNOSTICS (FDD) SYSTEM. A software platform that utilizes building analytic algorithms to convert data provided by sensors and devices to automatically identify faults in building systems and provide a prioritized list of actionable resolutions to those faults based on cost or energy avoidance, comfort and maintenance impact.

FENESTRATION. ~~Products classified as either vertical fenestration or skylights.~~ Products classified as either skylights or vertical fenestration.

~~Skylight.~~ ~~Glass or other transparent or translucent glazing material installed at a slope of less than 60 degrees (1.05 rad) from horizontal.~~**Skylights.** Glass or other transparent or translucent glazing material installed at a slope of less than 60 degrees (1.05 rad) from horizontal, including unit skylights, tubular daylighting devices and glazing materials in solariums, sunrooms, roofs, greenhouses and sloped walls.

Vertical fenestration. ~~Windows (fixed or moveable), opaque doors, glazed doors, glazed block and combination opaque/glazed doors composed of glass or other transparent or translucent glazing materials and installed at a slope of at least 60 degrees (1.05 rad) from horizontal.~~Windows that are fixed or operable, opaque doors, glazed doors, glazed block and combination opaque and glazed doors composed of glass or other transparent or translucent glazing materials and installed at a slope of not less than 60 degrees (1.05 rad) from horizontal.

FENESTRATION PRODUCT, FIELD-FABRICATED. A fenestration product whose frame is made at the construction site of standard dimensional lumber or other materials that were not previously cut or otherwise formed with the specific intention of being used to fabricate a fenestration product or exterior door. Field-fabricated does not include site-built fenestration.

FENESTRATION PRODUCT, SITE-BUILT. A fenestration designed to be made up of field-glazed or field-assembled units using specific factory cut or otherwise factory-formed framing and glazing units. Examples of site-built fenestration include storefront systems, curtain walls and atrium roof syste33ms.

***F*-FACTOR.** The perimeter heat loss factor for slab-on-grade floors (Btu/h × ft × °F) [W/(m × K)].

FLOOR AREA, NET. The actual occupied area not including unoccupied accessory areas such as corridors, stairways, toilet rooms, mechanical rooms and closets.

GENERAL LIGHTING. ~~Lighting that provides a substantially uniform level of illumination throughout an area. General lighting shall not include decorative lighting or lighting that provides a dissimilar level of illumination to serve a specialized application or feature within such area.~~Interior lighting that provides a substantially uniform level of illumination throughout a space.

~~**GENERAL PURPOSE ELECTRIC MOTOR (SUBTYPE I).** A motor that is designed in standard ratings with either of the following:~~

~~1. Standard operating characteristics and standard mechanical construction for use under usual service conditions, such as those specified in NEMA MG1, paragraph 14.02, "Usual Service Conditions," and without restriction to a particular application or type of application.~~

~~2. Standard operating characteristics or standard mechanical construction for use under unusual service condi- tions, such as those specified in NEMA MG1, paragraph 14.03, "Unusual Service Conditions," or for a particular type of application, and that can be used in most general purpose applications.~~

~~General purpose electric motors (Subtype I) are con- structed in NEMA T-frame sizes or IEC metric equivalent, starting at 143T.~~

~~**GENERAL PURPOSE ELECTRIC MOTOR (SUBTYPE II).** A motor incorporating the design elements of a general purpose electric motor (Subtype I) that is configured as one of the following:~~

~~1. A U-frame motor.~~

~~2. A Design C motor.~~

~~3. A close-coupled pump motor.~~

~~4. A footless motor.~~

5. ~~A vertical, solid-shaft, normal-thrust motor (as tested in a horizontal configuration).~~
6. ~~An 8-pole motor (900 rpm).~~
7. ~~A polyphase motor with voltage of not more than 600 volts (other than 230 or 460 volts).~~

GREENHOUSE. ~~A structure or a thermally isolated area of a building that maintains a specialized sunlit environment exclusively used for, and essential to, the cultivation, protection or maintenance of plants.~~ A structure or a thermally isolated area of a building not exempted by N.C.G.S. 143-138(b4) that maintains a specialized sunlit environment exclusively used for, and essential to, the cultivation, protection or maintenance of plants. *Greenhouses* are those that are erected for a period of 180 days or more.

GROUP R. Buildings or portions of buildings that contain any of the following occupancies as established in the *International Building Code*:

1. *Group R*-1.
2. *Group R*-2 where located more than three stories in height above grade plane.
3. *Group R*-3 where located more than three stories in height above grade plane.
~~3.~~4. *Group R*-4 where located more than three stories in height above grade plane.

HEAT TRAP. An arrangement of piping and fittings, such as elbows, or a commercially available heat trap that prevents thermosyphoning of hot water during standby periods.

HEATED SLAB. Slab-on-grade construction in which the heating elements, hydronic tubing or hot air distribution system is in contact with, or placed within or under, the slab.

HIGH SPEED DOOR. A nonswinging door used primarily to facilitate vehicular access or material transportation, with a minimum opening rate of 32 inches (813 mm) per second, a minimum closing rate of 24 inches (610 mm) per second and that includes an automatic-closing device.

HISTORIC BUILDING. Any building or structure that is one or more of the following:

1. Listed, or certified as eligible for listing, by the State Historic Preservation Officer or the Keeper of the National Register of Historic Places, in the National Register of Historic Places.
2. Designated as historic under an applicable state or local law.
3. Certified as a contributing resource within a National Register-listed, state-designated or locally designated historic district.

~~**HUMIDISTAT.** A regulatory device, actuated by changes in humidity, used for automatic control of relative humidity.~~

IEC DESIGN H MOTOR. An electric motor that meets all of the following:

1. It is an induction motor designed for use with three-phase power.
2. It contains a cage rotor.
3. It is capable of direct-on-line starting.
4. It has four, six or eight poles.
5. It is rated from 0.4 kW to 1600 kW at a frequency of 60 hertz.

IEC DESIGN N MOTOR. An electric motor that meets all of the following:

1. It is an induction motor designed for use with three-phase power.
2. It contains a cage rotor.
3. It is capable of direct-on-line starting.
4. It has two, four, six or eight poles.
5. It is rated from 0.4 kW to 1600 kW at a frequency of 60 hertz.

INFILTRATION. The uncontrolled inward air leakage into a building caused by the pressure effects of wind or the effect of differences in the indoor and outdoor air density or both.

INFORMATION TECHNOLOGY EQUIPMENT (ITE). Items including computers, data storage devices, servers and network and communication equipment.

INTEGRATED PART LOAD VALUE (IPLV). A single-number figure of merit based on part-load EER, COP or kW/ton expressing part-load efficiency for air-conditioning and heat pump equipment on the basis of weighted operation at various load capacities for equipment.

INTERNAL CURTAIN SYSTEM. A system consisting of movable panels of fabric or plastic film used to cover and uncover the space enclosed in a *greenhouse* on a daily basis.

ISOLATION DEVICES. Devices that isolate HVAC zones so that they can be operated independently of one another. *Isolation devices* include separate systems, isolation dampers and controls providing shutoff at terminal boxes.

LABELED. ~~Appliances, equipment, materials or products to which have been affixed a label, seal, symbol or other identifying mark of a nationally recognized testing laboratory, inspection agency or other organization concerned with product evaluation that maintains periodic inspection of the pro- duction of the above-labeled items and whose labeling indicates either that the appliances, equipment, material or product meets identified standards or has been tested and found suitable for a specified purpose.~~Equipment, materials or products to which have been affixed a label, seal, symbol or other identifying mark of a nationally recognized testing laboratory, *approved agency* or other organization concerned with product evaluation that maintains periodic inspection of the production of the labeled items and whose labeling indicates either that the equipment, material or product meets identified standards or has been tested and found suitable for a specified purpose.

~~**LAMP.** The device in a lighting fixture that provides illumination, typically a bulb, fluorescent tube, or light emitting diode (LED).~~

LARGE-DIAMETER CEILING FAN. A ceiling fan that is greater than 7 feet (2134 mm) in diameter. These fans are sometimes referred to as High-Volume, Low-Speed (HVLS) fans.

LINER SYSTEM (Ls). A system that includes the following:

1. A continuous vapor barrier liner membrane that is installed below the purlins and that is uninterrupted by framing members.
2. An uncompressed, unfaced insulation resting on top of the liner membrane and located between the purlins.

For multilayer installations, the last rated *R*-value of insulation is for unfaced insulation draped over purlins and then compressed when the metal roof panels are attached.

LISTED. ~~Appliances, equipment, materials, products or ser- vices included in a list published by an organization acceptable to the *code official* and concerned with evaluation of products or services that maintains periodic inspection of production of *listed* equipment or materials or periodic evaluation of services and whose listing states either that the appliances, equipment, material, product or service meets identified standards or has been tested and found suitable for a specified purpose.~~Equipment, materials, products or services included in a list published by an organization acceptable to the *code official* and concerned with evaluation of products or services that maintains periodic inspection of production of *listed* equipment or materials or periodic evaluation of services and whose listing states either that the equipment, material, product or service meets identified standards or has been tested and found suitable for a specified purpose.

LOW-SLOPED ROOF. A roof having a slope less than 2 units vertical in 12 units horizontal.

LOW-VOLTAGE DRY-TYPE DISTRIBUTION TRANSFORMER. A transformer that is air-cooled, does not use oil as a coolant, has an input voltage less than or equal to 600 volts and is rated for operation at a frequency of 60 hertz.

~~**LOW-VOLTAGE LIGHTING.** Lighting equipment powered through a transformer such as a cable conductor, a rail conductor and track lighting.~~

LUMINAIRE-LEVEL LIGHTING CONTROLS. A lighting system consisting of one or more luminaires with embedded lighting control logic, occupancy and ambient light sensors, wireless networking capabilities and local override switching capability, where required.

MANUAL. Capable of being operated by personal intervention (see "*Automatic*").

NAMEPLATE HORSEPOWER. ~~The nominal motor horse-power rating stamped on the motor nameplate.~~The nominal motor output power rating stamped on the motor nameplate.

NEMA DESIGN A MOTOR. A squirrel-cage motor that meets all of the following:

1. It is designed to withstand full-voltage starting and develop locked-rotor torque as shown in paragraph 12.38.1 of NEMA MG 1.
2. It has pull-up torque not less than the values shown in paragraph 12.40.1 of NEMA MG 1.

3. It has breakdown torque not less than the values shown in paragraph 12.39.1 of NEMA MG 1.
4. It has a locked-rotor current higher than the values shown in paragraph 12.35.1 of NEMA MG 1 for 60 hertz and paragraph 12.35.2 of NEMA MG 1 for 50 hertz.
5. It has a slip at rated load of less than 5 percent for motors with fewer than 10 poles.

NEMA DESIGN B MOTOR. A squirrel-cage motor that meets all of the following:

1. It is designed to withstand full-voltage starting.
2. It develops locked-rotor, breakdown and pull-up torques adequate for general application as specified in Sections 12.38, 12.39 and 12.40 of NEMA MG1.
3. It draws locked-rotor current not to exceed the values shown in Section 12.35.1 for 60 hertz and Section 12.35.2 for 50 hertz of NEMA MG1.
4. It has a slip at rated load of less than 5 percent for motors with fewer than 10 poles.

NEMA DESIGN C MOTOR. A squirrel-cage motor that meets all of the following:

1. Designed to withstand full-voltage starting and develop locked-rotor torque for high-torque applications up to the values shown in paragraph 12.38.2 of NEMA MG1 (incorporated by reference, see A§431.15).
2. It has pull-up torque not less than the values shown in paragraph 12.40.2 of NEMA MG1.
3. It has breakdown torque not less than the values shown in paragraph 12.39.2 of NEMA MG1.
4. It has a locked-rotor current not to exceed the values shown in paragraph 12.35.1 of NEMA MG1 for 60 hertz and paragraph 12.35.2 for 50 hertz.
5. It has a slip at rated load of less than 5 percent.

NETWORKED GUESTROOM CONTROL SYSTEM. A control system, with access from the front desk or other central location associated with a *Group R*-1 building, that is capable of identifying the rented and unrented status of each guestroom according to a timed schedule, and is capable of controlling HVAC in each hotel and motel guestroom separately.

NONSTANDARD PART LOAD VALUE (NPLV). A single-number part-load efficiency figure of merit calculated and referenced to conditions other than IPLV conditions, for units that are not designed to operate at AHRI standard rating conditions.

OCCUPANT SENSOR CONTROL. An automatic control device or system that detects the presence or absence of people within an area and causes lighting, equipment or appliances to be regulated accordingly.

ON-SITE RENEWABLE ENERGY. ~~Includes solar photo- voltaic; active solar thermal that employs collection panels, heat transfer mechanical components; wind; small hydroelectric; tidal; wave energy; geothermal (core earth); biomass energy systems; landfill gas and bio-fuel based electrical pro- duction. On-site energy shall be generated on or adjacent to the project site and shall not be delivered to the project through the utility service.~~Energy from renewable energy resources harvested at the building project site.

OPAQUE DOOR. A door that is not less than 50-percent opaque in surface area.

POWERED ROOF/WALL VENTILATORS. A fan consisting of a centrifugal or axial impeller with an integral driver in a weather-resistant housing and with a base designed to fit, usually by means of a curb, over a wall or roof opening.

~~**PROCESS ENERGY.** Energy consumed in support of manufacturing, industrial, or commercial processes other than conditioning spaces and maintaining comfort and amenities for the occupants of a building.~~

PROPOSED DESIGN. A description of the proposed building used to estimate annual energy use for determining compliance based on total building performance.

RADIANT HEATING SYSTEM. A heating system that transfers heat to objects and surfaces within a conditioned space, primarily by infrared radiation.

~~**READILY ACCESSIBLE.** Capable of being reached quickly for operation, renewal or inspection without requiring those to whom ready access is requisite to climb over or remove obstacles or to resort to portable ladders or access equipment (see "*Accessible*").~~

READY ACCESS (TO). That which enables a device, appliance or equipment to be directly reached without requiring the removal or movement of any panel or similar obstruction.

REFRIGERANT DEW POINT. The refrigerant vapor saturation temperature at a specified pressure.

REFRIGERATED WAREHOUSE COOLER. An enclosed storage space capable of being refrigerated to temperatures above 32°F (0°C) that can be walked into and has a total chilled storage area of not less than 3,000 square feet (279 m^2).

REFRIGERATED WAREHOUSE FREEZER. An enclosed storage space capable of being refrigerated to temperatures at or below 32°F (0°C) that can be walked into and has a total chilled storage area of not less than 3,000 square feet (279 m^2).

REFRIGERATION SYSTEM, LOW TEMPERATURE. Systems for maintaining food product in a frozen state in refrigeration applications.

REFRIGERATION SYSTEM, MEDIUM TEMPERATURE. Systems for maintaining food product above freezing in refrigeration applications.

REGISTERED DESIGN PROFESSIONAL. ~~An individual who is registered or licensed to practice their respective design profession as defined by the statutory requirements of the professional registration laws of the state or jurisdiction in which the project is to be constructed. Design by a registered design professional is not required where exempt under the registration or licensure laws.~~An individual who is registered or licensed to practice their respective design profession as defined by the statutory requirements of the professional registration laws of the state or jurisdiction in which the project is to be constructed.

RENEWABLE ENERGY RESOURCES. Energy derived from solar radiation, wind, waves, tides, landfill gas, biogas, biomass or extracted from hot fluid or steam heated within the earth.

REPAIR. The reconstruction or renewal of any part of an existing building for the purpose of its maintenance or to correct damage.

REROOFING. The process of recovering or replacing an existing roof covering. See "*Roof recover*" and "*Roof replacement*."

RESIDENTIAL BUILDING. For this code, includes ~~detached one- and two-family dwellings and multiple single-family dwellings (townhouses) as well as~~and *Group R*-2, R-3 and R-4 buildings three stories or less in height above grade ~~plane.~~plane that are not exempted by N.C.G.S. 143-138(b4), (b15), (b18) and (b19). This definition does not apply mandatorily to buildings and structures regulated by the *International Residential Code*.

ROOF ASSEMBLY. A system designed to provide weather protection and resistance to design loads. The system consists of a roof covering and roof deck or a single component serving as both the roof covering and the roof deck. A roof assembly includes the roof covering, underlayment, roof deck, insulation, vapor retarder and interior finish.

ROOF RECOVER. The process of installing an additional roof covering over an existing roof covering without removing the existing roof covering.

ROOF REPAIR. Reconstruction or renewal of any part of an existing roof for the purpose of its maintenance.

ROOF REPLACEMENT. The process of removing the existing roof covering, repairing any damaged substrate and installing a new roof covering.

ROOFTOP MONITOR. A raised section of a roof containing vertical fenestration along one or more sides.

***R*-VALUE (THERMAL RESISTANCE).** The inverse of the time rate of heat flow through a body from one of its bounding surfaces to the other surface for a unit temperature difference between the two surfaces, under steady state conditions, per unit area (h × ft^2 × °F/Btu) [(m^2 × K)/W].

SATURATED CONDENSING TEMPERATURE. The saturation temperature corresponding to the measured refrigerant pressure at the condenser inlet for single component and azeotropic refrigerants, and the arithmetic average of the dew point and *bubble point* temperatures corresponding to the refrigerant pressure at the condenser entrance for zeotropic refrigerants.

~~**SCREW LAMP HOLDERS.** A lamp base that requires a screw-in-type lamp, such as a compact-fluorescent, incandescent or tungsten-halogen bulb.~~

SERVICE WATER HEATING. Supply of hot water for purposes other than comfort heating.

~~**SHADING COEFFICIENT.** The amount of the sun's heat transmitted through a given window compared with that of a standard $^1/_8$-inch-thick single pane of glass under the same conditions.~~

~~**SITE-RECOVERED ENERGY.** Waste energy recovered at the building site that is used to off-set consumption of purchased fuel or electrical energy supplies.~~

SLEEPING UNIT. A room or space in which people sleep ~~which~~that can ~~also~~ include permanent provisions for living, eating, and either sanitation or kitchen facilities but not both. Such rooms and spaces that are ~~also~~ part of a dwelling unit are not *sleeping units*.

SMALL ELECTRIC MOTOR. A general purpose alternating-current single-speed induction motor.

~~**SOLAR ENERGY SOURCE.** Source of thermal, chemical, or electrical energy derived from direct conversion of incident solar radiation at the building site.~~

SOLAR HEAT GAIN COEFFICIENT (SHGC). The ratio of the solar heat gain entering the space through the fenestration assembly to the incident solar radiation. Solar heat gain includes directly transmitted solar heat and absorbed solar radiation ~~which~~that is then reradiated, conducted or convected into the space.

STANDARD REFERENCE DESIGN. A version of the *proposed design* that meets the minimum requirements of this code and is used to determine the maximum annual energy use requirement for compliance based on total building performance.

STOREFRONT. ~~A nonresidential system of doors and windows mulled as a composite fenestration structure that has been designed to resist heavy use. *Storefront* systems include, but are not limited to, exterior fenestration systems that span from the floor level or above to the ceiling of the same story on commercial buildings, with or without mulled windows and doors.~~A system of doors and windows mulled as a composite fenestration structure that has been designed to resist heavy use. *Storefront* systems include, but are not limited to, exterior fenestration systems that span from the floor level or above to the ceiling of the same story on ~~commercial buildings,~~*commercial buildings*, with or without mulled windows and doors.

TESTING UNIT ENCLOSURE AREA. The area sum of all the boundary surfaces that define the *dwelling unit*, *sleeping unit* or occupiable *conditioned space* including top/ceiling, bottom/floor and all side walls. This does not include interior partition walls within the *dwelling unit*, *sleeping unit*, or occupiable *conditioned space*. Wall height shall be measured from the finished floor of the *conditioned space* to the finished floor or roof/ceiling air barrier above.

THERMAL DISTRIBUTION EFFICIENCY (TDE). The resistance to changes in air heat as air is conveyed through a distance of air duct. TDE is a heat loss calculation evaluating the difference in the heat of the air between the air duct inlet and outlet caused by differences in temperatures between the air in the duct and the duct material. TDE is expressed as a percent difference between the inlet and outlet heat in the duct.

THERMOSTAT. An automatic control device used to maintain temperature at a fixed or adjustable setpoint.

TIME SWITCH CONTROL. An automatic control device or system that controls lighting or other loads, including switching off, based on time schedules.

***U*-FACTOR (THERMAL TRANSMITTANCE).** The coefficient of heat transmission (air to air) through a building component or assembly, equal to the time rate of heat flow per unit area and unit temperature difference between the warm side and cold side air films (Btu/h × ft^2 × °F) [W/(m^2 × K)].

~~**UNCONDITIONED SPACE.** A space within the building but not within the building thermal envelope.~~

VARIABLE REFRIGERANT FLOW SYSTEM. An engineered direct-expansion (DX) refrigerant system that incorporates a common condensing unit, at least one variable-capacity compressor, a distributed refrigerant piping network to multiple indoor fan heating and cooling units each capable of individual zone temperature control, through integral zone temperature control devices and a common communications network. Variable refrigerant flow utilizes three or more steps of control on common interconnecting piping.

~~**VAPOR RETARDER CLASS 1.** A measure of the ability of a material or assembly to limit the amount of moisture that passes through that material or assembly. Vapor retarder class 1 is defined as 0.1 perm or less when using the desiccant method with Procedure A of ASTM E96.~~

VEGETATIVE ROOF. An assembly of interacting components designed to waterproof a building's top surface that includes, by design, vegetation and related landscape elements.

VENTILATION. The natural or mechanical process of supplying conditioned or unconditioned air to, or removing such air from, any space.

VENTILATION AIR. That portion of supply air that comes from outside (outdoors) plus any recirculated air that has been treated to maintain the desired quality of air within a designated space.

VISIBLE TRANSMITTANCE [VT]. The ratio of visible light entering the space through the fenestration product assembly to the incident visible light. Visible transmittance includes the effects of glazing material and frame and is expressed as a number between 0 and 1.

VISIBLE TRANSMITTANCE, ANNUAL (VT_{annual}). The ratio of visible light entering the space through the fenestration product assembly to the incident visible light during the course of a year, which includes the effects of glazing material, frame, and light well or tubular conduit, and is expressed as a number between 0 and 1.

VOLTAGE DROP. A decrease in voltage caused by losses in the wiring systems that connect the power source to the load.

WALK-IN COOLER. An enclosed storage space capable of being refrigerated to temperatures above 32°F (0°C) and less than 55°F (12.8°C) that can be walked into, has a ceiling height of not less than 7 feet (2134 mm) and has a total chilled storage area of less than 3,000 square feet (279 m^2).

WALK-IN FREEZER. An enclosed storage space capable of being refrigerated to temperatures at or below 32°F (0°C) that can be walked into, has a ceiling height of not less than 7 feet (2134 mm) and has a total chilled storage area of less than 3,000 square feet (279 m^2).

WALL, ABOVE-GRADE. ~~A wall associated with the *building thermal envelope* that is more than 15 percent above grade and is on the exterior of the building or any wall that is associated with the *building thermal envelope* that is not on the exterior of the building.~~A wall associated with the *building thermal envelope* that is more than 15 percent above grade and is on the exterior of the building or any wall that is associated with the *building thermal envelope* that is not on the exterior of the building. This includes, but is not limited to, between-floor spandrels, peripheral edges of floors, roof knee walls, dormer walls, gable end walls, walls enclosing a mansard roof and skylight shafts.

WALL, BELOW-GRADE. A wall associated with the basement or first story of the building that is part of the *building thermal envelope*, is not less than 85 percent below grade and is on the exterior of the building.

WATER HEATER. Any heating appliance or equipment that heats potable water and supplies such water to the potable hot water distribution system.

ZONE. A space or group of spaces within a building with heating or cooling requirements that are sufficiently similar so that desired conditions can be maintained throughout using a single controlling device.

CHAPTER 3 [CE]
GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

SECTION C301
CLIMATE ZONES

C301.1 General. *Climate zones* from Figure C301.1 or Table C301.1 shall be used ~~in~~for determining the applicable requirements from Chapter 4. Locations not indicated in Table C301.1 shall be assigned a *climate zone* in accordance with Section C301.3.

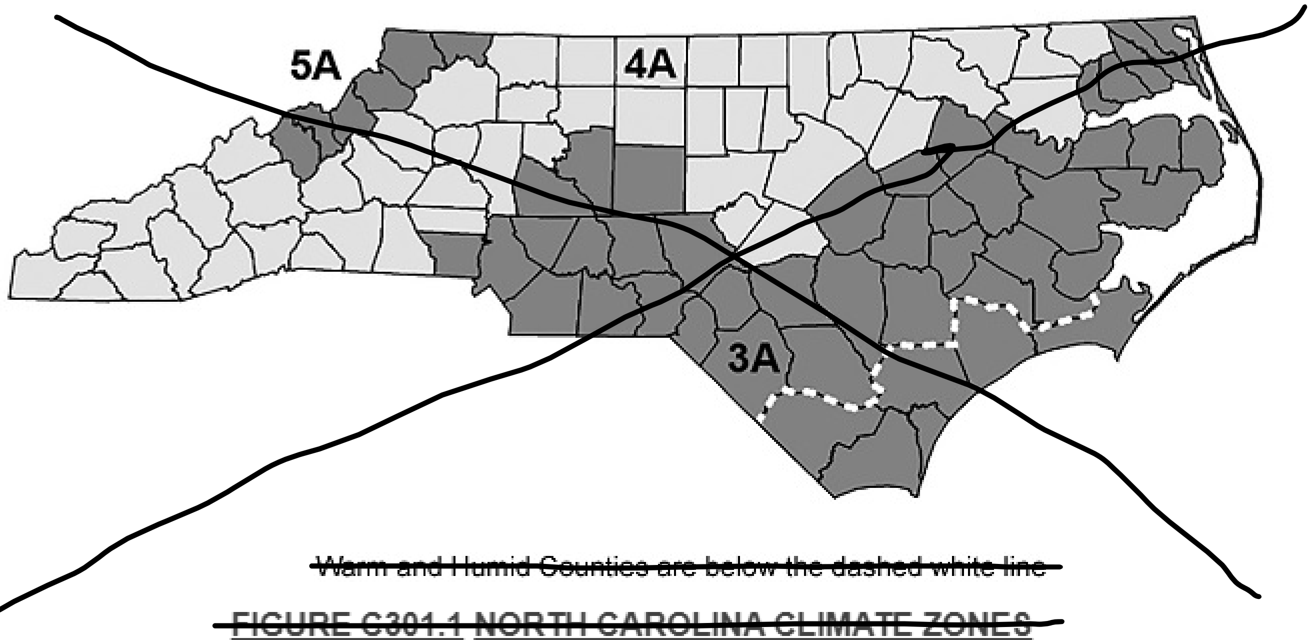
C301.2 Warm Humid counties. In Table C301.1, Warm Humid counties are identified ~~in Table C301.1~~ by an asterisk.

TABLE C301.1
NORTH CAROLINA CLIMATE ZONES, MOISTURE REGIMES, AND WARM-HUMID DESIGNATIONS BY COUNTY

Key: A – Moist.
Asterisk (*) indicates a warm-humid location.

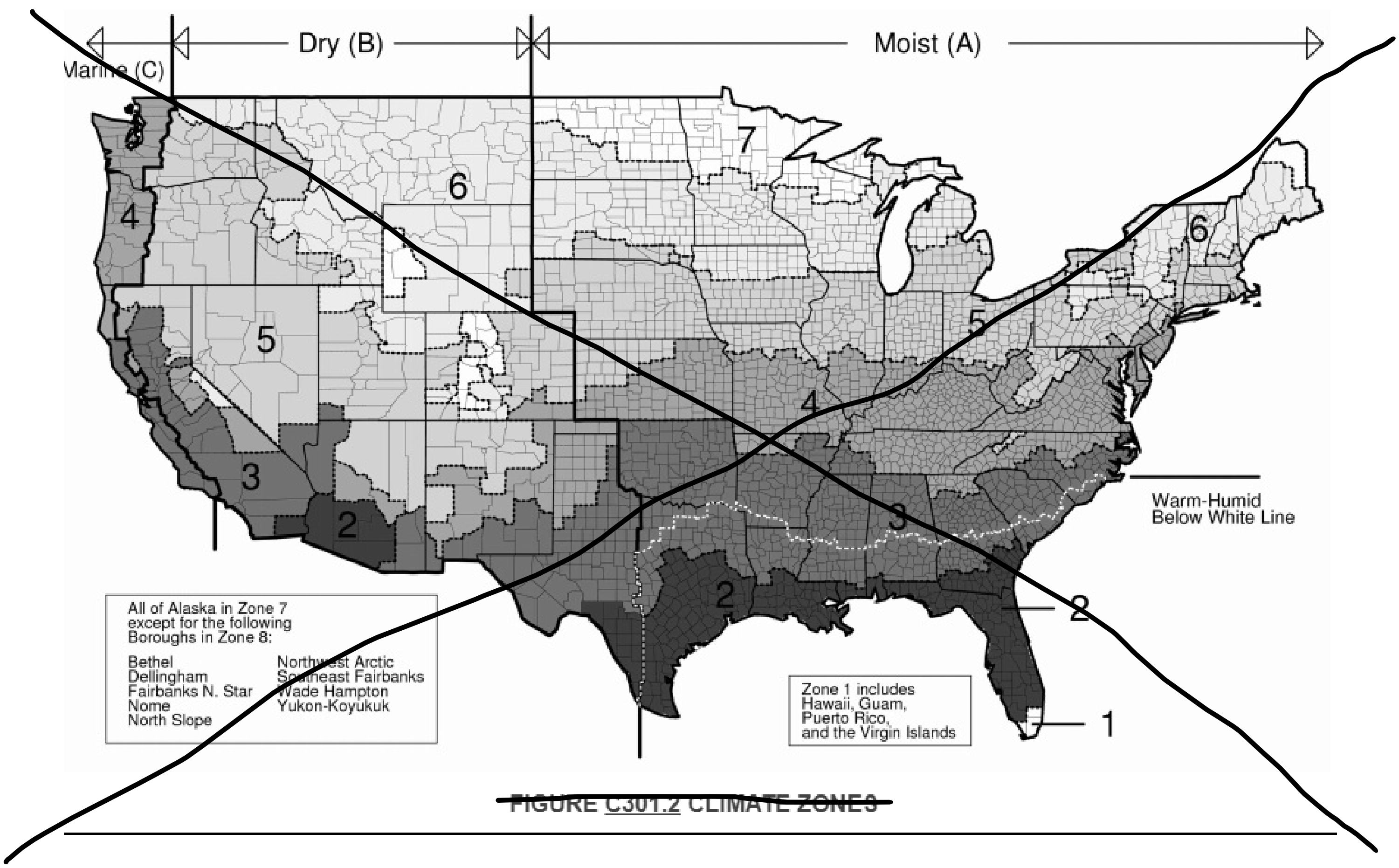
US STATES

NORTH CAROLINA	4A Chatham	3A Greene	5A Mitchell	3A Sampson
	4A Cherokee	4A Guilford	3A Montgomery	3A Scotland
4A Alamance	3A Chowan	4A Halifax	3A Moore	3A Stanly
4A Alexander	4A Clay	4A Harnett	4A Nash	4A Stokes
5A Alleghany	4A Cleveland	4A Haywood	3A New Hanover*	4A Surry
3A Anson	3A Columbus*	4A Henderson	4A Northampton	4A Swain
5A Ashe	3A Craven	4A Hertford	3A Onslow*	4A Transylvania
5A Avery	3A Cumberland	3A Hoke	4A Orange	3A Tyrrell
3A Beaufort	3A Currituck	3A Hyde	3A Pamlico	3A Union
4A Bertie	3A Dare	4A Iredell	3A Pasquotank	4A Vance
3A Bladen	3A Davidson	4A Jackson	3A Pender*	4A Wake
3A Brunswick*	4A Davie	3A Johnston	3A Perquimans	4A Warren
4A Buncombe	3A Duplin	3A Jones	4A Person	3A Washington
4A Burke	4A Durham	4A Lee	3A Pitt	5A Watauga
3A Cabarrus	3A Edgecombe	3A Lenoir	4A Polk	3A Wayne
4A Caldwell	4A Forsyth	4A Lincoln	3A Randolph	4A Wilkes
3A Camden	4A Franklin	4A Macon	3A Richmond	3A Wilson
3A Carteret*	3A Gaston	4A Madison	3A Robeson	4A Yadkin
4A Caswell	4A Gates	3A Martin	4A Rockingham	5A Yancey
4A Catawba	4A Graham	4A McDowell	3A Rowan	
	4A Granville	3A Mecklenburg	4A Rutherford	



~~Warm and Humid Counties are below the dashed white line~~

~~FIGURE C301.1 NORTH CAROLINA CLIMATE ZONES~~



~~FIGURE C301.2 CLIMATE ZONES~~

TABLE C301.1

NORTH CAROLINA CLIMATE ZONES, MOISTURE REGIMES, AND WARM-HUMID DESIGNATIONS BY COUNTY

a. Key: A – Moist, B – Dry, C – Marine. Absence of moisture designation indicates moisture regime is irrelevant. Asterisk (*) indicates a Warm Humid location.

NORTH CAROLINA
3A Alamance
3A Alexander
5A Alleghany
3A Anson
5A Ashe
5A Avery
3A Beaufort
3A Bertie
3A Bladen
3A Brunswick*
4A Buncombe
4A Burke
3A Cabarrus
4A Caldwell
3A Camden
3A Carteret*
3A Caswell
3A Catawba
3A Chatham
3A Cherokee
3A Chowan
3A Clay
3A Cleveland
3A Columbus*
3A Craven
3A Cumberland
3A Currituck
3A Dare
3A Davidson
3A Davie

3A Duplin
3A Durham
3A Edgecombe
3A Forsyth
3A Franklin
3A Gaston
3A Gates
4A Graham
3A Granville
3A Greene
3A Guilford
3A Halifax
~~**US STATES—continued**~~
~~**NORTH CAROLINA** *(continued)*~~
3A Harnett
4A Haywood
4A Henderson
3A Hertford
3A Hoke
3A Hyde
3A Iredell
4A Jackson
3A Johnston
3A Jones
3A Lee
3A Lenoir
3A Lincoln
4A Macon
4A Madison
3A Martin
4A McDowell
3A Mecklenburg
4A Mitchell
3A Montgomery
3A Moore

3A Nash
3A New Hanover*
3A Northampton
3A Onslow*
3A Orange
3A Pamlico
3A Pasquotank
3A Pender*
3A Perquimans
3A Person
3A Pitt
3A Polk
3A Randolph
3A Richmond
3A Robeson
3A Rockingham
3A Rowan
3A Rutherford
3A Sampson
3A Scotland
3A Stanly
4A Stokes
4A Surry
4A Swain
4A Transylvania
3A Tyrrell
3A Union
3A Vance
3A Wake
3A Warren
3A Washington
5A Watauga
3A Wayne
4A Wilkes

3A Wilson
4A Yadkin
5A Yancey

C301.3 ~~International climate zones.~~Climate zone definitions. ~~Deleted. Note: Table C301.3(1) and Table C301.3(2) contain no NC requirements but are retained for information only.~~To determine the climate zones for locations not listed in this code, use the following information to determine climate zone numbers and letters in accordance with Items 1 through 5.

1. Determine the thermal climate zone, 0 through 8, from Table C301.3 using the heating (HDD) and cooling degree-days (CDD) for the location.
2. Determine the moisture zone (Marine, Dry or Humid) in accordance with Items 2.1 through 2.3.
   - 2.1. If monthly average temperature and precipitation data are available, use the Marine, Dry and Humid definitions to determine the moisture zone (C, B or A).
   - 2.2. If annual average temperature information (including degree-days) and annual precipitation (i.e., annual mean) are available, use Items 2.2.1 through 2.2.3 to determine the moisture zone. If the moisture zone is not Marine, then use the Dry definition to determine whether Dry or Humid.
     - 2.2.1. If thermal climate zone is 3 and CDD50°F ≤ 4,500 (CDD10°C ≤ 2500), climate zone is Marine (3C).
     - 2.2.2. If thermal climate zone is 4 and CDD50°F ≤ 2,700 (CDD10°C ≤ 1500), climate zone is Marine (4C).
     - 2.2.3. If thermal climate zone is 5 and CDD50°F ≤ 1,800 (CDD10°C ≤ 1000), climate zone is Marine (5C).
   - 2.3. If only degree-day information is available, use Items 2.3.1 through 2.3.3 to determine the moisture zone. If the moisture zone is not Marine, then it is not possible to assign Humid or Dry moisture zone for this location.
     - 2.3.1. If thermal climate zone is 3 and CDD50°F ≤ 4,500 (CDD10°C ≤ 2500), climate zone is Marine (3C).
     - 2.3.2. If thermal climate zone is 4 and CDD50°F ≤ 2,700 (CDD10°C ≤ 1500), climate zone is Marine (4C).
     - 2.3.3. If thermal climate zone is 5 and CDD50°F ≤ 1,800 (CDD10°C ≤ 1000), climate zone is Marine (5C).
3. Marine (C) Zone definition: Locations meeting all the criteria in Items 3.1 through 3.4.
   - 3.1. Mean temperature of coldest month between 27°F (-3°C) and 65°F (18°C).
   - 3.2. Warmest month mean < 72°F (22°C).
   - 3.3. Not fewer than four months with mean temperatures over 50°F (10°C).
   - 3.4. Dry season in summer. The month with the heaviest precipitation in the cold season has at least three times as much precipitation as the month with the least precipitation in the rest of the year. The cold season is October through March in the Northern Hemisphere and April through September in the Southern Hemisphere.
4. Dry (B) definition: Locations meeting the criteria in Items 4.1 through 4.4.
   - 4.1. Not Marine (C).
   - 4.2. If 70 percent or more of the precipitation, *P*, occurs during the high sun period, defined as April through September in the Northern Hemisphere and October through March in the Southern Hemisphere, then the dry/humid threshold is in accordance with Equation 3-1.

     $P < 0.44 \times (T - 7)$
     $[P < 20.0 \times (T + 14)$ in SI units$]$

     (Equation 3-1)

     where:
     P = Annual precipitation, inches (mm).
     T = Annual mean temperature, °F (°C).

   - 4.3. If between 30 and 70 percent of the precipitation, *P*, occurs during the high sun period, defined as April through September in the Northern Hemisphere and October through March in the Southern Hemisphere, then the dry/humid threshold is in accordance with Equation 3-2.

$P < 0.44 \times (T - 19.5)$
$[P < 20.0 \times (T + 7)$ in SI units]

(Equation 3-2)

where:
P = Annual precipitation, inches (mm).
T = Annual mean temperature, °F (°C).

4.4. If 30 percent or less of the precipitation, P, occurs during the high sun period, defined as April through September in the Northern Hemisphere and October through March in the Southern Hemisphere, then the dry/humid threshold is in accordance with Equation 3-3.

$P < 0.44 \times (T - 32)$
$[P < 20.0 \times T$ in SI units]

(Equation 3-3)

where:
P = Annual precipitation, inches (mm).
T = Annual mean temperature, °F (°C).

5. Humid (A) definition: Locations that are not Marine (C) or Dry (B).

~~TABLE C301.3(1) INTERNATIONAL CLIMATE ZONE DEFINITIONS~~

MAJOR CLIMATE TYPE DEFINITIONS
Marine (C) Definition—Locations meeting all four criteria: 1. Mean temperature of coldest month between -3°C (27°F) and 18°C (65°F). 2. Warmest month mean < 22°C (72°F). 3. At least four months with mean temperatures over 10°C (50°F). 4. Dry season in summer. The month with the heaviest precipitation in the cold season has at least three times as much precipitation as the month with the least precipitation in the rest of the year. The cold season is October through March in the Northern Hemisphere and April through September in the Southern Hemisphere.
Dry (B) Definition—Locations meeting the following criteria: Not marine and $P_{in} < 0.44 \times (TF - 19.5)$ [$P_{cm} < 2.0 \times (TC + 7)$ in SI units] where: P_{in} = Annual precipitation in inches (cm) T = Annual mean temperature in °F (°C)
Moist (A) Definition—Locations that are not marine and not dry.
Warm-humid Definition—Moist (A) locations where either of the following wet-bulb temperature conditions shall occur during the warmest six consecutive months of the year: 1. 67°F (19.4°C) or higher for 3,000 or more hours; or 2. 73°F (22.8°C) or higher for 1,500 or more hours.

For SI: °C = [(°F)-32]/1.8, 1 inch = 2.54 cm.

~~TABLE C301.3(2) INTERNATIONAL CLIMATE ZONE DEFINITIONS~~

ZONE NUMBER	THERMAL CRITERIA	
	IP Units	SI Units
1	9000 < CDD50°F	5000 < CDD10°C
2	6300 < CDD50°F ≤ 9000	3500 < CDD10°C ≤ 5000
3A and 3B	4500 < CDD50°F ≤ 6300 AND HDD65°F ≤ 5400	2500 < CDD10°C ≤ 3500 AND HDD18°C ≤ 3000
4 A and 4B	CDD50°F ≤ 4500 AND HDD65°F ≤ 5400	CDD10°C ≤ 2500 AND HDD18°C ≤ 3000
3C	HDD65°F ≤ 3600	HDD18°C ≤ 2000
4C	3600 < HDD65°F ≤ 5400	2000 < HDD18°C ≤ 3000
5	5400 < HDD65°F ≤ 7200	3000 < HDD18°C ≤ 4000
6	7200 < HDD65°F ≤ 9000	4000 < HDD18°C ≤ 5000
7	9000 < HDD65°F ≤ 12600	5000 < HDD18°C ≤ 7000
8	12600 < HDD65°F	7000 < HDD18°C

For SI: °C = [(°F)-32]/1.8.

TABLE C301.3
THERMAL CLIMATE ZONE DEFINITIONS

ZONE NUMBER	THERMAL CRITERIA	
	IP Units	SI Units
0	10,800 < CDD50°F	6000 < CDD10°C
1	9,000 < CDD50°F < 10,800	5000 < CDD10°C < 6000
2	6,300 < CDD50°F ≤ 9,000	3500 < CDD10°C ≤ 5000
3	CDD50°F ≤ 6,300 AND HDD65°F ≤ 3,600	CDD10°C < 3500 AND HDD18°C ≤ 2000
4	CDD50°F ≤ 6,300 AND 3,600 < HDD65°F ≤ 5,400	CDD10°C < 3500 AND 2000 < HDD18°C ≤ 3000
5	CDD50°F < 6,300 AND 5,400 < HDD65°F ≤ 7,200	CDD10°C < 3500 AND 3000 < HDD18°C ≤ 4000
6	7,200 < HDD65°F ≤ 9,000	4000 < HDD18°C ≤ 5000
7	9,000 < HDD65°F ≤ 12,600	5000 < HDD18°C ≤ 7000
8	12,600 < HDD65°F	7000 < HDD18°C

For SI: °C = [(°F) – 32]/1.8.

C301.4 Tropical climate region. Deleted.

SECTION C302
DESIGN CONDITIONS

C302.1 Interior design conditions. The interior design temperatures used for heating and cooling load calculations shall be a maximum of 72°F (22°C) for heating and minimum of 75°F (24°C) for cooling.

SECTION C303
MATERIALS, SYSTEMS AND EQUIPMENT

C303.1 Identification. Materials, systems and equipment shall be identified in a manner that will allow a determination of compliance with the applicable provisions of this code.

C303.1.1 Building thermal envelope insulation. An *R*-value identification mark shall be applied by the manufacturer to each piece of *building thermal envelope* insulation 12 inches (305 mm) or greater in width. ~~Alternately,~~Alternatively, the insulation installers shall provide a certification listing the type, manufacturer and *R*-value of insulation installed in each element of the *building thermal envelope*. For ~~blown~~blown-in or sprayed ~~insulation (fiberglass and cellulose),~~ fiberglass and cellulose insulation, the initial installed thickness, settled thickness, settled *R*-value, installed density, coverage area and number of bags installed shall be indicated on the certification. For sprayed polyurethane foam (SPF) insulation, the installed thickness of the areas covered and *R*-value of installed thickness shall be indicated on the certification. For insulated siding, the *R*-value shall be labeled on the product's package and shall be indicated on the certification. The insulation installer shall sign, date and post the certification in a conspicuous location on the job site.

Exception: For roof insulation installed above the deck, the *R*-value shall be labeled as required by the material standards specified in Table 1508.2 of the *International Building Code.*

C303.1.1.1 ~~Blown~~Blown-in or sprayed roof/ceiling insulation. The thickness of blown-in or sprayed fiberglass and cellulose roof/ceiling insulation ~~(fiberglass and cellulose)~~ shall be written in inches (mm) on markers ~~that are installed at least one~~and one or more of such markers shall be installed for every 300 square feet (28 m^2) of attic area throughout the attic space. The markers shall be affixed to the trusses or joists and marked with the minimum initial installed thickness with numbers not less than 1 inch (25 mm) in height. Each marker shall face the attic *access* opening. Spray polyurethane foam thickness and installed *R*-value shall be indicated on certification provided by the insulation installer.

C303.1.2 Insulation mark installation. ~~Insulating mate- rials shall be installed such that the manufacturer's *R*-value mark is readily observable upon inspection.~~Insulating materials shall be installed such that the manufacturer's *R*-value mark is readily observable upon inspection. For insulation materials that are installed without an observable manufacturer's *R*-value mark, such as blown or draped products, an insulation certificate complying with Section C303.1.1 shall be left immediately after installation by the installer, in a conspicuous location within the building, to certify the installed *R*-value of the insulation material.

C303.1.3 Fenestration product rating. ~~*U*-factors of fenestration products (windows, doors and skylights) shall be determined in accordance with NFRC 100. *U*-factors shall be determined by an accredited, independent laboratory, and labeled and certified by the manufacturer. Products lacking such a labeled *U*-factor shall be assigned a default *U*-factor from Table C303.1.3(1) or C303.1.3(2). The solar heat gain coefficient (SHGC) and visible transmittance (VT) of glazed fenestration products (windows, glazed doors and skylights) shall be determined in accordance with NFRC 200 by an accredited, independent laboratory, and labeled and certified by the manufacturer. Products lacking such a labeled SHGC or VT shall be assigned a default SHGC or VT from Table C303.1.3(3).~~

~~**Exception:** When a garage door is a part of the building thermal envelope, garage door *U*-factors shall be determined in accordance with either NFRC 100 or ANSI/DASMA 105.~~

U-factors of fenestration products shall be determined as follows:

1. For windows, doors and skylights, *U*-factor ratings shall be determined in accordance with NFRC 100.
2. Where required for garage doors and rolling doors, *U*-factor ratings shall be determined in accordance with either NFRC 100 or ANSI/DASMA 105.

U-factors shall be determined by an accredited, independent laboratory, and *labeled* and certified by the manufacturer.

Products lacking such a *labeled* *U*-factor shall be assigned a default *U*-factor from Table C303.1.3(1) or Table C303.1.3(2). The *solar heat gain coefficient* (SHGC) and *visible transmittance* (VT) of glazed fenestration products (windows, glazed doors and skylights) shall be determined in accordance with NFRC 200 by an accredited, independent laboratory, and *labeled* and certified by the manufacturer. Products lacking such a *labeled* SHGC or VT shall be assigned a default SHGC or VT from Table C303.1.3(3).

TABLE C303.1.3(1)
DEFAULT GLAZED FENESTRATION *U*-FACTORS

FRAME TYPE	SINGLE PANE	DOUBLE PANE	SKYLIGHT	
			Single	Double
Metal	1.20	0.80	2.00	1.30
Metal with Thermal Break	1.10	0.65	1.90	1.10
Nonmetal or Metal Clad	0.95	0.55	1.75	1.05
Glazed Block	0.60			

TABLE C303.1.3(1)
DEFAULT GLAZED WINDOW, GLASS DOOR AND SKYLIGHT *U*-FACTORS

FRAME TYPE	WINDOW AND GLASS DOOR		SKYLIGHT	
	Single	Double	Single	Double
Metal	1.20	0.80	2.00	1.30

Metal with Thermal Break	1.10	0.65	1.90	1.10
Nonmetal or Metal Clad	0.95	0.55	1.75	1.05
Glazed Block	0.60			

TABLE C303.1.3(2)
DEFAULT DOOR
U-FACTORS

DOOR TYPE	*U*-FACTOR
Uninsulated Metal	1.20
Insulated Metal	0.60
Wood	0.50
Insulated, nonmetal edge, max 45% glazing, any glazing double pane	0.35

TABLE C303.1.3(2)
DEFAULT OPAQUE DOOR *U*-FACTORS

DOOR TYPE	OPAQUE *U*-FACTOR
Uninsulated Metal	1.20
Insulated Metal (Rolling)	0.90
Insulated Metal (Other)	0.60
Wood	0.50
Insulated, nonmetal edge, max 45% glazing, any glazing double pane	0.35

TABLE C303.1.3(3)
DEFAULT GLAZED FENESTRATION SHGC AND VT

	SINGLE GLAZED		DOUBLE GLAZED		GLAZED BLOCK
	Clear	Tinted	Clear	Tinted	
SHGC	0.8	0.7	0.7	0.6	0.6
VT	0.6	0.3	0.6	0.3	0.6

C303.1.4 Insulation product rating. The thermal resistance (*R*-value) of insulation shall be determined in accordance with the US Federal Trade Commission *R*-value rule (CFR Title 16, Part 460) in units of h × ft^2 × °F/Btu at a mean temperature of 75°F (24°C).

C303.1.4.1 Insulated siding. The thermal resistance (*R*-value) of insulated siding shall be determined in accordance with ASTM C1363. Installation for testing shall be in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

C303.2 Installation. Materials, systems and equipment shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and the *International Building Code*.

C303.2.1 Protection of exposed foundation insulation. Insulation applied to the exterior of basement walls, crawl space walls and the perimeter of slab-on-grade floors shall have ~~an~~a rigid, opaque and weather-resistant protective covering to prevent the degradation of the insulation's thermal performance. The protective covering shall cover the exposed exterior insulation and extend not less than 6 inches (153 mm) below grade.

C303.2.2 Multiple layers of continuous insulation board. Where two or more layers of continuous insulation board are used in a construction assembly, the continuous insulation boards shall be installed in accordance with Section C303.2. Where the continuous insulation board manufacturer's instructions do not address installation of two or more layers, the edge joints between each layer of continuous insulation boards shall be staggered.

~~**C303.3 Maintenance information.** Maintenance instructions shall be furnished for equipment and systems that require preventive maintenance.~~

CHAPTER 4 [CE]
COMMERCIAL ENERGY EFFICIENCY

SECTION C401
GENERAL

C401.1 Scope. The provisions in this chapter are applicable to ~~commercial~~*commercial* *buildings* and their *building sites*.

C401.2 Application. ~~Commercial buildings shall comply with one of the following:~~

1. ~~The requirements of ANSI/ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.~~
2. ~~The requirements of Sections C402 through C405. In addition, commercial buildings shall comply with Section C406 and tenant spaces shall comply with Section C406.1.1.~~
3. ~~The requirements of Sections C402.5, C403.2, C404, C405.2, C405.3, C405.5, C405.6 and C407. The building energy cost shall be equal to or less than 85 percent of the standard reference design building.~~
4. ~~COMcheck keyed to the 2018 IECC or ASHRAE 90.1 2016 shall be permitted to demonstrate compliance with this code.~~

~~Commercial buildings~~*Commercial buildings* shall comply with Section C401.2.1 or C401.2.2. *

C401.2.1 International Energy Conservation Code. ~~Commercial buildings~~*Commercial buildings* shall comply with one of the following:

1. Prescriptive Compliance. The Prescriptive Compliance option requires compliance with Sections C402 through C406 and Section C408. Dwelling units and sleeping units in Group R-2 buildings without systems serving multiple units shall be deemed to be in compliance with this chapter, provided that they comply with Section R406.

2. Total Building Performance. The Total Building Performance option requires compliance with Section C407.

Exception: Additions, alterations, repairs and changes of occupancy to existing buildings complying with Chapter 5.

C401.2.2 ASHRAE ~~90.1.~~90.1-2019. ~~Commercial buildings~~*Commercial buildings* shall comply with the requirements of ANSI/ASHRAE/IESNA ~~90.1~~90.1-2019 and approved addenda. The use of Comcheck Web for code version 90.1-2019 standard and the appropriate location shall be permitted to demonstrate compliance.

C401.3 Thermal envelope certificate. A permanent thermal envelope certificate shall be completed by an *approved* party. Such certificate shall be posted on a wall in the space where the space conditioning equipment is located, a utility room or other *approved* location. If located on an electrical panel, the certificate shall not cover or obstruct the visibility of the circuit directory label, service disconnect label or other required labels. A copy of the certificate shall also be included in the construction files for the project. The certificate shall include the following:

1. *R*-values of insulation installed in or on ceilings, roofs, walls, foundations and slabs, *basement walls*, crawl space walls and floors and ducts outside *conditioned spaces*.
2. *U*-factors and *solar heat gain coefficients* (SHGC) of fenestrations.
3. Results from any *building* envelope air leakage testing performed on the *building*.

Where there is more than one value for any component of the building envelope, the certificate shall indicate the area-weighted average value where available. If the area-weighted average is not available, the certificate shall list each value that applies to 10 percent or more of the total component area.

SECTION C402
BUILDING ENVELOPE REQUIREMENTS

C402.1 General ~~(Prescriptive).~~ *Building thermal envelope* assemblies for buildings that are intended to comply with the code on a prescriptive basis in accordance with the compliance path described in Item ~~2~~1 of Section ~~C401.2~~C401.2.1 shall comply with the following:

1. The opaque portions of the *building thermal envelope* shall comply with the specific insulation requirements of Section C402.2 and the thermal requirements of either the *R*-value-based method of Section C402.1.3; the *U*-, *C*- and *F*-factor-based method of Section C402.1.4; or the component performance alternative of Section C402.1.5.
2. Roof solar reflectance and thermal emittance shall comply with Section C402.3.
3. Fenestration in building envelope assemblies shall comply with Section C402.4.
4. Air leakage of building envelope assemblies shall comply with Section C402.5.

Alternatively, where buildings have a vertical fenestration area or skylight area exceeding that allowed in Section C402.4, the building and *building thermal envelope* shall comply with ~~Section C401.2, Item 1 or Section C401.2, Item 3.~~Item 2 of Section C401.2.1 or Section C401.2.2.

Walk-in coolers, walk-in freezers, refrigerated warehouse coolers and refrigerated warehouse freezers shall comply with Section C403.11.

C402.1.1 ~~Low-energy buildings.~~Low-energy buildings, greenhouses, and equipment buildings. The following ~~low-energy~~ buildings, or portions thereof separated from the remainder of the building by *building thermal envelope* assemblies complying with this section, shall be exempt from the *building thermal envelope* provisions of Section C402.

1. Those with a peak design rate of energy usage less than 3.4 Btu/h x ft^2 (10.7 W/m^2) or 1.0 watt per square foot (10.7 W/m^2) of floor area for space conditioning purposes.
2. Those that do not contain *conditioned space*.
3. ~~Greenhouses.~~

C402.1.1.1 Greenhouses. Greenhouse structures or areas that are mechanically heated or cooled and that comply with all of the following shall be exempt from the building envelope requirements of this code:

1. Exterior opaque envelope assemblies comply with Sections C402.2 and C402.4.5.

   Exception: Low energy greenhouses that comply with Section C402.1.1.

2. Interior partition *building thermal envelope* assemblies that separate the greenhouse from *conditioned space* comply with Sections C402.2, C402.4.3 and C402.4.5.
3. Fenestration assemblies that comply with the thermal envelope requirements in Table C402.1.1.1. The *U*-factor for a roof shall be for the roof assembly or a roof that includes the assembly and an internal curtain system.

   Exception: Unconditioned greenhouses.

TABLE C402.1.1.1
FENESTRATION THERMAL ENVELOPE MAXIMUM REQUIREMENTS

COMPONENT	*U*-FACTOR (BTU/h × ft^2 × °F)
Skylight	0.5
Vertical fenestration	0.7

~~**C402.1.2 Equipment buildings.** Deleted.~~

C402.1.1.2 Equipment buildings. Buildings that comply with the following shall be exempt from the *building thermal envelope* provisions of this code:

1. Are separate buildings with floor area not more than 1,200 square feet (110 m^2).
2. Are intended to house electric equipment with installed equipment power totaling not less than 7 watts per square foot (75 W/m^2) and not intended for human occupancy.

3. Have a heating system capacity not greater than (17,000 Btu/hr) (5 kW) and a heating thermostat setpoint that is F restricted to not more than 50°F (10°C).

4. Have an average wall and roof *U*-factor less than 0.200 in *Climate Zones* 3 through 5.

5. Comply with the roof solar reflectance and thermal emittance provisions for *Climate Zone* 3.

C402.1.2 Rooms containing fuel-burning appliances. In *Climate Zones* 3 through 5, where combustion air is supplied through openings in an exterior wall to a room or space containing a space-conditioning fuel-burning appliance, one of the following shall apply:

1. The room or space containing the appliance shall be located outside of the *building thermal envelope.*
2. The room or space containing the appliance shall be enclosed and isolated from conditioned spaces inside the *building thermal envelope*. Such rooms shall comply with all of the following:
   - 2.1 The walls, floors and ceilings that separate the enclosed room or space from conditioned spaces shall be insulated to be not less than equivalent to the insulation requirement of below-grade walls as specified in Table C402.1.3 or Table C402.1.4.
   - 2.2 The walls, floors and ceilings that separate the enclosed room or space from conditioned spaces shall be sealed in accordance with Section C402.5.1.2.
   - 2.3 The doors into the enclosed room or space shall be fully gasketed.
   - 2.4 Piping serving as part of a heating or cooling system and ducts in the enclosed room or space shall be insulated in accordance with Section C403. Service water piping shall be insulated in accordance with Section C404.
   - 2.5 Where an air duct supplying combustion air to the enclosed room or space passes through *conditioned space*, the duct shall be insulated to an R-value of not less than R-8.

Exception: Fireplaces and stoves complying with Sections 901 through 905 of the *International Mechanical Code*, and Section 2111.14 of the *International Building Code.*

C402.1.3 Insulation component *R*-value-based method. *Building thermal envelope* opaque assemblies shall comply with the requirements of Sections C402.2 and C402.4 based on the *climate zone* specified in Chapter 3. For opaque portions of the *building thermal envelope* intended to comply on an insulation component *R-value* basis, ~~the R-values for insulation in framing cavities, where required, and for continuous insulation, where required, shall be not less than that specified in Table C402.1.3, based on the climate zone specified in Chapter 3.~~the *R*-values for cavity insulation and continuous insulation shall be not less than that specified in Table C402.1.3. Where cavity insulation is installed in multiple layers, the cavity insulation *R*-values shall be summed to determine compliance with the cavity insulation *R*-value requirements. Where continuous insulation is installed in multiple layers, the continuous insulation *R*-values shall be summed to determine compliance with the continuous insulation *R*-value requirements. Cavity insulation *R*-values shall not be used to determine compliance with the continuous insulation *R*-value requirements in Table C402.1.3. ~~Commercial buildings~~*Commercial buildings* or portions of ~~commercial buildings~~*commercial buildings* enclosing *Group R* occupancies shall use the *R*-values from the "*Group R*" column of Table C402.1.3. ~~Commercial buildings~~*Commercial buildings* or portions of ~~commercial buildings~~*commercial buildings* enclosing occupancies other than *Group R* shall use the *R*-values from the "All other" column of Table C402.1.3. ~~The thermal resistance or R-value of the insulating material installed continuously within or on the below-grade exterior walls of the building envelope required in accordance with Table C402.1.3 shall extend to a depth of not less than 10 feet (3048 mm) below the outside finished ground level, or to the level of the lowest floor of the conditioned space enclosed by the below grade wall, whichever is less. Opaque swinging doors and opaque nonswinging doors shall comply with Table C402.1.3.~~

TABLE C402.1.3
OPAQUE THERMAL ENVELOPE INSULATION COMPONENT MINIMUM REQUIREMENTS, *R*-VALUE METHOD[f]

CLIMATE ZONE	3		4		5	
	All other	Group R	All other	Group R	All other	Group R
Roofs						
Insulation entirely above roof deck	R-25ci	R-25ci	R-30ci	R-30ci	R-30ci	R-30ci
Metal buildings[a, b]	R-10 + R-19 FC	R-10 + R-19 FC	R-19 + R-11 LS; R-25 + R-8 LS	R-19 + R-11 LS; R-25 + R-8 LS	R-19 + R-11 LS; R-25 + R-8 LS	R-19 + R-11 LS; R-25 + R-8 LS
Attic and other – wood framing[e]	R-38	R-38	R-42	R-42	R-42	R-42
Attic and other – steel framing[e]	R-38	R-38	R-49	R-49	R-49	R-49
Walls, above grade						
Mass	R-7.6ci	R-9.5ci	R-9.5ci	R-11.4ci	R-11.4ci	R-15ci
Metal building[b]	R-0 + R-9.8ci	R-0 + R-13ci	R-0 + R-15.8ci	R-0 + R-19ci	R-0 + R-19ci	R-0 + R-19ci
Metal framed	R-13 + R-7.5ci	R-13 + R-7.5ci	R-13 + R-7.5ci	R-13 + R-7.5ci	R-13 + R-7.5ci	R-13 + R-10ci
Wood framed and other	R-13 + R-3.8ci or R-20	R-13 + R-3.8ci or R-20	R-13 + R-3.8ci or R-20	R-13 + R-3.8ci or R-20	R-13 + R-3.8ci or R-20	R-13 + R-7.5ci or R-20 + R-3.8ci
Walls, below grade						
Below-grade wall[c]	R-7.5ci	R-7.5ci	R-7.5ci	R-10ci	R-7.5ci	R-10ci
Floors						
Mass	R-12.5ci	R-12.5ci	R-14.6ci	R-16.7ci	R-14.6ci	R-16.7ci
Joist/Framing	R-30[d]	R-30[d]	R-38	R-38	R-38	R-38
Slab-on-grade floors[c]						
Unheated slabs	NR	R-10 for 24″	R-15 for 24″	R-15 for 24″	R-15 for 24″	R-20 for 24″
Heated slabs	R-15 for 24″	R-15 for 24″	R-20 for 24″	R-20 for 48″	R-20 for 48″	R-20 for 48″
Opaque doors						
Swinging	U-0.70	U-0.50	U-0.50	U-0.50	U-0.50	U-0.50
Nonswinging	U-0.50	U-0.50	U-0.50	U-0.50	U-0.50	U-0.50

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

ci = Continuous insulation, FC = Filled Cavity, LS = Liner system, NR = No requirement.

LS = Liner system—Liner systems shall have a minimum R-3 thermal spacer block between the purlins and the metal roof panels as required, unless compliance is shown by overall assembly *U*-factor.

FC = Filled cavity—Filled cavity assemblies shall have a minimum R-5 thermal spacer block between the purlins and the metal roof panels as required, unless compliance is shown by the overall assembly *U*-factor.

a. When using *R*-value compliance method, a thermal spacer block is required, otherwise use the *U*-factor compliance method. [See Table C402.1.3(1)].
b. Assembly descriptions can be found in Table C402.1.3(1).
c. For monolithic slabs, insulation shall be applied downward to the bottom of the footing. For floating slabs, insulation shall extend to the bottom of the foundation wall or 24 inches, whichever is less.
d. Steel floor joist systems shall to be R-38.
e. R-30 shall be deemed to satisfy the requirement for R-38 wherever the full height of uncompressed R-30 insulation extends over the wall top plate at the eaves. Similarly, R-38 shall be deemed to satisfy the requirement for R-42 or R-49 wherever the full height of uncompressed R-38 insulation extends over the wall top plate at the eaves.
f. Assembly descriptions can be found in ANSI/ASHRAE/IESNA Appendix A.

TABLE C402.1.3

OPAQUE THERMAL ENVELOPE INSULATION COMPONENT MINIMUM REQUIREMENTS, *R*-VALUE METHOD[a]

CLIMATE ZONE					3		4		5							
					All other	Group R	All other	Group R	All other	Group R						
Roofs																
Insulation entirely above roof deck					R-25ci	R-25ci	R-30ci	R-30ci	R-30ci	R-30ci						
Metal buildings[b]					R-19 + R-11 LS	R-19 + R-11 LS	R-19 + R-11 LS	R-19 + R-11 LS	R-19 + R-11 LS	R-19 + R-11 LS						
Attic and other					R-38	R-38	R-49	R-49	R-49	R-49						
Walls, above grade																
Mass[f]					R-7.6ci	R-9.5ci	R-9.5ci	R-11.4ci	R-11.4ci	R-15ci						

Metal building					R-13 + R-6.5ci	R-13 + R-13ci	R-13 + R-13ci	R-13 + R-14ci	R-13 + R-14ci	R-13 + R-14ci						
Metal framed					R-13 + R-7.5ci	R-13 + R-7.5ci	R-13 + R-7.5ci	R-13 + R-7.5ci	R-13 + R-10ci	R-13 + R-10ci						
Wood framed and other					R-13 + R-3.8ci or R-20	R-13 + R-3.8ci or R-20	R-13 + R-3.8ci or R-20	R-13 + R-3.8ci or R-20	R-13 + R-7.5ci or R20 + R3.8ci	R-13 + R-7.5ci or R-20 + R-3.8ci						
Walls, below grade																
Below-grade wall[d]					R-7.5ci	R-7.5ci	R-7.5ci	R-10ci	R-7.5ci	R-10ci						
Floors																
Mass[e]					R-12.5ci	R-12.5ci	R-14.6ci	R-16.7ci	R-14.6ci	R-16.7ci						
Joist/framing					R-30[c]	R-30[c]	R-38	R-38	R-38	R-38						
Slab-on-grade floors																
Unheated slabs					NR	R-10 for 24″ below	R-15 for 24″ below	R-15 for 24″ below	R-15 for 24″ below	R-20 for 24″ below						
Heated slabs[g]					R-10 for 24″ below+ R-5 full slab	R-10 for 24″ below+ R-5 full slab	R-15 for 24″ below+ R-5 full slab	R-15 for 24″ below+ R-5 full slab	R-15 for 36″ below+ R-5 full slab	R-15 for 36″ below+ R-5 full slab						

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 4.88 kg/m^2, 1 pound per cubic foot = 16 kg/m^3.
ci = Continuous Insulation, NR = No Requirement, LS = Liner System.
a. Assembly descriptions can be found in ANSI/ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1 Appendix A.
b. Where using *R*-value compliance method, a thermal spacer block shall be provided, otherwise use the *U*-factor compliance method in Table C402.1.4.
c. Steel floor joist systems shall be insulated to R-38.
d. Where heated slabs are below grade, below-grade walls shall comply with the exterior insulation requirements for heated slabs.
e. "Mass floors" shall be in accordance with Section C402.2.3.
f. "Mass walls" shall be in accordance with Section C402.2.2.
g. The first value is for perimeter insulation and the second value is for full, under-slab insulation. Perimeter insulation is not required to extend below the bottom of the slab.

~~TABLE C402.1.3(1) BUILDING ENVELOPE REQUIREMENTS—OPAQUE ASSEMBLIES~~

ROOFS	DESCRIPTION
R-10 + R-19 FC	Filled cavity fiberglass insulation. The first rated *R*-value of insulation represents faced or unfaced insulation installed between the purlins. The second rated *R*-value of insulation represents unfaced insulation installed above the first layer, perpendicular to the purlins and compressed when the metal roof panels are attached. A supporting structure retains the bottom of the first layer at the prescribed depth required for the full thickness of the insulation. A minimum R-5 thermal spacer block between the purlins and the metal roof panels is required, unless compliance is shown by the overall assembly *U*-factor.
R-19 + R11 LS R-25 + R-8 LS	Liner System with minimum R-3 thermal spacer block. A continuous membrane is installed below the purlins and uninterrupted by framing members. Uncompressed, unfaced insulations rests on top of the membrane between the purlins. For multilayer installations, the last rated *R*-value of insulation is for unfaced insulation draped over purlins and then compressed when the metal roof panels are attached. A minimum R-3 thermal spacer block between the purlins and the metal roof panels is required unless compliance is shown by overall *U*-factor.
Walls	
R-0 + R-9.8ci R-0 + R-13ci R-0 + R-15.8ci R-0 + R-19ci	The first rated *R*-value of insulation is for insulation compressed between metal wall panels and the steel structure. For assemblies with continuous insulation, the continuous insulation is installed on the inside or the outside of the girts, uncompressed and uninterrupted by framing members.

C402.1.4 Assembly *U*-factor, *C*-factor or *F*-factor-based method. *Building thermal envelope* opaque assemblies shall meet the requirements of Sections C402.2 and C402.4 based on the climate zone specified in Chapter 3. *Building thermal envelope* opaque assemblies intended to comply on an assembly *U*-, *C*- or *F*-factor basis shall have a *U*-, *C*- or *F*-factor not greater than that specified in Table C402.1.4. ~~Commercial buildings~~*Commercial buildings* or portions of ~~commercial buildings~~*commercial buildings* enclosing *Group R* occupancies shall use the *U*-, *C*- or *F*-factor from the "*Group R*" column of Table C402.1.4. ~~Commercial buildings~~*Commercial buildings* or portions of ~~commercial buildings~~*commercial buildings* enclosing occupancies other than *Group R* shall use the *U*-, *C*- or *F*-factor from the "All other" column of Table C402.1.4. ~~The *C*-factor for the below-grade exterior walls of the building envelope, as required in accordance with Table C402.1.4, shall extend to a depth of 10 feet (3048 mm) below the outside finished ground level, or to the level of the lowest floor, whichever is less. Opaque swinging doors and opaque nonswinging doors shall comply with Table C402.1.3.~~

TABLE C402.1.4
OPAQUE THERMAL ENVELOPE ASSEMBLY MAXIMUM REQUIREMENTS, *U*-FACTOR METHOD[a, b]

CLIMATE ZONE	3		4		5	
	All other	Group R	All other	Group R	All other	Group R
Roofs						
Insulation entirely above deck	U-0.039	U-0.039	U-0.032	U-0.032	U-0.032	U-0.032
Metal buildings	U-0.041	U-0.041	U-0.037	U-0.037	U-0.037	U-0.037
Attic and other – wood framing	U-0.027	U-0.027	U-0.024	U-0.024	U-0.024	U-0.024
Attic and other – steel framing	U-0.035	U-0.035	U-0.029	U-0.029	U-0.029	U-0.029
Walls, above grade						
Mass	U-0.123	U-0.104	U-0.104	U-0.090	U-0.090	U-0.071
Metal building	U-0.094	U-0.072	U-0.060	U-0.050	U-0.050	U-0.050
Metal framed	U-0.064	U-0.064	U-0.064	U-0.064	U-0.064	U-0.055
Wood framed and other	U-0.064	U-0.064	U-0.064	U-0.064	U-0.064	U-0.051
Walls, below grade						
Below-grade wall[c]	C-0.119	C-0.119	C-0.119	C-0.092	C-0.119	C-0.092
Floors						
Mass	U-0.064	U-0.064	U-0.057	U-0.051	U-0.057	U-0.051
Joist/framing – wood	U-0.033	U-0.033	U-0.026	U-0.026	U-0.026	U-0.026
Joist/framing – steel	U-0.032	U-0.032	U-0.032	U-0.032	U-0.032	U-0.032
Slab-on-grade floors						
Unheated slabs	F-0.730[d]	F-0.540	F-0.520	F-0.520	F-0.520	F-0.510
Heated slabs[e]	F-0.860	F-0.860	F-0.843	F-0.688	F-0.688	F-0.688

a. Use of opaque assembly *U*-factors, *C*-factors, and *F*-factors from ANSI/ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1 Appendix A shall be permitted, provided the construction, excluding the cladding system on walls, complies with the appropriate construction details from ANSI/ASHRAE/ISNEA 90.1 Appendix A.
b. Opaque assembly *U*-factors based on designs tested in accordance with ASTM C1363 shall be permitted. The *R*-value of continuous insulation shall be permitted to be added to or subtracted from the original tested design.
c. Where heated slabs are below grade, below-grade walls shall comply with the *F*-factor requirements for heated slabs.
d. These *C*-, *F*- and *U*-factors are based on assemblies that are not required to contain insulation.
e. Evidence of compliance with the *F*-factors indicated in the table for heated slabs shall be demonstrated by the application of the unheated slab *F*-factors and *R*-values derived from ASHRAE 90.1 Appendix A.

TABLE C402.1.4
OPAQUE THERMAL ENVELOPE ASSEMBLY MAXIMUM REQUIREMENTS, *U*-FACTOR METHOD[a, b]

CLIMATE ZONE					3		4		5		6		7		8	
					All other	Group R	All other	Group R	All other	Group R						
Roofs																
Insulation entirely above roof deck					U-0.039	U-0.039	U-0.032	U-0.032	U-0.032	U-0.032						
Metal buildings					U-0.035	U-0.035	U-0.035	U-0.035	U-0.035	U-0.035						
Attic and other					U-0.027	U-0.027	U-0.021	U-0.021	U-0.021	U-0.021						
Walls, above grade																
Mass[g]					U-0.123	U-0.104	U-0.104	U-0.090	U-0.090	U-0.071						
Metal building					U-0.079	U-0.052	U-0.052	U-0.050	U-0.050	U-0.050						

Metal framed					U-0.064	U-0.064	U-0.064	U-0.064	U-0.055	U-0.055						
Wood framed and other[c]					U-0.064	U-0.064	U-0.064	U-0.064	U-0.051	U-0.051						
Walls, below grade																
Below-grade wall[c]					C-0.119	C-0.119	C-0.119	C-0.092	C-0.119	C-0.092						
Floors																
Mass[d]					U-0.064	U-0.064	U-0.057	U-0.051	U-0.057	U-0.051						
Joist/framing					U-0.032	U-0.032	U-0.026	U-0.026	U-0.026	U-0.026						
Slab-on-grade floors																
Unheated slabs					F-0.73[e]	F-0.54	F-0.52	F-0.52	F-0.52	F-0.51						
Heated slabs[f]					F-0.66	F-0.66	F-0.62	F-0.62	F-0.62	F-0.62						
Opaque doors																
Nonswinging door					U-0.31	U-0.31	U-0.31	U-0.31	U-0.31	U-0.31						
Swinging door[h]					U-0.37	U-0.37	U-0.37	U-0.37	U-0.37	U-0.37						
Garage door < 14% glazing[i]					U-0.31	U-0.31	U-0.31	U-0.31	U-0.31	U-0.31						

For SI: 1 pound per square foot = 4.88 kg/m^2, 1 pound per cubic foot = 16 kg/m^3.
ci = Continuous Insulation, NR = No Requirement, LS = Liner System.
a. Where assembly *U*-factors, *C*-factors and *F*-factors are established in ANSI/ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1 Appendix A, such opaque assemblies shall be a compliance alternative where those values meet the criteria of this table, and provided that the construction, excluding the cladding system on walls, complies with the appropriate construction details from ANSI/ASHRAE/ISNEA 90.1 Appendix A.
b. Where *U*-factors have been established by testing in accordance with ASTM C1363, such opaque assemblies shall be a compliance alternative where those values meet the criteria of this table. The *R*-value of continuous insulation shall be permitted to be added to or subtracted from the original tested design.
c. Where heated slabs are below grade, below-grade walls shall comply with the *U*-factor requirements for above-grade mass walls.
d. "Mass floors" shall be in accordance with Section C402.2.3.
e. Not used.
f. The first value is for perimeter insulation and the second value is for full, under-slab insulation.
g. "Mass walls" shall be in accordance with Section C402.2.2.
h. Swinging door *U*-factors shall be determined in accordance with NFRC-100.
i. Garage doors having a single row of fenestration shall have an assembly *U*-factor less than or equal to 0.44 in Climate Zones 0 through 6 and less than or equal to 0.36 in Climate Zones 7 and 8, provided that the fenestration area is not less than 14 percent and not more than 25 percent of the total door area.

C402.1.4.1 Roof/ceiling assembly. The maximum roof/ceiling assembly *U*-factor shall not exceed that specified in Table C402.1.4 based on construction materials used in the roof/ceiling assembly.

C402.1.4.1.1 Tapered, above-deck insulation based on thickness. Where used as a component of a maximum roof/ceiling assembly *U*-factor calculation, the sloped roof insulation *R*-value contribution to that calculation shall use the average thickness in inches (mm) along with the material *R*-value-per-inch (per-mm) solely for *U*-factor compliance as prescribed in Section C402.1.4.

C402.1.4.1.2 Suspended ceilings. Insulation installed on suspended ceilings having removable ceiling tiles shall not be considered part of the assembly *U*-factor of the roof/ceiling construction.

C402.1.4.1.3 Joints staggered. Continuous insulation board shall be installed in not less than two layers, and the edge joints between each layer of insulation shall be staggered, except where insulation tapers to the roof deck at a gutter edge, roof drain or scupper.

~~C402.1.4.1~~C402.1.4.2 Thermal resistance of cold-formed steel walls. *U*-factors of walls with cold-formed steel studs shall be permitted to be determined in accordance with Equation 4-1.

$U = 1/[R_s + (ER)]$ **(Equation 4-1)**

where:

R_s = The cumulative *R*-value of the wall components along the path of heat transfer, excluding the *cavity insulation* and steel studs.

ER = The effective *R*-value of the *cavity insulation* with steel ~~studs.~~studs as specified in Table C402.1.4.2.

TABLE ~~C402.1.4.1~~C402.1.4.2

EFFECTIVE *R*-VALUES FOR STEEL STUD WALL ASSEMBLIES

NOMINAL STUD DEPTH (inches)	SPACING OF FRAMING (inches)	CAVITY *R*-VALUE (insulation)	CORRECTION FACTOR (F_c)	EFFECTIVE *R*-VALUE (ER) (Cavity *R*-Value × F_c)
$3^1/_2$	16	13	0.46	5.98
		15	0.43	6.45
$3^1/_2$	24	13	0.55	7.15
		15	0.52	7.80
6	16	19	0.37	7.03
		21	0.35	7.35
6	24	19	0.45	8.55
		21	0.43	9.03
8	16	25	0.31	7.75
	24	25	0.38	9.50

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

C402.1.5 Component performance alternative. Building envelope values and fenestration areas determined in accordance with Equation 4-2 shall be ~~permitted in lieu of~~an alternative to compliance with the *U*-, *F*- and *C*-factors in Tables C402.1.4 and C402.4 and the maximum allowable fenestration areas in Section C402.4.1. ~~A version of~~ IECC-2021 COMcheck software with NC-specific amendments shall be permitted to demonstrate compliance. *Fenestration* shall meet the applicable SHGC requirements of Section C402.4.3.

$$A + B + C + D + E \leq \text{Zero} \qquad \textbf{(Equation 4-2)}$$

where:

A = Sum of the (UA Dif) values for each distinct assembly type of the *building thermal envelope*, other than slabs on grade and below-grade walls.

UA Dif = UA Proposed – UA Table.

UA Proposed = Proposed *U*-value × Area.

UA Table = (*U*-factor from Table C402.1.3, C402.1.4 or C402.4) × Area.

B = Sum of the (FL Dif) values for each distinct slab-on-grade perimeter condition of the *building thermal envelope*.

FL Dif = FL Proposed – FL Table.

FL Proposed = Proposed *F*-value × Perimeter length.

FL Table = (*F*-factor specified in Table C402.1.4) × Perimeter length.

C = Sum of the (CA Dif) values for each distinct *below-grade wall* assembly type of the *building thermal envelope*.

CA Dif = CA Proposed – CA Table.

CA Proposed = Proposed *C*-value × Area.

CA Table = (Maximum allowable *C*-factor specified in Table C402.1.4) × Area.

Where the proposed vertical glazing area is less than or equal to the maximum vertical glazing area allowed by Section C402.4.1, the value of D (Excess Vertical Glazing Value) shall be zero. Otherwise:

D = (DA × UV) – (DA × U Wall), but not less than zero.

DA = (Proposed Vertical Glazing Area) – (Vertical Glazing Area allowed by Section C402.4.1).

UA Wall = Sum of the (UA Proposed) values for each opaque assembly of the exterior wall.

U Wall = Area-weighted average *U*-value of all above-grade wall assemblies.

UAV = Sum of the (UA Proposed) values for each vertical glazing assembly.

UV = UAV/total vertical glazing area.

Where the proposed skylight area is less than or equal to the skylight area allowed by Section C402.4.1, the value of E (Excess Skylight Value) shall be zero. Otherwise:

E = (EA × US) – (EA × U Roof), but not less than zero.

EA = (Proposed Skylight Area) – (Allowable Skylight Area as specified in Section C402.4.1).

U Roof = Area-weighted average *U*-value of all roof assemblies.

UAS = Sum of the (UA Proposed) values for each skylight assembly.

US = UAS/total skylight area.

C402.2 Specific building thermal envelope insulation requirements. ~~(Prescriptive).~~ Insulation in *building thermal envelope* opaque assemblies shall comply with Sections C402.2.1 through ~~C402.2.6~~C402.2.7 and Table C402.1.3.

~~**C402.2.1 Multiple layers of continuous insulation board.** Where two or more layers of continuous insulation board are used in a construction assembly, the continuous insulation boards shall be installed in accordance with Section C303.2. Where the continuous insulation board manufacturer's instructions do not address installation of two or more layers, the edge joints between each layer of continuous insulation boards shall be staggered.~~

C402.2.1 Roof assembly. The minimum thermal resistance (*R*-value) of the insulating material installed either between the roof framing or continuously on the roof assembly shall be as specified in Table C402.1.3, based on construction materials used in the roof assembly.

C402.2.1.1 Tapered, above-deck insulation based on thickness. Where used as a component of a roof/ceiling assembly *R*-value calculation, the sloped roof insulation *R*-value contribution to that calculation shall use the average thickness in inches (mm) along with the material *R*-value-per-inch (per-mm) solely for *R*-value compliance as prescribed in Section 402.1.3.

C402.2.1.2 Minimum thickness, lowest point. The minimum thickness of above-deck roof insulation at its lowest point, gutter edge, roof drain or scupper, shall be not less than 1 inch (25 mm).

C402.2.1.3 Suspended ceilings. Insulation installed on suspended ceilings having removable ceiling tiles shall not be considered part of the minimum thermal resistance (*R*-value) of roof insulation in roof/ceiling construction.

C402.2.1.4 Joints staggered. Continuous insulation board shall be installed in not less than two layers and the edge joints between each layer of insulation shall be staggered, except where insulation tapers to the roof deck at a gutter edge, roof drain or scupper.

** **C402.2.1.5 Skylight curbs.** Skylight curbs shall be insulated to the level of roofs with insulation entirely above the deck or R-5, whichever is less.

** **Exception:** Unit skylight curbs included as a component of a skylight listed and labeled in accordance with NFRC 100 shall not be required to be insulated.

~~**C402.2.2 Roof assembly.** The minimum thermal resistance (*R*-value) of the insulating material installed either between the roof framing or continuously on the roof assembly shall be as specified in Table C402.1.3, based on construction materials used in the roof assembly. Skylight curbs shall be insulated to the level of roofs with insulation entirely above deck or R-5, whichever is less.~~

~~**Exceptions:**~~

~~1. Continuously insulated roof assemblies where the thickness of insulation varies 1 inch (25 mm) or less and where the area-weighted *U*-factor is equivalent to the same assembly with the *R*-value specified in Table C402.1.3.~~

~~2. Where tapered insulation is used with insulation entirely above deck, the *R*-value where the insulation thickness varies 1 inch (25 mm) or less from the minimum thickness of tapered insulation shall comply with the *R*-value specified in Table C402.1.3.~~

~~3. Unit skylight curbs included as a component of a skylight listed and labeled in accordance with NFRC 100 shall not be required to be insulated.~~

~~Insulation installed on a suspended ceiling with removable ceiling tiles shall not be considered part of the mini-mum thermal resistance of the roof insulation.~~

~~**C402.2.3 Thermal resistance of above-grade walls.**~~**C402.2.2 Above-grade walls.** The minimum thermal resistance (*R*-value) of ~~insulating~~ materials installed in the wall cavity between framing members and continuously on the walls shall be as specified in Table C402.1.3, based on framing type and construction materials used in the wall assembly. The *R*-value of integral insulation installed in concrete masonry units shall not be used in determining compliance with Table ~~C402.1.3.~~ C402.1.3 except as otherwise noted in the table. In determining compliance with Table C402.1.4, the use of the *U*-factor of concrete masonry units with integral insulation shall be permitted.

"Mass walls" ~~shall include walls:~~where used as a component in the thermal envelope of a building shall comply with one of the following:

1. ~~Weighing~~Weigh not less than 35 ~~psf~~pounds per square foot (~~170~~171 kg/m^2) of wall surface area.
2. ~~Weighing~~Weigh not less than 25 ~~psf~~pounds per square foot (~~120~~122 kg/m^2) of wall surface area where the material weight is not more than 120 pcf (1900 kg/m^3).
3. ~~Having~~Have a heat capacity exceeding 7 Btu/ft^2 × °F (144 kJ/m^2 × K).
4. ~~Having~~Have a heat capacity exceeding 5 Btu/ft^2 × °F (103 kJ/m^2 × K), where the material weight is not more than 120 pcf (1900 kg/m^3).

~~**C402.2.4**~~**C402.2.3 Floors.** The thermal properties (component *R*-values or assembly *U*-, *C*- or *F*-factors) of floor assemblies over outdoor air or unconditioned space shall be as specified in Table C402.1.3 or ~~Table~~ C402.1.4 based on the construction materials used in the floor assembly. Floor framing *cavity insulation* or structural slab insulation shall be installed to maintain permanent contact with the underside of the subfloor decking or structural slabs. ~~Mass floors shall include floors weighing not less than:~~

"Mass floors" where used as a component of the thermal envelope of a building shall provide one of the following weights:

1. 35 pounds per square foot (171 kg/m^2) of floor surface ~~area: or~~area.
2. 25 pounds per square foot (122 kg/m^2) of floor surface area where the material weight is not more than 120 pounds per cubic foot (1923 kg/m^3).

Exceptions:

1. The floor framing *cavity insulation* or structural slab insulation shall be permitted to be in contact with the top side of sheathing or continuous insulation installed on the bottom side of floor assemblies where combined with insulation that meets or exceeds the minimum *R*-value in Table C402.1.3 for "Metal framed" or "Wood framed and other" values for "Walls, above grade" and extends from the bottom to the top of all perimeter floor framing or floor assembly members.

2. Insulation applied to the underside of concrete floor slabs shall be permitted an airspace of not more than 1 inch (25 mm) where it turns up and is in contact with the underside of the floor under walls associated with the *building thermal envelope*.

C402.2.4 Slabs-on-grade. The minimum thermal resistance (*R*-value) of the insulation for unheated or heated slab-on-grade floors designed in accordance with the *R*-value method of Section C402.1.3 shall be as specified in Table C402.1.3.

C402.2.4.1 Insulation installation. Where installed, the perimeter insulation shall be placed on the outside of the foundation or on the inside of the foundation wall. The perimeter insulation shall extend downward from the top of the slab for the minimum distance shown in the table or to the top of the footing, whichever is less, or downward to not less than the bottom of the slab and then horizontally to the interior or exterior for the total distance shown in the table. Insulation extending away from the building shall be protected by pavement or by not less than 10 inches (254 mm) of soil. Where installed, full slab insulation shall be continuous under the entire area of the slab-on-grade floor, except at structural column locations and service penetrations. Insulation required at the heated slab perimeter shall not be required to extend below the bottom of the heated slab and shall be continuous with the full slab insulation.

Exception: Where the slab-on-grade floor is greater than 24 inches (61 mm) below the finished exterior grade, perimeter insulation is not required.

~~**C402.2.5 Slabs-on-grade perimeter insulation.** Where the slab on grade is in contact with the ground, the minimum thermal resistance (*R*-value) of the insulation around the perimeter of unheated or heated slab-on-grade floors designed in accordance with the *R*-value method of Section C402.1.3 shall be as specified in Table C402.1.3. The insulation shall be placed on the outside of the foundation or on the inside of the foundation wall. The insulation shall extend downward from the top of the slab for a mini- mum distance as shown in the table or to the top of the footing, whichever is less, or downward to at least the bottom of the slab and then horizontally to the interior for the total distance shown in the table.~~

~~**Exception:** Where the slab-on-grade floor is greater than 24 inches (61 mm) below the finished exterior grade, perimeter insulation is not required.~~

C402.2.5 Below-grade walls. The *C*-factor for the below-grade exterior walls shall be in accordance with Table C402.1.4. The *R*-value of the insulating material installed continuously within or on the below-grade exterior walls of the building envelope shall be in accordance with Table C402.1.3. The *C*-factor or *R*-value required shall extend to a depth of not less than 10 feet (3048 mm) below the outside finished ground level, or to the level of the lowest floor of the conditioned space enclosed by the below-grade wall, whichever is less.

C402.2.6 Insulation of radiant heating systems. *Radiant heating system* panels, and their associated components that are installed in interior or exterior assemblies, shall be insulated ~~with a minimum~~to an *R*-value of not less than R-3.5 ~~(0.62 m2/K · W)~~ on all surfaces not facing the space being heated. *Radiant heating system* panels that are installed in the *building thermal envelope* shall be separated from the exterior of the building or unconditioned or exempt spaces by not less than the *R*-value of insulation installed in the opaque assembly in which they are installed or the assembly shall comply with Section C402.1.4.

Exception: Heated slabs on grade insulated in accordance with Section ~~C402.2.5.~~C402.2.4.

~~**C402.2.7 Below-grade walls.** The minimum thermal resistance (*R*-value) of the insulating material installed in, or continuously on, the below-grade walls shall be as specified in Table C402.1.3, and shall extend to a depth of 10 feet (3048 mm) below the outside finished ground level, or to the level of the lowest floor, whichever is less.~~

C402.2.7 Airspaces. Where the *R*-value of an airspace is used for compliance in accordance with Section C402.1, the airspace shall be enclosed in an unventilated cavity constructed to minimize airflow into and out of the enclosed airspace. Airflow shall be deemed minimized where the enclosed airspace is located on the interior side of the continuous air barrier and is bounded on all sides by building components.

Exception: The thermal resistance of airspaces located on the exterior side of the continuous air barrier and adjacent to and behind the exterior wall-covering material shall be determined in accordance with ASTM C1363 modified with an airflow entering the bottom and exiting the top of the airspace at an air movement rate of not less than 70 mm/second.

C402.3 Roof solar reflectance and thermal emittance. Low-sloped roofs directly above cooled conditioned spaces in *Climate Zone* 3 shall comply with one or more of the options in Table C402.3.

Exceptions: The following roofs and portions of roofs are exempt from the requirements of Table C402.3:

1. Portions of the roof that include or are covered by the following:

   1.1. Photovoltaic systems or components.

1.2. Solar air or water-heating systems or components.

1.3. ~~Roof gardens or landscaped roofs.~~Vegetative roofs or landscaped roofs.

1.4. Above-roof decks or walkways.

1.5. Skylights.

1.6. HVAC systems and components, and other opaque objects mounted above the roof.

2. Portions of the roof shaded during the peak sun angle on the summer solstice by permanent features of the building or by permanent features of adjacent buildings.

3. Portions of roofs that are ballasted with a minimum stone ballast of 17 pounds per square foot (74 kg/m^2) or 23 psf (117 kg/m^2) pavers.

4. Roofs where not less than 75 percent of the roof area complies with one or more of the exceptions to this section.

~~5. Metal building roofs.~~

TABLE C402.3

MINIMUM ROOF REFLECTANCE AND EMITTANCE OPTIONS[a]

Three-year-aged solar reflectance ~~reflectance[b]~~index[b] of ~~0.55~~55 and 3-year aged thermal emittance[c] of 0.75
Three-year-aged solar reflectance index[d] of 64

a. The use of area-weighted averages to comply with these requirements shall be permitted. Materials lacking 3-year-aged tested values for either solar reflectance or thermal emittance shall be assigned both a 3-year-aged solar reflectance in accordance with Section C402.3.1 and a 3-year-aged thermal emittance of 0.90.

b. Aged solar reflectance tested in accordance with ASTM C1549, ASTM E903 or ASTM E1918 or ~~CRRC-1 Standard.~~CRRC-S100.

c. Aged thermal emittance tested in accordance with ASTM C1371 or ASTM E408 or ~~CRRC-1 Standard.~~CRRC-S100.

d. Solar reflectance index (SRI) shall be determined in accordance with ASTM E1980 using a convection coefficient of 2.1 Btu/h × ft^2 × °F (12 W/m^2 × K). Calculation of aged SRI shall be based on aged tested values of solar reflectance and thermal emittance.

C402.3.1 Aged roof solar reflectance. Where an aged solar reflectance required by Section C402.3 is not available, it shall be determined in accordance with Equation 4-3.

$$R_{aged} = [0.2 + 0.7(R_{initial} - 0.2)] \qquad \textbf{(Equation 4-3)}$$

where:

R_{aged} = The aged solar reflectance.

$R_{initial}$ = The initial solar reflectance determined in accordance with ~~CRRC-1.~~CRRC-S100 Standard.

C402.4 ~~Fenestration (Prescriptive).~~Fenestration. Fenestration shall comply with Sections ~~C402.4~~C402.4.1 through ~~C402.4.4~~C402.4.5 and Table C402.4. Daylight responsive controls shall comply with this section and Section C405.2.4.

TABLE C402.4
BUILDING ENVELOPE FENESTRATION MAXIMUM *U*-FACTOR AND SHGC REQUIREMENTS

CLIMATE ZONE	3	4	5
Vertical Fenestration (30% maximum of above-grade wall)			
***U*-factor**			
Framing materials other than metal with or without metal reinforcement or cladding			
U-Factor	0.32	0.32	0.30
Metal framing with or without thermal break			
Curtain Wall/Storefront *U*-Factor	0.45	0.45	0.38
Entrance Door *U*-Factor	0.77	0.77	0.77
All Other *U*-Factor[a]	0.45	0.45	0.45
SHGC—All Frame Types			
SHGC: PF < 0.25	0.25	0.25	0.40
SHGC: 0.25 ≤ PF < 0.5	0.33	0.33	NR
SHGC: PF ≥ 0.5	0.40	0.40	NR
Skylights (3% maximum)			
U-factor	0.60	0.60	0.60
SHGC	0.35	0.35	0.40

SHGC = Solar Heat Gain Coefficient. (approximately equal to 0.87 times the Shading Coefficient).
NR = No requirement, PF = Projection factor. (See Section C402.4.3).
a. All others include operable windows, fixed and nonentrance doors.

TABLE C402.4
BUILDING ENVELOPE FENESTRATION MAXIMUM *U*-FACTOR AND SHGC[a] REQUIREMENTS

CLIMATE ZONE			3	4	5			
Vertical fenestration								
***U*-factor**								
Fixed fenestration			0.42	0.36	0.36			
Operable fenestration			0.54	0.45	0.45			
Entrance doors			0.68	0.63	0.63			
SHGC								
Fixed fenestration			0.25	0.36	0.38			
Operable fenestration			0.23	0.33	0.33			
Skylights								
U-factor			0.55	0.50	0.50			
SHGC			0.30	0.40	0.40			

[a] C402.4.1.3 shall apply

C402.4.1 Maximum area. The vertical fenestration ~~area (not including opaque doors and opaque spandrel panels)~~area, not including opaque doors and opaque spandrel panels, shall be not ~~be~~ greater than 30 percent of the gross above-grade wall area. The skylight area shall be not greater than 3 percent of the gross roof area.

C402.4.1.1 Increased vertical fenestration area with daylight responsive controls. Deleted.

C402.4.1.2 Increased skylight area with daylight responsive controls. Deleted.

C402.4.1.3 Maximum Area by Orientation Vertical fenestration shall comply with not less than one of the following:

1. $\text{Area}_{east} \le 0.25 \times \text{Area}_{total}$ and $\text{Area}_{west} \le 0.25 \times \text{Area}_{total}$
2. $\text{Area}_{east} \times \text{SHGC}_{east} \le 0.25 \times \text{Area}_{total} \times \text{SHGC}_{table}$ and $\text{Area}_{west} \times \text{SHGC}_{west} \le 0.25 \times \text{Area}_{total} \times \text{SHGC}_{table}$

where
Area_{east} is the total vertical fenestration area oriented within 45 degrees of true east to the south and 22.5 degrees of true east to the north
Area_{west} is the total vertical fenestration area oriented within 45 degrees of true west to the south and 22.5 degrees of true west to the north
Area_{total} is the total vertical fenestration area of the building
SHGC_{east} is the maximum Solar Heat Gain Coefficient of Area_{east} of the building
SHGC_{west} is the maximum Solar Heat Gain Coefficient of Area_{west} of the building
SHGC_{table} is the maximum Solar Heat Gain Coefficient in Table C402.4 for the building climate zone

~~**C402.4.2 Minimum skylight fenestration area.** Deleted.~~

C402.4.2 Lighting controls in toplit daylight zones. *Daylight responsive controls* shall be provided in toplit daylight zones.

C402.4.2.1 Lighting controls in daylight zones under skylights. Deleted.

C402.4.2.2 Haze factor. ~~Deleted.~~Skylights in office, storage, automotive service, manufacturing, nonrefrigerated warehouse, retail store and distribution/sorting area spaces shall have a glazing material or diffuser with a haze factor greater than 90 percent when tested in accordance with ASTM D1003.

Exception: Skylights and tubular daylighting devices designed and installed to exclude direct sunlight entering the occupied space by the use of fixed or automated baffles, the geometry of skylight and light well or the use of optical diffuser components.

C402.4.3 Maximum *U*-factor and SHGC. The maximum *U*-factor and solar heat gain coefficient (SHGC) for fenestration shall be as specified in Table C402.4.

~~The window projection factor shall be determined in accordance with Equation 4-5.~~

~~*PF* = *A/B*~~ ~~**(Equation 4-5)**~~

~~where:~~

~~*PF* = Projection factor (decimal).~~

~~*A* = Distance measured horizontally from the farthest continuous extremity of any overhang, eave or permanently attached shading device to the vertical surface of the glazing.~~

~~*B* = Distance measured vertically from the bottom of the glazing to the underside of the overhang, eave or permanently attached shading device.~~

~~Where different windows or glass doors have different *PF* values, they shall each be evaluated separately.~~

~~**C402.4.3.1 Increased skylight SHGC.** Deleted.~~

~~**C402.4.3.2 Increased skylight *U*-factor.** Deleted.~~

~~C402.4.3.3~~C402.4.3.1 Dynamic glazing. Where dynamic glazing is intended to satisfy the SHGC and VT requirements of Table C402.4, the ratio of the higher to lower labeled SHGC shall be greater than or equal to 2.4, and the *dynamic glazing* shall be automatically controlled to modulate the amount of solar gain into the space in multiple steps. Dynamic glazing shall be considered separately from other fenestration, and area-weighted averaging with other fenestration that is not dynamic glazing shall not be permitted.

Exception: Dynamic glazing is not required to comply with this section where both the lower and higher labeled SHGC already comply with the requirements of Table C402.4.

~~**C402.4.3.4**~~**C402.4.3.2 Area-weighted *U*-factor.** An area-weighted average shall be permitted to satisfy the *U*-factor requirements for each fenestration product category listed in Table C402.4. Individual fenestration products from different fenestration product categories listed in Table C402.4 shall not be combined in calculating area-weighted average *U*-factor.

~~**C402.4.4 Doors.** *Opaque doors* shall comply with the applicable requirements for doors as specified in Table C402.1.3 and be considered part of the gross area of above-grade walls that are part of the building *thermal envelope*. Other doors shall comply with the provisions of Section C402.4.3 for vertical fenestration.~~

C402.4.4 Daylight zones. Daylight zones shall comply with Sections C405.2.4.2 and C405.2.4.3, as applicable. Daylight zones shall include *toplit daylight zones* and daylight sidelit zones.

C402.4.5 Doors. Opaque swinging doors shall comply with Table C402.1.4. Opaque nonswinging doors shall comply with Table C402.1.4. Opaque doors shall be considered as part of the gross area of above-grade walls that are part of the *building thermal envelope*. Opaque doors shall comply with Section C402.4.5.1 or C402.4.5.2. Other doors shall comply with the provisions of Section C402.4.3 for vertical fenestration.

C402.4.5.1 Opaque swinging doors. Opaque swinging doors shall comply with Table C402.1.4.

C402.4.5.2 Nonswinging doors. Opaque nonswinging doors that are horizontally hinged sectional doors with a single row of fenestration shall have an assembly *U*-factor less than or equal to 0.440 in Climate Zones 0 through 6 and less than or equal to 0.360 in Climate Zones 7 and 8, provided that the fenestration area is not less than 14 percent and not more than 25 percent of the total door area.

Exception: Other doors shall comply with the provisions of Section C402.4.3 for vertical fenestration.

~~**C402.5 Air leakage—thermal envelope (Mandatory).** The *thermal envelope* of buildings shall comply with Sections C402.5.1 through C402.5.8, or the building *thermal envelope* shall be tested in accordance with ASTM E779 at a pressure differential of 0.3 inch water gauge (75 Pa) and deemed to comply with the provisions of this section when the tested air leakage rate of the building thermal envelope is not greater than 0.40 cfm/ft² (2.0 L/s · m²). Where compliance is based on such testing, the building shall also comply with Sections C402.5.5, C402.5.6 and C402.5.7.~~

C402.5 Air leakage—building thermal envelope. The *building thermal envelope* shall comply with Sections C402.5.1 through Section C402.5.8.1.

C402.5.1 Air barriers. ~~A continuous air barrier shall be provided throughout the building thermal envelope. The air barriers shall be permitted to be located on the inside or outside of the building envelope, located within the assemblies composing the envelope, or any combination thereof. The air barrier shall comply with Sections C402.5.1.1 and C402.5.1.2.~~A continuous *air barrier* shall be provided throughout the *building thermal envelope*. The air barrier is permitted to be any combination of inside, outside or within the building thermal envelope~~.~~ The air barrier shall comply with Sections C402.5.1.1, and C402.5.1.2. The *air leakage* performance of the air barrier shall be verified in accordance with Section C402.5.2.

~~**C402.5.1.1 Air barrier construction.** The *continuous air barrier* shall be constructed to comply with the following:~~

1. ~~The air barrier shall be continuous for all assemblies that are the thermal envelope of the building and across the joints and assemblies.~~
2. ~~Air barrier joints and seams shall be sealed, including sealing transitions in places and changes in materials. The joints and seals shall be securely installed in or on the joint for its entire length so as not to dislodge, loosen or otherwise impair its ability to resist positive and negative pressure from wind, stack effect and mechanical ventilation.~~
3. ~~Penetrations of the air barrier shall be caulked, gasketed or otherwise sealed in a manner compatible with the construction materials and location. Joints and seals associated with penetrations shall be sealed in the same manner or taped or covered with moisture vapor-permeable wrapping material. Sealing materials shall be appropriate to the con- struction materials being sealed and shall be securely installed around the penetration so as not to dislodge, loosen or otherwise impair the penetrations' ability to resist positive and negative pressure from wind, stack effect and mechanical ventilation. Sealing of concealed fire sprinklers, where required, shall be in a manner that is recommended by the manufacturer. Caulking or other adhesive sealants shall not be used to fill voids between fire sprinkler cover plates and walls or ceilings.~~
4. ~~Recessed lighting fixtures shall comply with Section C402.5.8. Where similar objects are installed that penetrate the air barrier, provisions shall be made to maintain the integrity of the air barrier.~~

C402.5.1.1 Air barrier design and documentation requirements. Design of the continuous *air barrier* shall be documented in the following manner:

1. Components comprising the continuous *air barrier* and their position within each *building thermal envelope* assembly shall be identified.
2. Joints, interconnections, and penetrations of the continuous *air barrier* components shall be detailed.
3. The continuity of the *air barrier* building element assemblies that enclose conditioned space or provide a boundary between conditioned space and unconditioned space shall be identified.
4. Documentation of the continuous air barrier shall detail methods of sealing the air barrier such as wrapping, caulking, gasketing, taping or other *approved* methods at the following locations:
   4.1. Joints around fenestration and door frames.
   4.2. Joints between walls and floors, between walls at building corners, between walls and roofs including parapets and copings, where above-grade walls meet foundations, and similar intersections.
   4.3. Penetrations or attachments through the continuous *air barrier* in building envelope roofs, walls, and floors.
   4.4. Building assemblies used as ducts or plenums.
   4.5. Changes in continuous *air barrier* materials and assemblies.
5. Identify where testing will or will not be performed in accordance with Section C402.5.2. Where testing will not be performed, a plan for field inspections required by C402.5.2.3 shall be provided that includes the following:
   5.1 Schedule for periodic inspection,
   5.2 Continuous air barrier scope of work,
   5.3 List of critical inspection items,
   5.4 Inspection documentation requirements, and
   5.5 Provisions for corrective actions where needed.

~~**C402.5.1.2 Air barrier compliance options.** A continuous air barrier for the opaque building thermal envelope shall comply with Section C402.5.1.2.1 or C402.5.1.2.2.~~

C402.5.1.2 Air barrier construction. The *continuous air barrier* shall be constructed to comply with the following:

1. The *air barrier* shall be continuous for all assemblies that comprise the *building thermal envelope* and across the joints and assemblies.

2. Air barrier joints and seams shall be sealed, including sealing transitions in places and changes in materials. The joints and seals shall be securely installed in or on the joint for its entire length so as not to dislodge, loosen or otherwise impair its ability to resist positive and negative pressure differentials such as those from design wind loads, stack effect and mechanical ventilation.

3. Penetrations of the *air barrier* shall be caulked, gasketed or otherwise sealed in a manner compatible with the construction materials and location. Sealing shall allow for expansion, contraction and mechanical vibration. Sealing materials shall be securely installed around the penetration so as not to dislodge, loosen or otherwise impair the penetrations' ability to resist positive and negative pressure. Sealing of concealed fire sprinklers, where required, shall be in a manner that is recommended by the fire sprinkler manufacturer. Caulking or other adhesive sealants shall not be used to fill voids between fire sprinkler cover plates and walls or ceilings.

4. Recessed lighting fixtures shall comply with Section C402.5.1.2.1. Where similar objects are installed that penetrate the *air barrier*, provisions shall be made to maintain the integrity of the *air barrier*.

5. Electrical and communication boxes shall comply with C402.5.1.2.2.

~~C402.5.8~~C402.5.1.2.1 Recessed lighting. Recessed luminaires installed in the *building thermal envelope* shall be all of the following:

1. IC-rated.

2. Labeled as having an air leakage rate of not ~~more~~greater than 2.0 cfm (0.944 L/s) ~~when~~where tested in accordance with ASTM E283 at a 1.57 psf (75 Pa) pressure differential.

3. Sealed with a gasket or caulk between the housing and interior wall or ceiling covering.

C402.5.1.2.2 Electrical and communication boxes. Electrical and communication boxes that penetrate the air barrier of the building thermal envelope, and that do not comply with C402.5.1.2.2.1, shall be caulked, taped, gasketed, or otherwise sealed to the air barrier element being penetrated. All openings on the concealed portion of the box shall be sealed. Where present, insulation shall rest against all concealed portions of the box.

C402.5.1.2.2.1 Air-sealed boxes. Where air-sealed boxes are installed, they shall be marked in accordance with NEMA OS 4. Air-sealed boxes shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

C402.5.1.3 Materials. Deleted. Refer to **C402.5.2.3.1**

C402.5.1.4 Assemblies. Deleted. Refer to **C402.5.2.3.2**

C402.5.1.5 Building envelope performance verification. The installation of the continuous air barrier shall be verified by the *code official*, a *registered design professional* or *approved* agency in accordance with the following:

1. A review of the construction documents and other supporting data shall be conducted to assess compliance with the requirements in Section C402.5.1.
2. Inspection of continuous air barrier components and assemblies shall be conducted during construction while the air barrier is still accessible for inspection and repair to verify compliance with the requirements of Sections C402.5.2.3.1 and C402.5.2.3.2.
3. A final commissioning report shall be provided for inspections completed by the *registered design professional* or *approved* agency. The commissioning report shall be provided to the building owner or owner's authorized agent and the *code official*. The report shall identify deficiencies found during the review of the construction documents and inspection and details of corrective measures taken.

C402.5.2 Air leakage compliance. *Air leakage* of the *building thermal envelope* shall be tested by an *approved* third party in accordance with C402.5.2.1. The measured *air leakage* shall not be greater than 0.35 cfm/ft^2 (1.8 L/s × m^2) of the *building thermal envelope* area at a pressure differential of 0.3 inch water gauge (75 Pa) with the calculated *building thermal envelope* surface area being the sum of the above- and below-grade *building thermal envelope*.

Exceptions:

1. Where the measured *air leakage* rate is greater than 0.35 cfm/ft^2 (1.8 L/s × m^2) but is not greater than 0.45 cfm/ft^2 (2.3 L/s × m^2), the *approved* third party shall perform a diagnostic evaluation using smoke tracer or infrared imaging. The evaluation shall be conducted while the building is pressurized along with a visual inspection of the *air barrier* in accordance with ASTM E1186. All identified leaks shall be sealed where such sealing can be made without damaging existing building components. A report specifying the corrective actions taken to seal leaks shall be deemed to establish compliance with the requirements of this section where submitted to the code official and the building owner. Where the measured *air leakage rate* is greater than 0.45 cfm/ft2 (2.3 L/s × m2), corrective actions must be made to the building and an additional test completed for which the results are 0.45 cfm/ft^2 (2.3 L/s × m^2), or less.
2. Buildings larger than 25,000 square feet (2300 m^2) floor area in Climate Zones 3 and 4, other than Group R and I occupancies, that comply with C402.5.2.3.
3. As an alternative, buildings or portions of buildings, containing Group R and I occupancies, shall be permitted to be tested by an *approved* third party in accordance with C402.5.2.2. The reported *air leakage* of the *building thermal envelope* shall not be greater than 0.27 cfm/ft^2 (1.4 L/s x m^2) of the *testing unit enclosure area* at a pressure differential of 0.2 inch water gauge (50 Pa), or 0.36 cfm/ft2 at a pressure differential of 75Pa (0.30 in. w.g.) in accordance with pressure/leakage correlation Table C402.5.2.

Table C402.5.2 Pressure/leakage correlation Table C402.5.2.

Pressure Differential (Pa)	Test pressure Adjustment Factor	Max Air Leakage / Building Thermal Envelope (CFM / ft^2)		
75 (0.30 in. w.g.)		0.36	0.37	0.40
50 (0.20 in. w.g.)	0.752897957	0.27	0.28	0.30

Example: If maximum air leakage allowed is 0.27 cfm/ft^2 of bldg thermal envelope at 50 Pa(0.2 in w.g.), the corresponding maximum leakage rate is 0.36 cfm/SF of bldg thermal envelope if using a higher test pressure of 75 Pa(0.3 in w.g.)

C402.5.2.1 Whole building test method and reporting. The *building thermal envelope* shall be tested for *air leakage* in accordance with ASTM E3158 or an equivalent *approved* method. A report that includes the tested surface area, floor area, air by volume, stories above grade, and leakage rates shall be submitted to the code official and the building owner.

Exceptions:

1. For buildings less than 10,000 ft^2 (1000 m^2) the entire *building thermal envelope* shall be permitted to be tested in accordance with ASTM E779, ASTM E3158 or ASTM E1827 or an equivalent *approved* method.
2. For buildings greater than 50,000 ft^2 (4645 m^2), portions of the building shall be permitted to be tested and the measured *air leakage* shall be area-weighted by the surface areas of the *building thermal envelope* in each portion. The weighted average tested *air leakage* shall not be greater than the whole building leakage limit. The following portions of the building shall be tested:
   2.1 The entire *building thermal envelope* area of stories that have any conditioned spaces directly under a roof.

   2.2 The entire *building thermal envelope* area of stories that have a building entrance, a floor over unconditioned space, a loading dock, or that are below grade.
   2.3 Representative above-grade portions of the building totaling not less than 25 percent of the wall area enclosing the remaining conditioned space.

C402.5.2.2 Dwelling and sleeping unit enclosure test method and reporting. The building thermal envelope shall be tested for air leakage in accordance with ASTM E779, ANSI/RESNET/ICC 380, ASTM E1827 or an equivalent approved method. Where multiple dwelling units or sleeping units or other enclosed spaces are contained within one building thermal envelope, each shall be considered an individual testing unit, and the building air leakage shall be the weighted average of all tested unit results, weighted by each testing unit enclosure area. Units shall be tested without simultaneously pressuring adjacent units and shall be separately tested as follows:

1. Where buildings have less than eight total dwelling or sleeping units, each unit shall be tested.

2. Where buildings have eight or more testing units, the greater of seven units or 20 percent of the testing units in the building shall be tested, including a top floor unit, a middle floor unit, a ground floor unit and a unit with the largest testing unit enclosure area. For each tested unit that exceeds the maximum air leakage rate, an additional three units shall be tested, including a mixture of unit types and locations.

C402.5.2.3 Building envelope design and construction verification criteria. Where Sections C402.5.2.1 and C402.5.2.2 are not applicable, the installation of the continuous *air barrier* shall be verified by the *code official*, *a registered design professional* or *approved agency* in accordance with the following:

1. A review of the construction documents and other supporting data shall be conducted to assess compliance with the requirements in Section C402.5.1.
2. Inspection of continuous *air barrier* components and assemblies shall be conducted during construction to verify compliance with the requirements of Sections C402.5.2.3.1 or C402.5.2.3.2. The *air barrier* shall remain accessible for inspection and repair.
3. A final inspection report shall be provided for inspections completed by the *registered design professional* or *approved agency*. The inspection report shall be provided to the building owner or owner's authorized agent and the *code official*. The report shall identify deficiencies found during inspection and details of corrective measures taken.

~~C402.5.1.2.1~~C402.5.2.3.1 Materials. Materials with an air permeability not greater than 0.004 cfm/ft^2 (0.02 L/s × m^2) under a pressure differential of 0.3 inch water gauge (75 Pa) when tested in accordance with ASTM E2178 shall comply with this section. Materials in Items 1 through 16 shall be deemed to comply with this section, provided that joints are sealed and materials are installed as air barriers in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

1. Plywood with a thickness of not less than $^3/_8$ inch (10 mm).

2. Oriented strand board having a thickness of not less than $^3/_8$ inch (10 mm).

3. Extruded polystyrene insulation board having a thickness of not less than ~~1½~~1½ inch (12.7 mm).

4. Foil-back polyisocyanurate insulation board having a thickness of not less than ~~1/2~~1½ inch (12.7 mm).

5. Closed-cell spray foam having a minimum density of 1.5 pcf (2.4 kg/m^3) and having a thickness of not less than 1$^1/_2$ inches (38 mm).

6. Open-cell spray foam with a density between 0.4 and 1.5 pcf (0.6 and 2.4 kg/m^3) and having a thickness of not less than 4.5 inches (113 mm).

7. Exterior or interior gypsum board having a thickness of not less than ~~1/2~~1½ inch (12.7 mm).

8. Cement board having a thickness of not less than 1½inch (12.7 mm).

9. Built-up roofing membrane.

10. Modified bituminous roof membrane.

11. ~~Fully adhered single-ply~~Single-ply roof membrane.

12. A Portland cement/sand parge, or gypsum plaster having a thickness of not less than $^5/_8$ inch (15.9 mm).

13. Cast-in-place and precast concrete.

14. Fully grouted concrete block masonry.

15. Sheet steel or aluminum.

16. Solid or hollow masonry constructed of clay or shale masonry units.

~~C402.5.1.2.2~~C402.5.2.3.2 Assemblies. Assemblies of materials and components with an average air leakage not greater than 0.04 cfm/ft^2 (0.2 L/s × m^2) under a pressure differential of 0.3 inch of water gauge (w.g.)(75 Pa) when tested in accordance with ASTM E2357, ASTM E1677, ASTM D8052 or ASTM E283 shall comply with this section. Assemblies listed in Items 1 through 3 shall be deemed to comply, provided that joints are sealed and the requirements of Section C402.5.1.1 are met.

1. Concrete masonry walls coated with either one application of block filler or two applications of a paint or sealer coating.

2. Masonry walls constructed of clay or shale masonry units with a nominal width ~~of~~ greater than or equal to 4 inches ~~(102 mm) or more.~~(102 mm).

3. A Portland cement/sand parge, stucco or plaster not less than 1½ inch (12.7 mm) in thickness.

~~**C402.5.3 Rooms containing fuel-burning appliances.** Deleted.~~

~~C402.5.2~~C402.5.3 Air leakage of fenestration. ~~The air leakage of fenestration assemblies shall meet the provisions of Table C402.5.2. Testing shall be in accordance with the applicable reference test standard in Table C402.5.2 by an accredited, independent testing laboratory and *labeled* by the manufacturer.~~The air leakage of fenestration assemblies shall comply with Table C402.5.3. Testing shall be conducted by an accredited, independent testing laboratory in accordance with the applicable reference test standard in Table C402.5.3 and *labeled* by the manufacturer.

Exceptions:

1. Field-fabricated fenestration assemblies that are sealed in accordance with Section ~~C402.5.1.~~C402.5.1.2.

2. ~~Fenestration in buildings that comply with the testing alternative of Section C402.5 are not required to meet the air leakage requirements in Table C402.5.2.~~Fenestration in buildings that are tested for *air leakage* of in accordance with Section C402.5.2 are not required to meet the air leakage requirements in Table C402.5.3.

~~TABLE C402.5.2~~Table C402.5.3

MAXIMUM AIR LEAKAGE RATE FOR FENESTRATION ASSEMBLIES

FENESTRATION ASSEMBLY	MAXIMUM RATE (CFM/FT²)	TEST PROCEDURE
Windows	0.20[a]	AAMA/WDMA/CSA101/I.S.2/A440 or NFRC 400
Sliding doors	0.20[a]	

Swinging doors	0.20[a]	
Skylights—with condensation weepage openings	0.30	
Skylights—all other	0.20[a]	
Curtain walls	0.06	NFRC 400 or ASTM E283 at 1.57 psf (75 Pa)
Storefront glazing	0.06	
Commercial glazed swinging entrance doors	1.00	
Power-operated sliding doors and power operated folding doors	1.00	
Revolving doors	1.00	
Garage doors	0.40	ANSI/DASMA 105, NFRC 400, or ASTM E283 at 1.57 psf (75 Pa)
Rolling doors	1.00	
High-speed doors	1.30	

For SI: 1 cubic foot per minute = 0.47 L/s, 1 square foot = 0.093 m^2.

a. The maximum rate for windows, sliding and swinging doors, and skylights is permitted to be 0.3 cfm per square foot of fenestration or door area when tested in accordance with AAMA/WDMA/CSA101/I.S.2/A440 at 6.24 psf (300 Pa).

C402.5.4 Doors and access openings to shafts, chutes, stairways and elevator lobbies. ~~Deleted.~~Doors and *access* openings from conditioned space to shafts, chutes stairways and elevator lobbies not within the scope of the fenestration assemblies covered by Section C402.5.3 shall be gasketed, weather-stripped or sealed.

Exceptions:

1. Door openings required to comply with Section 716 of the *International Building Code*.
2. Doors and door openings required by the *International Building Code* to comply with UL 1784.

C402.5.5 Air intakes, exhaust openings, stairways and shafts. Stairway enclosures, elevator shaft vents and other outdoor air intakes and exhaust openings integral to the building envelope shall be provided with dampers in accordance with Section ~~C403.2.4.3.~~C403.7.7.

~~C402.5.7~~C402.5.6 Vestibules. Building entrances shall be protected with an enclosed vestibule, with all doors opening into and out of the vestibule equipped with self-closing devices. Vestibules shall be designed so that in passing through the vestibule it is not necessary for the interior and exterior doors to open at the same time. The installation of one or more revolving doors in the *building entrance* shall not eliminate the requirement that a vestibule be provided on any doors adjacent to revolving doors.

Exceptions: Vestibules are not required for the following:

1. Deleted.
2. Doors not intended to be used by the public, such as doors to mechanical or electrical equipment rooms, or intended solely for employee use.
3. Doors opening directly from a *sleeping unit* or dwelling unit.
4. Doors that open directly from a space less than 3,000 square feet (298 m^2) in area.
5. Revolving doors.
6. Doors used primarily to facilitate vehicular movement or material handling and adjacent personnel doors.
7. Doors that have an air curtain with a velocity of not less than 6.56 feet per second (2 m/s) at the floor that have been tested in accordance with ANSI/AMCA 220 and installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

Manual or automatic controls shall be provided that will operate the air curtain with the opening and closing of the door. Air curtains and their controls shall comply with Section C408.2.3.

8. ~~Building entrances in buildings that are less than four stories above grade and less than 10,000 square feet (929 m²) in floor area.~~

~~C402.5.6~~C402.5.7 Loading dock weather seals. Cargo door openings and loading ~~dock doors~~door openings shall be equipped with weather seals ~~to~~that restrict ~~infiltration when~~air leakage and provide direct contact along the top and sides of vehicles that are parked in the doorway.

C402.5.8 Operable openings interlocking. Where occupancies utilize operable openings to the outdoors that are larger than 40 square feet (3.7 m^2) in area, such openings shall be interlocked with the heating and cooling system to raise the cooling setpoint to 90°F (32°C) and lower the heating setpoint to 55°F (13°C) whenever the operable opening is open. The change in heating and cooling setpoints shall occur when the operable opening has been open for a period not to exceed 10 minutes.

Exceptions:

1. Operable openings into separately zoned areas associated with the preparation of food that contain appliances that contribute to the HVAC loads of a restaurant or similar type of occupancy.
2. Storage occupancies that utilize overhead doors for the function of the occupancy, where *approved* .
3. Doors located in the exterior wall that are part of a vestibule system.

C402.5.8.1 Operable controls. Controls shall comply with Section C403.13.

SECTION C403
BUILDING MECHANICAL SYSTEMS

C403.1 General. Mechanical systems and equipment serving the building heating, ~~cooling or~~cooling, ventilating or refrigerating needs shall comply with ~~Section C403.2 and shall comply with Sections C403.3 and C403.4 based on the equipment and systems provided.~~this section.

Exception: Data center systems are exempt from the requirements of Sections C403.4 and C403.5.

~~C403.2.1~~C403.1.1 Calculation of heating and cooling loads. Design loads associated with heating, ventilating and air conditioning of the building shall be determined in accordance with ANSI/ASHRAE/ACCA Standard 183 or by an *approved* equivalent computational procedure using the design parameters specified in Chapter 3. Heating and cooling loads shall be adjusted to account for load reductions that are achieved where energy recovery systems are utilized in the HVAC system ~~except for hospitals and patient care facilities~~ in accordance with the ASHRAE HVAC Systems and Equipment Handbook by an approved equivalent computational procedure.

C403.1.2 Data centers. Data center systems shall comply with Sections 6 and 8 of ASHRAE 90.4 with the following changes:

1. Replace design mechanical load component (MLC) values specified in Table 6.2.1.1 of the ASHRAE 90.4 with the values in Table C403.1.2(1) as applicable in each climate zone.
2. Replace annualized MLC values specified in Table 6.2.1.2 of the ASHRAE 90.4 with the values in Table C403.1.2(2) as applicable in each climate zone.

TABLE C403.1.2(1)

MAXIMUM DESIGN MECHANICAL LOAD COMPONENT (DESIGN MLC)

CLIMATE ZONE	DESIGN MLC AT 100% AND AT 50% ITE LOAD
3A	0.23
4A	0.23
5A	0.22

TABLE C403.1.2(2)

MAXIMUM ANNUALIZED MECHANICAL LOAD COMPONENT (ANNUALIZED MLC)

CLIMATE ZONE	HVAC MAXIMUM ANNUALIZED MLC AT 100% AND AT 50% ITE LOAD
3A	0.18
4A	0.17
5A	0.17

C403.2 ~~**Provisions applicable to all mechanical systems (Mandatory).**~~**System design.** ~~Mechanical systems and equipment serving the building heating, cooling or ventilating needs shall comply with Sections C403.2.1 through C403.2.13.~~Mechanical systems shall be designed to comply with Sections C403.2.1 through C403.2.3. Where elements of a building's mechanical systems are addressed in Sections C403.3 through C403.14, such elements shall comply with the applicable provisions of those sections.

~~**C403.2.4.4 Zone isolation.**~~ ~~Deleted.~~**C403.2.1 Zone isolation required.** HVAC systems serving *zones* that are over 25,000 square feet (2323 m^2) in floor area or that span more than one floor and are designed to operate or be occupied nonsimultaneously shall be divided into isolation areas. Each isolation area shall be equipped with *isolation devices* and controls configured to automatically shut off the supply of conditioned air and outdoor air to and exhaust air from the isolation area. Each isolation area shall be controlled independently by a device meeting the requirements of Section C403.4.2.2. Central systems and plants shall be provided with controls and devices that will allow system and equipment operation for any length of time while serving only the smallest isolation area served by the system or plant.

Exceptions:

1. Exhaust air and outdoor air connections to isolation areas where the fan system to which they connect is not greater than 5,000 cfm (2360 L/s).
2. Exhaust airflow from a single isolation area of less than 10 percent of the design airflow of the exhaust system to which it connects.
3. Isolation areas intended to operate continuously or intended to be inoperative only when all other isolation areas in a *zone* are inoperative.

~~**C403.2.6**~~**C403.2.2 Ventilation.** Ventilation, either natural or mechanical, shall be provided in accordance with Chapter 4 of the *International Mechanical Code*. ~~Where mechanical ventilation is provided, the system shall provide the capability to reduce the outdoor air supply to the minimum required by Chapter 4 of the *International Mechanical Code*.~~

C403.2.3 Fault detection and diagnostics. New buildings with an HVAC system serving a gross conditioned floor area of 20,000 square feet (9290 m^2) or larger shall include a fault detection and diagnostics (FDD) system to monitor the HVAC system's performance and automatically identify faults. The FDD system shall:

1. Include permanently installed sensors and devices to monitor the HVAC system's performance.
2. Deleted.
3. Automatically identify and report HVAC system faults.
4. Automatically notify authorized personnel of identified HVAC system faults.
5. Automatically provide prioritized recommendations for repair of identified faults based on analysis of data collected from the sampling of HVAC system performance.
6. Be capable of transmitting the prioritized fault repair recommendations to remotely located authorized personnel.

Exception: R-1 and R-2 occupancies.

C403.3 Heating and cooling equipment efficiencies. Heating and cooling equipment installed in mechanical systems shall be sized in accordance with Section C403.3.1 and shall be not less efficient in the use of energy than as specified in Section C403.3.2.

~~**C403.2.2**~~**C403.3.1** **Equipment sizing.** The output capacity of heating and cooling equipment shall be not greater than that of the smallest available equipment size that exceeds the loads calculated in accordance with Section ~~C403.2.1, within available equipment options.~~C403.1.1. A single piece of equipment providing both heating and cooling shall satisfy this provision for one function with the capacity for the other function as small as possible, within available equipment options.

Exceptions:

1. Required standby equipment and systems provided with controls and devices that allow such systems or equipment to operate automatically only when the primary equipment is not operating.
2. Multiple units of the same equipment type with combined capacities exceeding the design load and provided with controls that are configured to sequence the operation of each unit based on load.
3. ~~When the equipment selected is the smallest size needed to meet the load within available options of the desired equipment line.~~

~~**C403.2.3**~~**C403.3.2** **HVAC equipment performance requirements.** Equipment shall meet the minimum efficiency requirements of Tables ~~C403.2.3(1), C403.2.3(2), C403.2.3(3), C403.2.3(4), C403.2.3(5), C403.2.3(6), C403.2.3(7), C403.2.3(8) and C403.2.3(9)~~C403.3.2(1) through C403.3.2(16) when tested and rated in accordance with the applicable test procedure. Plate-type liquid-to-liquid heat exchangers shall meet the minimum requirements of AHRI 400. The efficiency shall be verified through certification under an approved certification program or, where a certification program does not exist, the equipment efficiency ratings shall be supported by data furnished by the manufacturer. Where multiple rating conditions or performance requirements are provided, the equipment shall satisfy all stated requirements. Where components, such as indoor or outdoor coils, from different manufacturers are used, calculations and supporting data shall be furnished by the designer that demonstrates that the combined efficiency of the specified components meets the requirements herein.

TABLE C403.2.3(1)
MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS:
ELECTRICALLY OPERATED UNITARY AIR CONDITIONERS AND CONDENSING UNITS

EQUIPMENT TYPE	SIZE CATEGORY	HEATING SECTION TYPE	SUBCATEGORY OR RATING CONDITION	MINIMUM EFFICIENCY		TEST PROCEDURE[a]
				Before 1/1/2016	As of 1/1/2016	
Air conditioners, air cooled	< 65,000 Btu/h[b]	All	Split System	13.0 SEER	13.0 SEER	AHRI 210/240
			Single Package	13.0 SEER	14.0 SEER[c]	
Through-the-wall (air cooled)	≤ 30,000 Btu/h[b]	All	Split system	12.0 SEER	12.0 SEER	
			Single Package	12.0 SEER	12.0 SEER	
Small-duct high-velocity (air cooled)	< 65,000 Btu/h[b]	All	Split System	11.0 SEER	11.0 SEER	
Air conditioners, air cooled	≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 135,000 Btu/h	Electric Resistance (or None)	Split System and Single Package	11.2 EER 11.4 IEER	11.2 EER 12.8 IEER	AHRI 340/360
		All other	Split System and Single Package	11.0 EER 11.2 IEER	11.0 EER 12.6 IEER	
	≥ 135,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h	Electric Resistance (or None)	Split System and Single Package	11.0 EER 11.2 IEER	11.0 EER 12.4 IEER	
		All other	Split System and Single Package	10.8 EER 11.0 IEER	10.8 EER 12.2 IEER	
	≥ 240,000 Btu/h and < 760,000 Btu/h	Electric Resistance (or None)	Split System and Single Package	10.0 EER 10.1 IEER	10.0 EER 11.6 IEER	
		All other	Split System and Single Package	9.8 EER 9.9 IEER	9.8 EER 11.4 IEER	
	≥ 760,000 Btu/h	Electric Resistance (or None)	Split System and Single Package	9.7 EER 9.8 IEER	9.7 EER 11.2 IEER	
		All other	Split System and Single Package	9.5 EER 9.6 IEER	9.5 EER 11.0 IEER	
Air conditioners, water cooled	< 65,000 Btu/h[b]	All	Split System and Single Package	12.1 EER 12.3 IEER	12.1 EER 12.3 IEER	AHRI 210/240
	≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 135,000 Btu/h	Electric Resistance (or None)	Split System and Single Package	12.1 EER 12.3 IEER	12.1 EER 13.9 IEER	AHRI 340/360
		All other	Split System and Single Package	11.9 EER 12.1 IEER	11.9 EER 13.7 IEER	
	≥ 135,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h	Electric Resistance (or None)	Split System and Single Package	12.5 EER 12.5 IEER	12.5 EER 13.9 IEER	
		All other	Split System and Single Package	12.3 EER 12.5 IEER	12.3 EER 13.7 IEER	
	≥ 240,000 Btu/h and < 760,000 Btu/h	Electric Resistance (or None)	Split System and Single Package	12.4 EER 12.6 IEER	12.4 EER 13.6 IEER	
		All other	Split System and Single Package	12.2 EER 12.4 IEER	12.2 EER 13.4 IEER	
	≥ 760,000 Btu/h	Electric Resistance (or None)	Split System and Single Package	12.2 EER 12.4 IEER	12.2 EER 13.5 IEER	
		All other	Split System and Single Package	12.0 EER 12.2 IEER	12.0 EER 13.3 IEER	

(continued)

TABLE C403.2.3(1)—continued
MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS:
ELECTRICALLY OPERATED UNITARY AIR CONDITIONERS AND CONDENSING UNITS

EQUIPMENT TYPE	SIZE CATEGORY	HEATING SECTION TYPE	SUB-CATEGORY OR RATING CONDITION	MINIMUM EFFICIENCY		TEST PROCEDURE[a]
				Before 1/1/2016	As of 1/1/2016	
Air conditioners, evaporatively cooled	< 65,000 Btu/h[b]	All	Split System and Single Package	12.1 EER 12.3 IEER	12.1 EER 12.3 IEER	AHRI 210/240
	≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 135,000 Btu/h	Electric Resistance (or None)	Split System and Single Package	12.1 EER 12.3 IEER	12.1 EER 12.3 IEER	AHRI 340/360
		All other	Split System and Single Package	11.9 EER 12.1 IEER	11.9 EER 12.1 IEER	
	≥ 135,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h	Electric Resistance (or None)	Split System and Single Package	12.0 EER 12.2 IEER	12.0 EER 12.2 IEER	
		All other	Split System and Single Package	11.8 EER 12.0 IEER	11.8 EER 12.0 IEER	
	≥ 240,000 Btu/h and < 760,000 Btu/h	Electric Resistance (or None)	Split System and Single Package	11.9 EER 12.1 IEER	11.9 EER 12.1 IEER	
		All other	Split System and Single Package	11.7 EER 11.9 IEER	11.7 EER 11.9 IEER	
	≥ 760,000 Btu/h	Electric Resistance (or None)	Split System and Single Package	11.7 EER 11.9 IEER	11.7 EER 11.9 IEER	
		All other	Split System and Single Package	11.5 EER 11.7 IEER	11.5 EER 11.7 IEER	
Condensing units, air cooled	≥ 135,000 Btu/h			10.5 EER 11.8 IEER	10.5 EER 11.8 IEER	AHRI 365
Condensing units, water cooled	≥ 135,000 Btu/h			13.5 EER 14.0 IEER	13.5 EER 14.0 IEER	
Condensing units, evaporatively cooled	≥ 135,000 Btu/h			13.5 EER 14.0 IEER	13.5 EER 14.0 IEER	

For SI: 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W.
a. Chapter 6 contains a complete specification of the referenced test procedure, including the reference year version of the test procedure.
b. Single-phase, air-cooled air conditioners less than 65,000 Btu/h are regulated by NAECA. SEER values are those set by NAECA.
c. Minimum efficiency as of January 1, 2015.

[NOTE TO RRC: 2018 TABLE C403.2.3(1) ABOVE IS BEING REPLACED WITH C403.3.2(1) BELOW]

TABLE C403.3.2(1)
ELECTRICALLY OPERATED UNITARY AIR CONDITIONERS AND CONDENSING UNITS—MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS[c, d]

EQUIPMENT TYPE	SIZE CATEGORY	HEADING SECTION TYPE	SUBCATEGORY OR RATING CONDITION	MINIMUM EFFICIENCY	TEST PROCEDURE[a]
Air conditioners, air cooled	< 65,000 Btu/h[b]	All	Split system, three phase and applications outside US single phase[b]	13.0 SEER before 1/1/2023 13.4 SEER2 after 1/1/2023	AHRI 210/240—2017 before 1/1/2023 AHRI 210/240—2023 after 1/1/2023
			Single-package, three phase and applications outside US single phase[b]	14.0 SEER before 1/1/2023 13.4 SEER2 after 1/1/2023	
Space constrained, air cooled	≤ 30,000 Btu/h[b]	All	Split system, three phase and applications outside US single phase[b]	12.0 SEER before 1/1/2023 11.7 SEER2 after 1/1/2023	AHRI 210/240—2017 before 1/1/2023 AHRI 210/240—2023 after 1/1/2023
			Single package, three phase and applications outside US single phase[b]	12.0 SEER before 1/1/2023 11.7 SEER2 after 1/1/2023	

Small duct, high velocity, air cooled	< 65,000 Btu/h[b]	All	Split system, three phase and applications outside US single phase[b]	12.0 SEER before 1/1/2023 12.1 SEER2 after 1/1/2023	AHRI 210/240—2017 before 1/1/2023 AHRI 210/240—2023 after 1/1/2023
Air conditioners, air cooled	≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 135,000 Btu/h	Electric resistance (or none)	Split system and single package	11.2 EER 12.9 IEER before 1/1/2023 14.8 IEER after 1/1/2023	AHRI 340/360
		All other		11.0 EER 12.7 IEER before 1/1/2023 14.6 IEER after 1/1/2023	
	≥ 135,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h	Electric resistance (or none)		11.0 EER 12.4 IEER before 1/1/2023 14.2 IEER after 1/1/2023	
		All other		10.8 EER 12.2 IEER before 1/1/2023 14.0 IEER after 1/1/2023	

EQUIPMENT TYPE	SIZE CATEGORY	HEADING SECTION TYPE	SUBCATEGORY OR RATING CONDITION	MINIMUM EFFICIENCY	TEST PROCEDURE[a]
Air conditioners, air cooled *(continued)*	≥ 240,000 Btu/h and < 760,000 Btu/h	Electric resistance (or none)	Split system and single package	10.0 EER 11.6 IEER before 1/1/2023 13.2 IEER after 1/1/2023	AHRI 340/360
		All other		9.8 EER 11.4 IEER before 1/1/2023 13.0 IEER after 1/1/2023	
	≥ 760,000 Btu/h	Electric resistance (or none)		9.7 EER 11.2 IEER before 1/1/2023 12.5 IEER after 1/1/2023	
		All other		9.5 EER 11.0 IEER before 1/1/2023 12.3 IEER after 1/1/2023	
Air conditioners, water cooled	< 65,000 Btu/h	All	Split system and single package	12.1 EER 12.3 IEER	AHRI 210/240
		Electric resistance (or none)		12.1 EER 13.9 IEER	AHRI 340/360

	≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 135,000 Btu/h	All other		11.9 EER 13.7 IEER	
	≥ 135,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h	Electric resistance (or none)		12.5 EER 13.9 IEER	
		All other		12.3 EER 13.7 IEER	
	≥ 240,000 Btu/h and < 760,000 Btu/h	Electric resistance (or none)		12.4 EER 13.6 IEER	
		All other		12.2 EER 13.4 IEER	
	≥ 760,000 Btu/h	Electric resistance (or none)		12.2 EER 13.5 IEER	
		All other		12.0 EER 13.3 IEER	

EQUIPMENT TYPE	SIZE CATEGORY	HEADING SECTION TYPE	SUBCATEGORY OR RATING CONDITION	MINIMUM EFFICIENCY	TEST PROCEDURE[a]
Air conditioners, evaporatively cooled	< 65,000 Btu/h[b]	All	Split system and single package	12.1 EER 12.3 IEER	AHRI 210/240
	≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 135,000 Btu/h	Electric resistance (or none)		12.1 EER 12.3 IEER	AHRI 340/360
		All other		11.9 EER 12.1 IEER	
	≥ 135,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h	Electric resistance (or none)		12.0 EER 12.2 IEER	
		All other		11.8 EER 12.0 IEER	
	≥ 240,000 Btu/h and < 760,000 Btu/h	Electric resistance (or none)		11.9 EER 12.1 IEER	
		All other		11.7 EER 11.9 IEER	
	≥ 760,000 Btu/h	Electric resistance (or none)		11.7 EER 11.9 IEER	
		All other		11.5 EER 11.7 IEER	
Condensing units, air cooled	≥ 135,000 Btu/h	—	—	10.5 EER 11.8 IEER	AHRI 365
Condensing units, water cooled	≥ 135,000 Btu/h	—	—	13.5 EER 14.0 IEER	AHRI 365
Condensing units, evaporatively cooled	≥ 135,000 Btu/h	—	—	13.5 EER 14.0 IEER	AHRI 365

For SI: 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W.

a. Chapter 6 contains a complete specification of the referenced standards, which include test procedures, including the reference year version of the test procedure.
b. Single-phase, US air-cooled air conditioners less than 65,000 Btu/h are regulated as consumer products by the US Department of Energy Code of Federal Regulations DOE 10 CFR 430. SEER and SEER2 values for single-phase products are set by the US Department of Energy.
c. DOE 10 CFR 430 Subpart B Appendix M1 includes the test procedure updates effective 1/1/2023 that will be incorporated in AHRI 210/240—2023.
d. This table is a replica of ASHRAE 90.1 Table 6.8.1-1 Electrically Operated Unitary Air Conditioners and Condensing Units—Minimum Efficiency Requirements.

TABLE C403.2.3(2)
MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS:
ELECTRICALLY OPERATED UNITARY AND APPLIED HEAT PUMPS

EQUIPMENT TYPE	SIZE CATEGORY	HEATING SECTION TYPE	SUBCATEGORY OR RATING CONDITION	MINIMUM EFFICIENCY		TEST PROCEDURE[a]
				Before 1/1/2016	As of 1/1/2016	
Air cooled (cooling mode)	< 65,000 Btu/h[b]	All	Split System	13.0 SEER[c]	14.0 SEER[c]	AHRI 210/240
			Single Package	13.0 SEER[c]	14.0 SEER[c]	
Through-the-wall, air cooled	≤ 30,000 Btu/h[b]	All	Split System	12.0 SEER	12.0 SEER	
			Single Package	12.0 SEER	12.0 SEER	
Single-duct high-velocity air cooled	< 65,000 Btu/h[b]	All	Split System	11.0 SEER	11.0 SEER	
Air cooled (cooling mode)	≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 135,000 Btu/h	Electric Resistance (or None)	Split System and Single Package	11.0 EER 11.2 IEER	11.0 EER 12.0 IEER	AHRI 340/360
		All other	Split System and Single Package	10.8 EER 11.0 IEER	10.8 EER 11.8 IEER	
	≥ 135,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h	Electric Resistance (or None)	Split System and Single Package	10.6 EER 10.7 IEER	10.6 EER 11.6 IEER	
		All other	Split System and Single Package	10.4 EER 10.5 IEER	10.4 EER 11.4 IEER	
	≥ 240,000 Btu/h	Electric Resistance (or None)	Split System and Single Package	9.5 EER 9.6 IEER	9.5 EER 10.6 IEER	
		All other	Split System and Single Package	9.3 EER 9.4 IEER	9.3 EER 9.4 IEER	
Water to Air: Water Loop (cooling mode)	< 17,000 Btu/h	All	86°F entering water	12.2 EER	12.2 EER	ISO 13256-1
	≥ 17,000 Btu/h and < 65,000 Btu/h	All	86°F entering water	13.0 EER	13.0 EER	
	≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 135,000 Btu/h	All	86°F entering water	13.0 EER	13.0 EER	
Water to Air: Ground Water (cooling mode)	< 135,000 Btu/h	All	59°F entering water	18.0 EER	18.0 EER	ISO 13256-1
Brine to Air: Ground Loop (cooling mode)	< 135,000 Btu/h	All	77°F entering water	14.1 EER	14.1 EER	ISO 13256-1
Water to Water: Water Loop (cooling mode)	< 135,000 Btu/h	All	86°F entering water	10.6 EER	10.6 EER	ISO 13256-2
Water to Water: Ground Water (cooling mode)	< 135,000 Btu/h	All	59°F entering water	16.3 EER	16.3 EER	
Brine to Water: Ground Loop (cooling mode)	< 135,000 Btu/h	All	77°F entering fluid	12.1 EER	12.1 EER	

(continued)

TABLE C403.2.3(2)—continued
MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS:
ELECTRICALLY OPERATED UNITARY AND APPLIED HEAT PUMPS

EQUIPMENT TYPE	SIZE CATEGORY	HEATING SECTION TYPE	SUBCATEGORY OR RATING CONDITION	MINIMUM EFFICIENCY Before 1/1/2016	MINIMUM EFFICIENCY As of 1/1/2016	TEST PROCEDURE[a]
Air cooled (heating mode)	< 65,000 Btu/h[b]	—	Split System	7.7 HSPF[c]	8.2 HSPF[c]	AHRI 210/240
		—	Single Package	7.7 HSPF[c]	8.0 HSPF[c]	
Through-the-wall, (air cooled, heating mode)	≤ 30,000 Btu/h[b] (cooling capacity)	—	Split System	7.4 HSPF	7.4 HSPF	
		—	Single Package	7.4 HSPF	7.4 HSPF	
Small-duct high velocity (air cooled, heating mode)	< 65,000 Btu/h[b]	—	Split System	6.8 HSPF	6.8 HSPF	
Air cooled (heating mode)	≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 135,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)	—	47°F db/43°F wb outdoor air	3.3 COP	3.3 COP	AHRI 340/360
			17°F db/15°F wb outdoor air	2.25 COP	2.25 COP	
	≥ 135,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)	—	47°F db/43°F wb outdoor air	3.2 COP	3.2 COP	
			17°F db/15°F wb outdoor air	2.05 COP	2.05 COP	
Water to Air: Water Loop (heating mode)	< 135,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)	—	68°F entering water	4.3 COP	4.3 COP	ISO 13256-1
Water to Air: Ground Water (heating mode)	< 135,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)	—	50°F entering water	3.7 COP	3.7 COP	
Brine to Air: Ground Loop (heating mode)	< 135,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)	—	32°F entering fluid	3.2 COP	3.2 COP	
Water to Water: Water Loop (heating mode)	< 135,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)	—	68°F entering water	3.7 COP	3.7 COP	ISO 13256-2
Water to Water: Ground Water (heating mode)	< 135,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)	—	50°F entering water	3.1 COP	3.1 COP	
Brine to Water: Ground Loop (heating mode)	< 135,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)	—	32°F entering fluid	2.5 COP	2.5 COP	

For SI: 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, °C = [(°F) - 32]/1.8.
a. Chapter 6 contains a complete specification of the referenced test procedure, including the reference year version of the test procedure.
b. Single-phase, air-cooled air conditioners less than 65,000 Btu/h are regulated by NAECA. SEER values are those set by NAECA.
c. Minimum efficiency as of January 1, 2015.

[NOTE TO RRC – 2018 TABLE C403.2.3(2) ABOVE IS REPLACED WITH TABLE C403.3.2(2) BELOW]

TABLE C403.3.2(2)
ELECTRICALLY OPERATED AIR-COOLED UNITARY HEAT PUMPS—MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS[c, d]

EQUIPMENT TYPE	SIZE CATEGORY	HEADING SECTION TYPE	SUBCATEGORY OR RATING CONDITION	MINIMUM EFFICIENCY	TEST PROCEDURE[a]
Air cooled (cooling mode)	< 66,000 Btu/h	All	Split system, three phase and applications outside US single phase[b]	14.0 SEER before 1/1/2023 14.3 SEER2 after 1/1/2023	AHRI 210/240—2017 before 1/1/2023 AHRI 210/240—2023 after 1/1/2023
			Single package, three phase and applications outside US single phase[b]	14.0 SEER before 1/1/2023 13.4 SEER2 after 1/1/2023	
Space constrained, air cooled (cooling mode)	≤ 30,000 Btu/h	All	Split system, three phase and applications outside US single phase[b]	12.0 SEER before 1/1/2023 11.7 SEER2 after 1/1/2023	AHRI 210/240—2017 before 1/1/2023 AHRI 210/240—2023 after 1/1/2023

			Single package, three phase and applications outside US single phase[b]	12.0 SEER before 1/1/2023 11.7 SEER2 after 1/1/2023	
Single duct, high velocity, air cooled (cooling mode)	< 65,000	All	Split system, three phase and applications outside US single phase[b]	12.0 SEER before 1/1/2023 12.0 SEER2 after 1/1/2023	AHRI 210/240—2017 before 1/1/2023 AHRI 210/240—2023 after 1/1/2023
Air cooled (cooling mode)	≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 135,000 Btu/h	Electric resistance (or none)	Split system and single package	11.0 EER 12.2 IEER before 1/1/2023 14.1 IEER after 1/1/2023	AHRI 340/360
		All other		10.8 EER 12.0 IEER before 1/1/2023 13.9 IEER after 1/1/2023	
	≥ 135,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h	Electric resistance (or none)		10.6 EER 11.6 IEER before 1/1/2023 13.5 IEER after 1/1/2023	
		All other		10.4 EER 11.4 IEER before 1/1/2023 13.3 IEER after 1/1/2023	
	≥ 240,000 Btu/h	Electric resistance (or none)		9.5 EER 10.6 IEER before 1/1/2023 12.5 IEER after 1/1/2023	
		All other		9.3 EER 10.4 IEER before 1/1/2023 12.3 IEER after 1/1/2023	
Air cooled (heating mode)	< 65,000 Btu/h	All	Split system, three phase and applications outside US single phase[b]	8.2 HSPF before 1/1/2023 7.5 HSPF2 after 1/1/2023	AHRI 210/240—2017 before 1/1/2023 AHRI 210/240—2023 after 1/1/2023
			Single package, three phase and applications outside US single phase[b]	8.0 HSPF before 1/1/2023 6.7 HSPF2 after 1/1/2023	

EQUIPMENT TYPE	SIZE CATEGORY	HEADING SECTION TYPE	SUBCATEGORY OR RATING CONDITION	MINIMUM EFFICIENCY	TEST PROCEDURE[a]
Space constrained, air cooled (heating mode)	≤ 30,000 Btu/h	All	Split system, three phase and applications outside US single phase[b]	7.4 HSPF before 1/1/2023 6.3 HSPF2 after 1/1/2023	AHRI 210/240—2017 before 1/1/2023 AHRI 210/240—2023 after 1/1/2023

			Single package, three phase and applications outside US single phase[b]	7.4 HSPF before 1/1/2023 6.3 HSPF2 after 1/1/2023	
Small duct, high velocity, air cooled (heating mode)	< 65,000 Btu/h	All	Split system, three phase and applications outside US single phase[b]	7.2 HSPF before 1/1/2023 6.1 HSPF2 after 1/1/2023	AHRI 210/240—2017 before 1/1/2023 AHRI 210/240—2023 after 1/1/2023
Air cooled (heating mode)	≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 135,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)	All	47°F db/43°F wb outdoor air	3.30 COP_H before 1/1/2023 3.40 COP_H after 1/1/2023	AHRI 340/360
			17°F db/15°F wb outdoor air	2.25 COP_H	
	≥ 135,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)		47°F db/43°F wb outdoor air	3.20 COP_H before 1/1/2023 3.30 SOP_H after 1/1/2023	
			17°F db/15°F wb outdoor air	2.05 COP_H	
	≥ 240,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)		47°F db/43°F wb outdoor air	3.20 COP_H	
			17°F db/15°F wb outdoor air	2.05 COP_H	

For SI: 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, °C = [(°F) – 32]/1.8, wb = wet bulb, db = dry bulb.

a. Chapter 6 contains a complete specification of the referenced standards, which include test procedures, including the reference year version of the test procedure.

b. Single-phase, US air-cooled heat pumps less than 65,000 Btu/h are regulated as consumer products by the US Department of Energy Code of Federal Regulations DOE 10 CFR 430. SEER, SEER2 and HSPF values for single-phase products are set by the US Department of Energy.

c. DOE 10 CFR 430 Subpart B Appendix M1 includes the test procedure updates effective 1/1/2023 that will be incorporated in AHRI 210/240—2023.

d. This table is a replica of ASHRAE 90.1 Table 6.8.1-2 Electrically Operated Air-Cooled Unitary Heat Pumps—Minimum Efficiency Requirements.

TABLE C403.2.3(3)
MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS:
ELECTRICALLY OPERATED PACKAGED TERMINAL AIR CONDITIONERS,
PACKAGED TERMINAL HEAT PUMPS, SINGLE-PACKAGE VERTICAL AIR CONDITIONERS,
SINGLE VERTICAL HEAT PUMPS, ROOM AIR CONDITIONERS AND ROOM AIR-CONDITIONER HEAT PUMPS

EQUIPMENT TYPE	SIZE CATEGORY (INPUT)	SUBCATEGORY OR RATING CONDITION	MINIMUM EFFICIENCY	TEST PROCEDURE[a]
PTAC (cooling mode) new construction	All Capacities	95°F db outdoor air	14.0 – (0.300 × Cap/1000) EER[c]	AHRI 310/380
PTAC (cooling mode) replacements[b]	All Capacities	95°F db outdoor air	10.9 - (0.213 × Cap/1000) EER	
PTHP (cooling mode) new construction	All Capacities	95°F db outdoor air	14.0 - (0.300 × Cap/1000) EER	
PTHP (cooling mode) replacements[b]	All Capacities	95°F db outdoor air	10.8 - (0.213 × Cap/1000) EER	
PTHP (heating mode) new construction	All Capacities	—	3.2 - (0.026 × Cap/1000) COP	
PTHP (heating mode) replacements[b]	All Capacities	—	2.9 - (0.026 × Cap/1000) COP	
SPVAC (cooling mode)	< 65,000 Btu/h	95°F db/ 75°F wb outdoor air	9.0 EER	AHRI 390
	≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 135,000 Btu/h	95°F db/ 75°F wb outdoor air	8.9 EER	
	≥ 135,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h	95°F db/ 75°F wb outdoor air	8.6 EER	
SPVHP (cooling mode)	< 65,000 Btu/h	95°F db/ 75°F wb outdoor air	9.0 EER	
	≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 135,000 Btu/h	95°F db/ 75°F wb outdoor air	8.9 EER	
	≥ 135,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h	95°F db/ 75°F wb outdoor air	8.6 EER	
SPVHP (heating mode)	< 65,000 Btu/h	47°F db/ 43°F wb outdoor air	3.0 COP	AHRI 390
	≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 135,000 Btu/h	47°F db/ 43°F wb outdoor air	3.0 COP	
	≥ 135,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h	47°F db/ 75°F wb outdoor air	2.9 COP	
Room air conditioners, with louvered sides	< 6,000 Btu/h	—	9.7 SEER	ANSI/ AHAM RAC-1
	≥ 6,000 Btu/h and < 8,000 Btu/h	—	9.7 EER	
	≥ 8,000 Btu/h and < 14,000 Btu/h	—	9.8 EER	
	≥ 14,000 Btu/h and < 20,000 Btu/h	—	9.7 SEER	
	≥ 20,000 Btu/h	—	8.5 EER	
Room air conditioners, without louvered sides	< 8,000 Btu/h	—	9.0 EER	
	≥ 8,000 Btu/h and < 20,000 Btu/h	—	8.5 EER	
	≥ 20,000 Btu/h	—	8.5 EER	
Room air-conditioner heat pumps with louvered sides	< 20,000 Btu/h	—	9.0 EER	
	≥ 20,000 Btu/h	—	8.5 EER	
Room air-conditioner heat pumps without louvered sides	< 14,000 Btu/h	—	8.5 EER	
	≥ 14,000 Btu/h	—	8.0 EER	

(continued)

TABLE C403.2.3(3)—continued
MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS:
ELECTRICALLY OPERATED PACKAGED TERMINAL AIR CONDITIONERS,
PACKAGED TERMINAL HEAT PUMPS, SINGLE-PACKAGE VERTICAL AIR CONDITIONERS,
SINGLE VERTICAL HEAT PUMPS, ROOM AIR CONDITIONERS AND ROOM AIR-CONDITIONER HEAT PUMPS

EQUIPMENT TYPE	SIZE CATEGORY (INPUT)	SUBCATEGORY OR RATING CONDITION	MINIMUM EFFICIENCY	TEST PROCEDURE[a]
Room air conditioner casement only	All capacities	—	8.7 EER	ANSI/ AHAM RAC-1
Room air conditioner casement-slider	All capacities	—	9.5 EER	

For SI: 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, °C = [(°F) - 32]/1.8, wb = wet bulb, db = dry bulb.
"Cap" = The rated cooling capacity of the project in Btu/h. Where the unit's capacity is less than 7000 Btu/h, use 7000 Btu/h in the calculation. Where the unit's capacity is greater than 15,000 Btu/h, use 15,000 Btu/h in the calculations.
a. Chapter 6 contains a complete specification of the referenced test procedure, including the referenced year version of the test procedure.
b. Replacement unit shall be factory labeled as follows: "MANUFACTURED FOR REPLACEMENT APPLICATIONS ONLY: NOT TO BE INSTALLED IN NEW CONSTRUCTION PROJECTS." Replacement efficiencies apply only to units with existing sleeves less than 16 inches (406 mm) in height and less than 42 inches (1067 mm) in width.
c. Before January 1, 2015 the minimum efficiency shall be 13.8 - (0.300 × Cap/1000) EER.

[Note to RRC, Table C403.2.3(3) above is replaced with TABLE C403.3.2(4) below]

TABLE C403.3.2(4)

ELECTRICALLY OPERATED PACKAGED TERMINAL AIR CONDITIONERS, PACKAGED TERMINAL HEAT PUMPS, SINGLE-PACKAGE VERTICAL AIR CONDITIONERS, SINGLE-PACKAGE VERTICAL HEAT PUMPS, ROOM AIR CONDITIONERS AND ROOM AIR-CONDITIONER HEAT PUMPS—MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS[e]

EQUIPMENT TYPE	SIZE CATEGORY (INPUT)	SUBCATEGORY OR RATING CONDITION	MINIMUM EFFICIENCY[d]	TEST PROCEDURE[a]
PTAC (cooling mode) standard size	< 7,000 Btu/h	95°F db/75°F wb outdoor air[c]	11.9 EER	AHRI 310/380
	≥ 7,000 Btu/h and ≤ 15,000 Btu/h		14.0 – (0.300 × Cap/1,000) EER[d]	
	> 15,000 Btu/h		9.5 EER	
PTAC (cooling mode) nonstandard size[a]	< 7,000 Btu/h	95°F db/75°F wb outdoor air[c]	9.4 EER	AHRI 310/380
	≥ 7,000 Btu/h and ≤ 15,000 Btu/h		10.9 – (0.213 × Cap/1,000) EER[d]	
	> 15,000 Btu/h		7.7 EER	
PTHP (cooling mode) standard size	< 7,000 Btu/h	95°F db/75°F wb outdoor air[c]	11.9 EER	AHRI 310/380
	≥ 7,000 Btu/h and ≤ 15,000 Btu/h		14.0 – (0.300 × Cap/1,000) EER[d]	
	> 15,000 Btu/h		9.5 EER	
PTHP (cooling mode) nonstandard size[b]	< 7,000 Btu/h	95°F db/75°F wb outdoor air[c]	9.3 EER	AHRI 310/380
	≥ 7,000 Btu/h and ≤ 15,000 Btu/h		10.8 – (0.213 × Cap/1,000) EER[d]	
	> 15,000 Btu/h		7.6 EER	
PTHP (heating mode) standard size	< 7,000 Btu/h	47°F db/43°F wb outdoor air	3.3 COP_H	AHRI 310/380
	≥ 7,000 Btu/h and ≤ 15,000 Btu/h		3.7 – (0.052 × Cap/1,000) COP_H[d]	
	> 15,000 Btu/h		2.90 COP_H	
PTHP (heating mode) nonstandard size[b]	< 7,000 Btu/h	47°F db/43°F wb outdoor air	2.7 COP_H	AHRI 310/380
	≥ 7,000 Btu/h and ≤ 15,000 Btu/h		2.9 – (0.026 × Cap/1000) COP_H[d]	
	> 15,000 Btu/h		2.5 COP_H	
	< 65,000 Btu/h	95°F db/75°F wb	11.0 EER	AHRI 390

SPVAC (cooling mode) single and three phase	≥ 65,000 Btu/h and ≤ 135,000 Btu/h	outdoor air[c]	10.0 EER	
	≥ 135,000 Btu/h and ≤ 240,000 Btu/h		10.0 EER	
SPVHP (cooling mode)	< 65,000 Btu/h	95°F db/75°F wb outdoor air[c]	11.0 EER	AHRI 390
	≥ 65,000 Btu/h and ≤ 135,000 Btu/h		10.0 EER	
	≥ 135,000 Btu/h and ≤ 240,000 Btu/h		10.1 EER	
SPVHP (heating mode)	< 65,000 Btu/h	47°F db/43°F wb outdoor air	3.3 COP_H	AHRI 390
	≥ 65,000 Btu/h and ≤ 135,000 Btu/h		3.0 COP_H	
	≥ 135,000 Btu/h and ≤ 240,000 Btu/h		3.0 COP_H	

EQUIPMENT TYPE	SIZE CATEGORY (INPUT)	SUBCATEGORY OR RATING CONDITION	MINIMUM EFFICIENCY[d]	TEST PROCEDURE[a]
Room air conditioners without reverse cycle with louvered sides for applications outside US	< 6,000 Btu/h	—	11.0 CEER	ANSI/AHAM RAC-1
	≥ 6,000 Btu/h and < 8,000 Btu/h	—	11.0 CEER	
	≥ 8,000 Btu/h and < 14,000 Btu/h	—	10.9 CEER	
	≥ 14,000 Btu/h and < 20,000 Btu/h	—	10.7 CEER	
	≥ 20,000 Btu/h and < 28,000 Btu/h	—	9.4 CEER	
	≥ 28,000 Btu/h	—	9.0 CEER	
Room air conditioners without louvered sides	< 6,000 Btu/h	—	10.0 CEER	ANSI/AHAM RAC-1
	≥ 6,000 Btu/h and < 8,000 Btu/h	—	10.0 CEER	
	≥ 8,000 Btu/h and < 11,000 Btu/h	—	9.6 CEER	
	≥ 11,000 Btu/h and < 14,000 Btu/h	—	9.5 CEER	
	≥ 14,000 Btu/h and < 20,000 Btu/h	—	9.3 CEER	
	≥ 20,000 Btu/h	—	9.4 CEER	
Room air conditioners with reverse cycle, with louvered sides for applications outside US	< 20,000 Btu/h	—	9.8 CEER	ANSI/AHAM RAC-1
	≥ 20,000 Btu/h	—	9.3 CEER	
	< 14,000 Btu/h	—	9.3 CEER	ANSI/AHAM RAC-1

Room air conditioners with reverse cycle without louvered sides for applications outside US	≥ 14,000 Btu/h	—	8.7 CEER	
Room air conditioners, casement only for applications outside US	All	—	9.5 CEER	ANSI/AHAM RAC-1
Room air conditioners, casement slider for applications outside US	All	—	10.4 CEER	ANSI/AHAM RAC-1

For SI: 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, °C = [(°F) – 32]/1.8, wb = wet bulb, db = dry bulb.

"Cap" = The rated cooling capacity of the project in Btu/h. Where the unit's capacity is less than 7,000 Btu/h, use 7,000 Btu/h in the calculation. Where the unit's capacity is greater than 15,000 Btu/h, use 15,000 Btu/h in the calculations.

a. Chapter 6 contains a complete specification of the referenced standards, which include test procedures, including the reference year version of the test procedure.

b. Nonstandard size units must be factory labeled as follows: "MANUFACTURED FOR NONSTANDARD SIZE APPLICATIONS ONLY; NOT TO BE INSTALLED IN NEW STANDARD PROJECTS." Nonstandard size efficiencies apply only to units being installed in existing sleeves having an external wall opening of less than 16 inches (406 mm) high or less than 42 inches (1067 mm) wide and having a cross-sectional area less than 670 square inches (0.43 m^2).

c. The cooling-mode wet bulb temperature requirement only applies for units that reject condensate to the condenser coil.

d. "Cap" in EER and COPH equations for PTACs and PTHPs means cooling capacity in Btu/h at 95°F outdoor dry-bulb temperature.

e. This table is a replica of ASHRAE 90.1 Table 6.8.1-4 Electrically Operated Packaged Terminal Air Conditioners, Packaged Terminal Heat Pumps, Single-Package Vertical Air Conditioners, Single-Package Vertical Heat Pumps, Room Air Conditioners, and Room Air-Conditioner Heat Pumps—Minimum Efficiency Requirements.

TABLE 403.2.3(4)
WARM-AIR FURNACES AND COMBINATION WARM-AIR FURNACES/AIR-CONDITIONING UNITS, WARM-AIR DUCT FURNACES AND UNIT HEATERS, MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS

EQUIPMENT TYPE	SIZE CATEGORY (INPUT)	SUBCATEGORY OR RATING CONDITION	MINIMUM EFFICIENCY[d, e]	TEST PROCEDURE[a]
Warm-air furnaces, gas fired	< 225,000 Btu/h	—	78% AFUE or 80% E_t[c]	DOE 10 CFR Part 430 or ANSI Z21.47
	≥ 225,000 Btu/h	Maximum capacity[c]	80% E_t[f]	ANSI Z21.47
Warm-air furnaces, oil fired	< 225,000 Btu/h	—	78% AFUE or 80% E_t[c]	DOE 10 CFR Part 430 or UL 727
	≥ 225,000 Btu/h	Maximum capacity[b]	81% E_t[g]	UL 727
Warm-air duct furnaces, gas fired	All capacities	Maximum capacity[b]	80% E_c	ANSI Z83.8
Warm-air unit heaters, gas fired	All capacities	Maximum capacity[b]	80% E_c	ANSI Z83.8
Warm-air unit heaters, oil fired	All capacities	Maximum capacity[b]	80% E_c	UL 731

For SI: 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W.

a. Chapter 6 contains a complete specification of the referenced test procedure, including the referenced year version of the test procedure.

b. Minimum and maximum ratings as provided for and allowed by the unit's controls.

c. Combination units not covered by the National Appliance Energy Conservation Act of 1987 (NAECA) (3-phase power or cooling capacity greater than or equal to 65,000 Btu/h [19 kW]) shall comply with either rating.

d. E_t = Thermal efficiency. See test procedure for detailed discussion.

e. E_c = Combustion efficiency (100% less flue losses). See test procedure for detailed discussion.

f. E_c = Combustion efficiency. Units shall also include an IID, have jackets not exceeding 0.75 percent of the input rating, and have either power venting or a flue damper. A vent damper is an acceptable alternative to a flue damper for those furnaces where combustion air is drawn from the conditioned space.

g. E_t = Thermal efficiency. Units shall also include an IID, have jacket losses not exceeding 0.75 percent of the input rating, and have either power venting or a flue damper. A vent damper is an acceptable alternative to a flue damper for those furnaces where combustion air is drawn from the conditioned space.

[Note to RRC, Table C403.2.3(4) above is replaced with TABLE C403.3.2(5) below]

TABLE C403.3.2(5)

WARM-AIR FURNACES AND COMBINATION WARM-AIR FURNACES/AIR-CONDITIONING UNITS, WARM-AIR DUCT FURNACES AND UNIT HEATERS—MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS[g]

EQUIPMENT TYPE	SIZE CATEGORY (INPUT)	SUBCATEGORY OR RATING CONDITION	MINIMUM EFFICIENCY	TEST PROCEDURE[a]

Warm-air furnace, gas fired for application outside the US	< 225,000 Btu/h	Maximum capacity[c]	80% AFUE (nonweatherized) or 81% AFUE (weatherized) or 80% E_t[b, d]	DOE 10 CFR 430 Appendix N or Section 2.39, Thermal Efficiency, ANSI Z21.47
Warm-air furnace, gas fired	< 225,000 Btu/h	Maximum capacity[c]	80% E_t[b, d] before 1/1/2023 81% E_t[d] after 1/1/2023	Section 2.39, Thermal Efficiency, ANSI Z21.47
Warm-air furnace, oil fired for application outside the US	< 225,000 Btu/h	Maximum capacity[c]	83% AFUE (nonweatherized) or 78% AFUE (weatherized) or 80% E_t[b, d]	DOE 10 CFR 430 Appendix N or Section 42, Combustion, UL 727
Warm-air furnace, oil fired	< 225,000 Btu/h	Maximum capacity[c]	80% E_t before 1/1/2023 82% E_t[d] after 1/1/2023	Section 42, Combustion, UL 727
Electric furnaces for applications outside the US	< 225,000 Btu/h	All	96% AFUE	DOE 10 CFR 430 Appendix N
Warm-air duct furnaces, gas fired	All capacities	Maximum capacity[c]	80% E_c[e]	Section 2.10, Efficiency, ANSI Z83.8
Warm-air unit heaters, gas fired	All capacities	Maximum capacity[c]	80% E_c[e, f]	Section 2.10, Efficiency, ANSI Z83.8
Warm-air unit heaters, oil fired	All capacities	Maximum capacity[c]	80% E_c[e, f]	Section 40, Combustion, UL 731

For SI: 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W.

a. Chapter 6 contains a complete specification of the referenced standards, which include test procedures, including the reference year version of the test procedure.

b. Combination units (i.e., furnaces contained within the same cabinet as an air conditioner) not covered by DOE 10 CFR 430 (i.e., three-phase power or with cooling capacity greater than or equal to 65,000 Btu/h) may comply with either rating. All other units greater than 225,000 Btu/h sold in the US must meet the AFUE standards for consumer products and test using USDOE's AFUE test procedure at DOE 10 CFR 430, Subpart B, Appendix N.

c. Compliance of multiple firing rate units shall be at the maximum firing rate.

d. E_t = thermal efficiency. Units must also include an interrupted or intermittent ignition device (IID), have jacket losses not exceeding 0.75 percent of the input rating, and have either power venting or a flue damper. A vent damper is an acceptable alternative to a flue damper for those furnaces where combustion air is drawn from the conditioned space.

e. E_c = combustion efficiency (100 percent less flue losses). See test procedure for detailed discussion.

f. Units must also include an interrupted or intermittent ignition device (IID) and have either power venting or an automatic flue damper.

g. This table is a replica of ASHRAE 90.1 Table 6.8.1-5 Warm-Air Furnaces and Combination Warm-Air Furnaces/Air-Conditioning Units, Warm-Air Duct Furnaces, and Unit Heaters—Minimum Efficiency Requirements.

TABLE C403.2.3(5)
MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS: GAS- AND OIL-FIRED BOILERS

EQUIPMENT TYPE[a]	SUBCATEGORY OR RATING CONDITION	SIZE CATEGORY (INPUT)	MINIMUM EFFICIENCY[d, e]	TEST PROCEDURE
Boilers, hot water	Gas-fired	< 300,000 Btu/h	80% AFUE	10 CFR Part 430
		≥ 300,000 Btu/h and ≤ 2,500,000 Btu/h[b]	80% E_t	10 CFR Part 431
		> 2,500,000 Btu/h[a]	82% E_c	
	Oil-fired[c]	< 300,000 Btu/h	80% AFUE	10 CFR Part 430
		≥ 300,000 Btu/h and ≤ 2,500,000 Btu/h[b]	82% E_t	10 CFR Part 431
		> 2,500,000 Btu/h[a]	84% E_c	
Boilers, steam	Gas-fired	< 300,000 Btu/h	75% AFUE	10 CFR Part 430
	Gas-fired- all, except natural draft	≥ 300,000 Btu/h and ≤ 2,500,000 Btu/h[b]	79% E_t	10 CFR Part 431
		> 2,500,000 Btu/h[a]	79% E_t	
	Gas-fired-natural draft	≥ 300,000 Btu/h and ≤ 2,500,000 Btu/h[b]	77% E_t	
		> 2,500,000 Btu/h[a]	77% E_t	
	Oil-fired[c]	< 300,000 Btu/h	80% AFUE	10 CFR Part 430
		≥ 300,000 Btu/h and ≤ 2,500,000 Btu/h[b]	81% E_t	10 CFR Part 431
		> 2,500,000 Btu/h[a]	81% E_t	

For SI: 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W.

a. These requirements apply to boilers with rated input of 8,000,000 Btu/h or less that are not packaged boilers and to all packaged boilers. Minimum efficiency requirements for boilers cover all capacities of packaged boilers.

b. Maximum capacity – minimum and maximum ratings as provided for and allowed by the unit's controls.

c. Includes oil-fired (residual).

d. E_c = Combustion efficiency (100 percent less flue losses).

e. E_t = Thermal efficiency. See referenced standard for detailed information.

[Note to RRC, Table C403.2.3(5) above is replaced with TABLE C403.3.2(6) below]

TABLE C403.3.2(6)

GAS- AND OIL-FIRED BOILERS—MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS[i]

EQUIPMENT TYPE[b]	SUBCATEGORY OR RATING CONDITION	SIZE CATEGORY (INPUT)	MINIMUM EFFICIENCY	EFFICIENCY AS OF 3/2/2022	TEST PROCEDURE[a]
Boilers, hot water	Gas fired	< 300,000 Btu/h[g, h] for applications outside US	82% AFUE	82% AFUE	DOE 10 CFR 430 Appendix N
		≥ 300,000 Btu/h and ≤ 2,500,000 Btu/h[e]	80% E_t[d]	80% E_t[d]	DOE 10 CFR 431.86
		> 2,500,000 Btu/h[b]	82% E_c[c]	82% E_c[c]	
	Oil fired[f]	< 300,000 Btu/h[g,h] for applications outside US	84% AFUE	84% AFUE	DOE 10 CFR 430 Appendix N
		≥ 300,000 Btu/h and ≤ 2,500,000 Btu/h[e]	82% E_t[d]	82% E_t[d]	DOE 10 CFR 431.86
		> 2,500,000 Btu/h[b]	84% E_c[c]	84% E_c[c]	
Boilers, steam	Gas fired	< 300,000 Btu/h[g] for applications outside US	80% AFUE	80% AFUE	DOE 10 CFR 430 Appendix N
	Gas fired—all, except natural draft	≥ 300,000 Btu/h and ≤ 2,500,000 Btu/h[e]	79% E_t[d]	79% E_t[d]	DOE 10 CFR 431.86
		> 2,500,000 Btu/h[b]	79% E_t[d]	79% E_t[d]	

	Gas fired—natural draft	≥ 300,000 Btu/h and ≤ 2,500,000 Btu/h[e]	77% E_t[d]	79% E_t[d]	
		> 2,500,000 Btu/h[b]	77% E_t[d]	79% E_t[d]	
	Oil fired[f]	< 300,000 Btu/h[g] for applications outside US	82% AFUE	82% AFUE	DOE 10 CFR 430 Appendix N
		≥ 300,000 Btu/h and ≤ 2,500,000 Btu/h[e]	81% E_t[d]	81% E_t[d]	DOE 10 CFR 431.86
		> 2,500,000 Btu/h[b]	81% E_t[d]	81% E_t[d]	

For SI: 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W.

a. Chapter 6 contains a complete specification of the referenced standards, which include test procedures, including the reference year version of the test procedure.

b. These requirements apply to boilers with rated input of 8,000,000 Btu/h or less that are not packaged boilers and to all packaged boilers. Minimum efficiency requirements for boilers cover all capacities of packaged boilers.

c. E_c = Combustion efficiency (100 percent less flue losses).

d. E_t = Thermal efficiency.

e. Maximum capacity—minimum and maximum ratings as provided for and allowed by the unit's controls.

f. Includes oil-fired (residual).

g. Boilers shall not be equipped with a constant burning pilot light.

h. A boiler not equipped with a tankless domestic water-heating coil shall be equipped with an automatic means for adjusting the temperature of the water such that an incremental change in inferred heat load produces a corresponding incremental change in the temperature of the water supplied.

i. This table is a replica of ASHRAE 90.1 Table 6.8.1-6 Gas- and Oil-Fired Boilers—Minimum Efficiency Requirements.

TABLE C403.2.3(6)
MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS:
CONDENSING UNITS, ELECTRICALLY OPERATED

EQUIPMENT TYPE	SIZE CATEGORY	MINIMUM EFFICIENCY[b]	TEST PROCEDURE[a]
Condensing units, air cooled	≥ 135,000 Btu/h	10.1 EER 11.2 IPLV	AHRI 365
Condensing units, water or evaporatively cooled	≥ 135,000 Btu/h	13.1 EER 13.1 IPLV	

For SI: 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W.

a. Chapter 6 contains a complete specification of the referenced test procedure, including the referenced year version of the test procedure.

b. IPLVs are only applicable to equipment with capacity modulation.

TABLE C403.2.3(7)
WATER CHILLING PACKAGES – EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS[a, b, d]

EQUIPMENT TYPE	SIZE CATEGORY	UNITS	BEFORE 1/1/2015 Path A	BEFORE 1/1/2015 Path B	AS OF 1/1/2015 Path A	AS OF 1/1/2015 Path B	TEST PROCEDURE[c]
Air-cooled chillers	< 150 Tons	EER (Btu/W)	≥ 9.562 FL	NA[c]	≥ 10.100 FL	≥ 9.700 FL	AHRI 550/ 590
			≥ 12.500 IPLV		≥ 13.700 IPLV	≥ 15,800 IPLV	
	≥ 150 Tons		≥ 9.562 FL	NA[c]	≥ 10.100 FL	≥ 9.700 FL	
			≥ 12.500 IPLV		≥ 14.000 IPLV	≥ 16.100 IPLV	
Air cooled without condenser, electrically operated	All capacities	EER (Btu/W)	Air-cooled chillers without condenser shall be rated with matching condensers and complying with air-cooled chiller efficiency requirements.				
Water cooled, electrically operated positive displacement	< 75 Tons	kW/ton	≤ 0.780 FL	≤ 0.800 FL	≤ 0.750 FL	≤ 0.780 FL	
			≤ 0.630 IPLV	≤ 0.600 IPLV	≤ 0.600 IPLV	≤ 0.500 IPLV	
	≥ 75 tons and < 150 tons		≤ 0.775 FL	≤ 0.790 FL	≤ 0.7[illegible]0 FL	≤ 0.750 FL	
			≤ 0.615 IPLV	≤ 0.586 IPLV	≤ 0.560 IPLV	≤ 0.490 IPLV	
	≥ 150 tons and < 300 tons		≤ 0.680 FL	≤ 0.718 FL	≤ 0.660 FL	≤ 0.680 FL	
			≤ 0.580 IPLV	≤ 0.540 IPLV	≤ 0.540 IPLV	≤ 0.440 IPLV	
	≥ 300 tons and < 600 tons		≤ 0.620 FL	≤ 0.6[illegible]9 FL	≤ 0.610 FL	≤ 0.625 FL	
			≤ 0.540 IPLV	≤ 0.490 IPLV	≤ 0.520 IPLV	≤ 0.410 IPLV	
	≥ 600 tons		≤ 0.620 FL	≤ 0.639 FL	≤ 0.560 FL	≤ 0.585 FL	
			≤ 0.540 IPLV	≤ 0.490 IPLV	≤ 0.500 IPLV	≤ 0.380 IPLV	
Water cooled, electrically operated centrifugal	< 150 Tons	kW/ton	≤ 0.6[illegible]4 FL	≤ 0.639 FL	≤ 0.610 FL	≤ 0.695 FL	
			≤ 0.596 IPLV	≤ 0.450 IPLV	≤ 0.550 IPLV	≤ 0.440 IPLV	
	≥ 150 tons and < 300 tons		≤ 0.634 FL	≤ 0.639 FL	≤ 0.610 FL	≤ 0.635 FL	
			≤ 0.596 IPLV	≤ 0.450 IPLV	≤ 0.550 IPLV	≤ 0.400 IPLV	
	≥ 300 tons and < 400 tons		≤ 0.576 FL	≤ 0.600 FL	≤ 0.560 FL	≤ 0.595 FL	
			≤ 0.549 IPLV	≤ 0.400 IPLV	≤ 0.520 IPLV	≤ 0.390 IPLV	
	≥ 400 tons and < 600 tons		≤ 0.576 FL	≤ 0.600 FL	≤ 0.560 FL	≤ 0.585 FL	
			≤ 0.549 IPLV	≤ 0.400 IPLV	≤ 0.500 IPLV	≤ 0.380 IPLV	
	≥ 600 Tons		≤ 0.570 FL	≤ 0.590 FL	≤ 0.560 FL	≤ 0.585 FL	
			≤ 0.539 IPLV	≤ 0.400 IPLV	≤ 0.5[illegible]0 IPLV	≤ 0.380 IPLV	
Air cooled, absorption, single effect	All capacities	COP	≥ 0.600 FL	NA[c]	≥ 0.600 FL	NA[c]	AHRI 560
Water cooled absorption, single effect	All capacities	COP	≥ 0.700 FL	NA[c]	≥ 0.700 FL	NA[c]	
Absorption, double effect, indirect fired	All capacities	COP	≥ 1.000 FL	NA[c]	≥ 1.000 FL	NA[c]	
			≥ 1.050 IPLV		≥ 1.050 IPLV		
Absorption double effect direct fired	All capacities	COP	≥ 1.000 FL	NA[c]	≥ 1.000 FL	NA[c]	
			≥ 1.000 IPLV		≥ 1.050 IPLV		

a. The requirements for centrifugal chiller shall be adjusted for nonstandard rating conditions in accordance with Section C403.2.3.1 and are only applicable for the range of conditions listed in Section C403.2.3.1. The requirements for air-cooled, water-cooled positive displacement and absorption chillers are at standard rating conditions defined in the reference test procedure.
b. Both the full-load and IPLV requirements shall be met or exceeded to comply with this standard. Where there is a Path B, compliance can be with either Path A or Path B for any application.
c. NA means the requirements are not applicable for Path B and only Path A can be used for compliance.
d. FL represents the full-load performance requirements and IPLV the part-load performance requirements.

[Note to RRC – Table C403.2.3(7) from 2018 above replaced with Table C403.3.2(3) below]

TABLE C403.3.2(3)
WATER-CHILLING PACKAGES—MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS[a, b, e, f]

EQUIPMENT TYPE	SIZE CATEGORY	UNITS	PATH A	PATH B	TEST PROCEDURE[c]
Air cooled chillers	< 150 tons	EER (Btu/Wh)	≥ 10.100 FL	≥ 9.700 FL	AHRI 550/590
			≥ 13.700 IPLV.IP	≥ 15.800 IPLV.IP	
	≥ 150 tons		≥ 10.100 FL	≥ 9.700FL	
			≥ 14.000 IPLV.IP	≥ 16.100 IPLV.IP	
Air cooled without condenser, electrically operated	All capacities	EER (Btu/Wh)	Air-cooled chillers without condenser must be rated with matching condensers and comply with air-cooled chiller efficiency requirements		AHRI 550/590

Water cooled, electrically operated positive displacement	< 75 tons	kW/ton	≤ 0.750 FL	≤ 0.780 FL	AHRI 550/590
			≤ 0.600 IPLV.IP	≤ 0.500 IPLV.IP	
	≥ 75 tons and < 150 tons		≤ 0.720 FL	≤ 0.750 FL	
			≤ 0.560 IPLV.IP	≤ 0.490 IPLV.IP	
	≥ 150 tons and < 300 tons		≤ 0.660 FL	≤ 0.680 FL	
			≤ 0.540 IPLV.IP	≤ 0.440 IPLV.IP	
	≥ 300 tons and < 600 tons		≤ 0.610 FL	≤ 0.625 FL	
			≤ 0.520 IPLV.IP	≤ 0.410 IPLV.IP	
	≥ 600 tons		≤ 0.560 FL	≤ 0.585 FL	
			≤ 0.500 IPLV.IP	≤ 0.380 IPLV.IP	
Water cooled, electrically operated centrifugal	< 150 tons	kW/ton	≤ 0.610 FL	≤ 0.695 FL	AHRI 550/590
			≤ 0.550 IPLV.IP	≤ 0.440 IPLV.IP	
			≤ 0.610 FL	≤ 0.635 FL	
			≤ 0.550 IPLV.IP	≤ 0.400 IPLV.IP	
	≥ 300 tons and < 400 tons		≤ 0.560 FL	≤ 0.595 FL	
			≤ 0.520 IPLV.IP	≤ 0.390 IPLV.IP	
	≥ 400 tons and < 600 tons		≤ 0.560 FL	≤ 0.585 FL	
			≤ 0.500 IPLV.IP	≤ 0.380 IPLV.IP	
	≥ 600 tons		≤ 0.560 FL	≤ 0.585 FL	
			≤ 0.500 IPLV.IP	≤ 0.380 IPLV.IP	
Air cooled absorption, single effect	All capacities	COP (W/W)	≥ 0.600 FL	NA[d]	AHRI 560
Water cooled absorption, single effect	All capacities	COP (W/W)	≥ 0.700 FL	NA[d]	AHRI 560
Absorption double effect, indirect fired	All capacities	COP (W/W)	≥ 1.000 FL	NA[d]	AHRI 560
			≥ 0.150 IPLV.IP		
Absorption double effect, direct fired	All capacities	COP (W/W)	≥ 1.000 FL	NA[d]	AHRI 560
			≥ 1.000 IPLV		

a. Chapter 6 contains a complete specification of the referenced standards, which include test procedures, including the reference year version of the test procedure.

b. The requirements for centrifugal chillers shall be adjusted for nonstandard rating conditions per Section C403.3.2.1 and are applicable only for the range of conditions listed there. The requirements for air-cooled, water-cooled positive displacement and absorption chillers are at standard rating conditions defined in the reference test procedure.

c. Both the full-load and IPLV.IP requirements must be met or exceeded to comply with this standard. When there is a Path B, compliance can be with either Path A or Path B for any application.

d. NA means the requirements are not applicable for Path B, and only Path A can be used for compliance.
e. FL is the full-load performance requirements, and IPLV.IP is for the part-load performance requirements.
f. This table is a replica of ASHRAE 90.1 Table 6.8.1-3 Water-Chilling Packages—Minimum Efficiency Requirements.

TABLE C403.2.3(8)
MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS:
HEAT REJECTION EQUIPMENT

EQUIPMENT TYPE[a]	TOTAL SYSTEM HEAT REJECTION CAPACITY AT RATED CONDITIONS	SUBCATEGORY OR RATING CONDITION[i]	PERFORMANCE REQUIRED[b, c, d, g, h]	TEST PROCEDURE[e, f]
Propeller or axial fan open-circuit cooling towers	All	95°F entering water 85°F leaving water 75°F entering wb	≥ 40.2 gpm/hp	CTI ATC-105 and CTI STD-201
Centrifugal fan open-circuit cooling towers	All	95°F entering water 85°F leaving water 75°F entering wb	≥ 20.0 gpm/hp	CTI ATC-105 and CTI STD-201
Propeller or axial fan closed-circuit cooling towers	All	102°F entering water 90°F leaving water 75°F entering wb	≥ 14.0 gpm/hp	CTI ATC-105S and CTI STD-201
Centrifugal fan closed-circuit cooling towers	All	102°F entering water 90°F leaving water 75°F entering wb	≥ 7.0 gpm/hp	CTI ATC-105S and CTI STD-201
Propeller or axial fan evaporative condensers	All	Ammonia Test Fluid 140°F entering gas temperature 96.3°F condensing temperature 75°F entering wb	≥ 134,000 Btu/h·hp	CTI ATC-106
Centrifugal fan evaporative condensers	All	Ammonia Test Fluid 140°F entering gas temperature 96.3°F condensing temperature 75°F entering wb	≥110,000 Btu/h·hp	CTI ATC-106
Propeller or axial fan evaporative condensers	All	R-507A Test Fluid 165°F entering gas temperature 105°F condensing temperature 75°F entering wb	≥ 157,000 Btu/h·hp	CTI ATC-106
Centrifugal fan evaporative condensers	All	R-507A Test Fluid 165°F entering gas temperature 105°F condensing temperature 75°F entering wb	≥ 135,000 Btu/h·hp	CTI ATC-106
Air-cooled condensers	All	125°F Condensing Temperature 190°F Entering Gas Temperature 15°F subcooling 95°F entering db	≥ 176,000 Btu/h·hp	AHRI 460

For SI: °C = [(°F)-32]/1.8, L/s · kW = (gpm/hp)/(11.83), COP = (Btu/h · hp)/(2550.7),
db = dry bulb temperature, °F, wb = wet bulb temperature, °F.

a. The efficiencies and test procedures for both open- and closed-circuit cooling towers are not applicable to hybrid cooling towers that contain a combination of wet and dry heat exchange sections.
b. For purposes of this table, open-circuit cooling tower performance is defined as the water flow rating of the tower at the thermal rating condition listed in Table 403.2.3(8) divided by the fan nameplate-rated motor power.
c. For purposes of this table, closed-circuit cooling tower performance is defined as the water flow rating of the tower at the thermal rating condition listed in Table 403.2.3(8) divided by the sum of the fan nameplate-rated motor power and the spray pump nameplate-rated motor power.
d. For purposes of this table, air-cooled condenser performance is defined as the heat rejected from the refrigerant divided by the fan nameplate-rated motor power.
e. Chapter 6 contains a complete specification of the referenced test procedure, including the referenced year version of the test procedure. The certification requirements do not apply to field-erected cooling towers.
f. Where a certification program exists for a covered product and it includes provisions for verification and challenge of equipment efficiency ratings, then the product shall be listed in the certification program; or, where a certification program exists for a covered product, and it includes provisions for verification and challenge of equipment efficiency ratings, but the product is not listed in the existing certification program, the ratings shall be verified by an independent laboratory test report.
g. Cooling towers shall comply with the minimum efficiency listed in the table for that specific type of tower with the capacity effect of any project-specific accessories and/or options included in the capacity of the cooling tower
h. For purposes of this table, evaporative condenser performance is defined as the heat rejected at the specified rating condition in the table divided by the sum of the fan motor nameplate power and the integral spray pump nameplate power
i. Requirements for evaporative condensers are listed with ammonia (R-717) and R-507A as test fluids in the table. Evaporative condensers intended for use with halocarbon refrigerants other than R-507A shall meet the minimum efficiency requirements listed in this table with R-507A as the test fluid.

[Note to RRC – Table C403.2.3(8) from 2018 above replaced with Table C403.3.2(7) below]

TABLE C403.3.2(7)

PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS FOR HEAT REJECTION EQUIPMENT—MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS[i]

EQUIPMENT TYPE	TOTAL SYSTEM HEAT-REJECTION CAPACITY AT RATED CONDITIONS	SUBCATEGORY OR RATING CONDITION[h]	PERFORMANCE REQUIRED[b, c, d, f, g]	TEST PROCEDURE[a, e]
Propeller or axial fan open-circuit cooling towers	All	95°F entering water 85°F leaving water 75°F entering wb	≥ 40.2 gpm/hp	CTI ATC-105 and CTI STD-201 RS
Centrifugal fan open-circuit cooling towers	All	95°F entering water 85°F leaving water 75°F entering wb	≥ 20.0 gpm/hp	CTI ATC-105 and CTI STD-201 RS
Propeller or axial fan closed-circuit cooling towers	All	102°F entering water 90°F leaving water 75°F entering wb	~~>=14.0 gpm/hp~~ ≥ 16.1 gpm/hp	CTI ATC-105S and CTI STD-201 RS
Centrifugal fan closed-circuit cooling towers	All	102°F entering water 90°F leaving water 75°F entering wb	≥ 7.0 gpm/hp	CTI ATC-105S and CTI STD-201 RS
Propeller or axial fan dry coolers (air-cooled fluid coolers)	All	115°F entering water 105°F leaving water 95°F entering wb	≥ 4.5 gpm/hp	CTI ATC-105DS
Propeller or axial fan evaporative condensers	All	R-448A test fluid 165°F entering gas temperature 105°F condensing temperature 75°F entering wb	≥ 160,000 Btu/h × hp	CTI ATC-106
Propeller or axial fan evaporative condensers	All	Ammonia test fluid 140°F entering gas temperature 96.3°F condensing temperature 75°F entering wb	≥ 134,000 Btu/h × hp	CTI ATC-106
Centrifugal fan evaporative condensers	All	R-448A test fluid 165°F entering gas temperature 105°F condensing temperature 75°F entering wb	≥ 137,000 Btu/h × hp	CTI ATC-106
Centrifugal fan evaporative condensers	All	Ammonia test fluid 140°F entering gas temperature 96.3°F condensing temperature 75°F entering wb	≥ 110,000 Btu/h × hp	CTI ATC-106
Air-cooled condensers	All	125°F condensing temperature 190°F entering gas temperature 15°F subcooling 95°F entering db	≥ 176,000 Btu/h × hp	AHRI 460

For SI: °C = [(°F) – 32]/1.8, L/s × kW = (gpm/hp)/(11.83), COP = (Btu/h × hp)/(2550.7), db = dry bulb temperature, wb = wet bulb temperature.

a. Chapter 6 contains a complete specification of the referenced standards, which include test procedures, including the reference year version of the test procedure.
b. For purposes of this table, open-circuit cooling tower performance is defined as the water-flow rating of the tower at the thermal rating condition listed in the table divided by the fan motor nameplate power.
c. For purposes of this table, closed-circuit cooling tower performance is defined as the process water-flow rating of the tower at the thermal rating condition listed in the table divided by the sum of the fan motor nameplate power and the integral spray pump motor nameplate power.
d. For purposes of this table, dry-cooler performance is defined as the process water-flow rating of the unit at the thermal rating condition listed in the table divided by the total fan motor nameplate power of the unit, and air-cooled condenser performance is defined as the heat rejected from the refrigerant divided by the total fan motor nameplate power of the unit.
e. The efficiencies and test procedures for both open- and closed-circuit cooling towers are not applicable to hybrid cooling towers that contain a combination of separate wet and dry heat exchange sections. The certification requirements do not apply to field-erected cooling towers.
f. All cooling towers shall comply with the minimum efficiency listed in the table for that specific type of tower with the capacity effect of any project-specific accessories and/or options included in the capacity of the cooling tower.
g. For purposes of this table, evaporative condenser performance is defined as the heat rejected at the specified rating condition in the table, divided by the sum of the fan motor nameplate power and the integral spray pump nameplate power.
h. Requirements for evaporative condensers are listed with ammonia (R-717) and R-448A as test fluids in the table. Evaporative condensers intended for use with halocarbon refrigerants other than R-448A must meet the minimum efficiency requirements listed with R-448A as the test fluid. For ammonia, the condensing temperature is defined as the saturation temperature corresponding to the refrigerant pressure at the condenser entrance. For R-448A, which is a zeotropic refrigerant, the condensing temperature is defined as the arithmetic average of the dew point and the bubble point temperatures corresponding to the refrigerant pressure at the condenser entrance.
i. This table is a replica of ASHRAE 90.1 Table 6.8.1-7 Performance Requirements for Heat Rejection Equipment—Minimum Efficiency Requirements.

TABLE C403.3.2(8)

ELECTRICALLY OPERATED VARIABLE-REFRIGERANT-FLOW AIR CONDITIONERS—MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS[b]

EQUIPMENT TYPE	SIZE CATEGORY	HEATING SECTION TYPE	SUBCATEGORY OR RATING CONDITION	MINIMUM EFFICIENCY	TEST PROCEDURE[a]
VRF air conditioners, air cooled	< 65,000 Btu/h	All	VRF multisplit system	13.0 SEER	AHRI 1230
	≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 135,000 Btu/h	Electric resistance (or none)	VRF multisplit system	11.2 EER 13.1 IEER 15.5 IEER	
	≥ 135,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h	Electric resistance (or none)	VRF multisplit system	11.0 EER 12.9 IEER 14.9 IEER	
	≥ 240,000 Btu/h	Electric resistance (or none)	VRF multisplit system	10.0 EER 11.6 IEER 13.9 IEER	

For SI: 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W.
a. Chapter 6 contains a complete specification of the referenced standards, which include test procedures, including the reference year version of the test procedure.
b. This table is a replica of ASHRAE 90.1 Table 6.8.1-8 Electrically Operated Variable-Refrigerant-Flow Air Conditioners—Minimum Efficiency Requirements.

TABLE C403.3.2(9)

ELECTRICALLY OPERATED VARIABLE-REFRIGERANT-FLOW AND APPLIED HEAT PUMPS—MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS[b]

EQUIPMENT TYPE	SIZE CATEGORY	HEATING SECTION TYPE	SUBCATEGORY OR RATING CONDITION	MINIMUM EFFICIENCY	TEST PROCEDURE[a]
VRF air cooled (cooling mode)	< 65,000 Btu/h	All	VRF multisplit system	13.0 SEER	AHRI 1230
	≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 135,000 Btu/h	Electric resistance (or none)		11.0 EER 12.9 IEER 14.6 IEER	
			VRF multisplit system with heat recovery	10.8 EER 12.7 IEER 14.4 IEER	

	≥ 135,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h		VRF multisplit system	10.6 EER 12.3 IEER 13.9 IEER	
			VRF multisplit system with heat recovery	10.4 EER 12.1 IEER 13.7 IEER	
	≥ 240,000 Btu/h		VRF multisplit system	9.5 EER 11.0 IEER 12.7 IEER	
			VRF multisplit system with heat recovery	9.3 EER 10.8 IEER 12.5 IEER	
VRF water source (cooling mode)	< 65,000 Btu/h	All	VRF multisplit systems 86°F entering water	12.0 EER 16.0 IEER	AHRI 1230
			VRF multisplit systems with heat recovery 86°F entering water	11.8 EER 15.8 IEER	
	≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 135,000 Btu/h		VRF multisplit system 86°F entering water	12.0 EER 16.0 IEER	
			VRF multisplit system with heat recovery 86°F entering water	11.8 EER 15.8 IEER	
	≥ 135,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h		VRF multisplit system 86°F entering water	10.0 EER 14.0 IEER	
			VRF multisplit system with heat recovery 86°F entering water	9.8 EER 13.8 IEER	
	≥ 240,000 Btu/h		VRF multisplit system 86°F entering water	10.0 EER 12.0 IEER	
			VRF multisplit system with heat recovery 86°F entering water	9.8 EER 11.8 IEER	
VRF groundwater source (cooling mode)	< 135,000 Btu/h	All	VRF multisplit system 59°F entering water	16.2 EER	AHRI 1230
			VRF multisplit system with heat recovery 59°F entering water	16.0 EER	
	≥ 135,000 Btu/h		VRF multisplit system 59°F entering water	13.8 EER	
			VRF multisplit system with heat recovery 59°F entering water	13.6 EER	

EQUIPMENT TYPE	SIZE CATEGORY	HEATING SECTION TYPE	SUBCATEGORY OR RATING CONDITION	MINIMUM EFFICIENCY	TEST PROCEDURE[a]
	< 135,000 Btu/h	All	VRF multisplit system 77°F entering water	13.4 EER	AHRI 1230

VRF ground source (cooling mode)			VRF multisplit system with heat recovery 77°F entering water	13.2 EER	
	≥ 135,000 Btu/h		VRF multisplit system 77°F entering water	11.0 EER	
			VRF multisplit system with heat recovery 77°F entering water	10.8 EER	
VRF air cooled (heating mode)	< 65,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)		VRF multisplit system	7.7 HSPF	AHRI 1230
	≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 135,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)		VRF multisplit system 47°F db/43°F wb outdoor air	3.3 COP_H	
			17°F db/15°F wb outdoor air	2.25 COP_H	
	≥ 135,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)		VRF multisplit system 47°F db/43°F wb outdoor air	3.2 COP_H	
			17°F db/15°F wb outdoor air	2.05 COP_H	
VRF water source (heating mode)	< 65,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)		VRF multisplit system 68°F entering water	4.2 COP_H 4.3 COP_H	AHRI 1230
	≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 135,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)		VRF multisplit system 68°F entering water	4.2 COP_H 4.3 COP_H	
	≥ 135,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)		VRF multisplit system 68°F entering water	3.9 COP_H 4.0 COP_H	
	≥ 240,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)		VRF multisplit system 68°F entering water	3.9 COP_H	
VRF groundwater source (heating mode)	< 135,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)		VRF multisplit system 50°F entering water	3.6 COP_H	AHRI 1230
	≥ 135,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)		VRF multisplit system 50°F entering water	3.3 COP_H	
VRF ground source (heating mode)	< 135,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)		VRF multisplit system 32°F entering water	3.1 COP_H	AHRI 1230
	≥ 135,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)		VRF multisplit system 32°F entering water	2.8 COP_H	

For SI: °C = [(°F) – 32]/1.8, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, db = dry bulb temperature, wb = wet bulb temperature.

a. Chapter 6 contains a complete specification of the referenced standards, which include test procedures, including the reference year version of the test procedure.

b. This table is a replica of ASHRAE 90.1 Table 6.8.1-9 Electrically Operated Variable-Refrigerant-Flow and Applied Heat Pumps—Minimum Efficiency Requirements.

TABLE C403.2.3(9)
MINIMUM EFFICIENCY AIR CONDITIONERS AND CONDENSING UNITS SERVING COMPUTER ROOMS

EQUIPMENT TYPE	NET SENSIBLE COOLING CAPACITY[a]	MINIMUM SCOP-127[b] EFFICIENCY DOWNFLOW UNITS / UPFLOW UNITS	TEST PROCEDURE
Air conditioners, air cooled	< 65,000 Btu/h	2.20 / 2.09	ANSI/ASHRAE 127
	≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h	2.10 / 1.99	
	≥ 240,000 Btu/h	1.90 / 1.79	
Air conditioners, water cooled	< 65,000 Btu/h	2.60 / 2.49	
	≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h	2.50 / 2.39	
	≥ 240,000 Btu/h	2.40 /2.29	
Air conditioners, water cooled with fluid economizer	< 65,000 Btu/h	2.55 /2.44	
	≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h	2.45 / 2.34	
	≥ 240,000 Btu/h	2.35 / 2.24	
Air conditioners, glycol cooled (rated at 40% propylene glycol)	< 65,000 Btu/h	2.50 / 2.39	
	≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h	2.15 / 2.04	
	≥ 240,000 Btu/h	2.10 / 1.99	
Air conditioners, glycol cooled (rated at 40% propylene glycol) with fluid economizer	< 65,000 Btu/h	2.45 / 2.34	
	≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h	2.10 / 1.99	
	≥ 240,000 Btu/h	2.05 / 1.94	

For SI: 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W.

a. Net sensible cooling capacity: the total gross cooling capacity less the latent cooling less the energy to the air movement system. (Total Gross – latent – Fan Power).

b. Sensible coefficient of performance (SCOP-127): a ratio calculated by dividing the net sensible cooling capacity in watts by the total power input in watts (excluding reheaters and humidifiers) at conditions defined in ASHRAE Standard 127. The net sensible cooling capacity is the gross sensible capacity minus the energy dissipated into the cooled space by the fan system.

TABLE C403.3.2(10)

FLOOR-MOUNTED AIR CONDITIONERS AND CONDENSING UNITS SERVING COMPUTER ROOMS—MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS[b]

EQUIPMENT TYPE	STANDARD MODEL	NET SENSIBLE COOLING CAPACITY	MINIMUM NET SENSIBLE COP	RATING CONDITIONS RETURN AIR (dry bulb/dew point)	TEST PROCEDURE[a]
Air cooled	Downflow	< 80,000 Btu/h	2.70	85°F/52°F (Class 2)	AHRI 1360
		≥ 80,000 Btu/h and < 295,000 Btu/h	2.58		
		≥ 295,000 Btu/h	2.36		
	Upflow—ducted	< 80,000 Btu/h	2.67		
		≥ 80,000 Btu/h and < 295,000 Btu/h	2.55		
		≥ 295,000 Btu/h	2.33		
	Upflow—nonducted	< 65,000 Btu/h	2.16	75°F/52°F (Class 1)	
		≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h	2.04		
		≥ 240,000 Btu/h	1.89		
	Horizontal	< 65,000 Btu/h	2.65	95°F/52°F (Class 3)	
		≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h	2.55		
		≥ 240,000 Btu/h	2.47		
Air cooled with fluid economizer	Downflow	< 80,000 Btu/h	2.70	85°F/52°F (Class 1)	AHRI 1360
		≥ 80,000 Btu/h and < 295,000 Btu/h	2.58		
		≥ 295,000 Btu/h	2.36		
	Upflow—ducted	< 80,000 Btu/h	2.67		

		≥ 80,000 Btu/h and < 295,000 Btu/h	2.55		
		≥ 295,000 Btu/h	2.33		
	Upflow—nonducted	< 65,000 Btu/h	2.09	75°F/52°F (Class 1)	
		≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h	1.99		
		≥ 240,000 Btu/h	1.81		
	Horizontal	< 65,000 Btu/h	2.65	95°F/52°F (Class 3)	
		≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h	2.55		
		≥ 240,000 Btu/h	2.47		
Water cooled	Downflow	< 80,000 Btu/h	2.82	85°F/52°F (Class 1)	AHRI 1360
		≥ 80,000 Btu/h and < 295,000 Btu/h	2.73		
		≥ 295,000 Btu/h	2.67		
	Upflow—ducted	< 80,000 Btu/h	2.79		
		≥ 80,000 Btu/h and < 295,000 Btu/h	2.70		
		≥ 295,000 Btu/h	2.64		
	Upflow—nonducted	< 65,000 Btu/h	2.43	75°F/52°F (Class 1)	
		≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h	2.32		
		≥ 240,000 Btu/h	2.20		
	Horizontal	< 65,000 Btu/h	2.79	95°F/52°F (Class 3)	
		≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h	2.68		
		≥ 240,000 Btu/h	2.60		

EQUIPMENT TYPE	STANDARD MODEL	NET SENSIBLE COOLING CAPACITY	MINIMUM NET SENSIBLE COP	RATING CONDITIONS RETURN AIR (dry bulb/dew point)	TEST PROCEDURE[a]
Water cooled with fluid economizer	Downflow	< 80,000 Btu/h	2.77	85°F/52°F (Class 1)	AHRI 1360
		≥ 80,000 Btu/h and < 295,000 Btu/h	2.68		
		≥ 295,000 Btu/h	2.61		
	Upflow—ducted	< 80,000 Btu/h	2.74		
		≥ 80,000 Btu/h and < 295,000 Btu/h	2.65		
		≥ 295,000 Btu/h	2.58		
	Upflow—nonducted	< 65,000 Btu/h	2.35	75°F/52°F (Class 1)	
		≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h	2.24		
		≥ 240,000 Btu/h	2.12		
	Horizontal	< 65,000 Btu/h	2.71	95°F/52°F (Class 3)	
		≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h	2.60		

		≥ 240,000 Btu/h	2.54		
Glycol cooled	Downflow	< 80,000 Btu/h	2.56	85°F/52°F (Class 1)	AHRI 1360
		≥ 80,000 Btu/h and < 295,000 Btu/h	2.24		
		≥ 295,000 Btu/h	2.21		
	Upflow—ducted	< 80,000 Btu/h	2.53		
		≥ 80,000 Btu/h and < 295,000 Btu/h	2.21		
		≥ 295,000 Btu/h	2.18		
	Upflow, nonducted	< 65,000 Btu/h	2.08	75°F/52°F (Class 1)	
		≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h	1.90		
		≥ 240,000 Btu/h	1.81		
	Horizontal	< 65,000 Btu/h	2.48	95°F/52°F (Class 3)	
		≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h	2.18		
		≥ 240,000 Btu/h	2.18		
Glycol cooled with fluid economizer	Downflow	< 80,000 Btu/h	2.51	85°F/52°F (Class 1)	AHRI 1360
		≥ 80,000 Btu/h and < 295,000 Btu/h	2.19		
		≥ 295,000 Btu/h	2.15		
	Upflow—ducted	< 80,000 Btu/h	2.48		
		≥ 80,000 Btu/h and < 295,000 Btu/h	2.16		
		≥ 295,000 Btu/h	2.12		
	Upflow—nonducted	< 65,000 Btu/h	2.00	75°F/52°F (Class 1)	
		≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h	1.82		
		≥ 240,000 Btu/h	1.73		
	Horizontal	< 65,000 Btu/h	2.44	95°F/52°F (Class 3)	
		≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h	2.10		
		≥ 240,000 Btu/h	2.10		

For SI: 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, °C = [(°F) – 32]/1.8, COP = (Btu/h × hp)/(2,550.7).

a. Chapter 6 contains a complete specification of the referenced standards, which include test procedures, including the reference year version of the test procedure.

b. This table is a replica of ASHRAE 90.1 Table 6.8.1-10 Floor-Mounted Air Conditioners and Condensing Units Serving Computer Rooms—Minimum Efficiency Requirements.

TABLE C403.3.2(11)

VAPOR-COMPRESSION-BASED INDOOR POOL DEHUMIDIFIERS—MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS[b]

EQUIPMENT TYPE	SUBCATEGORY OR RATING CONDITION	MINIMUM EFFICIENCY	TEST PROCEDURE[a]
Single package indoor (with or without economizer)	Rating Conditions: A or C	3.5 MRE	AHRI 910
Single package indoor water cooled (with or without economizer)	Rating Conditions: A, B or C	3.5 MRE	

Single package indoor air cooled (with or without economizer)	Rating Conditions: A, B or C	3.5 MRE	
Split system indoor air cooled (with or without economizer)	Rating Conditions: A, B or C	3.5 MRE	

a. Chapter 6 contains a complete specification of the referenced standards, which include test procedures, including the reference year version of the test procedure.

b. This table is a replica of ASHRAE 90.1 Table 6.8.1-12 Vapor-Compression-Based Indoor Pool Dehumidifiers—Minimum Efficiency Requirements.

TABLE C403.3.2(12)

ELECTRICALLY OPERATED DX-DOAS UNITS, SINGLE-PACKAGE AND REMOTE CONDENSER, WITHOUT ENERGY RECOVERY—MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS[b]

EQUIPMENT TYPE	SUBCATEGORY OR RATING CONDITION	MINIMUM EFFICIENCY	TEST PROCEDURE[a]
Air cooled (dehumidification mode)	—	4.0 ISMRE	AHRI 920
Air-source heat pumps (dehumidification mode)	—	4.0 ISMRE	AHRI 920
Water cooled (dehumidification mode)	Cooling tower condenser water	4.9 ISMRE	AHRI 920
	Chilled water	6.0 ISMRE	
Air-source heat pump (heating mode)	—	2.7 ISCOP	AHRI 920
Water-source heat pump (dehumidification mode)	Ground source, closed loop	4.8 ISMRE	AHRI 920
	Ground-water source	5.0 ISMRE	
	Water source	4.0 ISMRE	
Water-source heat pump (heating mode)	Ground source, closed loop	2.0 ISCOP	AHRI 920
	Ground-water source	3.2 ISCOP	
	Water source	3.5 ISCOP	

a. Chapter 6 contains a complete specification of the referenced standards, which include test procedures, including the reference year version of the test procedure.

b. This table is a replica of ASHRAE 90.1 Table 6.8.1-13 Electrically Operated DX-DOAS Units, Single-Package and Remote Condenser, without Energy Recovery—Minimum Efficiency Requirements.

TABLE C403.3.2(13)

ELECTRICALLY OPERATED DX-DOAS UNITS, SINGLE-PACKAGE AND REMOTE CONDENSER, WITH ENERGY RECOVERY—MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS[b]

EQUIPMENT TYPE	SUBCATEGORY OR RATING CONDITION	MINIMUM EFFICIENCY	TEST PROCEDURE[a]
Air cooled (dehumidification mode)	—	5.2 ISMRE	AHRI 920
Air-source heat pumps (dehumidification mode)	—	5.2 ISMRE	AHRI 920
Water cooled (dehumidification mode)	Cooling tower condenser water	5.3 ISMRE	AHRI 920
	Chilled water	6.6 ISMRE	
Air-source heat pump (heating mode)	—	3.3 ISCOP	AHRI 920
Water-source heat pump (dehumidification mode)	Ground source, closed loop	5.2 ISMRE	AHRI 920
	Ground-water source	5.8 ISMRE	
	Water source	4.8 ISMRE	
Water-source heat pump (heating mode)	Ground source, closed loop	3.8 ISCOP	AHRI 920

	Ground-water source	4.0 ISCOP	
	Water source	4.8 ISCOP	

a. Chapter 6 contains a complete specification of the referenced standards, which include test procedures, including the reference year version of the test procedure.

b. This table is a replica of ASHRAE 90.1 Table 6.8.1-14 Electrically Operated DX-DOAS Units, Single-Package and Remote Condenser, with Energy Recovery—Minimum Efficiency Requirements.

TABLE C403.3.2(14)

ELECTRICALLY OPERATED WATER-SOURCE HEAT PUMPS—MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS[c]

EQUIPMENT TYPE	SIZE CATEGORY[b]	HEATING SECTION TYPE	SUBCATEGORY OR RATING CONDITION	MINIMUM EFFICIENCY	TEST PROCEDURE[a]
Water-to-air, water loop (cooling mode)	< 17,000 Btu/h	All	86°F entering water	12.2 EER	ISO 13256-1
	≥ 17,000 Btu/h and < 65,000 Btu/h			13.0 EER	
	≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 135,000 Btu/h			13.0 EER	
Water-to-air, ground water (cooling mode)	< 135,000 Btu/h	All	59°F entering water	18.0 EER	ISO 13256-1
Brine-to-air, ground loop (cooling mode)	< 135,000 Btu/h	All	77°F entering water	14.1 EER	ISO 13256-1
Water-to-water, water loop (cooling mode)	< 135,000 Btu/h	All	86°F entering water	10.6 EER	ISO 13256-2
Water-to-water, ground water (cooling mode)	< 135,000 Btu/h	All	59°F entering water	16.3 EER	ISO 13256-2
Brine-to-water, ground loop (cooling mode)	< 135,000 Btu/h	All	77°F entering water	12.1 EER	ISO 13256-2
Water-to-water, water loop (heating mode)	< 135,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)	—	68°F entering water	4.3 COP_H	ISO 13256-1
Water-to-air, ground water (heating mode)	< 135,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)	—	50°F entering water	3.7 COP_H	ISO 13256-1
Brine-to-air, ground loop (heating mode)	< 135,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)	—	32°F entering water	3.2 COP_H	ISO 13256-1
Water-to-water, water loop (heating mode)	< 135,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)	—	68°F entering water	3.7 COP_H	ISO 13256-1
Water-to-water, ground water (heating mode)	< 135,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)	—	50°F entering water	3.1 COP_H	ISO 13256-2
Brine-to-water, ground loop (heating mode)	< 135,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)	—	32°F entering water	2.5 COP_H	ISO 13256-2

For SI: 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, °C = [(°F) – 32]/1.8.

a. Chapter 6 contains a complete specification of the referenced standards, which include test procedures, including the reference year version of the test procedure.
b. Single-phase, US air-cooled heat pumps less than 19 kW are regulated as consumer products by DOE 10 CFR 430. SCOPC, SCOP2C, SCOPH and SCOP2H values for single-phase products are set by the USDOE.
c. This table is a replica of ASHRAE 90.1 Table 6.8.1-15 Electrically Operated Water-Source Heat Pumps—Minimum Efficiency Requirements.

TABLE C403.3.2(15)
HEAT-PUMP AND HEAT RECOVERY CHILLER PACKAGES—MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS[g]

HEATING OPERATION													
EQUIPMENT TYPE	SIZE CATEGORY, ton_R	COOLING-ONLY OPERATION COOLING EFFICIENCY[c] AIR-SOURCE EER (FL/IPLV), Btu/W × h WATER-SOURCE POWER INPUT PER CAPACITY (FL/IPLV), kW/ton_R		HEATING SOURCE CONDITIONS (entering/ leaving water) OR OAT (db/wb), °F	HEAT-PUMP HEATING FULL-LOAD EFFICIENCY (COP_H)[b], W/W				HEAT RECOVERY CHILLER FULL-LOAD EFFICIENCY (COP_{HR})[c,d], W/W SIMULTANEOUS COOLING AND HEATING FULL-LOAD EFFICIENCY (COP_{SHC})[c], W/W				Test Procedure[a]
					Leaving Heating Water Temperature				Leaving Heating Water Temperature				
					Low	Medium	High	Boost	Low	Medium	High	Boost	
		Path A	Path B		105°F	120°F	140°F	140°F	105°F	120°F	140°F	140°F	
Air source	All sizes	≥ 9.595 FL ≥ 13.02 IPLV.IP	≥ 9.215 FL ≥ 15.01 IPLV.IP	47 db 43 wb[e]	≥ 3.290	≥ 2.770	≥ 2.310	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	AHRI 550/590
		≥ 9.595 FL ≥ 13.30 IPLV.IP	≥ 9.215 FL ≥ 15.30 IPLV.IP	17 db 15 wb[e]	≥ 2.230	≥ 1.950	≥ 1.630	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	
Water-source electrically operated positive displacement	< 75	≤ 0.7885 FL ≤ 0.6316 IPLV.IP	≤ 0.7875 FL ≤ 0.5145 IPLV.IP	54/44[f]	≥ 4.640	≥ 3.680	≥ 2.680	NA	≥ 8.330	≥ 6.410	≥ 4.420	NA	AHRI 550/590
				75/65[f]	NA	NA	NA	≥ 3.550	NA	NA	NA	6.150	
	≥ 75 and < 150	≤ 0.7579 FL ≤ 0.5895 IPLV.IP	≤ 0.7140 FL ≤ 0.4620 IPLV.IP	54/44[f]	≥ 4.640	≥ 3.680	≥ 2.680	NA	≥ 8.330	≥ 6.410	≥ 4.420	NA	
				75/65[f]	NA	NA	NA	≥ 3.550	NA	NA	NA	6.150	
	≥ 150 and < 300	≤ 0.6947 FL ≤ 0.5684 IPLV.IP	≤ 0.7140 FL ≤ 0.4620 IPLV.IP	54/44[f]	≥ 4.640	≥ 3.680	≥ 2.680	NA	≥ 8.330	≥ 6.410	≥ 4.420	NA	
				75/65[f]	NA	NA	NA	≥ 3.550	NA	NA	NA	6.150	
	≥ 300 and < 600	≤ 0.6421 FL ≤ 0.5474 IPLV.IP	≤ 0.6563 FL ≤ 0.4305 IPLV.IP	54/44[f]	≥ 4.930	≥ 3.960	≥ 2.970	NA	≥ 8.900	≥ 6.980	≥ 5.000	NA	
				75/65[f]	NA	NA	NA	≥ 3.900	NA	NA	NA	6.850	
	≥ 600	≤ 0.5895 FL ≤ 0.5263 IPLV.IP	≤ 0.6143 FL ≤ 0.3990 IPLV.IP	54/44[f]	≥ 4.930	≥ 3.960	≥ 2.970	NA	≥ 8.900	≥ 6.980	≥ 5.000	NA	
				75/65[f]	NA	NA	NA	≥ 3.900	NA	NA	NA	6.850	
Water-source electrically operated centrifugal	< 75	≤ 0.6421 FL ≤ 0.5789 IPLV.IP	≤ 0.7316 FL ≤ 0.4632 IPLV.IP	54/44[f]	≥ 4.640	≥ 3.680	≥ 2.680	NA	≥ 8.330	≥ 6.410	≥ 4.420	NA	AHRI 550/590
				75/65[f]	NA	NA	NA	≥ 3.550	NA	NA	NA	≥ 6.150	
	≥ 75 and < 150	≤ 0.5895 FL ≤ 0.5474 IPLV.IP	≤ 0.6684 FL ≤ 0.4211 IPLV.IP	54/44[f]	≥ 4.640	≥ 3.680	≥ 2.680	NA	≥ 8.330	≥ 6.410	≥ 4.420	NA	
				75/65[f]	NA	NA	NA	≥ 3.550	NA	NA	NA	≥ 6.150	
	≥ 150 and < 300	≤ 0.5895 FL ≤ 0.5263 IPLV.IP	≤ 0.6263 FL ≤ 0.4105 IPLV.IP	54/44[f]	≥ 4.640	≥ 3.680	≥ 2.680	NA	≥ 8.330	≥ 6.410	≥ 4.420	NA	
				75/65[f]	NA	NA	NA	≥ 3.550	NA	NA	NA	≥ 6.150	
	≥ 300 and < 600	≤ 0.5895 FL ≤ 0.5263 IPLV.IP	≤ 0.6158 FL ≤ 0.4000 IPLV.IP	54/44[f]	≥ 4.930	≥ 3.960	≥ 2.970	NA	≥ 8.900	≥ 6.980	≥ 5.000	NA	
				75/65[f]	NA	NA	NA	≥ 3.900	NA	NA	NA	≥ 6.850	
	≥ 600	≤ 0.5895 FL ≤ 0.5263 IPLV.IP	≤ 0.6158 FL ≤ 0.4000 IPLV.IP	54/44[f]	≥ 4.930	≥ 3.960	≥ 2.970	NA	≥ 8.900	≥ 6.980	≥ 5.000	NA	
				75/65[f]	NA	NA	NA	≥ 3.900	NA	NA	NA	≥ 6.850	

For SI: °C = [(°F) – 32]/1.8.

a. Chapter 6 contains a complete specification of the referenced standards, which include test procedures, including the reference year version of the test procedure.

b. Cooling-only rating conditions are standard rating conditions defined in AHRI 550/590, Table 1.
c. Heating full-load rating conditions are at rating conditions defined in AHRI 550/590, Table 1.
d. For water-cooled heat recovery chillers that have capabilities for heat rejection to a heat recovery condenser and a tower condenser, the COP_{HR} applies to operation at full load with 100 percent heat recovery (no tower rejection). Units that only have capabilities for partial heat recovery shall meet the requirements of Table C403.3.2(3).
e. Outdoor air entering dry-bulb (db) temperature and wet-bulb (wb) temperature.
f. Source-water entering and leaving water temperature.
g. This table is a replica of ASHRAE 90.1 Table 6.8.1-16 Heat-Pump and Heat Recovery Chiller Packages—Minimum Efficiency Requirements.

TABLE C403.3.2(16)

CEILING-MOUNTED COMPUTER-ROOM AIR CONDITIONERS—MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS[b]

EQUIPMENT TYPE	STANDARD MODEL	NET SENSIBLE COOLING CAPACITY	MINIMUM NET SENSIBLE COP	RATING CONDITIONS RETURN AIR (dry bulb/dew point)	TEST PROCEDURE[a]
Air cooled with free air discharge condenser	Ducted	< 29,000 Btu/h	2.05	75°F/52°F (Class 1)	AHRI 1360
		≥ 29,000 Btu/h and < 65,000 Btu/h	2.02		
		≥ 65,000 Btu/h	1.92		
	Nonducted	< 29,000 Btu/h	2.08		
		≥ 29,000 Btu/h and < 65,000 Btu/h	2.05		
		≥ 65,000 Btu/h	1.94		
Air cooled with free air discharge condenser with fluid economizer	Ducted	< 29,000 Btu/h	2.01	75°F/52°F (Class 1)	AHRI 1360
		≥ 29,000 Btu/h and < 65,000 Btu/h	1.97		
		≥ 65,000 Btu/h	1.87		
	Nonducted	< 29,000 Btu/h	2.04		
		≥ 29,000 Btu/h and < 65,000 Btu/h	2.00		
		≥ 65,000 Btu/h	1.89		
Air cooled with ducted condenser	Ducted	< 29,000 Btu/h	1.86	75°F/52°F (Class 1)	AHRI 1360
		≥ 29,000 Btu/h and < 65,000 Btu/h	1.83		
		≥ 65,000 Btu/h	1.73		
	Nonducted	< 29,000 Btu/h	1.89		
		≥ 29,000 Btu/h and < 65,000 Btu/h	1.86		
		≥ 65,000 Btu/h	1.75		
Air cooled with fluid economizer and ducted condenser	Ducted	< 29,000 Btu/h	1.82	75°F/52°F (Class 1)	AHRI 1360
		≥ 29,000 Btu/h and < 65,000 Btu/h	1.78		
		≥ 65,000 Btu/h	1.68		
	Nonducted	< 29,000 Btu/h	1.85		

		≥ 29,000 Btu/h and < 65,000 Btu/h	1.81		
		≥ 65,000 Btu/h	1.70		
Water cooled	Ducted	< 29,000 Btu/h	2.38	75°F/52°F (Class 1)	AHRI 1360
		≥ 29,000 Btu/h and < 65,000 Btu/h	2.28		
		≥ 65,000 Btu/h	2.18		
	Nonducted	< 29,000 Btu/h	2.41		
		≥ 29,000 Btu/h and < 65,000 Btu/h	2.31		
		≥ 65,000 Btu/h	2.20		

EQUIPMENT TYPE	STANDARD MODEL	NET SENSIBLE COOLING CAPACITY	MINIMUM NET SENSIBLE COP	RATING CONDITIONS RETURN AIR (dry bulb/dew point)	TEST PROCEDURE[a]
Water cooled with fluid economizer	Ducted	< 29,000 Btu/h	2.33	75°F/52°F (Class 1)	AHRI 1360
		≥ 29,000 Btu/h and < 65,000 Btu/h	2.23		
		≥ 65,000 Btu/h	2.13		
	Nonducted	< 29,000 Btu/h	2.36		
		≥ 29,000 Btu/h and < 65,000 Btu/h	2.26		
		≥ 65,000 Btu/h	2.16		
Glycol cooled	Ducted	< 29,000 Btu/h	1.97	75°F/52°F (Class 1)	AHRI 1360
		≥ 29,000 Btu/h and < 65,000 Btu/h	1.93		
		≥ 65,000 Btu/h	1.78		
	Nonducted	< 29,000 Btu/h	2.00		
		≥ 29,000 Btu/h and < 65,000 Btu/h	1.98		
		≥ 65,000 Btu/h	1.81		
Glycol cooled with fluid economizer	Ducted	< 29,000 Btu/h	1.92	75°F/52°F (Class 1)	AHRI 1360
		≥ 29,000 Btu/h and < 65,000 Btu/h	1.88		
		≥ 65,000 Btu/h	1.73		
	Nonducted	< 29,000 Btu/h	1.95		
		≥ 29,000 Btu/h and < 65,000 Btu/h	1.93		
		≥ 65,000 Btu/h	1.76		

For SI: 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, °C = [(°F) – 32]/1.8, COP = (Btu/h × hp)/(2,550.7).

a. Chapter 6 contains a complete specification of the referenced standards, which include test procedures, including the reference year version of the test procedure.
b. This is a replica of ASHRAE 90.1 Table 6.8.1-17 Ceiling-Mounted Computer-Room Air Conditioners—Minimum Efficiency Requirements.

~~C403.2.3.1~~C403.3.2.1 **Water-cooled centrifugal chilling packages.** Equipment not designed for operation at AHRI Standard 550/590 test conditions of ~~44°F (7°C) leaving chilled-water temperature and 2.4 gpm/ton evaporator fluid flow and 85°F (29°C) entering condenser water temperature with 3 gpm/ton (0.054 I/s • kW) condenser water flow shall have maximum full-load kW/ton (FL) and part-load ratings requirements adjusted using Equations 4-6 and 4-7.~~44.00°F leaving and 54.00°F entering chilled-fluid temperatures, and with 85.00°F entering and 94.30°F leaving condenser-fluid temperatures, shall have maximum full-load kW/ton (FL) and part-load rating requirements adjusted using the following equations:

$FL_{adj} = FL/K_{adj}$ **(Equation 4-6)**

$PLV_{adj} = IPLV.IP/K_{adj}$ **(Equation 4-7)**

where:

K_{adj} = $A \times B$

FL = Full-load kW/ton value ~~as specified in Table C403.2.3(7).~~from Table C403.3.2(3).

FL_{adj} = Maximum full-load kW/ton rating, adjusted for nonstandard conditions.

~~*IPLV* = Value as specified in Table C403.2.3(7).~~*IPLV.IP* = *IPLV.IP* value from Table C403.3.2(3).

PLV_{adj} = Maximum *NPLV* rating, adjusted for nonstandard conditions.

A = $0.00000014592 \times (LIFT)^4 - 0.0000346496 \times (LIFT)^3 + 0.00314196 \times (LIFT)^2 - 0.147199 \times (LIFT) +$ ~~3.9302~~3.93073

B = $0.0015 \times L_{vg}E_{vap} + 0.934$

$LIFT$ = $L_{vg}Cond - L_{vg}E_{vap}$

$L_{vg}Cond$ = Full-load condenser leaving fluid temperature (°F).

$L_{vg}E_{vap}$ = Full-load evaporator leaving temperature (°F).

The FL_{adj} and PLV_{adj} values are applicable only for centrifugal chillers meeting all of the following full-load design ranges:

~~1. Minimum evaporator leaving temperature: 36°F.~~

~~2. Maximum condenser leaving temperature: 115°F.~~

~~3. 20.00°F ≤ *LIFT* ≤ 80.00°F.~~

- $36.00°F \le L_{vg}E_{vap} \le 60.00°F$
- $L_{vg}Cond \le 115.00°F$
- $20.00°F \le LIFT \le 80.00°F$

Manufacturers shall calculate the FL_{adj} and PLV_{adj} before determining whether to label the chiller. Centrifugal chillers designed to operate outside of these ranges are not covered by this code.

~~C403.2.3.2~~C403.3.2.2 **Positive displacement (air- and water-cooled) chilling packages.** Equipment with a leaving fluid temperature higher than 32°F (0°C) and water-cooled positive displacement chilling packages with a condenser leaving fluid temperature below 115°F (46°C) shall meet the requirements of the tables in Section ~~C403.2.3(7)~~C403.3.2 when tested or certified with water at standard rating conditions, in accordance with the referenced test procedure.

~~C403.4.6~~C403.3.3 **Hot gas bypass limitation.** Cooling systems shall not use hot gas bypass or other evaporator pressure control systems unless the system is designed with multiple steps of unloading or continuous capacity modulation. The capacity of the hot gas bypass shall be limited as indicated in Table ~~C403.4.6,~~C403.3.3, as limited by Section ~~C403.3.1.~~C403.5.1.

~~**Exception:** Unitary packaged systems with nominal cooling capacities of 7.5 tons or less (approximately 90 kBTU/h or 26.4 KW).~~

TABLE ~~C403.4.6~~C403.3.3
MAXIMUM HOT GAS BYPASS CAPACITY

RATED CAPACITY	MAXIMUM HOT GAS BYPASS CAPACITY (% of total capacity)
≤ 240,000 Btu/h	50
> 240,000 Btu/h	25

For SI: 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W.

~~C403.4.2.5~~C403.3.4 Boiler turndown. *Boiler systems* with design input of greater than 1,000,000 Btu/h (293 kW) shall comply with the turndown ratio specified in Table ~~C403.4.2.5.~~C403.3.4.

The system turndown requirement shall be met through the use of multiple single-input boilers, one or more *modulating boilers* or a combination of single-input and *modulating boilers*.

TABLE ~~C403.4.2.5~~C403.3.4
BOILER TURNDOWN

BOILER SYSTEM DESIGN INPUT (Btu/h)	MINIMUM TURNDOWN RATIO
≥ 1,000,000 and ≤ 5,000,000	3 to 1
> 5,000,000 and ≤ 10,000,000	4 to 1
> 10,000,000	5 to 1

~~C403.2.4 HVAC system controls.~~C403.4 Heating and cooling system controls. Each heating and cooling system shall be provided with ~~thermostatic~~ controls ~~as specified in Section C403.2.4.1, C403.2.4.1.3, C403.2.4.2, C403.2.4.3, C403.3.1, C403.4, C403.4.1 or C403.4.4.~~in accordance with Sections C403.4.1 through C403.4.5.

~~C403.2.4.1~~C403.4.1 Thermostatic controls. The supply of heating and cooling energy to each *zone* shall be controlled by individual thermostatic controls capable of responding to temperature within the *zone*. Where humidification or dehumidification or both is provided, ~~at least~~not fewer than one humidity control device shall be provided for each humidity control system.

Exception: Independent perimeter systems that are designed to offset only building envelope heat losses, gains or both serving one or more perimeter *zones* also served by an interior system ~~provided:~~provided that both of the following conditions are met:

1. The perimeter system includes ~~at least~~not fewer than one thermostatic control *zone* for each building exposure having exterior walls facing only one orientation (within ±45 degrees) (0.8 rad) for more than 50 contiguous feet ~~(15 240 mm); and~~(15 240 mm).
2. The perimeter system heating and cooling supply is controlled by thermostats located within the *zones* served by the system.

~~C403.2.4.1.1~~C403.4.1.1 Heat pump supplementary heat. Heat pumps having supplementary electric resistance heat shall have controls ~~that, except during defrost, prevent supplementary heat operation where the heat pump can provide the heating load.~~that limit supplemental heat operation to only those times when one of the following applies:

1. The vapor compression cycle cannot provide the necessary heating energy to satisfy the thermostat setting.
2. The heat pump is operating in defrost mode.
3. The vapor compression cycle malfunctions.

4. The thermostat malfunctions.

~~In systems with a cooling capacity of less than 65,000 Btuh, a heat strip outdoor temperature lock- out shall be provided to prevent supplemental heat operation in response to the thermostat being changed to a warmer setting. The lockout shall be set no lower than 35°F and no higher than 40°F.~~

~~C403.2.4.1.2~~C403.4.1.2 Deadband. Where used to control both heating and cooling, *zone* thermostatic controls shall be ~~capable of providing~~configured to provide a temperature range or deadband of ~~at least~~not less than 5°F (2.8°C) within which the supply of heating and cooling energy to the *zone* is shut off or reduced to a minimum.

Exceptions:

1. Thermostats requiring manual changeover between heating and cooling modes.
2. Occupancies or applications requiring precision in indoor temperature ~~control.~~control as *approved* by the *code official*.

~~C403.2.4.1.3~~C403.4.1.3 Setpoint overlap restriction. Where a *zone* has a separate heating and a separate cooling thermostatic control located within the *zone*, a limit switch, mechanical stop or direct digital control system with software programming shall be ~~provided with the capability~~configured to prevent the heating setpoint from exceeding the cooling setpoint and to maintain a deadband in accordance with Section ~~C403.2.4.1.2.~~C403.4.1.2.

C403.4.1.4 Heated or cooled vestibules. The heating system for heated vestibules and air curtains with integral heating shall be provided with controls configured to shut off the source of heating when the outdoor air temperature is greater than 45°F (7°C). Vestibule heating and cooling systems shall be controlled by a thermostat located in the vestibule configured to limit heating to a temperature not greater than 60°F (16°C) and cooling to a temperature not less than 85°F (29°C).

Exception: Control of heating or cooling provided by site-recovered energy or transfer air that would otherwise be exhausted.

~~C403.2.5~~C403.4.1.5 Hot water boiler outdoor temperature setback control. Hot water boilers that supply heat to the building through one- or two-pipe heating systems shall have an outdoor setback control that lowers the boiler water temperature based on the outdoor temperature.

~~C403.2.4.2~~C403.4.2 Off-hour controls. Each *zone* shall be provided with thermostatic setback controls that are controlled by either an automatic time clock or programmable control system.

Exceptions:

1. *Zones* that will be operated continuously.
2. *Zones* with a full HVAC load demand not exceeding 6,800 Btu/h (2 kW) and having a ~~readily accessible~~ manual shutoff ~~switch.~~switch located with *ready access*.

~~3. HVAC systems serving hotel/motel guest rooms or other residential units complying with Section C403.2.2 requirements.~~

~~C403.2.4.2.1~~C403.4.2.1 Thermostatic ~~setback capabilities.~~setback. Thermostatic setback controls shall ~~have the capability to~~ be configured to set back or temporarily operate the system to maintain zone temperatures down to 55°F (13°C) or up to 85°F (29°C).

~~C403.2.4.2.2~~C403.4.2.2 Automatic setback and ~~shutdown capabilities.~~shutdown. Automatic time clock or programmable controls shall be capable of starting and stopping the system for seven different daily schedules per week and retaining their programming and time setting during a loss of power for ~~at least~~not fewer than 10 hours. Additionally, the controls shall have a manual override that allows temporary operation of the system for up to 2 hours; a manually operated timer ~~capable of being adjusted~~configured to operate the system for up to 2 hours; or an occupancy sensor.

~~C403.2.4.2.3~~C403.4.2.3 Automatic start ~~capabilities.~~and stop. Automatic start controls shall be provided for each HVAC ~~system provided with setback controls and direct digital control (DDC) system.~~system. The automatic start controls shall be ~~capable of~~configured to automatically adjust the daily start time of the HVAC system in order to bring each space to the desired occupied temperature immediately prior to scheduled occupancy. Automatic stop controls shall be provided for each HVAC system with direct digital control of individual *zones*. The automatic stop controls shall be configured to reduce the HVAC system's heating temperature setpoint and increase the cooling temperature setpoint by not less than 2°F (-

16.6ºC) before scheduled unoccupied periods based on the thermal lag and acceptable drift in space temperature that is within comfort limits.

~~**C403.2.11 Mechanical systems commissioning and completion requirements.** Mechanical systems shall be commissioned and completed in accordance with Section C408.2.~~

~~**C403.4 Hydronic and multiple-zone HVAC systems controls and equipment. (Prescriptive).** Hydronic and multiplezone HVAC system controls and equipment shall comply with this section.~~

~~C403.4.2~~C403.4.3 Hydronic systems controls. The heating of fluids that have been previously mechanically cooled and the cooling of fluids that have been previously mechanically heated shall be limited in accordance with Sections ~~C403.4.2.1~~C403.4.3.1 through ~~C403.4.2.3.~~C403.4.3.3. Hydronic heating systems comprised of multiple-packaged boilers and designed to deliver conditioned water or steam into a common distribution system shall include automatic controls ~~capable of sequencing~~configured to sequence operation of the boilers. Hydronic heating systems composed of a single boiler and greater than 500,000 Btu/h (146.5 kW) input design capacity shall include either a multistaged or modulating burner.

~~C403.4.2.1~~C403.4.3.1 Three-pipe system. Hydronic systems that use a common return system for both hot water and chilled water are prohibited.

~~C403.4.2.2~~C403.4.3.2 Two-pipe changeover system. Systems that use a common distribution system to supply both heated and chilled water shall be designed to allow a ~~dead band~~deadband between changeover from one mode to the other of not less than 15°F (8.3°C) outside air temperatures; be designed to and provided with controls that will allow operation in one mode for not less than 4 hours before changing over to the other mode; and be provided with controls that allow heating and cooling supply temperatures at the changeover point to be not more than 30°F (16.7°C) apart.

~~C403.4.2.3~~C403.4.3.3 Hydronic (water loop) heat pump systems. Hydronic heat pump systems shall comply with Sections ~~C403.4.2.3.1 through C403.4.2.3.2.~~C403.4.3.3.1 through C403.4.3.3.3.

~~C403.4.2.3.1~~C403.4.3.3.1 Temperature ~~dead band.~~deadband. Hydronic heat pumps connected to a common heat pump water loop with central devices for heat rejection and heat addition shall have controls that are configured to provide a heat pump water supply temperature ~~dead band~~ deadband of not less than 20°F (11°C) between initiation of heat rejection and heat addition by the central devices.

Exception: Where a system loop temperature optimization controller is installed and can determine the most efficient operating temperature based on real-time conditions of demand and capacity, ~~dead bands~~ deadbands of less than 20°F (11°C) shall be permitted.

~~C403.4.2.3.2~~C403.4.3.3.2 Heat rejection. ~~Heat rejection equipment shall comply with Sections C403.4.2.3.2.1 and C403.4.2.3.2.2.~~The following shall apply to hydronic water loop heat pump systems in Climate Zones 3 through 8:

~~**C403.4.2.3.2.1 Climate zones 3 and 4.** For *Climate Zones* 3 and 4:~~

1. Where a closed-circuit cooling tower is used directly in the heat pump loop, either an automatic valve shall be installed to bypass ~~all but a minimal~~ the flow of water around the closed-circuit cooling tower, except for any flow necessary for freeze protection, or ~~lower leakage positive closure~~low-leakage positive-closure dampers shall be provided.
2. Where an open-circuit cooling tower is used directly in the heat pump loop, an automatic valve shall be installed to bypass all heat pump water flow around the open-circuit cooling tower.
3. Where an ~~open~~ open-circuit or closed-circuit cooling tower is used in conjunction with a separate heat exchanger to isolate the open-circuit cooling tower from the heat pump loop, ~~then~~ heat loss shall be controlled by shutting down the circulation pump on the cooling tower loop.

Exception: Where it can be demonstrated that a heat pump system will be required to reject heat throughout the year.

~~**C403.4.2.3.2.2 Climate zone 5.** For *Climate Zone* 5, where an open- or closed-circuit cooling tower is used, a separate heat exchanger shall be pro- vided to isolate the cooling tower from the heat pump loop, and heat loss shall be controlled by shutting down the circulation pump on the cooling tower loop and providing an automatic valve to stop the flow of fluid.~~

~~C403.4.2.3.3~~C403.4.3.3.3 Two-position valve. Each hydronic heat pump on the hydronic system having a total pump system power exceeding 10 hp (7.5 kW) shall have a two-position ~~valve.~~automatic valve interlocked to shut off the water flow when the compressor is off.

~~C403.4.2.4~~C403.4.4 **Part-load controls.** Hydronic ~~heating~~ systems greater than or equal to 300,000 Btu/h ~~(87 930 W)~~(87.9 kW) in design output capacity supplying heated or chilled water to comfort conditioning systems shall include controls that ~~have the capability to:~~ are configured to do all of the following:

~~1. Automatically reset the supply hot water temperatures using zone-return water temperature, building-return water temperature, or outside air temperature as an indicator of building heating or cooling demand. The temperature shall be capable of being reset by at least 25 percent of the design supply-to-return water temperature difference; or~~

~~2. Reduce system pump flow by at least 50 percent of design flow rate utilizing adjustable speed drive(s) on pump(s), or multiple-staged pumps where at least one-half of the total pump horsepower is capable of being automatically turned off or control valves designed to modulate or step down, and close, as a function of load, or other approved means.~~

1. Automatically reset the supply-water temperatures in response to varying building heating and cooling demand using coil valve position, zone-return water temperature, building-return water temperature or outside air temperature. The temperature shall be reset by not less than 25 percent of the design supply-to-return water temperature difference.
2. Automatically vary fluid flow for hydronic systems with a combined pump motor capacity of 2 hp (1.5 kW) or larger with three or more control valves or other devices by reducing the system design flow rate by not less than 50 percent or the maximum reduction allowed by the equipment manufacturer for proper operation of equipment by valves that modulate or step open and close, or pumps that modulate or turn on and off as a function of load.
3. Automatically vary pump flow on heating-water systems, chilled-water systems and heat rejection loops serving water-cooled unitary air conditioners as follows:
   - 3.1. Where pumps operate continuously or operate based on a time schedule, pumps with nominal output motor power of 2 hp or more shall have a variable speed drive.
   - 3.2. Where pumps have automatic direct digital control configured to operate pumps only when zone heating or cooling is required, a variable speed drive shall be provided for pumps with motors having the same or greater nominal output power indicated in Table C403.4.4 based on the climate zone and system served.
4. Where a variable speed drive is required by Item 3 of this section, pump motor power input shall be not more than 30 percent of design wattage at 50 percent of the design water flow. Pump flow shall be controlled to maintain one control valve nearly wide open or to satisfy the minimum differential pressure.

Exceptions:

1. Supply-water temperature reset is not required for chilled-water systems supplied by off-site district chilled water or chilled water from ice storage systems.
2. Variable pump flow is not required on dedicated coil circulation pumps where needed for freeze protection.
3. Variable pump flow is not required on dedicated equipment circulation pumps where configured in primary/secondary design to provide the minimum flow requirements of the equipment manufacturer for proper operation of equipment.
4. Variable speed drives are not required on heating water pumps where more than 50 percent of annual heat is generated by an electric boiler.

TABLE C403.4.4
VARIABLE SPEED DRIVE (VSD) REQUIREMENTS FOR DEMAND-CONTROLLED PUMPS

CHILLED WATER AND HEAT REJECTION LOOP PUMPS IN THESE CLIMATE ZONES	HEATING WATER PUMPS IN THESE CLIMATE ZONES	VSD REQUIRED FOR MOTORS WITH RATED OUTPUT OF:
3A, 4A,		≥ 5 hp
5A	5A	≥ 7.5 hp
—	4A	≥ 10 hp
—	3A	≥ 25 hp

For SI: 1 hp = 0.746 kW.

~~C403.4.2.6~~C403.4.5 Pump isolation. Chilled water plants including more than one chiller ~~have the capability~~shall be capable of and configured to reduce flow automatically through the chiller plant when a chiller is shut down. Chillers piped in series for the purpose of increased temperature differential shall be considered as one chiller.

Boiler ~~plants~~ systems including more than one boiler shall ~~have the capability~~ be capable of and configured to reduce flow automatically through the boiler ~~plant~~ system when a boiler is shut down.

~~C403.3~~C403.5 ~~Economizers (Prescriptive).~~Economizers. Economizers shall comply with Sections ~~C403.3.1~~C403.5.1 through ~~C403.3.4.~~C403.5.5.

An air or water economizer shall be provided for the following cooling systems:

1. Chilled water systems with a total cooling capacity, less cooling capacity provided with air economizers, as specified in Table C403.5(1).
2. Individual fan systems with cooling capacity greater than 60,000 Btu/h in buildings having other than a *Group R* occupancy,
   The total supply capacity of all fan cooling units not provided with economizers shall not exceed 20 percent of the total supply capacity of all fan cooling units in the building or 300,000 Btu/h (88 kW), whichever is greater.
3. Individual fan systems with cooling capacity greater than or equal to 270,000 Btu/h (79.1 kW) in buildings having a *Group R* occupancy.
   The total supply capacity of all fan cooling units not provided with economizers shall not exceed 20 percent of the total supply capacity of all fan cooling units in the building or 1,500,000 Btu/h (440 kW), whichever is greater.

Exceptions: Economizers are not required for the ~~systems listed below.~~following systems.

1. ~~Deleted.~~Individual fan systems not served by chilled water for buildings located in *Climate Zones* 0A, 0B, 1A and 1B.
2. ~~Where individual fan cooling units have a capacity of less than 65,000 Btu/h (19.0 kW).~~Where more than 25 percent of the air designed to be supplied by the system is to spaces that are designed to be humidified above 35°F (1.7°C) dew-point temperature to satisfy process needs.
3. ~~Where more than 25 percent of the air designed to be supplied by the system is to spaces that are designed to be humidified above 35°F (1.7°C) dew-point temperature to satisfy process needs.~~Systems expected to operate less than 20 hours per week.
4. ~~Systems that serve residential spaces where the system capacity is less than five times the requirement listed in Table C403.3(1).~~Systems serving supermarket areas with open refrigerated casework.
5. Where the cooling efficiency ~~meets or exceeds~~ is greater than or equal to the efficiency requirements in Table ~~C403.3(2).~~C403.5(2).
6. ~~Where the use of *outdoor air* for cooling will affect supermarket open refrigerated casework systems.~~Systems that include a heat recovery system in accordance with Section ~~C403.4.5.~~C403.10.5.
7. VRF systems installed with a dedicated outdoor air system.

~~8. Chilled-water cooling systems that are passive (without a fan) or use induction where the total chilled water system capacity less the capacity of fan units with air economizers is less than the minimum specified in Table C403.3(1).~~
~~9. Systems that include a heat recovery system in accordance with Section C403.4.5.~~

TABLE ~~C403.3(1)~~C403.5(1)
MINIMUM CHILLED-WATER SYSTEM COOLING CAPACITY FOR DETERMINING ECONOMIZER COOLING REQUIREMENTS

CLIMATE ZONES (COOLING)	TOTAL CHILLED-WATER SYSTEM CAPACITY LESS CAPACITY OF COOLING UNITS WITH AIR ECONOMIZERS	
	Local ~~Water-cooled~~ water-cooled ~~Chilled-water Systems~~ chilled-water systems	Air-cooled ~~Chilled-water Systems or District Chilled-Water Systems~~ chilled-water systems or district chilled-water systems
~~3a, 4a~~3A, 4A	720,000 Btu/h	940,000 Btu/h
~~5a~~5A	1,320,000 Btu/h	1,720,000 Btu/h

For SI: 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W.

TABLE ~~C403.3(2)~~C403.5(2)

EQUIPMENT EFFICIENCY PERFORMANCE EXCEPTION FOR ECONOMIZERS

CLIMATE ZONES	COOLING EQUIPMENT PERFORMANCE IMPROVEMENT (EER OR IPLV)
3A	27% efficiency improvement
4A	42% efficiency improvement
5A	49% efficiency improvement

CLIMATE ZONES	COOLING EQUIPMENT PERFORMANCE IMPROVEMENT (EER OR IPLV)
3A	15% efficiency improvement
4A	20% efficiency improvement

~~C403.3.1~~C403.5.1 Integrated economizer control. Economizer systems shall be integrated with the mechanical cooling system and be ~~capable of providing~~ configured to provide partial cooling even where additional mechanical cooling is required to provide the remainder of the cooling load. Controls shall not be capable of creating a false load in the mechanical cooling systems by limiting or disabling the economizer or any other means, such as hot gas bypass, except at the lowest stage of mechanical cooling.

Units that include an air economizer shall comply with the following:

1. Unit controls shall have the mechanical cooling capacity control interlocked with the air economizer controls such that the outdoor air damper is at the 100-percent open position when mechanical cooling is on and the outdoor air damper does not begin to close to prevent coil freezing due to minimum compressor run time until the leaving air temperature is less than 45°F (7°C).
2. Direct expansion (DX) units that control 75,000 Btu/h (22 kW) or greater of rated capacity of the capacity of the mechanical cooling directly based on occupied space temperature shall have not fewer than two stages of mechanical cooling capacity.
3. Other DX units, including those that control space temperature by modulating the airflow to the space, shall be in accordance with Table ~~C403.3.1~~.C403.5.1.

TABLE ~~C403.3.1~~C403.5.1

DX COOLING STAGE REQUIREMENTS FOR MODULATING AIRFLOW UNITS

RATING CAPACITY	MINIMUM NUMBER OF MECHANICAL COOLING STAGES	MINIMUM COMPRESSOR DISPLACEMENT[a]
≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h	3 stages	≤ 35% of full load
≥ 240,000 Btu/h	4 stages	≤ 25% full load

For SI: 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W.

a. For mechanical cooling stage control that does not use variable compressor displacement, the percent displacement shall be equivalent to the mechanical cooling capacity reduction evaluated at the full load rating conditions for the compressor.

~~**C403.3.2**~~**C403.5.2 Economizer heating system impact.** HVAC system design and economizer controls shall be such that economizer operation does not increase building heating energy use during normal operation.

Exception: Economizers on variable air volume (VAV) systems that cause zone level heating to increase ~~due to~~ because of a reduction in supply air temperature.

~~**C403.3.3**~~**C403.5.3 Air economizers.** ~~Air~~Where economizers are required by Section C403.5, air economizers shall comply with Sections ~~C403.3.3.1~~C403.5.3.1 through ~~C403.3.3.5.~~C403.5.3.5.

~~**C403.3.3.1**~~**C403.5.3.1 Design capacity.** Air economizer systems shall be ~~capable of~~configured to modulate *outdoor air* and return air dampers to provide up to 100 percent of the design supply air quantity as *outdoor air* for cooling.

~~**C403.3.3.2**~~**C403.5.3.2 Control signal.** Economizer controls and dampers shall be ~~capable of being~~configured to sequence the dampers with the mechanical cooling equipment and shall not be controlled by only mixed-air temperature.

Exception: The use of mixed-air temperature limit control shall be permitted for systems controlled from space temperature (such as single-*zone* systems).

~~**C403.3.3.3**~~**C403.5.3.3 High-limit shutoff.** Air economizers shall be ~~capable of~~configured to automatically reduce *outdoor air* intake to the design minimum *outdoor air* quantity when *outdoor air* intake will not reduce cooling energy usage. High-limit shutoff control types for specific climates shall be chosen from Table C403.5.3.3. High-limit shutoff control settings for these control types shall be those specified in Table C403.5.3.3.

TABLE C403.5.3.3
HIGH-LIMIT SHUTOFF CONTROL SETTING FOR AIR ECONOMIZERS[b]

DEVICE TYPE	CLIMATE ZONE	REQUIRED HIGH LIMIT (ECONOMIZER OFF WHEN):	
		Equation	Description
Fixed dry bulb			
	5A	$T_{OA} > 70°F$	Outdoor air temperature exceeds 70°F
	3A, 4A	$T_{OA} > 65°F$	Outdoor air temperature exceeds 65°F
Differential dry bulb	5A	$T_{OA} > T_{RA}$	Outdoor air temperature exceeds return air temperature
Fixed enthalpy with fixed dry-bulb temperatures	All	$h_{OA} > 28$ Btu/lb[a] or $T_{OA} > 75°F$	Outdoor air enthalpy exceeds 28 Btu/lb of dry air[a] or Outdoor air temperature exceeds 75°F
Differential enthalpy with fixed dry-bulb temperature	All	$h_{OA} > h_{RA}$ or $T_{OA} > 75°F$	Outdoor air enthalpy exceeds return air enthalpy or Outdoor air temperature exceeds 75°F

For SI: °C = (°F – 32)/1.8, 1 Btu/lb = 2.33 kJ/kg.

a. At altitudes substantially different than sea level, the fixed enthalpy limit shall be set to the enthalpy value at 75°F and 50-percent relative humidity. As an example, at approximately 6,000 feet elevation, the fixed enthalpy limit is approximately 30.7 Btu/lb.

b. Devices with selectable setpoints shall be capable of being set to within 2°F and 2 Btu/lb of the setpoint listed.

~~**C403.3.3.4**~~**C403.5.3.4 Relief of excess outdoor air.** Systems shall be capable of relieving excess *outdoor air* during air economizer operation to prevent overpressurizing the building. The relief air outlet shall be located to avoid recirculation into the building.

~~**C403.3.3.5**~~**C403.5.3.5 Economizer dampers.** Return, exhaust/relief and outdoor air dampers used in economizers shall comply with Section ~~C403.2.4.3~~C403.7.7.

~~C403.3.4~~C403.5.4 Water-side economizers. ~~Water-side~~Where economizers are required by Section C403.5, water-side economizers shall comply with Sections ~~C403.3.4.1~~C403.5.4.1 and ~~C403.3.4.2.~~C403.5.4.2.

~~C403.3.4.1~~C403.5.4.1 Design capacity. Water economizer systems shall be ~~capable of cooling~~configured to cool supply air by indirect evaporation and providing up to 100 percent of the expected system cooling load at *outdoor air* temperatures of not greater than 50°F (10°C) dry bulb/45°F (7°C) wet bulb.

Exceptions: ~~Allowed in lieu of the design capacity provisions identified above:~~

1. Systems primarily serving computer rooms in which 100 percent of the expected system cooling load at 40°F (4°C) dry bulb/35°F (1.7°C) wet bulb is met with evaporative water economizers.
2. Systems primarily serving computer rooms with dry cooler water economizers that satisfy 100 percent of the expected system cooling load at 35°F (1.7°C) dry bulb.
3. Systems where dehumidification requirements cannot be met using outdoor air temperatures of 50°F (10°C) dry bulb/45°F (7°C) wet bulb and where 100 percent of the expected system cooling load at 45°F (7°C) dry bulb/40°F (4°C) wet bulb is met with evaporative water economizers.

~~C403.3.4.2~~C403.5.4.2 Maximum pressure drop. Precooling coils and water-to-water heat exchangers used as part of a water economizer system shall either have a water-side pressure drop of less than 15 feet (45 kPa) of water or a secondary loop shall be created so that the coil or heat exchanger pressure drop is not seen by the circulating pumps when the system is in the normal cooling (noneconomizer) mode.

~~C403.2.4.7~~C403.5.5 Economizer fault detection and ~~diagnostics (FDD).~~diagnostics. ~~Deleted.~~Air-cooled unitary direct-expansion units listed in the tables in Section C403.3.2 and variable refrigerant flow (VRF) units that are equipped with an economizer in accordance with Sections C403.5 through C403.5.4 shall include a fault detection and diagnostics system complying with the following:

1. The following temperature sensors shall be permanently installed to monitor system operation:
   1.1. Outside air.
   1.2. Supply air.
   1.3. Return air.
2. Temperature sensors shall have an accuracy of ±2°F (1.1°C) over the range of 40°F to 80°F (4°C to 26.7°C).
3. Refrigerant pressure sensors, where used, shall have an accuracy of ±3 percent of full scale.
4. The unit controller shall be configured to provide system status by indicating the following:
   4.1. Free cooling available.
   4.2. Economizer enabled.
   4.3. Compressor enabled.
   4.4. Heating enabled.
   4.5. Mixed air low limit cycle active.
   4.6. The current value of each sensor.
5. The unit controller shall be capable of manually initiating each operating mode so that the operation of compressors, economizers, fans and the heating system can be independently tested and verified.
6. The unit shall be configured to report faults to a fault management application available for *access* by day-to-day operating or service personnel, or annunciated locally on zone thermostats.
7. The fault detection and diagnostics system shall be configured to detect the following faults:
   7.1. Air temperature sensor failure/fault.
   7.2. Not economizing when the unit should be economizing.
   7.3. Economizing when the unit should not be economizing.
   7.4. Damper not modulating.

7.5. Excess outdoor air.

~~C403.4.4~~C403.6 Requirements for complex mechanical systems serving multiple zones. Sections ~~C403.4.4.1~~C403.6.1 through ~~C403.4.4.6~~C403.6.9 shall apply to complex mechanical systems serving multiple zones. ~~Supply air systems serving multiple zones shall be variable air volume (VAV) systems that, during periods of occupancy, are designed and capable of being controlled to reduce primary air supply to each *zone* to one of the following before reheating, recooling or mixing takes place:~~

C403.6.1 Variable air volume and multiple-zone systems. Supply air systems serving multiple zones shall be variable air volume (VAV) systems that have zone controls configured to reduce the volume of air that is reheated, recooled or mixed in each zone to one of the following:

1. ~~Thirty percent of the maximum supply air to each *zone*.~~Twenty percent of the zone design peak supply for systems with direct digital control (DDC) and 30 percent for other systems.

2. ~~Three hundred cfm (142 L/s) or less where the maximum flow rate is less than 10 percent of the total fan system supply airflow rate.~~Systems with DDC where all of the following apply:

   2.1. The airflow rate in the deadband between heating and cooling does not exceed 20 percent of the zone design peak supply rate or higher allowed rates under Items 3, 4 and 5 of this section.

   2.2. The first stage of heating modulates the zone supply air temperature setpoint up to a maximum setpoint while the airflow is maintained at the deadband flow rate.

   2.3. The second stage of heating modulates the airflow rate from the deadband flow rate up to the heating maximum flow rate that is less than 50 percent of the zone design peak supply rate.

3. The outdoor airflow rate required to meet the minimum ventilation requirements of Chapter 4 of the *International Mechanical Code*.

4. Any higher rate that can be demonstrated to reduce overall system annual energy use by offsetting reheat/recool energy losses through a reduction in outdoor air intake for the ~~system.~~system as approved by the code official.

5. The airflow rate required to comply with applicable codes or accreditation standards such as pressure relationships or minimum air change rates.

Exception: The following individual zones or entire air distribution systems are exempted from the requirement for VAV control:

1. *Zones* or supply air systems where not less than 75 percent of the energy for reheating or for providing warm air in mixing systems is provided from a ~~site-recovered~~site-recovered, including condenser heat, or site-solar energy source.

2. ~~*Zones* where special humidity levels are required to satisfy process needs.~~Systems that prevent reheating, recooling, mixing or simultaneous supply of air that has been previously cooled, either mechanically or through the use of economizer systems, and air that has been previously mechanically heated.

~~3. *Zones* with a peak supply air quantity of 300 cfm (142 L/s) or less and where the flow rate is less than 10 percent of the total fan system supply airflow rate.~~

~~4. *Zones* where the volume of air to be reheated, recooled or mixed is not greater than the volume of outside air required to provide the minimum ventilation requirements of Chapter 4 of the *International Mechanical Code*.~~

~~5. *Zones* or supply air systems with thermostatic and humidistatic controls capable of operating in sequence the supply of heating and cooling energy to the *zones* and which are capable of preventing reheating, recooling, mixing or simultaneous supply of air that has been previously cooled, either mechanically or through the use of economizer systems, and air that has been previously mechanically heated.~~

~~C403.4.4.1~~C403.6.2 Single-duct VAV systems, terminal devices. Single-duct VAV systems shall use terminal devices capable of ~~reducing~~and configured to reduce the supply of primary supply air before reheating or recooling takes place.

~~C403.4.4.2~~C403.6.3 Dual-duct and mixing VAV systems, terminal devices. Systems that have one warm air duct and one cool air duct shall use terminal devices that are ~~capable of reducing~~configured to reduce the flow from one duct to a minimum before mixing of air from the other duct takes place.

~~C403.4.4.3~~C403.6.4 **Single-fan dual-duct and mixing VAV systems, economizers.** Individual dual-duct or mixing heating and cooling systems with a single fan and with total capacities greater than 90,000 Btu/h [(26.4 kW) 7.5 tons] shall not be equipped with air economizers.

~~C403.4.4.5~~C403.6.5 **Supply-air temperature reset controls.** Multiple-zone HVAC systems shall include controls that are capable of and configured to automatically reset the supply-air temperature in response to representative building loads, or to outdoor air temperature. The controls shall be ~~capable of resetting~~configured to reset the supply air temperature not less than 25 percent of the difference between the design supply-air temperature and the design room air temperature. Controls that adjust the reset based on zone humidity are allowed in Climate Zones 4 through 5. HVAC zones that are expected to experience relatively constant loads shall have maximum airflow designed to accommodate the fully reset supply-air temperature.

Exceptions:

1. Systems that prevent reheating, recooling or mixing of heated and cooled supply air.
2. Seventy-five percent of the energy for reheating is from site-recovered or site-solar energy sources.
3. ~~*Zones* with peak supply air quantities of 300 cfm (142 L/s) or less.~~Systems in Climate Zone 3A with less than 3,000 cfm (1500 L/s) of design outside air.
4. Deleted.
5. Systems in Climate Zone 3A with not less than 80 percent outside air and employing exhaust air energy recovery complying with Section C403.7.4.

C403.6.5.1 Dehumidification control interaction. In Climate Zone 3A, the system design shall allow supply-air temperature *reset* while dehumidification is provided. When dehumidification *control* is active, air economizers shall be locked out.

~~C403.4.4.6~~C403.6.6 **Multiple-zone VAV system ventilation optimization control.** ~~Deleted.~~Multiple-zone VAV systems with direct digital control of individual zone boxes reporting to a central control panel shall have automatic controls configured to reduce outdoor air intake flow below design rates in response to changes in system *ventilation* efficiency (E_v) as defined by the *International Mechanical Code*.

Exceptions:

1. VAV systems with zonal transfer fans that recirculate air from other zones without directly mixing it with outdoor air, dual-duct dual-fan VAV systems, and VAV systems with fan-powered terminal units.
2. Systems where total design exhaust airflow is more than 70 percent of total design outdoor air intake flow requirements.

C403.6.7 Parallel-flow fan-powered VAV air terminal control. Parallel-flow fan-powered VAV air terminals shall have automatic controls configured to:

1. Turn off the terminal fan except when space heating is required or where required for ventilation.
2. Turn on the terminal fan as the first stage of heating before the heating coil is activated.
3. During heating for warmup or setback temperature control, either:
   3.1. Operate the terminal fan and heating coil without primary air.
   3.2. Reverse the terminal damper logic and provide heating from the central air handler by primary air.

~~C403.4.1.3~~C403.6.8 **Setpoints for direct digital control.** For systems with direct digital control of individual zones reporting to the central control panel, the static pressure setpoint shall be reset based on the *zone* requiring the most pressure. In such case, the setpoint is reset lower until one *zone* damper is nearly wide open. The direct digital controls shall be capable of monitoring zone damper positions or shall have an alternative method of indicating the need for static pressure that is configured to provide all of the following:

1. Automatic detection of any *zone* that excessively drives the reset logic.
2. Generation of an alarm to the system operational location.
3. Allowance for an operator to readily remove one or more *zones* from the reset algorithm.

~~C403.4.1.2~~C403.6.9 Static pressure sensor location. ~~Deleted.~~Static pressure sensors used to control VAV fans shall be located such that the controller setpoint is not greater than 1.2 inches w.c. (299 Pa). Where this results in one or more sensors being located downstream of major duct splits, not less than one sensor shall be located on each major branch to ensure that static pressure can be maintained in each branch.

C403.7 Ventilation and exhaust systems. In addition to other requirements of Section C403 applicable to the provision of ventilation air or the exhaust of air, ventilation and exhaust systems shall be in accordance with Sections C403.7.1 through C403.7.7.

~~C403.2.6.1~~C403.7.1 Demand controlled ventilation. ~~Demand control ventilation (DCV) shall be provided for spaces larger than 500 square feet (46.5 m^2) and with an occupant load of 25 people or greater per 1,000 square feet (93 m^2) of floor area (as established in Table 403.3.1.1 of the *International Mechanical Code*). Additionally, demand control ventilation is required for any HVAC system pro-vided with outside air greater than 3,000 cfm.~~

~~Exception: Demand control ventilation is not required for systems and spaces as follows:~~

~~1. Systems with energy recovery complying with Section C403.2.7.~~

~~2. Multiple-zone systems without direct digital control of individual zones communicating with a central control panel.~~

~~3. Systems with a design outdoor airflow less than 1,200 cfm (566 L/s).~~

~~4. Spaces where the supply airflow rate minus any makeup or outgoing transfer air requirement is less than 1,200 cfm (566 L/s).~~

~~5. Ventilation provided for process loads only.~~

Demand control ventilation (DCV) shall be provided for all single-zone systems required to comply with Sections C403.5 through C403.5.3 and spaces larger than 500 square feet (46.5 m^2) and with an average occupant load of 15 people or greater per 1,000 square feet (93 m^2) of floor area, as established in Table 403.3.1.1 of the *International Mechanical Code*, and served by systems with one or more of the following:

1. An air-side economizer.
2. Automatic modulating control of the outdoor air damper.
3. A design outdoor airflow greater than 3,000 cfm (1416 L/s).

Exceptions:

1. Systems with energy recovery complying with Section C403.7.4.2.
2. Multiple-zone systems without direct digital control of individual zones communicating with a central control panel.
3. Multiple-zone systems with a design outdoor airflow less than 750 cfm (354 L/s).
4. Spaces where more than 75 percent of the space design outdoor airflow is required for makeup air that is exhausted from the space or transfer air that is required for makeup air that is exhausted from other spaces.
5. Spaces with one of the following occupancy classifications as defined in Table 403.3.1.1 of the *International Mechanical Code*: correctional cells, education laboratories, barber, beauty and nail salons, and bowling alley seating areas.

~~C403.2.6.2~~C403.7.2 Enlosed parking garage ventilation controls. ~~Deleted.~~Enclosed parking garages used for storing or handling automobiles operating under their own power shall employ carbon monoxide detectors applied in conjunction with nitrogen dioxide detectors and automatic controls configured to stage fans or modulate fan average airflow rates to 50 percent or less of design capacity, or intermittently operate fans less than 20 percent of the occupied time or as required to maintain acceptable contaminant levels in accordance with *International Mechanical Code* provisions. Failure of contamination-sensing devices shall cause the exhaust fans to operate continuously at design airflow.

Exceptions:

1. Garages with a total exhaust capacity less than 8,000 cfm (3,755 L/s) with ventilation systems that do not utilize heating or mechanical cooling.
2. Garages that have a garage area to ventilation system motor nameplate power ratio that exceeds 1,125 cfm/hp (710 L/s/kW) and do not utilize heating or mechanical cooling.

C403.7.3 Ventilation air heating control. Units that provide ventilation air to multiple zones and operate in conjunction with zone heating and cooling systems shall not use heating or heat recovery to warm supply air to a temperature greater than 60°F (16°C) when representative building loads or outdoor air temperatures indicate that the majority of zones require cooling.

C403.7.4 Energy recovery systems. Energy recovery ventilation systems shall be provided as specified in either Section C403.7.4.1 or C403.7.4.2, as applicable.

C403.7.4.1 Nontransient dwelling units. Nontransient dwelling units shall be provided with outdoor air energy recovery ventilation systems with an enthalpy recovery ratio of not less than 50 percent at cooling design condition and not less than 60 percent at heating design condition.

Exceptions:

1. Deleted.
2. Deleted.
3. Deleted.
4. Enthalpy recovery ratio requirements at cooling design condition in Climate Zones 4 and 5.

~~**C403.2.7 Energy recovery ventilation systems.** Individual fan systems that have both a design supply air capacity of 5,000 cfm (2.36 m^3/s) or greater and a minimum outside air supply of 70 percent or greater of the design supply air quantity shall have an energy recovery system that provides a change in the enthalpy of the outdoor air supply of 50 percent or more of the difference between the outdoor air and return air at design conditions. Provision shall be made to bypass or control the energy recovery system to permit cooling with outdoor air where cooling with outdoor air is required.~~

C403.7.4.2 Spaces other than nontransient dwelling units. Where the supply airflow rate of a fan system serving a space other than a nontransient dwelling unit exceeds the values specified in Tables C403.7.4.2(1) and C403.7.4.2(2), the system shall include an energy recovery system. The energy recovery system shall provide an enthalpy recovery ratio of not less than 50 percent at design conditions. Where an air economizer is required, the energy recovery system shall include a bypass or controls that permit operation of the economizer as required by Section C403.5.

Exception: An energy recovery ventilation system shall not be required in any of the following conditions:

1. Where energy recovery systems are prohibited by the *International Mechanical Code*.
2. Laboratory fume hood systems that include at least one of the following features:
   - 2.1. Variable-air-volume hood exhaust and room supply systems capable of reducing exhaust and makeup air volume to 50 percent or less of design values.
   - 2.2. Direct makeup (auxiliary) air supply equal to at least 75 percent of the exhaust rate, heated no warmer than 2°F (1.1°C) below room setpoint, cooled to no cooler than 3°F (1.7°C) above room setpoint, no humidification added, and no simultaneous heating and cooling used for dehumidification control.
3. Systems serving spaces that are not cooled and are heated to less than 60°F (15.5°C).
4. Where more than 60 percent of the outdoor heating energy is provided from site-recovered or site solar energy.
5. ~~Heating systems in climates with less than 3,600 HDD.~~Deleted.
6. ~~Cooling systems in climates with a 1-percent cooling design wet-bulb temperature less than 64°F (18°C).~~Deleted.
7. Systems requiring dehumidification that employ energy recovery in series with the cooling coil.
8. Where the largest source of air exhausted at a single location at the building exterior is less than 75 percent of the design *outdoor air* flow rate.
9. Systems expected to operate less than 20 hours per week at the *outdoor air* percentage covered by Table C403.7.4.2(1).
10. Systems exhausting toxic, flammable, paint or corrosive fumes or dust.
11. Commercial kitchen hoods used for collecting and removing grease vapors and smoke.

TABLE C403.7.4.2(1)
ENERGY RECOVERY REQUIREMENT (Ventilation systems operating less than 8,000 hours per year)

CLIMATE ZONE	PERCENT (%) OUTDOOR AIR AT FULL DESIGN AIRFLOW RATE							
	≥ 10% and < 20%	≥ 20% and < 30%	≥ 30% and < 40%	≥ 40% and < 50%	≥ 50% and < 60%	≥ 60% and < 70%	≥ 70% and < 80%	≥ 80%
	Design Supply Fan Airflow Rate (cfm)							
3A, 4A, 5A	≥ 26,000	≥ 16,000	≥ 5,500	≥ 4,500	≥ 3,500	≥ 2,000	≥ 1,000	≥ 120

For SI: 1 cfm = 0.4719 L/s.
NR = Not Required.

TABLE C403.7.4.2(2)
ENERGY RECOVERY REQUIREMENT (Ventilation systems operating not less than 8,000 hours per year)

CLIMATE ZONE	PERCENT (%) OUTDOOR AIR AT FULL DESIGN AIRFLOW RATE							
	≥ 10% and < 20%	≥ 20% and < 30%	≥ 30% and < 40%	≥ 40% and < 50%	≥ 50% and < 60%	≥ 60% and < 70%	≥ 70% and < 80%	≥ 80%
	Design Supply Fan Airflow Rate (cfm)							
3C	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR
0B, 1B, 2B, 3B, 4C, 5C	NR	≥ 19,500	≥ 9,000	≥ 5,000	≥ 4,000	≥ 3,000	≥ 1,500	≥ 120
0A, 1A, 2A, 3A, 4B, 5B	≥ 2,500	≥ 2,000	≥ 1,000	≥ 500	≥ 140	≥ 120	≥ 100	≥ 80
4A, 5A, 6A, 6B, 7, 8	≥ 200	≥ 130	≥ 100	≥ 80	≥ 70	≥ 60	≥ 50	≥ 40

For SI: 1 cfm = 0.4719 L/s.
NR = Not Required.

~~C403.2.8~~C403.7.5 Kitchen exhaust systems. ~~Deleted.~~Replacement air introduced directly into the exhaust hood cavity shall not be greater than 10 percent of the hood exhaust airflow rate. Conditioned supply air delivered to any space shall not exceed the greater of the following:

1. The ventilation rate required to meet the space heating or cooling load.
2. The hood exhaust flow minus the available transfer air from adjacent space where available transfer air is considered to be that portion of outdoor ventilation air not required to satisfy other exhaust needs, such as restrooms, and not required to maintain pressurization of adjacent spaces.

Where total kitchen hood exhaust airflow rate is greater than 5,000 cfm (2360 L/s), each hood shall be a factory-built commercial exhaust hood listed by a nationally recognized testing laboratory in compliance with UL 710. Each hood shall have a maximum exhaust rate as specified in Table C403.7.5 and shall comply with one of the following:

1. Not less than 50 percent of all replacement air shall be transfer air that would otherwise be exhausted.

2. Demand ventilation systems on not less than 75 percent of the exhaust air that are configured to provide not less than a 50-percent reduction in exhaust and replacement air system airflow rates, including controls necessary to modulate airflow in response to appliance operation and to maintain full capture and containment of smoke, effluent and combustion products during cooking and idle.

3. Listed energy recovery devices with a sensible heat recovery effectiveness of not less than 40 percent on not less than 50 percent of the total exhaust airflow.

Where a single hood, or hood section, is installed over appliances with different duty ratings, the maximum allowable flow rate for the hood or hood section shall be based on the requirements for the highest appliance duty rating under the hood or hood section.

Exception: Where not less than 75 percent of all the replacement air is transfer air that would otherwise be exhausted.

TABLE C403.7.5
MAXIMUM NET EXHAUST FLOW RATE, CFM PER LINEAR FOOT OF HOOD LENGTH

TYPE OF HOOD	LIGHT-DUTY EQUIPMENT	MEDIUM-DUTY EQUIPMENT	HEAVY-DUTY EQUIPMENT	EXTRA-HEAVY-DUTY EQUIPMENT
Wall-mounted canopy	140	210	280	385
Single island	280	350	420	490
Double island (per side)	175	210	280	385
Eyebrow	175	175	NA	NA
Backshelf/Pass-over	210	210	280	NA

For SI: 1 cfm = 0.4719 L/s; 1 foot = 304.8 mm.
NA = Not Allowed.

C403.7.6 Automatic control of HVAC systems serving guestrooms. In *Group R*-1 buildings containing more than 50 guestrooms, each guestroom shall be provided with controls complying with the provisions of Sections C403.7.6.1 and C403.7.6.2. Card key controls comply with these requirements.

C403.7.6.1 Temperature setpoint controls. Controls shall be provided on each HVAC system that are capable of and configured with three modes of temperature control.

1. When the guestroom is rented but unoccupied, the controls shall automatically raise the cooling setpoint and lower the heating setpoint by not less than 4°F (2°C) from the occupant setpoint within 30 minutes after the occupants have left the guestroom.

2. When the guestroom is unrented and unoccupied, the controls shall automatically raise the cooling setpoint to not lower than 80°F (27°C) and lower the heating setpoint to not higher than 60°F (16°C). Unrented and unoccupied guestroom mode shall be initiated within 16 hours of the guestroom being continuously occupied or where a *networked guestroom control system* indicates that the guestroom is unrented and the guestroom is unoccupied for more than 20 minutes. A *networked guestroom control system* that is capable of returning the thermostat setpoints to default occupied setpoints 60 minutes prior to the time a guest-room is scheduled to be occupied is not precluded by this section. Cooling that is capable of limiting relative humidity with a setpoint not lower than 65-percent relative humidity during unoccupied periods is not precluded by this section.

3. When the guestroom is occupied, HVAC setpoints shall return to their occupied setpoints once occupancy is sensed.

C403.7.6.2 Ventilation controls. Controls shall be provided on each HVAC system that are capable of and configured to automatically turn off the ventilation and exhaust fans within 20 minutes after the occupants leave the guestroom, or *isolation devices* shall be provided to each guestroom that are capable of automatically shutting off the supply of outdoor air to and exhaust air from the guestroom.

Exception: Guestroom ventilation systems are not precluded from having an automatic daily pre-occupancy purge cycle that provides daily outdoor air ventilation during unrented periods at the design ventilation rate for 60 minutes, or at a rate and duration equivalent to one air change.

~~C403.2.4.3~~C403.7.7 Shutoff dampers. Outdoor air intake and exhaust openings and stairway and shaft vents shall be provided with Class I motorized dampers. The dampers shall have an air leakage rate not greater than 4 cfm/ft^2 (20.3 L/s × m^2) of damper surface area at 1.0 inch water gauge (249 Pa) and shall be labeled by an *approved agency* when tested in accordance with AMCA 500D for such purpose. ~~Shutoff dampers are not required in continuously operating exhaust systems.~~

Outdoor air intake and exhaust dampers shall be installed with automatic controls configured to close when the systems or spaces served are not in use or during unoccupied period warm-up and setback operation, unless the systems served require outdoor or exhaust air in accordance with the *International Mechanical Code* or the dampers are opened to provide intentional economizer cooling.

Stairway and shaft vent dampers shall be installed with automatic controls configured to open upon the activation of any fire alarm initiating device of the building's fire alarm system or the interruption of power to the damper.

Exception: ~~Gravity (nonmotorized)~~Nonmotorized gravity dampers shall ~~be permitted to be used~~be an alternative to motorized dampers for exhaust and relief openings as follows:

1. In buildings less than three stories in height above grade plane.
2. ~~Deleted.~~In buildings of any height located in *Climate Zone* 3.
3. Where the design exhaust capacity is not greater than 300 cfm (142 L/s).

~~Gravity (nonmotorized)~~Nonmotorized gravity dampers shall have an air leakage rate not greater than 20 cfm/ft^2 (101.6 L/s × m^2) where not less than 24 inches (610 mm) in either dimension and 40 cfm/ft^2 (203.2 L/s × m^2) where less than 24 inches (610 mm) in either dimension. The rate of air leakage shall be determined at 1.0 inch water gauge (249 Pa) when tested in accordance with AMCA 500D for such purpose. The dampers shall be labeled by an *approved agency*.

~~**C403.2.12 Air system design and control.** Each HVAC system having a total fan system motor nameplate horse- power (hp) exceeding 5 hp (3.7 kW) shall comply with the provisions of Sections C403.2.12.1 through C403.2.12.3.~~

C403.8 Fans and fan controls. Fans in HVAC systems shall comply with Sections C403.8.1 through C403.8.6.1.

~~C403.2.12.1~~C403.8.1 Allowable fan ~~motor~~ horsepower. ~~Each HVAC system at fan system design~~Each HVAC system having a total fan system motor nameplate horsepower exceeding 5 hp (3.7 kW) at fan system design conditions shall not exceed the allowable *fan system motor nameplate hp* (Option 1) or *fan system bhp* (Option 2) shown in Table ~~C403.2.12.1(1).~~C403.8.1(1). This includes supply fans, exhaust fans, return/relief fans, and fan-powered terminal units associated with systems providing heating or cooling capability. Single-zone variable air volume systems shall comply with the constant volume fan power limitation.

Exceptions:

1. Hospital, vivarium and laboratory systems that utilize flow control devices on exhaust or return to maintain space pressure relationships necessary for occupant health and safety or environmental control shall be permitted to use variable volume fan power limitation.
2. Individual exhaust fans with motor nameplate horsepower of 1 hp (0.746 kW) or less are exempt from the allowable fan horsepower requirement.
3. ~~Fans exhausting air from fume hoods. (Note: If this exception is taken, no related exhaust side credits shall be taken from Table C403.2.12.1(2) and the Fume Exhaust Exception Deduction must be taken from Table C403.2.12.1(2).~~

TABLE ~~C403.2.12.1(1)~~C403.8.1(1)
FAN POWER LIMITATION

	LIMIT	CONSTANT VOLUME	VARIABLE VOLUME
Option 1: Fan system motor nameplate hp	Allowable nameplate motor hp	hp ≤ CFM_S × 0.0011	hp ≤ CFM_S × 0.0015
Option 2: Fan system bhp	Allowable fan system bhp	bhp ≤ CFM_S × 0.00094 + *A*	bhp ≤ CFM_S × 0.0013 + *A*

For SI: 1 bhp = 735.5 W, 1 hp = 745.5 W, 1 cfm = 0.4719 L/s.

where:

CFM$_S$ = The maximum design supply airflow rate to conditioned spaces served by the system in cubic feet per minute.

hp = The maximum combined motor nameplate horsepower.

bhp = The maximum combined fan brake horsepower.

A = Sum of [$PD \times CFM_D / 4131$].

where:

PD = Each applicable pressure drop adjustment from Table ~~C403.2.12.1(2)~~Table C403.8.1(2) in. w.c.

CFM$_D$ = The design airflow through each applicable device from Table ~~C403.2.12.1(2)~~C403.8.1(2) in cubic feet per minute.

TABLE C403.2.12.1(2)
FAN POWER LIMITATION PRESSURE DROP ADJUSTMENT

DEVICE	ADJUSTMENT
Credits	
Fully ducted return and/or exhaust air systems	0.5 inch w.c. (2.15 in w.c. for laboratory, vivarium and hospital systems)
Return and/or exhaust airflow control devices	0.5 inch w.c.
Exhaust filters, scrubbers or other exhaust treatment	The pressure drop of device calculated at fan system design condition
Particulate filtration credit: MERV 9 thru 12	0.5 inch w.c.
Particulate filtration credit: MERV 13 thru 15	0.9 inch. w.c.
Particulate filtration credit: MERV 16 and greater and electronically enhanced filters	Pressure drop calculated at 2x clean filter pressure drop at fan system design condition.
Carbon and other gas-phase air cleaners	Clean filter pressure drop at fan system design condition.
Biosafety cabinet	Pressure drop of device at fan system design condition.
Energy recovery device, other than coil runaround loop	(2.2 × energy recovery effectiveness) – 0.5 inch w.c. for each airstream.
Coil runaround loop	0.6 inch w.c. for each airstream.
Evaporative humidifier/cooler in series with another cooling coil	Pressure drop of device at fan system design conditions.
Sound attenuation section (fans serving spaces with design background noise goals below NC35)	0.15 inch w.c.
Exhaust system serving fume hoods	0.35 inch w.c.
Laboratory and vivarium exhaust systems in high-rise buildings	0.25 inch w.c./100 feet of vertical duct exceeding 75 feet.
Deductions	
Fume Hood Exhaust Exception (required if Section 403.2.12.1, Exception 3 is taken)	- 1.0 in. w.c.

For SI: 1 inch w.c. = 249 Pa, 1 inch = 25.4 mm.
w.c. = water column, NC = Noise criterion.

TABLE ~~C403.2.12.1(2)~~C403.8.1(2)
FAN POWER LIMITATION PRESSURE DROP ADJUSTMENT

DEVICE	ADJUSTMENT
Credits	
Return air or exhaust systems required by code or accreditation standards to be fully ducted, or systems required to maintain air pressure differentials between adjacent rooms	0.5 inch w.c. (2.15 inches w.c. for laboratory and vivarium systems)
Return and exhaust airflow control devices	0.5 inch w.c.
Exhaust filters, scrubbers or other exhaust treatment	The pressure drop of device calculated at fan system design condition
Particulate filtration credit: MERV 9 thru 12	0.5 inch w.c.
Particulate filtration credit: MERV 13 thru 15	0.9 inch w.c.
Particulate filtration credit: MERV 16 and greater and electronically enhanced filters	Pressure drop calculated at 2 times the clean filter pressure drop at fan system design condition.

Carbon and other gas-phase air cleaners	Clean filter pressure drop at fan system design condition.
Biosafety cabinet	Pressure drop of device at fan system design condition.
Energy recovery device, other than coil runaround loop	For each airstream, (2.2 × energy recovery effectiveness - 0.5) inch w.c.
Coil runaround loop	0.6 inch w.c. for each airstream.
Evaporative humidifier/cooler in series with another cooling coil	Pressure drop of device at fan system design conditions.
Sound attenuation section (fans serving spaces with design background noise goals below NC35)	0.15 inch w.c.
Exhaust system serving fume hoods	0.35 inch w.c.
Laboratory and vivarium exhaust systems in high-rise buildings	0.25 inch w.c./100 feet of vertical duct exceeding 75 feet.
Deductions	
Systems without central cooling device	- 0.6 inch w.c.
Systems without central heating device	- 0.3 inch w.c.
Systems with central electric resistance heat	- 0.2 inch w.c.

For SI: 1 inch w.c. = 249 Pa, 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.
w.c. = Water Column, NC = Noise Criterion.

~~C403.2.12.2~~C403.8.2 **Motor nameplate horsepower.** For each fan, the fan brake horsepower (bhp) shall be indicated on the construction documents and the selected motor shall be not larger than the first available motor size greater than the following:

1. For fans less than 6 bhp ~~(4413 W),~~(4476 W), 1.5 times the fan brake horsepower.
2. For fans 6 bhp ~~(4413 W)~~(4476 W) and larger, 1.3 times the fan brake horsepower.
3. ~~Systems complying with Section C403.2.12.1 fan system motor nameplate hp (Option 1).~~

Exceptions:

1. Fans equipped with electronic speed control devices to vary the fan airflow as a function of load.
2. Fans with a fan nameplate electrical input power of less than 0.89 kW.
3. Systems complying with Section C403.2.12.1 C403.8.1 fan system motor nameplate hp (Option 1).
4. Fans with motor nameplate horsepower less than 1 hp (746 W).

~~C403.2.12.3~~C403.8.3 **Fan efficiency.** ~~Deleted.~~Each fan and fan array shall have a fan energy index (FEI) of not less than 1.00 at the design point of operation, as determined in accordance with AMCA 208 by an *approved* independent testing laboratory and labeled by the manufacturer. Each fan and fan array used for a variable-air-volume system shall have an FEI of not less than 0.95 at the design point of operation, as determined in accordance with AMCA 208 by an approved independent testing laboratory and labeled by the manufacturer. The FEI for fan arrays shall be calculated in accordance with AMCA 208 Annex C.

Exceptions: The following fans are not required to have a fan energy index:

1. Fans that are not embedded fans with motor nameplate horsepower of less than 1.0 hp (0.75 kW) or with a nameplate electrical input power of less than 0.89 kW.
2. Embedded fans that have a motor nameplate horsepower of 5 hp (3.7 kW) or less, or with a fan system electrical input power of 4.1 kW or less.
3. Multiple fans operated in series or parallel as the functional equivalent of a single fan that have a combined motor nameplate horsepower of 5 hp (3.7 kW) or less or with a fan system electrical input power of 4.1 kW or less.

4. Fans that are part of equipment covered in Section C403.3.2.
5. Fans included in an equipment package certified by an *approved agency* for air or energy performance.
6. Ceiling fans, which are defined as nonportable devices suspended from a ceiling or overhead structure for circulating air via the rotation of the blades.
7. Fans used for moving gases at temperatures above 425°F (250°C).
8. Fans used for operation in explosive atmospheres.
9. Reversible fans used for tunnel ventilation.
10. Fans that are intended to operate only during emergency conditions.
11. Fans outside the scope of AMCA 208.

~~C403.4.4.4~~C403.8.4 Fractional hp fan motors. ~~Deleted.~~Motors for fans that are not less than $^{1}/_{12}$ hp (0.062 kW) and less than 1 hp (0.746 kW) shall be electronically commutated motors or shall have a minimum motor efficiency of 70 percent, rated in accordance with DOE 10 CFR 431. These motors shall have the means to adjust motor speed for either balancing or remote control. The use of belt-driven fans to sheave adjustments for airflow balancing instead of a varying motor speed shall be permitted.

Exceptions: The following motors are not required to comply with this section

1. Motors in the airstream within fan coils and terminal units that only provide heating to the space served.
2. Motors in space-conditioning equipment that comply with Section C403.3.2 or Sections C403.8.1. through C403.8.3.
3. Motors that comply with Section C405.8.

C403.8.5 Low-capacity ventilation fans. Mechanical ventilation system fans with motors less than $^{1}/_{12}$ hp (0.062 kW) in capacity shall meet the efficacy requirements of Table C403.8.5 at one or more rating points.

Exceptions:

1. Where ventilation fans are a component of a listed heating or cooling appliance.
2. Dryer exhaust duct power ventilators, domestic range hoods and domestic range booster fans that operate intermittently.

TABLE C403.8.5
LOW-CAPACITY VENTILATION FAN EFFICACY[a]

FAN LOCATION	AIRFLOW RATE MINIMUM (CFM)	MINIMUM EFFICACY (CFM/WATT)	AIRFLOW RATE MAXIMUM (CFM)
HRV or ERV	Any	1.2 cfm/watt	Any
In-line fan	Any	3.8 cfm/watt	Any
Bathroom, utility room	10	2.8 cfm/watt	< 90
Bathroom, utility room	90	3.5 cfm/watt	Any

For SI: 1 cfm/ft = 47.82 W.

a. Airflow shall be tested in accordance with HVI 916 and listed. Efficacy shall be listed or shall be derived from listed power and airflow. Fan efficacy for fully ducted HRV, ERV, balanced and in-line fans shall be determined at a static pressure not less than 0.2 inch w.c. Fan efficacy for ducted range hoods, bathroom and utility room fans shall be determined at a static pressure not less than 0.1 inch w.c.

~~C403.4.1~~C403.8.6 Fan control. Controls shall be provided for fans in accordance with ~~Sections C403.4.1.1 through C403.4.1.3.~~Section C403.8.6.1 and as required for specific systems provided in Section C403.

~~C403.4.1.1~~C403.8.6.1 Fan airflow control. Each cooling system listed in Table ~~C403.4.1.1~~ C403.8.6.1 shall be designed to vary the indoor fan airflow as a function of load and shall comply with the following requirements:

1. Direct expansion (DX) and chilled water cooling units that control the capacity of the mechanical cooling directly based on space temperature shall have not fewer than two stages of fan control. Low or minimum speed shall not be greater than 66 percent of full speed. At low or minimum speed, the fan system shall draw not more than 40 percent of the fan power at full fan speed. Low or minimum speed shall be used during periods of low cooling load and ventilation-only operation.
2. Other units including DX cooling units and chilled water units that control the space temperature by modulating the airflow to the space shall have modulating fan control. Minimum speed shall be not greater than 50 percent of full speed. At minimum speed the fan system shall draw not more than 30 percent of the power at full fan speed. Low or minimum speed shall be used during periods of low cooling load and ventilation-only operation.
3. Units that include an ~~airside~~air-side economizer in accordance with Section ~~C403.3~~C403.5 shall have not fewer than two speeds of fan control during economizer operation.

Exceptions:

1. Modulating fan control is not required for chilled water and evaporative cooling units with fan motors of less than 1 hp (0.746 kW) where the units are not used to provide *ventilation air* and the indoor fan cycles with the load.
2. Where the volume of outdoor air required to comply with the ventilation requirements of the *International Mechanical Code* at low speed exceeds the air that would be delivered at the speed defined in Section ~~C403.4.1~~C403.8.6, the minimum speed shall be selected to provide the required *ventilation air*.

~~TABLE C403.4.1.1~~
~~FAN CONTROL REQUIREMENTS~~

~~COOLING SYSTEM TYPE~~	~~FAN MOTOR SIZE~~	~~MECHANICAL COOLING CAPACITY~~
~~DX cooling~~	~~Any~~	~~≥ 120,000 Btu/h~~
~~Chilled water~~	~~≥ 5 hp~~	~~Any~~
~~Evaporative cooling~~	~~≥ 1/4 hp~~	~~Any~~

~~For SI: 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W; 1 hp = 0.746 kW.~~

TABLE C403.8.6.1
COOLING SYSTEMS

COOLING SYSTEM TYPE	FAN MOTOR SIZE	MECHANICAL COOLING CAPACITY
DX cooling	Any	≥ 65,000 Btu/h
Chilled water and evaporative cooling	≥ 1¼hp	Any

For SI: 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W; 1 hp = 0.746 kW.

C403.9 Large-diameter ceiling fans. Where provided, large-diameter ceiling fans shall be tested and labeled in accordance with AMCA 230.

~~C403.4.3~~C403.10 Heat rejection equipment. ~~Each fan powered by a motor of 7.5 hp (5.6 kW) or larger shall have the capability to operate that fan at two-thirds of full speed or less, and shall have controls that automatically change the fan speed to control the leaving fluid temperature or condensing temperature/pressure of the heat rejection device.~~Heat rejection equipment, including air-cooled condensers, dry coolers, open-circuit cooling towers, closed-circuit cooling towers and evaporative condensers, shall comply with this section.

Exception: ~~Factory-installed heat rejection devices within HVAC equipment tested and rated in accordance with Tables C403.2.3(6) and C403.2.3(7).~~Heat rejection devices where energy usage is included in the equipment efficiency ratings listed in Tables C403.3.2(6) and C403.3.2(7).

C403.10.1 Fan speed control. Each fan system powered by an individual motor or array of motors with connected power, including the motor service factor, totaling 5 hp (3.7 kW) or more shall have controls and devices configured to automatically modulate the fan speed to control the leaving fluid temperature or condensing temperature and pressure of the heat rejection device. Fan motor power input shall be not more than 30 percent of design wattage at 50 percent of the design airflow.

Exceptions:

1. Fans serving multiple refrigerant or fluid cooling circuits.
2. Condenser fans serving flooded condensers.

C403.10.2 Multiple-cell heat rejection equipment. Multiple-cell heat rejection equipment with variable speed fan drives shall be controlled to operate the maximum number of fans allowed that comply with the manufacturer's requirements for all system components and so that all fans operate at the same fan speed required for the instantaneous cooling duty, as opposed to staged on and off operation. The minimum fan speed shall be the minimum allowable speed of the fan drive system in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

C403.10.3 Limitation on centrifugal fan open-circuit cooling towers. Centrifugal fan open-circuit cooling towers with a combined rated capacity of 1,100 gpm (4164 L/m) or greater at 95°F (35°C) condenser water return, 85°F (29°C) condenser water supply, and 75°F (24°C) outdoor air wet-bulb temperature shall meet the energy efficiency requirement for axial fan open-circuit cooling towers listed in Table C403.3.2(8).

Exception: Centrifugal open-circuit cooling towers that are designed with inlet or discharge ducts or require external sound attenuation.

C403.10.4 Tower flow turndown. Open-circuit cooling towers used on water-cooled chiller systems that are configured with multiple- or variable-speed condenser water pumps shall be designed so that all open-circuit cooling tower cells can be run in parallel with the larger of the flow that is produced by the smallest pump at its minimum expected flow rate or at 50 percent of the design flow for the cell.

~~C403.4.5~~C403.10.5 Heat recovery for service water heating. Condenser heat recovery shall be installed for heating or reheating of service hot water provided that the facility operates 24 hours a day, the total installed heat capacity of water-cooled systems exceeds 6,000,000 Btu/hr (1758 kW) of heat rejection, and the design service water heating load exceeds 1,000,000 Btu/h (293 kW).

The required heat recovery system shall have the capacity to provide the smaller of the following:

1. Sixty percent of the peak heat rejection load at design conditions.
2. The preheating required to raise the peak service hot water draw to 85°F (29°C).

Exceptions:

1. Facilities that employ condenser heat recovery for space heating or reheat purposes with a heat recovery design exceeding 30 percent of the peak water-cooled condenser load at design conditions.
2. Facilities that provide 60 percent of their service water heating from site solar or site recovered energy or from other sources.

~~C403.2.14~~C403.11 Refrigeration equipment performance. ~~Deleted.~~Refrigeration equipment performance shall be determined in accordance with Sections C403.11.1 and C403.11.2 for commercial refrigerators, freezers, refrigerator-freezers, walk-in coolers, walk-in freezers and refrigeration equipment. The energy use shall be verified through certification under an *approved* certification program or, where a certification program does not exist, the energy use shall be supported by data furnished by the equipment manufacturer.

Exception: Walk-in coolers and walk-in freezers regulated under federal law in accordance with Subpart R of DOE 10 CFR 431.

C403.11.1 Commercial refrigerators, refrigerator-freezers and refrigeration. Refrigeration equipment, defined in DOE 10 CFR Part 431.62, shall have an energy use in kWh/day not greater than the values of Table C403.11.1 when tested and rated in accordance with AHRI Standard 1200.

TABLE C403.11.1
MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS: COMMERCIAL REFRIGERATORS AND FREEZERS AND REFRIGERATION

EQUIPMENT CATEGORY	CONDENSING UNIT CONFIGURATION	EQUIPMENT FAMILY	RATING TEMP., °F	OPERATING TEMP., °F	EQUIPMENT CLASSIFICATION[a, c]	MAXIMUM DAILY ENERGY CONSUMPTION, kWh/day[d, e]	TEST STANDARD
Remote condensing commercial refrigerators and commercial freezers	Remote (RC)	Vertical open (VOP)	38 (M)	≥ 32	VOP.RC.M	0.64 × TDA + 4.07	AHRI 1200
			0 (L)	< 32	VOP.RC.L	2.20 × TDA + 6.85	
		Semivertical open (SVO)	38 (M)	≥ 32	SVO.RC.M	0.66 × TDA + 3.18	
			0 (L)	< 32	SVO.RC.L	2.20 × TDA + 6.85	
		Horizontal open (HZO)	38 (M)	≥ 32	HZO.RC.M	0.35 × TDA + 2.88	
			0 (L)	< 32	HZO.RC.L	0.55 × TDA + 6.88	
		Vertical closed transparent (VCT)	38 (M)	≥ 32	VCT.RC.M	0.15 × TDA + 1.95	
			0 (L)	< 32	VCT.RC.L	0.49 × TDA + 2.61	
		Horizontal closed transparent (HCT)	38 (M)	≥ 32	HCT.RC.M	0.16 × TDA + 0.13	
			0 (L)	< 32	HCT.RC.L	0.34 × TDA + 0.26	
		Vertical closed solid (VCS)	38 (M)	≥ 32	VCS.RC.M	0.10 × V + 0.26	
			0 (L)	< 32	VCS.RC.L	0.21 × V + 0.54	
		Horizontal closed solid (HCS)	38 (M)	≥ 32	HCS.RC.M	0.10 × V + 0.26	
			0 (L)	< 32	HCS.RC.L	0.21 × V + 0.54	
		Service over counter (SOC)	38 (M)	≥ 32	SOC.RC.M	0.44 × TDA + 0.11	
			0 (L)	< 32	SOC.RC.L	0.93 × TDA + 0.22	
Self-contained commercial refrigerators and commercial freezers with and without doors	Self-contained (SC)	Vertical open (VOP)	38 (M)	≥ 32	VOP.SC.M	1.69 × TDA + 4.71	AHRI 1200
			0 (L)	< 32	VOP.SC.L	4.25 × TDA + 11.82	
		Semivertical open (SVO)	38 (M)	≥ 32	SVO.SC.M	1.70 × TDA + 4.59	
			0 (L)	< 32	SVO.SC.L	4.26 × TDA + 11.51	
		Horizontal open (HZO)	38 (M)	≥ 32	HZO.SC.M	0.72 × TDA + 5.55	
			0 (L)	< 32	HZO.RC.L	1.90 × TDA + 7.08	
		Vertical closed transparent (VCT)	38 (M)	≥ 32	VCT.SC.M	0.10 × V + 0.86	
			0 (L)	< 32	VCT.SC.L	0.29 × V + 2.95	
		Vertical closed solid (VCS)	38 (M)	≥ 32	VCS.SC.M	0.05 × V + 1.36	
			0 (L)	< 32	VCS.SC.L	0.22 × V + 1.38	
		Horizontal closed transparent (HCT)	38 (M)	≥ 32	HCT.SC.M	0.06 × V + 0.37	
			0 (L)	< 32	HCT.SC.L	0.08 × V + 1.23	

		Horizontal closed solid (HCS)	38 (M)	≥ 32	HCS.SC.M	0.05 × V + 0.91	
			0 (L)	< 32	HCS.SC.L	0.06 × V + 1.12	
		Service over counter (SOC)	38 (M)	≥ 32	SOC.SC.M	0.52 × TDA + 1.00	
			0 (L)	< 32	SOC.SC.L	1.10 × TDA + 2.10	

(continued)

TABLE C403.11.1—continued

MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS: COMMERCIAL REFRIGERATORS AND FREEZERS AND REFRIGERATION

EQUIPMENT CATEGORY	CONDENSING UNIT CONFIGURATION	EQUIPMENT FAMILY	RATING TEMP., °F	OPERATING TEMP., °F	EQUIPMENT CLASSIFICATION[a, c]	MAXIMUM DAILY ENERGY CONSUMPTION, kWh/day[d, e]	TEST STANDARD
Self-contained commercial refrigerators with transparent doors for pull-down temperature applications	Self-contained (SC)	Pull-down (PD)	38 (M)	≥ 32	PD.SC.M	0.11 × V + 0.81	AHRI 1200
Commercial ice cream freezers	Remote (RC)	Vertical open (VOP)	-15 (I)	≤ -5[b]	VOP.RC.I	2.79 × TDA + 8.70	AHRI 1200
		Semivertical open (SVO)			SVO.RC.I	2.79 × TDA + 8.70	
		Horizontal open (HZO)			HZO.RC.I	0.70 × TDA + 8.74	
		Vertical closed transparent (VCT)			VCT.RC.I	0.58 × TDA + 3.05	
		Horizontal closed transparent (HCT)			HCT.RC.I	0.40 × TDA + 0.31	
		Vertical closed solid (VCS)			VCS.RC.I	0.25 × V + 0.63	
		Horizontal closed solid (HCS)			HCS.RC.I	0.25 × V + 0.63	
		Service over counter (SOC)			SOC.RC.I	1.09 × TDA + 0.26	
	Self-contained (SC)	Vertical open (VOP)			VOP.SC.I	5.40 × TDA + 15.02	AHRI 1200
		Semivertical open (SVO)			SVO.SC.I	5.41 × TDA + 14.63	
		Horizontal open (HZO)			HZO.SC.I	2.42 × TDA + 9.00	
		Vertical closed transparent (VCT)			VCT.SC.I	0.62 × TDA + 3.29	
		Horizontal closed transparent (HCT)			HCT.SC.I	0.56 × TDA + 0.43	
		Vertical closed solid (VCS)			VCS.SC.I	0.34 × V + 0.88	
		Horizontal closed solid (HCS)			HCS.SC.I	0.34 × V + 0.88	
		Service over counter (SOC)			SOC.SC.I	1.53 × TDA + 0.36	

For SI: 1 square foot = 0.0929 m^2, 1 cubic foot = 0.02832 m^3, °C = (°F – 32)/1.8.

a. The meaning of the letters in this column is indicated in the columns to the left.

b. Ice cream freezer is defined in DOE 10 CFR 431.62 as a commercial freezer that is designed to operate at or below -5 °F and that the manufacturer designs, markets or intends for the storing, displaying or dispensing of ice cream.

c. Equipment class designations consist of a combination [in sequential order separated by periods (AAA).(BB).(C)] of the following:

- (AAA)—An equipment family code (VOP = vertical open, SVO = semivertical open, HZO = horizontal open, VCT = vertical closed transparent doors, VCS = vertical closed solid doors, HCT = horizontal closed transparent doors, HCS = horizontal closed solid doors, and SOC = service over counter);
- (BB)—An operating mode code (RC = remote condensing and SC = self-contained); and
- (C)—A rating temperature code [M = medium temperature (38°F), L = low temperature (0°F), or I = ice cream temperature (-15°F)].
- For example, "VOP.RC.M" refers to the "vertical open, remote condensing, medium temperature" equipment class.

d. V is the volume of the case (ft^3) as measured in AHRI 1200, Appendix C.

e. TDA is the total display area of the case (ft^2) as measured in AHRI 1200, Appendix D.

~~**C403.2.15 Walk-in coolers, walk-in freezers, refrigerated warehouse coolers and refrigerated warehouse freezers.** Deleted. *Preempted by Energy Independence and Security Act 2007, Section 312 and 10 CFR 431.306*.~~

~~C403.2.16~~C403.11.2 Walk-in coolers and walk-in freezers. ~~Deleted.~~Walk-in cooler and walk-in freezer refrigeration systems, except for walk-in process cooling refrigeration systems as defined in DOE 10 CFR 431.302, shall meet the requirements of Tables C403.11.2.1(1), C403.11.2.1(2) and C403.11.2.1(3).

C403.11.2.1 Performance standards. *Walk-in coolers* and *walk-in freezers* shall meet the requirements of Tables C403.11.2.1(1), C403.11.2.1(2) and C403.11.2.1(3).

TABLE C403.11.2.1(1)

WALK-IN COOLER AND FREEZER DISPLAY DOOR EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS[a]

CLASS DESCRIPTOR	CLASS	MAXIMUM ENERGY CONSUMPTION (kWh/day)[a]
Display door, medium temperature	DD, M	$0.04 \times A_{dd} + 0.41$
Display door, low temperature	DD, L	$0.15 \times A_{dd} + 0.29$

a. A_{dd} is the surface area of the display door.

TABLE C403.11.2.1(2)

WALK-IN COOLER AND FREEZER NONDISPLAY DOOR EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS[a]

CLASS DESCRIPTOR	CLASS	MAXIMUM ENERGY CONSUMPTION (kWh/day)[a]
Passage door, medium temperature	PD, M	$0.05 \times A_{nd} + 1.7$
Passage door, low temperature	PD, L	$0.14 \times A_{nd} + 4.8$
Freight door, medium temperature	FD, M	$0.04 \times A_{nd} + 1.9$
Freight door, low temperature	FD, L	$0.12 \times A_{nd} + 5.6$

a. A_{nd} is the surface area of the nondisplay door.

TABLE C403.11.2.1(3)

WALK-IN COOLER AND FREEZER REFRIGERATION SYSTEM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS

CLASS DESCRIPTOR	CLASS	MINIMUM ANNUAL WALK-IN ENERGY FACTOR AWEF (Btu/W-h)[a]	**TEST PROCEDURE**

Dedicated condensing, medium temperature, indoor system	DC.M.I	5.61	
Dedicated condensing, medium temperature, outdoor system	DC.M.O	7.60	
Dedicated condensing, low temperature, indoor system, net capacity (q_{net}) < 6,500 Btu/h	DC.L.I, < 6,500	$9.091 \times 10^{-5} \times q_{net} + 1.81$	
Dedicated condensing, low temperature, indoor system, net capacity (q_{net}) ≥ 6,500 Btu/h	DC.L.I, ≥ 6,500	2.40	
Dedicated condensing, low temperature, outdoor system, net capacity (q_{net}) < 6,500 Btu/h	DC.L.O, < 6,500	$6.522 \times 10^{-5} \times q_{net} + 2.73$	AHRI 1250
Dedicated condensing, low temperature, outdoor system, net capacity (q_{net}) ≥ 6,500 Btu/h	DC.L.O, ≥ 6,500	3.15	
Unit cooler, medium	UC.M	9.00	
Unit cooler, low temperature, net capacity (q_{net}) < 15,500 Btu/h	UC.L, < 15,500	$1.575 \times 10^{-5} \times q_{net} + 3.91$	
Unit cooler, low temperature, net capacity (q_{net}) ≥ 15,500 Btu/h	UC.L, ≥ 15,500	4.15	

For SI: 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W.
a. q_{net} is net capacity (Btu/h) as determined in accordance with AHRI 1250.

~~**C403.2.17 Refrigerated display cases.** Deleted.~~

~~C403.5~~C403.11.3 Refrigeration systems. ~~Deleted.~~Refrigerated display cases, *walk-in coolers* or *walk-in freezers* that are served by remote compressors and remote condensers not located in a condensing unit, shall comply with Sections C403.11.3.1 and C403.11.3.2.

Exception: Systems where the working fluid in the refrigeration cycle goes through both subcritical and super-critical states (transcritical) or that use ammonia refrigerant are exempt.

C403.11.3.1 Condensers serving refrigeration systems. Fan-powered condensers shall comply with the following:

1. The design *saturated condensing temperatures* for air-cooled condensers shall not exceed the design dry-bulb temperature plus 10°F (5.6°C) for low-*temperature refrigeration systems*, and the design dry-bulb temperature plus 15°F (8°C) for *medium temperature refrigeration systems* where the *saturated condensing temperature* for blend refrigerants shall be determined using the average of liquid and vapor temperatures as converted from the condenser drain pressure.
2. Condenser fan motors that are less than 1 hp (0.75 kW) shall use electronically commutated motors, permanent split-capacitor-type motors or 3-phase motors.
3. Condenser fans for air-cooled condensers, evaporatively cooled condensers, air- or water-cooled fluid coolers or cooling towers shall reduce fan motor demand to not more than 30 percent of design wattage at 50 percent of design air volume, and incorporate one of the following continuous variable speed fan control approaches:
    3.1. Refrigeration system condenser control for air-cooled condensers shall use variable setpoint control logic to reset the condensing temperature setpoint in response to ambient dry-bulb temperature.
    3.2. Refrigeration system condenser control for evaporatively cooled condensers shall use variable setpoint control logic to reset the condensing temperature setpoint in response to ambient wet-bulb temperature.
4. Multiple fan condensers shall be controlled in unison.
5. The minimum condensing temperature setpoint shall be not greater than 70°F (21°C).

C403.11.3.2 Compressor systems. Refrigeration compressor systems shall comply with the following:

1. Compressors and multiple-compressor system suction groups shall include control systems that use floating suction pressure control logic to reset the target suction pressure temperature based on the temperature requirements of the attached refrigeration display cases or walk-ins.

   Exception: Controls are not required for the following:

   1. Single-compressor systems that do not have variable capacity capability.
   2. Suction groups that have a design saturated suction temperature of 30°F (-1.1°C) or higher, suction groups that comprise the high stage of a two-stage or cascade system, or suction groups that primarily serve chillers for secondary cooling fluids.

2. Liquid subcooling shall be provided for all low-temperature compressor systems with a design cooling capacity equal to or greater than 100,000 Btu (29.3 kW) with a design-saturated suction temperature of -10°F (-23°C) or lower. The sub-cooled liquid temperature shall be controlled at a maximum temperature setpoint of 50°F (10°C) at the exit of the subcooler using either compressor economizer (interstage) ports or a separate compressor suction group operating at a saturated suction temperature of 18°F (-7.8°C) or higher.

   2.1. Insulation for liquid lines with a fluid operating temperature less than 60°F (15.6°C) shall comply with Table C403.11.3.

3. Compressors that incorporate internal or external crankcase heaters shall provide a means to cycle the heaters off during compressor operation.

C403.12 Construction of HVAC system elements. Ducts, plenums, piping and other elements that are part of an HVAC system shall be constructed and insulated in accordance with Sections C403.12.1 through C403.12.3.1.

~~C403.2.9~~C403.12.1 Duct and plenum insulation and sealing. ~~Supply and return air ducts and plenums shall be insulated with a minimum of R-6 insulation where located in unconditioned spaces inside the building. Where located outdoors, supply and return ducts shall be insulated with a minimum of R-8 insulation in *Climate Zones* 3 and 4 and a minimum of R-12 insulation in *Climate Zone* 5. Where located within a building envelope assembly, such as a wall of the building thermal envelope, the duct or plenum shall be separated from the building exterior or unconditioned space by a minimum of R-8 insulation in *Climate Zones* 3 and 4 and a minimum of R-12 insulation in *Climate Zone* 5.~~

~~**Exception:** Where located within equipment.~~

~~Ducts, air handlers and filter boxes shall be sealed. Joints and seams shall comply with Section 603.9 of the *International Mechanical Code*.~~

Supply and return air ducts and plenums shall be insulated with not less than R-6 insulation where located in unconditioned spaces and where located outside the building with not less than R-8 insulation in *Climate Zones* 3 through 4 and not less than R-12 insulation in *Climate Zone* 5. Ducts located underground beneath buildings shall be insulated as required in this section or have an equivalent thermal distribution efficiency. Underground ducts utilizing the thermal distribution efficiency method shall be *listed* and *labeled* to indicate the *R*-value equivalency. Where located within a building envelope assembly, the duct or plenum shall be separated from the building exterior or unconditioned or exempt spaces by not less than R-8 insulation in *Climate Zones* 3 through 4 and not less than R-12 insulation in *Climate Zone* 5 .

Exceptions:

1. Where located within equipment.
2. Where the design temperature difference between the interior and exterior of the duct or plenum is not greater than 15°F (8°C).

Ducts, air handlers and filter boxes shall be sealed. Joints and seams shall comply with Section 603.9 of the *International Mechanical Code*.

~~C403.2.9.1~~C403.12.2 Duct construction. Ductwork shall be constructed and erected in accordance with the *International Mechanical Code*.

~~C403.2.9.1.1~~C403.12.2.1 Low-pressure duct systems. Longitudinal and transverse joints, seams and connections of supply and return ducts operating at a static pressure less than or equal to 2 inches water gauge (w.g.) (498 Pa) shall be securely fastened and sealed ~~in accordance with Section 603.9 of the International Mechanical Code.~~with welds, gaskets, mastics (adhesives), mas-tic-plus-embedded-fabric systems or tapes installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Pressure classifications specific to the duct system shall be clearly indicated on the construction documents in accordance with the *International Mechanical Code*.

Exception: Locking-type longitudinal joints and seams, other than the snap-lock and button-lock types, need not be sealed as specified in this section.

~~C403.2.9.1.2~~C403.12.2.2 Medium-pressure duct systems. Ducts and plenums designed to operate at a static pressure greater than 2 inches water gauge (w.g.) (498 Pa) but less than 3 inches w.g. (747 Pa) shall be insulated and sealed in accordance with Section ~~C403.2.9~~C403.12.1. Pressure classifications specific to the duct system shall be clearly indicated on the construction documents in accordance with the *International Mechanical Code.*

~~C403.2.9.1.3~~C403.12.2.3 High-pressure duct systems. Ducts and plenums designed to operate at static pressures equal to or greater than 3 inches water gauge (747 Pa) shall be insulated and sealed in accordance with Section ~~C403.2.9.~~C403.12.1. In addition, ducts and plenums shall be leak tested in accordance with the ~~*SMACNA HVAC Air Duct Leakage Test Manual*. The maximum permitted duct leakage shall be~~SMACNA HVAC Air Duct Leakage Test Manual and shown to have a rate of air leakage (CL) less than or equal to 4.0 as determined in accordance with Equation 4-8.

~~$L_{max} = C_L$ □ $P^{0.65}$ **(Equation 4-8)**~~

~~where:~~

~~L_{max} = Maximum permitted leakage, cfm/100 ft^2 duct surface area.~~

~~CL = 4, duct leakage class, cfm/100 ft^2 duct surface area at inch w.c.~~

~~P = Test pressure, which shall be equal to the design duct pressure class rating, inches w.c.~~

$CL = F/P^{0.65}$ **(Equation 4-8)**

where:

F = The measured leakage rate in cfm per 100 square feet (9.3 m^2) of duct surface.

P = The static pressure of the test.

Documentation shall be furnished demonstrating that representative sections totaling not less than 25 percent of the duct area have been tested and that all tested sections comply with the requirements of this section.

~~**C403.2.10 Piping insulation.** All piping serving as part of a heating or cooling system shall be thermally insulated in accordance with Table C403.2.10.~~

~~**Exceptions:**~~

~~1. Factory-installed piping within HVAC equipment tested and rated in accordance with a test procedure referenced by this code.~~

~~2. Factory-installed piping within room fan-coils and unit ventilators tested and rated according to AHRI 440 (except that the sampling and variation provisions of Section 6.5 shall not apply) and 840, respectively.~~

~~3. Piping that conveys fluids that have a design operating temperature range between 55°F (13°C) and 105°F (41°C).~~

~~4. Piping that conveys fluids that have not been heated or cooled through the use of fossil fuels or electric power.~~

~~5. Runout piping not exceeding 4 feet (1219 mm) in length and 1 inch (25 mm) in diameter between the control valve and HVAC coil.~~

~~6. Refrigerant suction piping located in conditioned space is not required to be insulated other than as may be necessary for preventing the formation of condensation.~~

~~7. Direct buried piping that conveys fluids at or below 60°F (15°C).~~

TABLE C403.2.10
MINIMUM PIPING INSULATION THICKNESS[a,b]

FLUID	NOMINAL PIPE DIAMETER	
	≤ 1.5"	> 1.5"
Steam	$1^1/_2$	3
Hot water	$1^1/_2$	2
Chilled water, brine or refrigerant	$1^1/_2$	$1^1/_2$

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.
a. Based on insulation having a conductivity (k) not exceeding 0.27 Btu · inch/hr · ft² · °F.
b. For insulation with a thermal conductivity not equal to 0.27 Btu · inch/hr · ft² · °F at a mean temperature of 75°F, the minimum required pipe thickness is adjusted using the following equation:
$T = r[(1 + t/r)^{K/k} - 1]$
where:
T = Adjusted insulation thickness (in).
r = Actual pipe radius (in).
t = Insulation thickness from applicable cell in table (in).
K = New thermal conductivity at 75°F (Btu · in/hr · ft² · °F).
k = 0.27 Btu · in/hr · ft² · °F.

C403.12.3 Piping insulation. Piping serving as part of a heating or cooling system shall be thermally insulated in accordance with Table C403.12.3.

Exceptions:

1. Factory-installed piping within HVAC equipment tested and rated in accordance with a test procedure referenced by this code.
2. Factory-installed piping within room fan-coils and unit ventilators tested and rated according to AHRI 440 (except that the sampling and variation provisions of Section 6.5 shall not apply) and AHRI 840, respectively.
3. Piping that conveys fluids that have a design operating temperature range between 60°F (15°C) and 105°F (41°C).
4. Piping that conveys fluids that have not been heated or cooled through the use of fossil fuels or electric power.
5. Strainers, control valves, and balancing valves associated with piping 1 inch (25 mm) or less in diameter.
6. Direct buried piping that conveys fluids at or below 60°F (15°C).
7. In radiant heating systems, sections of piping intended by design to radiate heat.

TABLE C403.12.3
MINIMUM PIPE INSULATION THICKNESS (in inches)[a, c]

FLUID OPERATING TEMPERATURE RANGE AND USAGE (°F)	INSULATION CONDUCTIVITY		NOMINAL PIPE OR TUBE SIZE (inches)				
	Conductivity Btu × in./(h × ft² × °F)[b]	Mean Rating Temperature, °F	< 1	1 to < $1^1/_2$	$1^1/_2$ to < 4	4 to < 8	≥ 8
> 350	0.32–0.34	250	4.5	5.0	5.0	5.0	5.0
251–350	0.29–0.32	200	3.0	4.0	4.5	4.5	4.5
201–250	0.27–0.30	150	2.5	2.5	2.5	3.0	3.0
141–200	0.25–0.29	125	1.5	1.5	2.0	2.0	2.0
105–140	0.21–0.28	100	1.0	1.0	1.5	1.5	1.5
40–60	0.21–0.27	75	0.5	0.5	1.0	1.0	1.0
< 40	0.20–0.26	50	0.5	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.5

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, °C = [(°F) – 32]/1.8.
a. For piping smaller than $1^1/_2$ inches and located in partitions within conditioned spaces, reduction of these thicknesses by 1 inch shall be permitted (before thickness adjustment required in Note b) but not to a thickness less than 1 inch.
b. For insulation outside the stated conductivity range, the minimum thickness (T) shall be determined as follows:
$T = r[(1 + t/r)^{K/k} - 1]$
where:
T = Minimum insulation thickness.

r = Actual outside radius of pipe.
t = Insulation thickness listed in the table for applicable fluid temperature and pipe size.
K = Conductivity of alternate material at mean rating temperature indicated for the applicable fluid temperature (Btu × in/h × ft^2 × °F).
k = The upper value of the conductivity range listed in the table for the applicable fluid temperature.

c. For direct-buried heating and hot water system piping, reduction of these thicknesses by $1^{1}/_{2}$ inches (38 mm) shall be permitted (before thickness adjustment required in Note b but not to thicknesses less than 1 inch.

~~C403.2.10.1~~C403.12.3.1 Protection of piping insulation. ~~Deleted.~~Piping insulation exposed to the weather shall be protected from damage, including that caused by sunlight, moisture, equipment maintenance and wind, and shall provide shielding from solar radiation that can cause degradation of the material. Adhesive tape shall not be ~~permitted.~~used on piping insulation.

C403.13 Mechanical systems located outside of the building thermal envelope. Mechanical systems providing heat outside of the thermal envelope of a building shall comply with Sections C403.13.1 through C403.13.3.

~~C403.2.13~~C403.13.1 Heating outside a building. Systems installed to provide heat outside a building shall be radiant systems.

Such heating systems shall be controlled by an occupancy sensing device or a timer switch, so that the system is automatically ~~denergized~~de-energized when occupants are not present.

~~C403.2.4.5~~C403.13.2 Snow-and ice-melt system controls. Snow- and ice-melting systems shall include automatic controls capable of shutting off the system when the pavement temperature is above ~~50°F (10°C).~~50°F (10°C) and precipitation is not falling, and an automatic or manual control that is configured to shut off when the outdoor temperature is above 40°F (4°C).

~~C403.2.4.6~~C403.13.3 Freeze protection system controls. Freeze protection systems, such as heat tracing of outdoor piping and heat exchangers, including self-regulating heat tracing, shall include automatic controls configured to shut off the systems when outdoor air temperatures are above 40°F (4°C) or when the conditions of the protected fluid will prevent freezing.

C403.14 Operable opening interlocking controls. The heating and cooling systems shall have controls that will interlock these mechanical systems to the set temperatures of 90ºF (32ºC) for cooling and 55ºF (12.7ºC) for heating when the conditions of Section C402.5.8 exist. The controls shall configure to shut off the systems entirely when the outdoor temperatures are below 90ºF (32ºC) or above 55ºF (12.7ºC).

SECTION C404
SERVICE WATER HEATING ~~(MANDATORY)~~

C404.1 General. This section covers the minimum efficiency of, and controls for, service water-heating equipment and insulation of service hot water piping.

C404.2 Service water-heating equipment performance efficiency. Water-heating equipment and hot water storage tanks shall meet the requirements of Table C404.2. The efficiency shall be verified through data furnished by the manufacturer of the equipment or through certification under an *approved* certification program. Water-heating equipment intended to be used to provide space heating shall meet the applicable provisions of Table C404.2.

C404.2.1 High input service water-heating systems. ~~Deleted.~~ Gas-fired water-heating equipment installed in new buildings shall be in compliance with this section. Where a singular piece of water-heating equipment serves the entire building and the input rating of the equipment is 1,000,000 Btu/h (293 kW) or greater, such equipment shall have a thermal efficiency, E_t, of not less than 92 percent. Where multiple pieces of water-heating equipment serve the building and the combined input rating of the water-heating equipment is 1,000,000 Btu/h (293 kW) or greater, the combined input-capacity-weighted-average thermal efficiency, E_t, shall be not less than 90 percent.

Exceptions:

1. Where not less than 25 percent of the annual *service water-heating* requirement is provided by *on-site renewable energy* or site-recovered energy, the minimum thermal efficiency requirements of this section shall not apply.
2. The input rating of water heaters installed in individual dwelling units shall not be required to be included in the total input rating of *service water-heating* equipment for a building.

3. The input rating of water heaters with an input rating of not greater than 100,000 Btu/h (29.3 kW) shall not be required to be included in the total input rating of *service water-heating* equipment for a building.

~~**C404.3 Heat traps.** Water-heating equipment not supplied with integral heat traps and serving noncirculating systems~~

~~shall be provided with heat traps on the supply and discharge piping associated with the equipment~~.

C404.3 Heat traps for hot water storage tanks. Storage tank-type water heaters and hot water storage tanks that have vertical water pipes connecting to the inlet and outlet of the tank shall be provided with integral heat traps at those inlets and outlets or shall have pipe-configured heat traps in the piping connected to those inlets and outlets. Tank inlets and outlets associated with solar water heating system circulation loops shall not be required to have heat traps.

~~**C404.4 Insulation of piping.** For automatic-circulating hot water systems, piping shall be insulated with 1 inch (25 mm) of insulation having a conductivity not exceeding 0.27 Btu · inch/h × ft^2 × °F (1.53 W · 25 mm/m^2 × K). The first 8 feet (2438 mm) of piping in noncirculating systems served by equipment with- out integral heat traps shall be insulated with 0.5 inch (12.7 mm) of material having a conductivity not exceeding 0.27 Btu · inch/ h × ft^2 × °F (1.53 W ·25mm/m2xK).~~

C404.4 Insulation of piping. Piping from a water heater to the termination of the heated water fixture supply pipe shall be insulated in accordance with Table C403.12.3. On both the inlet and outlet piping of a storage water heater or heated water storage tank, the piping to a heat trap or the first 8 feet (2438 mm) of piping, whichever is less, shall be insulated. Piping that is heat traced shall be insulated in accordance with Table C403.12.3 or the heat trace manufacturer's instructions. Tubular pipe insulation shall be installed in accordance with the insulation manufacturer's instructions. Pipe insulation shall be continuous except where the piping passes through a framing member. The minimum insulation thickness requirements of this section shall not supersede any greater insulation thickness requirements necessary for the protection of piping from freezing temperatures or the protection of personnel against external surface temperatures on the insulation.

Exception: Tubular pipe insulation shall not be required on the following:

1. The tubing from the connection at the termination of the fixture supply piping to a plumbing fixture or plumbing appliance.
2. Valves, pumps, strainers and threaded unions in piping that is 1 inch (25 mm) or less in nominal diameter.
3. Piping from user-controlled shower and bath mixing valves to the water outlets.
4. Cold-water piping of a demand recirculation water system.
5. Tubing from a hot drinking-water heating unit to the water outlet.
6. Piping at locations where a vertical support of the piping is installed.
7. Piping surrounded by building insulation with a thermal resistance (*R*-value) of not less than R-3.

TABLE C404.2

MINIMUM PERFORMANCE OF WATER-HEATING EQUIPMENT

EQUIPMENT TYPE	SIZE CATEGORY (input)	SUBCATEGORY OR RATING CONDITION	PERFORMANCE REQUIRED[a, b]	TEST PROCEDURE
Water heaters, electric	≤ 12 kW[d]	Tabletop[e], ≥ 20 gallons and ≤ 120 gallons	0.93 – 0.00132*V*, EF	DOE 10 CFR Part 430
		Resistance ≥ 20 gallons and ≤ 55 gallons	0.960 – 0.0003*V*, EF	
		Grid-enabled[f] > 75 gallons and ≤ 120 gallons	1.061 – 0.00168V, EF	
	> 12 kW	Resistance	(0.3 + 27/V_m), %/h	ANSI Z21.10.3

	≤ 24 amps and ≤ 250 volts	Heat pump > 55 gallons and ≤ 120 gallons	2.057 – 0.00113V, EF	DOE 10 CFR Part 430
Storage water heaters, gas	≤ 75,000 Btu/h	≥ 20 gallons and > 55 gallons	0.675 – 0.0015V, EF	DOE 10 CFR Part 430
		> 55 gallons and ≤ 100 gallons	0.8012 – 0.00078V, EF	
	> 75,000 Btu/h and ≤ 155,000 Btu/h	< 4,000 Btu/h/gal	80% E_t $(Q/800 + 110\sqrt{V})$SL, Btu/h	ANSI Z21.10.3
	> 155,000 Btu/h	< 4,000 Btu/h/gal	80% E_t $(Q/800 + 110\sqrt{V})$SL, Btu/h	
Instantaneous water heaters, gas	> 50,000 Btu/h and < 200,000 Btu/h[c]	≥ 4,000 Btu/h/gal and < 2 gal	0.82 – 0.00 19V, EF	DOE 10 CFR Part 430
	≥ 200,000 Btu/h	≥ 4,000 Btu/h/gal and < 10 gal	80% E_t	ANSI Z21.10.3
	≥ 200,000 Btu/h	≥ 4,000 Btu/h/gal and ≥ 10 gal	80% E_t $(Q/800 + 110\sqrt{V})$SL, Btu/h	
Storage water heaters, oil	≤ 105,000 Btu/h	≥ 20 gal and ≤ 50 gallons	0.68 – 0.0019V, EF	DOE 10 CFR Part 430
	≥ 105,000 Btu/h	< 4,000 Btu/h/gal	80% E_t $(Q/800 + 110\sqrt{V})$SL, Btu/h	ANSI Z21.10.3
Instantaneous water heaters, oil	≤ 210,000 Btu/h	≥ 4,000 Btu/h/gal and < 2 gal	0.59 – 0.0019V, EF	DOE 10 CFR Part 430
	> 210,000 Btu/h	≥ 4,000 Btu/h/gal and < 10 gal	80% E_t	ANSI Z21.10.3
	> 210,000 Btu/h	≥ 4,000 Btu/h/gal and ≥ 10 gal	78% E_t $(Q/800 + 110\sqrt{V})$SL, Btu/h	
Hot water supply boilers, gas and oil	≥ 300,000 Btu/h and < 12,500,000 Btu/h	≥ 4,000 Btu/h/gal and < 10 gal	80% E_t	ANSI Z21.10.3
Hot water supply boilers, gas	≥ 300,000 Btu/h and < 12,500,000 Btu/h	≥ 4,000 Btu/h/gal and ≥ 10 gal	80% E_t $(Q/800 + 110\sqrt{V})$SL, Btu/h	
Hot water supply boilers, oil	> 300,000 Btu/h and < 12,500,000 Btu/h	> 4,000 Btu/h/gal and > 10 gal	78% E_t $(Q/800 + 110\sqrt{V})$SL, Btu/h	
Pool heaters, gas and oil	All	—	82% E_t	ASHRAE 146
Heat pump pool heaters	All	—	4.0 COP	AHRI 1160
Unfired storage tanks	All	—	Minimum insulation requirement R-12.5 (h × ft^2 × °F)/Btu	(none)

TABLE C404.2—continued

MINIMUM PERFORMANCE OF WATER-HEATING EQUIPMENT

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 square foot = 0.0929 m^2, °C = [(°F) – 32]/1.8, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, 1 gallon = 3.785 L, 1 British thermal unit per hour per gallon = 0.078 W/L.

a. Energy factor (EF) and thermal efficiency *(E_t)* are minimum requirements. In the EF equation, *V* is the rated volume in gallons.

b. Standby loss (SL) is the maximum Btu/h based on a nominal 70°F temperature difference between stored water and ambient requirements. In the SL equation, Q is the nameplate input rate in Btu/h. In the equations for electric water heaters, V is the rated volume in gallons and V_m is the measured volume in gallons. In the SL equation for oil and gas water heaters and boilers, V is the rated volume in gallons.

c. Instantaneous water heaters with input rates below 200,000 Btu/h shall comply with these requirements where the water heater is designed to heat water to temperatures 180°F or higher.

d. Electric water heaters with an input rating of 12 kW (40,950 Btu/h) or less that are designed to heat water to temperatures of 180°F or greater shall comply with the requirements for electric water heaters that have an input rating greater than 12 kW (40,950 Btu/h).

e A tabletop water heater is a water heater that is enclosed in a rectangular cabinet with a flat top surface not more than 3 feet in height.

f. A grid-enabled water heater is an electric-resistance water heater that meets all of the following:

1. Has a rated storage tank volume of more than 75 gallons.
2. Was manufactured on or after April 16, 2015.
3. Is equipped at the point of manufacture with an activation lock.
4. Bears a permanent label applied by the manufacturer that complies with all of the following:
   - 4.1. Is made of material not adversely affected by water.
   - 4.2. Is attached by means of nonwater-soluble adhesive.
   - 4.3. Advises purchasers and end users of the intended and appropriate use of the product with the following notice printed in 16.5 point Arial Narrow Bold font: “IMPORTANT INFORMATION: This water heater is intended only for use as part of an electric thermal storage or demand response program. It will not provide adequate hot water unless enrolled in such a program and activated by your utility company or another program operator. Confirm the availability of a program in your local area before purchasing or installing this product.”

C404.5 ~~Efficient~~ Heated water supply piping. ~~Deleted.~~ Water supply piping shall be in accordance with Section C404.5.1 or C404.5.2. The flow rate through ^{1}¼inch (6.4 mm) piping shall be not greater than 0.5 gpm (1.9 L/m). The flow rate through $^{5}/_{16}$-inch (7.9 mm) piping shall be not greater than 1 gpm (3.8 L/m). The flow rate through $^{3}/_{8}$-inch (9.5 mm) piping shall be not greater than 1.5 gpm (5.7 L/m).

C404.5.1 Maximum allowable pipe length method. The maximum allowable piping length from the nearest source of heated water to the termination of the fixture supply pipe shall be in accordance with the following. Where the piping contains more than one size of pipe, the largest size of pipe within the piping shall be used for determining the maximum allowable length of the piping in Table C404.5.1.

1. For a public lavatory faucet, use the “Public lavatory faucets” column in Table C404.5.1.
2. For all other plumbing fixtures and plumbing appliances, use the “Other fixtures and appliances” column in Table C404.5.1.

TABLE C404.5.1
PIPING VOLUME AND MAXIMUM PIPING LENGTHS

NOMINAL PIPE SIZE (inches)	VOLUME (liquid ounces per foot length)	MAXIMUM PIPING LENGTH (feet)	
		Public lavatory faucets	Other fixtures and appliances
^{1}¼0.33	6	50	
$^{5}/_{16}$	0.5	4	50
$^{3}/_{8}$	0.75	3	50
^{1}½1.5	2	43	
$^{5}/_{8}$	2	1	32
^{3}¾3	0.5	21	
$^{7}/_{8}$	4	0.5	16
1	5	0.5	13
$1^{1}/_{4}$	8	0.5	8
$1^{1}/_{2}$	11	0.5	6

2 or larger	18	0.5	4

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 liquid ounce = 0.030 L, 1 gallon = 128 ounces.

C404.5.2 Maximum allowable pipe volume method. The water volume in the piping shall be calculated in accordance with Section C404.5.2.1. Water heaters, circulating water systems and heat trace temperature maintenance systems shall be considered to be sources of heated water.

The volume from the nearest source of heated water to the termination of the fixture supply pipe shall be as follows:

1. For a public lavatory faucet: not more than 2 ounces (0.06 L).
2. For other plumbing fixtures or plumbing appliances; not more than 0.5 gallon (1.89 L).

C404.5.2.1 Water volume determination. The volume shall be the sum of the internal volumes of pipe, fittings, valves, meters and manifolds between the nearest source of heated water and the termination of the fixture supply pipe. The volume in the piping shall be determined from the "Volume" column in Table C404.5.1 or from Table C404.5.2.1. The volume contained within fixture shutoff valves, within flexible water supply connectors to a fixture fitting and within a fixture fitting shall not be included in the water volume determination. Where heated water is supplied by a recirculating system or heat-traced piping, the volume shall include the portion of the fitting on the branch pipe that supplies water to the fixture.

TABLE C404.5.2.1
INTERNAL VOLUME OF VARIOUS WATER DISTRIBUTION TUBING

OUNCES OF WATER PER FOOT OF TUBE									
Nominal Size (inches)	Copper Type M	Copper Type L	Copper Type K	CPVC CTS SDR 11	CPVC SCH 40	CPVC SCH 80	PE-RT SDR	Composite ASTM F1281	PEX CTS SDR 9
$^{3}/_{8}$	1.06	0.97	0.84	N/A	1.17	—	0.64	0.63	0.64
$^{1}/_{2}$	1.69	1.55	1.45	1.25	1.89	1.46	1.18	1.31	1.18
$^{3}/_{4}$	3.43	3.22	2.90	2.67	3.38	2.74	2.35	3.39	2.35
1	5.81	5.49	5.17	4.43	5.53	4.57	3.91	5.56	3.91
$1^{1}/_{4}$	8.70	8.36	8.09	6.61	9.66	8.24	5.81	8.49	5.81
$1^{1}/_{2}$	12.18	11.83	11.45	9.22	13.20	11.38	8.09	13.88	8.09
2	21.08	20.58	20.04	15.79	21.88	19.11	13.86	21.48	13.86

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 liquid ounce = 0.030 L, 1 oz/ft^2 = 305.15 g/m^2.
N/A = Not Available.

~~**C404.6 Hot water system controls.** Automatic-circulating hot water system pumps or heat trace shall be arranged to be conveniently turned off automatically or manually when the hot water system is not in operation.~~

C404.6 Heated-water circulating and temperature maintenance systems. Heated-water circulation systems shall be in accordance with Section C404.6.1. Heat trace temperature maintenance systems shall be in accordance with Section C404.6.2. Controls for hot water storage shall be in accordance with Section C404.6.3. Automatic controls, temperature sensors and pumps shall be in a location with *access*. Manual controls shall be in a location with *ready access*.

C404.6.1 Circulation systems. Heated-water circulation systems shall be provided with a circulation pump. The system return pipe shall be a dedicated return pipe or a cold water supply pipe. Gravity and thermo-syphon circulation systems shall be prohibited. Controls for circulating hot water system pumps shall automatically turn off the pump when the water in the circulation loop is at the desired temperature and when there is not a demand for hot water. The controls shall limit the temperature of the water entering the cold water piping to not greater than 104ºF (40°C).

~~**C404.7 Demand recirculation controls.** Deleted.~~

** **C404.6.1.1 Demand recirculation controls.** Demand recirculation water systems shall have controls that start the pump upon receiving a signal from the action of a user of a fixture or appliance, sensing the presence of a user of a fixture, or sensing the flow of hot or tempered water to a fixture fitting or appliance.

C404.6.2 Heat trace systems. Electric heat trace systems shall comply with IEEE 515.1. Controls for such systems shall be able to automatically adjust the energy input to the heat tracing to maintain the desired water temperature in the piping in accordance with the times when heated water is used in the occupancy. Heat trace shall be arranged to be turned off automatically when there is not a demand for hot water.

C404.6.3 Controls for hot water storage. The controls on pumps that circulate water between a water heater and a heated-water storage tank shall limit operation of the pump from heating cycle startup to not greater than 5 minutes after the end of the cycle.

~~**C404.8 Drain water heat recovery units.**~~ ~~Deleted.~~

~~**C404.8**~~ **C404.7 Drain water heat recovery units.** Drain water heat recovery units shall comply with CSA B55.2. Potable water-side pressure loss shall be less than 10 psi (69 kPa) at maximum design flow. For *Group R* occupancies, the efficiency of drain water heat recovery unit efficiency shall be in accordance with CSA B55.1.

~~**C404.10 Energy consumption of portable spas (Mandatory).**~~ ~~Deleted.~~

~~**C404.10**~~ **C404.8 Energy consumption of pools and permanent spas.** The energy consumption of pools and permanent spas shall be controlled by the requirements in Sections C404.8.1 through C404.8.3.

C404.8.1 Heaters. The electric power to all heaters shall be controlled by an on-off switch that is an integral part of the heater, mounted on the exterior of the heater, or external to and within 3 feet (914 mm) of the heater in a location with *ready access*. Operation of such switch shall not change the setting of the heater thermostat. Such switches shall be in addition to a circuit breaker for the power to the heater. Gas-fired heaters shall not be equipped with continuously burning ignition pilots.

~~**C404.9.2 Time switches.** Time switches or other control methods that can automatically turn off and on heaters and pump motors according to a preset schedule shall be installed for heaters and pump motors. Heaters and pump motors that have built-in time switches shall be in compliance with this section.~~

~~**Exceptions:**~~

~~1. Where public health standards require 24-hour pump operation.~~

~~2. Pumps that operate solar- and waste-heat-recovery pool heating systems.~~

C404.8.2 Time switches. Time switches or other control methods that can automatically turn off and on heaters and pump motors according to a preset schedule shall be installed for heaters and pump motors. Heaters and pump motors that have built-in time switches shall be in compliance with this section.

Exceptions:

1. Where public health standards require 24-hour pump operation.
2. Pumps that operate solar- and waste-heat-recovery pool heating systems.

~~**C404.9.3**~~ **C404.8.3 Covers.** Outdoor heated pools and outdoor permanent spas shall be provided with a ~~class 1~~ vapor-retardant cover or other *approved* vapor-retardant means.

~~**Exception:** Pools deriving over 70 percent of the energy from heating from *site-recovered energy* or *solar energy source*.~~

Exception: Where more than 75 percent of the energy for heating, computed over an operating season of not fewer than 3 calendar months, is from a heat pump or an on-site renewable energy system, covers or other vapor-retardant means shall not be required.

C404.9 Portable spas. The energy consumption of electric-powered portable spas shall be controlled by the requirements of APSP 14.

SECTION C405
ELECTRICAL POWER AND LIGHTING SYSTEMS

~~**C405.1 General (Mandatory).** This section covers lighting system controls, the maximum lighting power for interior and exterior applications and electrical energy consumption.~~

~~**Exception:** Dwelling units within commercial buildings shall not be required to comply with Sections C405.2 through C405.5, provided that they comply with Section R404.1.~~

C405.1 General. Lighting system controls, the maximum lighting power for interior and exterior applications, and electrical energy consumption shall comply with this section. *Sleeping units* shall comply with Section C405.2.4 and with either Section C405.1.1 or C405.3. *General lighting* shall consist of all lighting included when calculating the total connected interior lighting power in accordance with Section C405.3.1 and which does not require specific application controls in accordance with Section C405.2.4.

Transformers, uninterruptable power supplies, motors and electrical power processing equipment in data center systems shall comply with Section 8 of ASHRAE 90.4 in addition to this code.

C405.1.1 Lighting for dwelling units. No less than 90 percent of the permanently installed lighting serving dwelling units, excluding kitchen appliance lighting, shall be provided by lamps with an efficacy of not less than 65 lm/W or luminaires with an efficacy of not less than 45 lm/W, or shall comply with Sections C405.2.4 and C405.3.

~~**C405.2 Lighting controls (Mandatory).** Lighting systems shall be provided with controls as specified in Sections C405.2.1, C405.2.2, C405.2.3, C405.2.4 and C405.2.5.~~

C405.2 Lighting controls. Lighting systems shall be provided with controls that comply with one of the following.

1. Lighting controls as specified in Sections C405.2.1 through C405.2.7.
2. Luminaire level lighting controls (LLLC) and lighting controls as specified in Sections C405.2.1, C405.2.5 and C405.2.6. The LLLC luminaire shall be independently capable of:
   2.1. Monitoring occupant activity to brighten or dim lighting when occupied or unoccupied, respectively.
   2.2. Monitoring ambient light, both electric light and daylight, and brighten or dim artificial light to maintain desired light level.
   2.3. For each control strategy, configuration and reconfiguration of performance parameters including; bright and dim setpoints, timeouts, dimming fade rates, sensor sensitivity adjustments, and wireless zoning configurations.

Exceptions: Lighting controls are not required for the following:

1. Areas designated as security or emergency areas that are required to be continuously lighted.
2. Interior exit stairways, interior exit ramps and exit passageways.
3. Emergency egress lighting that is normally off.

C405.2.1 Occupant sensor controls. Occupant *sensor controls* shall be installed to control lights in the following space types:

1. Classrooms/lecture/training rooms.
2. Conference/meeting/multipurpose rooms.
3. Copy/print rooms.

~~4. Lounges.~~
~~5. Employee lunch and break rooms.~~
~~6. Private offices.~~

4. Lounges/breakrooms.
5. Enclosed offices.

6. Open plan office areas.
7. Restrooms.
8. Storage rooms. ~~greater than 100 square feet.~~

~~9. Janitorial closets.~~
~~10. Computer server rooms.~~
~~11. Mechanical and electrical equipment rooms.~~
~~12. Warehouses.~~

9. Locker rooms.
10. Corridors.
11. Warehouse storage areas.
12. Other spaces 300 square feet (28 m^2) or less that are enclosed by floor-to-ceiling height partitions.

~~Occupancy sensors shall not be required for:~~
~~1. Rooms requiring explosion proof electrical devices.~~
~~2. Chemical storage rooms.~~

Exception: Luminaires that are required to have specific application controls in accordance with Section C405.2.5.

~~**C405.2.1.1 Occupant sensor control function.** Occupant sensor controls in spaces other than warehouses specified in Section C405.2.1 shall comply with the following:~~

~~1. Automatically turn off lights within 30 minutes of all occupants leaving the space.~~
~~2. Deleted.~~
~~3. Shall incorporate a *manual control* to allow occupants to turn lights off.~~

C405.2.1.1 Occupant sensor control function. Occupant sensor controls in warehouses shall comply with Section C405.2.1.2. Occupant sensor controls in open plan office areas shall comply with Section C405.2.1.3. Occupant sensor controls in corridors shall comply with Section C405.2.1.4. Occupant sensor controls for all other spaces specified in Section C405.2.1 shall comply with the following:

1. They shall automatically turn off lights within 20 minutes after all occupants have left the space.
2. They shall be manual on or controlled to automatically turn on the lighting to not more than 50-percent power.
3. They shall incorporate a manual control to allow occupants to turn off lights.

Exception: Full automatic-on controls with no manual control shall be permitted in corridors, interior parking areas, stairways, restrooms, locker rooms, lobbies, library stacks and areas where manual operation would endanger occupant safety or security.

~~**C405.2.1.2 Occupant sensor control function in warehouses**. In warehouses, the lighting in aisleways and open areas shall be controlled with occupant sensors that automatically reduce lighting power from 50 percent to 100 percent off when the areas are unoccupied. The occupant sensors shall control lighting in each aisleway independently and shall not control lighting beyond the aisleway being controlled by the sensor.~~

C405.2.1.2 Occupant sensor control function in warehouse storage areas. Lighting in warehouse storage areas shall be controlled as follows:

1. Lighting in each aisleway shall be controlled independently of lighting in all other aisleways and open areas.
2. Occupant sensors shall automatically reduce lighting power within each controlled area to an occupied setpoint of not more than 50 percent within 20 minutes after all occupants have left the controlled area.
3. Lights that are not turned off by occupant sensors shall be turned off by time-switch control complying with Section C405.2.2.1.
4. A manual control shall be provided to allow occupants to turn off lights in the space.

C405.2.1.3 Occupant sensor control function in open plan office areas. Occupant sensor controls in open plan office spaces less than 300 square feet (28 m^2) in area shall comply with Section C405.2.1.1. Occupant sensor controls in all other open plan office spaces shall comply with all of the following:

1. The controls shall be configured so that general lighting can be controlled separately in control zones with floor areas not greater than 600 square feet (55 m^2) within the open plan office space.
2. General lighting in each control zone shall be permitted to automatically turn on upon occupancy within the control zone. General lighting in other unoccupied zones within the open plan office space shall be permitted to turn on to not more than 20 percent of full power or remain unaffected.
3. The controls shall automatically turn off general lighting in all control zones within 20 minutes after all occupants have left the open plan office space.

    Exception: Where general lighting is turned off by time-switch control complying with Section C405.2.2.1.

4. General lighting in each control zone shall turn off or uniformly reduce lighting power to an unoccupied setpoint of not more than 20 percent of full power within 20 minutes after all occupants have left the control zone.

C405.2.1.4 Occupant sensor control function in corridors. Occupant sensor controls in corridors shall uniformly reduce lighting power to not more than 50 percent of full power within 20 minutes after all occupants have left the space.

Exception: Corridors provided with less than two footcandles of illumination on the floor at the darkest point with all lights on.

C405.2.2 Time-switch controls. Each area of the building that is not provided with *occupant sensor controls* complying with Section C405.2.1.1 shall be provided with *time-switch controls* complying with Section C405.2.2.1.

Exceptions:

1. Luminaires that are required to have specific application controls in accordance with Section C405.2.4.
2. Spaces where patient care is directly provided.
3. Spaces where an automatic shutoff would endanger occupant safety or security.
4. Lighting intended for continuous operation.
5. Shop and laboratory classrooms.

~~**C405.2.2.1 Time-switch control function.** Each space provided with *time-switch controls* shall also be provided with a *manual control* for light reduction in accordance with Section C405.2.2.2. Time-switch *controls* shall include an override switching device that complies with the following:~~

~~1. Have a minimum 7-day clock.~~
~~2. Be capable of being set for seven different day types per week.~~
~~3. Incorporate an automatic holiday "shutoff" feature, which turns off all controlled lighting loads for at least 24 hours and then resumes normally scheduled operations.~~
~~4. Have program backup capabilities, which prevent the loss of program and time settings for at least 10 hours, if power is interrupted.~~
~~5. Include an override switch that complies with the following:~~
~~5.1. The override switch shall be a manual control.~~
~~5.2. The override switch, when initiated, shall permit the controlled lighting to remain on for not more than 2 hours.~~
~~5.3. Any individual override switch shall control the lighting for an area not larger than 5,000 square feet (465 m^2).~~

~~**Exceptions:**~~

~~1. Within malls, arcades, auditoriums, singletenant retail spaces, industrial facilities and arenas:~~
~~1.1. The time limit shall be permitted to be greater than 2 hours, provided that the override switch is a captive key device.~~
~~1.2. The area controlled by the override switch is permitted to be greater than 5,000 square feet (465 m^2), but shall not be greater than 20,000 square feet (1860 m^2).~~
~~2. Where provided with *manual control*, the following areas are not required to have light reduction control in accordance with Section C405.2.2.2:~~
~~2.1. Spaces that have only one luminaire with a rated power of less than 100 watts.~~
~~2.2. Spaces that use less than 0.6 watts per square foot (6.5 W/m^2).~~
~~2.3. Corridors, equipment rooms, public lobbies, electrical or mechanical rooms.~~

C405.2.2.1 Time-switch control function. Time-switch *controls* shall comply with all of the following:

1. Automatically turn off lights when the space is scheduled to be unoccupied.
2. Have a minimum 7-day clock.
3. Be capable of being set for seven different day types per week.
4. Incorporate an automatic holiday “shutoff” feature, which turns off all controlled lighting loads for not fewer than 24 hours and then resumes normally scheduled operations.
5. Have program backup capabilities, which prevent the loss of program and time settings for not fewer than 10 hours, if power is interrupted.
6. Include an override switch that complies with the following:
   - 6.1. The override switch shall be a manual control.
   - 6.2. The override switch, when initiated, shall permit the controlled lighting to remain on for not more than 2 hours.
   - 6.3. Any individual override switch shall control the lighting for an area not larger than 5,000 square feet (465 m^2).

Exception: Within mall concourses, auditoriums, sales areas, manufacturing facilities and sports arenas:

1. The time limit shall be permitted to be greater than 2 hours, provided that the switch is a captive key device.
2. The area controlled by the override switch shall not be limited to 5,000 square feet (465 m^2) provided that such area is less than 20,000 square feet (1860 m^2). *

~~**C405.2.2.2 Light-reduction controls.** Spaces required to have light-reduction controls shall have a *manual control* that allows the occupant to reduce the connected lighting load in a reasonably uniform illumination pattern by at least 50 percent. Lighting reduction shall be achieved by one of the following or another *approved* method:~~
~~1. Controlling all lamps or luminaires.~~
~~2. Dual switching of alternate rows of luminaires, alternate luminaires or alternate lamps.~~
~~3. Switching the middle lamp luminaires independently of the outer lamps.~~
~~4. Switching each luminaire or each lamp.~~

~~**Exception:** Light reduction controls are not required in *daylight zones* with *daylight responsive controls*.~~

~~**C405.2.3 Daylight-responsive controls.** Deleted.~~

** **C405.2.4 Daylight-responsive controls.** *Daylight-responsive controls* complying with Section C405.2.4.1 shall be provided to control the general lighting within *daylight zones* in the following spaces:

1. Spaces with a total of more than 150 watts of *general lighting* within primary sidelit daylight zones complying with Section C405.2.4.2.
2. Spaces with a total of more than 300 watts of *general lighting* within sidelit daylight zones complying with Section C405.2.4.2.
3. Spaces with a total of more than 150 watts of *general lighting* within toplit daylight zones complying with Section C405.2.4.3.

Exceptions: Daylight responsive controls are not required for the following:

1. Spaces in health care facilities where patient care is directly provided.
2. Sidelit daylight zones on the first floor above grade in Group A-2 and Group M occupancies.
3. New buildings where the total connected lighting power calculated in accordance with Section C405.3.1 is not greater than the adjusted interior lighting power allowance (LPA_{adj}) calculated in accordance with Equation 4-9.

$$LPA_{adj} = [LPA_{norm} \times (1.0 - 0.4 \times UDZFA / TBFA)] \qquad \textbf{(Equation 4-9)}$$

where:

LPA_{adj} = Adjusted building interior lighting power allowance in watts.

LPA_{norm} = Normal building lighting power allowance in watts calculated in accordance with Section C405.3.2 and reduced in accordance with Section C406.3 where Option 2 of Section C406.1 is used to comply with the requirements of Section C406.

$UDZFA$ = Uncontrolled daylight zone floor area is the sum of all sidelit and toplit zones, calculated in accordance with Sections C405.2.4.2 and C405.2.4.3, that do not have daylight responsive controls.

$TBFA$ = Total building floor area is the sum of all floor areas included in the lighting power allowance calculation in Section C405.3.2.

~~**C405.2.3.1 Daylight-responsive control function.** Deleted.~~

C405.2.4.1 Daylight-responsive control function. Where required, *daylight-responsive controls* shall be provided within each space for control of lights in that space and shall comply with all of the following:

1. Lights in *toplit daylight zones* in accordance with Section C405.2.4.3 shall be controlled independently of lights in sidelit daylight zones in accordance with Section C405.2.4.2.
2. Lights in the primary sidelit daylight zone shall be controlled independently of lights in the secondary sidelit daylight zone.
3. *Daylight responsive controls* within each space shall be configured so that they can be calibrated from within that space by authorized personnel.
4. Calibration mechanisms shall be in a location with *ready access*.
5. *Daylight responsive controls* shall dim lights continuously from full light output to 15 percent of full light output or lower.
6. *Daylight responsive controls* shall be configured to completely shut off all controlled lights.
7. When occupant sensor controls have reduced the lighting power to an unoccupied setpoint in accordance with Sections C405.2.1.2 through C405.2.1.4, daylight responsive controls shall continue to adjust electric light levels in

response to available daylight, but shall be configured to not increase the lighting power above the specified unoccupied setpoint.

8. Lights in *sidelit daylight zones* in accordance with Section C405.2.4.2 facing different cardinal orientations [within 45 degrees (0.79 rad) of due north, east, south, west] shall be controlled independently of each other.

Exceptions:

1. Within each space, up to 150 watts of lighting within the primary sidelit daylight zone is permitted to be controlled together with lighting in a primary sidelit daylight zone facing a different cardinal orientation.
2. Within each space, up to 150 watts of lighting within the secondary sidelit daylight zone is permitted to be controlled together with lighting in a secondary sidelit daylight zone facing a different cardinal orientation.

~~**C405.2.3.2 Sidelight daylight zone.** Deleted.~~

C405.2.4.2 Sidelit daylight zone. The sidelit daylight zone is the floor area adjacent to vertical *fenestration* that complies with all of the following:

1. Where the fenestration is located in a wall, the sidelit daylight zone shall extend laterally to the nearest full-height wall, or up to 1.0 times the height from the floor to the top of the fenestration, and longitudinally from the edge of the fenestration to the nearest full-height wall, or up to 0.5 times the height from the floor to the top of the fenestration, whichever is less, as indicated in Figure C405.2.4.2(1).
2. Where the fenestration is located in a rooftop monitor, the sidelit daylight zone shall extend laterally to the nearest obstruction that is taller than 0.7 times the ceiling height, or up to 1.0 times the height from the floor to the bottom of the fenestration, whichever is less, and longitudinally from the edge of the fenestration to the nearest obstruction that is taller than 0.7 times the ceiling height, or up to 0.25 times the height from the floor to the bottom of the fenestration, whichever is less, as indicated in Figures C405.2.4.2(2) and C405.2.4.2(3).
3. The secondary sidelit daylight zone is directly adjacent to the primary sidelit daylight zone and shall extend laterally to 2.0 times the height from the floor to the top of the fenestration or to the nearest full height wall, whichever is less, and longitudinally from the edge of the fenestration to the nearest full height wall, or up to 2 feet, whichever is less, as indicated in Figure C405.2.4.2(1).
4. The area of the fenestration is not less than 24 square feet (2.23 m^2).
5. The distance from the fenestration to any building or geological formation that would block *access to* daylight is greater than one-half of the height from the bottom of the fenestration to the top of the building or geologic formation.
6. The visible transmittance of the fenestration is not less than 0.20.
7. The projection factor (determined in accordance with Equation 4-5) for any overhanging projection that is shading the fenestration is not greater than 1.0 for fenestration oriented 45 degrees or less from true north and not greater than 1.5 for all other orientations.

~~**C405.2.3.3 Toplight daylight zone.** Deleted.~~

C405.2.4.3 Toplit daylight zone. The *toplit daylight zone* is the floor area underneath a roof fenestration assembly that complies with all of the following:

1. The toplit daylight zone shall extend laterally and longitudinally beyond the edge of the roof fenestration assembly to the nearest obstruction that is taller than 0.7 times the ceiling height, or up to 0.7 times the ceiling height, whichever is less, as indicated in Figure C405.2.4.3.
2. Direct sunlight is not blocked from hitting the roof fenestration assembly at the peak solar angle on the summer solstice by buildings or geological formations.
3. The product of the visible transmittance of the roof fenestration assembly and the area of the rough opening of the roof fenestration assembly divided by the area of the *toplit* zone is not less than 0.008.

C405.2.4.4 Atriums. Daylight zones at atrium spaces shall be established at the top floor surrounding the atrium and at the floor of the atrium space, and not on intermediate floors, as indicated in Figure C405.2.4.4.

<u>FIGURE C405.2.4.2(1)</u>
<u>PRIMARY AND SECONDARY SIDELIT DAYLIGHT ZONES</u>

(No image was provided – images from webpage)

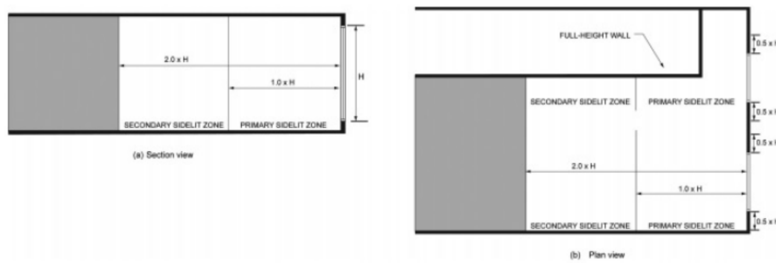


FIGURE C405.2.4.2(1) PRIMARY AND SECONDARY SIDELIT DAYLIGHT ZONES

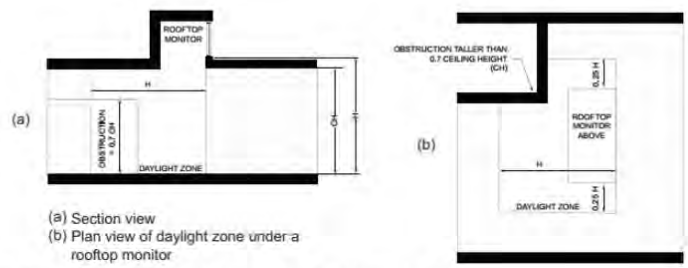


FIGURE C405.2.4.2(2) DAYLIGHT ZONE UNDER A ROOFTOP MONITOR

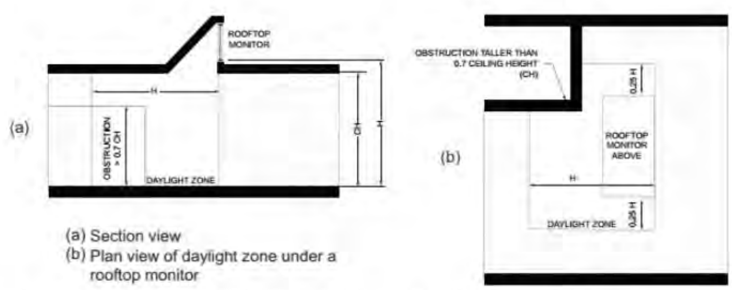


FIGURE C405.2.4.2(3) DAYLIGHT ZONE UNDER A SLOPED ROOFTOP MONITOR

~~**C405.2.4 Specific application controls.** Specific application controls shall be provided for the following:~~

~~1. Display and accent light shall be controlled by a dedicated control that is independent of the controls for other lighting within the room or space.~~

~~2. Lighting in cases used for display case purposes shall be controlled by a dedicated control that is independent of the controls for other lighting within the room or space.~~

~~3. Hotel and motel sleeping units and guest suites shall have a master control device that is capable of automatically switching off all installed luminaires and switched receptacles within 20 minutes after all occupants leave the room.~~

~~**Exception:** Lighting and switched receptacles controlled by captive key systems.~~

~~4. Supplemental task lighting, including permanently installed under-shelf or under-cabinet lighting, shall have a control device integral to the luminaires or be controlled by a wall-mounted control device provided that the control device is readily accessible.~~

~~5. Lighting for nonvisual applications, such as plant growth and food warming, shall be controlled by a dedicated control that is independent of the controls for other lighting within the room or space.~~

~~6. Lighting equipment that is for sale or for demonstrations in lighting education shall be controlled by a dedicated control that is independent of the controls for other lighting within the room or space.~~

C405.2.5 Specific application controls. Specific application controls shall be provided for the following:

1. The following lighting shall be controlled by an occupant sensor complying with Section C405.2.1.1 or a time-switch control complying with Section C405.2.2.1. In addition, a manual control shall be provided to control such lighting separately from the general lighting in the space:
   1.1. Luminaires for which additional lighting power is claimed in accordance with Section C405.3.2.2.1.
   1.2. Display and accent.
   1.3. Lighting in display cases.
   1.4. Supplemental task lighting, including permanently installed under-shelf or under-cabinet lighting.
   1.5. Lighting equipment that is for sale or demonstration in lighting education.
   1.6. Display lighting for exhibits in galleries, museums and monuments that is in addition to *general lighting*.
2. *Sleeping units* shall have control devices or systems that are configured to automatically switch off all permanently installed luminaires and switched receptacles within 20 minutes after all occupants have left the unit.

   Exceptions:

   1. Lighting and switched receptacles controlled by card key controls.
   2. Spaces where patient care is directly provided.
3. Permanently installed luminaires within *dwelling units* shall be provided with controls complying with Section C405.2.1.1 or C405.2.3.1.
4. Lighting for nonvisual applications, such as plant growth and food warming, shall be controlled by a time switch control complying with Section C405.2.2.1 that is independent of the controls for other lighting within the room or space.
5. Task lighting for medical and dental purposes that is in addition to *general lighting* shall be provided with a *manual control.*

~~**C405.2.2.3 Manual controls.** *Manual controls* for lights shall comply with the following:~~

~~1. Shall be readily accessible to occupants.~~

~~2. Shall be located where the controlled lights are visible, or shall identify the area served by the lights and indicate their status.~~

C405.2.6 Manual controls. Where required by this code, manual controls for lights shall comply with the following:

1. They shall be in a location with *ready access* to occupants.
2. They shall be located where the controlled lights are visible, or shall identify the area served by the lights and indicate their status.

~~**C405.2.5 Exterior lighting controls.** Lighting not designated for dusk-to-dawn operation shall be controlled by either a combination of a photosensor and a time switch, or an astronomical time switch. Lighting designated for dusk-to-dawn operation shall be controlled by an astronomical time switch or photosensor. All time switches shall be capable of retaining programming and the time setting during loss of power for a period of at least 10 hours.~~

C405.2.7 Exterior lighting controls. Exterior lighting systems shall be provided with controls that comply with Sections C405.2.7.1 through C405.2.7.4.

Exceptions:

1. Lighting for covered vehicle entrances and exits from buildings and parking structures where required for eye adaptation.
2. Lighting controlled from within dwelling units.

C405.2.7.1 Daylight shutoff. Lights shall be automatically turned off when daylight is present and satisfies the lighting needs.

C405.2.7.2 Building and landscape lighting. Building and landscape lighting shall automatically shut off from not later than 1 hour after business closing to not earlier than 1 hour before business opening.

C405.2.7.3 Lighting setback. Lighting that is not controlled in accordance with Section C405.2.7.2 shall comply with the following:

1. Be controlled so that the total wattage of such lighting is automatically reduced by not less than 50 percent by selectively switching off or dimming luminaires at one of the following times:
   1.1. From not later than midnight to not earlier than 6 a.m.
   1.2. From not later than one hour after business closing to not earlier than one hour before business opening.
   1.3. During any time where activity has not been detected for 15 minutes or more.
2. Luminaires serving outdoor parking areas and having a rated input wattage of greater than 78 watts and a mounting height of 24 feet (7315 mm) or less above the ground shall be controlled so that the total wattage of such lighting is automatically reduced by not less than 50 percent during any time where activity has not been detected for 15 minutes or more. Not more than 1,500 watts of lighting power shall be controlled together.

C405.2.7.4 Exterior time-switch control function. Time-switch controls for exterior lighting shall comply with the following:

1. They shall have a clock capable of being programmed for not fewer than 7 days.
2. They shall be capable of being set for seven different day types per week.
3. They shall incorporate an automatic holiday setback feature.
4. They shall have program backup capabilities that prevent the loss of program and time settings for a period of not less than 10 hours in the event that power is interrupted.

C405.2.8 Parking garage lighting control. Parking garage lighting shall be controlled by an *occupant sensor* complying with Section C405.2.1.1 or a *time-switch control* complying with Section C405.2.2.1. Additional lighting controls shall be provided as follows:

1. Lighting power of each luminaire shall be automatically reduced by not less than 30 percent when there is no activity detected within a lighting zone for 20 minutes. Lighting zones for this requirement shall be not larger than 3,600 square feet (334.5 m^2).

   Exception: Lighting zones provided with less than 1.5 footcandles of illumination on the floor at the darkest point with all lights on are not required to have automatic light-reduction controls.

2. Where lighting for eye adaptation is provided at covered vehicle entrances and exits from buildings and parking structures, such lighting shall be separately controlled by a device that automatically reduces lighting power by at least 50 percent from sunset to sunrise.

3. The power to luminaires within 20 feet (6096 mm) of perimeter wall openings shall automatically reduce in response to daylight by at least 50 percent.

Exceptions:

1. Where the opening-to-wall ratio is less than 40 percent as viewed from the interior and encompassing the vertical distance from the driving surface to the lowest structural element.
2. Where the distance from the opening to any exterior daylight blocking obstruction is less than one-half the height from the bottom of the opening or fenestration to the top of the obstruction.
3. Where openings are obstructed by permanent screens or architectural elements restricting daylight entering the interior space.

~~**C405.3 Exit signs (Mandatory).** Internally illuminated exit signs shall not be more than 5 watts per side.~~

~~**C405.4**~~ **C405.3 Interior lighting power requirements.** ~~(Prescriptive).~~ A building complies with this section where its total connected interior lighting power calculated under Section ~~C405.4.1~~ C405.3.1 is not greater than the interior lighting power allowance calculated under Section ~~C405.4.2~~ C405.3.2.

~~**C405.4.1**~~ **C405.3.1 Total connected interior lighting power.** The total connected interior lighting power shall be determined in accordance with Equation ~~4-9~~ 4-10.

~~*TCLP* = [*SL* + *LV* + *LTPB* + Other] **(Equation 4-9)**~~
~~where:~~
~~*TCLP* = Total connected lighting power (watts).~~
~~*SL* = Labeled wattage of luminaires for screw-in lamps.~~
~~*LV* = Wattage of the transformer supplying lowvoltage lighting.~~
~~*LTPB* = Wattage of line-voltage lighting tracks and plugin busways as the specified wattage of the luminaires, but at least 30 W/lin. ft. (100 W/lin m), or the wattage limit of the system's circuit breaker, or the wattage limit of other permanent current-limiting devices on the system.~~
~~Other = The wattage of all other luminaires and lighting sources not covered previously and associated with interior lighting verified by data supplied by the manufacturer or other *approved* sources.~~

TCLP = [*LVL* + *BLL* + *LED* + *TRK* + Other] **(Equation 4-10)**

where:

TCLP = Total connected lighting power (watts).

LVL = For luminaires with lamps connected directly to building power, such as line voltage lamps, the rated wattage of the lamp.

BLL = For luminaires incorporating a ballast or transformer, the rated input wattage of the ballast or transformer when operating that lamp.

LED = For light-emitting diode luminaires with either integral or remote drivers, the rated wattage of the luminaire.

TRK = For lighting track, cable conductor, rail conductor, and plug-in busway systems that allow the addition and relocation of luminaires without rewiring, the wattage shall be one of the following:

1. The specified wattage of the luminaires, but not less than 8 W per linear foot (25 W/lin m).
2. The wattage limit of the permanent current-limiting devices protecting the system.

3. The wattage limit of the transformer supplying the system.

Other = The wattage of all other luminaires and lighting sources not covered previously and associated with interior lighting verified by data supplied by the manufacturer or other *approved* sources.

~~**Exceptions:**~~

~~1. The connected power associated with the following lighting equipment is not included in calculating total connected lighting power.~~

~~1.1. Professional sports arena playing field lighting.~~

~~1.2. Lighting in sleeping units, provided that the lighting complies with Section R404.1.~~

~~1.3. Emergency lighting automatically off during normal building operation.~~

~~1.4. Lighting in spaces specifically designed for use by occupants with special lighting needs, including those with visual impairment and other medical and age-related issues.~~

~~1.5. Lighting in interior spaces that have been specifically designated as a registered interior historic landmark.~~

~~1.6. Casino gaming areas.~~

~~1.7. Mirror lighting in dressing rooms.~~

~~2. Lighting equipment used for the following shall be exempt provided that it is in addition to general lighting and is controlled by an independent control device:~~

~~2.1. Task lighting for medical and dental purposes.~~

~~2.2. Display lighting for exhibits in galleries, museums and monuments.~~

~~3. Lighting for theatrical purposes, including performance, stage, film production and video production.~~

~~4. Lighting for photographic processes.~~

~~5. Lighting integral to equipment or instrumentation and installed by the manufacturer.~~

~~6. Task lighting for plant growth or maintenance.~~

~~7. Advertising signage or directional signage.~~

~~Task lighting for plant growth or maintenance.~~

~~7. Advertising signage or directional signage.~~

~~8. In restaurant buildings and areas, lighting for food warming or integral to food preparation equipment.~~

~~9. Lighting equipment that is for sale.~~

~~10. Lighting demonstration equipment in lighting education facilities.~~

~~11. Lighting *approved* because of safety or emergency considerations, inclusive of exit lights.~~

~~12. Lighting integral to both open and glassenclosed refrigerator and freezer cases.~~

~~13. Lighting in retail display windows, provided the display area is enclosed by ceiling-height partitions.~~

~~14. Furniture-mounted supplemental task lighting that is controlled by automatic shutoff.~~

~~15. Exit signs.~~

The connected power associated with the following lighting equipment and applications is not included in calculating total connected lighting power.

1. Television broadcast lighting for playing areas in sports arenas.
2. Emergency lighting automatically off during normal building operation.
3. Lighting in spaces specifically designed for use by occupants with special lighting needs, including those with visual impairment and other medical and age-related issues.
4. Casino gaming areas.
5. Mirror lighting in dressing rooms.
6. Task lighting for medical and dental purposes that is in addition to general lighting.
7. Display lighting for exhibits in galleries, museums and monuments that is in addition to general lighting.
8. Lighting for theatrical purposes, including performance, stage, film production and video production.
9. Lighting for photographic processes.
10. Lighting integral to equipment or instrumentation and installed by the manufacturer.
11. Task lighting for plant growth or maintenance.
12. Advertising signage or directional signage.
13. Lighting for food warming.
14. Lighting equipment that is for sale.
15. Lighting demonstration equipment in lighting education facilities.
16. Lighting approved because of safety considerations.
17. Lighting in retail display windows, provided that the display area is enclosed by ceiling-height partitions.
18. Furniture-mounted supplemental task lighting that is controlled by automatic shutoff.
19. Exit signs.
20. Antimicrobial lighting used for the sole purpose of disinfecting a space.

~~**C405.4.2 Interior lighting power.** The total interior lighting power allowance (watts) is determined according to Table C405.4.2(1) using the Building Area Method, or Table C405.4.2(2) using the Space-by-Space Method, for all areas of the building covered in this permit.~~

~~**C405.4.2**~~ **C405.3.2 Interior lighting power allowance.** The total interior lighting power allowance (watts) for an entire building shall be determined according to Table C405.3.2(1) using the Building Area Method or Table C405.3.2(2) using the Space-by-Space Method. The interior lighting power allowance for projects that involve only portions of a building shall be determined according to Table C405.3.2(2) using the Space-by-Space Method. Buildings with unfinished spaces shall use the Space-by-Space Method.

~~**C405.4.2.1 Building Area Method.** For the Building Area Method, the interior lighting power allowance is the floor area for each building area type listed in Table C405.4.2(1) times the value from Table C405.4.2(1) for that area. For the purposes of this method, an "area" shall be defined as all contiguous spaces that accommodate or are associated with a single building area type, as listed in Table C405.4.2(1). Where this method is used to calculate the total interior lighting power for an entire building, each building area type shall be treated as a separate area. Trade-offs among building area types are permitted.~~

~~**C405.4.2.1**~~ **C405.3.2.1 Building Area Method.** For the Building Area Method, the interior lighting power allowance is calculated as follows:

1. For each building area type inside the building, determine the applicable building area type and the allowed lighting power density for that type from Table C405.3.2(1). For building area types not listed, select the building area type that most closely represents the use of that area. For the purposes of this method, an "area" shall be defined as all contiguous spaces that accommodate or are associated with a single building area type.

2. Determine the floor area for each building area type listed in Table C405.3.2(1) and multiply this area by the applicable value from Table C405.3.2(1) to determine the lighting power (watts) for each building area type.

3. The total interior lighting power allowance (watts) for the entire building is the sum of the lighting power from each building area type.

~~**C405.4.2.2 Space-by-Space Method.** For the Spaceby- Space Method, the interior lighting power allowance is determined by multiplying the floor area of each space times the value for the space type in Table C405.4.2(2) that most closely represents the proposed use of the space, and then summing the lighting power allowances for all spaces. Trade-offs among spaces are permitted.~~

~~C405.4.2.2~~ C405.3.2.2 Space-by-Space Method. Where a building has unfinished spaces, the lighting power allowance for the unfinished spaces shall be the total connected lighting power for those spaces, or 0.2 watts per square foot (10.76 w/m^2), whichever is less. For the Space-by-Space Method, the interior lighting power allowance is calculated as follows:

1. For each space enclosed by partitions that are not less than 80 percent of the ceiling height, determine the applicable space type from Table C405.3.2(2). For space types not listed, select the space type that most closely represents the proposed use of the space. Where a space has multiple functions, that space may be divided into separate spaces.

2. Determine the total floor area of all the spaces of each space type and multiply by the value for the space type in Table C405.3.2(2) to determine the lighting power (watts) for each space type.

3. The total interior lighting power allowance (watts) shall be the sum of the lighting power allowances for all space types.

C405.3.2.2.1 Additional interior lighting power. Where using the Space-by-Space Method, an increase in the interior lighting power allowance is permitted for specific lighting functions. Additional power shall be permitted only where the specified lighting is installed and controlled in accordance with Section C405.2.4. This additional power shall be used only for the specified luminaires and shall not be used for any other purpose. An increase in the interior lighting power allowance is permitted in the following cases:

1. For lighting equipment to be installed in sales areas specifically to highlight merchandise, the additional lighting power shall be determined in accordance with Equation ~~4-10~~ 4-11.

~~Additional interior lighting power allowance = 500 watts + (Retail Area 1 • 0.6 W/ft2) + (Retail Area 2 • 0.6 W/ft2) + (Retail Area 3 • 1.4 W/ft2) + (Retail Area 4 • 2.5 W/ft2)~~

~~**(Equation 4-10)**~~

Additional interior lighting power allowance = 1000 W + (Retail Area 1 × 0.45 W/ft^2) + (Retail Area 2 × 0.45W/ft^2) + (Retail Area 3 × 1.05 W/ft^2) + (Retail Area 4 × 1.87 W/ft^2)

For SI units:

~~Additional interior lighting power allowance = 500 watts + (Retail Area 1 • 0.6 W/ft2) + (Retail Area 2 • 0.6 W/ft2) + (Retail Area 3 • 1.4 W/ft2) + (Retail Area 4 • 2.5 W/ft2)~~

~~**(Equation 4-10)**~~

Additional interior lighting power allowance = 1000 W + (Retail Area 1 × 4.8 W/m^2) + (Retail Area 2 × 4.84 W/m^2) + (Retail Area 3 × 11 W/m^2) + (Retail Area 4 × 20 W/m^2)

(Equation 4-11)

where:

Retail Area 1 = The floor area for all products not listed in Retail Area 2, 3 or 4.

Retail Area 2 = The floor area used for the sale of vehicles, sporting goods and small electronics.

Retail Area 3 = The floor area used for the sale of furniture, clothing, cosmetics and artwork.

Retail Area 4 = The floor area used for the sale of jewelry, crystal and china.

Exception: Other merchandise categories are permitted to be included in Retail Areas 2 through 4, provided that justification documenting the need for additional lighting power based on visual inspection, contrast or other critical display is approved by the code official.

2. For spaces in which lighting is specified to be installed in addition to the general lighting for the purpose of decorative appearance or for highlighting art or exhibits, provided that the additional lighting power shall be not more than ~~1.0 w/sq. ft.~~ 0.9 W/ft^2 (9.7 W/m^2) ~~of such spaces~~ <u>in lobbies and not more than 0.75 W/ft^2 (8.1 W/m^2) in other spaces.</u>

<u>**C405.4 Lighting for plant growth and maintenance.** Not less than 95 percent of the permanently installed luminaires used for plant growth and maintenance shall have a photon efficiency of not less than 1.6 μmol/J as defined in accordance with ANSI/ASABE S640.</u>

TABLE C405.4.2(1)
INTERIOR LIGHTING POWER ALLOWANCES: BUILDING AREA METHOD

BUILDING AREA TYPE	LPD (w/ft^2)
Automotive facility	0.80
Convention center	1.01
Courthouse	1.01
Dining: bar lounge/leisure	1.01
Dining: cafeteria/fast food	0.9
Dining: family	0.95
Dormitory	0.57
Exercise center	0.84
Fire station	0.67
Gymnasium	0.94
Health care clinic	0.90
Hospital	1.05
Hotel/Motel	0.87
Library	1.19
Manufacturing facility	1.17
Motion picture theater	0.7[illegible]
Multifamily	0.[illegible]1
Museum	1.02
Office	0.82
Parking garage	0.21
Penitentiary	0.[illegible]1
Performing arts theater	1.[illegible]9
Police station	0.[illegible]7
Post office	0.[illegible]7
Religious building	1.[illegible]
Retail	1.[illegible]6
School/university	0.[illegible]7
Sports arena	0.[illegible]1
Town hall	0.[illegible]9
Transportation	0.[illegible]0
Warehouse	0.[illegible]6
Workshop	1.[illegible]9

~~Table C405.4.2(1)~~ TABLE C405.3.2(1)

INTERIOR LIGHTING POWER ALLOWANCES: BUILDING AREA METHOD

BUILDING AREA TYPE	LPD (watts/ft²)
Automotive facility	0.75
Convention center	0.64
Courthouse	0.79
Dining: bar lounge/leisure	0.80
Dining: cafeteria/fast food	0.76
Dining: family	0.71
Dormitory[a, b]	0.53
Exercise center	0.72
Fire station[a]	0.56
Gymnasium	0.76
Health care clinic	0.81
Hospital[a]	0.96
Hotel/Motel[a, b]	0.56
Library	0.83
Manufacturing facility	0.82
Motion picture theater	0.44
Multiple-family[c]	0.45
Museum	0.55
Office	0.64

TABLE ~~C405.4.2(1)~~ TABLE C405.3.2(1)continued

INTERIOR LIGHTING POWER ALLOWANCES: BUILDING AREA METHOD

BUILDING AREA TYPE	LPD (watts/ft²)
Parking garage	0.18
Penitentiary	0.69
Performing arts theater	0.84
Police station	0.66
Post office	0.65
Religious building	0.67
Retail	0.84
School/university	0.72

Sports arena	0.76
Town hall	0.69
Transportation	0.50
Warehouse	0.45
Workshop	0.91

For SI: 1 watt per square foot = 10.76 w/m^2.

a. Where sleeping units are excluded from lighting power calculations by application of Section R404.1, neither the area of the sleeping units nor the wattage of lighting in the sleeping units is counted.

b. Where dwelling units are excluded from lighting power calculations by application of Section R404.1, neither the area of the dwelling units nor the wattage of lighting in the dwelling units is counted.

c. Dwelling units are excluded. Neither the area of the dwelling units nor the wattage of lighting in the dwelling units is counted.

TABLE C405.4.2(2)
INTERIOR LIGHTING POWER ALLOWANCES:
SPACE-BY-SPACE METHOD

COMMON SPACE TYPES[a]	LPD (watts/sq.ft)
Atrium	
Less than 40 feet in height	0.03 per foot in total height
Greater than 40 feet in height	0.40 + 0.02 per foot in total height
Audience seating area	
In an auditorium	0.63
In a convention center	0.82
In a gymnasium	0.65
In a motion picture theater	1.14
In a penitentiary	0.28
In a performing arts theater	2.43
In a religious building	1.53
In a sports arena	0.43
Otherwise	0.43
Banking activity area	1.01
Breakroom (See Lounge/Breakroom)	
Classroom/lecture hall/training room	

~~Table C405.4.2(2)~~ TABLE C405.3.2(2) [note to reviewer, replace Table C405.4.2(2) 2018 in its entirety with Table C405.3.2(2)]

INTERIOR LIGHTING POWER ALLOWANCES:
SPACE-BY-SPACE METHOD

COMMON SPACE TYPES[a]	LPD (watts/ft^2)
Atrium	
Less than 40 feet in height	0.48
Greater than 40 feet in height	0.60
Audience seating area	

In an auditorium	0.61
In a gymnasium	0.23
In a motion picture theater	0.27
In a penitentiary	0.67
In a performing arts theater	1.16
In a religious building	0.72
In a sports arena	0.33
Otherwise	0.33
Banking activity area	0.61
Breakroom (See Lounge/breakroom)	
Classroom/lecture hall/training room	
In a penitentiary	0.89
Otherwise	0.71
Computer room, data center	0.94
Conference/meeting/multipurpose room	0.97
Copy/print room	0.31

(continued)

TABLE ~~C405.4.2(2)~~ TABLE C405.3.2(2) - continued
INTERIOR LIGHTING POWER ALLOWANCES:
SPACE-BY-SPACE METHOD

COMMON SPACE TYPES[a]	LPD (watts/ft²)
Corridor	
In a facility for the visually impaired (and not used primarily by the staff)[b]	0.71
In a hospital	0.71
Otherwise	0.41
Courtroom	1.20
Dining area	
In bar/lounge or leisure dining	0.86
In cafeteria or fast food dining	0.40
In a facility for the visually impaired (and not used primarily by the staff)[b]	1.27
In family dining	0.60
In a penitentiary	0.42
Otherwise	0.43

Electrical/mechanical room	0.43
Emergency vehicle garage	0.52
Food preparation area	1.09
Guestroom[c, d]	0.41
Laboratory	
In or as a classroom	1.11
Otherwise	1.33
Laundry/washing area	0.53
Loading dock, interior	0.88
Lobby	
For an elevator	0.65
In a facility for the visually impaired (and not used primarily by the staff)[b]	1.69
In a hotel	0.51
In a motion picture theater	0.23
In a performing arts theater	1.25
Otherwise	0.84
Locker room	0.52
Lounge/breakroom	
In a healthcare facility	0.42
Otherwise	0.59
Office	
Enclosed	0.74
Open plan	0.61
Parking area, interior	0.15
Pharmacy area	1.66
Restroom	
In a facility for the visually impaired (and not used primarily by the staff[b]	1.26
Otherwise	0.63
Sales area	1.05

(continued)

TABLE ~~C405.4.2(2)~~ TABLE C405.3.2(2) - continued

INTERIOR LIGHTING POWER ALLOWANCES: SPACE-BY-SPACE METHOD

COMMON SPACE TYPES[a]	LPD (watts/ft²)

Seating area, general	0.23
Stairwell	0.49
Storage room	0.38
Vehicular maintenance area	0.60
Workshop	1.26
BUILDING TYPE SPECIFIC SPACE TYPES[a]	LPD (watts/ ft²)
Automotive (see Vehicular maintenance area)	
Convention Center—exhibit space	0.61
Dormitory—living quarters[c, d]	0.50
Facility for the visually impaired[b]	
In a chapel (and not used primarily by the staff)	0.70
In a recreation room (and not used primarily by the staff)	1.77
Fire Station—sleeping quarters[c]	0.23
Gymnasium/fitness center	
In an exercise area	0.90
In a playing area	0.85
Healthcare facility	
In an exam/treatment room	1.40
In an imaging room	0.94
In a medical supply room	0.62
In a nursery	0.92
In a nurse's station	1.17
In an operating room	2.26
In a patient room[c]	0.68
In a physical therapy room	0.91
In a recovery room	1.25
Library	
In a reading area	0.96
In the stacks	1.18
Manufacturing facility	
In a detailed manufacturing area	0.80
In an equipment room	0.76
In an extra-high-bay area (greater than 50 feet floor-to-ceiling height)	1.42

In a high-bay area (25–50 feet floor-to-ceiling height)	1.24
In a low-bay area (less than 25 feet floor-to-ceiling height)	0.86
Museum	
In a general exhibition area	0.31
In a restoration room	1.10
Performing arts theater—dressing room	0.41
Post office—sorting area	0.76

(continued)

TABLE ~~C405.4.2(2)~~ TABLE C405.3.2(2) - continued

INTERIOR LIGHTING POWER ALLOWANCES: SPACE-BY-SPACE METHOD

COMMON SPACE TYPES[a]	LPD (watts/ft²)
Religious buildings	
In a fellowship hall	0.54
In a worship/pulpit/choir area	0.85
Retail facilities	
In a dressing/fitting room	0.51
In a mall concourse	0.82
Sports arena—playing area	
For a Class I facility[e]	2.94
For a Class II facility[f]	2.01
For a Class III facility[g]	1.30
For a Class IV facility[h]	0.86
Transportation facility	
At a terminal ticket counter	0.51
In a baggage/carousel area	0.39
In an airport concourse	0.25
Warehouse—storage area	
For medium to bulky, palletized items	0.33
For smaller, hand-carried items	0.69

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 watt per square foot = 10.76 w/m^2.

a. In cases where both a common space type and a building area specific space type are listed, the building area specific space type shall apply.

b. A ‘Facility for the Visually Impaired’ is a facility that is licensed or will be licensed by local or state authorities for senior long-term care, adult daycare, senior support or people with special visual needs.

c. Where sleeping units are excluded from lighting power calculations by application of Section R404.1, neither the area of the sleeping units nor the wattage of lighting in the sleeping units is counted.
d. Where dwelling units are excluded from lighting power calculations by application of Section R404.1, neither the area of the dwelling units nor the wattage of lighting in the dwelling units is counted.
e. Class I facilities consist of professional facilities; and semiprofessional, collegiate, or club facilities with seating for 5,000 or more spectators.
f. Class II facilities consist of collegiate and semiprofessional facilities with seating for fewer than 5,000 spectators; club facilities with seating for between 2,000 and 5,000 spectators; and amateur league and high school facilities with seating for more than 2,000 spectators.
g. Class III facilities consist of club, amateur league and high school facilities with seating for 2,000 or fewer spectators.
h. Class IV facilities consist of elementary school and recreational facilities; and amateur league and high school facilities without provision for spectators.

~~**C405.5 Exterior lighting (Mandatory).** Where the power for exterior lighting is supplied through the energy service to the building, all exterior lighting shall comply with Section C405.5.1.~~

C405.5 Exterior lighting power requirements. The total connected exterior lighting power calculated in accordance with Section C405.5.1 shall be not greater than the exterior lighting power allowance calculated in accordance with Section C405.5.2.

~~**Exception:** Where *approved* because of historical, safety, signage or emergency considerations.~~

~~**C405.5.1 Exterior building lighting power.** The total exterior lighting power allowance for all exterior building applications is the sum of the base site allowance plus the individual allowances for areas that are to be illuminated and are permitted in Table C405.5.1(2) for the applicable lighting zone. Trade-offs are allowed only among exterior lighting applications listed in Table C405.5.1(2), in the Tradable Surfaces section. The lighting zone for the building exterior is determined from Table C405.5.1(1) unless otherwise specified by the local jurisdiction.~~

C405.5.1 Total connected exterior building exterior lighting power. The total exterior connected lighting power shall be the total maximum rated wattage of all lighting that is powered through the energy service for the building.

~~**Exception:** Lighting used for the following exterior applications is exempt where equipped with a control device independent of the control of the nonexempt lighting:~~
~~1. Specialized signal, directional and marker lighting associated with transportation.~~
~~2. Advertising signage or directional signage.~~
~~3. Integral to equipment or instrumentation and is installed by its manufacturer.~~
~~4. Theatrical purposes, including performance, stage, film production and video production.~~
~~5. Athletic playing areas.~~
~~6. Temporary lighting.~~
~~7. Industrial production, material handling, transportation sites and associated storage areas.~~
~~8. Theme elements in theme/amusement parks.~~
~~9. Used to highlight features of public monuments and registered historic landmark structures or buildings.~~

Exception: Lighting used for the following applications shall not be included.

1. Lighting *approved* because of safety considerations.
2. Emergency lighting automatically off during normal business operation.
3. Exit signs.
4. Specialized signal, directional and marker lighting associated with transportation.

5. Advertising signage or directional signage.
6. Integral to equipment or instrumentation and installed by its manufacturer.
7. Theatrical purposes, including performance, stage, film production and video production.
8. Athletic playing areas.
9. Temporary lighting.
10. Industrial production, material handling, transportation sites and associated storage areas.
11. Theme elements in theme/amusement parks.
12. Used to highlight features of art, public monuments and the national flag.
13. Lighting for water features and swimming pools.
14. Lighting controlled from within dwelling units, where the lighting complies with Section R404.1.

C405.5.2 Exterior lighting power allowance. The exterior lighting power allowance (watts) is calculated as follows:

1. Determine the Lighting Zone (LZ) for the building according to Table C405.5.2(1), unless otherwise specified by the code official.
2. For each exterior area that is to be illuminated by lighting that is powered through the energy service for the building, determine the applicable area type from Table C405.5.2(2). For area types not listed, select the area type that most closely represents the proposed use of the area.
3. Determine the total area or length of each area type and multiply by the value for the area type in Table C405.5.2(2) to determine the lighting power (watts) allowed for each area type.
4. The total exterior lighting power allowance (watts) is the sum of the base site allowance determined according to Table C405.5.2(2), plus the watts from each area type.

TABLE ~~C405.5.1(1)~~ C405.5.2(1)
EXTERIOR LIGHTING ZONES

LIGHTING ZONE	DESCRIPTION
1	Developed areas of national parks, state parks, forest land, and rural areas
2	Areas predominantly consisting of residential zoning, neighborhood business districts, light industrial with limited nighttime use and residential mixed-use areas
3	All other areas not classified as lighting zone 1, 2 or 4
4	High-activity commercial districts in major metropolitan areas as designated by the local land use planning authority

C405.5.2.1 Additional exterior lighting power. Additional exterior lighting power allowances are available for the specific lighting applications listed in Table C405.5.2(3). These additional power allowances shall be used only for the luminaires serving these specific applications and shall not be used to increase any other lighting power allowance.

TABLE C405.5.1(2)
INDIVIDUAL LIGHTING POWER ALLOWANCES FOR BUILDING EXTERIORS

		LIGHTING ZONES			
		Zone 1	Zone 2	Zone 3	Zone 4
Base Site Allowance (Base allowance is usable in tradable or nontradable surfaces.)		500 W	600 W	750 W	1300 W
Tradable Surfaces (Lighting power densities for uncovered parking areas, building grounds, building entrances and exits,	Uncovered Parking Areas				
	Parking areas and drives	0.04 W/ft^2	0.06 W/ft^2	0.10 W/ft^2	0.13 W/ft^2
	Building Grounds				
	Walkways less than 10 feet wide	0.7 W/linear foot	0.7 W/linear foot	0.8 W/linear foot	1.0 W/linear foot
	Walkways 10 feet wide or greater, plaza areas special feature areas	0.14 W/ft^2	0.14 W/ft^2	0.16 W/ft^2	0.2 W/ft^2
	Stairways	0.75 W/ft^2	1.0 W/ft^2	1.0 W/ft^2	1.0 W/ft^2
	Pedestrian tunnels	0.15 W/ft^2	0.15 W/ft^2	0.2 W/ft^2	0.3 W/ft^2
	Building Entrances and Exits				
	Main entries	20 W/linear foot of door width	20 W/linear foot of door width	30 W/linear foot of door width	30 W/linear foot of door width
	[illegible]	20 W/linear foot	20 W/linear foot	20 W/linear foot	20 W/linear foot

~~TABLE C405.5.1(2)~~ TABLE C405.5.2(2)

LIGHTING POWER ALLOWANCES FOR BUILDING EXTERIORS

	LIGHTING ZONES			
	Zone 1	Zone 2	Zone 3	Zone 4
Base Site Allowance	350 W	400 W	500 W	900 W
Uncovered Parking Areas				
Parking areas and drives	0.03 W/ft^2	0.04 W/ft^2	0.06 W/ft^2	0.08 W/ft^2
Building Grounds				
Walkways and ramps less than 10 feet wide	0.50 W/linear foot	0.50 W/linear foot	0.60 W/linear foot	0.70 W/linear foot
Walkways and ramps 10 feet wide or greater, plaza areas, special feature areas	0.10 W/ft^2	0.10 W/ft^2	0.11 W/ft^2	0.14 W/ft^2
Dining areas	0.65 W/ft^2	0.65 W/ft^2	0.75 W/ft^2	0.95 W/ft^2
Stairways	0.60 W/ft^2	0.70 W/ft^2	0.70 W/ft^2	0.70 W/ft^2
Pedestrian tunnels	0.12 W/ft^2	0.12 W/ft^2	0.14 W/ft^2	0.21 W/ft^2
Landscaping	0.03 W/ft^2	0.04 W/ft^2	0.04 W/ft^2	0.04 W/ft^2
Building Entrances and Exits				
Pedestrian and vehicular entrances and exits	14 W/linear foot of opening	14 W/linear foot of opening	21 W/linear foot of opening	21 W/linear foot of opening
Entry canopies	0.20 W/ft^2	0.25 W/ft^2	0.40 W/ft^2	0.40 W/ft^2
Loading docks	0.35 W/ft^2	0.35 W/ft^2	0.35 W/ft^2	0.35 W/ft^2
Sales Canopies				

Free-standing and attached	0.40 W/ft^2	0.40 W/ft^2	0.60 W/ft^2	0.70 W/ft^2
Outdoor Sales				
Open areas (including vehicle sales lots)	0.20 W/ft^2	0.20 W/ft^2	0.35 W/ft^2	0.50 W/ft^2
Street frontage for vehicle sales lots in addition to "open area" allowance	No allowance	7 W/linear foot	7 W/linear foot	21 W/linear foot

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 watt per square foot = W/0.0929 m^2.
W = watts.

~~Table C405.5.1(2)~~ TABLE C405.5.2(3)
INDIVIDUAL LIGHTING POWER ALLOWANCES FOR BUILDING EXTERIORS

	LIGHTING ZONES			
	Zone 1	Zone 2	Zone 3	Zone 4
Building facades	No allowance	0.075 W/ft^2 of gross above-grade wall area	0.113 W/ft^2 of gross above-grade wall area	0.15 W/ft^2 of gross above-grade wall area
Automated teller machines (ATM) and night depositories	135 W per location plus 45 W per additional ATM per location			
Uncovered entrances and gate-house inspection stations at guarded facilities	0.50 W/ft^2 of area			
Uncovered loading areas for law enforcement, fire, ambulance and other emergency service vehicles	0.35 W/ft^2 of area			
Drive-up windows and doors	200 W per drive through			
Parking near 24-hour retail entrances.	400 W per main entry			

For SI: For SI: 1 watt per square foot = W/0.0929 m^2.
W = watts.

C405.5.3 Gas lighting. Gas-fired lighting appliances shall not be equipped with continuously burning pilot ignition systems.

C405.6 ~~Electrical energy consumption (Mandatory)~~ Dwelling electrical meter. Each dwelling unit located in a *Group R*-2 building shall have a separate electrical meter.

C405.7 Electrical transformers ~~(Mandatory).~~ ~~Electric~~ Low-voltage dry-type distribution electric transformers shall meet the minimum efficiency requirements of Table C405.7 as tested and rated in accordance with the test procedure listed in DOE 10 CFR 431. The efficiency shall be verified through certification under an approved certification program or, where a certification program does not exist, the equipment efficiency ratings shall be supported by data furnished by the transformer manufacturer.

Exceptions: The following transformers are exempt:

1. Transformers that meet the *Energy Policy Act of 2005* exclusions based on the DOE 10 CFR 431 definition of special purpose applications.
2. Transformers that meet the *Energy Policy Act of 2005* exclusions that are not to be used in general purpose applications based on information provided in DOE 10 CFR 431.
3. Transformers that meet the *Energy Policy Act of 2005* exclusions with multiple voltage taps where the highest tap is not less than 20 percent more than the lowest tap.

4. Drive transformers.
5. Rectifier transformers.
6. Auto-transformers.
7. Uninterruptible power system transformers.
8. Impedance transformers.
9. Regulating transformers.
10. Sealed and nonventilating transformers.
11. Machine tool transformers.
12. Welding transformers.
13. Grounding transformers.
14. Testing transformers.

TABLE C405.7
MINIMUM NOMINAL EFFICIENCY LEVELS FOR DOE 10 CFR 431 LOW-VOLTAGE DRY-TYPE DISTRIBUTION TRANSFORMERS

SINGLE-PHASE TRANSFORMERS		THREE-PHASE TRANSFORMERS	
kVA[a]	Efficiency (%)[b]	kVA[a]	Efficiency (%)[b]
15	97.70	15	~~97.0~~ 97.89
25	98.00	30	~~97.5~~ 98.23
37.5	98.20	45	~~97.7~~ 98.40
50	98.30	75	~~98.0~~ 98.60
75	98.50	112.5	~~98.2~~ 98.74
100	98.60	150	~~98.3~~ 98.83
167	98.70	225	~~98.5~~ 98.94
250	98.80	300	~~98.6~~ 99.02
333	98.90	500	~~98.7~~ 99.14
—	—	750	~~98.8~~ 99.23
—	—	1000	~~98.9~~ 99.28

a. kilovoltAmp rating.
b. Nominal efficiencies shall be established in accordance with the DOE 10 CFR 431 test procedure for low-voltage dry-type transformers.

C405.8 Electric motors ~~(Mandatory).~~ Electric motors shall meet the minimum efficiency requirements of Tables C405.8(1) through C405.8(4) when tested and rated in accordance with the DOE 10 CFR 431. The efficiency shall be verified through certification under an approved certification program or, where a certification program does not exist, the equipment efficiency ratings shall be supported by data furnished by the motor manufacturer.

Exception: The standards in this section shall not apply to the following exempt electric motors:

1. Air-over electric motors.
2. Component sets of an electric motor.
3. Liquid-cooled electric motors.
4. Submersible electric motors.
5. Inverter-only electric motors.

TABLE C405.8(1)
MINIMUM NOMINAL FULL-LOAD EFFICIENCY FOR 60 HZ NEMA GENERAL PURPOSE ELECTRIC MOTORS (SUBTYPE I) RATED 600 VOLTS OR LESS (Random Wound)[a]

MOTOR HORSEPOWER	NUMBER OF POLES	OPEN DRIP-PROOF MOTORS			TOTALLY ENCLOSED FAN-COOLED MOTORS		
		2	4	6	2	4	6
	Synchronous Speed (RPM)	3600	1800	1200	3600	1800	1200
1		77.0	85.5	82.5	77.0	85.5	82.5
1.5		84.0	86.5	86.5	84.0	86.5	87.5
2		85.5	86.5	87.5	85.5	86.5	88.5
3		85.5	89.5	88.5	86.5	89.5	89.5
5		86.5	89.5	89.5	88.5	89.5	89.5
7.5		88.5	91.0	90.2	89.5	91.7	91.0
10		89.5	91.7	91.7	90.2	91.7	91.0
15		90.2	93.0	91.7	91.0	92.4	91.7
20		91.0	93.0	92.4	91.0	93.0	91.7
25		91.7	93.6	93.0	91.7	93.6	93.0
30		91.7	94.1	93.6	91.7	93.6	93.0
40		92.4	94.1	94.1	92.4	94.1	94.1
50		93.0	94.5	94.1	93.0	94.5	94.1
60		93.6	95.0	94.5	93.6	95.0	94.5
75		93.6	95.0	94.5	93.6	95.4	94.5
100		93.6	95.4	95.0	94.1	95.4	95.0
125		94.1	95.4	95.0	95.0	95.4	95.0
150		94.1	95.8	95.4	95.0	95.8	95.8
200		95.0	95.8	95.4	95.4	96.2	95.8
250		95.0	95.8	95.4	95.8	96.2	95.8
300		95.4	95.8	95.4	95.8	96.2	95.8
350		95.4	95.8	95.4	95.8	96.2	95.8
400		95.8	95.8	95.8	95.8	96.2	95.8
450		95.8	96.2	96.2	95.8	96.2	95.8
500		95.8	96.2	96.2	95.8	96.2	95.8

a. Nominal efficiencies shall be established in accordance with DOE 10 CFR 431.

TABLE C405.8(1)

MINIMUM NOMINAL FULL-LOAD EFFICIENCY FOR NEMA DESIGN A, NEMA DESIGN B, AND IEC DESIGN N MOTORS (EXCLUDING FIRE PUMP) ELECTRIC MOTORS AT 60 HZ[a, b]

MOTOR HORSEPOWER (STANDARD KILOWATT EQUIVALENT)	NOMINAL FULL-LOAD EFFICIENCY (%) AS OF JUNE 1, 2016							
	2 Pole		4 Pole		6 Pole		8 Pole	
	Enclosed	Open	Enclosed	Open	Enclosed	Open	Enclosed	Open
1 (0.75)	77.0	77.0	85.5	85.5	82.5	82.5	75.5	75.5
1.5 (1.1)	84.0	84.0	86.5	86.5	87.5	86.5	78.5	77.0
2 (1.5)	85.5	85.5	86.5	86.5	88.5	87.5	84.0	86.5
3 (2.2)	86.5	85.5	89.5	89.5	89.5	88.5	85.5	87.5
5 (3.7)	88.5	86.5	89.5	89.5	89.5	89.5	86.5	88.5
7.5 (5.5)	89.5	88.5	91.7	91.0	91.0	90.2	86.5	89.5
10 (7.5)	90.2	89.5	91.7	91.7	91.0	91.7	89.5	90.2

15 (11)	91.0	90.2	92.4	93.0	91.7	91.7	89.5	90.2
20 (15)	91.0	91.0	93.0	93.0	91.7	92.4	90.2	91.0
25 (18.5)	91.7	91.7	93.6	93.6	93.0	93.0	90.2	91.0
30 (22)	91.7	91.7	93.6	94.1	93.0	93.6	91.7	91.7
40 (30)	92.4	92.4	94.1	94.1	94.1	94.1	91.7	91.7
50 (37)	93.0	93.0	94.5	94.5	94.1	94.1	92.4	92.4
60 (45)	93.6	93.6	95.0	95.0	94.5	94.5	92.4	93.0
75 (55)	93.6	93.6	95.4	95.0	94.5	94.5	93.6	94.1
100 (75)	94.1	93.6	95.4	95.4	95.0	95.0	93.6	94.1
125 (90)	95.0	94.1	95.4	95.4	95.0	95.0	94.1	94.1
150 (110)	95.0	94.1	95.8	95.8	95.8	95.4	94.1	94.1
200 (150)	95.4	95.0	96.2	95.8	95.8	95.4	94.5	94.1
250 (186)	95.8	95.0	96.2	95.8	95.8	95.8	95.0	95.0
300 (224)	95.8	95.4	96.2	95.8	95.8	95.8	—	—
350 (261)	95.8	95.4	96.2	95.8	95.8	95.8	—	—
400 (298)	95.8	95.8	96.2	95.8	—	—	—	—
450 (336)	95.8	96.2	96.2	96.2	—	—	—	—
500 (373)	95.8	96.2	96.2	96.2	—	—	—	—

a. Nominal efficiencies shall be established in accordance with DOE 10 CFR 431.

b. For purposes of determining the required minimum nominal full-load efficiency of an electric motor that has a horsepower or kilowatt rating between two horsepower or two kilowatt ratings listed in this table, each such motor shall be deemed to have a listed horsepower or kilowatt rating, determined as follows:

1. A horsepower at or above the midpoint between the two consecutive horsepowers shall be rounded up to the higher of the two horsepowers.
2. A horsepower below the midpoint between the two consecutive horsepowers shall be rounded down to the lower of the two horsepowers.
3. A kilowatt rating shall be directly converted from kilowatts to horsepower using the formula: 1 kilowatt = (1/0.746) horsepower. The conversion should be calculated to three significant decimal places, and the resulting horsepower shall be rounded in accordance with No. 1 or No. 2 above, as applicable.

TABLE C405.8(2)
MINIMUM NOMINAL FULL-LOAD EFFICIENCY OF GENERAL PURPOSE ELECTRIC MOTORS (SUBTYPE II) AND ALL DESIGN B MOTORS GREATER THAN 200 HORSEPOWER[a]

MOTOR HORSEPOWER	NUMBER OF POLES	OPEN DRIP-PROOF MOTORS				TOTALLY ENCLOSED FAN-COOLED MOTORS			
		2	4	6	8	2	4	6	8
	Synchronous Speed (RPM)	3600	1800	1200	900	3600	1800	1200	900
1		NR	82.5	80.0	74.0	75.5	82.5	80.0	74.0
1.5		82.5	84.0	84.0	75.5	82.5	84.0	85.5	77.0
2		84.0	84.0	85.5	85.5	84.0	84.0	86.5	82.5
3		84.0	86.5	86.5	86.5	85.5	87.5	87.5	84.0
5		85.5	87.5	87.5	87.5	87.5	87.5	87.5	84.0
7.5		87.5	88.5	88.5	88.5	88.5	89.5	89.5	85.5
10		88.5	89.5	90.2	89.5	89.5	89.5	89.5	88.5
15		89.5	91.0	90.2	89.5	90.2	91.0	90.2	88.5
20		90.2	91.0	91.0	90.2	90.2	91.0	90.2	89.5
25		91.0	91.7	91.7	90.2	91.0	92.4	91.7	89.5
30		91.0	92.4	92.4	91.0	91.0	92.4	91.7	91.0
40		91.7	93.0	93.0	91.0	91.7	93.0	93.0	91.0
50		92.4	93.0	93.0	91.7	92.4	93.0	93.0	91.7
60		93.0	93.6	93.6	92.4	93.0	93.6	93.6	91.7
75		93.0	94.1	93.6	93.6	93.0	94.1	93.6	93.0
100		93.0	94.1	94.1	93.6	93.6	94.5	94.1	93.0
125		93.6	94.5	94.1	93.6	94.5	94.5	94.1	93.6
150		93.6	95.0	94.5	93.6	94.5	95.0	95.0	93.6
200		94.5	95.0	94.5	93.6	95.0	95.0	95.0	94.1
250		94.5	95.4	95.4	94.5	95.4	95.0	95.0	94.5
300		95.0	95.4	95.4	NR	95.4	95.4	95.0	NR
350		95.0	95.4	95.4	NR	95.4	95.4	95.0	NR
400		95.4	95.4	NR	NR	95.4	95.4	NR	NR
450		95.8	95.8	NR	NR	95.4	95.4	NR	NR
500		95.8	95.8	NR	NR	95.4	95.8	NR	NR

NR = No requirement.
a. Nominal efficiencies shall be established in accordance with DOE 10 CFR 431.

TABLE C405.8(2) [note to reviewer - Replaces Table C405.8(2) in 2018 Code**]**

MINIMUM NOMINAL FULL-LOAD EFFICIENCY FOR NEMA DESIGN C AND IEC DESIGN H MOTORS AT 60 HZ[a, b]

MOTOR HORSEPOWER (STANDARD KILOWATT EQUIVALENT)	NOMINAL FULL-LOAD EFFICIENCY (%) AS OF JUNE 1, 2016					
	4 Pole		6 Pole		8 Pole	
	Enclosed	Open	Enclosed	Open	Enclosed	Open
1 (0.75)	85.5	85.5	82.5	82.5	75.5	75.5
1.5 (1.1)	86.5	86.5	87.5	86.5	78.5	77.0
2 (1.5)	86.5	86.5	88.5	87.5	84.0	86.5
3 (2.2)	89.5	89.5	89.5	88.5	85.5	87.5

5 (3.7)	89.5	89.5	89.5	89.5	86.5	88.5
7.5 (5.5)	91.7	91.0	91.0	90.2	86.5	89.5
10 (7.5)	91.7	91.7	91.0	91.7	89.5	90.2
15 (11)	92.4	93.0	91.7	91.7	89.5	90.2
20 (15)	93.0	93.0	91.7	92.4	90.2	91.0
25 (18.5)	93.6	93.6	93.0	93.0	90.2	91.0
30 (22)	93.6	94.1	93.0	93.6	91.7	91.7
40 (30)	94.1	94.1	94.1	94.1	91.7	91.7
50 (37)	94.5	94.5	94.1	94.1	92.4	92.4
60 (45)	95.0	95.0	94.5	94.5	92.4	93.0
75 (55)	95.4	95.0	94.5	94.5	93.6	94.1
100 (75)	95.4	95.4	95.0	95.0	93.6	94.1
125 (90)	95.4	95.4	95.0	95.0	94.1	94.1
150 (110)	95.8	95.8	95.8	95.4	94.1	94.1
200 (150)	96.2	95.8	95.8	95.4	94.5	94.1

a. Nominal efficiencies shall be established in accordance with DOE 10 CFR 431.

b. For purposes of determining the required minimum nominal full-load efficiency of an electric motor that has a horsepower or kilowatt rating between two horsepower or two kilowatt ratings listed in this table, each such motor shall be deemed to have a listed horsepower or kilowatt rating, determined as follows:

1. A horsepower at or above the midpoint between the two consecutive horsepowers shall be rounded up to the higher of the two horsepowers.
2. A horsepower below the midpoint between the two consecutive horsepowers shall be rounded down to the lower of the two horsepowers.
3. A kilowatt rating shall be directly converted from kilowatts to horsepower using the formula: 1 kilowatt = (1/0.746) horsepower. The conversion should be calculated to three significant decimal places, and the resulting horsepower shall be rounded in accordance with No. 1 or No. 2 above, as applicable.

TABLE C405.8(3)

MINIMUM AVERAGE FULL-LOAD EFFICIENCY POLYPHASE SMALL ELECTRIC MOTORS[a]

MOTOR HORSEPOWER	OPEN MOTORS			
	Number of Poles	2	4	6
	Synchronous Speed (RPM)	3600	1800	1200
0.25	—	65.6	69.5	67.5
0.33	—	69.5	73.4	71.4
0.50	—	73.4	78.2	75.3
0.75	—	76.8	81.1	81.7
1	—	77.0	83.5	82.5
1.5	—	84.0	86.5	83.8
2	—	85.5	86.5	N/A
3	—	85.5	86.9	N/A

N/A = Not Applicable.

a. Average full-load efficiencies shall be established in accordance with DOE 10 CFR 431.

TABLE C405.8(4)

MINIMUM AVERAGE FULL-LOAD EFFICIENCY FOR CAPACITOR-START CAPACITOR-RUN AND CAPACITOR-START INDUCTION-RUN SMALL ELECTRIC MOTORS[a]

MOTOR HORSEPOWER	OPEN MOTORS			
	Number of Poles	2	4	6
	Synchronous Speed (RPM)	3600	1800	1200
0.25	—	66.6	68.5	62.2
0.33	—	70.5	72.4	66.6
0.50	—	72.4	76.2	76.2
0.75	—	76.2	81.8	80.2
1	—	80.4	82.6	81.1
1.5	—	81.5	83.8	N/A
2	—	82.9	84.5	N/A
3	—	84.1	N/A	N/A

C405.9 Vertical and horizontal transportation systems and equipment. Vertical and horizontal transportation systems and equipment shall comply with this section.

C405.9.1 Elevator cabs. Elevator cabs. For the luminaires in each elevator cab, not including signals and displays, the sum of the lumens divided by the sum of the watts shall be not less than 35 lumens per watt. Ventilation fans in elevators that do not have their own air-conditioning system shall not consume more than 0.33 watts/cfm at the maximum rated speed of the fan. Controls shall be provided that will de-energize ventilation fans and lighting systems when the elevator is stopped, unoccupied and with its doors closed for over 15 minutes.

C405.9.2 Escalators and moving walks. Escalators and moving walks shall comply with ASME A17.1/CSA B44 and shall have automatic controls that reduce speed as permitted in accordance with ASME A17.1/CSA B44 and applicable local code. ~~When not conveying passengers.~~

Exception: A variable voltage drive system that reduces operating voltage in response to light loading conditions is an alternative to the reduced speed function.

~~**C405.9.2.1 Regenerative drive.** An escalator designed either for one-way down operation only or for reversible operation shall have a variable frequency regenerative drive that supplies electrical energy to the building electrical system when the escalator is loaded with passengers whose combined weight exceeds 750 pounds (340 kg).~~

C405.9.2.1 Energy recovery. Escalators shall be designed to recover electrical energy when resisting overspeed in the down direction. The escalator shall be designed to recover, on average, more power than is consumed by the power recovery feature of its motor controller system.

C405.10 Voltage drop. The total *voltage drop* across the combination of customer-owned service conductors, feeder conductors and branch circuit conductors shall not exceed 5 percent.

C405.11 Automatic receptacle control. The following shall have automatic receptacle control complying with Section C405.11.1:

1. At least 50 percent of all 125V, 15- and 20-amp receptacles installed in enclosed offices, conference rooms, rooms used primarily for copy or print functions, breakrooms, classrooms and individual workstations, including those installed in modular partitions and module office workstation systems.

2. At least 25 percent of branch circuit feeders installed for modular furniture not shown on the construction documents.

C405.11.1 Automatic receptacle control function. Automatic receptacle controls shall comply with the following:

1. Either split controlled receptacles shall be provided with the top receptacle controlled, or a controlled receptacle shall be located within 12 inches (304.8 mm) of each uncontrolled receptacle.
2. One of the following methods shall be used to provide control:
    2.1. A scheduled basis using a time-of-day operated control device that turns receptacle power off at specific programmed times and can be programmed separately for each day of the week. The control device shall be configured to provide an independent schedule for each portion of the building of not more than 5,000 square feet (464.5 m^2) and not more than one floor. The occupant shall be able to manually override an area for not more than 2 hours. Any individual override switch shall control the receptacles of not more than 5,000 feet (1524 m).
    2.2. An occupant sensor control that shall turn off receptacles within 20 minutes of all occupants leaving a space.
    2.3. An automated signal from another control or alarm system that shall turn off receptacles within 20 minutes after determining that the area is unoccupied.
3. All controlled receptacles shall be permanently marked in accordance with NFPA 70 and be uniformly distributed throughout the space.
4. Plug-in devices shall not comply.

Exceptions: Automatic receptacle controls are not required for the following:

1. Receptacles specifically designated for equipment requiring continuous operation (24 hours per day, 365 days per year).
2. Spaces where an automatic control would endanger the safety or security of the room or building occupants.
3. Within a single modular office workstation, noncontrolled receptacles are permitted to be located more than 12 inches (304.8 mm), but not more than 72 inches (1828 mm) from the controlled receptacles serving that workstation.

C405.12 Energy monitoring. New buildings with a gross *conditioned floor area* of 20,000 square feet (2322 m^2) or larger shall be equipped to measure, monitor, record and report energy consumption data to the owner or owner's authorized agent in compliance with Sections C405.12.1 through C405.12.5.

Exception: R-2 occupancies and individual tenant spaces are not required to comply with this section provided that the space has its own utility services and meters and has less than 5,000 square feet (464.5 m^2) of *conditioned floor area*.

C405.12.1 Electrical energy metering. For all electrical energy supplied to the building and its associated site, including but not limited to site lighting, parking, recreational facilities and other areas that serve the building and its occupants, meters or other measurement devices shall be provided to collect energy consumption data for each end-use category required by Section C405.12.2.

C405.12.2 End-use metering categories. Meters or other *approved* measurement devices shall be provided to collect energy use data for each end-use category indicated in Table C405.12.2. Where multiple meters are used to measure any end-use category, the data acquisition system shall total all of the energy used by that category. Not more than 5 percent of the measured load for each of the end-use categories indicated in Table C405.12.2 shall be permitted to be from a load that is not within that category.

Exceptions:

1. HVAC and water heating equipment serving only an individual dwelling unit shall not require end-use metering.
2. End-use metering shall not be required for fire pumps, stairwell pressurization fans or any system that operates only during testing or emergency.
3. End-use metering shall not be required for an individual tenant space having a floor area not greater than 2,500 square feet (232 m^2) where a dedicated source meter complying with Section C405.12.3 is provided.

TABLE C405.12.2
ENERGY USE CATEGORIES

LOAD CATEGORY	DESCRIPTION OF ENERGY USE

Total HVAC system	Heating, cooling and ventilation, including but not limited to fans, pumps, boilers, chillers and water heating. Energy used by 120-volt equipment, or by 208/120-volt equipment that is located in a building where the main service is 480/277-volt power, is permitted to be excluded from total HVAC system energy use.
Interior lighting	Lighting systems located within the building.
Exterior lighting	Lighting systems located on the building site but not within the building.
Plug loads	Devices, appliances and equipment connected to convenience receptacle outlets.
Process load	Any single load that is not included in an HVAC, lighting or plug load category and that exceeds 5 percent of the peak connected load of the whole building, including but not limited to data centers, manufacturing equipment and commercial kitchens.
Building operations and other miscellaneous loads	The remaining loads not included elsewhere in this table, including but not limited to vertical transportation systems, automatic doors, motorized shading systems, ornamental fountains, ornamental fireplaces, swimming pools, in-ground spas and snow-melt systems.

C405.12.3 Meters. Meters or other measurement devices required by this section shall be configured to automatically communicate energy consumption data to the data acquisition system required by Section C405.12.4. Source meters shall be allowed to be any digital-type meter. Lighting, HVAC or other building systems that can monitor their energy consumption shall be permitted instead of meters. Current sensors shall be permitted, provided that they have a tested accuracy of ±2 percent. Required metering systems and equipment shall have the capability to provide at least hourly data that is fully integrated into the data acquisition system and graphical energy report in accordance with Sections C405.12.4 and C405.12.5.

C405.12.4 Data acquisition system. A data acquisition system shall have the capability to store the data from the required meters and other sensing devices for a minimum of 36 months. The data acquisition system shall have the capability to store real-time energy consumption data and provide hourly, daily, monthly and yearly logged data for each end-use category required by Section C405.12.2.

C405.12.5 Graphical energy report. A permanent reporting mechanism shall be provided in the building that is accessible to building operation and management personnel. The reporting mechanism shall have the capability to graphically provide the energy consumption for each end-use category required by Section C405.12.2 at least every hour, day, month and year for the previous 36 months.

SECTION C406
ADDITIONAL EFFICIENCY ~~OPTIONS~~ REQUIREMENTS

~~**C406.1 Requirements.** Buildings shall comply with at least one of the following:~~

C406.1 Additional energy efficiency credit requirements. New buildings shall achieve a total of 10 credits from Tables C406.1(1) through C406.1(5) where the table is selected based on the use group of the building and from credit calculations as specified in relevant subsections of Section C406. Where a building contains multiple-use groups, credits from each use group shall be weighted by floor area of each group to determine the weighted average building credit. Credits from the tables or calculation shall be achieved where a building complies with one or more of the following:

1. More efficient HVAC performance in accordance with Section C406.2.
2. Reduced lighting power in accordance with Section C406.3.
3. Enhanced lighting controls in accordance with Section C406.4.
4. On-site supply of renewable energy in accordance with Section C406.5.
5. Provision of a dedicated outdoor air system for certain HVAC equipment in accordance with Section C406.6.
6. High-efficiency service water heating in accordance with Section C406.7.
7. Enhanced envelope performance in accordance with Section C406.8.
8. Reduced air infiltration in accordance with Section C406.9
9. Where not required by Section C405.12, include an energy monitoring system in accordance with Section C406.10.
10. Where not required by Section C403.2.3, include a fault detection and diagnostics (FDD) system in accordance with Section C406.11.
11. Efficient kitchen equipment in accordance with Section C406.12.

~~**C406.1.1 Tenant spaces.** Tenant spaces shall comply with Section C406.2, C406.3, C406.4, C406.6 or C406.7. Alternatively, tenant spaces shall comply with Section C406.5 where the entire building is in compliance.~~

C406.1.1 Tenant spaces. Tenant spaces shall comply with sufficient options from Tables C406.1(1) through C406.1(5) to achieve a minimum number of 5 credits, where credits are selected from Section C406.2, C406.3, C406.4, C406.6, C406.7 or C406.10. Where the entire building complies using credits from Section C406.5, C406.8 or C406.9, tenant spaces shall be deemed to comply with this section.

Exception: Previously occupied tenant spaces that comply with this code in accordance with Section C501.

TABLE C406.1(1)
ADDITIONAL ENERGY EFFICIENCY CREDITS FOR GROUP B OCCUPANCIES

SECTION	CLIMATE ZONE																
	~~0A & 1A~~	~~0B & 1B~~	~~2A~~	~~2B~~	3A	~~3B~~	~~3C~~	4A	~~4B~~	~~4C~~	5A	~~5B~~	~~5C~~	~~6A~~	~~6B~~	~~7~~	~~8~~
C406.2.1: 5% heating efficiency improvement					NA			NA			1						
C406.2.2: 5% cooling efficiency improvement					4			3			2						
C406.2.3: 10% heating efficiency improvement					NA			NA			2						
C406.2.4: 10% cooling efficiency improvement					7			5			4						
C406.3: Reduced lighting power					9			8			7						
C406.4: Enhanced digital lighting controls					2			2			2						
C406.5: On-site renewable energy					9			9			9						
C406.6: Dedicated outdoor air					4			5			5						
C406.7.2: Recovered or renewable water heating					NA			NA			NA						
C406.7.3: Efficient fossil fuel water heater					NA			NA			NA						

C406.7.4: Heat pump water heater					NA			NA			NA					
C406.8: Enhanced envelope performance					4			7			10					
C406.9: Reduced air infiltration					4			8			11					
C406.10: Energy monitoring					3			3			2					
C406.11: Fault detection and diagnostics system					1			1			1					

NA = Not Applicable.

TABLE C406.1(2)

ADDITIONAL ENERGY EFFICIENCY CREDITS FOR GROUP R AND I OCCUPANCIES

SECTION	CLIMATE ZONE															
	~~0A & 1A~~	~~0B & 1B~~	~~2A~~	~~2B~~	3A	~~3B~~	~~3C~~	4A	~~4B~~	~~4C~~	5A	~~5B~~	~~5C~~	~~6A~~	~~6B~~	~~7~~	~~8~~
C406.2.1: 5% heating efficiency improvement					1			1			1						
C406.2.2: 5% cooling efficiency improvement					1			1			1						
C406.2.3: 10% heating efficiency improvement					1			1			2						
C406.2.4: 10% cooling efficiency improvement					2			2			1						
C406.3: Reduced lighting power					2			2			2						
C406.4: Enhanced digital lighting controls					NA			NA			NA						
C406.5: On-site renewable energy					7			7			7						
C406.6: Dedicated outdoor air system					4			6			8						
C406.7.2: Recovered or renewable water heating					13			14			14						
C406.7.3: Efficient fossil fuel water heater					8			8			9						
C406.7.4: Heat pump water heater					5			5			5						
C406.8: Enhanced envelope performance					4			4			4						
C406.9: Reduced air infiltration					6			7			9						
C406.10: Energy monitoring					1			1			1						

C406.11: Fault detection and diagnostics system					1			1			1						

NA = Not Applicable.

TABLE C406.1(3)

ADDITIONAL ENERGY EFFICIENCY CREDITS FOR GROUP E OCCUPANCIES

SECTION	CLIMATE ZONE																
	~~0A & 1A~~	~~0B & 1B~~	~~2A~~	~~2B~~	3A	~~3B~~	~~3C~~	4A	~~4B~~	~~4C~~	5A	~~5B~~	~~5C~~	~~6A~~	~~6B~~	~~7~~	~~8~~
C406.2.1: 5% heating efficiency improvement					1			1			1						
C406.2.2: 5% cooling efficiency improvement					2			2			1						
C406.2.3: 10% heating efficiency improvement					1			2			3						
C406.2.4: 10% cooling efficiency improvement					5			4			2						
C406.3: Reduced lighting power					8			8			8						
C406.4: Enhanced digital lighting controls					2			2			2						
C406.5: On-site renewable energy					6			6			6						
C406.6: Dedicated outdoor air system					NA			NA			NA						
C406.7.2: Recovered or renewable water heating[a]					1			1			1						
C406.7.3: Efficient fossil fuel water heater[a]					1			2			2						
C406.7.4: Heat pump water heater[a]					NA			1			1						
C406.8: Enhanced envelope performance					2			1			2						
C406.9: Reduced air infiltration					NA			NA			1						
C406.10: Energy monitoring					3			3			2						
C406.11: Fault detection and diagnostics system					1			1			1						

NA = Not Applicable.
a. For schools with showers or full-service kitchens.

TABLE C406.1(4)

ADDITIONAL ENERGY EFFICIENCY CREDITS FOR GROUP M OCCUPANCIES

SECTION	CLIMATE ZONE																
	~~0A & 1A~~	~~0B & 1B~~	~~2A~~	~~2B~~	3A	~~3B~~	~~3C~~	4A	~~4B~~	~~4C~~	5A	~~5B~~	~~5C~~	~~6A~~	~~6B~~	~~7~~	~~8~~

C406.2.1: 5% heating efficiency improvement					1			1			2						
C406.2.2: 5% cooling efficiency improvement					3			2			1						
C406.2.3: 10% heating efficiency improvement					1			2			3						
C406.2.4: 10% cooling efficiency improvement					6			4			2						
C406.3: Reduced lighting power					16			15			12						
C406.4: Enhanced digital lighting controls					4			4			3						
C406.5: On-site renewable energy					8			8			7						
C406.6: Dedicated outdoor air system					3			3			2						
C406.7.2: Recovered or renewable water heating					NA			NA			NA						
C406.7.3: Efficient fossil fuel water heater					NA			NA			NA						
C406.7.4: Heat pump water heater					NA			NA			NA						
C406.8: Enhanced envelope performance					3			6			4						
C406.9: Reduced air infiltration					1			3			3						
C406.10: Energy monitoring					5			4			3						
C406.11: Fault detection and diagnostics system					1			1			1						

NA = Not Applicable.

TABLE C406.1(5)

ADDITIONAL ENERGY EFFICIENCY CREDITS FOR OTHER[a] OCCUPANCIES

SECTION	CLIMATE ZONE															
	~~0A & 1A~~	~~0B & 1B~~	~~2A~~	~~2B~~	3A	~~3B~~	~~3C~~	4A	~~4B~~	~~4C~~	5A	~~5B~~	~~5C~~	~~6A~~	~~6B~~	~~7~~	8
C406.2.1: 5% heating efficiency improvement					1			1			1						
C406.2.2: 5% cooling efficiency improvement					3			2			1						
C406.2.3: 10% heating efficiency improvement					1			2			3						
C406.2.4: 10% cooling efficiency improvement					5			4			2						

C406.3: Reduced lighting power					9			8			7						
C406.4: Enhanced digital lighting controls					2			2			2						
C406.5: On-site renewable energy					8			8			7						
C406.6: Dedicated outdoor air system					4			5			5						
C406.7.2: Recovered or renewable water heating[b]					13			14			14						
C406.7.3: Efficient fossil fuel water heater[b]					8			8			9						
C406.7.4: Heat pump water heater[b]					5			5			5						
C406.8: Enhanced envelope performance					3			5			5						
C406.9: Reduced air infiltration					4			6			6						
C406.10: Energy monitoring					3			3			2						
C406.11: Fault detection and diagnostics system					1			1			1						

NA = Not Applicable.
a. Other occupancy groups include all groups except Groups B, E, I, M and R.
b. For occupancy groups listed in Section C406.7.1.

~~**C406.2 More efficient HVAC equipment performance.** Equipment shall exceed the minimum efficiency requirements listed in Tables C403.2.3(1) through C403.2.3(7) by 10 percent, in addition to the requirements of Section C403. Where multiple performance requirements are provided, the equipment shall exceed all requirements by 10 percent. *Variable refrigerant flow systems* shall exceed the energy efficiency provisions of ANSI/ASHRAE/IES 90.1 by 10 percent. Equipment not listed in Tables C403.2.3(1) through C403.2.3(7) shall be limited to 10 percent of the total building system capacity.~~

~~**Exemption:** Steam boilers are exempt from the additional 10-percent requirements.~~

C406.2 More efficient HVAC equipment performance. Equipment shall exceed the minimum efficiency requirements listed in the tables in Section C403.3.2. *Variable refrigerant flow systems* listed in the energy efficiency provisions of ANSI/ASHRAE/IES 90.1 in accordance with Section C406.2.1, C406.2.2, C406.2.3 or C406.2.4 shall also meet applicable requirements of Section C403. Energy efficiency credits for heating shall be selected from Section C406.2.1 or C406.2.3 and energy efficiency credits for cooling shall be selected from Section C406.2.2, C406.2.4 or C406.2.5. Selected credits shall include a heating or cooling energy efficiency credit or both. Equipment not listed in Tables C403.3.2(1) through C403.3.2(9) and *variable refrigerant flow systems* not listed in the energy efficiency provisions of ANSI/ASHRAE/IES 90.1 shall be limited to 10 percent of the total building system capacity for heating equipment where selecting Section C406.2.1 or C406.2.3 and cooling equipment where selecting Section C406.2.2, C406.2.4 or C406.2.5.

C406.2.1 Five-percent heating efficiency improvement. Equipment shall exceed the minimum heating efficiency requirements by 5 percent.

C406.2.2 Five-percent cooling efficiency improvement. Equipment shall exceed the minimum cooling and heat rejection efficiency requirements by 5 percent. Where multiple cooling performance requirements are provided, the equipment shall exceed the annual energy requirement, including IEER, SEER and IPLV.

C406.2.3 Ten-percent heating efficiency improvement. Equipment shall exceed the minimum heating efficiency requirements by 10 percent.

C406.2.4 Ten-percent cooling efficiency improvement. Equipment shall exceed the minimum cooling and heat rejection efficiency requirements by 10 percent. Where multiple cooling performance requirements are provided, the equipment shall exceed the annual energy requirement, including IEER, SEER and IPLV.

C406.2.5 More than 10-percent cooling efficiency improvement. Where equipment exceeds the minimum annual cooling and heat rejection efficiency requirements by more than 10 percent, energy efficiency credits for cooling may be determined using Equation 4-12, rounded to the nearest whole number. Where multiple cooling performance requirements are provided, the equipment shall exceed the annual energy requirement, including IEER, SEER and IPLV.

$$EEC_{HEC} = EEC_{10}\,[1 + ((CEI - 10\text{ percent})\ 4\ 10\text{ percent})]$$

(Equation 4-12)

where:

EEC_{HEC} = Energy efficiency credits for cooling efficiency improvement.

EEC_{10} = Section C406.2.4 credits from Tables C406.1(1) through C406.1(5).

CEI = The lesser of: the improvement above minimum cooling and heat rejection efficiency requirements or 15 percent.

~~**C406.3 Reduced lighting power density.** The total interior lighting power (watts) of the building shall be determined by using 90 percent of the lighting power values specified in Table C405.4.2(1) times the floor area for the building types, or by using 90 percent of the interior lighting power allowance calculated by the Space-by-Space Method in Section C405.4.2.~~

C406.3 Reduced lighting power by more than 10 percent. Buildings shall comply with Section C406.3.1 or C406.3.2, and dwelling units and sleeping units within the building shall comply with Section C406.3.3.

C406.3.1 Reduced lighting power by more than 10 percent. The total connected interior lighting power calculated in accordance with Section C405.3.1 shall be less than 90 percent of the total lighting power allowance calculated in accordance with Section C405.3.2.

C406.3.2 Reduced lighting power by more than 15 percent. Where the total connected interior lighting power calculated in accordance with Section C405.3.1 is less than 85 percent of the total lighting power allowance calculated in accordance with Section C405.3.2, additional energy efficiency credits shall be determined based on Equation 4-13, rounded to the nearest whole number.

$$AEEC_{LPA} = AEEC_{10} \times 10 \times (LPA - LPD) / LPA$$

(Equation 4-13)

where:

$AEEC_{LPA}$ = Section C406.3.2 additional energy efficiency credits.

$AEEC_{10}$ = Section C406.3.1 credits from Tables C406.1(1) through C406.1(5).

LPA = Total lighting power allowance calculated in accordance with Section C405.3.2.

LPD = Total connected interior lighting power calculated in accordance with Section C405.3.1.

C406.3.3 Lamp efficacy. Not less than 95 percent of the permanently installed lighting, excluding kitchen appliance light fixtures, serving dwelling units and sleeping units shall be provided by lamps with an efficacy of not less than 65 lumens per watt or luminaires with an efficacy of not less than 45 lumens per watt.

C406.4 Enhanced digital lighting controls. Interior general lighting in the building shall have the following enhanced lighting controls that shall be located, scheduled and operated in accordance with Sections ~~C405.2.2~~ C405.2.1 through C405.2.3.

1. Luminaires shall be ~~capable of~~ configured for continuous dimming.
2. Luminaires shall be ~~capable of being~~ addressed individually. Where individual addressability is not available for the luminaire class type, a controlled group of not more than four luminaries shall be allowed.
3. Not more than eight luminaires shall be controlled together in a *daylight zone*.
4. Fixtures shall be controlled through a digital control system that includes the following function:
    4.1. Control reconfiguration based on digital addressability.
    4.2. Load shedding.
    ~~4.3 Individual user control of overhead general illumination in open offices.~~
    4.3. Occupancy sensors shall be capable of being reconfigured through the digital control system.
5. Construction documents shall include submittal of a Sequence of Operations, including a specification outlining each of the functions in Item 4.
6. Functional testing of lighting controls shall comply with Section C408.

~~**C406.5 On-site renewable energy.** Total minimum ratings of on-site renewable energy systems shall comply with one of the following:~~

~~1. Provide not less than 0.50 watts per square foot (5.4 W/ m2) of conditioned floor area.~~
~~2. Provide not less than 3 percent of the energy used within the building for building mechanical and service water heating equipment and lighting regulated in Chapter 4.~~

C406.5 On-site renewable energy. Buildings shall comply with Section C406.5.1 or C406.5.2.

C406.5.1 Basic renewable credit. The total minimum ratings of on-site renewable energy systems, not including systems used for credits under Sections C406.7.2, shall be one of the following:

1. Not less than 0.86 Btu/h per square foot (2.7 W/m^2) or 0.25 watts per square foot (2.7 W/m^2) of *conditioned floor area*.
2. Not less than 2 percent of the annual energy used within the building for building mechanical and service water-heating equipment and lighting regulated in Section C405.

C406.5.2 Enhanced renewable credit. Where the total minimum ratings of on-site renewable energy systems exceeds the rating in Section C406.5.1, additional energy efficiency credits shall be determined based on Equation 4-14, rounded to the nearest whole number.

$$AEEC_{RRa} = AEEC_{2.5} \times RRa/RR_1 \quad \textbf{(Equation 4-14)}$$

where:

$AEEC_{RRa}$ = Section C406.5.2 additional energy efficiency credits.

$AEEC_{2.5}$ = Section C406.5 credits from Tables C406.1(1) through C406.1(5).

RRa = Actual total minimum ratings of *on-site renewable energy* systems (in Btu/h, watts per square foot or W/m^2).

RR_1 = Minimum ratings of *on-site renewable energy* systems required by Section C406.5.1 (in Btu/h, watts per square foot or W/m^2).

~~**C406.6 Dedicated outdoor air system.** Buildings covered by Section C403.4 shall be equipped with an independent ventilation system designed to provide not less than the minimum 100-percent outdoor air to each individual occupied space, as specified by the *International Mechanical Code.* The ventilation system shall be capable of recovering both sensible and latent energy.~~

C406.6 Dedicated outdoor air system. Buildings containing equipment or systems regulated by Section C403.3.4, C403.4.3, C403.4.4, C403.4.5, C403.6, C403.8.4, C403.8.6, C403.8.6.1, C403.10.1, C403.10.2, C403.10.3 or C403.10.4 shall be equipped with an independent ventilation system designed to provide not less than the minimum 100-percent outdoor air to each individual occupied space, as specified by the *International Mechanical Code*. The ventilation system shall be capable of total energy recovery. The HVAC system shall include supply-air temperature controls that automatically reset the supply-air temperature in response to representative building loads or to outdoor air temperatures. The controls shall reset the supply-air temperature not less than 25 percent of the difference between the design supply-air temperature and the design room-air temperature.

~~**C406.7 Reduced energy use in service water heating.**~~
~~Buildings shall be of the following types to use this compliance method:~~
~~1. Group R-1: Boarding houses, hotels or motels.~~
~~2. Group I-2: Hospitals, psychiatric hospitals and nursing homes.~~
~~3. Group A-2: Restaurants and banquet halls or buildings containing food preparation areas.~~
~~4. Group F: Laundries.~~
~~5. Group R-2: Buildings with residential occupancies.~~

~~6. Group A-3: Health clubs and spas.~~

~~7. Buildings showing a service hot water load of 10 percent or more of total building energy loads, as shown~~

~~with an energy analysis as described in Section C407.~~

C406.7 Reduced energy use in service water heating. Buildings shall comply with Section C406.7.1 and Section C406.7.2, C406.7.3 or C406.7.4.

~~**C406.7.1 Load fraction.** The building service water-heating system shall have one or more of the following that are sized to provide not less than 60 percent of hot water requirements:~~
~~1. Waste heat recovery from service hot water, heatrecovery chillers, building equipment, process equipment, or a combined heat and power system.~~
~~2. Solar water-heating systems.~~
~~3. Instantaneous fuel-fired water heating systems for all fuel-fired water heating systems.~~
~~4. Electric heat pump water heating systems.~~
~~5. Water heating provided by geothermal heat pumps.~~

C406.7.1 Building type. To qualify for this credit, the building shall contain one of the following use groups, and the additional energy efficiency credit shall be prorated by conditioned floor area of the portion of the building comprised of the following use groups:

1. Group R-1: Boarding houses, hotels or motels.
2. Group I-2: Hospitals, psychiatric hospitals and nursing homes.
3. Group A-2: Restaurants and banquet halls or buildings containing food preparation areas.
4. Group F: Laundries.
5. Group R-2.
6. Group A-3: Health clubs and spas.
7. Group E: Schools with full-service kitchens or locker rooms with showers.
8. Buildings showing a service hot water load of 10 percent or more of total building energy loads, as shown with an energy analysis as described in Section C407.

C406.7.2 Recovered or renewable water heating. The building service water-heating system shall have one or more of the following that are sized to provide not less than 30 percent of the building’s annual hot water requirements, or sized to provide 70 percent of the building’s annual hot water requirements if the building is required to comply with Section C403.10.5:

1. Waste heat recovery from service hot water, heat-recovery chillers, building equipment or process equipment.
2. *On-site renewable energy* water-heating systems.

C406.7.3 Efficient fossil fuel water heater. The combined input-capacity weighted-average equipment rating of all fossil fuel water-heating equipment in the building shall be not less than 95 percent Et or 0.95 EF. This option shall receive only half the listed credits for buildings required to comply with Section C404.2.1.

C406.7.4 Heat pump water heater. Where electric resistance water heaters are allowed, all service hot water system heating requirements shall be met using heat pump technology with a combined input-capacity weighted-average EF of 3.0. Air-source heat pump water heaters shall not draw conditioned air from within the building, except exhaust air that would otherwise be exhausted to the exterior.

C406.8 Enhanced envelope performance. The total UA of the *building thermal envelope* as designed shall be not less than 15 percent below the total UA of the *building thermal envelope* in accordance with Section C402.1.5.

~~**C406.9 Reduced air infiltration.** Air infiltration shall be verified by whole-building pressurization testing conducted in accordance with ASTM E779 or ASTM E1827 by an independent third party. The measured air-leakage rate of the building envelope shall not exceed 0.25 cfm/ft² (2.0 L/s × m²) under a pressure differential of 0.3 inches water column (75 Pa), with the calculated surface area being the sum of the above- and below-grade building envelope. A report that includes the tested surface area, floor area, air by volume, stories above grade, and leakage rates shall be submitted to the code official and the building owner.~~

~~**Exception:** For buildings having over 250,000 square feet (25 000 m²) of *conditioned floor area*, air leakage testing need not be conducted on the whole building where testing is conducted on representative above-grade sections of the building. Tested areas shall total not less than 25 percent of the conditioned floor area and shall be tested in accordance with this section.~~

C406.9 Reduced air leakage. *Air leakage* of the *building thermal envelope* shall be tested by an *approved* third party in accordance with Section C402.5.2.1. The measured *air leakage* shall not exceed 0.22 cfm/ft^2 (1.1 L/s × m^2) of the *building thermal envelope* at a pressure differential of 0.3 inch water gauge (75 Pa), with the calculated surface area being the sum of the above- and below-grade *building thermal envelope*.

Exception: Buildings tested in accordance with C402.5.2 where the weighted average of all tested unit results is not greater than 0.15 cfm/ft2 (1.0 L/s x m2) at a pressure differential of 0.2 inch water gauge (50 Pa), or 0.20 cfm/ft^2 at a pressure differential of 75Pa (0.30 in w.g.) in accordance with Table C406.9.

Table C406.9

Pressure Differential (Pa)	Test pressure Adjustment Factor	Max Air Leakage / Building Thermal Envelope (CFM / ft^2)	
75 (0.30 in. w.g.)		0.20	0.22
50 (0.20 in. w.g.)	0.752897957	0.15	0.17

Example: If maximum air leakage allowed is 0.15 cfm/ft^2 of bldg thermal envelope at 50 Pa(0.2 in w.g.), the corresponding maximum leakage rate is 0.20 cfm/SF of bldg thermal envelope if using a higher test pressure of 75 Pa(0.3 in w.g.)

C406.9 Reduced air leakage. Air leakage of the building thermal envelope shall be tested by an approved third party in accordance with Section C402.5.2.1 and shall comply with one of the following:

1. The measured air leakage shall not exceed 0.22 cfm/ft2 (1.1 L/s × m2) of the building thermal envelope at a pressure differential of 0.3 inch water gauge (75 Pa), with the calculated surface area being the sum of the above- and below-grade building thermal envelope. ~~Exception:~~

2. Buildings tested in accordance with C402.5.2 shall have a weighted average of all tested unit results that is not greater than 0.15 cfm/ft2 (1.0 L/s x m2) at a pressure differential of 0.2 inch water gauge (50 Pa), or 0.20 cfm/ft2 at a pressure differential of 75Pa (0.30 in w.g.) in accordance with Table C406.9.

C406.10 Energy monitoring. Buildings shall be equipped to measure, monitor, record and report energy consumption data in compliance with Sections C406.10.1 through C406.10.5.

C406.10.1 Electrical energy metering. For all electrical energy supplied to the building and its associated site, including but not limited to site lighting, parking, recreational facilities, and other areas that serve the building and its occupants, meters or other measurement devices shall be provided to collect energy consumption data for each end-use category required by Section C406.10.2.

C406.10.2 End-use metering categories. Meters or other *approved* measurement devices shall be provided to collect energy use data for each end-use category listed in Table 406.10.2. These meters shall have the capability to collect energy consumption data for the whole building or for each separately metered portion of the building. Where multiple meters are used to measure any end-use category, the data acquisition system shall total all of the energy used by that category. Not more than 5 percent of the measured load for each of the end-use categories listed in Table 406.10.2 is permitted to be from a load not within the category.

Exceptions:

1. HVAC and water-heating equipment serving only an individual dwelling unit does not require end-use metering.
2. End-use metering is not required for fire pumps, stairwell pressurization fans or any system that operates only during testing or emergency.

TABLE C406.10.2
ENERGY USE CATEGORIES

LOAD CATEGORY	DESCRIPTION OF ENERGY USE
Total HVAC system	Heating, cooling and ventilation, including but not limited to fans, pumps, boilers, chillers and water heating. Energy used by 120-volt equipment, or by 208/120-volt equipment that is located in a building where the main service is 480/277-volt power, is permitted to be excluded from total HVAC system energy use.
Interior lighting	Lighting systems located within the building.
Exterior lighting	Lighting systems located on the building site but not within the building.
Plug loads	Devices, appliances and equipment connected to convenience receptacle outlets.
Process loads	Any single load that is not included in an HVAC, lighting or plug load category and that exceeds 5 percent of the peak connected load of the whole building, including but not limited to data centers, manufacturing equipment and commercial kitchens.

Building operations and other miscellaneous loads	The remaining loads not included elsewhere in this table, including but not limited to vertical transportation systems and automatic doors.

C406.10.3 Meters. Meters or other measurement devices required by this section shall be configured to automatically communicate energy consumption data to the data acquisition system required by Section C406.10.4. Source meters shall be allowed to be any digital-type meter. Lighting, HVAC or other building systems that can monitor their energy consumption shall be permitted instead of meters. Current sensors shall be permitted, provided that they have a tested accuracy of ±2 percent. Required metering systems and equipment shall have the capability to provide at least hourly data that is fully integrated into the data acquisition system and graphical energy report in accordance with Sections C406.10.4 and C406.10.5.

C406.10.4 Data acquisition system. A data acquisition system shall have the capability to store the data from the required meters and other sensing devices for a minimum of 36 months. The data acquisition system shall have the capability to store real-time energy consumption data and provide hourly, daily, monthly and yearly logged data for each end-use category required by Section C406.10.2.

C406.10.5 Graphical energy report. A permanent reporting mechanism shall be provided in the building that is accessible by building operation and management personnel. The reporting mechanism shall have the capability to graphically provide the energy consumption for each end-use category required by Section C406.10.2 at least every hour, day, month and year for the previous 36 months.

C406.11 Fault detection and diagnostics system. A fault detection and diagnostics system shall be installed to monitor the HVAC system's performance and automatically identify faults. The system shall do all of the following:

1. Include permanently installed sensors and devices to monitor the HVAC system's performance.
2. [Deleted from proposed 2024 Code, no 2018 equivalent.]
3. Automatically identify and report HVAC system faults.
4. Automatically notify authorized personnel of identified HVAC system faults.
5. Automatically provide prioritized recommendations for repair of identified faults based on analysis of data collected from the sampling of the HVAC system performance.
6. Be capable of transmitting the prioritized fault repair recommendations to remotely located authorized personnel.

C406.12 Efficient kitchen equipment. For buildings and spaces designated as Group A-2 or facilities that include a commercial kitchen with at least one gas or electric fryer, all fryers, dishwashers, steam cookers and ovens shall comply with all of the following:

1. Achieve performance levels in accordance with the equipment specifications listed in Tables C406.12(1) through C406.12(4) when rated in accordance with the applicable test procedure.
2. Be installed prior to the issuance of the Certificate of Occupancy.
3. Have associated performance levels listed on the construction documents submitted for permitting.

Energy efficiency credits for efficient kitchen equipment shall be independent of climate zone and determined based on Equation 4-15, rounded to the nearest whole number.

$$AEEC_K = 20 \times Area_K / Area_B \quad \textbf{(Equation 4-15)}$$

where:

$AEEC_K$ = Section C406.12 additional energy efficiency credits.

$Area_K$ = Floor area of full-service kitchen (ft² or m²).

$Area_B$ = Gross floor area of building (ft² or m²).

TABLE C406.12(1)

MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS: COMMERCIAL FRYERS

FRYER TYPE	HEAVY-LOAD COOKING ENERGY EFFICIENCY	IDLE ENERGY RATE	TEST PROCEDURE
Standard open deep-fat gas fryers	≥ 50%	≤ 9,000 Btu/h	ASTM F1361
Standard open deep-fat electric fryers	≥ 83%	≤ 800 watts	
Large-vat open deep-fat gas fryers	≥ 50%	≤ 12,000 Btu/h	ASTM F2144
Large-vat open deep-fat electric fryers	≥ 80%	≤ 1,100 watts	

For SI: 1 Btu/h = 0.293/W.

TABLE C406.12(2)

MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS: COMMERCIAL STEAM COOKERS

FUEL TYPE	PAN CAPACITY	COOKING ENERGY EFFICIENCY[a]	IDLE ENERGY RATE	TEST PROCEDURE
Electric steam	3-pan	50%	—	ASTM F1484
	4-pan	50%	—	
	5-pan	50%	—	
	6-pan and larger	50%	—	
Gas steam	3-pan	38%	—	
	4-pan	38%	—	
	5-pan	38%	—	
	6-pan and larger	38%	—	

a. Cooking energy efficiency is based on heavy load (potato) cooking capacity.

TABLE C406.12(3)

MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS: COMMERCIAL DISHWASHERS

MACHINE TYPE	HIGH-TEMPERATURE EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS		LOW-TEMPERATURE EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS		TEST PROCEDURE
	Idle energy rate[a]	Water consumption[b]	Idle energy rate[a]	Water consumption[b]	
Under counter	≤ 50 kW	≤ 0.86 GPR	≤ 0.50 kW	≤ 1.19 GPR	ASTM F1696 ASTM F1920
Stationary single-tank door	≤ 70 kW	≤ 0.89 GPR	≤ 0.60 kW	≤ 1.18 GPR	
Pot, pan and utensil	≤ 1.20 kW	≤ 0.58 GPR	≤ 1.00 kW	≤ 0.58 GPSF	

Single-tank conveyor	≤ 1.50 kW	≤ 0.70 GPR	≤ 1.50 kW	≤ 0.79 GPR	
Multiple-tank conveyor	≤ 2.25 kW	≤ 0.54 GPR	≤ 2.00 kW	≤ 0.54 GPR	
Single-tank flight	Reported	GPH ≤ 2.975*x* + 55.00	Reported	GPH ≤ 2.975*x* + 55.00	
Multiple-tank flight	Reported	GPH ≤ 4.96*x* + 17.00	Reported	GPH ≤ 4.96*x* + 17.00	

a. Idle results shall be measured with the door closed and represent the total idle energy consumed by the machine, including all tank heaters and controls. Booster heater (internal or external) energy consumption shall not be part of this measurement unless it cannot be separately monitored.

b. GPR = gallons per rack, GPSF = gallons per square foot of rack, GPH = gallons per hour, *x* = maximum conveyer belt speed (feet/minute) × conveyer belt width (feet).

TABLE C406.12(4)

MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS: COMMERCIAL OVENS

FUEL TYPE	CLASSIFICATION	IDLE RATE	COOKING-ENERGY EFFICIENCY, %	TEST PROCEDURE
Convection ovens				
Gas	Full-size	≤ 12,000 Btu/h	≥ 46	ASTM F1496
Electric	Half-size	≤ 1.0 Btu/h	≥ 71	
	Full-size	≤ 1.60 Btu/h		
Combination ovens				
Gas	Steam mode	≤ 200P^a + 6,511 Btu/h	≥ 41	ASTM F2861
	Convection mode	≤ 150P^a + 5,425 Btu/h	≥ 56	
Electric	Steam mode	≤ 0.133P^a + 0.6400 kW	≥ 55	
	Convection mode	≤ 0.080P^a + 0.4989 kW	≥ 76	
Rack ovens				
Gas	Single	≤ 25,000 Btu/h	≥ 48	ASTM F2093
	Double	≤ 30,000 Btu/h	≥ 52	

For SI: 1 Btu/h = 0.293/W.

a. *P* = Pan Capacity: the number of steam table pans the combination oven is able to accommodate in accordance with ASTM F1495.

SECTION C407
TOTAL BUILDING PERFORMANCE

C407.1 Scope. This section establishes criteria for compliance using total building performance. The following systems and loads shall be included in determining the total building performance: heating systems, cooling systems, service water heating, fan systems, lighting power, receptacle loads and process loads.

Exception: Energy used to recharge or refuel vehicles that are used for on-road and off-site transportation purposes.

C407.2 Mandatory requirements. Compliance based on total building performance requires that ~~the criteria of Sections C402.5, C403.2, C404 and C405 be met.~~ A proposed design meet all of the following:

1. The requirements of the sections indicated within Table C407.2.
2. An annual energy cost that is less than or equal to 85 percent of the annual energy cost of the *standard reference design*. Energy prices shall be taken from a source *approved* by the *code official*, such as the Department of Energy, Energy Information Administration's *State Energy Data System Prices and Expenditures* reports. *Code officials* shall be permitted to require time-of-use pricing in energy cost calculations. The reduction in energy cost of the proposed design associated with *on-site renewable energy* shall be not more than 5 percent of the total energy cost. The amount of renewable energy purchased from off-site sources shall be the same in the *standard reference design* and the *proposed design*.

Exception: Jurisdictions that require site energy (1 kWh = 3413 Btu) rather than energy cost as the metric of comparison.

TABLE C407.2
REQUIREMENTS FOR TOTAL BUILDING PERFORMANCE

SECTION[a]	TITLE
Envelope	
C402.5	Air leakage—thermal envelope
Mechanical	
C403.1.1	Calculation of heating and cooling loads
C403.1.2	Data centers
C403.2	System design
C403.3	Heating and cooling equipment efficiencies
C403.4, except C403.4.3, C403.4.4 and C403.4.5	Heating and cooling system controls
C403.5.5	Economizer fault detection and diagnostics
C403.7, except C403.7.4.1	Ventilation and exhaust systems
C403.8, except C403.8.6	Fan and fan controls
C403.9	Large-diameter ceiling fans
C403.11, except C403.11.3	Refrigeration equipment performance
C403.12	Construction of HVAC system elements
C403.13	Mechanical systems located outside of the building thermal envelope
C404	Service water heating
C405, except C405.3	Electrical power and lighting systems

		C408	Maintenance information and system commisioning

a. Reference to a code section includes all the relative subsections except as indicated in the table.

~~**C407.4**~~ **C407.3 Documentation.** Documentation verifying that the methods and accuracy of compliance software tools conform to the provisions of this section shall be provided to the *code official*.

~~**C407.4.1**~~ **C407.3.1 Compliance report.** Permit submittals shall include a report documenting that the proposed design has annual energy costs less than or equal to the annual energy costs of the standard reference design. The compliance documentation shall include the following information:

1. Address of the building.
2. An inspection checklist documenting the building component characteristics of the *proposed design* as specified in Table C407.4.1(1). The inspection checklist shall show the estimated annual energy cost for both the *standard reference design* and the *proposed design*.
3. Name of individual completing the compliance report.
4. Name and version of the compliance software tool.

~~**C407.4.2**~~ **C407.3.2 Additional documentation.** The *code official* shall be permitted to require the following documents:

1. Documentation of the building component characteristics of the *standard reference design*.
2. Thermal zoning diagrams consisting of floor plans showing the thermal zoning scheme for *standard reference design* and *proposed design*.
3. Input and output reports from the energy analysis simulation program containing the complete input and output files, as applicable. The output file shall include energy use totals and energy use by energy source and end-use served, total hours that space conditioning loads are not met and any errors or warning messages generated by the simulation tool as applicable.
4. An explanation of any error or warning messages appearing in the simulation tool output.
5. A certification signed by the builder providing the building component characteristics of the *proposed design* as given in Table C407.4.1(1).
6. Documentation of the reduction in energy use associated with *on-site renewable energy*.

~~**C407.5**~~ **C407.4 Calculation procedure.** Except as specified by this section, the *standard reference design* and *proposed design* shall be configured and analyzed using identical methods and techniques.

~~**C407.5.1**~~ **C407.4.1 Building specifications.** The *standard reference design* and *proposed design* shall be configured and analyzed as specified by Table ~~C407.5.1(1)~~ C407.4.1(1). Table ~~C407.5.1(1)~~ C407.4.1(1) shall include by reference all notes contained in Table C402.1.4.

~~**C407.5.2**~~ **C407.4.2 Thermal blocks.** The *standard reference design* and *proposed design* shall be analyzed using identical thermal blocks as specified in Section C407.4.2.1, C407.4.2.2 or C407.4.2.3.

~~**C407.5.2.1**~~ **C407.4.2.1 HVAC zones designed.** Where HVAC *zones* are defined on HVAC design drawings, each HVAC *zone* shall be modeled as a separate thermal block.

Exception: Different HVAC *zones* shall be allowed to be combined to create a single thermal block or identical thermal blocks to which multipliers are applied, provided that:

1. The space use classification is the same throughout the thermal block.
2. All HVAC *zones* in the thermal block that are adjacent to glazed exterior walls face the same orientation or their orientations are within 45 degrees (0.79 rad) of each other.
3. All of the *zones* are served by the same HVAC system or by the same kind of HVAC system.

~~**C407.5.2.2**~~ **C407.4.2.2 HVAC zones not designed.** Where HVAC *zones* have not yet been designed, thermal blocks shall be defined based on similar internal load densities, occupancy, lighting, thermal and temperature schedules, and in combination with the following guidelines:

1. Separate thermal blocks shall be assumed for interior and perimeter spaces. Interior spaces shall be those located more than 15 feet (4572 mm) from an exterior wall. Perimeter spaces shall be those located closer than 15 feet (4572 mm) from an *exterior wall*.
2. Separate thermal blocks shall be assumed for spaces adjacent to glazed exterior walls: a separate *zone* shall be provided for each orientation, except orientations that differ by not more than 45 degrees (0.79 rad) shall be permitted to be considered to be the same orientation. Each *zone* shall include floor area that is 15 feet (4572 mm) or less from a glazed perimeter wall, except that floor area within 15 feet (4572 mm) of glazed perimeter walls having more than one orientation shall be divided proportionately between *zones*.
3. Separate thermal blocks shall be assumed for spaces having floors that are in contact with the ground or exposed to ambient conditions from *zones* that do not share these features.
4. Separate thermal blocks shall be assumed for spaces having exterior ceiling or roof assemblies from *zones* that do not share these features.

~~**C407.5.2.3 Multifamily residential buildings.**~~ **C407.4.2.3 Group R-2 occupancy buildings.** *Group R*-2 occupancy spaces shall be modeled using one thermal block per space except that those facing the same orientations are permitted to be combined into one thermal block. Corner units and units with roof or floor loads shall only be combined with units sharing these features.

TABLE ~~C407.5.1(1)~~ C407.4.1(1)

SPECIFICATIONS FOR THE STANDARD REFERENCE AND PROPOSED DESIGNS

BUILDING COMPONENT CHARACTERISTICS	STANDARD REFERENCE DESIGN	PROPOSED DESIGN
Space use classification	Same as proposed	The space use classification shall be chosen in accordance with Table C405.3.2(1) or C405.3.2(2) for all areas of the building covered by this permit. Where the space use classification for a building is not known, the building shall be categorized as an office building.
Roofs	Type: insulation entirely above deck	As proposed
	Gross area: same as proposed	As proposed
	U-factor: as specified in Table C402.1.4	As proposed
	Solar absorptance: 0.75	As proposed
	Emittance: 0.90	As proposed
Walls, above-grade	Type: ~~Mass wall,~~ same as proposed	As proposed
	Gross area: same as proposed	As proposed
	U-factor: as specified in Table C402.1.4	As proposed
	Solar absorptance: 0.75	As proposed
	Emittance: 0.90	As proposed
Walls, below-grade	Type: mass wall	As proposed
	Gross area: same as proposed	As proposed

	U-Factor: as specified in Table C402.1.4 with insulation layer on interior side of walls	As proposed
Floors, above-grade	Type: joist/framed floor	As proposed
	Gross area: same as proposed	As proposed
	U-factor: as specified in Table C402.1.4	As proposed
Floors, slab-on-grade	Type: unheated	As proposed
	F-factor: as specified in Table C402.1.4	As proposed
Opaque doors	Type: swinging	As proposed
	Area: Same as proposed	As proposed
	U-factor: as specified in Table C402.1.4	As proposed
Vertical fenestration other than opaque doors	Area 1. The proposed vertical fenestration area; where the proposed ~~glazing~~ vertical fenestration area is less than 40 percent of above-grade wall area. 2. 40 percent of above-grade wall area; where the proposed ~~glazing~~ ~~vertical fenestration~~ area is 40 percent or more of the above-grade wall area.	As proposed
	U-factor: as specified in Table C402.4	As proposed
	SHGC: as specified in Table C402.4 except that for climates with no requirement (NR) SHGC = 0.40 shall be used	As proposed
	External shading and PF: none	As proposed

(continued)

~~Table C407.5.1(1)~~ TABLE C407.4.1(1)~~—~~continued

SPECIFICATIONS FOR THE STANDARD REFERENCE AND PROPOSED DESIGNS

BUILDING COMPONENT CHARACTERISTICS	STANDARD REFERENCE DESIGN	PROPOSED DESIGN
Skylights	Area 1. The proposed skylight area; where the proposed skylight area is less than ~~3% of gross area of roof assembly~~ that permitted by Section C402.1. 2. ~~3% of gross area of roof assembly~~; The area permitted by Section C402.1; ~~where the proposed skylight area is 3% or more of gross area of roof assembly~~ exceeds that permitted by Section C402.1.	As proposed
	U-factor: as specified in Table C402.4	As proposed
	SHGC: as specified in Table C402.4 except that for climates with no requirement (NR) SHGC = 0.40 shall be used.	As proposed

Lighting, interior	The interior lighting power shall be determined in accordance with Section C405.3.2. Where the occupancy of the building is not known, the lighting power density shall be 1.0 watt per square foot based on the categorization of buildings with unknown space classification as offices.	As proposed
Lighting, exterior	The lighting power shall be determined in accordance with Tables C405.5.2(1), C405.5.2(2) and C405.5.2(3). Areas and dimensions of surfaces shall be the same as proposed.	As proposed
Internal gains	Same as proposed	Receptacle, motor and process loads shall be modeled and estimated based on the space use classification. End-use load components within and associated with the building shall be modeled to include, but not be limited to, the following: exhaust fans, parking garage ventilation fans, exterior building lighting, swimming pool heaters and pumps, elevators, escalators, refrigeration equipment and cooking equipment.
Schedules	Same as proposed **Exception:** Thermostat settings and schedules for HVAC systems that utilize radiant heating, radiant cooling and elevated air speed, provided that equivalent levels of occupant thermal comfort are demonstrated by means of equal Standard Effective Temperature as calculated in Normative Appendix B of ASHRAE Standard 55.	Operating schedules shall include hourly profiles for daily operation and shall account for variations between weekdays, weekends, holidays and any seasonal operation. Schedules shall model the time-dependent variations in occupancy, illumination, receptacle loads, thermostat settings, mechanical ventilation, HVAC equipment availability, service hot water usage and any process loads. The schedules shall be typical of the proposed building type as determined by the designer and approved by the jurisdiction.
Mechanical ventilation	Same as proposed	As proposed, in accordance with Section C403.2.2.
Heating systems	Fuel type: same as proposed design	As proposed
	Equipment type[a]: as specified in Tables C407.4.1(2) and C407.4.1(3)	As proposed
	Efficiency: as specified in the tables in Section C403.2.3 ~~C403.3.2.~~	As proposed
	Capacity[b]: sized proportionally to the capacities in the proposed design based on sizing runs, and shall be established such that no smaller number of unmet heating load hours and no larger heating capacity safety factors are provided than in the proposed design.	As proposed

(continued)

~~Table C407.5.1(1)~~ TABLE C407.4.1(1)—continued

SPECIFICATIONS FOR THE STANDARD REFERENCE AND PROPOSED DESIGNS

BUILDING COMPONENT CHARACTERISTICS	STANDARD REFERENCE DESIGN	PROPOSED DESIGN
Cooling systems	Fuel type: same as proposed design	As proposed
	Equipment type[c]: as specified in Tables C407.4.1(2) and C407.4.1(3)	As proposed
	Efficiency: as specified in Tables C403.3.2(1), C403.3.2(2) and C403.3.2(3)	As proposed

	Capacity[b]: sized proportionally to the capacities in the proposed design based on sizing runs, and shall be established such that no smaller number of unmet cooling load hours and no larger cooling capacity safety factors are provided than in the proposed design.	As proposed
	Economizer[d]: same as proposed, in accordance with Section C403.5.	As proposed
Service water heating[e]	Fuel type: same as proposed	As proposed
	Efficiency: as specified in Table C404.2	For *Group R*, as proposed multiplied by SWHF. For other than *Group R*, as proposed multiplied by efficiency as provided by the manufacturer of the DWHR unit.
	Capacity: same as proposed	As proposed
	Where no service water hot water system exists or is specified in the proposed design, no service hot water heating shall be modeled.	

For SI: 1 watt per square foot = 10.7 w/m^2.

SWHF = Service Water Heat Recovery factor, DWHR = Drain Water Heat Recovery.

a. Where no heating system exists or has been specified, the heating system shall be modeled as fossil fuel. The system characteristics shall be identical in both the standard reference design and proposed design.

b. The ratio between the capacities used in the annual simulations and the capacities determined by sizing runs shall be the same for both the standard reference design and proposed design.

c. Where no cooling system exists or no cooling system has been specified, the cooling system shall be modeled as an air-cooled single-zone system, one unit per thermal zone. The system characteristics shall be identical in both the standard reference design and proposed design.

d. If an economizer is required in accordance with Table C403.5(1) and where no economizer exists or is specified in the proposed design, then a supply-air economizer shall be provided in the standard reference design in accordance with Section C403.5.

e. The SWHF shall be applied as follows:

1. Where potable water from the DWHR unit supplies not less than one shower and not greater than two showers, of which the drain water from the same showers flows through the DWHR unit then SWHF = [1 – (DWHR unit efficiency × 0.36)].
2. Where potable water from the DWHR unit supplies not less than three showers and not greater than four showers, of which the drain water from the same showers flows through the DWHR unit then SWHF = [1 – (DWHR unit efficiency × 0.33)].
3. Where potable water from the DWHR unit supplies not less than five showers and not greater than six showers, of which the drain water from the same showers flows through the DWHR unit, then SWHF = [1 – (DWHR unit efficiency × 0.26)].
4. Where Items 1 through 3 are not met, SWHF = 1.0.

~~TABLE C407.5.1(2)~~ TABLE C407.4.1(2)

HVAC SYSTEMS MAP

CONDENSER COOLING SOURCE[a]	HEATING SYSTEM CLASSIFICATION[b]	STANDARD REFERENCE DESIGN HVC SYSTEM TYPE[c]		
		Single-zone Residential System	Single-zone Nonresidential System	All Other
Water/ground	Electric resistance	System 5	System 5	System 1
	Heat pump	System 6	System 6	System 6
	Fossil fuel	System 7	System 7	System 2
Air/none	Electric resistance	System 8	System 9	System 3
	Heat pump	System 8	System 9	System 3
	Fossil fuel	System 10	System 11	System 4

a. Select “water/ground” where the proposed design system condenser is water or evaporatively cooled; select “air/none” where the condenser is air cooled. Closed-circuit dry coolers shall be considered to be air cooled. Systems utilizing district cooling shall be treated as if the condenser water type were “water.” Where mechanical cooling is not specified or the mechanical cooling system in the proposed design does not require heat rejection, the system shall be treated as if the condenser water type were "Air." For proposed designs with ground-source or groundwater-source heat pumps, the standard reference design HVAC system shall be water-source heat pump (System 6).

b. Select the path that corresponds to the proposed design heat source: electric resistance, heat pump (including air source and water source), or fuel fired. Systems utilizing district heating (steam or hot water) and systems without heating capability shall be treated as if the heating system type were "fossil fuel." For systems with mixed fuel heating sources, the system or systems that use the secondary heating source type (the one with the smallest total installed output capacity for the spaces served by the system) shall be modeled identically in the standard reference design and the primary heating source type shall be used to determine standard reference design HVAC system type.

c. Select the standard reference design HVAC system category: The system under "single-zone residential system" shall be selected where the HVAC system in the proposed design is a single-zone system and serves a Group R occupancy. The system under "single-zone nonresidential system" shall be selected where the HVAC system in the proposed design is a single-zone system and serves other than ~~residential spaces~~ Group R occupancy. The system under "all other" shall be selected for all other cases.

~~Table C407.5.1(3)~~ TABLE C407.4.1(3)

SPECIFICATIONS FOR THE STANDARD REFERENCE DESIGN HVAC SYSTEM DESCRIPTIONS

SYSTEM NO.	SYSTEM TYPE	FAN CONTROL	COOLING TYPE	HEATING TYPE
1	Variable air volume with parallel fan-powered boxes[a]	VAV[d]	Chilled water[e]	Electric resistance
2	Variable air volume with reheat[b]	VAV[d]	Chilled water[e]	Hot water fossil fuel boiler[f]
3	Packaged variable air volume with parallel fan-powered boxes[a]	VAV[d]	Direct expansion[c]	Electric resistance
4	Packaged variable air volume with reheat[b]	VAV[d]	Direct expansion[c]	Hot water fossil fuel boiler[f]
5	Two-pipe fan coil	Constant volume[i]	Chilled water[e]	Electric resistance
6	Water-source heat pump	Constant volume[i]	Direct expansion[c]	Electric heat pump and boiler[g]
7	Four-pipe fan coil	Constant volume[i]	Chilled water[e]	Hot water fossil fuel boiler[f]
8	Packaged terminal heat pump	Constant volume[i]	Direct expansion[c]	Electric heat pump[h]
9	Packaged rooftop heat pump	Constant volume[i]	Direct expansion[c]	Electric heat pump[h]
10	Packaged terminal air conditioner	Constant volume[i]	Direct expansion	Hot water fossil fuel boiler[f]
11	Packaged rooftop air conditioner	Constant volume[i]	Direct expansion	Fossil fuel furnace

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 cfm = 0.4719 L/s, 1 Btu/h = 0.293/W, °C = [(°F) – 32]/1.8.

a. **VAV with parallel boxes:** Fans in parallel VAV fan-powered boxes shall be sized for 50 percent of the peak design flow rate and shall be modeled with 0.35 W/cfm fan power. Minimum volume setpoints for fan-powered boxes shall be equal to the minimum rate for the space required for ventilation consistent with Section C403.6.1, Item 3. Supply air temperature setpoint shall be constant at the design condition.

b. **VAV with reheat:** Minimum volume setpoints for VAV reheat boxes shall be 0.4 cfm/ft^2 of floor area. Supply air temperature shall be reset based on zone demand from the design temperature difference to a 10°F temperature difference under minimum load conditions. Design airflow rates shall be sized for the reset supply air temperature; i.e., a 10°F temperature difference.

c. **Direct expansion:** The fuel type for the cooling system shall match that of the cooling system in the proposed design.

d. **VAV:** Where the proposed design system has a supply, return or relief fan motor 25 hp or larger, the corresponding fan in the VAV system of the standard reference design shall be modeled assuming a variable-speed drive. For smaller fans, a forward-curved centrifugal fan with inlet vanes shall be modeled. Where the proposed design's system has a direct digital control system at the zone level, static pressure setpoint reset based on zone requirements in accordance with Section C403.8.6 shall be modeled.

e. **Chilled water:** For systems using purchased chilled water, the chillers are not explicitly modeled and chilled water costs shall be based as determined in Sections C407.2 and C407.4.2. Otherwise, the standard reference design's chiller plant shall be modeled with chillers having the number as indicated in Table C407.4.1(4) as a function of standard reference building chiller plant load and type as indicated in Table C407.4.1(5) as a function of individual chiller load. Where chiller fuel source is mixed, the system in the standard reference design shall have chillers with the same fuel types and with capacities having the same proportional capacity as the proposed design's chillers for each fuel type. Chilled water supply temperature shall be modeled at 44°F design supply temperature and 56°F return temperature. Piping losses shall not be modeled in either building model. Chilled water supply water temperature shall be reset in accordance with Section C403.4.4. Pump system power for each pumping system shall be the same as the proposed design; where the proposed design has no chilled water pumps, the standard reference design pump power shall be 22 W/gpm (equal to a pump operating against a 75-foot head, 65-percent combined impeller and motor efficiency). The chilled water system shall be modeled as primary-only variable flow with flow maintained at the design rate through each chiller using a bypass. Chilled water pumps shall be modeled as riding the pump curve or with variable-speed drives where required in Section C403.4.4. The heat rejection device shall be an axial fan cooling tower with two-speed fans where required in Section C403.10. Condenser water design supply temperature shall be 85°F or 10°F approach to design wet-bulb temperature, whichever is lower, with a design temperature rise of 10°F. The tower shall be controlled to maintain a 70°F leaving water temperature where weather permits, floating up to leaving water temperature at design conditions. Pump system power for each pumping system shall be the same as the proposed design; where the proposed design has no condenser water pumps, the standard reference design pump power shall be 19 W/gpm (equal to a pump operating against a 60-foot head, 60-percent combined impeller and motor efficiency). Each chiller shall be modeled with separate condenser water and chilled water pumps interlocked to operate with the associated chiller.

f. **Fossil fuel boiler:** For systems using purchased hot water or steam, the boilers are not explicitly modeled and hot water or steam costs shall be based on actual utility rates. Otherwise, the boiler plant shall use the same fuel as the proposed design and shall be natural draft. The standard reference design boiler plant shall be modeled with a single boiler where the standard reference design plant load is 600,000 Btu/h and less and with two equally sized boilers for plant capacities exceeding 600,000 Btu/h. Boilers shall be staged as required by the load. Hot water supply temperature shall be modeled at 180°F design supply temperature and 130°F return temperature. Piping losses shall not be modeled in either building model. Hot water supply water temperature shall be reset in accordance with Section C403.4.4. Pump system power for each pumping system shall be the same as the proposed design; where the proposed design has no hot water pumps, the standard reference design pump power shall be 19 W/gpm (equal to a pump operating against a 60-foot head, 60-percent combined impeller and motor efficiency). The hot water system shall be modeled as primary only with continuous variable flow. Hot water pumps shall be modeled as riding the pump curve or with variable speed drives where required by Section C403.4.4.

TABLE ~~C407.5.1(3)~~ TABLE C407.4.1(3) - continued
SPECIFICATIONS FOR THE STANDARD REFERENCE DESIGN HVAC SYSTEM DESCRIPTIONS

g. **Electric heat pump and boiler:** Water-source heat pumps shall be connected to a common heat pump water loop controlled to maintain temperatures between 60°F and 90°F. Heat rejection from the loop shall be provided by an axial fan closed-circuit evaporative fluid cooler with two-speed fans where required in Section C403.8.6. Heat addition to the loop shall be provided by a boiler that uses the same fuel as the proposed design and shall be natural draft. Where no boilers exist in the proposed design, the standard reference building boilers shall be fossil fuel. The standard reference design boiler plant shall be modeled with a single boiler where the standard reference design plant load is 600,000 Btu/h or less and with two equally sized boilers for plant capacities exceeding 600,000 Btu/h. Boilers shall be staged as required by the load. Piping losses shall not be modeled in either building model. Pump system power shall be the same as the proposed design; where the proposed design has no pumps, the standard reference design pump power shall be 22 W/gpm, which is equal to a pump operating against a 75-foot head, with a 65-percent combined impeller and motor efficiency. Loop flow shall be variable with flow shutoff at each heat pump when its compressor cycles off as required by Section C403.4.4. Loop pumps shall be modeled as riding the pump curve or with variable speed drives where required by Section C403.10.

h. **Electric heat pump:** Electric air-source heat pumps shall be modeled with electric auxiliary heat. The system shall be controlled with a multistage space thermostat and an outdoor air thermostat wired to energize auxiliary heat only on the last thermostat stage and when outdoor air temperature is less than 40°F.

i. **Constant volume:** Fans shall be controlled in the same manner as in the proposed design; i.e., fan operation whenever the space is occupied or fan operation cycled on calls for heating and cooling. Where the fan is modeled as cycling and the fan energy is included in the energy efficiency rating of the equipment, fan energy shall not be modeled explicitly.

~~Table C407.5.1(4)~~ TABLE C407.4.1(4)

NUMBER OF CHILLERS

TOTAL CHILLER PLANT CAPACITY	NUMBER OF CHILLERS
≤ 300 tons	1
> 300 tons, < 600 tons	2, sized equally
≥ 600 tons	2 minimum, with chillers added so that all are sized equally and none is larger than 800 tons

For SI: 1 ton = 3517 W.

~~Table C407.5.1(5)~~ TABLE C407.4.1(5)

WATER CHILLER TYPES

INDIVIDUAL CHILLER PLANT CAPACITY	ELECTRIC CHILLER TYPE	FOSSIL FUEL CHILLER TYPE
≤ 100 tons	Reciprocating	Single-effect absorption, direct fired
> 100 tons, < 300 tons	Screw	Double-effect absorption, direct fired
≥ 300 tons	Centrifugal	Double-effect absorption, direct fired

For SI: 1 ton = 3517 W.

~~C407.6~~ C407.5 **Calculation software tools.** Calculation procedures used to comply with this section shall be software tools capable of calculating the annual energy consumption of all building elements that differ between the *standard reference design* and the *proposed design* and shall include the following capabilities.

1. Building operation for a full calendar year (8,760 hours).
2. Climate data for a full calendar year (8,760 hours) and shall reflect *approved* coincident hourly data for temperature, solar radiation, humidity and wind speed for the building location.
3. Ten or more thermal zones.
4. Thermal mass effects.
5. Hourly variations in occupancy, illumination, receptacle loads, thermostat settings, mechanical ventilation, HVAC equipment availability, service hot water usage and any process loads.
6. Part-load performance curves for mechanical equipment.
7. Capacity and efficiency correction curves for mechanical heating and cooling equipment.
8. Printed *code official* inspection checklist listing each of the *proposed design* component characteristics from Table C407.4.1(1) determined by the analysis to provide compliance, along with their respective performance ratings, including but not limited to *R*-value, *U*-factor, SHGC, HSPF, AFUE, SEER and EF.

~~C407.6.1~~ C407.5.1 Specific approval. Performance analysis tools complying with the applicable subsections of Section C407 and tested according to ASHRAE Standard 140 shall be permitted to be *approved.* Tools are permitted to be *approved* based on meeting a specified threshold for a jurisdiction. The *code official* shall be permitted to approve tools for a specified application or limited scope.

~~C407.6.2~~ C407.5.2 Input values. Where calculations require input values not specified by Sections C402, C403, C404 and C405, those input values shall be taken from an *approved* source.

~~C407.6.3~~ C407.5.3 Exceptional calculation methods. Where the simulation program does not model a design, material or device of the *proposed design*, an exceptional calculation method shall be used where approved by the *code official*. Where there are multiple designs, materials or devices that the simulation program does not model, each shall be calculated separately and exceptional savings determined for each. The total exceptional savings shall not constitute more than half of the difference between the baseline building performance and the proposed building performance. Applications for approval of an exceptional method shall include all of the following:

1. Step-by-step documentation of the exceptional calculation method performed, detailed enough to reproduce the results.
2. Copies of all spreadsheets used to perform the calculations.
3. A sensitivity analysis of energy consumption where each of the input parameters is varied from half to double the value assumed.
4. The calculations shall be performed on a time step basis consistent with the simulation program used.
5. The performance rating calculated with and without the exceptional calculation method.

SECTION C408
MAINTENANCE INFORMATION
AND SYSTEM COMMISSIONING

~~**C408.1 General.** This section covers the commissioning of the building mechanical systems in Section C403, service water heating systems in Section C404 and electrical power and lighting systems in Section C405. Buildings less than or equal to 10,000 square feet (929 m^2) of conditioned floor area are exempt from commissioning requirements. Prior to the issuance of Certificate of Occupancy, a *registered design professional* shall provide a statement of system commissioning to the code official and facility owner in accordance with the provisions of this section (see Appendix C1). Items identified as deferred tests, including tests that cannot be performed because of climatic conditions, or other noted deficiencies associated with commissioning in Appendix C1 shall not prevent a certificate of occupancy from being issued.~~

~~**Exception:** The mechanical, electrical or plumbing contractor will be allowed to prepare the statement of system~~

~~commissioning when a building permit is issued for a project without the seal of a *registered design professional* as allowed by an exemption under *North Carolina Administrative Code and Policies*, Section 204.3.5.~~

C408.1 General. This section covers the provision of maintenance information and the commissioning of, and the functional testing requirements for, building systems.

C408.1.1 Building operations and maintenance information. The building operations and maintenance documents shall be provided to the owner and shall consist of manufacturers' information, specifications and recommendations; programming procedures and data points; narratives; and other means of illustrating to the owner how the building, equipment and systems are intended to be installed, maintained and operated. Required regular maintenance actions for equipment and systems shall be clearly stated on a readily visible label. The label shall include the title or publication number for the operation and maintenance manual for that particular model and type of product.

~~**C408.2 Mechanical systems and service water-heating systems commissioning and completion requirements.** *Construction document* notes shall clearly indicate provisions for *commissioning* and completion requirements in accordance with this section and are permitted to refer to specifications for further requirements. Copies of all documentation shall be given to the owner or owner's authorized agent in accordance with Section C408.2.5.~~

~~**Exceptions:** The following systems are exempt:~~
~~1. Deleted.~~
~~2. Systems included in Section C403.3 that serve individual *dwelling units* and *sleeping units*.~~

C408.2 Mechanical systems and service water-heating systems commissioning and completion requirements. Prior to the final mechanical and plumbing inspections, the *registered design professional or approved agency* shall provide evidence of mechanical systems *commissioning* and completion in accordance with the provisions of this section.

Construction document notes shall clearly indicate provisions for *commissioning* and completion requirements in accordance with this section and are permitted to refer to specifications for further requirements. Copies of all documentation shall be given to the owner or owner's authorized agent and made available to the *code official* upon request in accordance with Section C408.2.5.

Exceptions: The following systems are exempt:

1. Mechanical systems and service water-heating systems in buildings where the total mechanical equipment capacity is less than 480,000 Btu/h (140.7 kW) cooling capacity and 600,000 Btu/h (175.8 kW) combined service water-heating and space-heating capacity.
2. Systems included in Section C403.5 that serve individual *dwelling units* and *sleeping units*.

C408.2.1 Commissioning plan. A *commissioning plan* shall be developed by a North Carolina *registered design professional* or *approved agency* and shall include the following items:

1. A narrative description of the activities that will be accomplished during each phase of *commissioning,* including the personnel intended to accomplish each of the activities.
2. A listing of the specific equipment, appliances or systems to be tested and a description of the tests to be performed.
3. Functions to be tested including, but not limited to, calibrations and economizer controls.
4. Conditions under which the test will be performed. Testing shall affirm winter and summer design conditions and full outside air conditions.
5. Measurable criteria for performance.

C408.2.2 Systems adjusting and balancing. HVAC systems shall be balanced in accordance with generally accepted engineering standards. Air and water flow rates shall be measured and adjusted to deliver final flow rates within the tolerances provided in the product specifications. Test and balance activities shall include air system and hydronic system balancing.

C408.2.2.1 Air systems balancing. Each supply air outlet and *zone* terminal device shall be equipped with means for air balancing in accordance with the requirements of Chapter 6 of the *International Mechanical Code*. Discharge dampers used for air-system balancing are prohibited on constant-volume fans and variable volume fans with motors 10 hp (18.6 kW) and larger. Air systems shall be balanced in a manner to first minimize throttling losses then, for fans with system power of greater than 1 hp (0.746 kW), fan speed shall be adjusted to meet design flow conditions.

Exception: Fans with fan motors of 1 hp (0.74 kW) or less are not required to be provided with a means for air balancing.

C408.2.2.2 Hydronic systems balancing. Individual hydronic heating and cooling coils shall be equipped with means for balancing and measuring flow. Hydronic systems shall be proportionately balanced in a manner to first minimize throttling losses, then the pump impeller shall be trimmed or pump speed shall be adjusted to meet design flow conditions. Each hydronic system shall have either the capability to measure pressure across the pump, or test ports at each side of each pump.

Exception: The following equipment is not required to be equipped with a means for balancing or measuring flow:

1. Pumps with pump motors of 5 hp (3.7 kW) or less.
2. Where throttling results in not greater than 5 percent of the nameplate horsepower draw above that required if the impeller were trimmed.

C408.2.3 Functional performance testing. Functional performance testing specified in Sections C408.2.3.1 through C408.2.3.3 shall be conducted.

C408.2.3.1 Equipment. Equipment functional performance testing shall demonstrate the installation and operation of components, systems and system-to-system interfacing relationships in accordance with approved plans and specifications such that operation, function and maintenance serviceability for each of the commissioned systems are confirmed. Testing shall include all modes and *sequence of operation*, including under full-load, part-load and the following emergency conditions:

1. All modes as described in the *sequence* of *operation*.
2. Redundant or *automatic* back-up mode.
3. Performance of alarms.
4. Mode of operation upon a loss of power and restoration of power.

Exception: Unitary or packaged HVAC equipment listed in ~~Tables C403.2.3(1) through C403.2.3(3)~~ the tables in Section C403.3.2 that do not require supply air economizers.

C408.2.3.2 Controls. HVAC and service water-heating control systems shall be tested to document that control devices, components, equipment and systems are calibrated and adjusted and operate in accordance with approved plans and specifications. Sequences of operation shall be functionally tested to document they operate in accordance with *approved* plans and specifications.

C408.2.3.3 Economizers. Air economizers shall undergo a functional test to determine that they operate in accordance with manufacturer's specifications. ~~Construction documents.~~

~~**C408.2.4 Preliminary commissioning report.** Deleted.~~

C408.2.4 Preliminary commissioning report. A preliminary report of *commissioning* test procedures and results shall be completed and certified by the *registered design professional* or *approved agency* and provided to the building owner or owner's authorized agent. The report shall be organized with mechanical and service hot water findings in separate sections to allow independent review. The report shall be identified as "Preliminary Commissioning Report," shall include the completed Commissioning Compliance Checklist, Figure C408.2.4, and shall identify:

1. Itemization of deficiencies found during testing required by this section that have not been corrected at the time of report preparation.
2. Deferred tests that cannot be performed at the time of report preparation because of climatic conditions.
3. Climatic conditions required for performance of the deferred tests.

4. Results of functional performance tests.

5. Functional performance test procedures used during the commissioning process, including measurable criteria for test acceptance.

Project Information: ______________ Project Name: ______________

Project Address: ______________

Commissioning Authority: ______________

Commissioning Plan (Section C408.2.1)

- ☐ Commissioning Plan was used during construction and includes all items required by Section C408.2.1
- ☐ Systems Adjusting and Balancing has been completed.
- ☐ HVAC Equipment Functional Testing has been executed. If applicable, deferred and follow-up testing is scheduled to be provided on: ______________
- ☐ HVAC Controls Functional Testing has been executed. If applicable, deferred and follow-up testing is scheduled to be provided on: ______________
- ☐ Economizer Functional Testing has been executed. If applicable, deferred and follow-up testing is scheduled to be provided on: ______________
- ☐ Lighting Controls Functional Testing has been executed. If applicable, deferred and follow-up testing is scheduled to be provided on: ______________
- ☐ Service Water Heating System Functional Testing has been executed. If applicable, deferred and follow-up testing is scheduled to be provided on: ______________
- ☐ Manual, record documents and training have been completed or scheduled
- ☐ Preliminary Commissioning Report submitted to owner and includes all items required by Section C408.2.4

I hereby certify that the commissioning provider has provided me with evidence of mechanical, service water heating and lighting systems commissioning in accordance with the 2021 IECC.

Signature of Building Owner or Owner's Representative ______________ Date ______________

FIGURE C408.2.4 COMMISSIONING COMPLIANCE CHECKLIST

C408.2.4.1 Acceptance of report. Buildings, or portions thereof, shall not be considered as acceptable for a final inspection pursuant to Section C105.2.6 until the *code official* has received the Preliminary Commissioning Report from the building owner or owner's authorized agent.

C408.2.4.2 Copy of report. The *code official* shall be permitted to require that a copy of the Preliminary Commissioning Report be made available for review by the *code official*.

C408.2.5 Documentation requirements. The *construction documents* shall specify that the documents described in this section be provided to the building owner or owner's authorized agent within 90 days of the date of receipt of the *certificate of occupancy*.

C408.2.5.1 System ~~test and balance~~ balancing report. A written report describing the activities and measurements completed in accordance with Section C408.2.2.

~~**C408.2.5.4 Final commissioning report.** Deleted.~~

C408.2.5.2 Final commissioning report. A report of test procedures and results identified as "Final Commissioning Report" shall be delivered to the building owner or owner's authorized agent. The report shall be organized with mechanical system and service hot water system findings in separate sections to allow independent review. The report shall include the following:

1. Results of functional performance tests.
2. Disposition of deficiencies found during testing, including details of corrective measures used or proposed.
3. Functional performance test procedures used during the commissioning process including measurable criteria for test acceptance, provided herein for repeatability.

Exception: Deferred tests that cannot be performed at the time of report preparation due to climatic conditions.

~~**C408.3 Lighting system functional testing.** Functional performance testing specified in Sections C408.3.1 and C408.3.1.1 through C408.3.1.3 shall be conducted. Manuals shall be provided in accordance with Section C408.3.2.~~

C408.3 Functional testing of lighting controls. Automatic lighting controls required by this code shall comply with this section.

~~**C408.3.1 Functional testing.** The lighting control systems shall be tested to ensure that control hardware and software are calibrated, adjusted, programmed and in proper working condition in accordance with the *construction documents* and manufacturer's instructions. Functional testing shall be in accordance with Sections C408.3.1.1 and C408.3.1.2 for the applicable control type.~~

C408.3.1 Functional testing. ~~The lighting control systems shall be tested to ensure that control hardware and software~~ ~~Prior~~ to passing final inspection, the *registered design professional* or *approved agency* shall provide evidence that the lighting control systems have been tested to ensure that control hardware and software are calibrated, adjusted, programmed and in proper working condition in accordance with the *construction documents* and manufacturer's instructions. Functional testing shall be in accordance with Sections C408.3.1.1 ~~and C408.3.1.2~~ through C408.3.1.3 for the applicable control type.

C408.3.1.1 Occupant sensor controls. Where *occupant sensor controls* are provided, the following procedures shall be performed:

1. Certify that the *occupant sensor* has been located and aimed in accordance with manufacturer recommendations.
2. For projects with seven or fewer *occupant sensors*, each sensor shall be tested.
3. For projects with more than seven *occupant sensors,* testing shall be done for each unique combination of sensor type and space geometry. Where multiples of each unique combination of sensor type and space geometry are provided, not less than 10 percent and in no case fewer than one, of each combination shall be tested unless the *code official* or design professional requires a higher percentage to be tested. Where 30 percent or more of the tested controls fail, all remaining identical combinations shall be tested.

   For *occupant sensor controls* to be tested, verify the following:

   3.1. Where *occupant sensor controls* include status indicators, verify correct operation.

   3.2. The controlled lights turn off or down to the permitted level within the required time.

   3.3. For auto-on *occupant sensor controls*, the lights turn on to the permitted level when an occupant enters the space.

   3.4. For manual-on *occupant sensor controls*, the lights turn on only when manually activated.

   3.5. The lights are not incorrectly turned on by movement in adjacent areas or by HVAC operation.

C408.3.1.2 Time-switch controls. Where *time-switch controls* are provided, the following procedures shall be performed:

1. Confirm that the *time-switch control* is programmed with accurate weekday, weekend and holiday schedules.
2. Provide documentation to the owner of *time-switch controls* programming including weekday, weekend, holiday schedules, and set-up and preference program settings.
3. Verify the correct time and date in the time switch.
4. Verify that any battery back-up is installed and energized.
5. Verify that the override time limit is set to not more than 2 hours.
6. Simulate occupied condition. Verify and document the following:

   6.1. All lights can be turned on and off by their respective area control switch.

   6.2. The switch only operates lighting in the enclosed space in which the switch is located.
7. Simulate unoccupied condition. Verify and document the following:

   7.1. Nonexempt lighting turns off.

   7.2. Manual override switch allows only the lights in the enclosed space where the override switch is located to turn on or remain on until the next scheduled shutoff occurs.
8. Additional testing as specified by the *registered design professional.*

C408.3.1.3 Daylight responsive controls. Where *daylight responsive controls* are provided, the following shall be verified:

1. Control devices have been properly located, field calibrated and set for accurate setpoints and threshold light levels.
2. Daylight controlled lighting loads adjust to light level setpoints in response to available daylight.

~~3. The locations of calibration adjustment equipment are readily accessible only to authorized personnel.~~

3. The calibration adjustment equipment is located for *ready access* only by authorized personnel.

~~**C408.4 Documentation requirements.** Prior to the issuance of Certificate of Occupancy, a *registered design professional* shall provide a statement of system commissioning to the code official and facility owner in accordance with the provisions of this section (see Appendix C1). Items identified as deferred tests, including tests that cannot be performed because of climatic conditions, or other noted deficiencies associated with commissioning in Appendix C1 shall not prevent~~

~~a certificate of occupancy from being issued.~~

~~**Exception:** The mechanical, electrical or plumbing contractor will be allowed to prepare the statement of system commissioning when a building permit is issued for a project without the seal of a licensed design professional as allowed by an exemption under *North Carolina State Building Administrative Code and Policies,* Section 204.3.5.~~

C408.3.2 Documentation requirements. The *construction documents* shall specify that the documents described in this section be provided to the building owner or owner's authorized agent within 90 days of the date of receipt of the *certificate of occupancy*.

C408.3.2.1 Drawings. Construction documents shall include the location and catalogue number of each piece of equipment.

~~**C408.3.2 Manuals.** An operating and maintenance manual shall be provided and include all of the following:~~

~~1. Submittal data indicating all selected options for each piece of lighting equipment and lighting controls.~~
~~2. Operation and maintenance manuals for each piece of lighting equipment. Required routine maintenance actions, cleaning and recommended relamping shall be clearly identified.~~
~~3. A schedule for inspecting and recalibrating all lighting controls.~~
~~4. A narrative of how each system is intended to operate, including recommended set points.~~

C408.3.2.2 Manuals. An operating and maintenance manual shall be provided and include the following:

1. Name and address of not less than one service agency for installed equipment.
2. A narrative of how each system is intended to operate, including recommended setpoints.
3. Submittal data indicating all selected options for each piece of lighting equipment and lighting controls.
4. Operation and maintenance manuals for each piece of lighting equipment. Required routine maintenance actions, cleaning and recommended relamping shall be clearly identified.
5. A schedule for inspecting and recalibrating all lighting controls.

C408.3.2.3 Report. A report of test results shall be provided and include the following:

1. Results of functional performance tests.
2. Disposition of deficiencies found during testing, including details of corrective measures used or proposed.

CHAPTER 5 [CE]
EXISTING BUILDINGS

SECTION C501
GENERAL

C501.1 Scope. The provisions of this chapter shall control the *alteration*, *repair*, *addition* and *change of occupancy* of existing buildings and ~~structures.~~structures not exempted by N.C.G.S. 143-138(b15).

~~**C501.1.1 Additions, alterations, or repairs: General.** Additions, alterations, or repairs to an existing building, building system or portion thereof shall comply with Section C502, C503 or C504. Unaltered portions of the existing building or building supply system shall not be required to comply with this code.~~

C501.1.1 Existing buildings. Except as specified in this chapter, this code shall not be used to require the removal, *alteration* or abandonment of, nor prevent the continued use and maintenance of, an existing *building* or *building* system lawfully in existence at the time of adoption of this code.

** ~~C501.4~~ C501.2 **Compliance.** *Additions*, *alterations*, *repairs*, and changes of occupancy to, or relocation of, existing *buildings* and structures shall comply with Sections C502, C503, C504 and C505 of this code, as applicable, and with the provisions for *alterations*, *repairs*, *additions* and changes of occupancy or relocation, respectively, in the *International Building Code*, *International Existing Building Code, International Fire Code, International Fuel Gas Code, International Mechanical Code, International Plumbing Code, ~~North Carolina Existing Building~~ Code,International Property Maintenance Code*, *International Private Sewage Disposal Code* and NFPA 70. Changes where unconditioned space is changed to conditioned space shall comply with Section C502.

Exception: *Additions*, *alterations*, *repairs* or changes of occupancy complying with ANSI/ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.

~~**C501.3 Maintenance.** Deleted.~~

C501.3 Maintenance. *Buildings* and structures, and parts thereof, shall be maintained in a safe and sanitary condition. Devices and systems required by this code shall be maintained in conformance to the code edition under which they were installed. The owner or the owner's authorized agent shall be responsible for the maintenance of buildings and structures. The requirements of this chapter shall not provide the basis for removal or abrogation of energy conservation, fire protection and safety systems and devices in existing structures. *

~~C501.5~~ C501.4 **New and replacement materials.** Except as otherwise required or permitted by this code, materials permitted by the applicable code for new construction shall be used. Like materials shall be permitted for *repairs,* provided that hazards to life, health or property are not created. Hazardous materials shall not be used where the code for new construction would not allow use of these materials in buildings of similar occupancy, purpose and location.

~~C501.6~~ C501.5 **Historic buildings.** Provisions of this code relating to the construction, *repair, alteration*, restoration and movement of structures, and *change of occupancy* shall not be mandatory for *historic buildings* provided that a report has been submitted to the *code official* and signed by a *registered design professional,* or a representative of the State Historic Preservation Office or the historic preservation authority having jurisdiction, demonstrating that compliance with that provision would threaten, degrade or destroy the historic form, fabric or function of the *building*.

SECTION C502
ADDITIONS

C502.1 General. *Additions* to an existing *building, building* system or portion thereof shall conform to the provisions of this code as those provisions relate to new construction without requiring the unaltered portion of the existing *building* or *building* system to comply with this code. *Additions* shall not create an unsafe or hazardous condition or overload existing building systems. An *addition* shall be deemed to comply with this code if the *addition* alone complies or if the existing building and *addition* comply with this code as a single building. ~~*Additions* shall comply with Section C502.2.~~

C502.2 Change in space conditioning. Any nonconditioned or low-energy space that is altered to become *conditioned space* shall be required to comply with Section C502.

Exceptions:

1. Where the component performance alternative in Section C402.1.5 is used to comply with this section, the proposed UA shall be not greater than 110 percent of the target UA.
2. Where the total building performance option in Section C407 is used to comply with this section, the annual energy cost of the proposed design shall be not greater than 110 percent of the annual energy cost otherwise permitted by Section C407.2.

~~**C502.2 Prescriptive compliance.**~~ **C502.3 Compliance.** *Additions* shall comply with Sections C502.3.1 through C502.3.6.2.

~~**C502.2.1 Vertical fenestration.** New *vertical fenestration* area that results in a total building *fenestration* area less than or equal to that specified in Section C402.4.1 shall comply with Section C402.4. *Additions* with *vertical fenestration* that result in a total building *fenestration* area greater than Section C402.4.1 or *additions* that exceed the fenestration area greater than Section C402.4.1 shall comply with Section C407.~~

C502.3.1 Vertical fenestration area. Additions shall comply with the following:

1. Where an addition has a new vertical fenestration area that results in a total building fenestration area less than or equal to that permitted by Section C402.4.1, the addition shall comply with Section C402.1.5, C402.4.3 or C407.
2. Where an addition with vertical fenestration that results in a total building fenestration area greater than Section C402.4.1 or an addition that exceeds the fenestration area greater than that permitted by Section C402.4.1, the fenestration shall comply with Section C402.4.1.1 for the addition only.
3. Where an addition has vertical fenestration that results in a total building vertical fenestration area exceeding that permitted by Section C402.4.1.1, the addition shall comply with Section C402.1.5 or C407.

~~**C502.2.2 Skylight area.** New *skylight* area that results in a total building *fenestration* area less than or equal to that specified in Section C402.4.1 shall comply with Section C402.4. *Additions* with *skylight* area that result in a total building *skylight* area greater than C402.4.1 or additions that exceed the *skylight* area shall comply with Section C407.~~

C502.3.2 Skylight area. Skylights shall comply with the following:

1. Where an addition has new skylight area that results in a total building fenestration area less than or equal to that permitted by Section C402.4.1, the addition shall comply with Section C402.1.5 or C407.
2. Where an addition has new skylight area that results in a total building skylight area greater than permitted by Section C402.4.1 or where additions have skylight area greater than that permitted by Section C402.4.1, the skylight area shall comply with Section C402.4.1.2 for the addition only.
3. Where an addition has skylight area that results in a total building skylight area exceeding that permitted by Section C402.4.1.2, the addition shall comply with Section C402.1.5 or C407.

~~**C502.2.3**~~ **C502.3.3 Building mechanical systems.** New mechanical systems and equipment that are part of the *addition* and serve the building heating, cooling and ventilation needs shall comply with Sections C403 and C408.

~~**C502.2.4**~~ **C502.3.4 Service water-heating systems.** New service water-heating equipment, controls and service water-heating piping shall comply with Section C404.

~~**C502.2.5**~~ **C502.3.5 Pools and inground permanently installed spas.** New pools and inground permanently installed spas shall comply with Section C404.9.

~~**C502.2.6**~~ **C502.3.6 Lighting power and systems.** New lighting systems that are installed as part of the addition shall comply with Sections C405 and C408.

~~**C502.2.6.1**~~ **C502.3.6.1 Interior lighting power.** The total interior lighting power for the *addition* shall comply with Section ~~C405.4.2~~ C405.3.2 for the *addition* alone, or the existing building and the *addition* shall comply as a single building.

~~**C502.2.6.2**~~ **C502.3.6.2 Exterior lighting power.** The total exterior lighting power for the *addition* shall comply with Section ~~C405.5.1~~ C405.5.2 for the *addition* alone, or the existing building and the *addition* shall comply as a single building.

~~**C502.2.7 Building envelope.** New building envelope assemblies that are part of the *addition* shall comply with Sections C402.1 through C402.5.~~

SECTION C503
ALTERATIONS

C503.1 General. *Alterations* to any *building* or structure ~~shall conform to the provisions of this code~~ shall comply with the requirements of Section C503. *Alterations* shall be such that the existing *building* or structure is not less conforming to the provisions of this code than the existing *building* or structure was prior to the *alteration*. *Alterations* to an existing *building*, *building* system or portion thereof shall conform to the provisions of this code as those provisions relate to new construction without requiring the unaltered portions of the existing *building* or *building* system to comply with this code. *Alterations* shall not create an unsafe or hazardous condition or overload existing *building* systems.

~~Exceptions:~~

~~1. *Alterations* complying with ANSI/ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.~~

~~2.The following *alterations* to conditioned spaces need not comply with the requirements for new con- struction:~~

~~a. Storm windows installed over existing *fenes- tration*.~~

~~b. Surface-applied window film installed on existing single-pane *fenestration* assemblies reducing solar heat gain.~~

~~c. Existing ceiling, wall or floor cavities exposed during construction, provided that these cavi- ties are filled with insulation. Roof systems requiring air space for ventilation shall retain the ventilation space required.~~

~~d. Construction where the existing roof, wall or floor cavity is not exposed.~~

~~e. *Roof recover* and roof replacement such that the existing building or structure is no less conforming to the provisions of this code than the existing building or structure was prior to the *alteration*.~~

~~f. *Air barriers* shall not be required for *roof recover* and roof replacement where the *alter- ations* or renovations to the building do not include *alterations*, renovations or *repairs* to the remainder of the building envelope.~~

~~g. *Alterations* that replace less than 50 percent of the luminaires in a space, provided that such *alterations* do not increase the installed inte- rior lighting power.~~

~~h. Replacement of existing doors that separate *conditioned space* from the exterior shall not require the installation of a vesti- bule or revolving door, provided, however, that an existing vestibule that separates a *conditioned space* from the exterior shall not be removed.~~

Exception: The following *alterations* need not comply with the requirements for new construction, provided that the energy use of the building is not increased:

1. Storm windows installed over existing *fenestration*.
2. Surface-applied window film installed on existing single-pane *fenestration* assemblies reducing solar heat gain, provided that the code does not require the glazing or *fenestration* to be replaced.
3. Existing ceiling, wall or floor cavities exposed during construction, provided that these cavities are filled with insulation.
4. Construction where the existing roof, wall or floor cavity is not exposed.
5. *Roof recover*.
6. *Air barriers* shall not be required for *roof recover* and roof replacement where the *alterations* or renovations to the building do not include *alterations*, renovations or *repairs* to the remainder of the building envelope.

~~**C503.2 Change in space conditioning.** New work per- formed shall meet the requirements of this code. Projects changing unconditioned space to conditioned space and cost- ing more than $10,000 shall require 10 percent of the project~~

~~cost to be used toward meeting the requirements of the *North Carolina Energy Conservation Code*. Project cost for the purpose of this section is the total project cost listed on all per- mits related to the work required to convert the unconditioned space to conditioned space and excludes the 10 percent added from this section. Under this section, existing building envelope elements that become a part of the building thermal envelope and are not changed are not required to be upgraded. The additional 10 percent of the project cost shall be appropriated for additional energy conservation features of choice that are addressed in the *North Carolina Energy Con- servation Code*. In addition to the 10 percent project cost, any existing wall, ceiling, or floor cavities that are exposed during construction shall at a minimum be insulated to comply with the *North Carolina Energy Conservation Code* or be insu- lated to fill the cavity, whichever is less. Roof systems requir- ing air space for ventilation shall retain the ventilation space required. Projects costing less than $10,000 are not subject to the 10-percent project cost addition provision.~~

~~C503.3~~ C503.2 Building envelope. New building envelope assemblies that are part of the *alteration* shall comply with Sections C402.1 through C402.5.

Exception: Where the existing building exceeds the fenestration area limitations of Section C402.4.1 prior to alteration, the building is exempt from Section C402.4.1 provided that there is not an increase in fenestration area.

~~**C503.3.1 Roof replacement.** Deleted.~~

~~C503.3.1~~ C503.2.1 Roof replacement. *Roof replacements* shall comply with Section C402.1.3, C402.1.4, C402.1.5 or C407 where the existing roof assembly is part of the *building thermal envelope* and contains insulation entirely above the roof deck. In no case shall the *R-value* of the roof insulation be reduced or the *U-factor* of the roof assembly be increased as part of the *roof replacement.*

C503.3.2 Vertical fenestration. ~~The addition of *vertical fenestration* that results in a total building *fenestration* area less than or equal to that specified in Section C402.4.1 shall comply with Section C402.4. The addition of *vertical fenestration* that results in a total building *fenestration* area greater than Section C402.4.1 shall comply with Section C407.~~

~~C503.3.2~~ C503.2.2 Vertical fenestration. The addition of *vertical fenestration* that results in a total building *fenestration* area less than or equal to that specified in Section C402.4.1 shall comply with Section C402.1.5, C402.4.3 or C407. The addition of *vertical fenestration* that results in a total building *fenestration* area greater than Section C402.4.1 shall comply with Section C402.4.1.1 for the space adjacent to the new fenestration only. *Alterations* that result in a total building *vertical fenestration* area exceeding that specified in Section C402.4.1.1 shall comply with Section C402.1.5 or C407. Provided that the vertical fenestration area is not changed, using the same vertical fenestration area in the *standard reference design* as the building prior to alteration shall be an alternative to using the vertical fenestration area specified in Table C407.4.1(1).

~~C503.1.1~~ ** C503.2.2.1 Application to replacement fenestration products. ~~Where an entire existing fenestration unit is replaced with a new fenestration product, including frame, sash and glazing, the replacement fenestration unit shall meet the applicable requirements for *U*-factor and SHGC in Table C402.4.~~ Where some or all of an existing *fenestration* unit is replaced with a new *fenestration* product, including sash and glazing, the replacement *fenestration* unit shall meet the applicable requirements for *U*-factor and *SHGC* in Table C402.4.

~~Exceptions~~ Exception:

~~1.~~ An area-weighted average of the *U*-factor of replacement fenestration products being installed in the building for each fenestration product category listed in Table C402.4 shall be permitted to satisfy the *U*-factor requirements for each fenestration product category listed in Table C402.4. Individual fenestration products from different product categories listed in Table C402.4 shall not be combined in calculating the area-weighted average *U*-factor.

~~2. Alterations that replace less than 50 percent of entire fenestration units may be replaced with like or better fenestration units to match existing fenestration assemblies.~~

~~C503.3.3~~ C503.2.3 Skylight area. ~~The addition of~~ New *skylight* area that results in a total building *skylight* area less than or equal to that specified in Section C402.4.1 shall comply with Section C402.1.5, C402.4 or C407. The addition of *skylight* area that results in a total building skylight area greater than Section C402.4.1 shall comply with Section ~~C407~~ C402.4.1.2 for the space adjacent to the new skylights. *Alterations* that result in a total building skylight area exceeding that specified in Section ~~C402.4.1~~ C402.4.1.2 shall comply with Section C402.1.5 or C407. Provided that the skylight area is not changed, using the same skylight area in the *standard reference design* as the building prior to alteration shall be an alternative to using the skylight area specified in Table C407.4.1(1).

~~**C503.4**~~ **<u>C503.3</u> Heating and cooling systems.** New heating, cooling and duct systems that are part of the *alteration* shall comply with Sections C403 <u>and C408.</u>

~~**Exception:**~~
~~1. Not required to comply with Section C403.2.12.~~
~~2. Not required to comply with Section C403.3 where alterations to existing floors, walls, or roof assemblies are required.~~

~~**C503.4.1 Economizers.** Deleted. See Section C503.4.~~

<u>**C503.3.1 Economizers.** New cooling systems that are part of *alteration* shall comply with Section C403.5.</u>

~~**C503.5**~~ **<u>C503.4</u> Service hot water systems.** New service hot water systems that are part of the *alteration* shall comply with Sections C404 <u>and C408.</u>

~~**C503.6**~~ **<u>C503.5</u> Lighting systems.** New lighting systems that are part of the *alteration* shall comply with Sections C405 <u>and C408.</u>

Exception: *Alterations* that replace less than ~~50~~ <u>10</u> percent of the luminaires in a space, provided that such *alterations* do not increase the installed interior lighting power.

SECTION C504
REPAIRS

~~**C504.1 General.** *Repair* of the building systems shall not make the building less conforming than it was before the *repair* was undertaken. Work on nondamaged components necessary for the required *repair* of damaged components shall be considered part of the *repair* and shall not be subject to the requirements for *alterations* in this chapter.~~

<u>**C504.1 General.** *Buildings* and structures, and parts thereof, shall be repaired in compliance with Section C501.3 and this section. Work on nondamaged components that is necessary for the required *repair* of damaged components shall be considered to be part of the *repair* and shall not be subject to the requirements for *alterations* in this chapter. Routine maintenance required by Section C501.3, ordinary *repairs* exempt from *permit* and abatement of wear due to normal service conditions shall not be subject to the requirements for *repairs* in this section.</u>

Where a building was constructed to comply with ANSI/ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1, repairs shall comply with the standard and need not comply with Sections C402, C403, C404 and C405.

~~**C504.2 Materials.** Portions of walls that are part of the building thermal envelope shall be insulated in accordance with this code when the *repair* requires the removal of either the interior or exterior wall membrane such that the wall cavity is exposed during the *repair*.~~

~~**Exception:** Wall cavities containing existing insulation material.~~

<u>**C504.2 Application.** For the purposes of this code, the following shall be considered to be repairs:</u>

1. <u>Glass-only replacements in an existing sash and frame.</u>
2. <u>*Roof repairs*.</u>
3. <u>Air barriers shall not be required for *roof repair* where the repairs to the building do not include *alterations*, renovations or *repairs* to the remainder of the building envelope.</u>
4. <u>Replacement of existing doors that separate conditioned space from the exterior shall not require the installation of a vestibule or revolving door, provided that an existing vestibule that separates a conditioned space from the exterior shall not be removed.</u>
5. <u>*Repairs* where only the bulb, the ballast or both within the existing luminaires in a space are replaced, provided that the replacement does not increase the installed interior lighting power.</u>

~~**C504.3 Glazing.** Repairs requiring the replacement of individual glass panes or sashes shall not require compliance with this code.~~

SECTION C505
CHANGE OF OCCUPANCY OR USE

~~**C505.1 General.** New work performed in spaces undergoing a change in occupancy shall comply with the requirements of this code. Unaltered portions of the existing building or building supply system shall not be required to comply with this code.~~

C505.1 General. Spaces undergoing a change in occupancy that would result in an increase in demand for either fossil fuel or electrical energy shall comply with this code. Where the use in a space changes from one use in Table C405.3.2(1) or C405.3.2(2) to another use in Table C405.3.2(1) or C405.3.2(2), the installed lighting wattage shall comply with Section C405.3. Where the space undergoing a change in occupancy or use is in a building with a fenestration area that exceeds the limitations of Section C402.4.1, the space is exempt from Section C402.4.1 provided that there is not an increase in fenestration area.

Exceptions:

1. Where the component performance alternative in Section C402.1.5 is used to comply with this section, the proposed UA shall not be greater than 110 percent of the target UA.
2. Where the total building performance option in Section C407 is used to comply with this section, the annual energy cost of the proposed design shall not be greater than 110 percent of the annual energy cost otherwise permitted by Section ~~C407.3~~. C407.2.

CHAPTER 6 [CE]
REFERENCED STANDARDS

AAMA

American Architectural Manufacturers Association
1827 Walden Office Square
Suite 550
Schaumburg, IL 60173-4268

AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A ~~C440-11~~ C440—17

North American Fenestration Standard/Specifications for Windows, Doors and Unit Skylights
Table C402.5.5

AHAM

Association of Home Appliance Manufacturers
1111 19th Street NW, Suite 402
Washington, DC 20036

~~ANSI/AHAM RAC-1—2008~~
ANSI/AHAM RAC-1—2015

Room Air Conditioners
Table C403.3.2(4)

AHRI

Air-Conditioning, Heating, & Refrigeration Institute
2111 Wilson Blvd, Suite 500
Arlington, VA22201

~~210/240—08 with Addenda 1 and 2~~

210/240—2017 and 2023

Performance Rating of Unitary Air-conditioning and Air-source Heat Pump Equipment
Table C403.3.2(1), Table C403.3.2(2)

~~310/380—04 (CSA-C744-04)~~

310/380—2017 (CSA-C744-17)

Packaged Terminal Air Conditioners and Heat Pumps
~~Table C403.3.2(4)~~

~~340/360—2007~~

340/360—2019

Performance Rating of Commercial and Industrial Unitary Air-conditioning and Heat Pump Equipment
Table C403.3.2(1), Table C403.3.2(2)

365(I-P)—2009

Commercial and Industrial Unitary Air-conditioning Condensing Units
~~Table C403.3.2(1)~~

~~390—03~~

390 (I-P)—2003

Performance Rating of Single Package Vertical Air-conditioners and Heat Pumps

Table C403.3.2(3)

400 (I-P)—2015

Performance Rating of Liquid to Liquid Heat Exchangers

C403.3.2

440—2008

Performance Rating of Room Fan Coils—with Addendum 1

C403.12.3

460—2005

Performance Rating of Remote Mechanical-draft Air-cooled Refrigerant Condensers

Table C403.3.2(7)

~~**550/590—2011 with Addendum 1**~~

550/590 (I-P)—2018

Performance Rating of Water-chilling and Heat Pump Water-heating Packages Using the Vapor Compression Cycle

Table C403.3.2(3), Table C403.3.2(15)

~~**560—00**~~

560—2018

Absorption Water Chilling and Water Heating Packages

Table C403.3.2(3)

~~**1160(I-P)—09**~~

910—2014

Performance Rating of Indoor Pool Dehumidifiers

Table C404.2

AHRI—continued

920—2015

Performance Rating of DX-Dedicated Outdoor Air System Units

Table C403.3.2(12) , Table C403.3.2(13)

1160 (I-P) —2014

Performance Rating of Heat Pump Pool Heaters (with Addendum 1)

Table C404.2

1200 (I-P)—2013

Performance Rating of Commercial Refrigerated Display Merchandisers and Storage Cabinets

Table C403.11.1

1230—2014

Performance Rating of Variable Refrigerant Flow (VRF) Multi-split Air-Conditioning and Heat Pump Equipment (with Addendum 1)

Table C403.3.2(9)

1250 (I-P)—2014

Standard for Performance Rating in Walk-in Coolers and Freezers

Table C403.11.2.1(3)

1360—2017

<u>Performance Rating of Computer and Data Processing Room Air Conditioners</u>
<u>Table C403.3.2(10) , Table C403.3.2(16)</u>

~~ISO/AHRI/ASHRAE 13256-1 (2011)~~

<u>ISO/AHRI/ASHRAE 13256-1 (2012)</u>

Water-to-Air and Brine-to-Air Heat Pumps—Testing and Rating for Performance
Table C403.3.2(2)

AMCA

Air Movement and Control Association International
30 West University Drive
<u>Arlington Heights, IL 60004-1806</u>

<u>208—18</u>

<u>Calculation of the Fan Energy Index</u>
<u>C403.8.3</u>

~~220—08 (R2012)~~

<u>220—19</u>

Laboratory Methods of Testing Air Curtain Units for Aerodynamic Performance Rating
<u>C402.5.9</u>

<u>230—15</u>

<u>Laboratory Methods of Testing Air Circulating Fans for Rating and Certification</u>
<u>C403.9</u>

<u>500D—18</u>

Laboratory Methods for Testing Dampers for Rating
C403.7.7

ANSI

American National Standards Institute
25 West 43rd Street, 4th Floor
New York, NY 10036

~~Z21.10.3/CSA 4.3—11~~

<u>Z21.10.3/CSA 4.3—17</u>

Gas Water Heaters, Volume III—Storage Water Heaters with Input Ratings Above 75,000 Btu per Hour, Circulating Tank and Instantaneous
Table C404.2

~~Z21.47/CSA 2.3—12~~

<u>Z21.47/CSA 2.3—16</u>

Gas-fired Central Furnaces
Table C403.3.2(4)

~~Z83.8/CSA 2.6—09~~

<u>Z83.8/CSA 2.6—16</u>

Gas Unit Heaters, Gas Packaged Heaters, Gas Utility Heaters and Gas-fired Duct Furnaces
Table C403.3.2(4)

APSP

Pool & Hot Tub Alliance (formerly the Association of Pool and Spa Professionals
2111 Eisenhower Avenue, Suite 580
Alexandria, VA 22314

14—2019

American National Standard for Portable Electric Spa Energy Efficiency
C404.7

ASABE

American Society of Agricultural and Biological Engineers
2950 Niles Road
St. Joseph, MI 49085

S640—2017

Quantities and Units of Electromagnetic Radiation for Plants (Photosynthetic Organisms)
C405.4

ASHRAE

ASHRAE
180 Technology Parkway NW
Peachtree Corners, GA 30092

~~**55—2017**~~

~~**Thermal Environmental Conditions for Human Occupancy**~~
~~Table C407.4.1(1)~~

~~**90.1—2013**~~

90.1—2019

Energy Standard for Buildings Except Low-rise Residential Buildings
C402.1.4, C406.2

90.4—2016

Energy Standard for Data Centers
C403.1.2 , C405.2.4

~~**ASHRAE**~~
~~**127-2007 Method of Testing for Rating Computer. . . . . Table C403.2.3(9)**~~

140—2014

Standard Method of Test for the Evaluation of Building Energy Analysis Computer Programs
C407.5.1

146—2011

Testing for Rating Pool Heaters
Table C404.2

~~**ANSI/ASHRAE/ACCA Standard 183—(RA2007)**~~

ANSI/ASHRAE/ACCA Standard 183—(RA2017)

Peak Cooling and Heating Load Calculations in Buildings, Except Low-rise Residential Buildings

C403.1.1

ASHRAE—2020

HVAC Systems and Equipment Handbook—2020
C403.1.1

ISO/AHRI/ASHRAE 13256-1 (2012)

Water-to-Air and Brine-to-Air Heat Pumps—Testing and Rating for Performance
Table C403.3.2(14)

ISO/AHRI/ASHRAE 13256-2 (2012)

Water-to-Water and Brine-to-Water Heat Pumps—Testing and Rating for Performance
Table C403.3.2(14)

ASME

American Society of Mechanical Engineers
Two Park Avenue
New York, NY 10016-5990

~~**ASME A17.1—CSA B44—2013**~~

ASME A17.1—2019/CSA B44—19

Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators
C405.9.2

ASTM

ASTM International
100 Barr Harbor Drive, P.O. Box C700
West Conshohocken, PA 19428-2959

C90—2016A

Specification for Load-bearing Concrete Masonry Units
Table C402.1.3

C1363—11

Standard Test Method for Thermal Performance of Building Materials and Envelope Assemblies by Means of a Hot Box Apparatus
C303.1.4.1, Table C402.1.4, 402.2.7

C1371—15

Standard Test Method for Determination of Emittance of Materials Near Room Temperature Using Portable Emissometers
Table C402.3

~~**C1549—09**~~

C1549—2016

Standard Test Method for Determination of Solar Reflectance Near Ambient Temperature Using a Portable Solar Reflectometer
Table C402.3

D1003—13

Standard Test Method for Haze and Luminous Transmittance of Transparent Plastics
C402.4.2.2

D8052/D8052M—2017

Standard Test Method for Quantification of Air Leakage in Low-Sloped Membrane Roof Assemblies
C402.5.2.1.2

~~**E283—2004**~~

E283—2004(2012)

Test Method for Determining the Rate of Air Leakage Through Exterior Windows, Curtain Walls and Doors Under Specified Pressure Differences Across the Specimen
C402.5.2.1.2, Table C402.5.5, C402.5.11

E408—13

Test Methods for Total Normal Emittance of Surfaces Using Inspection-meter Techniques
Table C402.3

ASTM—continued

~~**E779—10**~~

E779—10(2018)

Standard Test Method for Determining Air Leakage Rate by Fan Pressurization
C402.5.3, C402.5.4, C406.9

~~**E903—96**~~

E903—2012

Standard Test Method Solar Absorptance, Reflectance and Transmittance of Materials Using Integrating Spheres (Withdrawn 2005)
Table C402.3

E1677—11

Specification for Air Barrier (AB) Material or Systems for Low-rise Framed Building Walls
C402.5.2.1.2

E1827—2011(2017)

Standard Test Methods for Determining Airtightness of Building Using an Orifice Blower Door
C402.5.3, C402.5.4, C406.9

~~**E1918—06**~~

E1918—06(2016)

Standard Test Method for Measuring Solar Reflectance of Horizontal or Low-sloped Surfaces in the Field
Table C402.3

E1980—11

Standard Practice for Calculating Solar Reflectance Index of Horizontal and Low-sloped Opaque Surfaces
Table C402.3

E2178—13

Standard Test Method for Air Permanence of Building Materials
C402.5.2.1.1

~~**E2357—2011**~~

E2357—2018

Standard Test Method for Determining Air Leakage of Air Barriers Assemblies
C402.5.2.1.2

F1281—2017

Specification for Cross-linked Polyethylene/Aluminum/Cross-linked Polyethylene (PEX-AL_PEX) Pressure Pipe
Table C404.5.2.1

F1361—2017

Standard Test Method for Performance of Open Deep Fat Fryers
Table C406.12(1)

F1484—2018

Standard Test Method for Performance of Steam Cookers
Table C406.12(2)

F1495—2014a

Standard Specification for Combination Oven Electric or Gas Fired
Table C406.12(4)

F1496—2013

Standard Test Method for Performance of Convection Ovens
Table C406.12(4)

F1696—2018

Standard Test Method for Energy Performance of Stationary-Rack, Door-Type Commercial Dishwashing Machines
Table C406.12(3)

F1920—2015

Standard Test Method for Performance of Rack Conveyor Commercial Dishwashing Machines
Table C406.12(3)

F2093—2018

Standard Test Method for Performance of Rack Ovens
Table C406.12(4)

F2144—2017

Standard Test Method for Performance of Large Open Vat Fryers
Table C406.12(1)

F2861—2017

Standard Test Method for Enhanced Performance of Combination Oven in Various Modes
Table C406.12(4)

CRRC

Cool Roof Rating Council
2435 North Lombard Street
Portland, OR 97217

~~**ANSI/CRRC-S100—2012**~~

ANSI/CRRC-S100—2020
Standard Test Methods for Determining Radiative Properties of Materials
Table C402.3, C402.3.1

CSA

CSA Group
8501 East Pleasant Valley Road
Cleveland, OH 44131-5516

~~**AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440—11**~~

AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440—17

North American Fenestration Standard/Specification for Windows, Doors and Unit Skylights

Table C402.5.5

CSA B55.1—2015

Test Method for Measuring Efficiency and Pressure Loss of Drain Water Heat Recovery Units

C404.7

CSA B55.2—2015

Drain Water Heat Recovery Units

C404.7

CTI

Cooling Technology Institute
P. O. Box 681807
Houston, TX 77268

~~**ATC 105—00**~~

ATC 105—2019

Acceptance Test Code for Water Cooling Tower

Table C403.3.2(7)

ATC 105DS—2018

Acceptance Test Code for Dry Fluid Coolers

Table C403.3.2(7)

ATC 105S—11

Acceptance Test Code for Closed Circuit Cooling Towers

Table C403.3.2(7), Table C403.3.2(8)

ATC 106—11

Acceptance Test for Mechanical Draft Evaporative Vapor Condensers

Table C403.3.2(7), Table C403.3.2(8)

CTI STD 201 RS(17)

Performance Rating of Evaporative Heat Rejection Equipment

Table C403.3.2(7), Table C403.3.2(8)

DASMA

Door & Access Systems Manufacturers Association, International
1300 Sumner Avenue
Cleveland, OH 44115-2851

~~**105—92(R2004)-13**~~

105—2017

Test Method for Thermal Transmittance and Air Infiltration of Garage Doors and Rolling Doors

C303.1.3, Table C402.5.5

DOE

US Department of Energy
c/o Superintendent of Documents
1000 Independence Avenue SW
Washington, DC 20585

~~**10 CFR, Part 430—1998**~~

10 CFR, Part 430—2015

Energy Conservation Program for Consumer Products: Test Procedures and Certification and Enforcement Requirement for Plumbing Products; and Certification and Enforcement Requirements for Residential Appliances; Final Rule

Table C403.3.2(1), Table C403.3.2(2), Table C403.3.2(5), Table C403.3.2(6), Table C403.3.2(14), Table C404.2

~~**10 CFR, Part 431—2004**~~

10 CFR, Part 431—2015

Energy Efficiency Program for Certain Commercial and Industrial Equipment: Test Procedures and Efficiency Standards; Final Rules

Table C403.3.2(6), C403.8.4, C403.11, C403.11.1, Table C403.11.1, C403.11.2, C405.7, Table C405.7, C405.8, Table C405.8(1), Table C405.8(2), Table C405.8(3), Table C405.8(4)

ICC

International Code Council, Inc.
500 New Jersey Avenue NW 6th Floor
Washington, DC 20001

~~**IBC—15**~~

IBC—21

International Building Code®

C201.3, C303.2, C402.5.6, C501.2

ICC 500—2020

Standard for the Design and Construction of Storm Shelters

C402.4.2

~~**IFC—15**~~

IFC—21

International Fire Code®

C201.3, C501.2

~~**IFGC—15**~~

IFGC—21

International Fuel Gas Code®

C201.3, C501.2

~~**IMC—15**~~

IMC—21

International Mechanical Code®

C403.2.2, C403.6, C403.6.6, C403.7.1, C403.7.2, C403.7.4.2, C403.7.5, C403.7.7, C403.12.1, C403.12.2.1, C403.12.2.2, C406.6, C501.2

~~**IPC—15**~~

IPC—21

International Plumbing Code®
C201.3, C501.2

~~**IPMC—15**~~

IPMC—21

International Property Maintenance Code®
C501.2

~~**IPSDC—15**~~

IPSDC—21

International Private Sewage Disposal Code®
C501.2

IEEE

Institute of Electrical and Electronic Engineers
3 Park Avenue, 17th Floor
New York, NY 10016

IEEE 515.1—2012

IEE Standard for the Testing, Design, Installation, and Maintenance of Electrical Resistance Trace Heating for Commercial Applications
C404.6.2

IES

Illuminating Engineering Society
120 Wall Street, 17th Floor
New York, NY 10005-4001

~~**ANSI/ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1—2013**~~

ANSI/ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1—2019

Energy Standard for Buildings, Except Low-rise Residential Buildings
C401.2, Table C402.1.3, Table C402.1.4, C406.2, C502.1, C503.1, C504.1

ISO

International Organization for Standardization
Chemin de Blandonnet 8, CP 401, 1214 Vernier
Geneva, Switzerland

~~**ISO/AHRI/ASHRAE 13256-1(2011)**~~

ISO/AHRI/ASHRAE 13256-1(2017)

Water-to-Air and Brine-to-Air Heat Pumps—Testing and Rating for Performance
Table C403.3.2(14)

~~**ISO/AHRI/ASHRAE 13256-2(2011)**~~

ISO/AHRI/ASHRAE 13256-2(2017)

Water-to-Water and Brine-to-Water Heat Pumps—Testing and Rating for Performance

Table C403.3.2(14)

NEMA

National Electrical Manufacturers Association
1300 North 17th Street, Suite 900
Rosslyn, VA 22209

~~**MG1—1993**~~

MG1—2016

Motors and Generators
C202

NFPA

National Fire Protection Association
1 Batterymarch Park
Quincy, MA 02169-7471

~~**70—14**~~

70—20

National Electrical Code C501.2

NFRC

National Fenestration Rating Council, Inc.
6305 Ivy Lane, Suite 140
Greenbelt, MD 20770

~~**100—2009**~~

100—2020

Procedure for Determining Fenestration Products *U*-factors
C303.1.3, Table 402.1.4, C402.2.1.5, C402.4.1.1

~~**200—2009**~~

200—2020

Procedure for Determining Fenestration Product Solar Heat Gain Coefficients and Visible Transmittance at Normal Incidence
C303.1.3, C402.4.1.1

203—2017

Procedure for Determining Translucent Fenestration Product Visible Transmittance at Normal Incidence
C303.1.3

~~**400—2012**~~

400—2020

Procedure for Determining Fenestration Product Air Leakage
Table C402.5.5

SMACNA

Sheet Metal and Air Conditioning Contractors' National Association, Inc.
4021 Lafayette Center Drive
Chantilly, VA 20151-1219

SMACNA—2012

HVAC Air Duct Leakage Test Manual Second Edition
C403.2.8.1.3

UL

UL LLC
333 Pfingsten Road
Northbrook, IL 60062-2096

<u>710—12</u>

<u>Exhaust Hoods for Commercial Cooking Equipment—with Revisions through November 2013</u>
<u>C403.7.5</u>

~~727—06~~

<u>727—18</u>

Oil-fired Central Furnaces
Table C403.3.2(4), Table C403.3.2(5)

~~731—95~~

<u>731—18</u>

Oil-fired Unit Heaters
Table C403.3.2(5)

<u>1784—15</u>

<u>Air Leakage Tests of Door Assemblies—with Revisions through February 2015</u>
<u>C402.5.6, C402.5.7</u>

US-FTC

United States-Federal Trade Commission
600 Pennsylvania Avenue NW
Washington, DC 20580

~~CFR Title 16 (2005)~~

<u>CFR Title 16 (2015)</u>

***R*-value Rule**
C303.1.4

WDMA

Window and Door Manufacturers Association
2025 M Street NW, Suite 800
Washington, DC 20036-3309

~~AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440—11~~

<u>AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440—17</u>

North American Fenestration Standard/Specification for Windows, Doors and Unit Skylights
Table C402.5.5

~~APPENDIX C1~~

~~STATEMENT OF SYSTEM COMMISSIONING~~

~~**Part 1: Mechanical**~~

~~Project Name:~~ ______________________________

~~Project Location:~~ ______________________________

~~In my professional opinion, the HVAC systems have been installed in substantial compliance with the intent of the approved project plans and specifications based on a site observation performed and upon~~ ~~**review of the following:**~~

YES	NO	NOT REQUIRED	ITEMS	COMMENTS
			Testing and Balance Reports	
			Operations and Maintenance Manuals for HVAC	
			HVAC Equipment	
			HVAC Controls and Operational Sequences	

~~Notes:~~ ______________________________

~~List of Deferred Tests:~~

~~Name:~~ ______________________________

~~Signature:~~ ______________________________

~~Date:~~ ______________________________

~~**Seal Above:**~~

~~**Part 2: Service Water Heating**~~

~~Project Name:~~ ______________________________

~~Project Location:~~ ______________________________

~~In my professional opinion, the service water heating systems have been installed and are in substantial compliance with the intent of the approved project plans and specifications based on a site observation performed and upon review of the following:~~

YES	NO	NOT REQUIRED	ITEMS	COMMENTS
			Manuals for Service Water Heating	
			Service Water Heating Systems	

~~Notes:~~ ______________________________

~~List of Deferred Tests:~~

____

~~Name:~~ ______________________________

~~Signature:~~ ______________________________

~~Date:~~ ______________________________

~~**Seal Above:**~~

~~**Part 3: Electrical**~~

~~Project Name:~~ ______________________________

~~Project Location:~~ ______________________________

~~In my professional opinion, the lighting systems have been installed and are in substantial compliance with~~

~~the intent of the approved project plans and specifications based on a site observation performed and upon~~

~~**review of the following:**~~

YES	NO	NOT REQUIRED	ITEMS	COMMENTS
			Manuals for Lighting Systems	
			Lighting Equipment	
			Lighting Controls and Operational Sequences	

~~Notes:~~ ______________________________

~~List of Deferred Tests:~~

____

~~Name:~~ ______________________________

~~Signature:~~ ______________________________

~~Date:~~ ______________________________

~~**Seal Above:**~~

<u>APPENDIX CA</u>
<u>BOARD OF APPEALS—COMMERCIAL</u>

~~*The provisions contained in this appendix are not mandatory.*~~

SECTION CA101
GENERAL

<u>Deleted. See the North Carolina Administrative Code and Policies.</u>

APPENDIX CB
SOLAR-READY ZONE—COMMERCIAL

The provisions contained in this appendix are not mandatory.

SECTION CB101
SCOPE

CB101.1 General. ~~These provisions shall be applicable for new construction where solar-ready provisions are required.~~The measures for creating a solar-ready zone in this appendix are strictly voluntary at the option of the permit holder.

SECTION CB102
GENERAL DEFINITION

SOLAR-READY ZONE. A section or sections of the roof or building overhang designated and reserved for the future installation of a solar photovoltaic or solar thermal system.

SECTION CB103
SOLAR-READY ZONE

CB103.1 General. A solar-ready zone shall be located on the roof of buildings that are five stories or less in height above grade plane, and are oriented between 110 degrees and 270 degrees of true north or have low-slope roofs. Solar-ready zones shall comply with Sections CB103.2 through CB103.9.

Exceptions:

1. A building with a permanently installed, on-site renewable energy system.
2. A building with a solar-ready zone that is shaded for more than 70 percent of daylight hours annually.
3. A building where the licensed design professional certifies that the incident solar radiation available to the building is not suitable for a solar-ready zone.
4. A building where the licensed design professional certifies that the solar zone area required by Section CB103.3 cannot be met because of extensive rooftop equipment, skylights, vegetative roof areas or other obstructions.

CB103.2 Construction document requirements for a solar-ready zone. Construction documents shall indicate the solar-ready zone.

CB103.3 Solar-ready zone area. The total solar-ready zone area shall be not less than 40 percent of the roof area calculated as the horizontally projected gross roof area less the area covered by skylights, occupied roof decks, vegetative roof areas and mandatory *access* or set back areas as required by the *International Fire Code*. The solar-ready zone shall be a single area or smaller, separated sub-zone areas. Each sub-zone shall be not less than 5 feet (1524 mm) in width in the narrowest dimension.

CB103.4 Obstructions. Solar ready zones shall be free from obstructions, including pipes, vents, ducts, HVAC equipment, skylights and roof-mounted equipment.

CB103.5 Roof loads and documentation. A collateral dead load of not less than 5 pounds per square foot (5 psf) (24.41 kg/m^2) shall be included in the gravity and lateral design calculations for the solar-ready zone. The structural design loads for roof dead load and roof live load shall be indicated on the construction documents.

CB103.6 Interconnection pathway. Construction documents shall indicate pathways for routing of conduit or piping from the solar-ready zone to the electrical service panel and electrical energy storage system area or service hot water system.

CB103.7 Electrical energy storage system-ready area. The floor area of the electrical energy storage system-ready area shall be not less than 2 feet (610 mm) in one dimension and 4 feet (1219 mm) in another dimension, and located in accordance with Section 1207 of the *International Fire Code*. The location and layout diagram of the electrical energy storage system-ready area shall be indicated on the construction documents.

CB103.8 Electrical service reserved space. The main electrical service panel shall have a reserved space to allow installation of a dual-pole circuit breaker for future solar electric and a dual-pole circuit breaker for future electrical energy storage system installation. These spaces shall be labeled “For Future Solar Electric and Storage.” The reserved spaces shall be positioned at the end of the panel that is opposite from the panel supply conductor connection.

CB103.9 Construction documentation certificate. A permanent certificate, indicating the solar-ready zone and other requirements of this section, shall be posted near the electrical distribution panel, water heater or other conspicuous location by the builder or registered design professional.

APPENDIX CC

ZERO ENERGY COMMERCIAL BUILDING PROVISIONS

The provisions contained in this appendix are not mandatory.

SECTION CC101 GENERAL

CC101.1 Purpose. ~~The purpose of this appendix is to supplement the *International Energy Conservation Code* and require renewable energy systems of adequate capacity to achieve net zero carbon.~~The zero energy *commercial building* provisions in this appendix are strictly voluntary at the option of the permit holder.

CC101.2 Scope. This appendix applies to new buildings that are addressed by the *International Energy Conservation Code*.

Exceptions:

1. Detached one- and two-family dwellings and townhouses as well as Group R-2 buildings three stories or less in height above grade plane, manufactured homes (mobile dwellings), and manufactured houses (modular dwellings).

2. Buildings that use neither electricity nor fossil fuel.

SECTION CC102 DEFINITIONS

CC102.1 Definitions. The definitions contained in this section supplement or modify the definitions in the *International Energy Conservation Code*.

ADJUSTED OFF-SITE RENEWABLE ENERGY. The amount of energy production from off-site renewable energy systems that may be used to offset building energy.

BUILDING ENERGY. All energy consumed at the *building site* as measured at the site boundary. Contributions from on-site or off-site renewable energy systems shall not be considered when determining the building energy.

ENERGY UTILIZATION INTENSITY (EUI). The site energy for either the baseline building or the proposed building divided by the gross conditioned floor area plus any semiheated floor area of the building. For the baseline building, the EUI can be divided between regulated energy use and unregulated energy use.

OFF-SITE RENEWABLE ENERGY SYSTEM. Renewable energy system not located on the building project.

ON-SITE RENEWABLE ENERGY SYSTEM. Renewable energy systems on the building project.

RENEWABLE ENERGY SYSTEM. Photovoltaic, solar thermal, geothermal energy and wind systems used to generate energy.

SEMIHEATED SPACE. An enclosed space within a building that is heated by a heating system whose output capacity is greater than or equal to 3.4 Btu/h × ft^2 of floor area but is not a conditioned space.

ZERO ENERGY PERFORMANCE INDEX (ZEPI PB/EE). The ratio of the proposed building EUI without renewables to the baseline building EUI, expressed as a percentage.

SECTION CC103 MINIMUM RENEWABLE ENERGY

CC103.1 Renewable energy. On-site renewable energy systems shall be installed, or off-site renewable energy shall be procured to offset the building energy as calculated in Equation CC-1.

$$RE_{onsite} + RE_{offsite} \geq E_{building} \qquad \textit{(Equation CC-1)}$$

where:

RE_{onsite} = Annual site energy production from on-site renewable energy systems (see Section CC103.2).

$RE_{offsite}$ = Adjusted annual site energy production from off-site renewable energy systems that may be credited against building energy use (see Section CC103.3).

$E_{building}$ = Building energy use without consideration of renewable energy systems.

When Section C401.2.1(1) is used for compliance with the *International Energy Conservation Code*, building energy shall be determined by multiplying the gross *conditioned floor area* plus the gross semiheated floor area of the proposed building by an EUI selected from Table CC103.1. Use a weighted average for mixed-use buildings.

When Section C401.2.1, Item 2 or Section C401.2.2 is used for compliance with the *International Energy Conservation Code*, building energy shall be determined from energy simulations.

TABLE CC103.1

ENERGY UTILIZATION INTENSITY FOR BUILDING TYPES AND CLIMATES (kBtu/ft² – yr)

BUILDING AREA TYPE	CLIMATE ZONE																
	0A/1A	0B/1B	2A	2B	3A	3B	3C	4A	4B	4C	5A	5B	5C	6A	6B	7	8
	kBtu/ft² – yr																
Healthcare/hospital (I-2)	119	120	119	113	116	109	106	116	109	106	118	110	105	126	116	131	142
Hotel/motel (R-1)	73	76	73	68	70	67	65	69	66	65	71	68	65	77	72	81	89
Multiple-family (R-2)	43	45	41	41	43	42	36	45	43	41	47	46	41	53	48	53	59
Office (B)	31	32	30	29	29	28	25	28	27	25	29	28	25	33	30	32	36
Restaurant (A-2)	389	426	411	408	444	420	395	483	437	457	531	484	484	589	538	644	750
Retail (M)	46	50	45	46	44	44	37	48	44	44	52	50	46	60	52	64	77
School (E)	42	46	42	40	40	39	36	39	40	40	39	43	37	44	40	45	54
Warehouse (S)	9	12	9	11	12	11	10	17	13	14	23	17	15	32	23	32	32
All others	55	58	54	53	53	51	48	54	52	51	57	54	50	63	57	65	73

CC103.2 Calculation of on-site renewable energy. The annual energy production from on-site renewable energy systems shall be determined using the PVWatts software or other software approved by the code official.

CC103.3 Off-site renewable energy. Off-site energy shall comply with Sections CC103.3.1 and CC103.3.2.

CC103.3.1 Qualifying off-site procurement methods. The following are considered qualifying off-site renewable energy procurement methods:

1. Community renewables: an off-site renewable energy system for which the owner has purchased or leased renewable energy capacity along with other subscribers.

2. Renewable energy investment fund: an entity that installs renewable energy capacity on behalf of the owner.

3. Virtual power purchase agreement: a power purchase agreement for off-site renewable energy where the owner agrees to purchase renewable energy output at a fixed price schedule.

4. Direct ownership: an off-site renewable energy system owned by the building project owner.

5. Direct access to wholesale market: an agreement between the owner and a renewable energy developer to purchase renewable energy.

6. Green retail tariffs: a program by the retail electricity provider to provide 100-percent renewable energy to the owner.

7. Unbundled Renewable Energy Certificates (RECs): certificates purchased by the owner representing the environmental benefits of renewable energy generation that are sold separately from the electric power.

CC103.3.2 Requirements for all procurement methods. The following requirements shall apply to all *off-site renewable* energy procurement methods:

1. *The building owner shall sign a legally binding contract to procure qualifying off-site renewable energy.*

2. *The procurement contract shall have duration of not less than 15 years and shall be structured to survive a partial or full transfer of ownership of the property.*

3. *RECs and other environmental attributes associated with the procured* off-site renewable energy *shall be assigned to the building project for the duration of the contract.*

4. *The renewable energy generating source shall include one or more of the following: photovoltaic systems, solar thermal power plants, geothermal power plants and wind turbines.*

5. *The generation source shall be located where the energy can be delivered to the building site by the same utility or distribution entity, the same independent system operator (ISO) or regional transmission organization (RTO), or within integrated ISOs (electric coordination council).*

6. *The* off-site renewable energy *producer shall maintain transparent accounting that clearly assigns production to the building. Records on power sent to or purchased by the building shall be retained by the building owner and made available for inspection by the code official upon request.*

CC103.3.3 Adjusted off-site renewable energy. The process for calculating the adjusted *off-site renewable energy* is shown in Equation CC-2.

-

(Equation CC-2)

where:

$RE_{offsite}$ = Adjusted off-site renewable energy.

PF_i =Procurement factor for the i^{th} renewable energy procurement method or class taken from Table CC103.3.3.

RE_i =Annual energy production for the i^{th} renewable energy procurement method or class.

n = The number of renewable energy procurement options or classes considered.

TABLE CC103.3.3

DEFAULT OFF-SITE RENEWABLE ENERGY PROCUREMENT METHODS, CLASSES AND COEFFICIENTS

CLASS	PROCUREMENT FACTOR (PF)	PROCUREMENT OPTIONS	ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS (see also Section CC103.3.2)
1	0.75	Community solar	—
		REIFs	Entity must be managed to prevent fraud or misuse of funds.
		Virtual PPA	—
		Self-owned off-site	Provisions shall prevent the generation from being sold separately from the building.
2	0.55	Green retail tariffs	The offering shall not include the purchase of unbundled RECs.
		Direct access	The offering shall not include the purchase of unbundled RECs.
3	0.20	Unbundled RECs	The vintage of the RECs shall align with building energy use.

CHAPTER 1 [RE]
SCOPE AND ADMINISTRATION

PART 1—SCOPE AND APPLICATION

SECTION R101
SCOPE AND GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

R101.1 Title. This code shall be known as the North Carolina Energy Conservation Code as adopted by the North Carolina Building Code Council on December 14th 2023 to be effective January 1, 2025. References to the International Codes shall mean the North Carolina Codes. The NCECC is referred to herein as "the code".

R101.2 Scope. This code applies to *residential buildings, building* sites and associated systems and equipment.

> ~~**Exception:**~~
> ~~1. In accordance with N.C.G.S. 143-138 (b19), no energy conservation code provisions shall apply to detached and attached garages located on the same lot as a dwelling.~~

R101.3 Intent. This code shall regulate the design and construction of *buildings* for the effective use and conservation of energy over the useful life of each building. This code is intended to provide flexibility to permit the use of innovative approaches and techniques to achieve this objective. This code is not intended to abridge safety, health or environmental requirements contained in other applicable codes or ordinances.

R101.4 Applicability. Where, in any specific case, different sections of this code specify different materials, methods of construction or other requirements, the most restrictive shall govern. Where there is a conflict between a general requirement and a specific requirement, the specific requirement shall govern.

R101.4.1 ~~**Mixed occupancy.**~~ **Mixed residential and commercial buildings.** ~~Where a building includes both *residential* and *commercial* occupancies, each occupancy shall be separately~~ Where a *building* includes both *residential building* and *commercial building* portions, each portion shall be separately considered and meet the applicable provisions of the IECC—Commercial Provisions or IECC—Residential Provisions.

R101.5 Compliance. *Residential buildings* shall meet the provisions of IECC—Residential Provisions. *Commercial buildings* shall meet the provisions of IECC—Commercial Provisions.

R101.5.1 Compliance materials. The *code official* shall be permitted to approve specific computer software, worksheets, compliance manuals and other similar materials that meet the intent of this code.

~~**R101.5.2 Requirements of other State Agencies, occupational licensing boards, or commissions.** The North Carolina State Building Codes do not include all additional requirements for buildings and structures that may be imposed by other State agencies, occupational licensing boards, and commissions. It shall be the responsibility of a permit holder, design professional, contractor, or occupational license holder to determine whether any additional requirements exist.~~

101.6 Requirements of other State agencies, occupational licensing board or commissions. -see the NC Administrative Code and Policies

SECTION R102
ALTERNATIVE MATERIALS, DESIGN AND METHODS OF CONSTRUCTION AND EQUIPMENT

~~**R102.1 General.** Deleted. See the *North Carolina Administrative Code and Policies*.~~

R102.1 General. The provisions of this code are not intended to prevent the installation of any material or to prohibit any design or method of construction not specifically prescribed by this code, provided that any such alternative has been approved. The *code official* shall have the authority to approve an alternative material, design or method of construction upon the written application of the owner or the owner's authorized agent. The code official shall first find that the proposed design ~~is satisfactory and~~ satisfactorily complies with the intent of the provisions of this code, and that the material, method or work offered is, for the purpose intended, not less than the equivalent of that prescribed in this code for strength, effectiveness, fire resistance, durability, energy conservation and safety. The *code official* shall respond to the applicant, in writing, stating the reasons why the alternative was *approved* or was not *approved*. See the procedural requirements of Section 105 of the North Carolina Administrative Code and Policies for guidance.

~~**R102.1.1 Above code programs.** Deleted.~~

R102.1.1 Above code programs. The *code official* or other authority having jurisdiction shall be permitted to deem a national, state or local energy-efficiency program to exceed the energy efficiency required by this code. *Buildings* ~~*approved*~~ in ~~writing~~ compliance ~~by~~with ~~such~~ an *approved* energy-efficiency program and verified with *approved* documentation in writing shall be considered to be in compliance with this code where such buildings also meet the requirements identified in Table R405.2 and the *building thermal envelope* is greater than or equal to levels of efficiency and solar heat gain coefficients (SHGC) in Tables 402.1.1 and 402.1.3 of the 2009 *International Energy Conservation Code*.

PART 2—ADMINISTRATION AND ENFORCEMENT

See the North Carolina Administrative Code and Policies for the administration and enforcement of the North Carolina State Building Codes as adopted by the Building Code Council and enforced by State and local code enforcement officials.

SECTION R103
CONSTRUCTION DOCUMENTS

R103.1 General. Construction documents, technical reports and other supporting data shall be submitted in one or more sets, or in a digital format where allowed by the *code official*, with each application for a permit. The construction documents and technical reports shall be prepared by a registered design professional where required by the statutes of the jurisdiction in which the project is to be constructed. ~~Where special conditions exist, the *code official* is authorized to require necessary construction documents to be prepared by a registered design professional.~~

Exceptions:

1. The *code official* is authorized to waive the requirements for construction documents or other supporting data if the *code official* determines they are not necessary to confirm compliance with this code.

~~2. Construction documents for energy code compliance are not required for one- and two-family dwellings and townhouses.~~

2. Refer to NCGS 160D-1110 (b) for statutory limitations on requirements for one-and-two family dwellings and townhouses plans.

R103.2 Information on construction documents. Construction documents shall be drawn to ~~scale on suitable material.~~scale. Electronic media documents are permitted to be submitted where *approved* by the *code official*. Construction documents shall be of sufficient clarity to indicate the location, nature and extent of the work proposed, and show in sufficient detail pertinent data and features of the *building*, systems and equipment as herein governed. Details shall include the following as applicable:

1. Energy compliance ~~path.~~path (See Section R401.2 for options).

~~1.~~ 2. Insulation materials and their *R*-values.

~~2.~~ 3. Fenestration *U*-factors and *solar heat gain coefficients* (SHGC).

~~3.~~ 4. Area-weighted *U*-factor and *solar heat gain coefficients* (SHGC) calculations.

~~4.~~ 5. Mechanical system design criteria.

~~5.~~ 6. Mechanical and service water-heating systems and equipment types, sizes and efficiencies.

~~6.~~ 7. Equipment and system controls.

~~7.~~ 8. Duct sealing, duct and pipe insulation and location.

~~8.~~ 9. Air sealing details.

R103.2.1 Building thermal envelope depiction. The *building thermal envelope* shall be represented on the construction documents.

R103.3 Examination of documents. ~~Deleted.~~ See the *North Carolina Administrative Code and Policies*.

~~**R103.3.1 Approval of construction documents.** Deleted.~~

~~**R103.3.2 Previous approvals.** Deleted.~~

~~**R103.3.3 Phased approval.** Deleted.~~

R103.4 Amended construction documents. ~~Deleted.~~ See the *North Carolina Administrative Code and Policies*.
R103.5 Retention of construction documents. ~~Deleted.~~ See the *North Carolina Administrative Code and Policies*.

~~SECTION R104~~
~~FEES~~

~~Deleted. See the *North Carolina Administrative Code and Policies*.~~

~~SECTION R105~~
~~INSPECTIONS~~

~~Deleted. See the *North Carolina Administrative Code and Policies*.~~

~~SECTION R106~~
~~NOTICE OF APPROVAL~~

~~Deleted. See the *North Carolina Administrative Code and Policies*.~~

~~SECTION R107~~
~~VALIDITY~~

~~Deleted. See the *North Carolina Administrative Code and Policies*.~~

SECTION ~~R106~~~~R108~~R104
REFERENCED STANDARDS

~~R106.1~~~~R108.1~~R104.1 Referenced codes and standards. The codes and standards referenced in this code shall be those indicated in Chapter 5, and such codes and standards shall be considered as part of the requirements of this code to the prescribed extent of each such reference and as further regulated in Sections ~~R108.1.1~~R104.1.1 and ~~R108.1.2.~~R104.1.2.

~~R106.1.1~~~~R108.1.1~~R104.1.1 Conflicts. Where conflicts occur between provisions of this code and referenced codes and standards, the provisions of this code shall apply.

~~R106.1.2~~~~R108.1.2~~R104.1.2 Provisions in referenced codes and standards. Where the extent of the reference to a referenced code or standard includes subject matter that is within the scope of this code, the provisions of this code, as applicable, shall take precedence over the provisions in the referenced code or standard.

~~R106.2~~~~R108.2~~R104.2 Application of references. References to chapter or section numbers, or to provisions not specifically identified by number, shall be construed to refer to such chapter, section or provision of this code.

~~R106.3~~~~R108.3~~R104.3 Other laws. The provisions of this code shall not be deemed to nullify any provisions of local, state or federal law.

~~SECTION R108R109~~
~~STOP WORK ORDER~~

~~**R108.1R109.1 Authority.** Deleted. See the *North Carolina Administrative Code and Policies*.~~

~~SECTION R109R110~~
~~BOARD MEANS OF APPEALS~~

~~Deleted. See the *North Carolina Administrative Code and Policies*.~~

CHAPTER 2 [RE]
DEFINITIONS

SECTION R201
GENERAL

R201.1 Scope. Unless stated otherwise, the following words and terms in this code shall have the meanings indicated in this chapter.

R201.2 Interchangeability. Words used in the present tense include the future; words in the masculine gender include the feminine and neuter; the singular number includes the plural and the plural includes the singular.

R201.3 Terms defined in other codes. Terms that are not defined in this code but are defined in the *International Building Code*, *International Fire Code*, *International Fuel Gas Code*, *International Mechanical Code*, *International Plumbing Code* or the *International Residential Code* shall have the meanings ascribed to them in those codes.

R201.4 Terms not defined. Terms not defined by this chapter shall have ordinarily accepted meanings such as the context implies.

SECTION R202
GENERAL DEFINITIONS

ABOVE-GRADE WALL. A wall more than 50 percent above grade and enclosing *conditioned space*. This includes between-floor spandrels, peripheral edges of floors, roof and basement knee walls, dormer walls, gable end walls, walls enclosing a mansard roof and *skylight* shafts.

ACCESS (TO). That which enables a device, appliance or equipment to be reached by *ready access* or by a means that first requires the removal or movement of a panel or similar obstruction.

ADDITION. An extension or increase in the *conditioned space* floor area, number of stories or height of a building or structure.

AIR BARRIER. One or more materials joined together in a continuous manner to restrict or prevent the passage of air through the *building thermal envelope* and its assemblies.

AIR BARRIER MATERIAL. Material(s) that have an air permeability not to exceed 0.004 cfm/ft^2 under a pressure differential of 0.3 in. water (1.57psf) (0.02 L/s.m^2 @ 75 Pa) when tested in accordance with ASTM E2178.

AIR BARRIER SYSTEM. Material(s) assembled and joined together to provide a barrier to air leakage through the building envelope. An air barrier system is a combination of air barrier materials and sealants.

~~**AIR-IMPERMEABLE INSULATION.** An insulation having an air permanence equal to or less than 0.02 L/s-m2 at 75 Pa pressure differential tested according to ASTM E2178 or E283 at the thickness applied.~~

ALTERATION. Any construction, retrofit or renovation to an existing structure other than *repair* or *addition*. Also, a change in a building, electrical, gas, mechanical or plumbing system that involves an extension, addition or change to the arrangement, type or purpose of the original installation.

APPROVED. ~~Acceptable to the code official for compliance with the provisions of the applicable code or referenced standard.~~ Acceptable to the *code official.*

APPROVED AGENCY. An established and recognized agency that is regularly engaged in conducting tests furnishing inspection services, or furnishing product certification, where such agency has been *approved* by the *code official.*

AUTOMATIC. Self-acting, operating by its own mechanism when actuated by some impersonal influence, as, for example, a change in current strength, pressure, temperature or mechanical configuration (see "*Manual*").

BASEMENT WALL. A wall 50 percent or more below grade and enclosing *conditioned space.*

~~**BPI ENVELOPE PROFESSIONAL.** An individual that has passed the Building Performance Institute written and field examination requirements for the Building Envelope certification and has a current certification.~~

BUILDING. Any structure used or intended for supporting or sheltering any use or occupancy, <u>including any mechanical systems, service water-heating systems and electric power and lighting systems located on the building site and supporting the building.</u>

BUILDING SITE. A contiguous area of land that is under the ownership or control of one entity.

BUILDING THERMAL ENVELOPE. The *basement walls, exterior walls,* floors, ceiling, roofs and any other *building* element assemblies that enclose *conditioned space* or provide a boundary between *conditioned space* and exempt or unconditioned space.

~~**C-FACTOR (THERMAL CONDUCTANCE).** The coefficient of heat transmission (surface to surface) through a building component or assembly, equal to the time rate of heat flow per unit area and the unit temperature difference between the warm side and cold side surfaces (Btu/h • ft2 • °F) [W/(m2 • K)].~~

CAVITY INSULATION. Insulating material located between framing members.

~~**CFM25.** Cubic feet per minute of measured airflow while the forced-air system is maintained at a pressure difference of 25 Pascals (0.1 inches w.c.)~~

~~**CFM50.** Cubic feet per minute of measured airflow while the building is maintained at a pressure difference of 50 Pascals (0.2 inches w.c.).~~

CIRCULATING HOT WATER SYSTEM. A specifically designed water distribution system where one or more pumps are operated in the service hot water piping to circulate heated water from the water-heating equipment to fixtures and back to the water-heating equipment.

CLIMATE ZONE. A geographical region based on climatic criteria as specified in this code.

CLOSED CRAWL SPACE. A foundation without wall vents that uses air sealed walls, ground and foundation moisture control, and mechanical drying potential to control crawl space moisture. Insulation may be located at the floor level or at the exterior walls

CODE OFFICIAL. The officer or other designated authority charged with the administration and enforcement of this code or a duly authorized representative.

COMMERCIAL BUILDING. For this code, all buildings that are not included in the definition of ~~"*Residential building.*"~~ <u>"*Residential building*" and are not exempted by N.C.G.S. 143-138(b4), (b15), (b18) and (b19).</u>

CONDITIONED FLOOR AREA. The horizontal projection of the floors associated with the *conditioned space*.

~~**CONDITIONED SPACE.** A space within a building that is provided with heating or cooling equipment or systems capable of maintaining, through design or heat loss/gain, 50°F (10°C) during the heating season or 85°F (29°C) during the cooling season, or communicates directly with a conditioned space. Spaces within the building thermal envelope are considered conditioned space.~~

<u>**CONDITIONED SPACE.** An area, room or space that is enclosed within the *building thermal envelope* and that is directly or indirectly heated or cooled. Spaces are indirectly heated or cooled where they communicate through openings with conditioned spaces, where they are separated from conditioned spaces by uninsulated walls, floors or ceilings, or where they contain uninsulated ducts, piping or other sources of heating or cooling.</u>

<u>**CONTINUOUS AIR BARRIER.** A combination of materials and assemblies that restrict or prevent the passage of air through the *building thermal envelope.*</u>

CONTINUOUS INSULATION (ci). Insulating material that is continuous across all structural members without thermal bridges other than fasteners and service openings. It is installed on the interior or exterior, or is integral to any opaque surface, of the *building* envelope.

CRAWL SPACE WALL. The opaque portion of a wall that encloses a crawl space and is partially or totally below grade.

<u>CURTAIN WALL.</u> <u>Fenestration products used to create an external nonload-bearing wall that is designed to separate the exterior and interior environments.</u>

<u>DEMAND RECIRCULATION WATER SYSTEM.</u> <u>A water distribution system where one or more pumps prime the service hot water piping with heated water upon demand for hot water.</u>

<u>DIMMER.</u> <u>A control device that is capable of continuously varying the light output and energy use of light sources.</u>

DUCT. A tube or conduit utilized for conveying air. The air passages of self-contained systems are not to be construed as air ducts.

DUCT SYSTEM. A continuous passageway for the transmission of air that, in addition to ducts, includes duct fittings, dampers, plenums, fans and accessory air-handling equipment and appliances.

DWELLING UNIT. A single unit providing complete independent living facilities for one or more persons, including permanent provisions for living, sleeping, eating, cooking and sanitation.

<u>DWELLING UNIT ENCLOSURE AREA.</u> <u>The sum of the area of ceiling, floors, and walls separating a *dwelling unit's conditioned space* from the exterior or from adjacent conditioned or unconditioned spaces. Wall height shall be measured from the finished floor of the *dwelling unit* to the underside of the floor above.</u>

ENERGY ANALYSIS. A method for estimating the annual energy use of the *proposed design* and *standard reference design* based on estimates of energy use.

ENERGY COST. The total estimated annual cost for purchased energy for the building functions regulated by this code, including applicable demand charges.

ENERGY SIMULATION TOOL. An *approved* software program or calculation-based methodology that projects the annual energy use of a *building*.

ERI REFERENCE DESIGN. A version of the *rated design* that meets the minimum requirements of the 2006 *International Energy Conservation Code*.

EXTERIOR WALL. Walls including both *above-grade walls* and *basement walls*.

FENESTRATION. Products classified as either *vertical fenestration* or *skylights.*

> **<u>Skylights.</u>** <u>Glass or other transparent or translucent glazing material installed at a slope of less than 60 degrees (1.05 rad) from horizontal including unit skylights, tubular daylighting devices, and glazing materials in solariums, sunrooms, roofs and sloped walls</u>.
>
> **<u>Vertical fenestration.</u>** <u>Windows that are fixed or operable, opaque doors, glazed doors, glazed block and combination opaque/glazed doors composed of glass or other transparent or translucent glazing materials and installed at a slope of not less than 60 degrees (1.05 rad) from horizontal.</u>

FENESTRATION PRODUCT, FIELD-FABRICATED.A fenestration product whose frame is made at the construction site of standard dimensional lumber or other materials that were not previously cut, or otherwise formed with the specific intention of being used to fabricate a fenestration product or exterior door. Field fabricated does not include site-built fenestration.

FENESTRATION PRODUCT, SITE-BUILT. A fenestration designed to be made up of field-glazed or field-assembled units using specific factory cut or otherwise factory-formed framing and glazing units. <u>Examples of site-built fenestration include storefront systems, curtain walls and atrium roof systems.</u>

~~***F*-FACTOR.** The perimeter heat loss factor for slab-on-grade~~

~~floors (Btu/h · ft · °F) [W/(m · K)].~~

~~**FULLY ENCLOSED ATTIC FLOOR SYSTEM.** The ceiling insulation is enclosed on all six sides by an air barrier system, such as taped drywall below, solid framing joists on the sides, solid blocking on the ends, and solid sheathing on top which totally enclose the insulation~~.

HEATED SLAB. Slab-on-grade construction in which the heating elements, hydronic tubing, or hot air distribution system is in contact with, or placed within or under, the slab.

HERS RATER. An individual that has completed training and been certified by RESNET (Residential Energy Services Network) Accredited Rating Provider and has a current certification.

~~**HIGH-EFFICACY LAMPS.** Compact fluorescent lamps, T-8 or smaller diameter linear fluorescent lamps, or lamps with a minimum efficacy of:~~
~~1. 60 lumens per watt for lamps over 40 watts;~~
~~2. 50 lumens per watt for lamps over 15 watts to 40 watts; and~~

~~3. 40 lumens per watt for lamps 15 watts or less.~~

HIGH-EFFICACY LIGHT SOURCES. Compact fluorescent lamps, light-emitting diode (LED) lamps, T-8 or smaller diameter linear fluorescent lamps, or other lamps with an efficacy of not less than 65 lumens per watt, or luminaires with an efficacy of not less than 45 lumens per watt.

HISTORIC BUILDING. Any building or structure that is one or more of the following:

1. Listed, or certified as eligible for listing by the State Historic Preservation Officer or the Keeper of the National Register of Historic Places, in the National Register of Historic Places.
2. Designated as historic under an applicable state or local law.
3. Certified as a contributing resource within a National Register-listed, state-designated or locally designated historic district.

INFILTRATION. The uncontrolled inward air leakage into a *building* caused by the pressure effects of wind or the effect of differences in the indoor and outdoor air density or both.

INSULATED SIDING. A type of continuous insulation with manufacturer-installed insulating material as an integral part of the cladding product having an *R*-value of not less than R-2.

~~**INSULATING SHEATHING.** An insulating board with a core material having a minimum *R*-value of R-2.~~

LABELED. Appliances, equipment~~,~~ materials or products to which have been affixed a label, seal, symbol or other identifying mark of a nationally recognized testing laboratory, *approved* agency or other organization concerned with product evaluation that maintains periodic inspection of the production of such labeled items and whose labeling indicates either that the appliances, equipment, material or product meets identified standards or has been tested and found suitable for a specified purpose.

~~**LAMP.** The device in a lighting fixture that provides illumination, typically a bulb, fluorescent tube, or light emitting diode (LED).~~

LISTED. Appliances, materials, products or services included in a list published by an organization acceptable to the *code official* and concerned with evaluation of products or services that maintains periodic inspection of production of *listed* appliances, equipment or materials or periodic evaluation of services and whose listing states either that the equipment, material, product or service meets identified standards or has been tested and found suitable for a specified purpose.

LOW-VOLTAGE LIGHTING. Lighting equipment powered through a transformer such as a cable conductor, a rail conductor and track lighting.

MANUAL. Capable of being operated by personal intervention (see "*Automatic*").

OCCUPANT SENSOR CONTROL. An automatic control device that detects the presence or absence of people within an area and causes lighting, equipment or appliances to be regulated accordingly.

~~**ON-SITE RENEWABLE ENERGY.** Includes solar photovoltaic; active solar thermal that employs collection panels, heat transfer mechanical components; wind; small hydroelectric; tidal; wave energy; geothermal (core earth); biomass energy systems; landfill gas and bio-fuel based electrical production. On-site energy shall be generated on or adjacent to~~

~~the project site and shall not be delivered to the project through the utility service.~~

ON-SITE RENEWABLE ENERGY. Energy from renewable energy resources harvested at the building site.

OPAQUE DOOR. A door that is not less than 50-percent opaque in surface area.

PROPOSED DESIGN. A description of the proposed *building* used to estimate annual energy use for determining compliance based on total building performance.

RATED DESIGN. A description of the proposed *building* used to determine the energy rating index.

REGISTERED DESIGN PROFESSIONAL. An individual who is registered or licensed to practice their respective design profession as defined by the statutory requirements of the professional registration laws of the state or jurisdiction in which the project is to be constructed. Design by a registered design professional is not required where exempt under the registration or licensure laws.

~~**READILY ACCESSIBLE.** Capable of being reached quickly for operation, renewal or inspection without requiring those to whom ready access is requisite to climb over or remove obstacles or to resort to portable ladders or access equipment (see "*Accessible*").~~

READY ACCESS (TO). That which enables a device, appliance or equipment to be directly reached without requiring the removal or movement of any panel or similar obstruction.

RENEWABLE ENERGY CERTIFICATE (REC). An instrument that represents the environmental attributes of one megawatt hour of renewable energy; also known as an energy attribute certificate (EAC).

RENEWABLE ENERGY RESOURCES. Energy derived from solar radiation, wind, waves, tides, landfill gas, biogas, biomass or extracted from hot fluid or steam heated within the earth.

REPAIR. The reconstruction or renewal of any part of an existing *building* for the purpose of its maintenance or to correct damage.

REROOFING. The process of recovering or replacing an existing roof covering. See "*Roof recover*" and "*Roof replacement*."

RESIDENTIAL BUILDING. For this code, includes ~~detached one- and two-family dwellings and townhouses as well as~~ *Group R*-2, *R*-3 and *R*-4 buildings three stories or less in height above grade ~~plane.~~plane that are not exempted by N.C.G.S. 143-138(b4), (b15), (b18) and (b19). This definition does not apply mandatorily to buildings and structures regulated by the *International Residential Code*.

ROOF ASSEMBLY. A system designed to provide weather protection and resistance to design loads. The system consists of a roof covering and roof deck or a single component serving as both the roof covering and the roof deck. A roof assembly includes the roof covering, underlayment ~~roof deck, insulation, vapor retarder and interior finish.~~and roof deck and can also include a thermal barrier, an ignition barrier, insulation or a vapor retarder.

ROOF RECOVER. The process of installing an additional roof covering over ~~a prepared~~ an existing roof covering without removing the existing roof covering.

ROOF REPAIR. Reconstruction or renewal of any part of an existing roof for the purposes of its maintenance.

ROOF REPLACEMENT. The process of removing the existing roof covering, repairing any damaged substrate and installing a new roof covering.

***R*-VALUE (THERMAL RESISTANCE).** The inverse of the time rate of heat flow through a body from one of its bounding surfaces to the other surface for a unit temperature difference between the two surfaces, under steady state conditions, per unit area (h × ft^2 × °F/Btu) [(m^2 × K)/W].

~~**SEMI-CONDITIONED SPACE.** A space within the building thermal envelope that is not directly heated or cooled.~~

SITE-RECOVERED ENERGY. Waste energy recovered at the building site that is used to off-set consumption of purchased fuel or electrical energy supplies.

SERVICE WATER HEATING. Supply of hot water for purposes other than comfort heating.

~~**SKYLIGHT.** Glass or other transparent or translucent glazing material installed at a slope of less than 60 degrees (1.05 rad) from horizontal.~~

~~**SOLAR ENERGY SOURCE.** Source of thermal, chemical, or electrical energy derived from direct conversion of incident solar radiation at the building site.~~

SOLAR HEAT GAIN COEFFICIENT (SHGC). The ratio of the solar heat gain entering the space through the fenestration assembly to the incident solar radiation. Solar heat gain includes directly transmitted solar heat and absorbed solar radiation that is then reradiated, conducted or convected into the space.

STANDARD REFERENCE DESIGN. A version of the *proposed design* that meets the minimum requirements of this code and is used to determine the maximum annual energy use requirement for compliance based on total building performance.

SUNROOM. A one-story structure attached to a dwelling with a glazing area in excess of 40 percent of the gross area of the structure's *exterior walls* and roof.

THERMAL DISTRIBUTION EFFICIENCY (TDE). The resistance to changes in air heat as air is conveyed through a distance of air duct. TDE is a heat loss calculation evaluating the difference in the heat of the air between the air duct inlet and outlet caused by differences in temperatures between the air in the duct and the duct material. TDE is expressed as a percent difference between the inlet and outlet heat in the duct.

THERMAL ISOLATION. Physical and space conditioning separation from *conditioned spaces*. The *conditioned spaces* shall be controlled as separate zones for heating and cooling or conditioned by separate equipment.

THERMOSTAT. An automatic control device used to maintain temperature at a fixed or adjustable setpoint.

***U*-FACTOR (THERMAL TRANSMITTANCE).** The coefficient of heat transmission (air to air) through a building component or assembly, equal to the time rate of heat flow per unit area and unit temperature difference between the warm side and cold side air films (Btu/h × ft^2 × °F) [W/(m^2 × K)].

~~**VAPOR RETARDER CLASS 1.** A measure of the ability of a material or assembly to limit the amount of moisture that passes through that material or assembly. Vapor retarder class 1 is defined as 0.1 perm or less when using the desiccant method with Procedure A of ASTM E96.~~

VENTILATION. The natural or mechanical process of supplying conditioned or unconditioned air to, or removing such air from, any space.

VENTILATION AIR. That portion of supply air that comes from outside (outdoors) plus any recirculated air that has been treated to maintain the desired quality of air within a designated space. For the purposes of this definition, supply air is that air delivered to each or any space supplied by the air distribution system or the total air delivered to all spaces supplied by the air distribution system.

~~**VERTICAL FENESTRATION.** Windows (fixed or moveable), opaque doors, glazed doors, glazed block and combination opaque/glazed doors composed of glass or other transparent or translucent glazing materials and installed at a slope of a least 60 degrees (1.05 rad) from horizontal.~~

VISIBLE TRANSMITTANCE (VT). The ratio of visible light entering the space through the fenestration product assembly to the incident visible light. Visible Transmittance includes the effects of glazing material and frame and is expressed as a number between 0 and 1.

WHOLE HOUSE MECHANICAL VENTILATION SYSTEM. An exhaust system, supply system, or combination thereof that is designed to mechanically exchange indoor air with outdoor air when operating continuously or through a programmed intermittent schedule to satisfy the whole house ventilation rates.

ZONE. A space or group of spaces within a *building* with heating or cooling requirements that are sufficiently similar so that desired conditions can be maintained throughout using a single controlling device.

CHAPTER 3 [RE]
GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

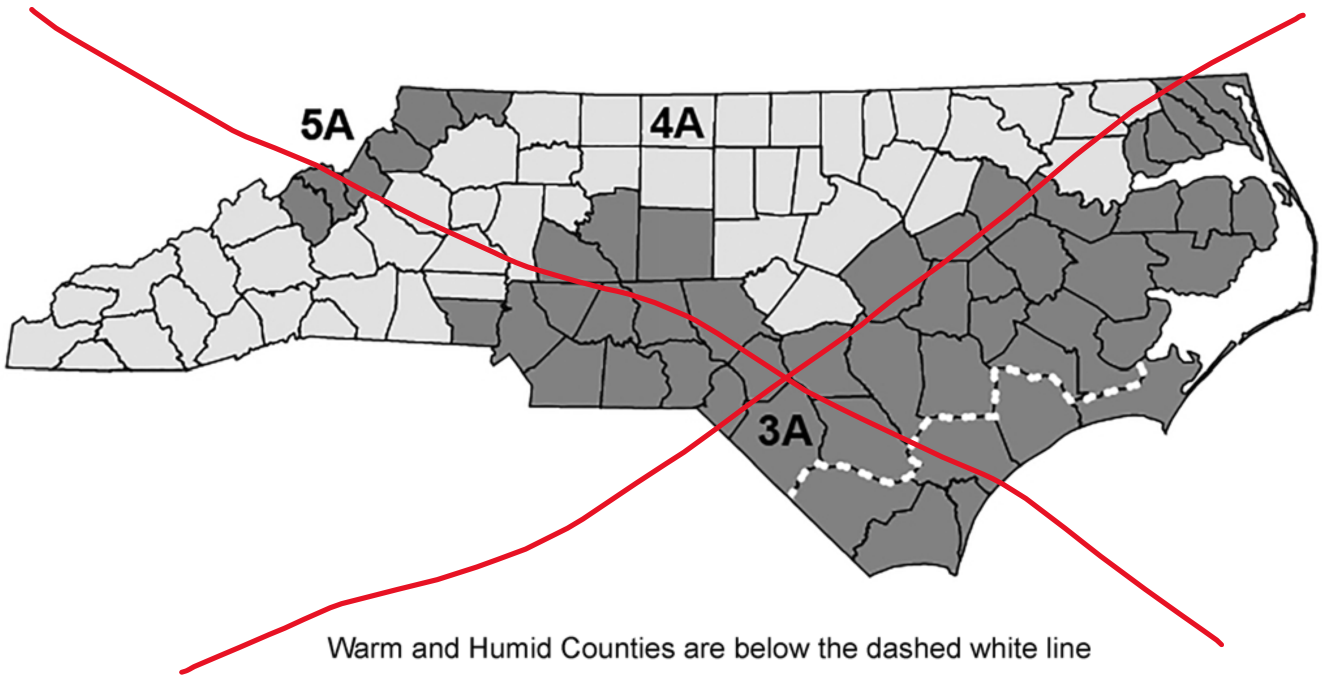
SECTION R301
CLIMATE ZONES

R301.1 General. *Climate zones* from Figure R301.1 or Table R301.1 shall be used for determining the applicable requirements from Chapter 4. Locations not indicated in Table R301.1 shall be assigned a *climate zone* in accordance with Section R301.3.

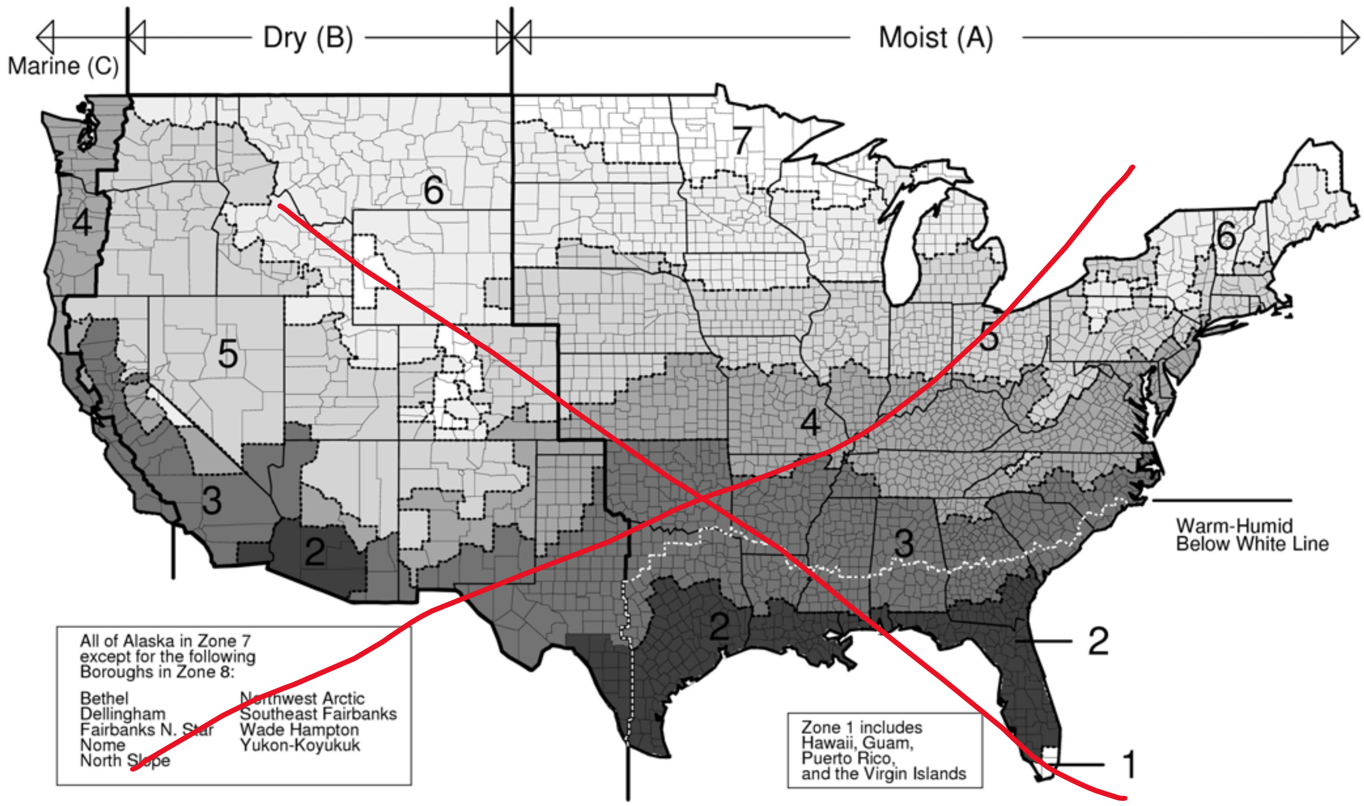
R301.2 Warm Humid counties. In Table R301.1, Warm Humid counties are identified by an asterisk.

~~**R301.3 International climate zones.**~~ ~~Deleted. Note: Tables R301.3(1) and Table R301.3(2) contain no NC requirements but are retained for information only.~~

~~**R301.4 Tropical climate zone.**~~ ~~Deleted.~~



~~**FIGURE R301.1 NORTH CAROLINA CLIMATE ZONES**~~



~~**FIGURE R301.1**~~

~~CLIMATE ZONES~~

TABLE R301.1

NORTH CAROLINA CLIMATE ZONES, MOISTURE REGIMES, AND WARM-HUMID DESIGNATIONS BY COUNTY

~~**CLIMATE ZONES, MOISTURE REGIMES, AND WARM HUMID DESIGNATIONS BY STATE, COUNTY AND TERRITORY[a]**~~

a. Key: A – Moist, B – Dry, C – Marine. Absence of moisture designation indicates moisture regime is irrelevant. Asterisk (*) indicates a Warm Humid location.

~~**NORTH CAROLINA**~~

~~4A Alamance 4A Alexander 5A Alleghany 3A Anson~~

~~5A Ashe 5A Avery~~

~~3A Beaufort 4A Bertie 3A Bladen~~

~~3A Brunswick* 4A Buncombe 4A Burke~~

~~3A Cabarrus 4A Caldwell 3A Camden 3A Carteret* 4A Caswell 4A Catawba 4A Chatham 4A Cherokee 3A Chowan 4A Clay~~

~~4A Cleveland 3A Columbus* 3A Craven~~

~~3A Cumberland 3A Currituck 3A Dare~~

~~3A Davidson 4A Davie 3A Duplin 4A Durham~~

~~3A Edgecombe 4A Forsyth~~

~~4A Franklin 3A Gaston 4A Gates 4A Graham~~

~~4A Granville 3A Greene 4A Guilford~~

~~4A Halifax 4A Harnett 4A Haywood 4A Henderson 4A Hertford 3A Hoke~~

~~3A Hyde 4A Iredell 4A Jackson 3A Johnston 3A Jones 4A Lee~~
~~3A Lenoir 4A Lincoln 4A Macon 4A Madison 3A Martin~~
~~4A McDowell 3A Mecklenburg 5A Mitchell~~
~~3A Montgomery 3A Moore~~
~~4A Nash~~
~~3A New Hanover* 4A Northampton 3A Onslow*~~
~~4A Orange 3A Pamlico~~
~~3A Pasquotank 3A Pender* 3A Perquimans 4A Person~~
~~3A Pitt 4A Polk~~
~~3A Randolph 3A Richmond 3A Robeson~~
~~4A Rockingham 3A Rowan~~
~~4A Rutherford 3A Sampson 3A Scotland 3A Stanly~~
~~4A Stokes 4A Surry 4A Swain~~
~~4A Transylvania 3A Tyrrell~~
~~3A Union 4A Vance 4A Wake 4A Warren~~
~~3A Washington 5A Watauga 3A Wayne~~
~~4A Wilkes 3A Wilson 4A Yadkin~~
~~5A Yancey~~

NORTH CAROLINA
3A Alamance
3A Alexander
5A Alleghany
3A Anson
5A Ashe
5A Avery
3A Beaufort
3A Bertie
3A Bladen
3A Brunswick*
4A Buncombe
4A Burke
3A Cabarrus
4A Caldwell
3A Camden
3A Carteret*
3A Caswell
3A Catawba
3A Chatham
3A Cherokee
3A Chowan

3A Clay
3A Cleveland
3A Columbus*
3A Craven
3A Cumberland
3A Currituck
3A Dare
3A Davidson
3A Davie
3A Duplin
3A Durham
3A Edgecombe
3A Forsyth
3A Franklin
3A Gaston
3A Gates
4A Graham
3A Granville
3A Greene
3A Guilford
3A Halifax
3A Harnett
4A Haywood
4A Henderson
3A Hertford
3A Hoke
3A Hyde
3A Iredell
4A Jackson
3A Johnston
3A Jones
3A Lee

3A Lenoir
3A Lincoln
4A Macon
4A Madison
3A Martin
4A McDowell
3A Mecklenburg
4A Mitchell
3A Montgomery
3A Moore
3A Nash
3A New Hanover*
3A Northampton
3A Onslow*
3A Orange
3A Pamlico
3A Pasquotank
3A Pender*
3A Perquimans
3A Person
3A Pitt
3A Polk
3A Randolph
3A Richmond
3A Robeson
3A Rockingham
3A Rowan
3A Rutherford
3A Sampson
3A Scotland
3A Stanly
4A Stokes
4A Surry
4A Swain
4A Transylvania

3A Tyrrell
3A Union
3A Vance
3A Wake
3A Warren
3A Washington
5A Watauga
3A Wayne
~~3A~~ 4A Wilkes
3A Wilson
4A Yadkin
5A Yancey

~~**TABLE R301.3(1)**~~
~~**INTERNATIONAL CLIMATE ZONE DEFINITIONS**~~

~~**MAJOR CLIMATE TYPE DEFINITIONS**~~ ~~Marine (C) Definition—Locations meeting all four criteria:~~ ~~2. Mean temperature of coldest month between -3°C (27°F) and 18°C (65°F).~~ ~~3. Warmest month mean < 22°C (72°F).~~ ~~4. At least four months with mean temperatures over 10°C (50°F).~~ ~~4. Dry season in summer. The month with the heaviest precipitation in the cold season has at least three times as much precipitation as the month with the least precipitation in the rest of the year. The cold season is October through March in the Northern Hemisphere and April through September in the Southern Hemisphere.~~
~~Dry (B) Definition—Locations meeting the following criteria:~~ ~~Not marine and P_{in} < 0.44 × (*TF* - 19.5) [P_{cm} < 2.0 × (*TC* + 7) in SI units]~~ ~~where:~~ ~~P_{in} = Annual precipitation in inches (cm)~~ ~~*T* = Annual mean temperature in °F (°C)~~
~~Moist (A) Definition—Locations that are not marine and not dry.~~
~~Warm-humid Definition—Moist (A) locations where either of the following wet-bulb temperature conditions shall occur during the warmest six consecutive months of the year:~~ ~~1. 67°F (19.4°C) or higher for 3,000 or more hours; or~~ ~~2. 73°F (22.8°C) or higher for 1,500 or more hours.~~

R301.3 Climate zone definitions. To determine the climate zones for locations not listed in this code, use the following information to determine climate zone numbers and letters in accordance with Items 1 through 5.

1. Determine the thermal climate zone, 0 through 8, from Table R301.3 using the heating (HDD) and cooling degree-days (CDD) for the location.
2. Determine the moisture zone (Marine, Dry or Humid) in accordance with Items 2.1 through 2.3.

2.1. If monthly average temperature and precipitation data are available, use the Marine, Dry and Humid definitions to determine the moisture zone (C, B or A).

2.2. If annual average temperature information (including degree-days) and annual precipitation (i.e., annual mean) are available, use Items 2.2.1 through 2.2.3 to determine the moisture zone. If the moisture zone is not Marine, then use the Dry definition to determine whether Dry or Humid.

2.2.1. If thermal climate zone is 3 and CDD50°F ≤ 4,500 (CDD10°C ≤ 2500), climate zone is Marine (3C).

2.2.2. If thermal climate zone is 4 and CDD50°F ≤ 2,700 (CDD10°C ≤ 1500), climate zone is Marine (4C).

2.2.3. If thermal climate zone is 5 and CDD50°F ≤ 1,800 (CDD10°C ≤ 1000), climate zone is Marine (5C).

2.3. If only degree-day information is available, use Items 2.3.1 through 2.3.3 to determine the moisture zone. If the moisture zone is not Marine, then it is not possible to assign Humid or Dry moisture zone for this location.

2.3.1. If thermal climate zone is 3 and CDD50°F ≤ 4,500 (CDD10°C ≤ 2500), climate zone is Marine (3C).

2.3.2. If thermal climate zone is 4 and CDD50°F ≤ 2,700 (CDD10°C ≤ 1500), climate zone is Marine (4C).

2.3.3. If thermal climate zone is 5 and CDD50°F ≤ 1,800 (CDD10°C ≤ 1000), climate zone is Marine (5C).

3. Marine (C) Zone definition: Locations meeting all the criteria in Items 3.1 through 3.4.

3.1. Mean temperature of coldest month between 27°F (-3°C) and 65°F (18°C).

3.2. Warmest month mean < 72°F (22°C).

3.3. Not fewer than four months with mean temperatures over 50°F (10°C).

3.4. Dry season in summer. The month with the heaviest precipitation in the cold season has at least three times as much precipitation as the month with the least precipitation in the rest of the year. The cold season is October through March in the Northern Hemisphere and April through September in the Southern Hemisphere.

4. Dry (B) definition: Locations meeting the criteria in Items 4.1 through 4.4.

4.1. Not Marine (C).

4.2. If 70 percent or more of the precipitation, *P*, occurs during the high sun period, defined as April through September in the Northern Hemisphere and October through March in the Southern Hemisphere, then the dry/humid threshold is in accordance with Equation 3-1.

$P < 0.44 \times (T - 7)$
$[P < 20.0 \times (T + 14)$ in SI units$]$

(Equation 3-1)

where:
P = Annual precipitation, inches (mm).
T = Annual mean temperature, °F (°C).

4.3. If between 30 and 70 percent of the precipitation, *P*, occurs during the high sun period, defined as April through September in the Northern Hemisphere and October through March in the Southern Hemisphere, then the dry/humid threshold is in accordance with Equation 3-2.

$P < 0.44 \times (T - 19.5)$
$[P < 20.0 \times (T + 7)$ in SI units$]$

(Equation 3-2)

where:
P = Annual precipitation, inches (mm).
T = Annual mean temperature, °F (°C).

4.4. If 30 percent or less of the precipitation, *P*, occurs during the high sun period, defined as April through September in the Northern Hemisphere and October through March in the Southern Hemisphere, then the dry/humid threshold is in accordance with Equation 3-3.

$P < 0.44 \times (T - 32)$
$[P < 20.0 \times T$ in SI units$]$

(Equation 3-3)

where:
P = Annual precipitation, inches (mm).
T = Annual mean temperature, °F (°C).

5. Humid (A) definition: Locations that are not Marine (C) or Dry (B).

TABLE ~~R301.3(2)~~ R301.3

~~INTERNATIONAL~~ THERMAL CLIMATE ZONE DEFINITIONS

~~ZONE NUMBER~~	~~THERMAL CRITERIA~~	
	~~IP Units~~	~~SI Units~~
~~1~~	~~9000 < CDD50°F~~	~~5000 < CDD10°C~~
~~2~~	~~6300 < CDD50°F ≤ 9000~~	~~3500 < CDD10°C ≤ 5000~~
~~3A and 3B~~	~~4500 < CDD50°F ≤ 6300 AND HDD65°F ≤ 5400~~	~~2500 < CDD10°C ≤ 3500 AND HDD18°C ≤ 3000~~
~~4A and 4B~~	~~CDD50°F ≤ 4500 AND HDD65°F ≤ 5400~~	~~CDD10°C ≤ 2500 AND HDD18°C ≤ 3000~~
~~3C~~	~~HDD65°F ≤ 3600~~	~~HDD18°C ≤ 2000~~
~~4C~~	~~3600 < HDD65°F ≤ 5400~~	~~2000 < HDD18°C ≤ 3000~~
~~5~~	~~5400 < HDD65°F ≤ 7200~~	~~3000 < HDD18°C ≤ 4000~~
~~6~~	~~7200 < HDD65°F ≤ 9000~~	~~4000 < HDD18°C ≤ 5000~~
~~7~~	~~9000 < HDD65°F ≤ 12600~~	~~5000 < HDD18°C ≤ 7000~~
~~8~~	~~12600 < HDD65°F~~	~~7000 < HDD18°C~~

ZONE NUMBER	THERMAL CRITERIA	
	IP Units	SI Units
0	10,800 < CDD50°F	6000 < CDD10°C
1	9,000 < CDD50°F < 10,800	5000 < CDD10°C < 6000
2	6,300 < CDD50°F ≤ 9,000	3500 < CDD10°C ≤ 5000
3	CDD50°F ≤ 6,300 AND HDD65°F ≤ 3,600	CDD10°C < 3500 AND HDD18°C ≤ 2000
4	CDD50°F ≤ 6,300 AND 3,600 < HDD65°F ≤ 5,400	CDD10°C < 3500 AND 2000 < HDD18°C ≤ 3000
5	CDD50°F < 6,300 AND 5,400 < HDD65°F ≤ 7,200	CDD10°C < 3500 AND 3000 < HDD18°C ≤ 4000
6	7,200 < HDD65°F ≤ 9,000	4000 < HDD18°C ≤ 5000
7	9,000 < HDD65°F ≤ 12,600	5000 < HDD18°C ≤ 7000
8	12,600 < HDD65°F	7000 < HDD18°C

For SI: °C = [(°F) - 32]/1.8.

R301.4 Tropical climate region. Deleted.

SECTION R302
DESIGN CONDITIONS

R302.1 Interior design conditions. The interior design temperatures used for heating and cooling load calculations shall be a maximum of 72°F (22°C) for heating and minimum of 75°F (24°C) for cooling.

SECTION R303
MATERIALS, SYSTEMS AND EQUIPMENT

R303.1 Identification. Materials, systems and equipment shall be identified in a manner that will allow a determination of compliance with the applicable provisions of this code.

R303.1.1 Building thermal envelope insulation. An *R*-value identification mark shall be applied by the manufacturer to each piece of *building thermal envelope* insulation that is 12 inches (305 mm) or greater in width. Alternatively, the insulation installers shall provide a certification that indicates the type, manufacturer and *R*-value of insulation installed in each element of the *building thermal envelope*. For blown-in or sprayed fiberglass and cellulose insulation, the initial installed thickness, settled thickness, settled *R*-value, installed density, coverage area and number of bags installed shall be indicated on the certification. For sprayed polyurethane foam (SPF) insulation, the installed thickness of the areas covered and the *R*-value of the installed thickness shall be indicated on the certification. For insulated siding, the *R*-value shall be on a label on the product's package and shall be indicated on the certification. The insulation installer shall sign, date and post the certification in a conspicuous location on the job site.

Exception: For roof insulation installed above the deck, the *R*-value shall be labeled as required by the material standards specified in Table 1508.2 of the *International Building Code* or Table R906.2 of the *International Residential Code*, as applicable.

R303.1.1.1 Blown-in or sprayed roof and ceiling insulation. The thickness of blown-in or sprayed fiberglass and cellulose roof and ceiling insulation shall be written in inches (mm) on markers that are installed at not less than one for every 300 square feet (28 m^2) throughout the attic space. The markers shall be affixed to the trusses or joists and marked with the minimum initial installed thickness with numbers not less than 1 inch (25 mm) in height. Each marker shall face the attic access opening. The thickness and installed *R*-value of sprayed polyurethane foam insulation shall be indicated on the certification provided by the insulation installer.

R303.1.2 Insulation mark installation. Insulating materials shall be installed such that the manufacturer's *R*-value mark is readily observable at inspection. For insulation materials that are installed without an observable manufacturer's *R*-value mark, such as blown or draped products, an insulation certificate complying with Section R303.1.1 shall be left immediately after installation by the installer, in a conspicuous location within the building, to certify the installed *R*-value of the insulation material.

~~**R303.1.3 Fenestration product rating.** *U*-factors of fenestration products (windows, doors and skylights) shall be determined in accordance with NFRC 100. *U*-factors shall be determined by an accredited, independent laboratory, and *labeled* and certified by the manufacturer. Products lacking such a *labeled U*-factor shall be assigned a default *U*-factor from Table R303.1.3(1) or R303.1.3(2). The solar heat gain coefficient (SHGC) and *visible transmit- tance* (VT) of glazed fenestration products (windows, glazed doors and skylights) shall be determined in accor- dance with NFRC 200 by an accredited, inde- pendent labo- ratory, and *labeled* and certified by the manufacturer. Products lacking such a *labeled* SHGC or VT shall be assigned a default SHGC or VT from Table R303.1.3(3).~~

~~**Exception:** When a garage door is a part of the build- ing thermal envelope, garage door *U*-factors shall be determined in accordance with either NFRC 100 or ANSI/DASMA 105~~.

R303.1.3 Fenestration product rating. *U*-factors of fenestration products such as windows, doors and *skylights* shall be determined in accordance with NFRC 100.

Exception: Where required, garage door *U*-factors shall be determined in accordance with either NFRC 100 or ANSI/DASMA 105.

U-factors shall be determined by an accredited, independent laboratory, and labeled and certified by the manufacturer.

Products lacking such a labeled *U*-factor shall be assigned a default *U*-factor from Table R303.1.3(1) or Table R303.1.3(2). The *solar heat gain coefficient* (SHGC) and *visible transmittance* (VT) of glazed fenestration products such as windows, glazed doors and *skylights* shall be determined in accordance with NFRC 200 by an accredited, independent laboratory, and labeled and certified by the manufacturer. Products lacking such a labeled SHGC or VT shall be assigned a default SHGC or VT from Table R303.1.3(3).

TABLE R303.1.3(1)
DEFAULT GLAZED WINDOW, GLASS DOOR AND SKYLIGHT *U*-FACTORS

FRAME TYPE	WINDOW AND GLASS DOOR		SKYLIGHT	
	Single pane	Double pane	Single	Double
Metal	1.20	0.80	2.00	1.30
Metal with Thermal Break	1.10	0.65	1.90	1.10
Nonmetal or Metal Clad	0.95	0.55	1.75	1.05
Glazed Block	0.60			

TABLE R303.1.3(2)
DEFAULT OPAQUE DOOR *U*-FACTORS

DOOR TYPE	OPAQUE *U*-FACTOR
Uninsulated Metal	1.20
Insulated Metal	0.60
Wood	0.50
Insulated, nonmetal edge, not exceeding 45% glazing, any glazing double pane	0.35

TABLE R303.1.3(3)
DEFAULT GLAZED FENESTRATION SHGC AND VT

	SINGLE GLAZED		DOUBLE GLAZED		GLAZED BLOCK
	Clear	Tinted	Clear	Tinted	
SHGC	0.8	0.7	0.7	0.6	0.6
VT	0.6	0.3	0.6	0.3	0.6

R303.1.4 Insulation product rating. The thermal resistance, *R*-value, of insulation shall be determined in accordance with Part 460 of US-FTC CFR Title 16 in units of h × ft^2 × °F/Btu at a mean temperature of 75°F (24°C).

R303.1.4.1 Insulated siding. The thermal resistance, *R*-value, of insulated siding shall be determined in accordance with ASTM C1363. Installation for testing shall be in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

<u>**R303.1.5 Air-impermeable insulation.** Insulation having an air permeability not greater than 0.004 cubic feet per minute per square foot [0.002 L/(s × m^2)] under pressure differential of 0.3 inch water gauge (75 Pa) when tested in accordance with ASTM E2178 shall be determined air-impermeable insulation.</u>

R303.2 Installation. Materials, systems and equipment shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and the *International Building Code* or the *International Residential Code*, as applicable.

R303.2.1 Protection of exposed foundation insulation. Insulation applied to the exterior of *basement walls*, crawl space walls and the perimeter of slab-on-grade floors shall have a rigid, opaque and weather-resistant protective covering to prevent the degradation of the insulation's thermal performance. The protective covering shall cover the exposed exterior insulation and extend not less than 6 inches (153 mm) below grade.

R303.3 Maintenance information. Operations and maintenance instructions and manuals shall be furnished for equipment and systems that require preventive maintenance.

CHAPTER 4 [RE]
RESIDENTIAL ENERGY EFFICIENCY

SECTION R401
GENERAL

R401.1 Scope. This chapter applies to ~~residential buildings.~~*residential buildings.*

~~**R401.2 Compliance.** Projects shall comply with one of the following:~~

~~1. Sections R401 through R404.~~

~~2. Section R405 and the provisions of Sections R401 through R404 labeled "Mandatory."~~

~~3. An energy rating index (ERI) approach in Section R406.~~

~~4. North Carolina specific REScheck shall be permitted to demonstrate compliance with this code. Envelope requirements may not be traded off against the use of high efficiency heating or cooling equipment. No trade- off calculations are needed for required termite inspection and treatment gaps.~~

R401.2 Application. ~~Residential buildings~~*Residential buildings* shall comply with Section R401.2.5 and either Sections R401.2.1, R401.2.2, or R401.2.3 .

Exception: Additions, *alterations*, repairs and changes of occupancy to existing buildings complying with Chapter 5.

R401.2.1 Prescriptive Compliance Option. The Prescriptive Compliance Option requires compliance with Sections R401 through R404.

R401.2.2 Total Building Performance Option. The Total Building Performance Option requires compliance with Section R405.

R401.2.3 Energy Rating Index Option. The Energy Rating Index (ERI) Option requires compliance with Section R406.

~~**R401.2.1**~~ **R401.2.4 Tropical Climate Region Option.** Deleted.

R401.2.5 Additional energy efficiency. This section establishes additional requirements applicable to all compliance approaches to achieve additional energy efficiency.

1. For buildings complying with Section R401.2., one of the additional efficiency package options shall be installed according to Section R408.2.
2. For buildings complying with Section R401.2.2, the building shall meet one of the following:
   2.1. One of the additional efficiency package options in Section R408.2 shall be installed without including such measures in the proposed design under Section R405; or
   2.2. The proposed design of the building under Section R405.3 shall have an annual energy cost that is less than or equal to 95 percent of the annual energy cost of the standard reference design.
3. For buildings complying with the Energy Rating Index alternative Section R401.2.3, the Energy Rating Index value shall be at least 5 percent less than the Energy Rating Index target specified in Table R406.5.

The option selected for compliance shall be identified in the certificate required by Section R401.3. *

~~**R401.2.6 REScheck Option.** North Carolina approved version of REScheck shall be permitted to demonstrate compliance with this code. Envelope requirements may not be traded off against the use of high efficiency heating or cooling equipment. No tradeoff calculations are needed for required termite inspection and treatment gaps.~~

~~4. North Carolina specific REScheck keyed to the 2018 IECC shall be permitted to demonstrate compliance with this code. Envelope requirements may not be traded off against the use of high efficiency heating or cooling equipment. No tradeoff calculations are needed for required termite inspection and treatment gaps.~~

~~**R401.3 Certificate (Mandatory).** A permanent certificate shall be posted on or in the electrical distribution panel, in the attic next to the attic insulation card, or inside a kitchen cabinet or other approved location. The certificate shall not cover or obstruct the visibility of the circuit directory label, service dis- connect label or other required labels. The builder, permit holder, or registered design professional shall be responsible for completing the certificate. The certificate shall list the pre- dominant *R*-values of insulation installed in or on ceiling/roof, walls, foundation (slab, *basement wall*, crawlspace wall and floor) and ducts outside conditioned spaces; and the *U*-factors for fenestration and the solar heat gain coefficient (SHGC) of fenestration. Where there is more than one value for each com- ponent, the certificate shall list the value covering the largest area. The certificate shall indicate whether the building air leakage was visually inspected as required in Section R402.4.2.1 or provide results of the air leakage testing required in Section R402.4.2.2. The certificate shall provide results of the duct leakage test as required in Section R403.3.3.~~
~~Appendix R1.1 contains a sample certificate.~~

R401.3 Certificate. A permanent certificate shall be completed by the builder, permit holder, registered design professional or other *approved* party . ~~and posted on a wall in the space where the furnace is located, a utility room or an *approved*~~ The permanent certificate shall be posted in a *readily accessible* location on the electrical distribution panel, in the attic next to the attic insulation card, in a utility room or other *approved* location inside the *building*. Where located on an electrical panel, the certificate shall not cover or obstruct the visibility of the circuit directory *label*, service disconnect *label* or other required labels. The certificate shall indicate the following:

1. The predominant *R*-values of insulation installed in or on ceilings, roofs, walls, foundation components such as slabs, *basement walls, crawl space walls* and floors and ducts outside *conditioned spaces.*
2. *U*-factors of fenestration and the *solar heat gain coefficient* (SHGC) of fenestration. Where there is more than one value for any component of the building envelope, the certificate shall indicate both the value covering the largest area and the area weighted average value if available.
3. The results from any required duct system and building envelope air leakage testing performed on the building.
4. The types, sizes and efficiencies of heating, cooling and service water-heating equipment. Where a gas-fired unvented room heater, electric furnace or baseboard electric heater is installed in the residence, the certificate shall indicate "gas-fired unvented room heater," "electric furnace" or "baseboard electric heater," as appropriate. An efficiency shall not be indicated for gas-fired unvented room heaters, electric furnaces and electric baseboard heaters.
5. Where on-site *photovoltaic panel* systems have been installed, the array capacity, inverter efficiency, panel tilt and orientation shall be noted on the certificate.
6. For buildings where an Energy Rating Index score is determined in accordance with Section R406, the Energy Rating Index score, both with and without any on-site generation, shall be listed on the certificate.
7. The code edition under which the structure was permitted, and the compliance path used.

~~**R401.4 Additional voluntary criteria for increasing residential energy efficiency.** Appendix R4 contains additional voluntary measures for increasing residential energy efficiency beyond code minimums. Implementation of the increased energy efficiency measures is strictly voluntary at the option of the permit holder. The sole purpose of the appendix is to provide guidance for achieving additional residential energy efficiency improvements that have been evaluated to be those that are most cost effective for achieving an additional 10- to 15-percent improvement in energy efficiency beyond code minimums.~~

R401.4 Additional voluntary criteria for increasing residential energy efficiency. Appendix R4 is a placeholder appendix for adding above-minimum code requirements that can be followed at the discretion of the user.

SECTION R402
BUILDING THERMAL ENVELOPE

R402.1 General ~~(Prescriptive).~~ The *building thermal envelope* shall comply with the requirements of Sections R402.1.1 through R402.1.5.

Exceptions:

1. The following low-energy *buildings*, or portions thereof, separated from the remainder of the building by *building thermal envelope* assemblies complying with this section shall be exempt from the *building thermal envelope* provisions of Section R402.

   1.1. Those with a peak design rate of energy usage less than 3.4 Btu/h × ft^2 (10.7 W/m^2) or 1.0 watt/ft^2 of floor area for space-conditioning purposes.

   1.2. Those that do not contain *conditioned space*.

2. Log homes designed in accordance with ICC 400.

3. ~~**R402.1.1**~~ Rooms containing fuel-burning appliances. In Climate Zones 3 through 5, where open combustion air ducts provide combustion air to open combustion fuel burning appliances, the appliances and combustion air opening shall be located outside the building thermal envelope or enclosed in a room that is isolated from inside the thermal envelope. Such rooms shall be sealed and insulated in accordance with the envelope requirements of Table R402.1.3, where the walls, floors and ceilings shall meet a minimum of the basement wall R-value requirement. The door into the room shall be fully gasketed and any water lines and ducts in the room insulated in accordance with Section R403. The combustion air duct shall be insulated where it passes through conditioned space to an R-value of not less than R-8.

   Exceptions:

   1. Direct vent appliances with both intake and exhaust pipes installed continuous to the outside.

   2. Fireplaces and stoves complying with Section R402.4.2 and Section R1006 of the International Residential Code.

R402.1.1 Vapor retarder. ~~Deleted.~~ Wall assemblies in the *building thermal envelope* shall comply with the vapor retarder requirements of Section R702.7 of the *International Residential Code* or Section 1404.3 of the *International Building Code*, as applicable.

R402.1.2 Insulation and fenestration criteria. The *building thermal envelope* shall meet the requirements of Table R402.1.2, based on the *climate zone* specified in Chapter 3. Assemblies shall have a *U*-factor equal to or less than that specified in Table R402.1.2. Fenestration shall have a *U*-factor and glazed fenestration SHGC equal to or less than that specified in Table R402.1.2.

R402.1.3 *R*-value alternative. Assemblies with *R*-value of insulation materials equal to or greater than that specified in Table R402.1.3 shall be an alternative to the *U*-factor in Table R402.1.2

~~R402.1.3~~ R402.1.4 *R*-value computation. ~~Insulation material used in layers, such as framing cavity insulation, or continuous insulation shall be summed to compute the corresponding component *R*-value. The manufacturer's settled *R*-value shall be used for blown insulation.~~ Cavity insulation alone shall be used to determine compliance with the cavity insulation *R*-value requirements in Table R402.1.3. Where cavity insulation is installed in multiple layers, the *R*-values of the cavity insulation layers shall be summed to determine compliance with the cavity insulation *R*-value requirements. The manufacturer's settled *R*-value shall be used for blown-in insulation. Continuous insulation ~~(ci)~~ alone shall be used to determine compliance with the continuous insulation *R*-value requirements in Table R402.1.3. Where continuous insulation is installed in multiple layers, the *R*-values of the continuous insulation layers shall be summed to determine compliance with the continuous insulation *R*-value requirements. Cavity insulation *R*-values shall not be used to determine compliance with the continuous insulation *R*-value requirements in Table R402.1.3. Computed *R*-values shall not include an *R*-value for other building materials or air films. Where insulated siding is used for the purpose of complying with the continuous insulation requirements of Table R402.1.3, the manufacturer's labeled *R*-value for the insulated siding shall be reduced by R-0.6.

~~**R402.1.4 *U*-factor alternative.** An assembly with a *U*-factor equal to or less than that specified in Table R402.1.4 shall be permitted as an alternative to the *R*-value in Table R402.1.2.~~

R402.1.5 Total UA alternative. Where the total *building thermal envelope* UA, the sum of *U*-factor times assembly area, is less than or equal to the total UA resulting from multiplying the *U*-factors in Table R402.1.2 by the same assembly area as in the proposed *building*, the *building* shall be considered to be in compliance with Table R402.1.2. The UA calculation shall be performed using a method consistent with the ASHRAE *Handbook of Fundamentals* and shall include the thermal bridging effects of framing materials. In addition to UA compliance, the SHGC requirements of Table R402.1.2 and the maximum fenestration *U*-factors of Section R402.5 shall be met.

North Carolina approved version of REScheck software shall be permitted to demonstrate compliance with this ~~code~~ section. Envelope requirements may not be traded off against the use of high efficiency heating or cooling equipment. No tradeoff calculations are needed for required termite inspection and treatment gaps.

R402.2 Specific insulation requirements ~~(Prescriptive).~~ In addition to the requirements of Section R402.1, insulation shall meet the specific requirements of Sections R402.2.1 through ~~R402.2.15~~ R402.2.12.

R402.2.1 Ceilings with attic spaces. Where Section ~~R402.1.2~~ R402.1.3 requires ~~R-38~~ R-49 insulation in the ceiling or attic, installing ~~R-30~~ R-38 over 100 percent of the ceiling or attic area requiring insulation shall satisfy the requirement for ~~R-38~~ R-49 insulation wherever the full height of uncompressed ~~R-30~~ R-38 insulation extends over the wall top plate at the eaves. Where Section R402.1.3 requires R-60 insulation in the ceiling, installing R-49 over 100 percent of the ceiling area requiring insulation shall satisfy the requirement for R-60 insulation wherever the full height of uncompressed R-49 insulation extends over the wall top plate at the eaves. This reduction shall not apply to ~~the U-factor alternative~~ the insulation and fenestration criteria in Section ~~R402.1.4~~ R402.1.2 and the Total UA alternative in Section R402.1.5.

~~Exceptions:~~
~~1. When insulation is installed in a fully enclosed attic floor system, as described in Appendix 1.2.1, R-30 shall be deemed compliant.~~
~~2. In roof edge and other details such as bay win- dows, dormers, and similar areas where the space is limited, the insulation must fill the space up to the air baffle.~~

Exception. In other details such as bay window and dormer roofs, and similar areas where the space is limited, the available space shall be filled with insulation for unvented details, and to the insulation baffle for vented assemblies.

~~**R402.2.2 Ceilings without attic spaces.** Where Section R402.1.2 would require R-38 insulation and the design of the roof/ceiling assembly, including cathedral ceilings, bay windows and other similar areas, does not allow sufficient space for the required insulation, the minimum required insulation for such roof/ceiling assemblies shall be R-30. This reduction of insulation from the requirements of Sec- tion R402.1.2 shall be limited to 500 square feet (46 m²) of the total insulated ceiling area. This reduction shall not apply to the U-factor alternative approach in Section R402.1.4 and the total UA alternative in Section R402.1.5.~~

R402.2.2 Ceilings without attics. Where Section R402.1.3 requires insulation *R*-values greater than R-30 in the interstitial space above a ceiling and below the structural roof deck, and the design of the roof/ceiling assembly including cathedral ceilings, dormers, bay windows and other similar areas, does not allow sufficient space for the required insulation, the minimum required insulation *R*-value for such roof/ceiling assemblies shall be R-30. Insulation shall extend over the top of the wall plate to the outer edge of such plate and shall not be compressed. This reduction of insulation from the requirements of Section R402.1.3 shall be limited to 500 square feet (46 m^2) or 20 percent of the total insulated ceiling area, whichever is less. This reduction shall not apply to the Total UA alternative in Section R402.1.5.

R402.2.3 Soffit baffle. For air-permeable insulation in vented attics, a baffle shall be installed adjacent to soffit vents. Baffles shall maintain a net free area opening equal to or greater than the size of the vent. The baffle shall extend over the top of the attic insulation. The baffle shall be permitted to be any solid material. The baffle shall be installed to the outer edge of the *exterior wall* top plate so as to provide maximum space for attic insulation coverage over the top plate. Where soffit venting is not continuous, baffles shall be installed continuously to prevent ventilation air in the eave /soffit from bypassing the baffle.

TABLE ~~R402.1.4~~
EQUIVALENT *U*-FACTORS[a]

CLIMATE ZONE	FENESTRATION *U*-FACTOR[d]	SKYLIGHT *U*-FACTOR	CEILING *U*-FACTOR	FRAME WALL *U*-FACTOR	MASS WALL *U*-FACTOR[b]	FLOOR *U*-FACTOR	BASEMENT WALL *U*-FACTOR	CRAWL SPACE WALL *U*-FACTOR
3	0.35	0.55	0.030	~~0.077~~	0.141	0.047	0.091[c]	0.136
4	0.35	0.55	0.030	0.077	0.141	0.047	0.059	0.065
5	0.35	0.55	0.030	0.061	0.082	0.033	0.059	0.065

a. Nonfenestration *U*-factors shall be obtained from measurement, calculation or an approved source.

b. When more than half the insulation is on the interior, the mass wall *U*-factors shall be a maximum of 0.07 in Climate Zone 3, 0.07 in Climate Zone 4 and 0.054 in Climate Zone 5.

c. Basement wall *U*-factor of 0.360 in warm-humid locations as defined by Figure R301.1 and Table R301.1.

d. A maximum of two glazed fenestration product assemblies having a *U*-factor no greater than 0.55 and a SHGC no greater than 0.70 shall be permitted to be substituted for minimum code compliant fenestration product assemblies without penalty. When applying this note and using the REScheck "UA Trade-off" compliance method to allow continued use of the software, the applicable fenestration products shall be modeled as meeting the *U*-factor of 0.35 and the SHGC of 0.30, as applicable, but the fenestration products actual *U*-factor and actual SHGC shall be noted in the comments section of the software for documentation of application of this note to the applicable products. Compliance for these substitute products shall be verified compared to the allowed substituted maximum *U*-value requirement and maximum SHGC requirement, as applicable.

TABLE R402.1.2

MAXIMUM ASSEMBLY *U*-FACTORS[a] AND FENESTRATION REQUIREMENTS

CLIMATE ZONE	FENESTRATION *U*-FACTOR[f]	SKYLIGHT *U*-FACTOR	**GLAZED FENESTRATION SHGC[d, e]**	CEILING *U*-FACTOR[g]	WOOD FRAME WALL *U*-FACTOR	MASS WALL *U*-FACTOR[b]	FLOOR *U*-FACTOR	BASEMENT WALL *U*-FACTOR	CRAWL SPACE WALL *U*-FACTOR
3	0.30	0.55	0.25	0.026	0.060	0.098	0.047	0.091[c]	0.136
4	0.30	0.55	0.40	0.024	0.045	0.098	0.047	0.059	0.065
5	0.30	0.55	NR	0.024	0.045	0.082	0.033	0.050	0.055

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

a. Nonfenestration *U*-factors shall be obtained from measurement, calculation or an approved source.

b. Mass walls shall be in accordance with Section R402.2.5. Where more than half the insulation is on the interior, the mass wall *U*-factors shall not exceed 0.12 in Climate Zone 3, 0.087 in Climate Zone 4, 0.065 in Climate Zone 5.

c. In Warm Humid locations as defined by Figure R301.1 and Table R301.1, the basement wall *U*-factor shall not exceed 0.360.

d. The SHGC column applies to all glazed fenestration.

Exception: In Climate Zones 0 through 3, skylights shall be permitted to be excluded from glazed fenestration SHGC requirements provided that the SHGC for such skylights does not exceed 0.30.

e. Deleted.

f. A maximum *U*-factor of 0.32 shall apply to vertical fenestration products installed in buildings located either:

1. Above 4,000 feet in elevation above sea level, or
2. In windborne debris regions where protection of openings is required by Section R301.2.1.2 of the *International Residential Code*.

g. Roofs insulated at the deck (above, below, or combination) shall meet the U-factors for the climate zone of the building location.

TABLE ~~R402.1.2~~
INSULATION AND FENESTRATION REQUIREMENTS BY COMPONENT[a]

CLIMATE ZONE	FENESTRATION *U*-FACTOR[b, j]	SKYLIGHT[b] *U*-FACTOR	GLAZED FENESTRATION SHGC[b, k]	CEILING *R*-VALUE[m]	WOOD FRAME WALL *R*-VALUE	MASS WALL *R*-VALUE[i]	FLOOR *R*-VALUE	BASEMENT[c, o] WALL *R*-VALUE	SLAB[d] *R*-VALUE & DEPTH	CRAWL SPACE[c] WALL *R*-VALUE
3	0.35	0.55	0.30	38 or 30ci[l]	15 or 13+2.5[h]	5/13 or 5/10ci	19	5/13[f]	0	5/13
4	0.35	0.55	0.30	38 or 30ci[l]	15 or 13+2.5[h]	5/13 or 5/10ci	19	10 /15	10	10/15
5	0.35	0.55	NR	38 or 30ci[l]	19[n] or 13+5[h] or 15+3[h]	13/17 or 13/12.5ci	30[g]	10/15	10	10/19

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

~~a. R-values are minimums. *U*-factors and SHGC are maximums. When insulation is installed in a cavity which is less than the label or design thickness of the insulation, the installed *R*-value of the insulation shall not be less than the *R*-value specified in the table.~~
~~b. The fenestration *U*-factor column excludes skylights. The SHGC column applies to all glazed fenestration.~~
~~c. “10/15” means R-10 continuous insulated sheathing on the interior or exterior of the home or R-15 cavity insulation at the interior of the basement wall or crawl space wall.~~
~~d. For monolithic slabs, insulation shall be applied from the inspection gap downward to the bottom of the footing or a maximum of 24 inches below grade, whichever is less. For floating slabs, insulation shall extend to the bottom of the foundation wall or 24 inches, whichever is less. (See Appendix R2). R-5 shall be added to the required slab edge *R*-values for heated slabs.~~
~~e. Deleted.~~
~~f. Basement wall insulation is not required in warm-humid locations as defined by Figure R301.1 and Table R301.1.~~
~~g. Or insulation sufficient to fill the framing cavity, R-19 minimum.~~
~~h. The first value is cavity insulation, the second value is continuous insulation, so “13+5” means R-13 cavity insulation plus R-5 continuous insulation. If structural sheathing covers 25 percent or less of the exterior, insulating sheathing is not required where structural sheathing is used. If structural sheathing covers more than 25 percent of exterior, structural sheathing shall be supplemented with insulated sheathing of at least R-2.~~
~~i. The second *R*-value applies when more than half the insulation is on the interior of the mass wall.~~
~~j. In addition to the exemption in Section R402.3.3, a maximum of two glazed fenestration product assemblies having a *U*-factor no greater than 0.55 shall be permitted to be substituted for minimum code compliant fenestration product assemblies without penalty.~~
~~k. In addition to the exemption in Section R402.3.3, a maximum of two glazed fenestration product assemblies having a SHGC no greater than 0.70 shall be permitted to be substituted for minimum code compliant fenestration product assemblies without penalty.~~
~~l. R-30 shall be deemed to satisfy the ceiling insulation requirement wherever the full height of uncompressed R-30 insulation extends over the wall top plate at the eaves. Otherwise R-38 insulation is required where adequate clearance exists or insulation must extend to either the insulation baffle or within 1 inch of the attic roof deck.~~
~~m. Table value required except for roof edge where the space is limited by the pitch of the roof; there the insulation must fill the space up to the air baffle.~~
~~n. R -19 fiberglass batts compressed and installed in a nominal 2 × 6 framing cavity is deemed to comply. Fiberglass batts rated R-19 or higher compressed and installed in a 2 × 4 wall is not deemed to comply.~~

~~o. Basement wall meeting the minimum mass wall specific heat content requirement may use the mass wall *R*-value as the minimum requirement.~~

TABLE R402.1.3
INSULATION MINIMUM *R*-VALUES AND FENESTRATION REQUIREMENTS BY COMPONENT[a]

CLIMATE ZONE	FENESTRATION *U*-FACTOR[b, i]	SKYLIGHT[b] *U*-FACTOR	GLAZED FENESTRATION SHGC[b, e]	CEILING *R*-VALUE[j]	WOOD FRAME WALL *R*-VALUE[g]	MASS WALL *R*-VALUE[h]	FLOOR *R*-VALUE	BASEMENT[c,g] WALL *R*-VALUE	SLAB[d] *R*-VALUE & DEPTH	CRAWL SPACE[c,g] WALL *R*-VALUE
3	.30	0.55	0.25	49	20 or 13 + 5ci or 0 + 15	8/13	19	5ci or 13[f]	10ci, 2 ft	5ci or 13[f]
4	.30	0.55	0.40	60	20 + 5 or 13 + 10ci or 0 + 15	8/13	19	10ci or 13	10ci, 4 ft	10ci or 13
5	0.30[i]	0.55	0.40	60	20 + 5 or 13 + 10ci or 0 + 15	13/17	30	15ci or 19 or 13 + 5ci	10ci, 4 ft	15ci or 19 or 13 + 5ci

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.
NR = Not Required.

ci = continuous insulation.

a. *R*-values are minimums. *U*-factors and SHGC are maximums. Where insulation is installed in a cavity that is less than the label or design thickness of the insulation, the installed *R*-value of the insulation shall be not less than the *R*-value specified in the table.

b. The fenestration *U*-factor column excludes skylights. The SHGC column applies to all glazed fenestration.

Exception: In Climate Zones 0 through 3, skylights shall be permitted to be excluded from glazed fenestration SHGC requirements provided that the SHGC for such skylights does not exceed 0.30.

c. "5ci or 13" means R-5 continuous insulation (ci) on the interior or exterior surface of the wall or R-13 cavity insulation on the interior side of the wall. "10ci or 13" means R-10 continuous insulation (ci) on the interior or exterior surface of the wall or R-13 cavity insulation on the interior side of the wall. "15ci or 19 or 13 + 5ci" means R-15 continuous insulation (ci) on the interior or exterior surface of the wall; or R-19 cavity insulation on the interior side of the wall; or R-13 cavity insulation on the interior of the wall in addition to R-5 continuous insulation on the interior or exterior surface of the wall.

d. R-5 insulation shall be provided under the full slab area of a heated slab in addition to the required slab edge insulation *R*-value for slabs. as indicated in the table. The slab-edge insulation for heated slabs shall not be required to extend below the slab.

e. There are no SHGC requirements in the Marine Zone.

f. Basement wall insulation is not required in Warm Humid locations as defined by Figure R301.1 and Table R301.1.

g. The first value is cavity insulation; the second value is continuous insulation. Therefore, as an example, "13 + 5" means R-13 cavity insulation plus R-5 continuous insulation.

h. Mass walls shall be in accordance with Section R402.2.5. The second *R*-value applies where more than half of the insulation is on the interior of the mass wall.

i. A maximum *U*-factor of 0.32 shall apply in Climate Zone 5 to vertical fenestration products installed in buildings located either:

1. Above 4,000 feet in elevation, or
2. In windborne debris regions where protection of openings is required by Section R301.2.1.2 of the *International Residential Code*.

j. Roofs insulated at the deck (above, below, or combination) shall meet the U-factors in Table R402.1.2.

~~**R402.2.4 Access hatches and doors.** Horizontal access hatches from conditioned spaces to *unconditioned spaces* such as attics and crawl spaces shall be weatherstripped and insulated to an R-10 minimum value and vertical doors to such spaces shall be weatherstripped and insulated to R-5. Access shall be provided to all equipment that prevents damaging or compressing the insulation. A wood-framed or equivalent baffle or retainer is required to be provided when loose-fill insulation is installed, the purpose of which is to prevent the loose-fill insulation from spilling into the living space when the attic access is opened, and to provide a permanent means of maintaining the installed *R*-value of the loose-fill insulation.~~

~~**Exception:**~~

1. ~~Full-size vertical doors that provide access from conditioned to unconditioned spaces shall be per- mitted to meet the fen- estration requirements of Table R402.1.2 based on the appli- cable climate zone specified in Chapter 3.~~
2. ~~Pull down stair systems shall be weatherstripped and insulated with a minimum R-5 insulation. The insulation shall not interfere with proper operation of the stair. Nonrigid insulation materials are not allowed. Additional insulation systems that en- close the stair system from above are allowed. Exposed foam plastic must meet the provisions of the Building Code or Residential Code, respectively.~~

R402.2.4 Access hatches and doors. Access hatches and doors from conditioned to unconditioned spaces such as attics and crawl spaces shall be insulated to the same *R*-value required by Table R402.1.3 for the wall or ceiling in which they are installed.

Exceptions:

1. Vertical doors providing access from conditioned spaces to unconditioned spaces that comply with the fenestration requirements of Table R402.1.3 based on the applicable climate zone specified in Chapter 3.
2. Horizontal pull-down, stair-type access hatches in ceiling assemblies that provide access from conditioned to un-conditioned spaces in Climate Zones 3,4, & 5 shall not be required to comply with the insulation level of the sur-rounding surfaces provided the hatch meets all of the following:

   2.1. The average *U*-factor of the hatch shall be less than or equal to U-0.10 or have an average insulation *R*-value of R-10 or greater.

2.2. Not less than 75 percent of the panel area shall have an insulation *R*-value of R-13 or greater.

2.3. The net area of the framed opening shall be less than or equal to 13.5 square feet (1.25 m^2).

2.4. The perimeter of the hatch edge shall be weatherstripped.

The reduction shall not apply to the total UA alternative in Section R402.1.5.

R402.2.4.1 Access hatches and door insulation installation and retention. Vertical or horizontal access hatches and doors from *conditioned spaces* to *unconditioned spaces* such as attics and crawl spaces shall be weatherstripped. Access that prevents damaging or compressing the insulation shall be provided to all equipment. Where loose-fill insulation is installed, a wood-framed or equivalent baffle or retainer, or dam shall be installed to prevent the loose-fill insulation from spilling into the living spaces, from higher to lower sections of the attic and from attics covering conditioned spaces to unconditioned spaces. The baffle or retainer shall provide a permanent means of maintaining the installed *R*-value of the loose-fill insulation.

R402.2.5 Mass walls. Mass walls for the purposes of this chapter shall be considered walls of concrete block, concrete, insulated concrete form (ICF), masonry cavity, brick (other than brick veneer), earth (adobe, compressed earth block, rammed earth) and solid timber/logs, or any other walls meeting the following:

~~Masonry or concrete walls~~
~~having a mass greater than r equal to 30 pounds per square foot (146 kg/m²). Solid wood walls having a mass greater than 20 pounds per square foot (98 kg/m²). Any walls having a heat capacity greater than or equal to 6 Btu/ ft² • K)].~~

- Masonry or concrete walls having a mass greater than or equal to 30 pounds per square foot (146 kg/m$_2$).
- Solid wood walls having a mass greater than 20 pounds per square foot (98 kg/m$_2$).
- Any walls having a heat capacity greater than or equal to 6 Btu/ft$_2$ • °F [266 J/(m$_2$ • K)].

R402.2.6 Steel-frame ceilings, walls and floors. Steel-frame ceilings, walls, and floors shall ~~meet~~ comply with the insulation requirements of Table R402.2.6 or the *U*-factor requirements of ~~Table R402.1.4~~ R402.1.2. The calculation of the *U*-factor for a steel-frame envelope assembly shall use a series-parallel path calculation method.

TABLE R402.2.6
STEEL-FRAME CEILING, WALL AND FLOOR INSULATION *R*-VALUES

WOOD FRAME *R*-VALUE REQUIREMENT	COLD-FORMED STEEL-FRAME EQUIVALENT *R*-VALUE[a]
Steel Truss Ceilings[b]	
R-30	R-38 or R-30 + 3 or R-26 + 5
R-38	R-49 or R-38 + 3
R-49	R-38 + 5
Steel Joist Ceilings[b]	
R-30	R-38 in 2 × 4 or 2 × 6 or 2 × 8 R-49 in any framing
R-38	R-49 in 2 × 4 or 2 × 6 or 2 × 8 or 2 × 10
Steel-frame Wall, 16 inches on center	
R-13	~~R-19+2.1~~ R-13 + 4.2 or R-21 + 2.8 or R-0 + 9.3 or R-15 + 3.8 or R-21 + 3.1

~~R-13+3~~ R-13 + 5	~~R-0 + 11.2~~ R-0 + 15 or ~~R-13 + 6.1~~ R-13 + 9 or ~~R-15+5.7~~ R-15 + 8.5 or ~~R-19 + 5.0~~ R-19 + 8 or ~~R-21+4.7~~ R-21 + 7
R-13 + 10	R-0 + 20 or R-13 + 15 or R-15 + 14 or R-19 + 13 or R-21 + 13
R-20	R-0 + 14.0 or R-13 + 8.9 or R-15 + 8.5 or R-19 + 7.8 or R-21 + 7.5
R-20 + 5	R-13 + 12.7 or R-15 + 12.3 or R-19 + 11.6 or R-21 + 11.3 or R-25 + 10.9
R-21	R-0 + 14.6 or R-13 + 9.5 or R-15 + 9.1 or R-19 + 8.4 or R-21 + 8.1 or R-25 + 7.7
Steel-frame Wall, 24 inches on center	
R-13	R-0 + 9.3 or R-13 + 3.0 or R-15 + 2.4
~~R-13 + 3~~	~~R-0+11.2 or R-13 + 4.9 or R-15 + 4.3 or R-19 + 6.3 or R-21 + 5.9~~
~~R-13 + 5~~	~~R-0 + 15 or R-13 + 7.5 or R-15 + 7 or R-19 + 6 or R-21 + 6~~
R-13 + 10	R-0 + 20 or R-13 + 13 or R-15 + 12 or R-19 + 11 or R-21 + 11
R-20	R-0 + 14.0 or R-13 + 7.7 or R-15 + 7.1 or R-19 + 6.3 or R-21 + 5.9
R-20 + 5	R-13 + 11.5 or R-15 + 10.9 or R-19 + 10.1 or R-21 + 9.7 or R-25 + 9.1
R-21	R-0 + 14.6 or R-13 + 8.3 or R-15 + 7.7 or R-19 + 6.9 or R-21 + 6.5 or R-25 + 5.9
Steel Joist Floor	
R-13	R-19 in 2 × 6, or R-19 + 6 in 2 × 8 or 2 × 10
R-19	R-19 + 6 in 2 × 6, or R-19 + 12 in 2 × 8 or 2 × 10

a. The first value is cavity insulation *R*-value; the second value is continuous insulation *R*-value. Therefore, for example, "R-30 + 3" means R-30 cavity insulation plus R-3 continuous insulation.

b. Insulation exceeding the height of the framing shall cover the framing.

~~**R402.2.8 Floors.** Floor framing-cavity insulation shall be installed to maintain permanent contact with the underside of the subfloor decking. The distance between tension sup- port wires or other devices that hold the floor insulation in place against the subfloor shall be no more than 18 inches. In addition, supports shall be located no further than 6 inches from each end of the insulation.~~

~~**Exception:** An enclosed floor cavity such as garage ceil- ings, cantilevers or buildings on pilings with an enclosed floor cavity with the insulation fully in contact with the lower air barrier. In this case, the band boards shall be insulated to maintain thermal envelope continuity.~~

~~**R402.2.8**~~ **R402.2.7** **Floors.** Floor *cavity insulation* shall comply with one of the following:

1. Installation shall be installed to maintain permanent contact with the underside of the subfloor decking in accordance with manufacturer instructions to maintain required *R*-value or readily fill the available cavity space. The distance between tension support wires or other devices that hold the floor insulation in place against the subfloor shall be no more than 18 inches. In addition, supports shall be located no further than 6 inches from each end of the insulation.

2. Floor framing cavity insulation shall be permitted to be in contact with the top side of sheathing/gypsum separating the cavity and the unconditioned space below. Insulation shall extend from the bottom to the top of all perimeter floor framing members (the band boards) and the framing members shall be air sealed.

3. A combination of cavity and continuous insulation shall be installed so that the cavity insulation is in contact with the top side of the continuous insulation that is installed on the underside of the floor framing separating the cavity and the unconditioned space below. The combined *R*-value of the cavity and continuous insulation shall equal the required *R*-value for floors. Insulation shall extend from the bottom to the top of all perimeter floor framing members and the framing members shall be air sealed.

~~**R402.2.9 Basement walls.** Walls associated with condi- tioned basements shall be insulated from the top of the *basement wall* down to 10 feet (3048 mm) below grade or to the basement floor, whichever is less. Walls associated with unconditioned basements shall meet this requirement unless the floor overhead is insulated in accordance with Sections R402.1.2 and R402.2.8. Foam plastic insulation applied to exterior of basement walls shall be provided with termite inspection and treatment gaps in accordance with Appendix R2.~~

R402.2.8 Basement walls. Basement walls shall be insulated in accordance with Table R402.1.3.

Exception: Basement walls associated with unconditioned basements where all of the following requirements are met:

1. The floor overhead, including the underside stairway stringer leading to the basement, is insulated in accordance with Section R402.1.3 and applicable provisions of Sections R402.2 and R402.2.7.
2. There are no uninsulated duct, domestic hot water, or hydronic heating surfaces exposed to the basement.
3. There are no HVAC supply or return diffusers serving the basement.
4. The walls surrounding the stairway and adjacent to conditioned space are insulated in accordance with Section R402.1.3 and applicable provisions of Section R402.2.
5. The door(s) leading to the basement from conditioned spaces are insulated in accordance with Sections R402.1.3 and applicable provisions of Section R402.2, and weatherstripped in accordance with Section R402.4.
6. The building thermal envelope separating the basement from adjacent conditioned spaces complies with Section R402.4.

R402.2.8.1 Basement wall insulation installation. Where *basement walls* are insulated, the insulation shall be installed from the top of the *basement wall* down to 10 feet (3048 mm) below grade or to the basement floor, whichever is less. Foam plastic insulation applied to exterior of basement walls shall be provided with termite inspection and treatment gaps in accordance with Appendix R2.

~~**R402.2.10 Slab-on-grade floors.** Slab-on-grade floors with a floor surface less than 12 inches (305 mm) below grade shall be insulated in accordance with Table R402.1.2. The top edge of the insulation installed between the *exterior wall* and the edge of the interior slab shall be permitted to be cut at a 45-degree (0.79 rad) angle away from the *exterior wall*. Slab edge insulation shall have a 2- inch termite inspection gap consistent with Appendix R2 of this code.~~

R402.2.9 Slab-on-grade floors. Slab-on-grade floors with a floor surface less than 12 inches (305 mm) below grade shall be insulated in accordance with Table R402.1.3.

Exception: Deleted.

R402.2.9.1 Slab-on-grade floor insulation installation. Where installed, the insulation shall extend downward from the top of the slab on the outside or inside of the foundation wall. Insulation located below grade shall be extended the distance provided in Table R402.1.3 or the distance of the proposed design, as applicable, by any combination of vertical insulation, insulation extending under the slab or insulation extending out from the building. Insulation extending away from the building shall be protected by pavement or by not less than 10 inches (254 mm) of soil. The top edge of the insulation installed between the *exterior wall* and the edge of the interior slab shall be permitted to be cut at a 45-degree (0.79 rad) angle away from the *exterior wall*. Slab edge insulation shall have a 2-inch termite inspection gap consistent with Appendix R2 of this code.

~~**R402.2.11 Closed crawl space walls.** Where the floor above a closed crawl space is not insulated, the exterior crawlspace walls shall be insulated in accordance with Table R402.1.2.~~

~~Wall insulation may be located in any combination of the outside and inside wall surfaces and within the struc- tural cavities or materials of the wall system.~~

~~Wall insulation requires that the exterior wall band joist area of the floor frame be insulated. Wall insulation shall begin 3 inches (76.2 mm) below the top of the masonry foundation wall and shall extend down to 3 inches (76.2 mm) above the top of the footing or concrete floor, 3 inches (76.2 mm) above the interior ground surface or 24 inches (609.6 mm) below the outside finished ground level, whichever is less. (See Appendix R1.2.2 details).~~

~~Termite inspection, clearance, and wicking gaps are allowed in wall insulation systems. Insulation may be omitted in the gap area without energy penalty. The allow- able insulation gap widths are listed in Table 402.2.11. If gap width exceeds the allowances, one of the following energy compliance options shall be met:~~

~~1Wall insulation is not allowed and the required insu- lation value shall be provided in the floor system.~~

~~2Compliance shall be demonstrated with energy trade-off methods provided by a North Carolina- specific version of REScheck or the UA Alternative method or Section R405.~~

~~**R402.2.11**~~ **R402.2.10 Crawl space walls.** Crawl space walls shall be insulated in accordance with Table R402.1.3.

Exception: Crawl space walls associated with a crawl space that is vented to the outdoors and the floor overhead is insulated in accordance with Table R402.1.3 and Section R402.2.7.

R402.2.10.1 Crawl space wall insulation installations. Where crawl space wall insulation is installed, it shall be permanently fastened to the wall and shall extend downward from the floor to the finished grade elevation and then vertically or horizontally for not less than an additional 24 inches (610 mm). Exposed earth in unvented crawl space foundations shall be covered with a continuous Class I vapor retarder in accordance with the *International Building Code* or *International Residential Code*, as applicable. Joints of the vapor retarder shall overlap by 6 inches (153 mm) and be sealed or taped. The edges of the vapor retarder shall extend not less than 6 inches (153 mm) up stem walls and shall be attached to the stem walls.

Wall insulation may be located in any combination of the outside and inside wall surfaces and within the structural cavities or materials of the wall system. Wall insulation requires that the exterior wall band joist area of the floor frame be insulated. Wall insulation shall begin 3 inches (76.2 mm) below the top of the masonry foundation wall and shall extend down to 3 inches (76.2 mm) above the top of the footing or concrete floor, 3 inches (76.2 mm) above the interior ground surface or 24 inches (609.6 mm) below the outside finished ground level, whichever is less. (See Appendix R1.2.2 details).

Termite inspection, clearance, and wicking gaps are allowed in wall insulation systems. Insulation may be omitted in the gap area without energy penalty. The allowable insulation gap widths are listed in Table 402.2.10. If gap width exceeds the allowances, one of the following energy compliance options shall be met:

1. Wall insulation is not allowed and the required insulation value shall be provided in the floor system.
2. Compliance shall be demonstrated with energy trade-off methods provided by ~~a North Carolinas specific version of REScheck or~~ the UA Alternative method or Section R401.2.2

TABLE ~~R402.2.11~~ R402.2.10
WALL INSULATION ALLOWANCES FOR TERMITE
TREATMENT AND INSULATION GAPS

GAP WIDTH (inches)		INSULATION LOCATION	GAP DESCRIPTION
Minimum	Maximum		
2	3	Outside	Above grade inspection between top of insulation and bottom of siding
4	6	Outside	Below grade treatment
3[a]	4[a]	Inside	Wall inspection between top of insulation and bottom of sill
3[a]	4[a]	Inside	Clearance/wicking space

			between bottom of insulation and top of ground surface, footing, or concrete floor

a. No insulation shall be required on masonry walls of 9 inches in height or less.

~~**R402.2.12**~~ **R402.2.11 Masonry veneer.** Insulation shall not be required on the horizontal portion of a foundation that supports a masonry veneer.

~~**R402.2.13**~~ **R402.2.12 Sunroom and heated garage insulation.** *Sunrooms* enclosing *conditioned space* and heated garages shall meet the insulation requirements of this code.

Exception: For *sunrooms* and heated garages provided with *thermal isolation*, and enclosed *conditioned space*, the following exceptions to the insulation requirements of this code shall apply:

1. The minimum ceiling insulation *R*-values shall be R-19 in *Climate Zones* 3 and 4 and R-24 in *Climate Zone 5*~~.~~
2. The minimum wall insulation *R*-value shall be R-13 in all *climate zones*. ~~New walls~~ Walls separating a *sunroom* or heated garage with *thermal isolation* from *conditioned space* shall comply with the *building thermal envelope* requirements of this code.

~~**R402.2.14 Framed cavity walls.** The exterior thermal envelope wall insulation shall be installed in contact and continuous alignment with the building envelope air bar- rier. Insulation shall be free from installation gaps, voids, or compression. For framed walls, the cavity insulation shall be enclosed on all sides with solid rigid material or Rim joists are not required to be enclosed on all sides. Wall insulation shall be enclosed at the following loca- tions when installed on exterior walls prior to being covered by subsequent construction, consistent with the Appendix R1.2.3 of this code:~~

~~1.Tubs.~~

~~2.Showers.~~

~~3.Stairs.~~

~~4. Fireplace units (enclosed with rigid material only).~~

~~**R402.2.15 Attic knee walls.** Enclosure of wall cavity insulation also applies to walls that adjoin attic spaces by placing a rigid material or air barrier material on the attic space side of the wall on the attic space side of the wall consistent with the Appendix R1.2.3 of this code. Joints shall be air sealed. Noninsulating Class I vapor retarders, such as polyethylene, shall not be allowed.~~

R402.3 Fenestration ~~(Prescriptive).~~ In addition to the requirements of Section R402, fenestration shall comply with Sections R402.3.1 through R402.3.5.

R402.3.1 *U*-factor. An area-weighted average of fenestration products shall be permitted to satisfy the *U*-factor requirements.

R402.3.2 Glazed fenestration SHGC. An area-weighted average of fenestration products more than 50-percent glazed shall be permitted to satisfy the SHGC requirements.

Dynamic glazing shall be permitted to satisfy the SHGC requirements of Table R402.1.2 provided that the ratio of the higher to lower labeled SHGC is greater than or equal to 2.4, and the *dynamic glazing* is automatically controlled to modulate the amount of solar gain into the space in multiple steps. *Dynamic glazing* shall be considered separately from other fenestration, and area-weighted averaging with other fenestration that is not dynamic glazing shall be prohibited.

Exception: Dynamic glazing shall not be required to comply with this section where both the lower and higher labeled SHGC comply with the requirements of Table R402.1.2.

R402.3.3 Glazed fenestration exemption. ~~Either two glazed fenestration assemblies or up to 24 square feet (2.2 m²).~~ Not greater than 15 square feet (1.4 m^2) of glazed fenestration per *dwelling unit* shall be exempt from the *U*-factor and SHGC requirements in Section R402.1.2. This exemption shall not apply to the Total UA alternative in Section R402.1.5.

~~**R402.3.4 Opaque door.** Opaque doors separating conditioned from *unconditioned* space shall have a maximum *U*-factor of 0.35.~~

~~**Exception:** One side-hinged opaque door assembly is exempted from the *U*-factor requirement in Section~~ R402.1.2. ~~This exemption shall not apply to the *U*-fac- tor alternative approach in Section R402.1.4 and the total UA alternative in Section R402.1.5.~~

R402.3.4 Opaque door exemption. One side-hinged opaque door assembly not greater than 24 square feet (2.22 m^2) in area shall be exempt from the *U*-factor requirement in Section R402.1.2. This exemption shall not apply to the Total UA alternative in Section R402.1.5.

~~**R402.3.5 Sunroom fenestration.** *Sunrooms* enclosing *conditioned space* shall meet the fenestration requirements of this code.~~

~~**Exceptions:**~~

1. ~~For *sunrooms* with *thermal isolation* and enclos- ing *conditioned space* in *Climate Zones* 3 through 5, the maximum fenestration *U*-factor shall be 0.40 and the maximum skylight *U*-factor shall be 0.75. Sunrooms with cooling systems shall have a maximum fenestration SHGC of 0.40 for all glaz- ing.~~
2. ~~A maximum of two glazed fenestration product assemblies having a *U*-factor no greater than 0.55 and, when cooling is provided, a SHGC no greater than 0.70 shall be permitted to be substi- tuted for minimum code compliant fenestration product assemblies without penalty.~~

R402.3.5 Sunroom and heated garage fenestration. *Sunrooms* and heated garages enclosing *conditioned space* shall comply with the fenestration requirements of this code.

Exception: In Climate Zones 3 through 5 for *sunrooms* and heated garages with *thermal isolation* and enclosing *conditioned space*, the fenestration *U*-factor shall not exceed 0.45 and the skylight *U*-factor shall not exceed 0.70.

New fenestration separating ~~the~~ a *sunroom* or heated garage with *thermal isolation* from *conditioned space* shall comply with the *building thermal envelope* requirements of this code.

R402.4 Air leakage control ~~(Mandatory).~~ The *building thermal envelope* shall be constructed to limit air leakage in accordance with the requirements of Sections R402.4.1 through ~~R402.4.6~~ R402.4.5.

~~**R402.4.1 Building thermal envelope.** The building ther- mal envelope shall be durably sealed to limit infiltration. The sealing methods between dissimilar materials shall allow for differential expansion and contraction. For all homes, where present, the following shall be caulked, gas- keted, weatherstripped or otherwise sealed with an air bar- rier material, or solid material consistent with Appendix R1.2.4 of this code:~~

~~1Blocking and sealing floor/ceiling systems and under knee walls open to unconditioned or exterior space.~~

~~2. Capping and sealing shafts or chases, including flue shafts.~~

~~3. Capping and sealing soffit or dropped ceiling areas.~~

~~4. Sealing HVAC register boots and return boxes to subfloor or drywall.~~

~~5. Seal exterior house wrap material joints and seams per manufacturer's instructions or, if house wrap joints are not sealed, seal exterior sheathing and exposed band joist joints including perimeter joints and edges of these materials.~~

~~**Exceptions:**~~

~~1Spray foam in building thermal envelope wall systems.~~

~~2Wall sheathing joints where wall sheathing is fully glued to framing.~~

~~**R402.4.2 Air sealing.** Building envelope air tightness shall be demonstrated by compliance with Section R402.4.2.1 or R402.4.2.2. Appendix R3 contains optional sample worksheets for visual inspection or testing for the permit holder's use only.~~

R402.4.1 Building thermal envelope air leakage. The *building thermal envelope* shall comply with Sections R402.4.1.1 through R402.4.1.3. The sealing methods between dissimilar materials shall allow for differential expansion and contraction.

R402.4.1.1 Installation. The components of the *building thermal envelope* as indicated in Table R402.4.1.1 shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and the criteria indicated in Table R402.4.1.1, as applicable to the method of construction. Where required by the *code official*, an *approved* third party shall inspect all components and verify compliance.

TABLE ~~R402.4.2~~
AIR BARRIER INSPECTION

COMPONENT	CRITERIA
Ceiling/attic	Sealants or gaskets provide a continuous air barrier system joining the top plate of framed walls with either the ceiling drywall or the top edge of wall drywall to prevent air leakage. Top plate penetrations are sealed. For ceiling finishes that are not air barrier systems such as tongue-and-groove planks, air barrier systems (for example, taped house wrap), shall be used above the finish. Note: It is acceptable that sealants or gaskets applied as part of the application of the drywall will not be observable by the code official.
Walls	Sill plate is gasketed or sealed to subfloor or slab.
Windows and doors	Space between window and exterior door jambs and framing is sealed.
Floors (including above garage and cantilevered floors)	The air barrier shall be installed at any exposed edge of insulation.
Penetrations	Utility penetrations through the building thermal envelope, including those for plumbing, electrical wiring, ductwork, security and fire alarm wiring, and control wiring, shall be sealed.
Garage separation	Air sealing is provided between the garage and conditioned spaces. An air barrier system shall be installed between the ceiling system above the garage and the ceiling system of interior spaces.
Ceiling penetrations	Ceiling electrical box penetrations and ceiling mechanical box penetrations shall be caulked, gasketed, or sealed at the penetration of the ceiling finish. See Appendix R1.2.4. **Exception:** Ceiling electrical boxes and ceiling mechanical boxes not penetrating the building thermal envelope.
Recessed lighting	Recessed light fixtures are air tight, IC-rated, and sealed to drywall. **Exception:** Fixtures in conditioned space.

TABLE R402.4.1.1
AIR BARRIER, AIR SEALING AND INSULATION INSTALLATION[a]

COMPONENT	AIR BARRIER CRITERIA	INSULATION INSTALLATION CRITERIA
General requirements	A continuous air barrier shall be installed in the building envelope. Breaks or joints in the air barrier shall be sealed.	Air-permeable insulation shall not be used as a sealing material.
Ceiling/attic	The air barrier in any dropped ceiling or soffit shall be aligned with the insulation and any gaps in the air barrier shall be sealed. Access openings, drop down stairs or knee wall doors to unconditioned attic spaces shall be sealed.	The insulation in any dropped ceiling/soffit shall be aligned with the air barrier.

Walls	The junction of the foundation and sill plate shall be sealed. The junction of the top plate and the top of exterior walls shall be sealed. Knee walls shall be sealed.	Cavities within corners and headers of frame walls shall be insulated by completely filling the cavity with a material having a thermal resistance, *R*-value, of not less than R-3 per inch. Exterior thermal envelope insulation for framed walls shall be installed in substantial contact and continuous alignment with the air barrier.
Windows, skylights and doors	The space between framing and skylights, and the jambs of windows and doors, shall be sealed.	—
Rim joists	Rim joists shall include an exterior air barrier.[b] The junctions of the rim board to the sill plate and the rim board and the subfloor shall be air sealed.	Rim joists shall be insulated so that the insulation maintains permanent contact with the exterior rim board.[b]
Floors, including cantilevered floors and floors above garages	The air barrier shall be installed at any exposed edge of insulation.	Floor framing cavity insulation shall be installed to maintain permanent contact with the underside of subfloor decking. Alternatively, floor framing cavity insulation shall be in contact with the top side of sheathing, or continuous insulation installed on the underside of floor framing and extending from the bottom to the top of all perimeter floor framing members.
Basement crawl space and slab foundations	Exposed earth in unvented crawl spaces shall be covered with a Class I vapor retarder/air barrier in accordance with Section R402.2.10. Penetrations through concrete foundation walls and slabs shall be air sealed. Class 1 vapor retarders shall not be used as an air barrier on below-grade walls and shall be installed in accordance with Section R702.7 of the *International Residential Code*.	Crawl space insulation, where provided instead of floor insulation, shall be installed in accordance with Section R402.2.10. Conditioned basement foundation wall insulation shall be installed in accordance with Section R402.2.8.1. Slab-on-grade floor insulation shall be installed in accordance with Section R402.2.10.
Shafts, penetrations	Duct and flue shafts and other similar penetrations to exterior or unconditioned space shall be sealed to allow for expansion, contraction and mechanical vibration. Utility penetrations of the air barrier shall be caulked, gasketed or otherwise sealed and shall allow for expansion, contraction of materials and mechanical vibration.	Insulation shall be fitted tightly around utilities passing through shafts and penetrations in the building thermal envelope to maintain required *R*-value.
Narrow cavities	Narrow cavities of 1 inch or less that are not able to be insulated shall be air sealed.	Batts to be installed in narrow cavities shall be cut to fit or narrow cavities shall be filled with insulation that on installation readily conforms to the available cavity space.
Garage separation	Air sealing shall be provided between the garage and conditioned spaces.	Insulated portions of the garage separation assembly shall be installed in accordance with Sections R303 and R402.2.7.

TABLE R402.4.1.1—continued

AIR BARRIER, AIR SEALING AND INSULATION INSTALLATION[a]

COMPONENT	AIR BARRIER CRITERIA	INSULATION INSTALLATION CRITERIA
Recessed lighting	Recessed light fixtures installed in the building thermal envelope shall be air sealed in accordance with Section R402.4.5.	Recessed light fixtures installed in the building thermal envelope shall be airtight and IC rated, and shall be buried or surrounded with insulation.

Plumbing, wiring or other obstructions	All holes created by wiring, plumbing or other obstructions in the air barrier assembly shall be air sealed.	Insulation shall be installed to fill the available space and surround wiring, plumbing, or other obstructions, unless the required *R*-value can be met by installing insulation and air barrier systems completely to the exterior side of the obstructions.
Shower/tub on exterior wall	The air barrier installed at exterior walls adjacent to showers and tubs shall separate the wall from the shower or tub.	Exterior walls adjacent to showers and tubs shall be insulated.
Electrical/phone box on exterior walls	The air barrier shall be installed behind electrical and communication boxes. Alternatively, air-sealed boxes shall be installed.	—
HVAC register boots	HVAC supply and return register boots that penetrate building thermal envelope shall be sealed to the subfloor, wall covering or ceiling penetrated by the boot.	—
Concealed sprinklers	Where required to be sealed, concealed fire sprinklers shall only be sealed in a manner that is recommended by the manufacturer. Caulking or other adhesive sealants shall not be used to fill voids between fire sprinkler cover plates and walls or ceilings.	—

a. Inspection of log walls shall be in accordance with the provisions of ICC 400.
b. Air barrier and insulation full enclosure is not required in unconditioned/ventilated attic spaces and at rim joists.

~~**R402.4.2.1 Visual inspection option.** Building enve- lope tightness shall be considered acceptable when items providing insulation enclosure in Section R402.2.14 and enclosure and air sealing in Section R402.2.15 and air sealing in Section R402.4.1 are addressed and when the items listed in Table R402.4.2, applicable to the method of construction, are certified by the builder, permit holder or registered design pro- fessional via the certificate in Appendix R1.1.~~

~~**R402.4.2.2 Testing option.** Building envelope tight- ness shall be considered acceptable when items provid- ing insulation enclosure in Section R402.2.14 and enclosure and air sealing in Section R402.2.15 and air sealing in Section R402.4.1 are addressed and when tested air leakage is less than or equal to one of the two following performance measurements:~~

~~1 0.30 CFM50/Square Foot of Surface Area (SFSA); or~~

~~2. Five (5) air changes per hour (ACH50)~~

~~when tested with a blower door fan assembly, at a pressure of 33.5 psf (50 Pa). A single point depressur- ization test (not temperature corrected) is sufficient to comply with this provision, provided that the blower door fan assembly has been certified by the manufac- turer to be capable of conducting tests in accordance with ASTM E779 or ASTM E1827. Testing shall occur after rough in and after installation of penetrations of the building envelope, including penetrations for utili- ties, plumbing, electrical, ventilation and combustion appliances. Testing shall be reported by the permit holder, a North Carolina licensed general contractor, a North Carolina licensed HVAC contractor, a North Carolina licensed home inspector, a *registered design professional*, a certified *BPI Envelope Professional* or a certified *HERS rater*.~~

~~During testing:~~

~~1 Exterior windows and doors, fireplace and stove doors shall be closed, but not sealed;~~

~~2 Dampers shall be closed, but not sealed, includ- ing exhaust, backdraft, and flue dampers;~~

~~3 Interior doors shall be open;~~

~~4 Exterior openings for continuous ventilation sys- tems, air intake ducted to the return side of the conditioning system, and energy or heat recovery ventilators shall be closed and sealed;~~

~~5 Heating and cooling system(s) shall be turned off; and~~

~~6 Supply and return registers shall not be sealed.~~

~~The air leakage information, building air leakage result, tester name, date, and contact information, shall be included on the certificate described in Section R401.3.~~

~~For Test Criteria 1 above, the report shall be pro- duced in the following manner: perform the blower door test and record the *CFM50*. Calculate the total square feet of surface area for the building thermal envelope (all floors, ceilings, and walls including win- dows and doors, bounding conditioned space) and record the area. Divide *CFM50* by the total square feet and record the result. If the result is less than or equal to~~
~~0.30 CFM50/SFSA the envelope tightness is accept- able; or~~

~~For Test Criteria 2 above, the report shall be pro- duced in the following manner: Perform a blower door test and record the *CFM50*. Multiply the CFM50 by 60 minutes to create CFHour50 and record. Then calculate the total conditioned volume of the home and record. Divide the CFH50 by the total volume and record the result. If the result is less than or qual to 5 ACH50, the envelope tightness is acceptable.~~

R402.4.1.2 Testing. The *building* or *dwelling unit* shall be tested for air leakage. The maximum air leakage rate for any *building* or *dwelling unit* under any compliance path shall not exceed 4.0 air changes per hour or 0.23 cubic feet per minute (CFM) per square foot [0.0079 $m^3/(s \times m^2)$] of dwelling unit enclosure area. Testing shall be conducted in accordance with ANSI/RESNET/ICC 380, ASTM E779, ASTM E3158 or ASTM E1827 and reported at a pressure of 0.2 inch w.g. (50 Pascals). Alternately, if using a higher test pressure of 0.30 in. w.g.(75 Pa), a maximum air leakage rate of 0.30 cubic feet per minute per square foot of dwelling unit enclosure area shall be met. Where required by the *code official*, testing shall be conducted by an *approved* third party. A written report of the results of the test shall be signed by the party conducting the test and provided to the *code official*. Testing shall be performed at any time after creation of all penetrations of the *building thermal envelope* have been sealed.

Exception: For heated, attached private garages and heated, detached private garages accessory to one- and two-family dwellings and townhouses not more than three stories above *grade plane* in height, building envelope tightness and insulation installation shall be considered acceptable where the items in Table R402.4.1.1, applicable to the method of construction, are field verified. Where required by the code official, an *approved* third party independent from the installer shall inspect both air barrier and insulation installation criteria. Heated, attached private garage space and heated, detached private garage space shall be thermally isolated from all other habitable, *conditioned spaces* in accordance with Sections R402.2.12 and R402.3.5, as applicable.

During testing:

1. Exterior windows and doors, fireplace and stove doors shall be closed, but not sealed, beyond the intended weatherstripping or other infiltration control measures.
2. Dampers including exhaust, intake, makeup air, backdraft and flue dampers shall be closed, but not sealed beyond intended infiltration control measures.
3. Interior doors, where installed at the time of the test, shall be open.
4. Exterior or interior terminations for continuous ventilation systems shall be sealed.
5. Heating and cooling systems, where installed at the time of the test, shall be turned off.
6. Supply and return registers, where installed at the time of the test, shall be fully open.

Exceptions:

1. When testing individual dwelling units, an air leakage rate not exceeding 0.30 cubic feet per minute per square foot [0.008 m3/(s × m2)] of the dwelling unit enclosure area, tested in accordance with ANSI/RESNET/ICC 380, ASTM E779 or ASTM E1827 and reported at a pressure of 0.2 inch w.g. (50 Pa), shall be an accepted alternative permitted in all climate zones for:
   a. Attached single and multiple family building dwelling units.
   b. Buildings or dwelling units that are 1,500 square feet (139.4 m2) or smaller.

2. For heated, attached private garages and heated, detached private garages accessory to one and two-family dwellings and townhouses not more than three stories above grade plane in height, building envelope tightness and insulation installation shall be considered acceptable where the items in Table R402.4.1.1, applicable to the method of construction, are field verified. Where required by the code official, an approved third party independent from the installer shall inspect both air barrier and insulation installation criteria. Heated, attached private garage space and heated, detached private garage space shall be thermally isolated from all other habitable, conditioned spaces in accordance with Sections R402.2.12 and R402.3.5, as applicable.

Mechanical ventilation shall be provided in accordance with Section M1505 of the *International Residential Code* or Section 403.3.2 of the *International Mechanical Code*, as applicable, or with other *approved* means of ventilation.

R402.4.1.3 Leakage rate. When complying with Section R401.2.1, the building or dwelling unit shall have an air leakage rate not exceeding 3.0 air changes per hour in Climate Zones 3 through 5, when tested in accordance with Section R402.4.1.2.

~~**R402.4.3 Fireplaces.** Site-built masonry fireplaces shall have flue dampers and comply with Section R1006 of the *North Carolina Residential Code* for combustion air.~~

R402.4.2 Fireplaces. New wood-burning fireplaces shall have tight-fitting flue dampers or doors, and outdoor combustion air. Where using tight-fitting doors on factory-built fireplaces *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 127, the doors shall be tested and *listed* for the fireplace.

~~**R402.4.4**~~ **R402.4.3 Fenestration air leakage.** Windows, *skylights* and sliding glass doors shall have an air infiltration rate of not greater than 0.3 cfm per square foot (1.5 L/s/m^2), and for swinging doors, not greater than 0.5 cfm per square foot (2.6 L/s/m^2), when tested in accordance with NFRC 400 or AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440 by an accredited, independent laboratory and *listed* and *labeled* by the manufacturer.

Exception: ~~Field-fabricated~~ Site-built windows, *skylights* and doors.

~~**R402.4.5 Rooms containing fuel-burning appliances.** Deleted.~~

~~**R402.4.4 Rooms containing fuel-burning appliances.** In Climate Zones 3 through 8, 5, where open combustion air ducts provide combustion air to open combustion fuel-burning appliances, the appliances and combustion air opening shall be located outside the *building thermal envelope* or enclosed in a room that is isolated from inside the thermal envelope. Such rooms shall be sealed and insulated in accordance with the envelope requirements of Table R402.1.3, where the walls, floors and ceilings shall meet a minimum of the *basement wall R*-value requirement. The door into the room shall be fully gasketed and any water lines and ducts in the room insulated in accordance with Section R403. The combustion air duct shall be insulated where it passes through *conditioned space* to an *R*-value of not less than R-8.~~

~~**Exceptions:**~~

1. ~~Direct vent appliances with both intake and exhaust pipes installed continuous to the outside.~~
2. ~~Fireplaces and stoves complying with Section R402.4.2 and Section R1006 of the *International Residential Code*.~~

~~**R402.4.6 R402.4.5**~~ **R402.4.4 Recessed lighting.** Recessed luminaires installed in the *building thermal envelope* shall be sealed to limit air leakage between conditioned and *unconditioned spaces*. Recessed luminaires shall be IC-rated and *labeled* as having an air leakage rate of not greater than 2.0 cfm (0.944 L/s) when tested in accordance with ASTM E283 at a pressure differential of 1.57 psf (75 Pa). Recessed luminaires shall be sealed with a gasket or caulked between the housing and the interior wall or ceiling covering.

R402.4.5 Electrical and communication outlet boxes (air-sealed boxes). Electrical and communication outlet boxes installed in the building thermal envelope shall be sealed to limit air leakage between conditioned and unconditioned spaces. Electrical and communication outlet boxes shall be tested in accordance with NEMA OS 4, *Requirements for Air-Sealed Boxes for Electrical and Communication Applications*, and shall have an air leakage rate of not greater than 2.0 cubic feet per minute (0.944 L/s) at a pressure differential of 1.57 psf (75 Pa). Electrical and communication outlet boxes shall be marked "NEMA

OS 4" or "OS 4" in accordance with NEMA OS 4. Electrical and communication outlet boxes shall be installed per the manufacturer's instructions and with any supplied components required to achieve compliance with NEMA OS 4.

~~**R402.5 Maximum fenestration *U*-factor and SHGC (Mandatory).** The area-weighted average maximum fenestration *U*- factor permitted using trade-offs from Section R402.1.5 shall be 0.48. Maximum skylight *U*-factors shall be 0.65 in Climate Zones 4 and 5 and 0.60 in Climate Zone 3. The area-weighted average maximum fenestration SHGC permitted using trade- offs from Section R405 in Climate Zone 3 shall be 0.50.~~

~~**Exception:** A maximum of two glazed fenestration product assemblies having a *U*-factor no greater than 0.55 and a SHGC no greater than 0.70 shall be permitted to be substituted for minimum code compliant fenestration product assemblies without penalty.~~

R402.5 Maximum fenestration U-factor and SHGC. The area-weighted average maximum fenestration *U*-factor permitted using tradeoffs from Section R402.1.5 or R405 shall be 0.48 in Climate Zones 4 and 5 for vertical fenestration, and 0.75 in Climate Zones 4 through 5 for skylights. The area-weighted average maximum fenestration SHGC permitted using tradeoffs from Section R405 in *Climate Zone* 3 shall be **0.40**.

Exception: The maximum *U*-factor and solar heat gain coefficient (SHGC) for fenestration shall not be required in storm shelters complying with ICC 500.

SECTION R403
SYSTEMS

R403.1 Controls ~~(Mandatory).~~ Not less than one thermostat shall be provided for each separate heating and cooling system.

R403.1.1 Programmable thermostat. ~~When the primary heating system is a forced air furnace or heat pump,~~The thermostat controlling the primary heating or cooling system of the *dwelling unit* shall be capable of controlling the heating and cooling system on a daily schedule to maintain different temperature set points at different times of day and different days of the week. This thermostat shall include the capability to set back or temporarily operate the system to maintain *zone* temperatures of not less than 55°F (13°C) to not greater than 85°F (29°C). The thermostat shall be programmed initially by the manufacturer with a heating temperature setpoint of not greater than 70°F (21°C) and a cooling temperature setpoint of not less than 78°F (26°C).

R403.1.2 Heat pump supplementary heat ~~(Mandatory).~~ Heat pumps having supplementary electric-resistance heat shall have controls that, except during defrost, prevent supplemental heat operation when the heat pump compressor can meet the heating load.

~~A heat strip outdoor temperature lockout thermostat shall be provided to prevent supplemental heat operation in response to the thermostat being changed to a warmer setting. The lockout shall be set no lower than 35°F (2°C) and no higher than 40°F (4°C).~~

~~**Exceptions:**~~

~~1 In lieu of a heat strip outdoor temperature lockout thermostat, the following time and temperature electric-resistance control may be used. After 6 minutes of compressor run time in heat mode, supplemental electric heat shall energize only if the leaving air temperature from the indoor coil is below 90°F (32°C). If the indoor coil leaving air temperature exceeds 100°F (38°C), supplemental heat shall automatically de-energize, but allow the compressor to continue to operate until the call is satisfied. No thermostat shall initiate sup- plemental electric heat at any time. Thermostat controlled emergency heat shall not be limited by outdoor temperature. Electric resistance supple- mental heat during defrost shall operate normally without limitation.~~

~~2. In lieu of a heat strip outdoor temperature lockout thermostat, a programmable indoor thermostat with the capability to minimize the use of supplementary electrical resistance heat using an automatic temperature ramp-up control feature shall be acceptable.~~

~~**R403.2 Hot water boiler outdoor temperature setback.** Hot water boilers that supply heat to the building through one- or two-pipe heating systems shall have an outdoor setback control that lowers the boiler water temperature based on the outdoor temperature.~~

R403.2 Hot water boiler temperature reset. The manufacturer shall equip each gas, oil and electric boiler (other than a boiler equipped with a tankless domestic water heating coil) with automatic means of adjusting the water temperature supplied by the boiler to ensure incremental change of the inferred heat load will cause an incremental change in the temperature of the water supplied by the boiler. This can be accomplished with outdoor reset, indoor reset or water temperature sensing.

R403.3 Ducts. Ducts and air handlers shall be installed in accordance with Sections R403.3.1 through ~~R403.3.4~~ R403.3.7.

~~**R403.3.1 Insulation (Mandatory).** Supply and return ducts in unconditioned space and outdoors shall be insulated to a minimum R-8. Supply ducts inside *semi-conditioned space* shall be insulated to a minimum R-4; return ducts inside conditioned and *semi-conditioned space* are not required to be insulated. Ducts located inside conditioned space are not required to be insulated other than as may be necessary for preventing the formation of condensation on the exterior of cooling ducts~~

R403.3.1 Ducts located outside conditioned space. Supply and return ducts located outside *conditioned space* shall be insulated to an *R*-value of not less than R-8 for ducts 3 inches (76 mm) in diameter and larger and not less than R-6 for ducts smaller than 3 inches (76 mm) in diameter. Ducts buried beneath a building shall be insulated as required per this section or have an equivalent thermal distribution efficiency. Underground ducts utilizing the thermal distribution efficiency method shall be listed and *labeled* to indicate the *R*-value equivalency.

R403.3.2 Ducts located in conditioned space. For ductwork to be considered inside a *conditioned space*, it shall comply with one of the following:

1. The duct system shall be located completely within the *continuous air barrier* and within the building thermal envelope.
2. Ductwork in ventilated attic spaces shall be buried within ceiling insulation in accordance with Section R403.3.3 and all of the following conditions shall exist:
   2.1. The air handler is located completely within the *continuous air barrier* and within the *building thermal envelope*.
   2.2. The duct leakage, as measured either by a rough-in test of the ducts or a post-construction total system leakage test to outside the *building thermal envelope* in accordance with Section R403.3.6, is less than or equal to 1.5 cubic feet per minute (42.5 L/min) per 100 square feet (9.29 m^2) of *conditioned floor area* served by the duct system.
   2.3. The ceiling insulation *R*-value installed against and above the insulated duct is greater than or equal to the proposed ceiling insulation *R*-value, less the *R*-value of the insulation on the duct.
3. Ductwork in floor cavities located over unconditioned space shall comply with all of the following:
   3.1. A *continuous air barrier* installed between unconditioned space and the duct.
   3.2. Insulation installed in accordance with Section R402.2.7.
   3.3. A minimum R-19 insulation installed in the cavity width separating the duct from unconditioned space.
4. Ductwork located within *exterior walls* of the *building thermal envelope* shall comply with the following:
   4.1. A *continuous air barrier* installed between unconditioned space and the duct.
   4.2. Minimum R-10 insulation installed in the cavity width separating the duct from the outside sheathing.
   4.3. The remainder of the cavity insulation shall be fully insulated to the drywall side.

R403.3.3 Ducts buried within ceiling insulation. Where supply and return air ducts are partially or completely buried in ceiling insulation, such ducts shall comply with all of the following:

1. The supply and return ducts shall have an insulation *R*-value not less than R-8.
2. In Zones 4 and 5, at all points along each duct, the sum of the ceiling insulation *R*-value against and above the top of the duct, and against and below the bottom of the duct, shall be not less than R-19, excluding the *R*-value of the duct insulation.
3. In Climate Zone 3, the supply ducts shall be completely buried within ceiling insulation, insulated to an *R*-value of not less than R-13 and in compliance with the vapor retarder requirements of Section 604.11 of the *International Mechanical Code* or Section M1601.4.6 of the *International Residential Code*, as applicable.

Exception: Sections of the supply duct that are less than 3 feet (914 mm) from the supply outlet shall not be required to comply with these requirements.

R403.3.3.1 Effective *R*-value of deeply buried ducts. Where using the Total Building Performance Compliance Option in accordance with Section R401.2.2, sections of ducts that are installed in accordance with Section R403.3.3, located directly on or within 5.5 inches (140 mm) of the ceiling, surrounded with blown-in attic insulation having an *R*-value of R-30 or greater and located such that the top of the duct is not less than 3.5 inches (89 mm) below the top of the insulation, shall be considered as having an effective duct insulation *R*-value of R-25.

~~R403.3.2~~ R403.3.4 Sealing ~~(Mandatory).~~ Ducts, air handlers and filter boxes ~~and building cavities used as ducts,~~ shall be sealed. Joints and seams shall comply with either the *International Mechanical Code* or *International Residential Code*, as applicable.

~~**Exceptions:**~~

1. ~~Air-impermeable spray foam products shall be permitted to be applied without additional joint seals.~~
2. ~~Deleted.~~

R403.3.4.1 Sealed air handler. Air handlers shall have a manufacturer's designation for an air leakage of not greater than 2 percent of the design airflow rate when tested in accordance with ASHRAE 193.

R403.3.3 Duct leakage (Prescriptive) and duct testing (Mandatory). Duct testing and duct leakage shall be veri- fied by compliance with either Section R403.3.3.1 or R403.3.3.2. Duct testing shall be performed and reported by the permit holder, a North Carolina licensed general contrac- tor, a North Carolina licensed HVAC contractor, a North Carolina licensed Home Inspector, a *registered design pro- fessional*, a certified *BPI Envelope Professional* or a certi- fied *HERS rater*. A single point depressurization, not temperature corrected, test is sufficient to comply with this provision, provided that the duct testing fan assembly(s) has been certified by the manufacturer to be capable of conduct- ing tests in accordance with ASTM E1554—07.

The duct leakage information, including duct leakage test selected and the result, tester name, date, and contact infor- mation, shall be included on the certificate described in Section R401.3.

For the test criteria, the report shall be produced in the following manner: perform the HVAC system air leakage test and record the CFM25. Calculate the total square feet of Conditioned Floor Area (CFA) served by that system. Multiply CFM25 by 100, divide the result by the CFA and record the result. If the result is less than or equal to 5 CFM25/100SF for the ~~"Total duct leakage" test or less than or equal to 4 CFM25/100SF for the "Duct leakage to the outside" test, then the HVAC system air tightness is accept- able. Appendix R3C contains optional sample worksheets for duct testing for the permit holder's use only~~.

Exceptions to testing requirements:

~~1Duct systems or portions thereof inside the build- ing thermal envelope shall not be required to be leak tested.~~

~~2Installation of a partial system as part of replace- ment, renovation or addition does not require a duct leakage test.~~

~~3. Duct systems (complete) serving areas of 750 square feet or less shall not need to be required to be leak tested.~~

~~**R403.3.3.1 Total duct leakage.** Total duct leakage shall be less than or equal to 5 cfm (141.6 L/min) per 100 square feet (9.29 m²) of conditioned floor area served by that system when tested at a pressure differential of 0.1 inches w.g. (25 Pa) across the entire system, includ- ing the manufacturer's air handler enclosure. During testing:~~

1. ~~Block, if present, ventilation air duct(s) connected to the condi- tioning system.~~
2. ~~The duct air leakage testing equipment shall be attached to the largest return in the system or to the air handler.~~
3. ~~The filter shall be removed and the air handler power shall be turned off.~~
4. ~~Supply boots or registers and return boxes or grilles shall be taped, plugged, or otherwise sealed air tight.~~
5. ~~The hose for measuring the 25 Pascals of pressure differential shall be inserted into the boot of the supply that is nominally closest to the air handler.~~

6. ~~Specific instructions from the duct testing equip- ment manufacturer shall be followed to reach duct test pressure and measure duct air leak- age.~~

~~**R403.3.3.2 Duct leakage to the outside.** Conduct the test using fan pressurization of distribution system and building at a fixed reference pressure for combined sup- ply and return leak. Duct leakage to the outside shall be less than or equal to 4 cfm (113.3 L/min) per 100 square feet (9.29 m^2) of conditioned floor area served by that sys- tem when tested at a pressure differential of 0.1 inches w.g. (25 Pa) across the entire system, relative to the outside, including the manufacturer's air handler enclosure.~~

During testing:

1 Block, if present, the ventilation air duct(s) con- nected to the condition- ing system.

2. The duct air leakage testing equipment shall be attached to the largest return in the system or to the air handler.
3. The filter shall be removed and the air handler power shall be turned off.
4. Supply boots or registers and return boxes or grilles shall be taped, plugged, or otherwise sealed air tight or as tight as possible.
5. The hose for measuring the 25 Pascals of pressure differential shall be inserted into the boot of the supply that is nominally closest to the air handler.
6. Open all interconnecting doors in the building, close dampers for fireplaces and other operabledampers.
7. Set up an envelope air moving/flow-regulating/ flow measurement assembly, such as a blower door, following the manufacturer's prescribed pro- cedure.

~~8. Specific instructions from the duct testing equip- ment manufacturer shall be followed to reach duct test pressure and measure duct air leakage used in combination with a blower door. Typical steps are as follows:~~

~~a. Depressurize the ductwork system to 25 Pa using the measurement hose in Step 5 above.~~

~~b. Depressurize the house to 25 Pa using an envelope air moving/flow-reg- ulating/flow measurement assembly, such as a blower door.~~

~~c. Correct the duct pressure to measure 0 Pa of pressure differential be- tween the house and the ductwork system.~~

~~d. Read the cfm of duct leakage using the pro- cedures for the specific equipment being used. (Note that most automatically calcu- lating pressure gauges cannot compute the CFM25 automatically with a duct-to-house dif- ference in pressure of 0 Pa, so the gauge setting should be set to read CFM instead of CFM25).~~

R403.3.5 Duct testing. Ducts shall be pressure tested in accordance with ANSI/RESNET/ICC 380 or ASTM E1554 to determine air leakage by one of the following methods:

1. Rough-in test: Total leakage shall be measured with a pressure differential of 0.1 inch w.g. (25 Pa) across the system, including the manufacturer's air handler enclosure if installed at the time of the test. Registers shall be taped or otherwise sealed during the test.

2. Postconstruction test: Total leakage shall be measured with a pressure differential of 0.1 inch w.g. (25 Pa) across the entire system, including the manufacturer's air handler enclosure. Registers shall be taped or otherwise sealed during the test.

Exception: A duct air-leakage test shall not be required for ducts serving heating, cooling or ventilation systems that are not integrated with ducts serving heating or cooling systems.

R403.3.6 Duct leakage. The total leakage of the ducts, where measured in accordance with Section R403.3.5, shall be as follows:

Duct testing shall be performed and reported by the permit holder, a North Carolina licensed general contractor, a North Carolina licensed HVAC contractor, a North Carolina licensed Home Inspector, a registered design professional, a certified BPI Envelope Professional, a certified HERS rater, or other certified rater.

1. Rough-in test: The total leakage shall be less than or equal to 4.0 cubic feet per minute (113.3 L/min) per 100 square feet (9.29 m^2) of *conditioned floor area* where the air handler is installed at the time of the test. Where the air handler is not installed at the time of the test, the total leakage shall be less than or equal to 3.0 cubic feet per minute (85 L/min) per 100 square feet (9.29 m^2) of *conditioned floor area*.

2. Postconstruction test: Total leakage shall be less than or equal to 4.0 cubic feet per minute (113.3 L/min) per 100 square feet (9.29 m^2) of *conditioned floor area*.

3. Test for ducts within thermal envelope: Where all ducts and air handlers are located entirely within the *building thermal envelope*, total leakage shall be less than or equal to 8.0 cubic feet per minute (226.6 L/min) per 100 square feet (9.29 m^2) of *conditioned floor area*.

~~**R403.3.4 Building cavities (Mandatory).** Building framing cavities shall not be used as supply ducts or supply plenums.~~

R403.3.7 Building cavities. *Building* framing cavities shall not be used as ducts or plenums.

R403.4 Mechanical system piping insulation ~~**(Mandatory).**~~ Mechanical system piping capable of carrying fluids greater than 105°F (41°C) or less than 55°F (13°C) shall be insulated to an *R*-value of not less than R-3.

R403.4.1 Protection of piping insulation. Piping insulation exposed to weather shall be protected from damage, including that caused by sunlight, moisture, equipment maintenance and wind. The protection shall provide shielding from solar radiation that can cause degradation of the material. Adhesive tape shall be prohibited.

~~**R403.5 Service hot water systems.** All circulating service hot water piping shall be insulated to at least R-2. Circulating hot water systems shall include an automatic or readily accessible manual switch that can turn off the hot water circulating pump when the system is not in use.~~

R403.5 Service hot water systems. Energy conservation measures for service hot water systems shall be in accordance with Sections R403.5.1 through R403.5.3.

R403.5.1 Heated water circulation and temperature maintenance systems. Heated water circulation systems shall be in accordance with Section R403.5.1.1. Heat trace temperature maintenance systems shall be in accordance with Section R403.5.1.2. Automatic controls, temperature sensors and pumps shall be in a location with access. Manual controls shall be in a location with *ready access*.

R403.5.1.1 Circulation systems. Heated water circulation systems shall be provided with a circulation pump. The system return pipe shall be a dedicated return pipe or a cold water supply pipe. Gravity and thermosyphon circulation systems shall be prohibited. Controls for circulating hot water system pumps shall automatically turn off the pump when the water in the circulation loop is at the desired temperature and when there is no demand for hot water. The controls shall limit the temperature of the water entering the cold water piping to not greater than 104ºF (40ºC).

R403.5.1.1.1 Demand recirculation water systems. Where installed, *demand recirculation water systems* shall have controls that start the pump upon receiving a signal from the action of a user of a fixture or appliance, sensing the presence of a user of a fixture or sensing the flow of hot or tempered water to a fixture fitting or appliance.

R403.5.1.2 Heat trace systems. Electric heat trace systems shall comply with IEEE 515.1 or UL 515. Controls for such systems shall automatically adjust the energy input to the heat tracing to maintain the desired water temperature in the piping in accordance with the times when heated water is used in the occupancy.

R403.5.2 Hot water pipe insulation. Insulation for service hot water piping with a thermal resistance, *R*-value, of not less than R-3 shall be applied to the following:

1. Piping $^{3}/_{4}$ inch (19.1 mm) and larger in nominal diameter located inside the *conditioned space*.
2. Piping serving more than one dwelling unit.
3. Piping located outside the *conditioned space*.
4. Piping from the water heater to a distribution manifold.
5. Piping located under a floor slab.
6. Buried piping.
7. Supply and return piping in circulation and recirculation systems other than cold water pipe return demand recirculation systems.

R403.5.3 Drain water heat recovery units. Where installed, drain water heat recovery units shall comply with CSA B55.2. Drain water heat recovery units shall be tested in accordance with CSA B55.1. Potable water-side pressure loss of drain water heat recovery units shall be less than 3 psi (20.7 kPa) for individual units connected to one or two showers. Potable water-side pressure loss of drain water heat recovery units shall be less than 2 psi (13.8 kPa) for individual units connected to three or more showers.

R403.6 Mechanical ventilation ~~(Mandatory).~~ As applicable, ~~*Buildings*~~ buildings and *dwelling units* shall be provided with mechanical *ventilation* that complies with the requirements of the *International Residential Code* or *International Mechanical Code*, ~~as applicable,~~ or with other *approved* means of *ventilation*. Outdoor air intakes and exhausts shall have automatic or gravity dampers that close when the *ventilation* system is not operating.

R403.6.1 Heat or energy recovery ventilation. Deleted.

R403.6.2 Whole-dwelling mechanical ventilation system fan efficacy. Fans used to provide whole-dwelling mechanical ventilation shall meet the efficacy requirements of Table R403.6.2 at one or more rating points. Fans shall be tested in accordance with HVI 916 and listed. The airflow shall be reported in the product listing or on the label. Fan efficacy shall be reported in the product listing or shall be derived from the input power and airflow values reported in the product listing or on the label. Fan efficacy for fully ducted HRV, ERC, balanced, and in-line fans shall be determined at a static pressure of not less than 0.2 inch w.c. (49.85 Pa). Fan efficacy for ducted range hoods, bathroom and utility room fans shall be determined at a static pressure of not less than 0.1 inch w.c. (24.91 Pa).

TABLE R403.6.2

WHOLE-DWELLING MECHANICAL VENTILATION SYSTEM FAN EFFICACY[a]

FAN LOCATION	AIRFLOW RATE MINIMUM (CFM)	MINIMUM EFFICACY (CFM/WATT)
HRV, ERV	Any	1.2 cfm/watt
In-line supply or exhaust fan	Any	3.8 cfm/watt
Other exhaust fan	< 90	2.8 cfm/watt
Other exhaust fan	≥ 90	3.5 cfm/watt
Air-handler that is integrated to tested and *listed* HVAC equipment	Any	1.2 cfm/watt

For SI: 1 cubic foot per minute = 28.3 L/min.

a. Design outdoor airflow rate/watts of fan used.

R403.6.3 Testing. Mechanical ventilation systems shall be tested and verified to provide the minimum ventilation flow rates required by Section R403.6. Testing shall be performed according to the ventilation *equipment* manufacturer's instructions, or by using a flow hood or box, flow grid, or other airflow measuring device at the mechanical ventilation fan's inlet terminals or grilles, outlet terminals or grilles, or in the connected ventilation ducts. Where required by the code official, testing shall be conducted by an *approved* third party. A written report of the results of the test shall be signed by the party conducting the test and provided to the code official.

Exception: Kitchen range hoods that are ducted to the outside with 6-inch (152 mm) or larger duct and not more than one 90-degree (1.57 rad) elbow or equivalent in the duct run.

R403.7 Equipment sizing and efficiency rating. ~~Heating and cooling equipment shall be sized in accordance with the *North Carolina Mechanical Code* or the *North Carolina Residential Code*~~ Heating and cooling *equipment* shall be sized in accordance with ACCA Manual S based on *building* loads calculated in accordance with ACCA Manual J or other *approved* heating and cooling calculation methodologies. New or replacement heating and cooling *equipment* shall have an efficiency rating equal to or greater than the minimum required by federal law for the geographic location where the *equipment* is installed.

R403.8 Systems serving multiple dwelling units ~~(Mandatory).~~ Building mechanical systems and service water heating Systems. Systems serving multiple *dwelling units* shall comply with Sections C403 and C404 of the *International Energy Conservation Code*—Commercial Provisions instead of Section R403.

R403.9 Snow melt and ice system controls ~~(Mandatory).~~ Snow- and ice-melting systems, supplied through energy service to the building, shall include automatic controls capable of shutting off the system when the pavement temperature is greater than 50°F (10°C) and precipitation is not falling, and an automatic or manual control that will allow shutoff when the outdoor temperature is greater than 40°F (4.8°C).

R403.10 ~~Pools and permanent spa energy consumption (Mandatory~~). Energy consumption of pools and spas. The energy consumption of pools and permanent spas shall be controlled by the requirements in Sections R403.10.1 through R403.10.3.

R403.10.1 Heaters. ~~All heaters shall be equipped with a readily accessible on-off switch that is mounted outside of the heater to allow shutting off the heater without adjusting the thermostat setting. Gas-fired heaters shall not be equipped with constant burning pilot lights.~~

R403.10.1 Heaters. The electric power to heaters shall be controlled by an on-off switch that is an integral part of the heater mounted on the exterior of the heater in a location with *ready access*, or external to and within 3 feet (914 mm) of the heater. Operation of such switch shall not change the setting of the heater thermostat. Such switches shall be in addition to a circuit breaker for the power to the heater. Gas-fired heaters shall not be equipped with continuously burning ignition pilots.

R403.10.2 Time switches. Time switches or other control methods that can automatically turn heaters and pump motors off and on according to a preset schedule shall be installed for heaters and pump motors. Heaters and pump motors that have built-in time switches shall be in compliance with this section.

Exceptions:

1. Where public health standards require 24-hour pump operation.
2. Pumps that operate solar- and waste-heat-recovery pool heating systems.

R403.10.3 Covers. Outdoor heated pools and outdoor permanent spas shall be provided with a ~~Class 1~~ vapor-retardant cover or other *approved* vapor-retardant means.

~~**Exception:** Pools deriving over 70 percent of the energy from heating from *site-recovered energy* or *solar energy source*.~~

Exception: Where more than 75 percent of the energy for heating, computed over an operation season of not fewer than 3 calendar months, is from a heat pump or an on-site renewable energy system, covers or other vapor-retardant means shall not be required.

~~**R403.11 Portable spas (Mandatory).**~~ Deleted.

R403.11 Portable spas. The energy consumption of electric-powered portable spas shall be controlled by the requirements of APSP 14.

~~**R403.12 Residential pools and permanent residential spas.** Residential swimming pools and permanent residential spas that are accessory to detached one- and two-family dwellings and townhouses three stories or less in height above grade plane and that are available only to the household and its guests shall be in accordance with APSP-15~~

R403.12 Residential pools and permanent residential spas. Where installed, the energy consumption of residential swimming pools and permanent residential spas shall be controlled in accordance with the requirements of APSP 15.

SECTION R404
ELECTRICAL POWER AND LIGHTING SYSTEMS

~~**R404.1 Lighting equipment (Mandatory).** Not less than 75 percent of the lamps in permanently installed lighting fixtures shall be high-efficacy lamps or not less than 75 percent of the permanently installed lighting fixtures shall contain only high-efficacy lamps.~~

~~**Exception:** Low-voltage lighting~~

R404.1 Lighting equipment. All permanently installed lighting fixtures, excluding kitchen appliance lighting fixtures, shall contain only *high-efficacy light sources*.

R404.1.1 Exterior lighting. Connected exterior lighting for ~~residential buildings~~*residential buildings* shall comply with Section C405.4.

Exceptions:

1. Detached one- and two- family dwellings.
2. Townhouses.
3. Solar-powered lamps not connected to any electrical service.
4. Luminaires controlled by a motion sensor.
5. Lamps and luminaires that comply with Section R404.1.

~~**R404.1.1 Lighting equipment (Mandatory)**~~**R404.1.2 Fuel gas lighting equipment.** Fuel gas lighting systems shall not have continuously burning pilot lights.

R404.2 Interior lighting controls. Permanently installed lighting fixtures shall be controlled with either a dimmer, an occupant sensor control or other control that is installed or built into the fixture.

Exception: Lighting controls shall not be required for the following:

1. Bathrooms.
2. Hallways.
3. Exterior lighting fixtures.
4. Lighting designed for safety or security.

R404.3 Exterior lighting controls. Where the total permanently installed exterior lighting power is greater than 30 watts, the permanently installed exterior lighting shall comply with the following:

1. Lighting shall be controlled by a manual on and off switch which permits automatic shut-off actions.

    Exception: Lighting serving multiple *dwelling units.*

2. Lighting shall be automatically shut off when daylight is present and satisfies the lighting needs.
3. Controls that override automatic shut-off actions shall not be allowed unless the override automatically returns automatic control to its normal operation within 24 hours.

SECTION R405

~~**SIMULATED PERFORMANCE ALTERNATIVE (PERFORMANCE)**~~TOTAL BUILDING PERFORMANCE

R405.1 Scope. This section establishes criteria for compliance using ~~simulated energy~~ total building performance analysis. Such analysis shall include ~~those items identified in Table R405.5.2(1), as applicable. A North Carolina *registered design professional* is required to perform the analysis if required by North Carolina licensure laws~~. heating, cooling, mechanical ventilation and service water-heating energy only.

~~**R405.2 Mandatory requirements.** Compliance with this section requires that the mandatory provisions identified in Section R401.2(2) be met.~~

~~**R405.3 Performance-based compliance.** Compliance based on simulated energy performance requires that a proposed residence (*proposed design*) be shown to have an annual energy cost that is less than or equal to the annual energy cost of the *standard reference design*. Energy prices shall be taken from a source *approved* by the *code official*, such as the Department of Energy, Energy Information Administration's *State Energy Price and Expenditure Report*. *Code officials* shall be permitted to require time-of-use pricing in energy cost calculations.~~

~~**R405.3**~~ **R405.2** **Performance-based compliance.** Compliance based on total building performance requires that a *proposed design* meets all of the following:

1. The requirements of the sections indicated within Table R405.2.
2. The building thermal envelope greater than or equal to levels of efficiency and solar heat gain coefficients in Table R402.1.1 or R402.1.3 of the 2009 *International Energy Conservation Code*.
3. An annual energy cost that is less than or equal to the annual energy cost of the *standard reference design*. Energy prices shall be taken from a source *approved* by the *code official*, such as the Department of Energy, Energy Information Administration's State Energy Data System Prices and Expenditures reports. Code officials shall be permitted to require time-of-use pricing in energy cost calculations.

Exception: The energy use based on source energy expressed in Btu or Btu per square foot of conditioned floor area shall be permitted to be substituted for the energy cost. The source energy multiplier for electricity shall be 3.16. The source energy multiplier for fuels other than electricity shall be 1.1.

~~**R405.4**~~ **R405.3** **Documentation.** Documentation of the software used for the performance design and the parameters for the *building* shall be in accordance with Sections ~~R405.4.1~~ R405.3.1 through ~~R405.4.3~~ R405.3.2.2.

~~**R405.4.1**~~ **R405.3.1** **Compliance software tools.** Documentation verifying that the methods and accuracy of the compliance software tools conform to the provisions of this section shall be provided to the *code official*.

~~**R405.4.2**~~ **R405.3.2** **Compliance report.** Compliance software tools shall generate a report that documents that the *proposed design* complies with Section R405.3. A compliance report on the *proposed design* shall be submitted with the application for the building permit. Upon completion of the building, a confirmed compliance report based on the confirmed condition of the building shall be submitted to the *code official* before a certificate of occupancy is issued.

Compliance reports shall include information in accordance with Sections R405.3.1 and R405.3.2.2.

TABLE R405.2

REQUIREMENTS FOR TOTAL BUILDING PERFORMANCE

SECTION[a]	TITLE
General	
R401.2.5	Additional energy efficiency
R401.3	Certificate
Building Thermal Envelope	

R402.1.1	Vapor retarder
R402.2.3	Eave baffle
R402.2.4.1	Access hatches and doors
R402.2.10.1	Crawl space wall insulation installations
R402.4.1.1	Installation
R402.4.1.2	Testing
R402.5	Maximum fenestration *U*-factor and SHGC
Mechanical	
R403.1	Controls
R403.3, including R403.3.1, except Sections R403.3.2, R403.3.3 and R403.3.6	Ducts
R403.4	Mechanical system piping insulation
R403.5.1	Heated water circulation and temperature maintenance systems
R403.5.3	Drain water heat recovery units
R403.6	Mechanical ventilation
R403.7	Equipment sizing and efficiency rating
R403.8	Systems serving multiple dwelling units
R403.9	Snow melt and ice systems
R403.10	Energy consumption of pools and spas
R403.11	Portable spas
R403.12	Residential pools and permanent residential spas
Electrical Power and Lighting Systems	
R404.1	Lighting equipment
404.2	Interior lighting controls

a. Reference to a code section includes all the relative subsections except as indicated in the table.

~~**R405.4.2 Compliance report.** Compliance software tools shall generate a report that documents that the *proposed design* complies with Section R405.3. A compliance report on the *proposed design* shall be submitted. A compliance report shall include the following:~~

~~1. Building street address, or other building site identification.~~
~~2. A statement indicating that the *proposed design* complies with Section R405.3.~~
~~3. An inspection checklist documenting the building~~

~~component characteristics of the *proposed design* as indicated in Table R405.5.2(1). The inspection checklist shall show results for both the *standard reference design* and the *proposed design* with user inputs to the compliance software to generate the results.~~

~~4. A site-specific energy analysis report that is in compliance with Section R405.3~~.

R405.3.2.1 Compliance report for permit application. A compliance report submitted with the application for building permit shall include the following:

1. Building street address, or other *building site* identification.
2. The name of the individual performing the analysis and generating the compliance report.
3. The name and version of the compliance software tool.
4. Documentation of all inputs entered into the software used to produce the results for the reference design and/or the rated home.
5. A certificate indicating that the proposed design complies with Section R405.3. The certificate shall document the building components' energy specifications that are included in the calculation including: component-level insulation *R*-values or *U*-factors; duct system and building envelope air leakage testing assumptions; and the type and rated efficiencies of proposed heating, cooling, mechanical ventilation and service water-heating equipment to be installed. If on-site renewable energy systems will be installed, the certificate shall report the type and production size of the proposed system.
6. Where a site-specific report is not generated, the proposed design shall be based on the worst-case orientation and configuration of the rated home.

~~**R405.4.3 Additional documentation.** The *code official* shall be permitted to require the following documents:~~

~~1. Documentation of the building component characteristics of the *standard reference design*.~~

~~2. A certification signed by the builder providing the building component characteristics of the *proposed design* as given in Table R405.5.2(1).~~

~~3. Documentation of the actual values used in the software calculations for the *proposed design*.~~

R405.3.2.2 Compliance report for certificate of occupancy. A compliance report submitted for obtaining the certificate of occupancy shall include the following:

1. Building street address, or other building site identification.
2. Declaration of the total building performance path on the title page of the energy report and the title page of the building plans.
3. A statement, bearing the name of the individual performing the analysis and generating the report, indicating that the as-built building complies with Section R405.3.
4. The name and version of the compliance software tool.
5. A site-specific energy analysis report that is in compliance with Section R405.3.
6. A final confirmed certificate indicating compliance based on inspection, and a statement indicating that the confirmed rated design of the built home complies with Section R405.3. The certificate shall report the energy features that were confirmed to be in the home, including component-level insulation *R*-values or *U*-factors; results from any required duct system and building envelope air leakage testing; and the type and rated efficiencies of the heating, cooling, mechanical ventilation and service water-heating equipment installed.
7. When on-site renewable energy systems have been installed, the certificate shall report the type and production size of the installed system.

R405.4 Calculation procedure. Calculations of the performance design shall be in accordance with Sections ~~R405.5.1~~ R405.4.1 and ~~R405.5.2~~ R405.4.2.

~~**R405.5.1**~~ **R405.4.1 General.** Except as specified by this section, the *standard reference design* and *proposed design* shall be configured and analyzed using identical methods and techniques.

~~**R405.5.2**~~ **R405.4.2 Residence specifications.** The *standard reference design* and *proposed design* shall be configured and analyzed as specified by Table ~~R405.5.2(1)~~ R405.4.2(1). Table ~~R405.5.2(1)~~ R405.4.2(1) shall include, by reference, all notes contained in Table ~~R402.1.2~~ R402.1.3.

~~Table R405.5.2(2)~~ TABLE R405.4.2(2)

DEFAULT DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM EFFICIENCIES FOR PROPOSED DESIGNS[a]

DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM CONFIGURATION AND CONDITION	FORCED AIR SYSTEMS	HYDRONIC SYSTEMS[b]
Distribution system components located in unconditioned space	—	0.95
Untested distribution systems entirely located in conditioned space[c]	0.88	1
"Ductless" systems[d]	1	—

a. Default values in this table are for untested distribution systems, which must still meet minimum requirements for duct system insulation.
b. Hydronic systems shall mean those systems that distribute heating and cooling energy directly to individual spaces using liquids pumped through closed-loop piping and that do not depend on ducted, forced airflow to maintain space temperatures.
c. Entire system in *conditioned space* shall mean that no component of the distribution system, including the air-handler unit, is located outside of the *conditioned space.*
d. Ductless systems shall be allowed to have forced airflow across a coil but shall not have any ducted airflow external to the manufacturer's air-handler enclosure.

~~**R405.6**~~ **R405.5 Calculation software tools.** Calculation software, where used, shall be in accordance with Sections ~~R405.6.1~~ R405.5.1 through ~~R405.6.3~~ R405.5.3.

~~**R405.6.1**~~ **R405.5.1 Minimum capabilities.** Calculation procedures used to comply with this section shall be software tools capable of calculating the annual energy consumption of all building elements that differ between the *standard reference design* and the *proposed design* and shall include the following capabilities:

1. Computer generation of the *standard reference design* using only the input for the *proposed design.* The calculation procedure shall not allow the user to directly modify the building component characteristics of the *standard reference design.*
2. Calculation of whole-building (as a single *zone*) sizing for the heating and cooling equipment in the *standard reference design* residence in accordance with Section R403.6.
3. Calculations that account for the effects of indoor and outdoor temperatures and part-load ratios on the performance of heating, ventilating and air-conditioning equipment based on climate and equipment sizing.
4. Printed *code official* inspection checklist listing each of the *proposed design* component characteristics from Table R405.4.2(1) determined by the analysis to provide compliance, along with their respective performance ratings such as *R*-value, *U*-factor, SHGC, HSPF, AFUE, SEER and EF.

~~**R405.6.2**~~ **R405.5.2 Specific approval.** Performance analysis tools meeting the applicable provisions of Section R405 shall be permitted to be *approved.* Tools are permitted to be *approved* based on meeting a specified threshold for a jurisdiction. The *code official* shall be permitted to approve such tools for a specified application or limited scope.

~~**R405.6.3**~~ **R405.5.3 Input values.** When calculations require input values not specified by Sections R402, R403, R404 and R405, those input values shall be taken from an *approved* source.

TABLE ~~R405.5.2(1)~~
SPECIFICATIONS FOR THE STANDARD REFERENCE AND PROPOSED DESIGNS

BUILDING COMPONENT	STANDARD REFERENCE DESIGN	PROPOSED DESIGN
Above-grade walls	Type: mass wall if proposed wall is mass; otherwise wood frame.	As proposed
	Gross area: same as proposed	As proposed
	U-factor: as specified in Table R402.1.4	As proposed
	Solar absorptance = 0.75	As proposed
	Emittance = 0.90	As proposed
Basement and crawl space walls	Type: same as proposed	As proposed
	Gross area: same as proposed	As proposed
	U-factor: from Table R402.1.4, with insulation layer on interior side of walls	As proposed
Above-grade floors	Type: wood frame	As proposed
	Gross area: same as proposed	As proposed
	U-factor: as specified in Table R402.1.4	As proposed
Ceilings	Type: wood frame	As proposed
	Gross area: same as proposed	As proposed
	U-factor: as specified in Table R402.1.4	As proposed
Roofs	Type: composition shingle on wood sheathing	As proposed
	Gross area: same as proposed	As proposed
	Solar absorptance = 0.75	As proposed
	Emittance = 0.90	As proposed
Attics	Type: vented with aperture = 1 ft^2 per 300 ft^2 ceiling area	As proposed

Note to Rule Review Reviewer: Table R405.4.2(1) below, to replace Table R405.5.2(1) above, of the 2018 NC Energy Code

TABLE R405.4.2(1)
SPECIFICATIONS FOR THE STANDARD REFERENCE AND PROPOSED DESIGNS

BUILDING COMPONENT	STANDARD REFERENCE DESIGN	PROPOSED DESIGN
Above-grade walls	Type: mass where the proposed wall is a mass wall; otherwise wood frame.	As proposed
	Gross area: same as proposed.	As proposed
	U-factor: as specified in Table R402.1.2.	As proposed
	Solar absorptance = 0.75.	As proposed
	Emittance = 0.90.	As proposed
Basement and crawl space walls	Type: same as proposed.	As proposed
	Gross area: same as proposed.	As proposed
	U-factor: as specified in Table R402.1.2, with the insulation layer on the interior side of the walls.	As proposed
Above-grade floors	Type: wood frame.	As proposed
	Gross area: same as proposed.	As proposed
	U-factor: as specified in Table R402.1.2.	As proposed
Ceilings	Type: wood frame.	As proposed
	Gross area: same as proposed.	As proposed
	U-factor: as specified in Table R402.1.2.	As proposed

Roofs	Type: composition shingle on wood sheathing.	As proposed
	Gross area: same as proposed.	As proposed
	Solar absorptance = 0.75.	As proposed
	Emittance = 0.90.	As proposed
Attics	Type: vented with an aperture of 1 ft^2 per 300 ft^2 of ceiling area.	As proposed
Foundations	Type: same as proposed.	As proposed
	Foundation wall area above and below grade and soil characteristics: same as proposed.	As proposed
Opaque doors	Area: 40 ft^2.	As proposed
	Orientation: North.	As proposed
	U-factor: same as fenestration as specified in Table R402.1.2.	As proposed
Vertical fenestration other than opaque doors	Total area~~h~~ = (a) The proposed glazing area, where the proposed glazing area is less than 15 percent of the conditioned floor area. (b) 15 percent of the conditioned floor area, where the proposed glazing area is 15 percent or more of the conditioned floor area.	As proposed
	Orientation: equally distributed to four cardinal compass orientations (N, E, S & W).	As proposed
	U-factor: as specified in Table R402.1.2.	As proposed
	SHGC: as specified in Table R402.1.2 except for climate zones without an SHGC requirement, the SHGC shall be equal to 0.40.	As proposed
	Interior shade fraction: 0.92 – (0.21 × SHGC for the standard reference design).	Interior shade fraction: 0.92 – (0.21 × SHGC as proposed)
	External shading: none	As proposed

(continued)

(continued)

TABLE R405.4.2(1)—continued

SPECIFICATIONS FOR THE STANDARD REFERENCE AND PROPOSED DESIGNS

BUILDING COMPONENT	STANDARD REFERENCE DESIGN	PROPOSED DESIGN
Skylights	None	As proposed
Thermally isolated sunrooms	None	As proposed
Air exchange rate	The air leakage rate at a pressure of 0.2 inch w.g. (50 Pa) shall be Climate Zones 3 through 5: 3.0 air changes per hour.	The measured air exchange rate.[a]

	The mechanical ventilation rate shall be in addition to the air leakage rate and shall be the same as in the proposed design, but not greater than $0.01 \times CFA + 7.5 \times (N_{br} + 1)$ where: CFA = conditioned floor area, ft^2. N_{br} = number of bedrooms. The mechanical ventilation system type shall be the same as in the proposed design. Energy recovery shall not be assumed for mechanical ventilation.	The mechanical ventilation rate[b] shall be in addition to the air leakage rate and shall be as proposed.
Mechanical ventilation	Where mechanical ventilation is not specified in the proposed design: None Where mechanical ventilation is specified in the proposed design, the annual vent fan energy use, in units of kWh/yr, shall equal $(1/e_f) \times [0.0876 \times CFA + 65.7 \times (N_{br} + 1)]$ where: e_f = the minimum exhaust fan efficacy, as specified in Table 403.6.2, corresponding to the system type at a flow rate of $0.01 \times CFA + 7.5 \times (N_{br} + 1)$ CFA = *conditioned floor area*, ft^2. N_{br} = number of bedrooms.	As proposed
Internal gains	IGain, in units of Btu/day per dwelling unit, shall equal $17{,}900 + 23.8 \times CFA + 4{,}104 \times N_{br}$ where: CFA = conditioned floor area, ft^2. N_{br} = number of bedrooms.	Same as standard reference design.
Internal mass	Internal mass for furniture and contents: 8 pounds per square foot of floor area.	Same as standard reference design, plus any additional mass specifically designed as a thermal storage element[c] but not integral to the building envelope or structure.
Structural mass	For masonry floor slabs: 80 percent of floor area covered by R-2 carpet and pad, and 20 percent of floor directly exposed to room air.	As proposed
	For masonry basement walls: as proposed, but with insulation as specified in Table R402.1.3, located on the interior side of the walls.	As proposed
	For other walls, ceilings, floors, and interior walls: wood frame construction.	As proposed
Heating systems[d, e]	For other than electric heating without a heat pump: as proposed. Where the proposed design utilizes electric heating without a heat pump, the standard reference design shall be an air source heat pump meeting the requirements of Section C403 of the IECC—Commercial Provisions. Capacity: sized in accordance with Section R403.7.	As proposed
Cooling systems[d, f]	As proposed. Capacity: sized in accordance with Section R403.7.	As proposed

(continued)
(continued)

TABLE R405.4.2(1)—continued
SPECIFICATIONS FOR THE STANDARD REFERENCE AND PROPOSED DESIGNS

<table>
<tr><th>BUILDING COMPONENT</th><th>STANDARD REFERENCE DESIGN</th><th colspan="3">PROPOSED DESIGN</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="7">Service water heating[d, g]</td><td rowspan="7">As proposed.
Use, in units of gal/day = 30 + (10 × N_{br})
where:
N_{br} = number of bedrooms.</td><td colspan="3">As proposed
Use, in units of gal/day = 25.5 + (8.5 × N_{br}) × (1 – *HWDS*)
where:
N_{br} = number of bedrooms.
HWDS = factor for the compactness of the hot water distribution system.</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">Compactness ratio[i] factor</td><td>HWDS</td></tr>
<tr><td>1 story</td><td>2 or more stories</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>> 60%</td><td>> 30%</td><td>0</td></tr>
<tr><td>> 30% to ≤ 60%</td><td>> 15% to ≤ 30%</td><td>0.05</td></tr>
<tr><td>> 15% to ≤ 30%</td><td>> 7.5% to ≤ 15%</td><td>0.10</td></tr>
<tr><td>< 15%</td><td>< 7.5%</td><td>0.15</td></tr>
<tr><td>Thermal distribution systems</td><td>Duct insulation: in accordance with Section R403.3.1.
A thermal distribution system efficiency (DSE) of 0.88 shall be applied to both the heating and cooling system efficiencies for all systems other than tested duct systems.
Duct location: same as proposed design.
Exception: For nonducted heating and cooling systems that do not have a fan, the standard reference design thermal distribution system efficiency (DSE) shall be 1. For tested duct systems, the leakage rate shall be 4 cfm (113.3 L/min) per 100 ft^2 (9.29 m^2) of *conditioned floor area* at a pressure of differential of 0.1 inch w.g. (25 Pa).</td><td colspan="3">Duct insulation: as proposed.
As tested or, where not tested, as specified in Table R405.4.2(2).</td></tr>
<tr><td>Thermostat</td><td>Type: Manual, cooling temperature setpoint = 75°F;
Heating temperature setpoint = 72°F.</td><td colspan="3">Same as standard reference design.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Dehumidistat</td><td>Where a mechanical ventilation system with latent heat recovery is not specified in the proposed design:
None.
Where the proposed design utilizes a mechanical ventilation system with latent heat recovery:
Dehumidistat type: manual, setpoint = 60% relative humidity.
Dehumidifier: whole-dwelling with integrated energy factor = 1.77 liters/kWh.</td><td colspan="3">Same as standard reference design.</td></tr>
</table>

For SI: 1 square foot = 0.93 m^2, 1 British thermal unit = 1055 J, 1 pound per square foot = 4.88 kg/m^2, 1 gallon (US) = 3.785 L, °C = (°F-32)/1.8, 1 degree = 0.79 rad.

a. Where required by the *code official*, testing shall be conducted by an *approved* party. Hourly calculations as specified in the ASHRAE *Handbook of Fundamentals*, or the equivalent, shall be used to determine the energy loads resulting from infiltration.

b. The combined air exchange rate for infiltration and mechanical ventilation shall be determined in accordance with Equation 43 of 2001 ASHRAE *Handbook of Fundamentals*, page 26.24 and the "Whole-house Ventilation" provisions of 2001 ASHRAE *Handbook of Fundamentals*, page 26.19 for intermittent mechanical ventilation.

c. Thermal storage element shall mean a component that is not part of the floors, walls or ceilings that is part of a passive solar system, and that provides thermal storage such as enclosed water columns, rock beds, or phase-change containers. A thermal storage element shall be in the same room as fenestration that faces within 15 degrees (0.26 rad) of true south, or shall be connected to such a room with pipes or ducts that allow the element to be actively charged.

d. For a proposed design with multiple heating, cooling or water heating systems using different fuel types, the applicable standard reference design system capacities and fuel types shall be weighted in accordance with their respective loads as calculated by accepted engineering practice for each equipment and fuel type present.

e. For a proposed design without a proposed heating system, a heating system having the prevailing federal minimum efficiency shall be assumed for both the standard reference design and proposed design.

f. For a proposed design home without a proposed cooling system, an electric air conditioner having the prevailing federal minimum efficiency shall be assumed for both the standard reference design and the proposed design.

g. For a proposed design with a nonstorage-type water heater, a 40-gallon storage-type water heater having the prevailing federal minimum energy factor for the same fuel as the predominant heating fuel type shall be assumed. For a proposed design without a proposed water heater, a 40-gallon storage-type water heater having the prevailing federal minimum efficiency for the same fuel as the predominant heating fuel type shall be assumed for both the proposed design and standard reference design.

TABLE R405.4.2(1)—continued

SPECIFICATIONS FOR THE STANDARD REFERENCE AND PROPOSED DESIGNS

~~g. For a proposed design with a nonstorage-type water heater, a 40-gallon storage-type water heater having the prevailing federal minimum energy factor for the same fuel as the predominant heating fuel type shall be assumed. For a proposed design without a proposed water heater, a 40-gallon storage-type water heater having the prevailing federal minimum efficiency for the same fuel as the predominant heating fuel type shall be assumed for both the proposed design and standard reference design.~~

~~h. For residences with conditioned basements, R-2 and R-4 residences, and for townhouses, the following formula shall be used to determine glazing area:~~

~~$AF = A_s \times FA \times F$~~

~~where:~~

~~AF = Total glazing area.~~

~~A_s = Standard reference design total glazing area.~~

~~FA = (Above-grade thermal boundary gross wall area)/(above-grade boundary wall area + 0.5 × below-grade boundary wall area).~~

~~F = (above-grade thermal boundary wall area)/(above-grade thermal boundary wall area + common wall area) or 0.56, whichever is greater.~~

~~and where:~~

~~Thermal boundary wall is any wall that separates conditioned space from unconditioned space or ambient conditions.~~

~~Above-grade thermal boundary wall is any thermal boundary wall component not in contact with soil.~~

~~Below-grade boundary wall is any thermal boundary wall in soil contact.~~

~~Common wall area is the area of walls shared with an adjoining dwelling unit.~~

i. The factor for the compactness of the hot water distribution system is the ratio of the area of the rectangle that bounds the source of hot water and the fixtures that it serves (the "hot water rectangle") divided by the floor area of the dwelling.

1. Sources of hot water include water heaters, or in multiple-family buildings with central water heating systems, circulation loops or electric heat traced pipes.
2. The hot water rectangle shall include the source of hot water and the points of termination of all hot water fixture supply piping.
3. The hot water rectangle shall be shown on the floor plans and the area shall be computed to the nearest square foot.
4. Where there is more than one water heater and each water heater serves different plumbing fixtures and appliances, it is permissible to establish a separate hot water rectangle for each hot water distribution system and add the area of these rectangles together to determine the compactness ratio.
5. The basement or attic shall be counted as a story when it contains the water heater.
6. Compliance shall be demonstrated by providing a drawing on the plans that shows the hot water distribution system rectangle(s), comparing the area of the rectangle(s) to the area of the dwelling and identifying the appropriate compactness ratio and *HWDS* factor.

SECTION R406
ENERGY RATING INDEX COMPLIANCE ALTERNATIVE

R406.1 Scope. This section establishes criteria for compliance using an Energy Rating Index (ERI) analysis.

~~**R406.2 Mandatory requirements.** Compliance with this section requires that the provisions identified in Sections R401 through R404 labeled as "mandatory" be met. The building thermal envelope shall be greater than or equal to levels of efficiency and Solar Heat Gain Coefficient in Table 402.1.1 or 402.1.3 of the 2012 *North Carolina Energy Conservation Code*. Minimum standards associated with compli- ance shall be the ANSI RESNET ICC Standard 301 2014 "Standard for the Calculation and Labeling of the Energy Performance of Low-Rise Residential Buildings using an Energy Rating Index." A North Carolina *registered design professional* or certified *HERS rater* is required to perform the analysis if required by North Carolina licensure laws.~~

~~**Exception:** Supply and return ducts in *unconditioned space* and outdoors shall be insulated to a minimum R-8. Supply ducts inside semi-conditioned space shall be insu- lated to a minimum R-4; return ducts inside conditioned and semi-conditioned space are not required to be insu- lated. Ducts located inside conditioned space are not required to be insulated other than as may be necessary for preventing the formation of condensation on the exterior of cooling ducts.~~

R406.2 ERI compliance. Compliance based on the ERI requires that the rated design meets all of the following:

1. The requirements of the sections indicated within Table R406.2.
2. Maximum ERI of Table R406.5.

TABLE R406.2
REQUIREMENTS FOR ENERGY RATING INDEX

SECTION[a]	TITLE
General	
R401.2.5	Additional efficiency packages
R401.3	Certificate
Building Thermal Envelope	
R402.1.1	Vapor retarder
R402.2.3	Eave baffle
R402.2.4.1	Access hatches and doors
R402.2.10.1	Crawl space wall insulation installation
R402.4.1.1	Installation
R402.4.1.2	Testing
Mechanical	
R403.1	Controls
R403.3 except Sections R403.3.2, R403.3.3 and R403.3.6	Ducts
R403.4	Mechanical system piping insulation
R403.5.1	Heated water calculation and temperature maintenance systems
R403.5.3	Drain water heat recovery units
R403.6	Mechanical ventilation
R403.7	Equipment sizing and efficiency rating
R403.8	Systems serving multiple dwelling units
R403.9	Snow melt and ice systems
R403.10	Energy consumption of pools and spas
R403.11	Portable spas

R403.12	Residential pools and permanent residential spas
Electrical Power and Lighting Systems	
R404.1	Lighting equipment
404.2	Interior lighting controls
R406.3	Building thermal envelope

a. Reference to a code section includes all of the relative subsections except as indicated in the table.

~~2018 NC Energy Conservation Code~~
~~R406 Energy Rating Index. (161213 Item B-3.3)~~
~~SECTION R406~~
~~ENERGY RATING INDEX COMPLIANCE ALTERNATIVE~~
~~R406.1 Scope. This section establishes criteria for compliance using an Energy Rating Index (ERI) analysis.~~
~~R406.2 Mandatory requirements.~~
~~Compliance with this section requires that the mandatory provisions identified in Sections R401.2 R401 through R404 labeled as "mandatory" and Section R403.5.3 be met. The building .2 thermal envelope shall be greater than or equal to levels of efficiency and Solar Heat Gain Coefficient in Table 402.1.1 or 402.1.3 of the 2009 International Energy Conservation Code 2012 NC Energy Conservation Code. Minimum standards associated with compliance shall be the ANSI RESNET ICC Standard 301-2014 "Standard for the Calculation and Labeling of the Energy Performance of Low-Rise Residential Buildings using an Energy Rating Index." A North Carolina licensed design professional or certified HERS rater is required to perform the analysis if required by North Carolina licensure laws.~~
~~Exception: Supply and return ducts not completely inside the building thermal envelope shall be insulated to a minimum of R-6. Supply and return ducts in unconditioned space and outdoors shall be insulated to a minimum R-8. Supply ducts inside semi-conditioned space shall be insulated to a minimum R-4; return ducts inside conditioned and semi-conditioned space are not required to be insulated. Ducts located inside conditioned space are not required to be insulated other than as may be necessary for preventing the formation of condensation on the exterior of cooling ducts.~~
~~R406.5 Verification by approved agency.~~
~~Verification of compliance with Section R406 shall be performed by the licensed design professional or certified HERS rater and the compliance documentation shall be provided to the code official. The code official shall inspect according to the requirements of Section R406.6.2 completed by an approved third party.~~

R406.2 Mandatory requirements. Compliance with this section requires that the provisions identified in Sections R401 through R404 labeled as "mandatory" be met. The building thermal envelope shall be greater than or equal to levels of efficiency and Solar Heat Gain Coefficient in Table R406.2.1 or Table R406.2.2. ~~Table 402.1.1 or 402.1.3 of the 2012 North Carolina Energy Conservation Code.~~ Minimum standards associated with compliance shall be the ANSI RESNET ICC Standard 301-2014: "Standard for the Calculation and Labeling of the Energy Performance of Low-Rise Residential Buildings using an Energy Rating Index." A North Carolina *registered design professional* or certified *HERS rater* is required to perform the analysis if required by North Carolina licensure laws.

Exception: Supply and return ducts in unconditioned space and outdoors shall be insulated to a minimum R-8. Supply ducts inside semi-conditioned space shall be insulated to a minimum R-4; return ducts inside conditioned and semi-conditioned space are not required to be insulated. Ducts located inside conditioned space are not required to be insulated other than as may be necessary for preventing the formation of condensation on the exterior of cooling ducts.

TABLE R406.2.1
MINIMUM INSULATION AND FENESTRATION REQUIREMENTS FOR ENERGY RATING INDEX COMPLIANCE[a]

	FENESTRATION VALUES			R-VALUES FOR									
CLIMATE ZONE	FENESTRATION U-FACTOR[b,j]	SKYLIGHT[b] U-FACTOR	GLAZED FENSTRATION SHGC[b,k]	CEILING[m]	UNVENTED[p] RAFTER ASSEMBLIES IN ATTICS CONTAINING DUCTWORK, AIR-IMPERMEABLE	UNVENTED[p] RAFTER ASSEMBLIES IN ATTICS CONTAINING DUCTWORK, AIR-PERMIABLE IMPERMEABLE	WOOD FRAME WALL	MASS WALL[i]	FLOOR	BASEMENT[c,o] WALL	SLAB[d]	CRAWL SPACE[c] WALL
3	0.35	0.65	0.3	30	20	15-10[s]	13	5/10	19	10/13[f]	0	5/13
4	0.35	0.6	0.3	38 or 30ci[l]	20	15-10[s]	15, 13+2.5[h]	5/10	19	10/13	10	10/13
5	0.35	0.6	NR	38 or 30ci[l]	25	15-20[s]	19[n], 13+5[h], or 15+3[h]	13/17	30[g]	10/13	10	10/13

requirements of 1203.3 of the North Carolina Building Code. Exposed rafters shall be covered with R-7 insulation.

q. The value for air-permeable insulation is shown first and that for air-impermeable insulation second. Thus, R-15 + R-10 indicates that the minimum value for air-permeable insulation is R-15, and the minimum value for air-impermeable insulation is R-10. Air-impermeable insulation shall be installed in direct contact with the underside of the structural roof sheathing. The air-permeable insulation shall be installed directly under the air-impermeable insulation. Exposed rafters shall be covered with R-7 insulation.

TABLE R406.2.2
EQUIVALENT U-FACTORS FOR TABLE R406.2.1[a]

CLIMATE ZONE	FENESTRATION [d]	SKYLIGHT U-FACTOR	CEILING	UNVENTED [e] RAFTER ASSEMBLIES IN ATTICS CONTAINING DUCTWORK, AIR-IMPERMEABLE	UNVENTED [e] RAFTER ASSEMBLIES IN ATTICS CONTAINING DUCTWORK, AIR-PERMIABLE/ IMPERMEABLE	FRAME WALL	MASS WALL[b]	FLOOR	BASEMENT[d] WALL	CRAWL SPACE[c] WALL
3	0.35	0.55	0.0350	0.05	0.043[f]	0.082	0.141	0.047	0.059	0.136
4	0.35	0.60	0.0300	0.05	0.043[f]	0.077	0.141	0.047	0.059	0.065
5	0.35	0.60	0.0300	0.037	0.034[f]	0.061	0.082	0.033	0.059	0.065

a. Nonfenestration *U*-factors shall be obtained from measurement, calculation or an approved source.
b. When more than half the insulation is on the interior, the mass wall *U*-factors shall be a maximum of 0.07 in Climate Zone 3, 0.07 in Climate Zone 4 and 0.054 in Climate Zone 5.
c. Basement wall *U*-factor of 0.360 in warm-humid locations as defined by Figure R301.1 and Table R301.1.
d. A maximum of two glazed fenestration product assemblies having a U-factor no greater than 0.55 and a SHGC no greater than 0.70 shall be permitted to be substituted for minimum code compliant fenestration product assemblies without penalty. When applying this note and using the RESCheck "UA Trade-off" compliance method to allow continued use of the software, the applicable fenestration products shall be modeled as meeting the U-factor of 0.35 and the SHGC of 0.30, as applicable, but the fenestration products' actual U-factor and actual SHGC shall be noted in the comments section of the software for documentation of application of this note to the applicable products. Compliance for these substitute products shall be verified compared to the allowed substituted maximum U-value requirement and maximum SHGC requirement, as applicable.

August 13, 2021

R406.3 Building thermal envelope. Building and portions thereof shall comply with Section R406.3.1 or R406.3.2.

R406.3.1 On-site renewables are not included. Where on-site renewable energy is not included for compliance using the ERI analysis of Section R406.4, the proposed total building thermal envelope UA, which is sum of *U*-factor times assembly area, shall be less than or equal to the building thermal envelope UA using the prescriptive *U*-factors from Table R402.1.2 multiplied by 1.15 in accordance with Equation 4-1. The area-weighted maximum fenestration SHGC permitted in Climate Zones 0 through 3 shall be 0.30.

$$UA_{\text{Proposed design}} = 1.15 \times UA_{\text{Prescriptive reference design}}$$

(Equation 4-1)

R406.3.2 On-site renewables are included. Where on-site renewable energy is included for compliance using the ERI analysis of Section R406.4, the building thermal envelope shall be greater than or equal to the levels of efficiency and SHGC in ~~Table R402.1.2 or Table R402.1.4 of the 2015 *International Energy Conservation Code*.~~

~~**R406.3 Energy Rating Index.** The Energy Rating Index (ERI) shall be a numerical integer value that is based on a linear scale constructed such that the *ERI reference design* has an Index value of 100 and a *residential building* that uses no net purchased energy has an Index value of 0. Each integer value on the scale shall represent a 1-percent change in the total energy use of the rated design relative to the total energy use of the *ERI reference design*. The ERI shall consider all energy used in the *residential building*.~~

R406.3.1 ERI reference design. The *ERI reference design* shall be configured such that it meets the minimum requirements of the 2006 *International Energy Conservation Code* prescriptive requirements. The proposed *residential building* shall be shown to have an annual total normalized modified load less than or equal to the annual total loads of the *ERI reference design*.

~~**R406.4 ERI-based compliance.** Compliance based on an ERI analysis requires that the *rated design* be shown to have an ERI less than or equal to the appropriate value listed in Table R406.4.1 or Table R406.4.2, as applicable, when compared to the *ERI reference design*.~~

~~**R406.4.1**~~
~~**MAXIMUM ENERGY RATING INDEX**~~
~~**(without calculation of on-site renewable energy)**~~

~~CLIMATE ZONE~~	~~Jan 1, 2019–Dec 31, 2022~~	~~Jan 1, 2023 and forward~~
~~3~~	~~65~~	~~61~~
~~4~~	~~67~~	~~63~~
~~5~~	~~67~~	~~63~~

~~**R406.4.2**~~
~~**MAXIMUM ENERGY RATING INDEX**~~
~~**(including calculation of on-site renewable energy)**~~

~~CLIMATE ZONE~~	~~Jan 1, 2019–Dec 31, 2022~~	~~Jan 1, 2023 and forward~~
~~3~~	~~51~~	~~47~~
~~4~~	~~54~~	~~50~~
~~5~~	~~55~~	~~51~~

~~**R406.3**~~ **R406.4 Energy Rating Index.** The Energy Rating Index (ERI) shall be determined in accordance with RESNET/ICC 301 except for buildings covered by the *International Residential Code*, the ERI reference design ventilation rate shall be in accordance with Equation 4-2.

$$\text{Ventilation rate, CFM} = (0.01 \times \text{total square foot area of house}) + [7.5 \times (\text{number of bedrooms} + 1)] \quad \textbf{(Equation 4-2)}$$

Energy used to recharge or refuel a vehicle used for transportation on roads that are not on the building site shall not be included in the *ERI reference design* or the *rated design*. For compliance purposes, any reduction in energy use of the rated design associated with on-site renewable energy shall not exceed 5 percent of the total energy use.

R406.5 ERI-based compliance. Compliance based on an ERI analysis requires that the *rated proposed design* and confirmed built dwelling be shown to have an ERI less than or equal to the appropriate value indicated in Table R406.5 when compared to the *ERI reference design*.

~~**Table R406.4.1**~~ **TABLE R406.5**
MAXIMUM ENERGY RATING INDEX

CLIMATE ZONE	ENERGY RATING INDEX
3	51

4	54
5	55

~~**R406.5 Verification.** Verification of compliance with Sec- tion R406 shall be performed by the *registered design profes- sional* or certified *HERS rater* and the compliance documentation shall be provided to the code official. The code official shall inspect according to the requirements of Section R406.6.2.~~

~~**R406.5**~~ **R406.6 Verification by approved agency.** Verification of compliance with Section R406 as outlined in Sections R406.4 and R406.6 shall be completed by an *approved* third party. Verification of compliance with Section R406.2 shall be completed by the authority having jurisdiction or an *approved* third-party inspection agency in accordance with Section R105.4.

~~**R406.6**~~ **R406.7 Documentation.** Documentation of the software used to determine the ERI and the parameters for the *residential building* shall be in accordance with Sections ~~R406.6.1~~ R406.7.1 through ~~R406.6.3~~ R406.7.4.

~~**R406.7 Calculation software tools.** Calculation software, where used, shall be in accordance with Sections R406.7.1 through R406.7.3.~~

~~**R406.7.1 Minimum capabilities.** Calculation procedures used to comply with this section shall be software tools capable of calculating the ERI as described in Section R406.3, and shall be in compliance with ANSI RESNET ICC Standard 301 – 2014. The software shall include the following capabilities:~~

~~1. Computer generation of the *ERI reference design* using only the input for the *rated design*. The calculation procedure shall not allow the user to directly modify the building component characteristics of the *ERI reference design*.~~

~~2. Calculation of whole building, as a single *zone*, sizing for the heating and cooling equipment in the *ERI reference design* residence in accordance with Section R403.7.~~

~~3. Calculations that account for the effects of indoor and outdoor temperatures and part-load ratios on the performance of heating, ventilating and air-conditioning equipment based on climate and equipment sizing.~~

~~4. Printed *code official* inspection checklist listing each of the *rated design* component characteristics determined by the analysis to provide compliance, along with their respective performance ratings.~~

~~**R406.6.1**~~ **R406.7.1 Compliance software tools.** ~~Compliance software tools for this section shall be in compliance with ANSI RESNET ICC Standard 301 – 2014.~~ Software tools used for determining ERI shall be *Approved* Software Rating Tools in accordance with RESNET/ICC 301.

~~**R406.6.2 Compliance report.** Compliance software tools shall generate a report that documents that the ERI of the *rated design* complies with Sections R406.3 and R406.4. The compliance documentation shall include the following information:~~

~~1. Address or other identification of the residential building.~~

~~2. An inspection checklist documenting the building component characteristics of the *rated design*. The inspection checklist shall show results for both the *ERI reference design* and the *rated design*, and shall document all inputs entered by the user necessary to reproduce the results.~~

~~3. Name of individual completing the compliance report.~~

~~4. Name and version of the compliance software tool~~.

~~**R406.6.2**~~ **R406.7.2** **Compliance report.** Compliance software tools shall generate a report that documents that the home and the ERI score of the *rated design* complies with Sections R406.2, R406.3 and R406.4. Compliance documentation shall be created for the proposed design and shall be submitted with the application for the building permit. Confirmed compliance documents of the built *dwelling unit* shall be created and submitted to the code official for review before a certificate of occupancy is issued. Compliance reports shall include information in accordance with Sections R406.7.2.1 and R406.7.2.2.

R406.7.2.1 Proposed compliance report for permit application. Compliance reports submitted with the application for a building permit shall include the following:

1. Building street address, or other *building site* identification.
2. Declare ERI on title page and building plans.
3. The name of the individual performing the analysis and generating the compliance report.
4. The name and version of the compliance software tool.
5. Documentation of all inputs entered into the software used to produce the results for the reference design and/or the rated home.
6. A certificate indicating that the proposed design has an ERI less than or equal to the appropriate score indicated in Table R406.5 when compared to the ERI reference design. The certificate shall document the building component energy specifications that are included in the calculation, including: component level insulation *R*-values or *U*-factors; assumed duct system and building envelope air leakage testing results; and the type and rated efficiencies of proposed heating, cooling, mechanical ventilation, and service water-heating equipment to be installed. If on-site renewable energy systems will be installed, the certificate shall report the type and production size of the proposed system.
7. When a site-specific report is not generated, the proposed design shall be based on the worst-case orientation and configuration of the rated home.

R406.7.2.2 Confirmed compliance report for a certificate of occupancy. A confirmed compliance report submitted for obtaining the certificate of occupancy shall be made site and address specific and include the following:

1. Building street address or other *building site* identification.
2. Declaration of ERI on title page and on building plans.
3. The name of the individual performing the analysis and generating the report.
4. The name and version of the compliance software tool.
5. Documentation of all inputs entered into the software used to produce the results for the reference design and/or the rated home.
6. A final confirmed certificate indicating that the confirmed rated design of the built home complies with Sections R406.2 and R406.4. The certificate shall report the energy features that were confirmed to be in the home, including: component-level insulation *R*-values or *U*-factors; results from any required duct system and building envelope air leakage testing; and the type and rated efficiencies of the heating, cooling, mechanical ventilation, and service water-heating equipment installed. Where on-site renewable energy systems have been installed on or in the home, the certificate shall report the type and production size of the installed system.

R406.7.3 Renewable energy certificate (REC) documentation. Where on-site renewable energy is included in the calculation of an ERI, one of the following forms of documentation shall be provided to the code official:

1. Substantiation that the RECs associated with the on-site renewable energy are owned by, or retired on behalf of, the homeowner.
2. A contract that conveys to the homeowner the RECs associated with the on-site renewable energy, or conveys to the homeowner an equivalent quantity of RECs associated with other renewable energy.

~~**R406.6.3 Additional documentation.** Deleted~~.

~~**R406.6.3**~~ **R406.7.4 Additional documentation.** The *code official* shall be permitted to require the following documents:

1. Documentation of the building component characteristics of the *ERI reference design*.
2. A certification signed by the builder providing the building component characteristics of the *rated design.*
3. Documentation of the actual values used in the software calculations for the *rated design*.

~~**R406.7.2 Specific approval.** Deleted~~. **R406.7.5 Specific approval.** Performance analysis tools meeting the applicable subsections of Section R406 shall be *approved*. Documentation demonstrating the approval of performance analysis tools in accordance with Section R406.7.1 shall be provided.

~~**R406.7.3 Input values.** Deleted.~~ **R406.7.6 Input values.** Where calculations require input values not specified by Sections R402, R403, R404 and R405, those input values shall be taken from RESNET/ICC 301.

** SECTION R407
TROPICAL CLIMATE REGION COMPLIANCE PATH

This section is unchanged, it is not used.

SECTION R408
ADDITIONAL EFFICIENCY PACKAGE OPTIONS

R408.1 Scope. This section establishes additional efficiency package options to achieve additional energy efficiency in accordance with Section R401.2.5.

R408.2 Additional efficiency package options. Additional efficiency package options for compliance with Section R401.2.1 are set forth in Sections R408.2.1 through R408.2.5.

R408.2.1 Enhanced envelope performance option. The total *building thermal envelope* UA, the sum of *U*-factor times assembly area, shall be less than or equal to 95 percent of the total UA resulting from multiplying the *U*-factors in Table R402.1.2 by the same assembly area as in the proposed building. The UA calculation shall be performed in accordance with Section R402.1.5. The area-weighted average SHGC of all glazed fenestration shall be less than or equal to 95 percent of the maximum glazed fenestration SHGC in Table R402.1.2.

R408.2.2 More efficient HVAC equipment performance option. Heating and cooling *equipment* shall meet one of the following efficiencies:

1. Greater than or equal to 95 AFUE natural gas furnace and 16 SEER air conditioner.
2. Greater than or equal to 10 HSPF/16 SEER air source heat pump.
3. Greater than or equal to 3.5 COP ground source heat pump.

For multiple cooling systems, all systems shall meet or exceed the minimum efficiency requirements in this section and shall be sized to serve 100 percent of the cooling design load. For multiple heating systems, all systems shall meet or exceed the minimum efficiency requirements in this section and shall be sized to serve 100 percent of the heating design load.

R408.2.3 Reduced energy use in service water-heating option. The hot water system shall meet one of the following efficiencies:

1. Greater than or equal to 82 EF fossil fuel service water-heating system.
2. Greater than or equal to 2.0 EF electric service water-heating system.
3. Greater than or equal to 0.4 solar fraction solar water-heating system.

R408.2.4 More efficient duct thermal distribution system option. The thermal distribution system shall meet one of the following efficiencies:

1. 100 percent of ducts and air handlers located entirely within the *building thermal envelope*.

2. 100 percent of ductless thermal distribution system or hydronic thermal distribution system located completely inside the *building thermal envelope*.

3. 100 percent of duct thermal distribution system located in *conditioned space* as defined by Section R403.3.2.

R408.2.5 Improved air sealing and efficient ventilation system option. The measured air leakage rate shall be less than or equal to 3.0 ACH50, with either an Energy Recovery Ventilator (ERV) or Heat Recovery Ventilator (HRV) installed. Minimum HRV and ERV requirements, measured at the lowest tested net supply airflow, shall be greater than or equal to 75 percent Sensible Recovery Efficiency (SRE), less than or equal to 1.1 cubic feet per minute per watt (0.03 m^3/min/watt) and shall not use recirculation as a defrost strategy. In addition, the ERV shall be greater than or equal to 50 percent Latent Recovery/Moisture Transfer (LRMT).

CHAPTER 5 [RE]
EXISTING BUILDINGS

SECTION R501
GENERAL

R501.1 Scope. The provisions of this chapter shall control the *alteration, repair, addition* and change of occupancy of existing *buildings* and structures.

R501.1.1 **~~Additions, alterations, or repairs:~~** **General.** ~~Additions, alterations, or repairs to an existing building, building system or portion thereof shall comply with Section R502, R503, or R504.~~ Except as specified in this chapter, this code shall not be used to require the removal, *alteration* or abandonment of, nor prevent the continued use and maintenance of, an existing *building* or *building* system lawfully in existence at the time of adoption of this code. Unaltered portions of the existing *building* or *building* supply system shall not be required to comply with this code.

~~**R501.2 Existing buildings.** Except as specified in this chapter, this code shall not be used to require the removal, *alteration* or abandonment of, nor prevent the continued use and maintenance of, an existing building or building system lawfully in existence at the time of adoption of this code.~~

R501.2 Compliance. *Additions, alterations, repairs* or changes of occupancy to, or relocation of, an existing *building, building* system or portion thereof shall comply with Section R502, R503, R504 or R505, respectively, in this code. Changes where unconditioned space is changed to *conditioned space* shall comply with Section R502.

~~**R501.3 Maintenance.** Deleted.~~

R501.3 Maintenance. *Buildings* and structures, and parts thereof, shall be maintained in a safe and sanitary condition. Devices and systems that are required by this code shall be maintained in conformance to the code edition under which installed. The owner or the owner's authorized agent shall be responsible for the maintenance of *buildings* and structures. The requirements of this chapter shall not provide the basis for removal or abrogation of energy conservation, fire protection and safety systems and devices in existing structures.

R501.4 Compliance. *Alterations, repairs, additions* and changes of occupancy to, or relocation of, existing buildings and structures shall comply with the provisions for *alterations, repairs, additions* and changes of occupancy or relocation, respectively, in this code and the *International Residential Code, International Building Code, International Existing Building Code, International Fire Code, International Fuel Gas Code, International Mechanical Code, International Plumbing Code*, the ~~*North Carolina Existing Building Code*~~, *International Property Maintenance Code, International Private Sewage Disposal Code* and NFPA 70.

R501.5 New and replacement materials. Except as otherwise required or permitted by this code, materials permitted by the applicable code for new construction shall be used. Like materials shall be permitted for *repairs*, provided that hazards to life, health or property are not created. Hazardous materials shall not be used where the code for new construction would not allow their use in *buildings* of similar occupancy, purpose and location.

~~**R501.6 Historic buildings.** No provision of this code relating to the construction, *repair, alteration*, restoration and movement of structures, and *change of occupancy* shall be mandatory for *historic buildings*.~~

R501.6 Historic buildings. Provisions of this code relating to the construction, *repair, alteration*, restoration and movement of structures, and *change of occupancy* shall not be mandatory for *historic buildings* provided that a report has been submitted to the code official and signed by the owner, a *registered design professional*, or a representative of the State Historic Preservation Office or the historic preservation authority having jurisdiction, demonstrating that compliance with that provision would threaten, degrade or destroy the historic form, fabric or function of the *building*.

SECTION R502
ADDITIONS

R502.1 General. *Additions* to an existing *building*, *building* system or portion thereof shall conform to the provisions of this code as those provisions relate to new construction without requiring the unaltered portion of the existing *building* or *building* system to comply with this code. *Additions* shall not create an unsafe or hazardous condition or overload existing *building* systems. An *addition* shall be deemed to comply with this code where the *addition* alone complies, where the existing *building* and *addition* comply with this code as a single building, or where the *building* with the *addition* does not use more energy than the existing *building*. *Additions* shall be in accordance with Section ~~R502.1.1~~ R502.2 or ~~R502.1.2~~ R502.3.

R502.2 Change in space conditioning. Any unconditioned or low-energy space that is altered to become *conditioned space* shall be required to be brought into full compliance with this code.

Exceptions:

1. Where the simulated performance option in Section R405 is used to comply with this section, the annual energy cost of the *proposed design* is permitted to be 110 percent of the annual energy cost otherwise allowed by Section R405.2.
2. Where the Total UA, as determined in Section R402.1.5, of the existing *building* and the *addition*, and any *alterations* that are part of the project, is less than or equal to the Total UA generated for the existing *building*.
3. Where complying in accordance with Section R405 and the annual energy cost or energy use of the *addition* and the existing *building*, and any *alterations* that are part of the project, is less than or equal to the annual energy cost of the existing *building*. The *addition* and any *alterations* that are part of the project shall comply with Section R405 in its entirety.

~~R502.1.1~~ R502.3 Prescriptive compliance. *Additions* shall comply with Sections ~~R502.1.1.1~~ R502.3.1 through ~~R502.1.1.4~~ R502.3.4.

~~R502.1.1.1~~ R502.3.1 Building envelope. New *building* ~~thermal~~ envelope assemblies that are part of the *addition* shall comply with Sections R402.1, R402.2, R402.3.1 through R402.3.5, and R402.4.

Exception: New envelope assemblies are exempt from the requirements of Section R402.4.1.2.

~~**R502.1.1.2 Heating and cooling systems.** New heating, cooling and duct systems that are part of the addition shall comply with Sections R403.1, R403.2, R403.3, R403.4 and R403.6. New heating and cooling appliances shall be sized in accordance with Section R403.7. Extensions of ducts from an existing system to a new addition shall require that the existing system be evaluated for the new design.~~

R502.3.2 Heating and cooling systems. HVAC ducts newly installed as part of an *addition* shall comply with Section R403.

Exception: Where ducts from an existing heating and cooling system are extended to an *addition*.

~~R502.1.1.3~~ R502.3.3 Service hot water systems. New service hot water systems that are part of the *addition* shall comply with Section R403.5.

~~R502.1.1.4~~ R502.3.4 Lighting. New lighting systems that are part of the *addition* shall comply with Section R404.1.

~~**R502.1.2 Simulated Performance Alternative.** The addition shall comply with Section R405,~~ as applicable.

SECTION R503
ALTERATIONS

R503.1 General. *Alterations* to any building or structure shall comply with the requirements of the code for new construction, without requiring the unaltered portions of the existing building or building system to comply with this code. *Alterations* shall be such that the existing building or structure is not less conforming to the provisions of this code than the existing *building* or structure was prior to the *alteration*.

Alterations shall not create an unsafe or hazardous condition or overload *existing* building systems. *Alterations* shall be such that the existing *building* or structure does not use more energy than the existing building or structure prior to the *alteration*. *Alterations* to existing *buildings* shall comply with Sections R503.1.1 through R503.1.4.

R503.1.1 Building envelope. Building envelope assemblies that are part of the *alteration* shall comply with Section R402.1.2 or R402.1.4, Sections R402.2.1 through ~~R402.2.15~~, R402.2.12, R402.3.1, R402.3.2, ~~R402.4.4~~ R402.4.3 and ~~R402.4.6~~ R402.4.5.

Exception: The following alterations to conditioned spaces shall not be required to comply with the requirements for new construction provided that the energy use of the building is not increased:

1. Storm windows installed over existing fenestration.
2. Existing ceiling, wall or floor cavities exposed during construction provided that these cavities are filled with insulation. ~~Roof systems requiring air space for ventilation shall retain the ventilation space required.~~
3. Construction where the existing roof, wall or floor cavity is not exposed.
4. Roof recover. ~~and roof replacement such that the existing building or structure is no less conforming to the provisions of this code than the existing building or structure was prior to the *alteration*.~~

~~5. Deleted~~

5. Roofs without insulation in the cavity and where the sheathing or insulation is exposed during reroofing shall be insulated either above or below the sheathing.
6. Surface-applied window film installed on existing single pane fenestration assemblies to reduce solar heat gain provided that the code does not require the glazing or fenestration assembly to be replaced.

~~7. Converting unconditioned attic space to conditioned attic space for one- and two-family dwellings and townhouses. Ceilings shall be insulated to a minimum of R-30, walls shall be insulated to the exterior wall requirements in Table R402.1.2 or Table R402.1.4 and follow the backing requirements in Sections R402.2.14 and R402.2.15.~~

~~**R503.1.1.1 Replacement fenestration.** Where an entire existing fenestration unit is replaced with a new fenestration product, including frame, sash and glazing, the replacement fenestration unit shall meet the applicable requirements for *U*-factor and SHGC in Table R402.1.2.~~
~~**Exception:** Alterations that replace less than 50 percent of entire fenestration units may be replaced with like or better fenestration units to match existing fenestration assemblies.~~

R503.1.1.1 Replacement fenestration. Where some or all of an existing fenestration unit is replaced with a new fenestration product, including sash and glazing, the replacement fenestration unit shall meet the applicable requirements for *U*-factor and SHGC as specified in Table R402.1.3. Where more than one replacement fenestration unit is to be installed, an area-weighted average of the *U*-factor, SHGC or both of all replacement fenestration units shall be an alternative that can be used to show compliance.

~~**R503.1.2 Heating and cooling systems.** New heating, cooling and duct systems that are part of the alteration shall comply with Sections R403.1, R403.2, R403.3 R403.4, R403.6 and R403.7.~~

~~**Exception:** An alteration involving a partial system replacement to an existing duct system shall not require a duct leakage test.~~

R503.1.2 Heating and cooling systems. HVAC ducts newly installed as part of an *alteration* shall comply with Section R403.

Exception: Where ducts from an existing heating and cooling system are extended to an *addition*.

R503.1.3 Service hot water systems. New service hot water systems that are part of the *alteration* shall comply with Section R403.5.

R503.1.4 Lighting. New lighting systems that are part of the *alteration* shall comply with Section R404.1.

Exception: *Alterations* that replace less than ~~50~~ 10 percent of the luminaires in a space, provided that such alterations do not increase the installed interior lighting power.

~~**R503.2 Change in space conditioning.** New work performed shall meet the requirements of this code. Projects changing unconditioned space to conditioned space and costing more than $10,000 shall require 10 percent of the project cost to be used toward meeting the requirements of Chapter 11 of the *North Carolina Residential Code* for one- and two family dwellings and townhouses or the *North Carolina Energy Conservation Code*. Project costs for the purpose of this section is the total project cost listed on all permits related to the work required to convert the unconditioned space to conditioned space and excludes the~~

~~10 percent added from this section. Under this section, existing building envelope elements that become a part of the building thermal envelope and are not changed are not required to be upgraded. The additional 10 percent of the project cost shall be appropriated for additional energy conservation features of choice that are addressed in Chapter 11 of the *North Carolina Residential Code* for one- and two-family dwellings and townhouses or the *North Carolina Energy Conservation Code*. In addition to the 10-percent project cost, any existing wall, ceiling, or floor cavities that are exposed during construction shall at a minimum be insulated to comply with Chapter 11 of the *North Carolina Residential Code* for one and two-family dwellings and townhouses or the *North Carolina Energy Conservation Code* or be insulated to fill the cavity, whichever is less. Roof systems requiring air space for ventilation shall retain the ventilation space required. Projects costing less than $10,000 are not subject to the 10-percent project cost addition provision.~~

SECTION R504
REPAIRS

R504.1 General. ~~Repair of the building systems shall not make the building less conforming than it was before the repair was undertaken.~~ *Buildings*, structures and parts thereof shall be repaired in compliance with Section R501.3 and this section. Work on nondamaged components necessary for the required *repair* of damaged components shall be considered to be part of the *repair* and shall not be subject to the requirements for *alterations* in this chapter. Routine maintenance required by Section R501.3, ordinary repairs exempt from *permit*, and abatement of wear due to normal service conditions shall not be subject to the requirements for *repairs* in this section.

~~**R504.2 Materials.** Portions of walls that are part of the building thermal envelope shall be insulated in accordance with this code when the repair requires the removal of either the interior or exterior wall membrane such that the wall cavity is exposed during the repair.~~
~~**Exception:** Wall cavities containing existing insulation material.~~

R504.2 Application. For the purposes of this code, the following shall be considered to be *repairs*:

1. Glass-only replacements in an existing sash and frame.
2. Roof *repairs*.
3. *Repairs* where only the bulb, ballast or both within the existing luminaires in a space are replaced provided that the replacement does not increase the installed interior lighting power.

~~**R504.3 Glazing.** Repairs requiring the replacement of individual glass panes or sashes shall not require compliance with this code.~~

SECTION R505
CHANGE OF OCCUPANCY OR USE

~~**R505.1 General.** New work performed in spaces undergoing a change in occupancy shall comply with the requirements of this code. Unaltered portions of the existing building or building supply system shall not be required to comply with this code~~

R505.1 General. Any space that is converted to a dwelling unit or portion thereof from another use or occupancy shall comply with this code.

Exception: Where the simulated performance option in Section R405 is used to comply with this section, the annual energy cost of the *proposed design* is permitted to be 110 percent of the annual energy cost allowed by Section R405.2.

R505.1.1 Unconditioned space. Any unconditioned or low-energy space that is altered to become a *conditioned space* shall comply with Section R502.

CHAPTER 6 [RE]
REFERENCED STANDARDS

AAMA

American Architectural Manufacturers Association
1827 Walden Office Square
Suite 550
Schaumburg, IL 60173-4268

~~**AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A C440—11**~~

AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A C440—17

North American Fenestration Standard/Specifications for Windows, Doors and Unit Skylights
R402.4.4

ACCA

Air Conditioning Contractors of America
1330 Braddock Place, Suite 350
Alexandria, VA 22314

ANSI/ACCA 2 Manual J—16

Residential Load Calculation
R403.7

ANSI/ACCA 3 Manual S—14

Residential Equipment Selection
R403.7

APSP

Pool & Tub Alliance (formerly the APSP)
2111 Eisenhower Avenue, Suite 500
Alexandria, VA 22314

ANSI/APSP/ICC 14—2019

American National Standard for Portable Electric Spa Energy Efficiency
R403.11

~~**ANSI/APSP/ICC 15a—2013**~~

ANSI/APSP/ICC 15a—2011

American National Standard for Residential Swimming Pool and Spas—Includes Addenda A Approved January 9, 2013
R403.12

ASHRAE

ASHRAE
180 Technology Parkway NW

ASHRAE 193—2010(RA 2014)

Method of Test for Determining the Airtightness of HVAC Equipment

R403.3.4.1

ASHRAE—2001

2001 ASHRAE Handbook of Fundamentals
Table R405.5.2(1)

~~**ASHRAE—2013**~~

ASHRAE—2021

ASHRAE Handbook of Fundamentals
R402.1.5

ASTM

ASTM International
100 Barr Harbor Drive, P.O. Box C700
West Conshohocken, PA 19428-2959

C1363—11

Standard Test Method for Thermal Performance of Building Materials and Envelope Assemblies by Means of a Hot Box Apparatus
R303.1.4.1

~~**E283—2004**~~

E283—2004(2012)

Test Method for Determining the Rate of Air Leakage Through Exterior Windows, Curtain Walls and Doors Under Specified Pressure Differences Across the Specimen
R402.4.4

~~**E779—2010**~~

E779—2010(2018)

Standard Test Method for Determining Air Leakage Rate by Fan Pressurization
R402.4.1.2

E1554/E1554M—E2013

Standard Test Methods for Determining Air Leakage of Air Distribution Systems by Fan Pressurization
R403.3.5

E1827—2011

E1827—2011(2017)

Standard Test Methods for Determining Airtightness of Building Using an Orifice Blower Door
R402.4.1.2

E2178—2013

Standard Test Method for Air Permanence of Building Materials
R303.1.5

CSA

CSA Group
8501 East Pleasant Valley Road
~~Cleveland, OH 44131-5516~~

~~AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440—11~~

AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440—17

North American Fenestration Standard/Specification for Windows, Doors and Unit Skylights R402.4.3

CSA B55.1—2015

Test Method for Measuring Efficiency and Pressure Loss of Drain Water Heat Recovery Units
R403.5.3

CSA B55.2—2015

Drain Water Heat Recovery Units
R403.5.3

DASMA

Door & Access Systems Manufacturers Association
1300 Sumner Avenue
Cleveland, OH 44115-2851

~~105—92(R2004)-13~~

105—2017

Test Method for Thermal Transmittance and Air Infiltration of Garage Doors and Rolling Doors
R303.1.3

HVI

Home Ventilating Institute
1740 Dell Range Blvd, Ste H, PMB 450
Cheyenne, WY 82009

916—18

Airflow Test Procedure Table R403.6.2

ICC

International Code Council, Inc.
500 New Jersey Avenue NW6th Floor
Washington, DC 20001

ANSI/APSP/ICC 14—2019

American National Standard for Portable Electric Spa Energy Efficiency
R403.11

ANSI/APSP/ICC 15a—2020

American National Standard for Residential Swimming Pool and Spa Energy Efficiency
R403.12

~~ANSI/RESNET/ICC 301—14~~

ANSI/RESNET/ICC 301—2019

Standard for the Calculation and Labeling of the Energy Performance of Dwelling and Sleeping Units using an Energy Rating Index
R406.4

ICC—continued

ANSI/RESNET/ICC 380—2019

Standard for Testing Airtightness of Building, Dwelling Unit and Sleeping Unit Enclosures; Airtightness of Heating and Cooling Air Distribution Systems, and Airflow of Mechanical Ventilation Systems

R402.4.1.2

IBC—21

International Building Code®

R201.3, R303.1.1, R303.2, R402.1.1, R501.4

ICC 400—17

Standard on the Design and Construction of Log Structures

R402.1

ICC 500—2020

ICC/NSSA Standard for the Design and Construction of Storm Shelters

R402.5

~~**IEBC—15**~~

IEBC—21

International Existing Building Code®

R501.4

IECC—06

2006 International Energy Conservation Code®

R202

IECC—09

2009 International Energy Conservation Code®

R406.2

IECC—15

2015 International Energy Conservation Code®

Table R406.5

~~**IFC—15**~~

IFC—21

International Fire Code®

R201.3, R501.4

~~**IFGC-15**~~

IFGC—21

International Fuel Gas Code®

R201.3, R501.4

~~**IMC–15**~~

IMC—21

International Mechanical Code®

R201.3, R403.3.3, R403.3.4, R403.6, R501.4

~~**IPC–15**~~

IPC—21

International Plumbing Code®

R201.3, R501.4

IPMC—21

International Property Maintenance Code®
R501.4

IPSDC—21

International Private Sewage Disposal Code®
R501.4

~~IRC—15~~

IRC—21

International Residential Code®
R201.3, R303.1.1, R303.2, R402.1.1, R402.2.10.1, R403.3.3, R403.3.4, R403.6, R501.4

IEEE

Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers, Inc.
3 Park Avenue, 17th Floor
New York, NY 10016-5997

515.1—2012

IEEE Standard for the Testing, Design, Installation and Maintenance of Electrical Resistance Trace Heating for Commercial Applications
R403.5.1.2

NEMA

OS 4-2016 Requirements for Air-Sealed Boxes for Electrical and Communication Applications R402.4.6

NFPA

National Fire Protection Association
1 Batterymarch Park
Quincy, MA 02169-7471

70—20

National Electrical Code
R501.4

NFRC

National Fenestration Rating Council, Inc.
6305 Ivy Lane, Suite 140
Greenbelt, MD 20770

~~100—2009~~

100—2020

Procedure for Determining Fenestration Products *U*-factors
R303.1.3

~~200—2009~~

200—2020

Procedure for Determining Fenestration Product Solar Heat Gain Coefficients and Visible Transmittance at Normal Incidence
R303.1.3

~~400—2009~~

400—2020

Procedure for Determining Fenestration Product Air Leakage
R402.4.3

RESNET

Residential Energy Services Network, Inc.
P.O. Box 4561
Oceanside, CA 92052-4561

ANSI/RESNET/ICC 301—2019

Standard for the Calculation and Labeling of the Energy Performance of Dwelling and Sleeping Units using an Energy Rating Index
R406.4, R406.7.1, R406.7.6

ANSI/RESNET/ICC 380—2019

Standard for Testing Airtightness of Building, Dwelling Unit and Sleeping Unit Enclosures; Airtightness of Heating and Cooling Air Distribution Systems, and Airflow of Mechanical Ventilation Systems
R402.4.1.2, R403.3.5

UL

UL LLC
333 Pfingsten Road
Northbrook, IL 60062

127—2011

Standard for Factory-Built Fireplaces—with Revisions through July 2016
R402.4.2

515—2015

Standard for Electrical Resistance Trace Heating for Commercial Applications
R403.5.1.2

US-FTC

United States-Federal Trade Commission
600 Pennsylvania Avenue NW
Washington, DC 20580

~~**CFR Title 16 (May 31, 2005)**~~

CFR Title 16 (2015)

R-value Rule
R303.1.4

WDMA

Window and Door Manufacturers Association
2025 M Street NW, Suite 800
Washington, DC 20036-3309

~~**AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440—11**~~

AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440—17

North American Fenestration Standard/Specification for Windows, Doors and Unit Skylights
R402.4.4

APPENDIX R1
RESIDENTIAL REQUIREMENTS
(Appendix exclusive to the State of North Carolina)

Appendix R1.1 Energy Efficiency Certificate (Section R401.3)

TABLE R401.3
ENERGY EFFICIENCY CERTIFICATE – 2018 To be deleted

Builder, Permit Holder or Registered Design Professional Print Name: Signature:	
Property Address:	
Date:	
Insulation Rating – List the value covering largest area to all that apply	**R-Value**
Ceiling/roof:	R-
Wall:	R-
Floor:	R-
Closed crawl space wall:	R-
Closed crawl space floor:	R-
Slab:	R-
Basement wall:	R-
Fenestration:	
U-Factor	
Solar Heat Gain Coefficient (SHGC)	
Building Air Leakage	
❑ Visually inspected according to R402.4.2.1 OR	
❑ Building air leakage test results (Sec. R402.4.2.2) ACH50 [Target: 5.0] or CFM50/SFSA [Target: 0.30]	
Name of Tester/Company: Date: Phone:	
Ducts:	
Insulation	R-
Total duct leakage test result (Sect. R403.3.3) Circle one: Total duct leakage test (CFM25 Total/100SF) [Target: 5] Or Duct leakage to the outside test (CFM25 Total/100SF) [Target: 4]	
Name of Tester or Company: Date: Phone:	
Certificate to be displayed permanently	

TABLE R401.3
ENERGY EFFICIENCY CERTIFICATE – 2024 Shown below

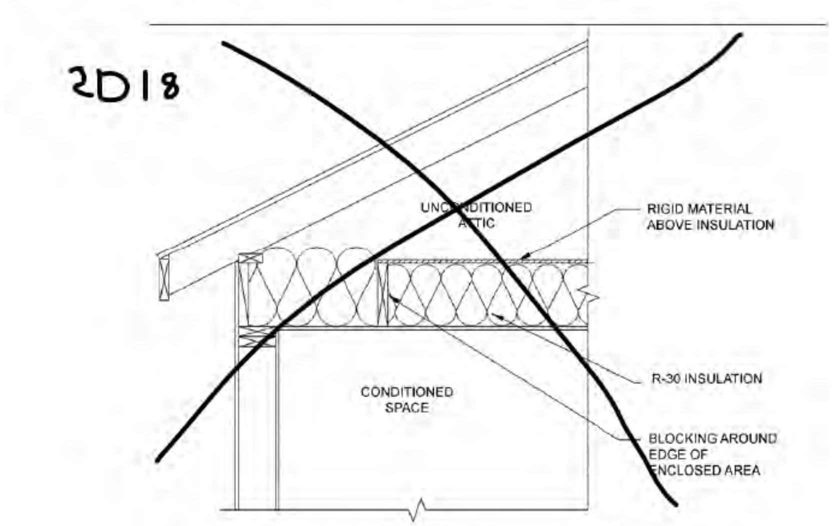
Energy Efficiency Certificate – Code Edition Permitted under: ______	
Energy Code Compliance path used (Circle one): 1.Prescriptive 2.Total Building Performance 3.ERI	
Builder, Permit Holder or Registered Design Professional: Print Name: Signature:	
Property Address:	
Date:	
Insulation Rating – List the value covering largest area to all that apply	**R-value**
Ceiling/roof:	**R-**
Wall:	R-
Floor:	R-
Closed crawl space wall:	R-
Closed crawl space floor:	R-
Slab:	R-
Basement wall:	R-
Fenestration	
Fenestration (excluding skylights)	U- $U_{w.a.}$-
Fenestration (Skylights)	U- $U_{w.a.}$-
Solar Heat Gain Coefficient (SHGC)(All glazed fenestration)	SHGC - $SHGC_{w.a.}$-
Building Air Leakage	
Building air leakage test results (See N1102.4.1.2, R402.4.1.2) Target value: 4.0 ACH@50; or see N1102.4 (R402.4.1.2) for alternate test pressures and leakage allowance values.	
Name of Tester/Company: Date of test: Phone:	
Ducts:	
Insulation	R-
Total Duct leakage test result (N1103.3.6, R403.3.6) Target value: 4.0 CFM per 100 sq. ft. of conditioned floor area, at test pressure of 0.1 inch of w.g. (25 Pascals); or 8.0 CFM per 100 sq. ft. of conditioned floor area, at test pressure of 0.1 inch of w.g. (25 Pascals) if all ductwork is within building thermal envelope	
Name of Tester or Company: Date of Test: Phone:	
Heating/Cooling Equipment	
Type(s): Size(s) Btu/hr: Fuel-fired Efficiency: Heat pump and/or AC SEER, HSPF:	
Water heating	
Type(s) Size(s) (Watts or Btu/hr): Fuel fired efficiency: Heat pump Water heater COP:	
Where a gas-fired unvented room heater, electric furnace or baseboard electric heater is installed in the residence, the certificate shall indicate "**gas-fired unvented room heater**," "**electric furnace**" or "**baseboard electric heater**," as appropriate:	

Energy Rating Index: If, and only if the ERI pathway was used, write the ERI Score: Without On-Site generation: With On-Site generation (if applicable):
Certificate to be displayed permanently- per N1101.14 (R401.3)

APPENDIX R1.2
INSULATION AND AIR SEALING DETAILS

APPENDIX R1.2.1 (Section R402.2.1)

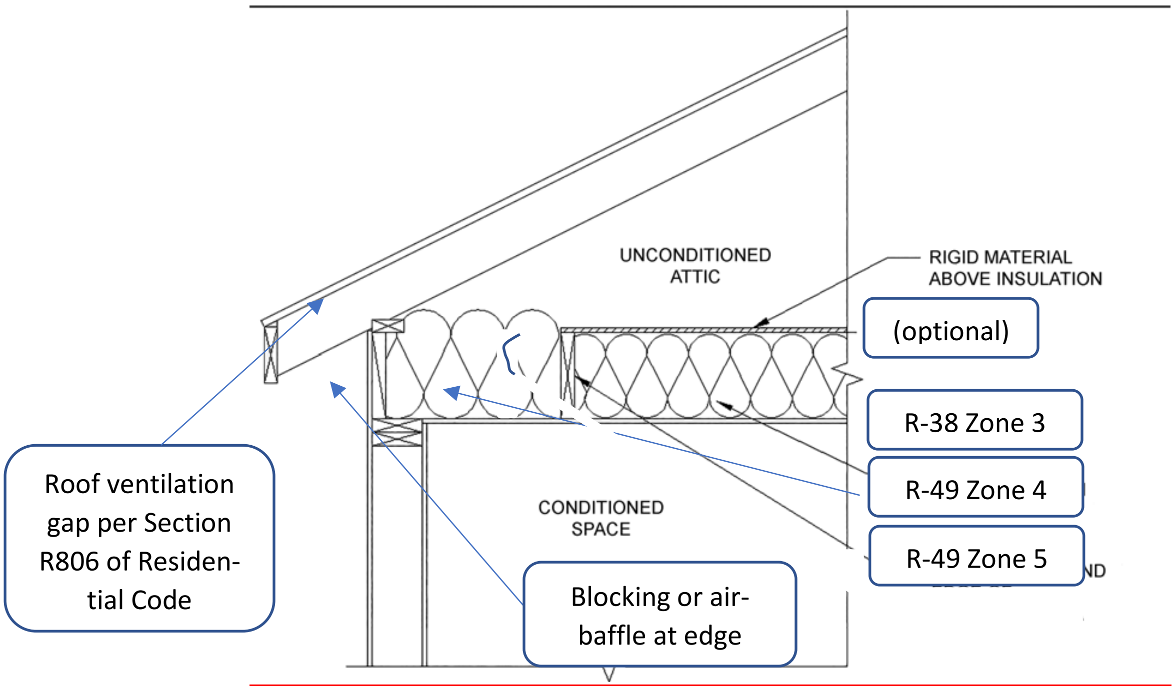
R402.2.1 Ceilings with attic spaces: Exception for fully enclosed attic floor systems.



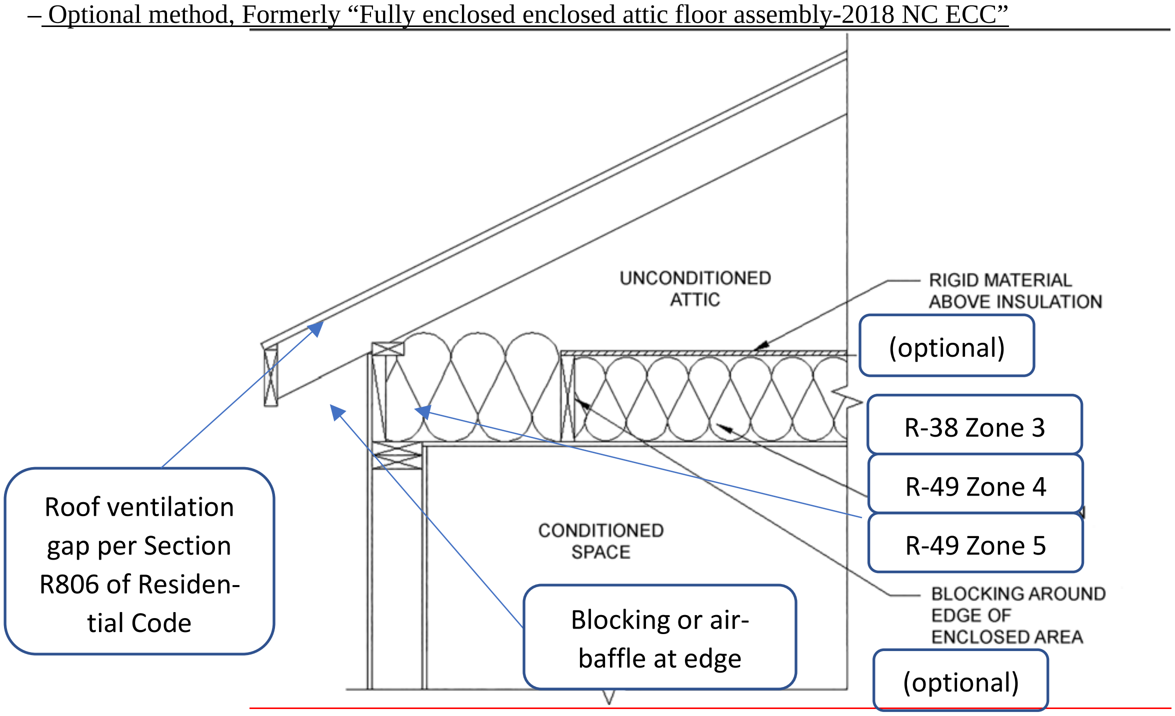
SECTION VIEW OF CEILING WITH ATTIC SPACE

APPENDIX R1.2.1 (Section R402.2.1) [2024]

R402.2.1 Ceilings with attic spaces: Allowance for reduced insulation if full-height insulation is provided over the wall top plate at the eaves.



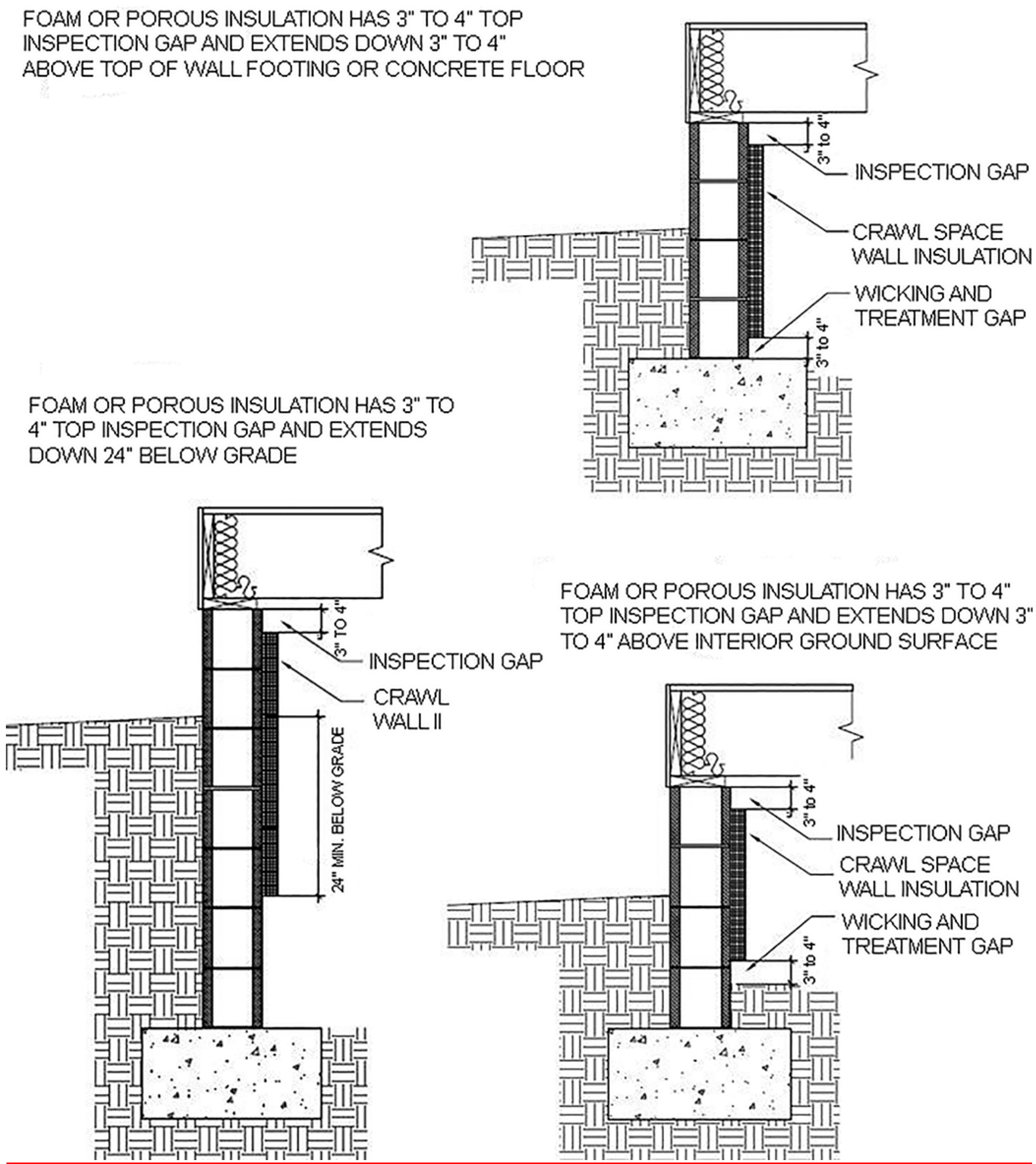
R402.2.1 Ceilings with attic spaces: Allowance for reduced insulation if full-height insulation is provided over the walls eaves – Optional method, Formerly "Fully enclosed enclosed attic floor assembly-2018 NC ECC"



R402.2.1 Ceilings with attic spaces: Exception for fully enclosed attic floor systems.

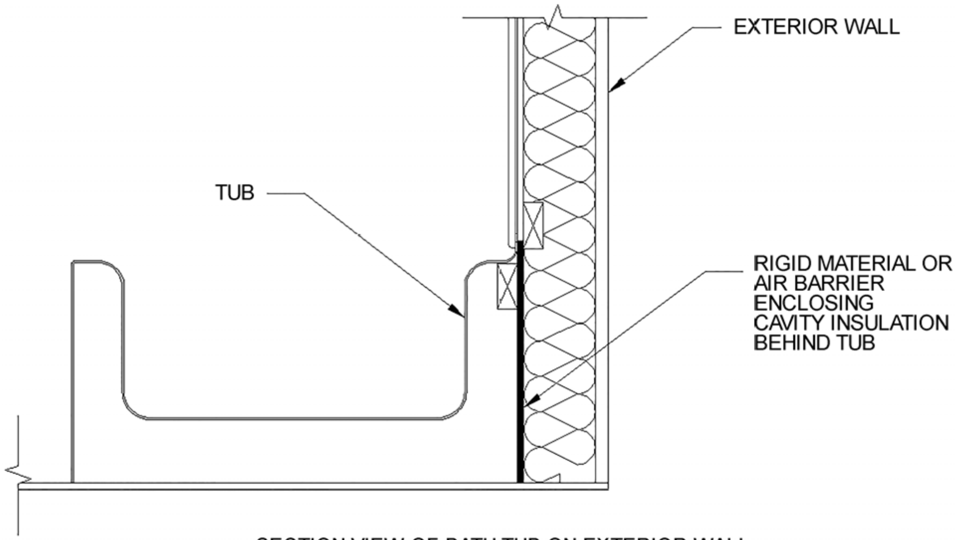
APPENDIX R1.2.2 (Section ~~R402.2.11~~ R402.2.10)

~~R402.2.11~~ R402.2.10 Closed crawl space walls. Insulation illustrations. [Note to Reviewer – No Changes in diagram]



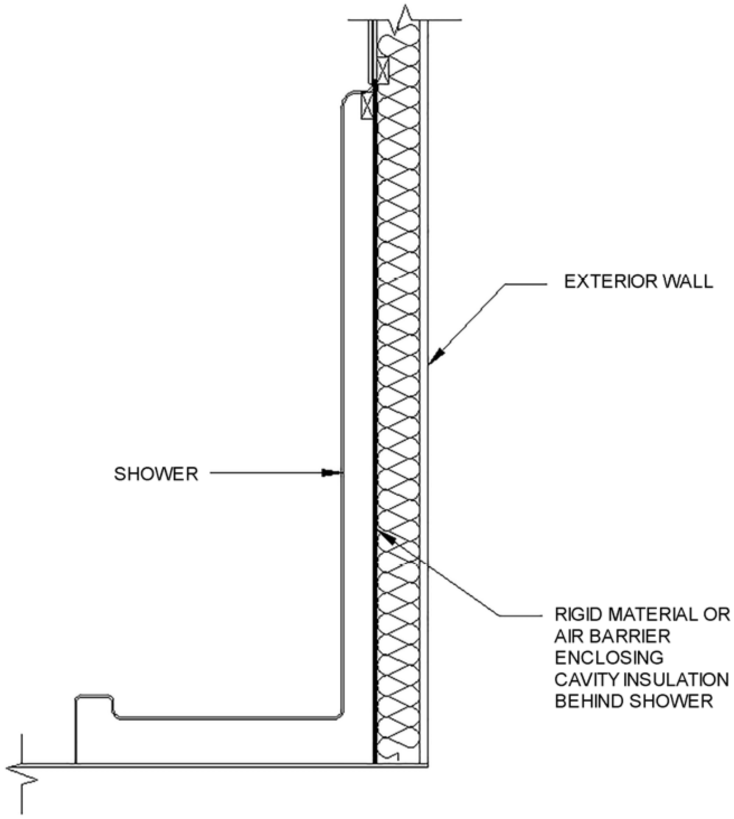
APPENDIX R1.2.3 (Section ~~R402.2.14~~ R402.4.1.1, Table ~~R402.2.15~~ R402.4.1.1)

~~Table R402.2.14~~ R402.4.1.1 Air Barrier, Air Sealing and Insulation Installation. Shower/Tub on exterior wall
[Note to reviewer – no change to diagram]



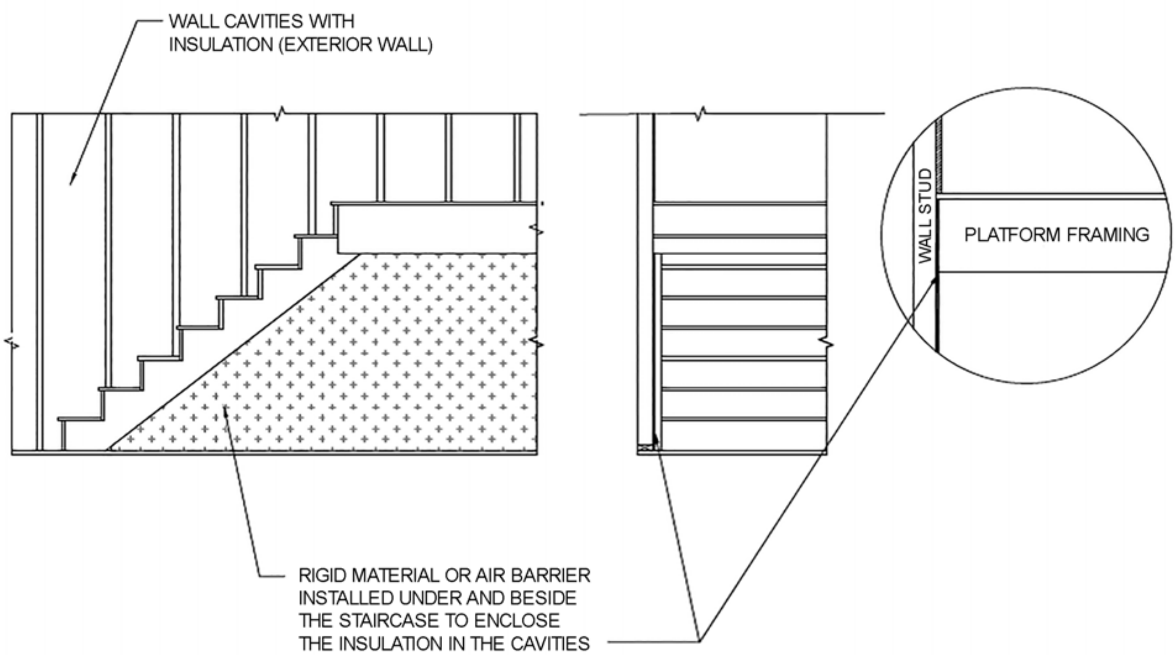
SECTION VIEW OF BATH TUB ON EXTERIOR WALL

~~R402.2.14~~ <u>Table R402.4.1.1</u> **Air Barrier, Air Sealing and Insulation Installation.** Shower/tub on exterior wall [Note to reviewer – no change to diagram]



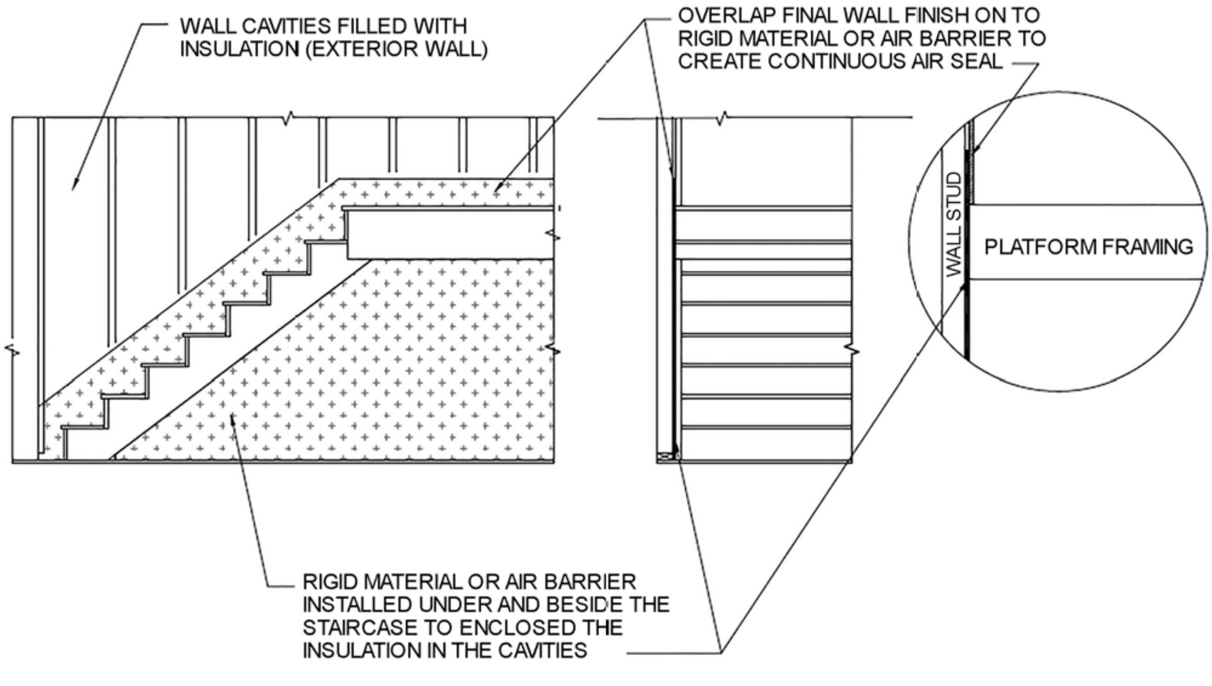
SECTION VIEW OF SHOWER ON EXTERIOR WALL

~~R402.2.14~~ Table R402.4.1.1 Air Barrier, Air Sealing, and Insulation Installation – General Requirements
[Note to reviewer – no change to diagram]



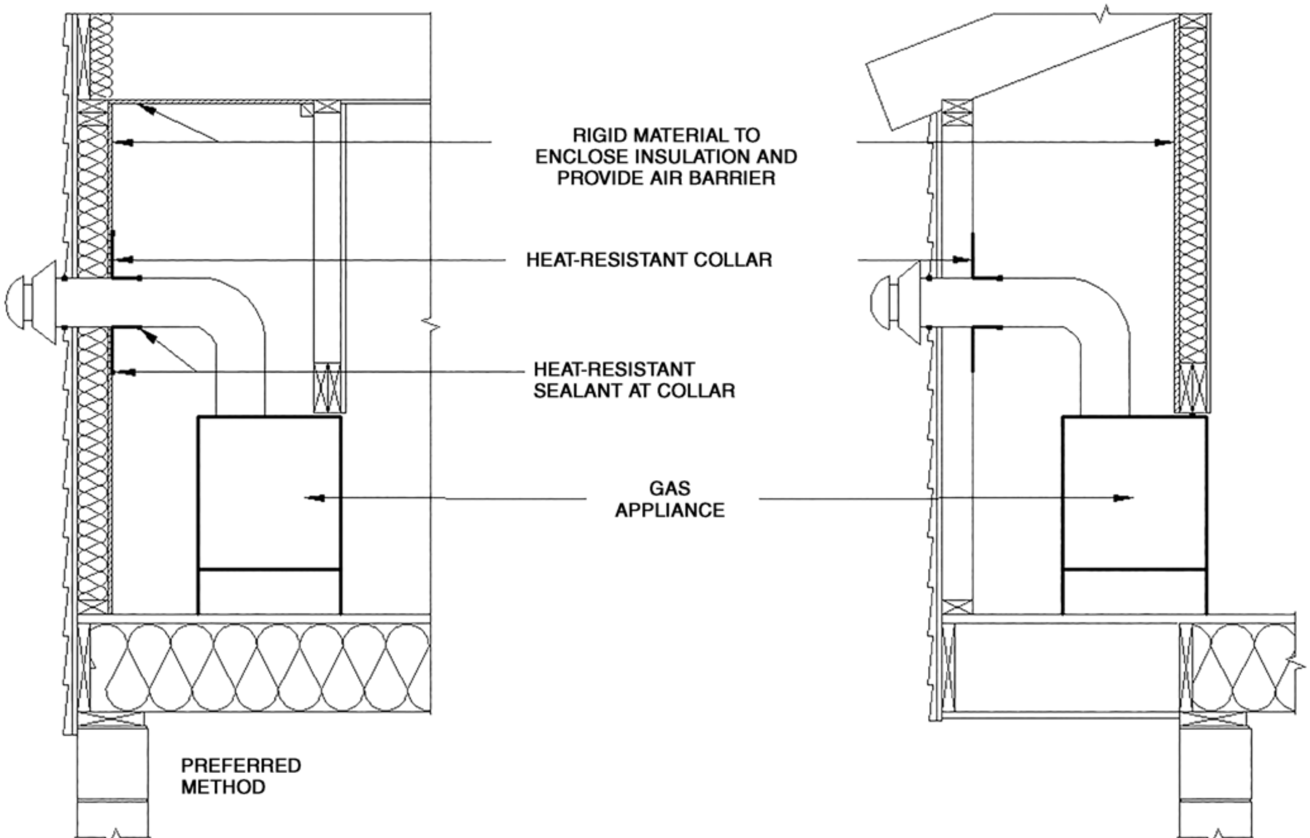
SECTION VIEW OF INTERIOR STAIRCASE ON EXTERIOR WALL (OPTION 1)

~~R402.2.14~~ Table R402.4.1.1 Air Barrier, Air Sealing, and Insulation Installation – General Requirements
[Note to reviewer – no change to diagram]



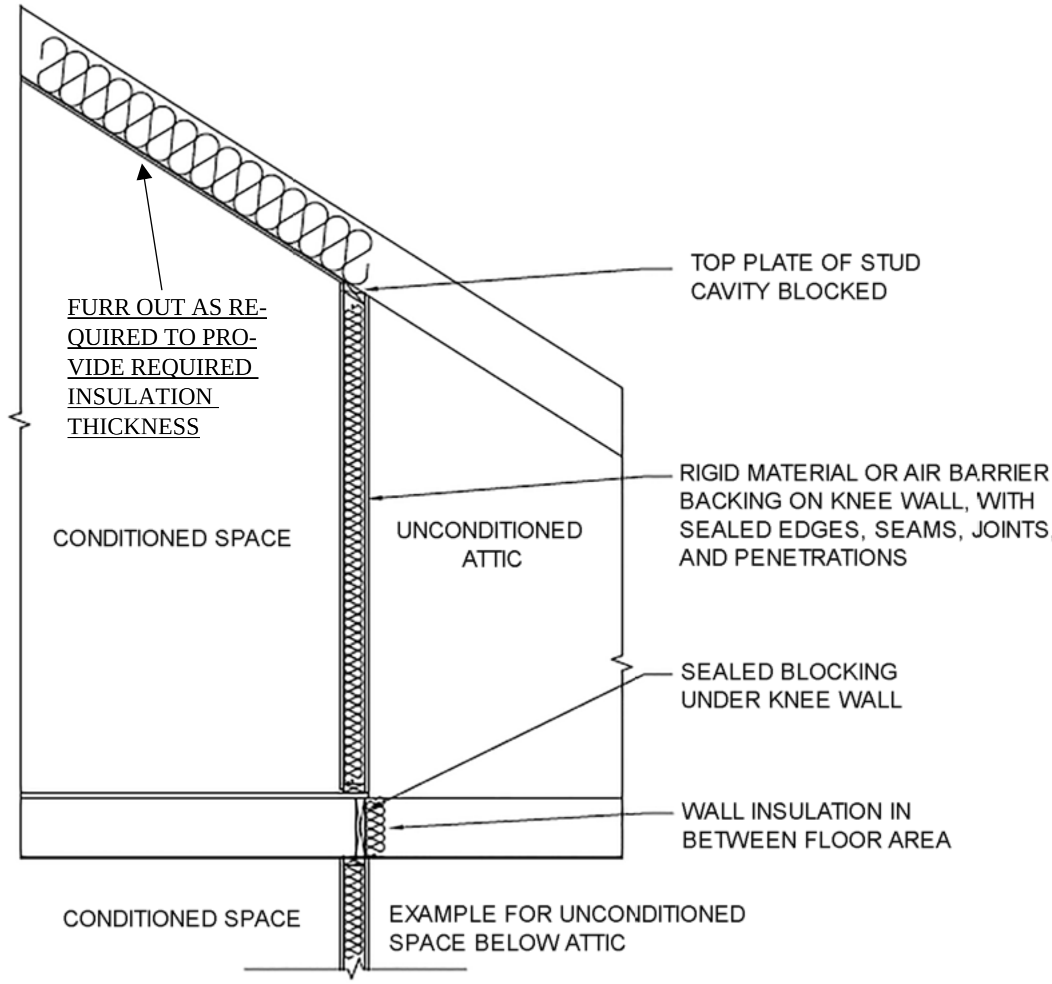
SECTION VIEW OF INTERIOR STAIRCASE ON EXTERIOR WALL (OPTION 2)

~~R402.2.14~~ Table R402.4.1.1 Air Barrier, Air Sealing, and Insulation Installation – Shafts, penetrations. Flue Shaft. [Note to reviewer – no changes to diagram]



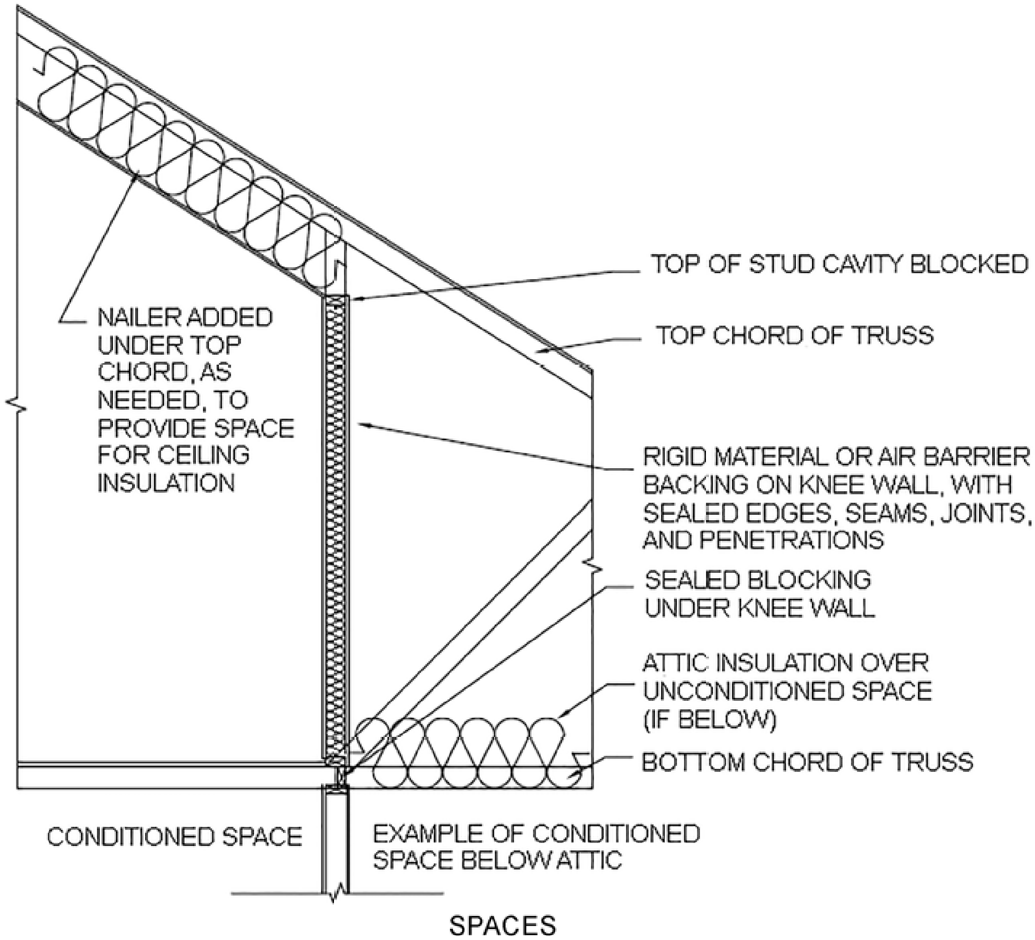
SECTION VIEW OF DIRECT VENT GAS FIREPLACE

~~R402.2.15~~ Table R402.4.1.1 Air Barrier, Air Sealing, and Insulation Installation – Walls, Knee walls, stick framed roof



SECTION VIEW OF WALL ADJOINING ATTIC SPACE WITH STICK FRAMED ROOF

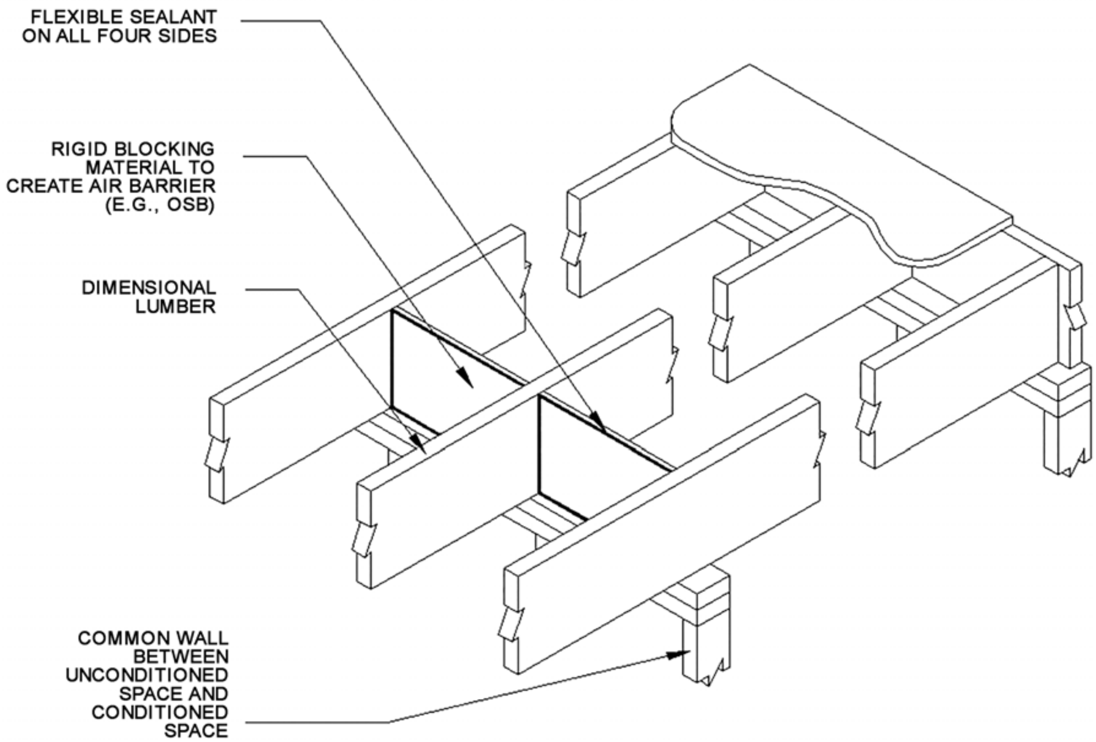
~~R402.2.15~~ Table R402.4.1.1 Air Barrier, Air Sealing, and Insulation Installation – Walls, Knee walls, trusses
[Note to Reviewer – no change to diagram]



SECTION VIEW OF WALL ADJOINING ATTIC SPACE WITH TRUSS ROOF

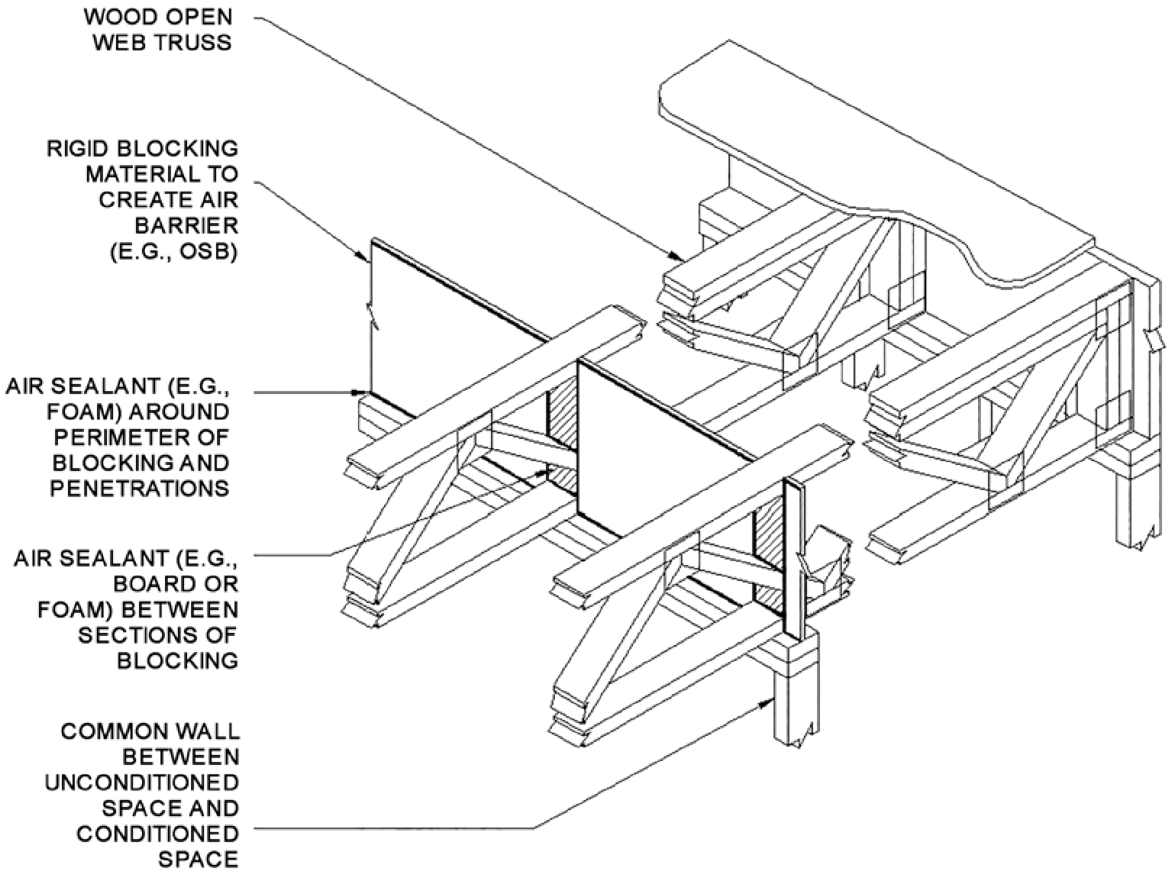
~~R402.4.1~~ Table R402.4.1.1 Air Barrier, Air Sealing, and Insulation Installation – Cantilevered floor – dimensional lumber

[note to reviewer – diagram unchanged]



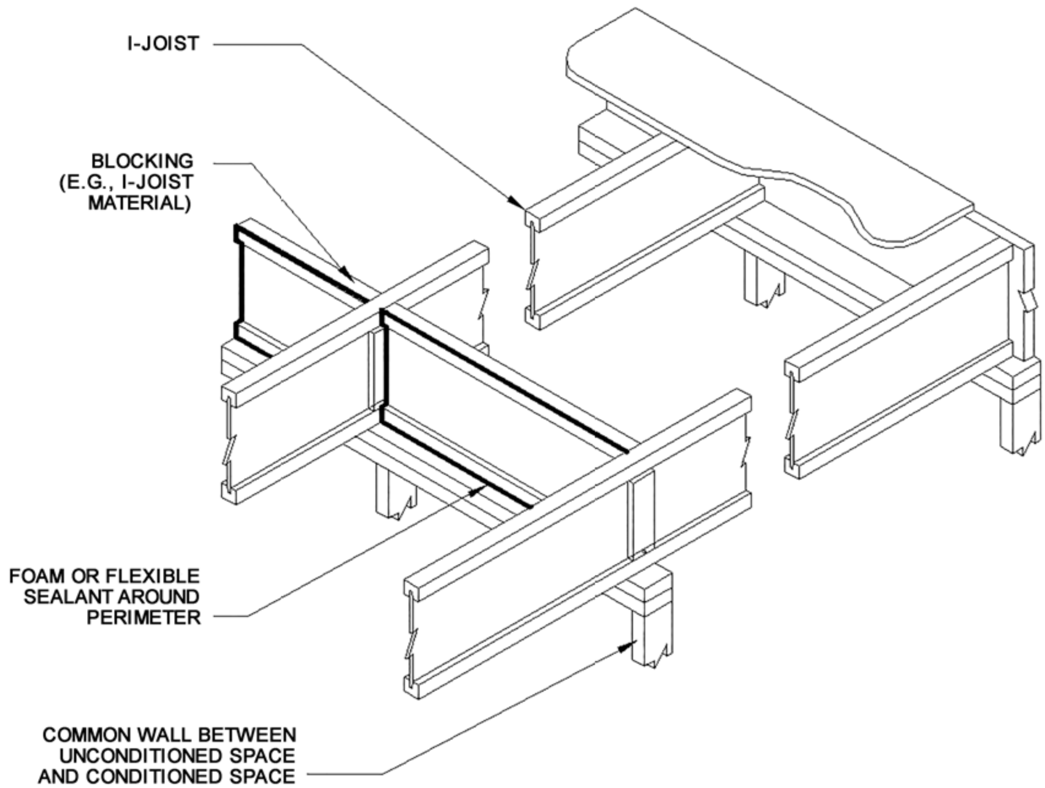
ISOMETRIC VIEW OF DIMENSIONAL LUMBER FLOOR/CEILING SYSTEM ABOVE COMMON WALL BETWEEN UNCONDITIONED AND CONDITIONED SPACE

~~R402.4.1~~ Table R402.4.1.1 Air Barrier, Air Sealing, and Insulation Installation – Cantilevered floor – floor trusses
[Note to reviewer – No Changes to Diagram]



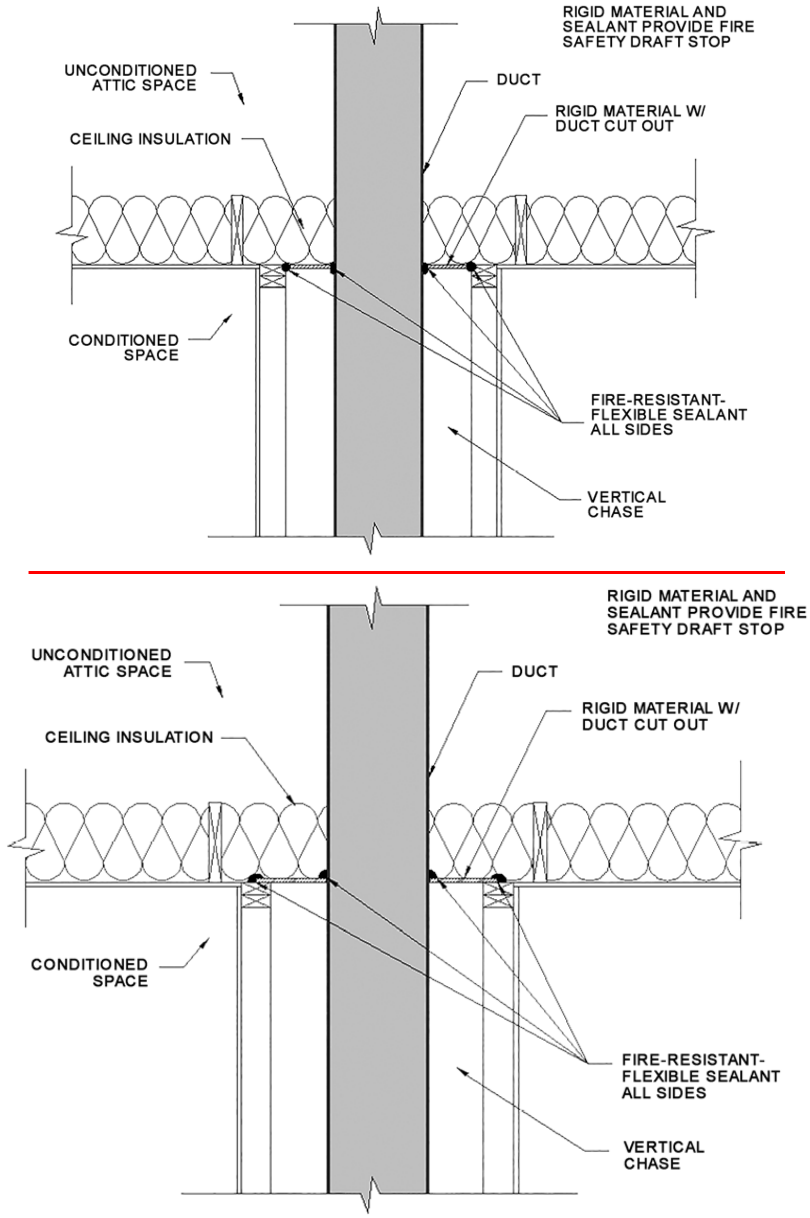
ISOMETRIC VIEW OF WOOD TRUSS FLOOR/CEILING SYSTEM ABOVE COMMON WALL BETWEEN UNCONDITIONED AND CONDITIONED SPACE

~~R402.4.1~~ Table R402.4.1.1 Air Barrier, Air Sealing, and Insulation Installation – Cantilevered floor – I-joists [Note to Reviewer diagram unchanged]



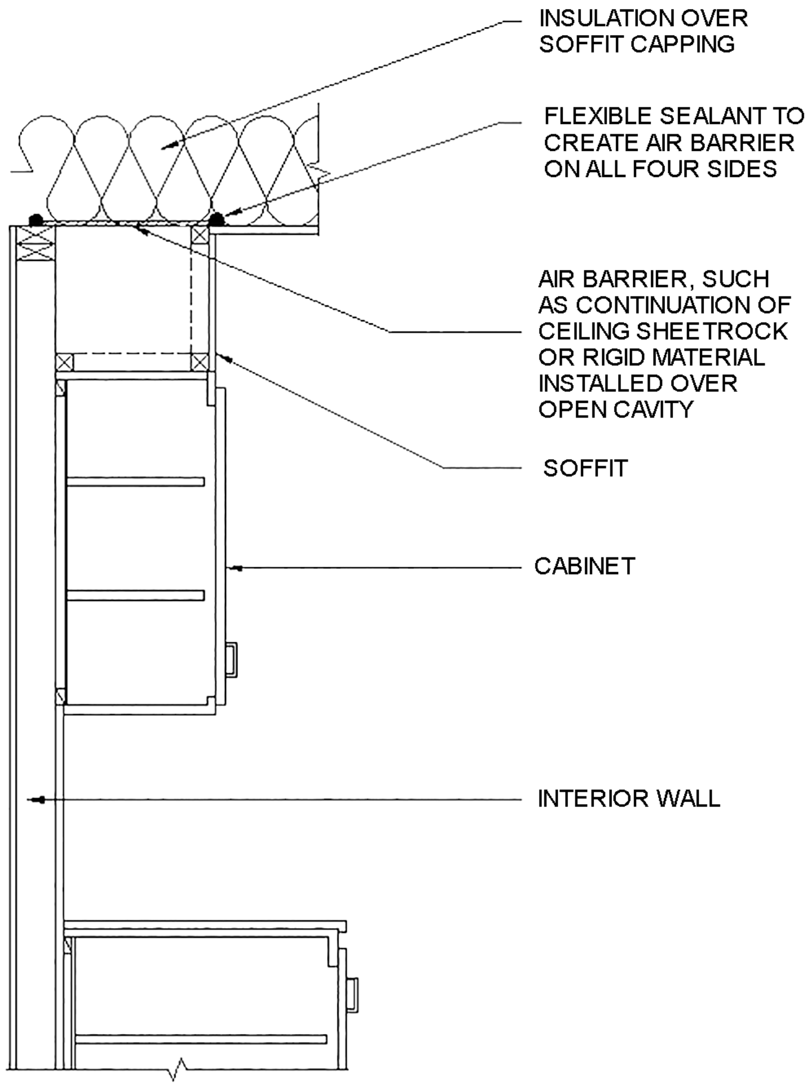
ISOMETRIC VIEW OF I-JOIST FLOOR/CEILING SYSTEM ABOVE COMMON WALL BETWEEN UNCONDITIONED AND CONDITIONED SPACE

~~R402.4.1~~ Table R402.4.1.1 Air Barrier, Air Sealing, and Insulation Installation – Shafts, penetrations [Note to Reviewer – diagram unchanged]



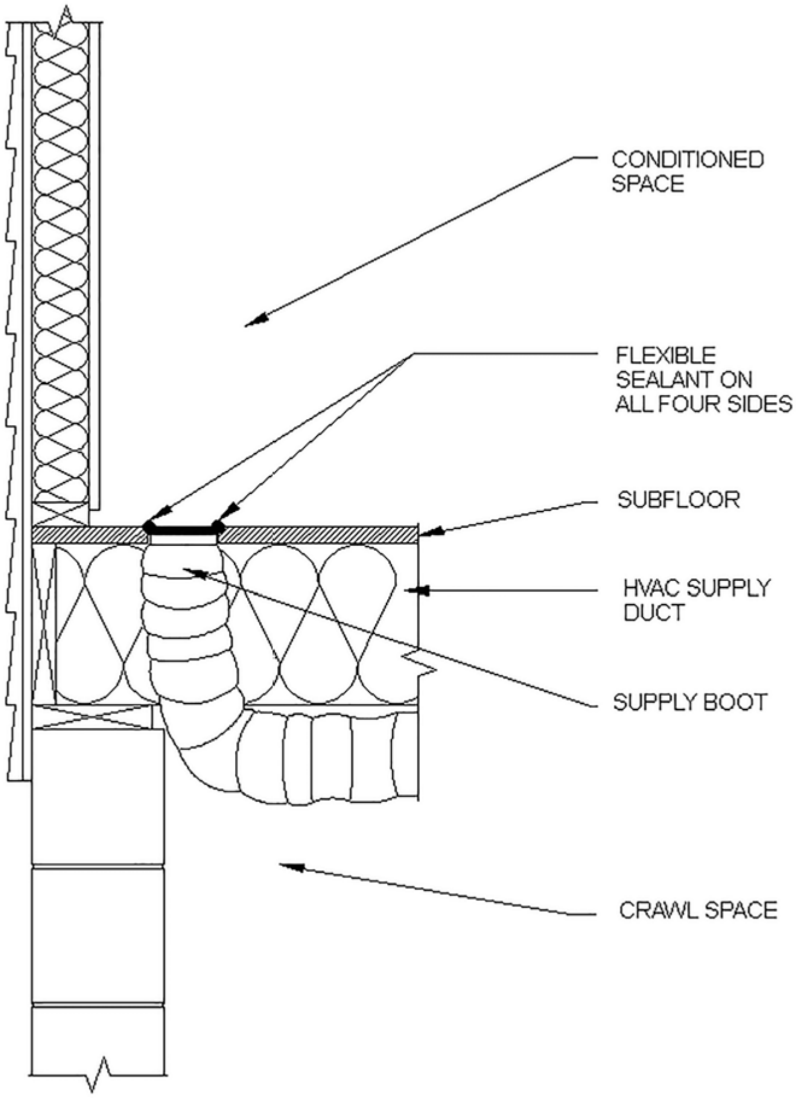
SECTION VIEWS OF DUCT PENETRATING INTO ATTIC

~~R402.4.1~~ Table R402.4.1.1 Air Barrier, Air Sealing, and Insulation Installation – Ceiling/attic – dropped soffit
[Note to reviewer – diagram unchanged]



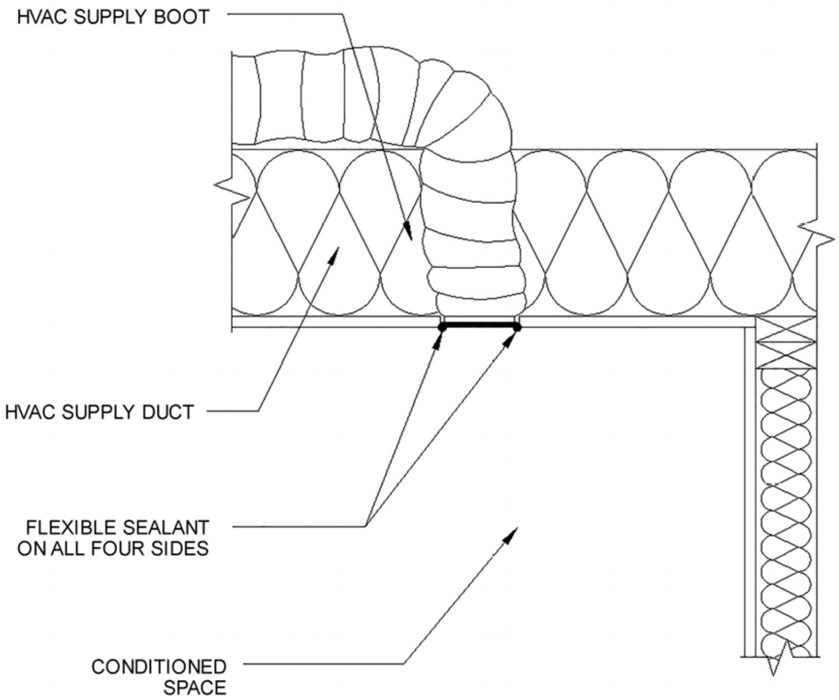
SECTION VIEW OF SOFFIT OVER CABINET

~~R402.4.1~~ <u>Table R402.4.1.1</u> Air Barrier, Air Sealing, and Insulation Installation – HVAC register boots – floor [Note to reviewer – diagram unchanged]



SECTION VIEW OF FLOOR HVAC BOOT PENETRATION

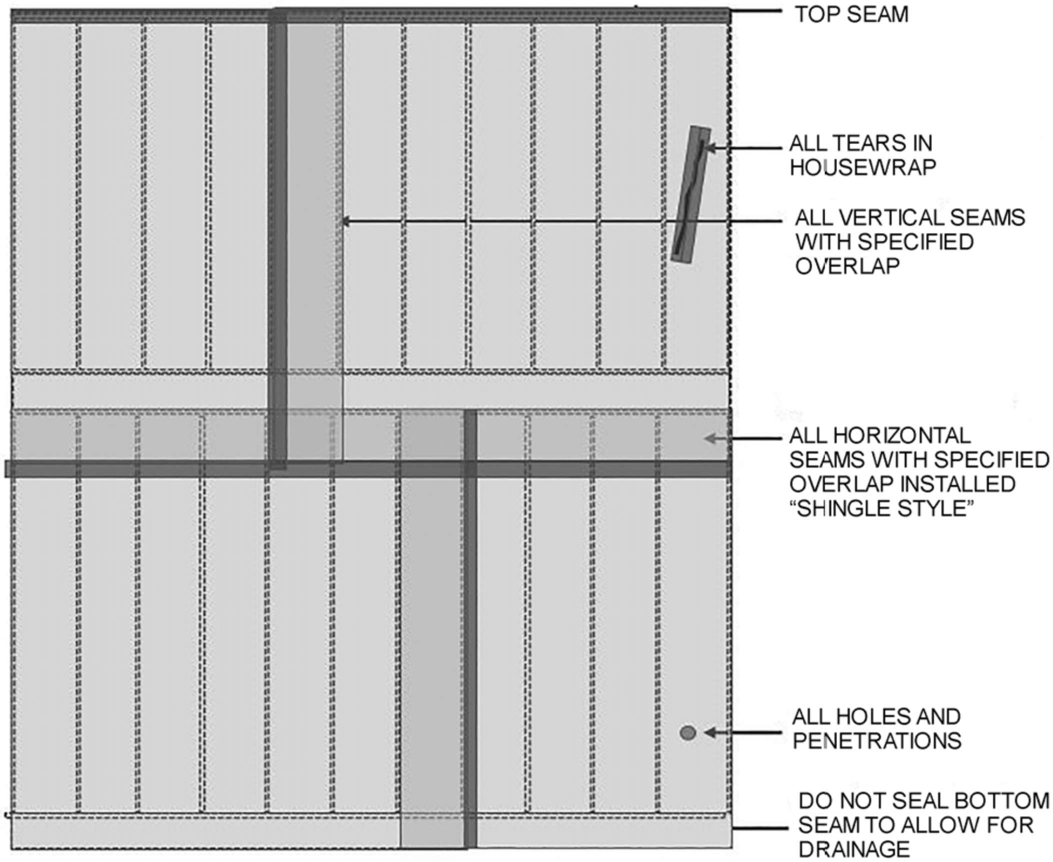
~~R402.4.1~~ Table R402.4.1.1 Air Barrier, Air Sealing, and Insulation Installation – HVAC register boots – ceiling [Note to reviewer – no changes to diagram]



SECTION VIEW OF CEILING HVAC BOOT PENETRATION

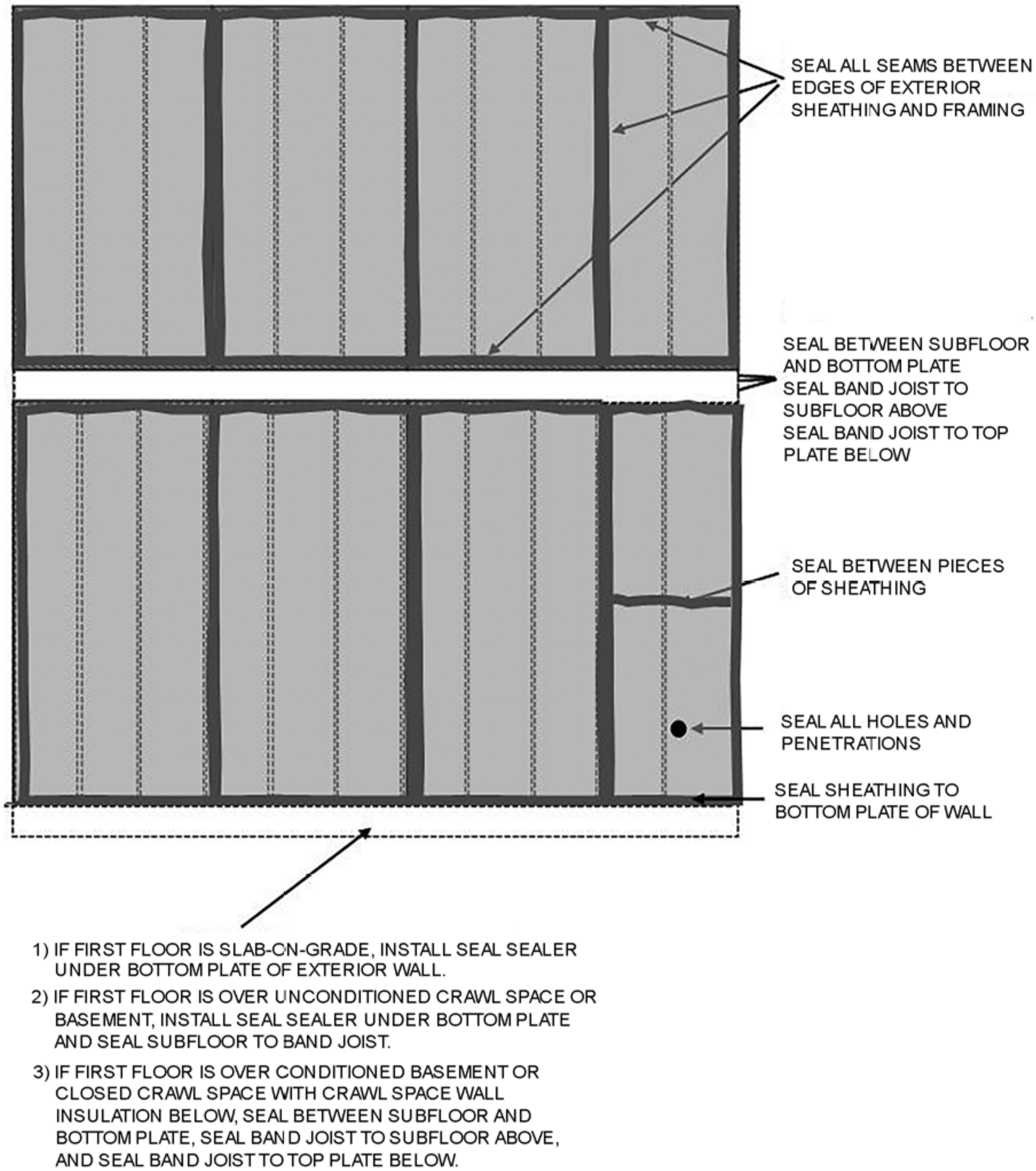
~~R402.4.1~~ Table R402.4.1.1 Air Barrier, Air Sealing, and Insulation Installation – General requirements – housewrap option
[Note to Reviewer – diagram unchanged]

Follow manufacturer's instructions for sealing air barrier-rated housewrap, including choice of materials, to provide an exterior air barrier at the following locations:



~~R402.4.1~~ Table R402.4.1.1 Air Barrier, Air Sealing, and Insulation Installation – General requirements – sealed sheathing option

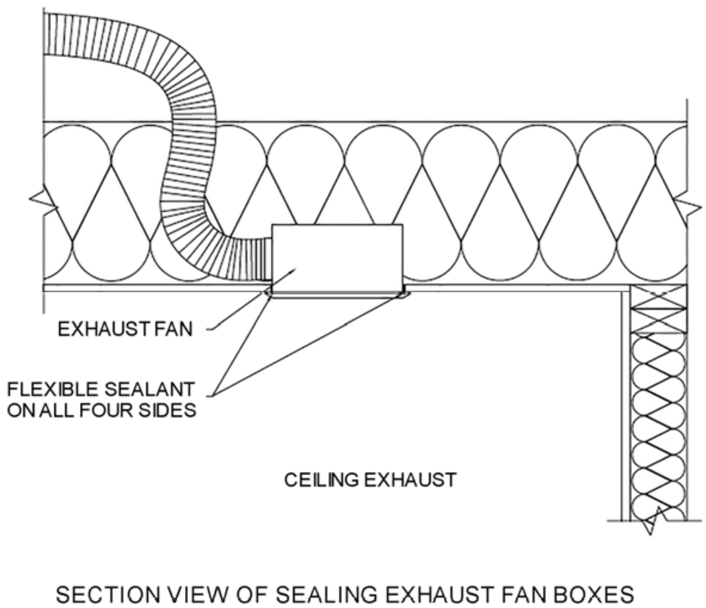
[Note to reviewer – No changes to diagram]



~~R402.4.2.1~~ Table R402.4.1.1 Air Barrier, Air Sealing, and Insulation Installation – Plumbing, wiring, or other obstructions – Exhaust fan

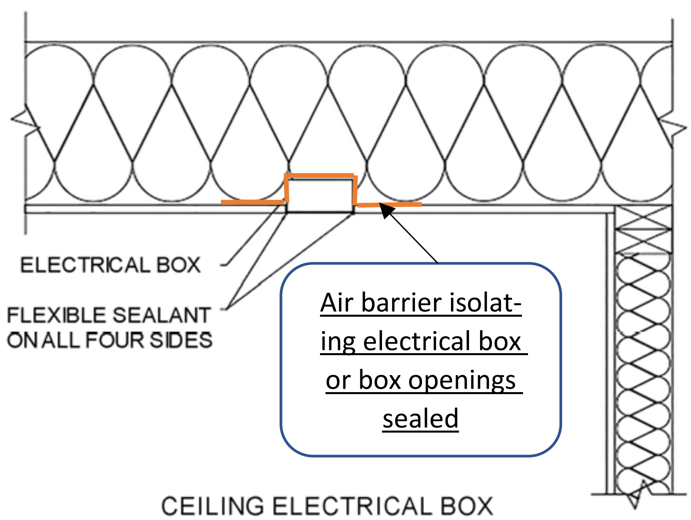
[Note to Reviewer - Diagram unchanged]

~~**R402.4.2.1 Visual inspection option.** Table R402.4.2 Seal ceiling mechanical box penetrations~~



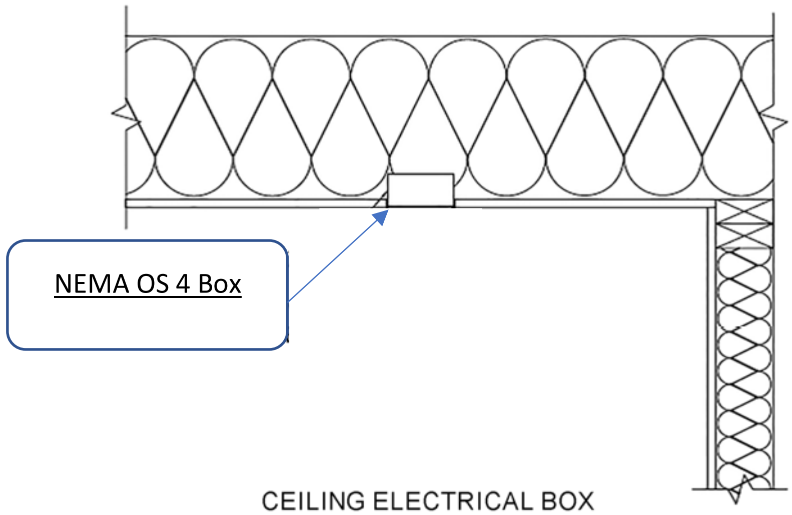
~~R402.4.2.1~~ R402.4.6 Electrical and communication outlet boxes – field-sealed

~~**R402.4.2.1 Visual inspection option.** Table R402.4.2 Seal ceiling electrical box penetrations~~



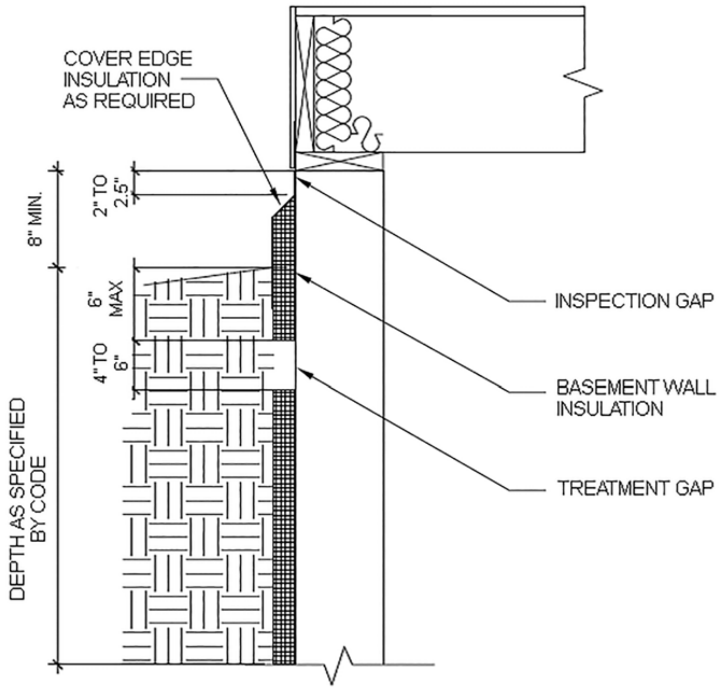
R402.4.6 Electrical and communication outlet boxes – NEMA OS 4

~~**R402.4.2.1 Visual inspection option.** Table R402.4.2 Seal ceiling electrical box penetrations~~



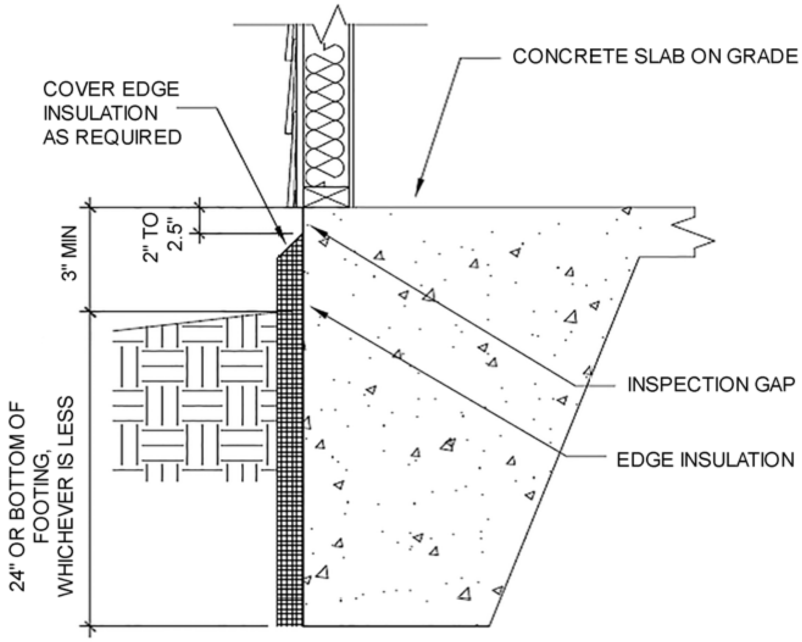
APPENDIX R2
FOAM PLASTIC DIAGRAMS
(Sections R402.2.9 and R402.2.10)

R402.2.9 Basement walls. Insulation illustrations (Includes detailing from Section ~~R402.2.11~~ R402.2.10)
[Note to reviewer – diagram unchanged]

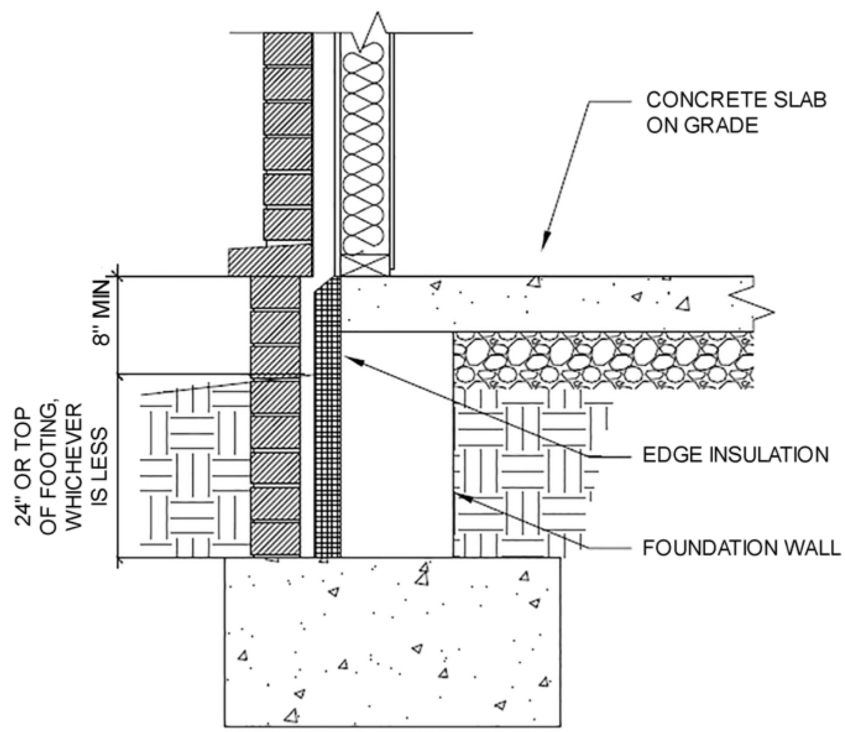


SECTION VIEW OF EXTERIOR FOAM INSULATION LOCATION
FOR BASEMENT WALLS

~~R402.2.10~~ **R402.2.9.1 Slab-on-grade floors.** Insulation illustrations
[Note to reviewer – no change to diagrams]

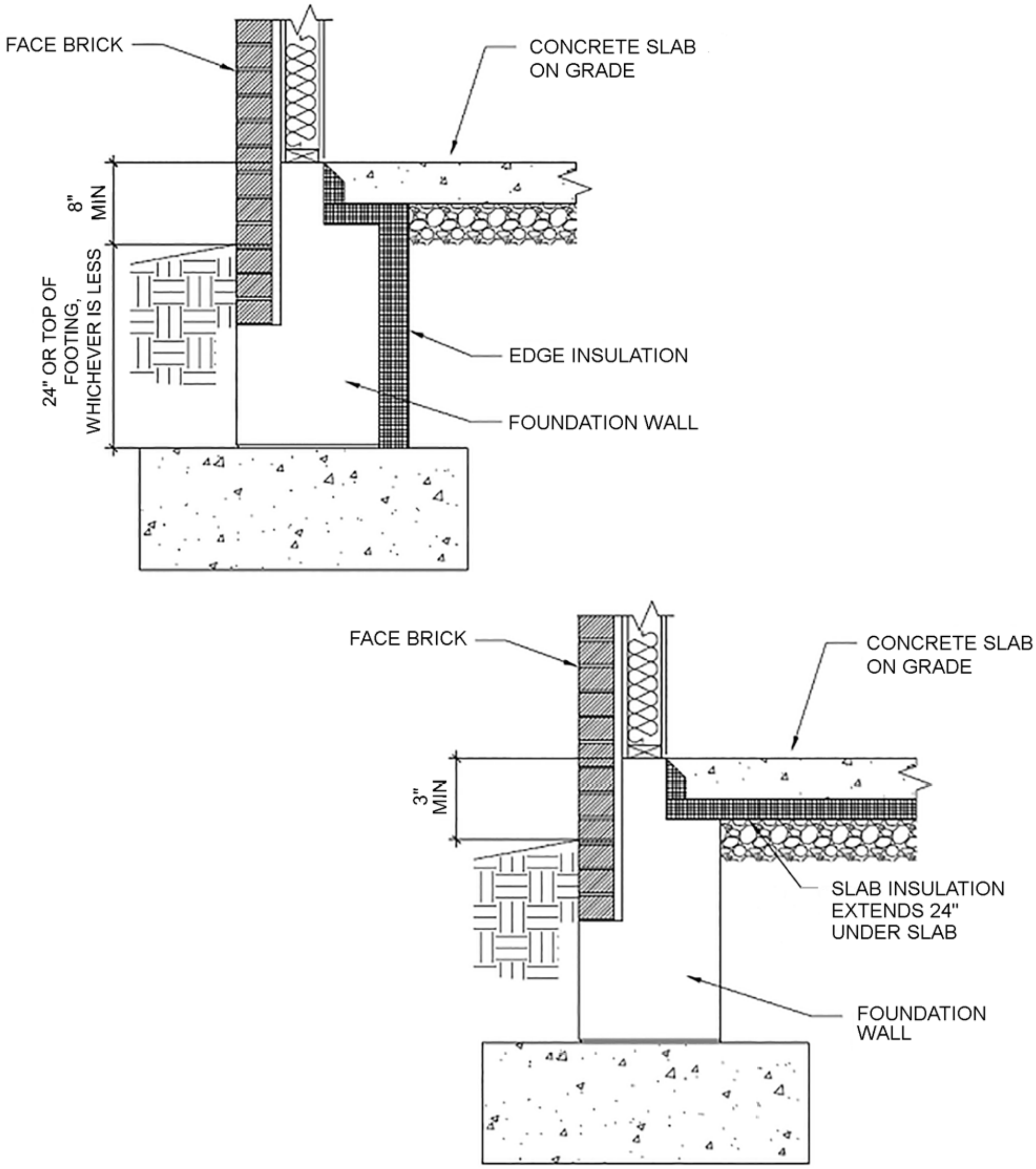


SECTION VIEW OF EDGE INSULATION FOR MONOLITHIC SLAB-ON-GRADE FLOORS



EXAMPLE FOR SLAB EDGE INSULATION LOCATION BEHIND BRICK, STONE, OR MASONRY FACING

~~R402.2.10~~ **R402.2.9.1 Slab-on-grade floors.** Insulation illustrations – Floating Slab with Stem Wall [Note to reviewer – no change to diagrams]



EXAMPLES FOR SLAB INSULATION LOCATION
FOR FLOATING SLAB WITH STEM WALL
(Options for brick facing are shown)

APPENDIX R3
SAMPLE WORKSHEETS FOR RESIDENTIAL AIR AND DUCT LEAKAGE TESTING

APPENDIX R3A
~~Air sealing: Visual inspection option (Section R402.4.2.1)~~
~~Sample Worksheet~~
Not Used

~~**R402.4.2 Air sealing.** Building envelope air tightness shall be demonstrated by compliance with Section R402.4.2.1 or R402.4.2.2:~~

~~**R402.4.2.1 Visual inspection option.** Building envelope tightness shall be considered acceptable when items providing insulation enclosure in Section R402.2.14 and enclosure and air sealing in Section R402.2.15 and air sealing in Section R402.4.1 are addressed and when the items listed in Table R402.4.2, applicable to the method of construction, are certified by the builder, permit holder or *registered design professional* via the certificate in Appendix R1.1.~~

~~COMPONENT~~	~~CRITERIA~~
~~Ceiling/attic~~	~~Sealants or gaskets provide a continuous air barrier system joining the top plate of framed walls with either the ceiling drywall or the top edge of wall drywall to prevent air leakage. Top plate penetrations are sealed.~~ ~~For ceiling finishes that are not air barrier systems such as tongue-and-groove planks, air barrier systems (for example, taped house wrap), shall be used above the finish.~~ ~~Note: It is acceptable that sealants or gaskets applied as part of the application of the drywall will not be observable by the code official.~~
~~Walls~~	~~Sill plate is gasketed or sealed to subfloor or slab.~~
~~Windows and doors~~	~~Space between window and exterior door jambs and framing is sealed.~~
~~Floors (including above-garage and cantilevered floors)~~	~~Air barrier system is installed at any exposed edge of insulation.~~
~~Penetrations~~	~~Utility penetrations through the building thermal envelope, including those for plumbing, electrical wiring, ductwork, security and fire alarm wiring, and control wiring, shall be sealed.~~
~~Garage separation~~	~~Air sealing is provided between the garage and conditioned spaces. An air barrier system shall be installed between the ceiling system above the garage and the ceiling system of interior spaces.~~
~~Ceiling penetrations~~	~~Ceiling electrical box penetrations and ceiling mechanical box penetrations shall be caulked, gasketed, or sealed at the penetration of the ceiling finish. See Appendix R1.2.4.~~ ~~**Exception:** Ceiling electrical boxes and ceiling mechanical boxes not penetrating the building thermal envelope.~~
~~Recessed lighting~~	~~Recessed light fixtures are air tight, IC rated, and sealed to drywall.~~ ~~**Exception:** Fixtures in conditioned space.~~

~~Property Address:~~

~~**R402.4.2.1 Visual Inspection Option**~~

~~The inspection information including tester name, date, and contact shall be included on the certificate described in Section R401.3.~~

~~Signature~~ ~~Date~~

~~APPENDIX R3B~~
~~Air sealing: Testing option (Section R402.4.2.2)~~
~~Sample Worksheet~~

~~**R402.4.2 Air sealing.** Building envelope air tightness shall be demonstrated by compliance with Section R402.4.2.1 or R402.4.2.2:~~

~~**R402.4.2.2 Testing option.** Building envelope tightness shall be considered acceptable when items providing insulation enclosure in Section R402.2.14 and enclosure and air sealing in Section R402.2.15 and air sealing in Section R402.4.1 are addressed and when tested air leakage is less than or equal to one of the two following performance measurements:~~

~~2. 0.30 CFM50/Square Foot of Surface Area (SFSA) or~~

~~3. Five (5) air changes per hour (ACH50).~~

~~When tested with a blower door fan assembly, at a pressure of 33.5 psf (50 Pa). A single point depressurization, not temperature corrected, test is sufficient to comply with this provision, provided that the blower door fan assembly has been certified by the manufacturer to be capable of conducting tests in accordance with ASTM E779 – 03. Testing shall occur after rough in and after installation of penetrations of the building envelope, including penetrations for utilities, plumbing, electrical, ventilation and combustion appliances. Testing shall be reported by the permit holder, a North Carolina licensed general contractor, a North Carolina licensed HVAC contractor, a North Carolina licensed Home Inspector, a *registered design professional*, a certified *BPI Envelope Professional* or a certified *HERS rater*.~~

~~During testing:~~

- ~~Exterior windows and doors, fireplace and stove doors shall be closed, but not sealed;~~
- ~~Dampers shall be closed, but not sealed, including exhaust, backdraft, and flue dampers;~~
- ~~Interior doors shall be open;~~
- ~~Exterior openings for continuous ventilation systems, air intake ducted to the return side of the conditioning system, and energy or heat recovery ventilators shall be closed and sealed;~~
- ~~Heating and cooling system(s) shall be turned off; and~~
- ~~Supply and return registers shall not be sealed.~~

~~The air leakage information, building air leakage result, tester name, date, and contact information, shall be included on the certificate described in Section R401.3.~~

~~**For Test Criteria 1** above, the report shall be produced in the following manner: Perform the blower door test and record the *CFM50*___________. Calculate the total square feet of surface area for the building thermal envelope (all floors, ceilings, and walls including windows and doors, bounding conditioned space) and record the area_______________. Divide CFM50 by the total square feet and record the result below. If the result is less than or equal to [0.30 CFM50/SFSA] the envelope tightness is acceptable; or~~

~~**For Test Criteria 2** above, the report shall be produced in the following manner: Perform a blower door test and record the *CFM50*___________. Multiply the CFM50 by 60 minutes to create CFHour50 and record ______________. Then calculate the total conditioned volume of the home and record________________. Divide the CFH50 by the total volume and record the result below. If the result is less than or equal to [5 ACH50] the envelope tightness is acceptable.~~

~~Property Address: ____ Fan attachment location ___________________________ Company Name ______________________________ Contact Information: ____~~

~~Signature of Tester __________________________________ Date~~

~~Permit Holder, NC Licensed General Contractor, NC Licensed HVAC Contractor, NC Licensed Home Inspector, *Registered Design Professional*, Certified *BPI Envelope Professional*, or Certified *HERS Rater*~~

~~**(circle one)**~~

APPENDIX R3B
Air sealing: Testing (Section R402.4.1.2)
Sample Worksheet – 4.0 ACH Requirement

The provisions contained in this appendix are for informational purposes and are not mandatory.

R402.4.1.2 Testing. The *building* or *dwelling unit* shall be tested for air leakage. Testing shall be conducted in accordance with ANSI/RESNET/ICC 380, ASTM E779 or ASTM E1827 and reported at a pressure of 0.2 inch w.g. (50 Pascals). If testing at a pressure of 75 Pa (0.30 in w.g.), Table Appendix R3B R402.4.1.2 shall be used for corresponding maximum allowed leakage. Where required by the *code official*, testing shall be conducted by an *approved* third party. A written report of the results of the test shall be signed by the party conducting the test and provided to the *code official*. Testing shall be performed at any time after creation of all penetrations of the *building thermal envelope* have been sealed.

- The maximum air leakage rate for any *building* or *dwelling unit* under any compliance path shall not exceed 4.0 air changes per hour (Test Criteria 1) or 0.23 cubic feet per minute (CFM) per square foot [0.0079 $m^3/(s \times m^2)$] (Test Criteria 2) of dwelling unit enclosure area.
    - **Warning**: The 4.0 ACH threshold is a maximum for any compliance path, if following Section R401.2.1, 4.0 ACH is not allowed. See following section for requirements of R401.2.1

- When complying with Section R401.2.1, the building or dwelling unit shall have an air leakage rate not exceeding 3.0 air changes per hour in Climate Zones 3 through 5 when tested in accordance with Section R402.4.1.2. See APPENDIX R3B1 for Sample.

Table Appendix R3B R402.4.1.2 Adjustment for different test pressures

Pressure Differential (Pa)	Test pressure Adjustment Factor	Max Air Leakage / Building Thermal Envelope (CFM / ft^2)					
75 (0.30 in. w.g.)		0.25	0.28	0.30	0.35	0.372	0.40
50 (0.20 in. w.g.)	0.752897957	0.19	0.21	0.23	0.26	0.28	0.30

Example: If maximum air leakage allowed is 0.28 cfm/SF of bldg thermal envelope at 50 Pa(0.2 in w.g.), the corresponding maximum leakage rate is 0.372 cfm/SF of bldg thermal envelope if using a test pressure of 75 Pa(0.3 in w.g.)

Testing shall be reported by the permit holder, a North Carolina licensed general contractor, a North Carolina licensed HVAC contractor, a North Carolina licensed Home Inspector, a *registered design professional*, a certified *BPI Envelope Professional* or a certified *HERS rater*.

During testing:

1. Exterior windows and doors, fireplace and stove doors shall be closed, but not sealed;
2. Dampers shall be closed, but not sealed, including exhaust, backdraft, and flue dampers;
3. Interior doors shall be open;
4. Exterior openings for continuous ventilation systems, air intake ducted to the return side of the conditioning system, and energy or heat recovery ventilators shall be closed and sealed;
5. Heating and cooling system(s) shall be turned off; and
6. Supply and return registers shall not be sealed.

The air leakage information, building air leakage result, tester name, date, and contact information, shall be included on the certificate described in Section R401.3.

For Test Criteria 1 above, the report shall be produced in the following manner: Perform a blower door test and record the *CFM50*___________. Multiply the CFM50 by 60 minutes to create CFHour50 and record ______________. Then calculate the total conditioned volume of the home and record________________. Divide the CFH50 by the total volume and record the result below. If the result is less than or equal to [**4.0 ACH50**] the envelope tightness is acceptable.

For Test Criteria 2 above, the report shall be produced in the following manner: Perform the blower door test and record the *CFM50*___________. Calculate the total square feet of surface area for the building thermal envelope (all floors, ceilings, and walls including windows and doors, bounding conditioned space) and record the area______________. Divide CFM50 by the total square feet and record the result below. If the result is less than or equal to [**0.23 CFM50/SFSA**] the envelope tightness is acceptable.

Property Address: ____

Fan attachment location ______________________________ Company Name _________________________________

Contact Information: ____

____ ____

Signature of Tester ____________________________________ Date ____

Permit Holder, NC Licensed General Contractor, NC Licensed HVAC Contractor, NC Licensed Home Inspector, Registered Design Professional, Certified BPI Envelope Professional, or Certified HERS Rater

(circle one)

APPENDIX R3B1
Air sealing: Testing (Section R402.4.1.2)
Sample Worksheet – 3.0 ACH Requirement

The provisions contained in this appendix are for informational purposes and are not mandatory.

R402.4.1.2 Testing. The *building* or *dwelling unit* shall be tested for air leakage. Testing shall be conducted in accordance with ANSI/RESNET/ICC 380, ASTM E779 or ASTM E1827 and reported at a pressure of 0.2 inch w.g. (50 Pascals). Where required by the *code official*, testing shall be conducted by an *approved* third party. A written report of the results of the test shall be signed by the party conducting the test and provided to the *code official*. Testing shall be performed at any time after creation of all penetrations of the *building thermal envelope* have been sealed.

- Notice: When complying with Section R401.2.1, the building or dwelling unit shall have an air leakage rate not exceeding 3.0 air changes per hour in Climate Zones 3 through 5 when tested in accordance with Section R402.4.1.2.

Testing shall be reported by the permit holder, a North Carolina licensed general contractor, a North Carolina licensed HVAC contractor, a North Carolina licensed Home Inspector, a *registered design professional*, a certified *BPI Envelope Professional* or a certified *HERS rater*.

During testing:

1. Exterior windows and doors, fireplace and stove doors shall be closed, but not sealed;
2. Dampers shall be closed, but not sealed, including exhaust, backdraft, and flue dampers;
3. Interior doors shall be open;
4. Exterior openings for continuous ventilation systems, air intake ducted to the return side of the conditioning system, and energy or heat recovery ventilators shall be closed and sealed;
5. Heating and cooling system(s) shall be turned off; and
6. Supply and return registers shall not be sealed.

The air leakage information, building air leakage result, tester name, date, and contact information, shall be included on the certificate described in Section R401.3.

The report shall be produced in the following manner: Perform a blower door test and record the *CFM50* ____________. Multiply the CFM50 by 60 minutes to create CFHour50 and record __________. Then calculate the total conditioned volume of the home and record __________________. Divide the CFH50 by the total volume and record the result below. If the result is less than or equal to [**3.0 ACH50**] the envelope tightness is acceptable.

Property Address: ____

Fan attachment location _____________________________ Company Name ________________________________

Contact Information: ____

____

Signature of Tester ___________________________________ Date __________________________________

Permit Holder, NC Licensed General Contractor, NC Licensed HVAC Contractor, NC Licensed Home Inspector, Registered Design Professional, Certified BPI Envelope Professional, or Certified HERS Rater

(circle one)

~~APPENDIX R3C~~
~~Duct sealing. Duct air leakage test (Sections R403.3.2, Section R403.3.3)~~
~~Sample Worksheet~~

~~**R403.3.2 Sealing (Mandatory).** Ducts, air handlers, filter boxes, and building cavities used as ducts shall be sealed. Joints and seams shall comply with either the *International Mechanical Code* or *International Residential Code*, as applicable.~~

~~**Exception:** Air-impermeable spray foam products shall be permitted to be applied without additional joint seals.~~

~~**R403.3.3 Duct leakage (Prescriptive) and duct testing (Mandatory).** Duct testing and duct leakage shall be verified by compliance with either Section R403.3.3.1 or R403.3.3.2. Duct testing shall be verified using one of the two following methods:~~

~~**R403.3.3.1 Total duct leakage.** Total duct leakage less than or equal to 5 cfm (12 L/min) per 100 square feet (9.29 m2) of conditioned floor area served by that system when tested at a pressure differential of 0.1 inches w.g. (25 Pa) across the entire system, including the manufacturer's air handler enclosure.~~

~~During testing:~~

~~1. Block, if present, ventilation air duct(s) connected to the conditioning system.~~
~~2. The duct air leakage testing equipment shall be attached to the largest return in the system or to the air handler.~~
~~3. The filter shall be removed and the air handler power shall be turned off.~~
~~4. Supply boots or registers and return boxes or grilles shall be taped, plugged, or otherwise sealed air tight.~~
~~5. The hose for measuring the 25 Pascals of pressure differential shall be inserted into the boot of the supply that is~~
~~nominally closest to the air handler.~~
~~6. Specific instructions from the duct testing equipment manufacturer shall be followed to reach duct test pressure and~~
~~measure duct air leakage.~~

~~**R403.3.3.2 Duct leakage to the outside.** Conduct the test using fan pressurization of distribution system and building at a fixed reference pressure for combined supply and return leaks. Duct leakage to the outside shall be less than or equal to 4 cfm (113.3 L/min) per 100 square feet (9.29 m2) of conditioned floor area served by that system when tested at a pressure differential of 0.1 inches w.g. (25 Pa) across the entire system, relative to the outside, including the manufacturer's air handler enclosure.~~

~~During testing:~~

~~1. Block, if present, the ventilation air duct(s) connected to the conditioning system.~~
~~2. The duct air leakage testing equipment shall be attached to the largest return in the system or to the air handler.~~
~~3. The filter shall be removed and the air handler power shall be turned off.~~
~~4. Supply boots or registers and return boxes or grilles shall be taped, plugged, or otherwise sealed air tight or as tight as possible.~~
~~5. The hose for measuring the 25 Pascals of pressure differential shall be inserted into the boot of the supply that is nominally closest to the air handler.~~
~~6. Open all interconnecting doors in the building, close dampers for fireplaces and other operable dampers.~~
~~7. Set up an envelope air moving/flow-regulating/flow measurement assembly, such as a blower door, following the manufacturer's prescribed procedure.~~
~~8. Specific instructions from the duct testing equipment manufacturer shall be followed to reach duct test pressure and measure duct air leakage used in combination with a blower door. Typical steps are as follows:~~
   ~~a. Depressurize the ductwork system to 25 Pa using the measurement hose in Step 5 above.~~
   ~~b. Depressurize the house to 25 Pa using an envelope air moving/flow-regulating/flow measurement assembly, such as a blower door.~~
   ~~c. Correct the duct pressure to measure 0 Pa of pressure differential between the house and the duct work system.~~
   ~~d. Read the cfm of duct leakage using the procedures for the specific equipment being used. (Note that most automatically calculating pressure gauges cannot compute the CFM25 automatically with a duct-to-house difference in pressure of 0 Pa, so the gauge setting should be set to read cfm instead of CFM25).~~

~~Testing shall be performed and reported by the permit holder, a North Carolina licensed general contractor, a North Carolina licensed HVAC contractor, a North Carolina licensed home inspector, a *registered design professional*, a certified *BPI Envelope Professional* or a certified *HERS rater*. A single point depressurization, not temperature corrected, test is sufficient to comply with this provision, provided that the duct testing fan assembly(s) has been certified by the manufacturer~~

~~to be capable of conducting tests in accordance with ASTM E1554 – 07.~~
~~The duct leakage information, including duct leakage test selected and result, tester name, date, and contact information, shall be included on the certificate described in Section 401.3.~~
~~For the Test Criteria, the report shall be produced in the following manner: perform the HVAC system air leakage test and record the CFM25. Calculate the total square feet of Conditioned Floor Area (CFA) served by that system. Multiply CFM25 by 100, divide the result by the CFA and record the result. If the result is less than or equal to 5 CFM25/100SF for the Total duct leakage test or less than or equal to 4 CFM25/100SF for the "Duct leakage to the outside" test, then the HVAC system air tightness is acceptable.~~

~~Complete one duct leakage report for each HVAC system serving the home:~~

~~Property Address: ____~~

~~Test Performed: Total duct leakage or Duct leakage to the outside **(circle one)**~~

~~HVAC System Number: _________ Describe area of home served: ___________________________~~
~~CFM25 Total _________. Conditioned Floor Area (CFA) served by system: __________ s.f.~~
~~CFM25 x 100 divided by CFA = ____ CFM25/100SF (e.g. 100 CFM25 x 100/ 2,000 CFA = 5 CFM25/100SF)~~
~~Fan attachment location _________________________~~

~~Company Name ____~~
~~Contact Information:____~~
____
____ ________________________________
~~Signature of Tester Date~~

~~Permit Holder, NC Licensed General Contractor, NC Licensed HVAC Contractor, NC Licensed Home Inspector,~~
~~*Registered Design Professional*,~~ Certified ~~*BPI Envelope Professional*,~~ or Certified ~~*HERS Rater*~~
~~**(circle one)**~~

APPENDIX R3C
Duct sealing. Duct air leakage test (Sections R403.3.2, Section R403.3.3)
Sample Worksheet

The provisions contained in this appendix are for informational purposes and are not mandatory.

R403.3.4 Sealing (Mandatory). Ducts, air handlers, filter boxes, and building cavities used as ducts shall be sealed. Joints and seams shall comply with either the *International Mechanical Code* or *International Residential Code*, as applicable.

Exception: Air-impermeable spray foam products shall be permitted to be applied without additional joint seals.

R403.3.5 Duct testing. Ducts shall be pressure tested in accordance with ANSI/RESNET/ICC 380 or ASTM E1554 to determine air leakage by one of the following methods:

1. Rough-in test: Total leakage shall be measured with a pressure differential of 0.1 inch w.g. (25 Pa) across the system, including the manufacturer's air handler enclosure if installed at the time of the test. Registers shall be taped or otherwise sealed during the test.
2. Postconstruction test: Total leakage shall be measured with a pressure differential of 0.1 inch w.g. (25 Pa) across the entire system, including the manufacturer's air handler enclosure. Registers shall be taped or otherwise sealed during the test.

Exception: A duct air-leakage test shall not be required for ducts serving heating, cooling or ventilation systems that are not integrated with ducts serving heating or cooling systems.

R403.3.6 Duct leakage. The total leakage of the ducts, where measured in accordance with Section R403.3.5, shall be as follows:

1. Rough-in test: The total leakage shall be less than or equal to 4.0 cubic feet per minute (113.3 L/min) per 100 square feet (9.29 m^2) of *conditioned floor area* where the air handler is installed at the time of the test. Where the air handler is not installed at the time of the test, the total leakage shall be less than or equal to 3.0 cubic feet per minute (85 L/min) per 100 square feet (9.29 m^2) of *conditioned floor area*.
2. Postconstruction test: Total leakage shall be less than or equal to 4.0 cubic feet per minute (113.3 L/min) per 100 square feet (9.29 m^2) of *conditioned floor area.*
3. Test for ducts within thermal envelope: Where all ducts and air handlers are located entirely within the *building thermal envelope*, total leakage shall be less than or equal to 8.0 cubic feet per minute (226.6 L/min) per 100 square feet (9.29 m^2) of *conditioned floor area.*

During testing:

1. Block, if present, ventilation air duct(s) connected to the conditioning system.
2. The duct air leakage testing equipment shall be attached to the largest return in the system or to the air handler.
3. The filter shall be removed and the air handler power shall be turned off.
4. Supply boots or registers and return boxes or grilles shall be taped, plugged, or otherwise sealed air tight.
5. The hose for measuring the 25 Pascals of pressure differential shall be inserted into the boot of the supply that is
nominally closest to the air handler.
6. Specific instructions from the duct testing equipment manufacturer shall be followed to reach duct test pressure and
measure duct air leakage.

Testing shall be performed and reported by the permit holder, a North Carolina licensed general contractor, a North Carolina licensed HVAC contractor, a North Carolina licensed home inspector, a *registered design professional*, a certified *BPI Envelope Professional* or a certified *HERS rater*. A single point depressurization, not temperature corrected, test is sufficient to comply with this provision, provided that the duct testing fan assembly(s) has been certified by the manufacturer to be capable of conducting tests in accordance with ASTM E1554—07.

The duct leakage information, including duct leakage test selected and result, tester name, date, and contact information, shall be included on the certificate described in Section 401.3.

For the Test Criteria, the report shall be produced in the following manner: perform the HVAC system air leakage test and record the CFM25. Calculate the total square feet of Conditioned Floor Area (CFA) served by that system.

- (1)Rough-in test: The total leakage shall be less than or equal to 4.0 cubic feet per minute (113.3 L/min) per 100 square feet (9.29 m^2) of *conditioned floor area* where the air handler is installed at the time of the test. Where the air handler is not installed at the time of the test, the total leakage shall be less than or equal to 3.0 cubic feet per minute (85 L/min) per 100 square feet (9.29 m^2) of *conditioned floor area*. Multiply CFM25 by 100, divide the result by the CFA and record the result. If the result is less than or equal to 3.0 CFM25/100SF (without airhandler, 4.0 with air handler) for the Total duct leakage test, then the HVAC system air tightness is acceptable.

- (2)Postconstruction test: Multiply CFM25 by 100, divide the result by the CFA and record the result. If the result is less than or equal to 5 CFM25/100SF for the Total duct leakage test, then the HVAC system air tightness is acceptable.

- (3)Test for ducts within thermal envelope: Where all ducts and air handlers are located entirely within the *building thermal envelope*, total leakage shall be less than or equal to 8.0 cubic feet per minute (226.6 L/min) per 100 square feet (9.29 m^2) of *conditioned floor area*. Multiply CFM25 by 100, divide the result by the CFA and record the result. If the result is less than or equal to 8.0 CFM25/100SF for the Total duct leakage test, then the HVAC system air tightness is acceptable.

Complete one duct leakage report for each HVAC system serving the home:

Property Address: ____

Test Performed: (1) Rough-in test, (2) Postconstruction test, (3) Ducts within thermal envelope test **(circle one)**

HVAC System Number: __________ Describe area of home served: ___________________________
CFM25 Total __________. Conditioned Floor Area (CFA) served by system: ___________ s.f.
CFM25 x 100 divided by CFA = _____ CFM25/100SF (e.g. 100 CFM25 □ 100/ 2,000 CFA = 5 CFM25/100SF)
Fan attachment location _________________________

Company Name ____
Contact Information:____
____
____ ________________________________
Signature of Tester ______________________________ Date

Permit Holder, NC Licensed General Contractor, NC Licensed HVAC Contractor, NC Licensed Home Inspector, *Registered Design Professional*, Certified *BPI Envelope Professional*, or Certified *HERS Rater*
(circle one)

APPENDIX R4

ADDITIONAL VOLUNTARY CRITERIA FOR INCREASING ENERGY EFFICIENCY (High-Efficiency Residential Option)

Table R4C

Not used

~~1. **Introduction.** The increased energy efficiency measures identified in this appendix are strictly voluntary at the option of the permit holder and have been evaluated to be the most cost effective measures for achieving an additional 10- to 15-percent energy efficiency beyond the code minimums.~~

~~2. **Requirements:** Follow all sections of residential building provisions of the 2018 *North Carolina Energy Conservation Code*, except the following.~~

~~a. Instead of using Table R402.1.2 in Section R402.1.2, use Table 4A shown below~~

TABLE 4A
INSULATION AND FENESTRATION REQUIREMENTS BY COMPONENT[a]

CLIMATE ZONE	FENESTRATION *U*-FACTOR[b, j]	SKYLIGHT[b] *U*-FACTOR	GLAZED FENESTRATION SHGC[b, k]	CEILING *R*-VALUE[m]	WOOD FRAME WALL *R*-VALUE	MASS WALL *R*-VALUE[i]	FLOOR *R*-VALUE	BASEMENT[c, o] WALL *R*-VALUE	SLAB[d] *R*-VALUE	CRAWL SPACE[c] WALL *R*-VALUE
3	0.32	0.55	0.25	38 or 30 ci[l]	19, 13+5, or 15+3[h]	5/13 or 5/10ci	19	5/13[f]	5	5/13
4	0.32	0.55	0.25	38 or 30 ci[l]	19, 13+5, or 15+3[h]	5/13 or 5/10ci	19	10/15	10	10/15
5	0.32	0.55	(NR)	38 or 30 ci[l]	19, 13+5, or 15+3[h]	13/17 or 13/12.5 ci	30[g]	10/15	10	10/19

~~For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.~~

~~a. *R*-values are minimums. *U*-factors and SHGC are maximums. When insulation is installed in a cavity which is less than the label or design thickness of the insulation, the installed *R*-value of the insulation shall not be less than the *R*-value specified in the table.~~

~~b. The fenestration *U*-factor column excludes skylights. The SHGC column applies to all glazed fenestration.~~

~~c. “10/15” means R-10 continuous insulated sheathing on the interior or exterior of the home or R-15 cavity insulation at the interior of the basement wall or crawl space wall.~~

~~d. For monolithic slabs, insulation shall be applied from the inspection gap downward to the bottom of the footing or a maximum of 24 inches below grade, whichever is less. For floating slabs, insulation shall extend to the bottom of the foundation wall or 24 inches, whichever is less (see Appendix R2). R-5 shall be added to the required slab edge *R*-values for heated slabs.~~

~~e. Deleted.~~

~~f. Basement wall insulation is not required in warm-humid locations as defined by Figure R301.1 and Table R301.1.~~

~~g. Or insulation sufficient to fill the framing cavity, R-19 minimum.~~

~~h. The first value is cavity insulation, the second value is continuous insulation, so “13+5” means R-13 cavity insulation plus R-5 continuous insulation. If structural sheathing covers 25 percent or less of the exterior, insulating sheathing is not required where structural sheathing is used. If structural sheathing covers more than 25 percent of exterior, structural sheathing shall be supplemented with insulated sheathing of at least R-2.~~

~~i. The second *R*-value applies when more than half the insulation is on the interior of the mass wall.~~

~~j. In addition to the exemption in Section R402.3.3, a maximum of two glazed fenestration product assemblies having a *U*-factor no greater than 0.55 shall be permitted to be substituted for minimum code compliant fenestration product assemblies without penalty.~~

~~k. In addition to the exemption in Section R402.3.3, a maximum of two glazed fenestration product assemblies having a SHGC no greater than 0.70 shall be permitted to be substituted for minimum code compliant fenestration product assemblies without penalty.~~

~~l. R-30 shall be deemed to satisfy the ceiling insulation requirement wherever the full height of uncompressed R-30 insulation extends over the wall top plate at the eaves. Otherwise R-38 insulation is required where adequate clearance exists or insulation must extend to either the insulation baffle or within 1 inch of the attic roof deck.~~

~~m. Table value required except for roof edge where the space is limited by the pitch of the roof, there the insulation must fill the space up to the air baffle.~~

~~n. R -19 fiberglass batts compressed and installed in a nominal 2 × 6 framing cavity is deemed to comply. Fiberglass batts rated R-19 or higher compressed and installed in a 2 × 4 wall is not deemed to comply.~~

~~o. Basement wall meeting the minimum mass wall specific heat content requirement may use the mass wall *R*-value as the minimum requirement.~~

~~b. Instead of using Table R402.1.4 in Section R402.1.4, use Table 4B to find the maximum *U*-factors for building components.~~

TABLE 4B
EQUIVALENT *U*-FACTORS[a]

CLIMATE ZONE	FENESTRATION *U*-FACTOR[d]	SKYLIGHT *U*-FACTOR	CEILING *U*-FACTOR	FRAME WALL *U*-FACTOR	MASS WALL *U*-FACTOR[b]	FLOOR *U*-FACTOR	BASEMENT WALL *U*-FACTOR[c]	CRAWL SPACE WALL *U*-FACTOR
3	0.32	0.55	0.030	0.061	0.141	0.047	0.091	0.136
4	0.32	0.55	0.030	0.061	0.141	0.047	0.059	0.065
5	0.32	0.55	0.030	0.061	0.082	0.033	0.059	0.065

~~a. Nonfenestration U-factors shall be obtained from measurement, calculation or an approved source.~~
~~b. When more than half the insulation is on the interior, the mass wall *U*-factors shall be a maximum of 0.07 in Climate Zone 3, 0.07 in Climate Zone 4, and 0.054 in Climate Zone 5.~~
~~c. Basement wall *U*-factor of 0.360 in warm-humid locations as defined by Figure R301.1 and Table R301.1.~~
~~d. A maximum of two glazed fenestration product assemblies having a *U*-factor no greater than 0.55 and a SHGC no greater than 0.70 shall be permitted to be substituted for minimum code compliant fenestration product assemblies without penalty~~

~~c. For compliance with Section R402.4 Air leakage control (Mandatory), Sections R402.4.1 (Building thermal envelope) and R402.4.2.2 (Testing option) must be followed, with the maximum leakage rate shown below. Section R402.4.2.1 (Visual inspection option) cannot be used to show compliance.~~
~~i. 0.24 CFM50/Square Foot of Surface Area (SFSA); or~~
~~ii. Four (4) air changes per hour (ACH50)~~
~~d. Instead of using the duct leakage value for maximum leakage shown in Section R403.3.3 use the following:~~
~~1. **R403.3.3.1 Total duct leakage.** Total duct leakage shall be less than or equal to 4 cfm (113 L/min) per 100 square feet (9.29 m2) of conditioned floor area served by that system when tested at a pressure differential of 0.1 inches w.g. (25 Pa) across the entire system, including the manufacturer's air handler enclosure.~~
~~2. **R403.3.3.2 Duct leakage to the outside.** Conduct the test using fan pressurization of distribution system and building at a fixed reference pressure for combined supply and return leak. Duct leakage to the outside shall be less than or equal to 3 cfm (85 L/min) per 100 square feet (9.29 m2) of conditioned floor area served by that system when tested at a pressure differential of 0.1 inches w.g. (25 Pa) across the entire system, relative to the outside, including the manufacturer's air handler enclosure.~~
~~e. For compliance with Section R404.1 (Lighting equipment), the home must comply with the following:~~
~~Not less than 90 percent of the lamps in permanently installed lighting fixtures shall be high-efficacy lamps or not less than 90 percent of the permanently installed lighting fixtures shall contain only high-efficacy lamp~~

Table R4C
Sample Confirmation Form for
ADDITIONAL VOLUNTARY CRITERIA FOR INCREASING ENERGY EFFICIENCY
(High-Efficiency Residential Option)

***NORTH CAROLINA ENERGY CONSERVATION CODE*:** **HIGH-EFFICIENCY RESIDENTIAL OPTION, INSULATION AND FENESTRATION VALUES** **(Notes correlate to Table R4A)**				**PROPOSED PROJECT VALUES**
Climate Zone	**3**	**4**	**5**	
Fenestration *U*-Factor[h, i]	0.32	0.32	0.32	
Skylight *U*-Factor[b]	0.55	0.55	0.55	
Glazed Fenestration SHGC[b, k]	0.25	0.25	(NR)	
Ceiling *R*-value[m]	38 or 30 ci[l]	38 or 30 ci[l]	38 or 30 ci[l]	
Wood Frame Wall *R*-value[h]	19, 13+5, or 15+3	19, 13+5, or 15+3	19, 13+5, or 15+3	
Mass Wall *R*-value[i]	5/13 or 5/10ci	5/13 or 5/10ci	13/17 or 13/12.5ci	
Floor *R*-value	19	19	30[g]	
Basement Wall *R*-value[c, o]	5 /13[f]	10/15	10/15	
Slab *R*-value and Depth[d]	5	10	10	
Crawl Space Wall *R*-value[c]	5/13	10/15	10/19	
	* Note: *ci = continuous insulation*			
High Efficacy Lighting				
% of lighting that is high efficacy according to R404.1 (90% required)				
Building Air Leakage				
Building Air Leakage Test according to R402.4.2.2 (check box). Show test value:				
ACH50 [Target: 4.0], or				
CFM50/SFSA [Target: 0.24]				
Name of Tester / Company:				
Date: Phone:				
Duct Insulation and Sealing				
Insulation Value	R-			
Duct Leakage Test Result (Sect. R403.3.3)				
(CFM25 Total/100SF) [Target: 4 Total/ 3 To exterior]	☐ Total duct leakage or			☐ Duct leakage to the exterior
Name of Tester or Company:				
Date: Phone:				

Sample Confirmation Form for ADDITIONAL VOLUNTARY CRITERIA FOR INCREASING ENERGY EFFICIENCY (High-Efficiency Residential Option)

Not Used

-

R4D:
SAMPLE WORKSHEETS FOR RESIDENTIAL AIR AND DUCT LEAKAGE TESTING
R4D.1
~~**Air sealing: Testing (Section R402.4.2.2)**~~
~~**Sample Worksheet for Alternative Residential Energy Code for Higher Efficiency**~~
~~**Air sealing. Building envelope air tightness shall be demonstrated by Section R402.4.2.2:**~~
~~**Air sealing: Testing (Section R402.4.2.2)**~~
~~**Sample Worksheet for Alternative Residential Energy Code for Higher Efficiency**~~
NOT USED
~~**Not used in 2024 Proposed Code**~~
~~**R4D:**~~
~~**SAMPLE WORKSHEETS FOR RESIDENTIAL AIR AND DUCT LEAKAGE TESTING**~~

~~**R4D.1**~~
~~**Air sealing: Testing (Section R402.4.2.2)**~~
~~**Sample Worksheet for Alternative Residential Energy Code for Higher Efficiency**~~

~~**Air sealing.** Building envelope air tightness shall be demonstrated by Section R402.4.2.2:~~

~~**Air sealing: Testing (Section R402.4.2.2)**~~
~~**Sample Worksheet for Alternative Residential Energy Code for Higher Efficiency**~~

~~**N1102.4.2.2 Testing.** Building envelope tightness shall be considered acceptable when items providing insulation enclosure in R402.2.14 and enclosure and air sealing in Section R402.2.15 and air sealing in Section R402.4.1 are addressed and when tested air leakage is less than or equal to one of the two following performance measurements:~~

~~2. 0.24 CFM50 (6.8 L/min)/Square Foot of Surface Area (SFSA) or~~

~~3. Four (4) air changes per hour (ACH50)~~

~~When tested with a blower door fan assembly, at a pressure of 0.2 inches water gauge (50 Pa), a single point depressurization, not temperature corrected, test is sufficient to comply with this provision, provided that the blower door fan assembly has been certified by the manufacturer to be capable of conducting tests in accordance with ASTM E779 – 03. Testing shall occur after rough in and after installation of penetrations of the building envelope, including penetrations for utilities, plumbing, electrical, ventilation and combustion appliances. Testing shall be reported by the permit holder, a North Carolina licensed general contractor, a North Carolina licensed HVAC contractor, a North Carolina licensed Home Inspector, a *registered design professional*, a certified *BPI Envelope Professional* or a certified *HERS rater*.~~

~~During testing:~~

- ~~Exterior windows and doors, fireplace and stove doors shall be closed, but not sealed;~~
- ~~Dampers shall be closed, but not sealed, including exhaust, backdraft, and flue dampers;~~
- ~~Interior doors shall be open;~~
- ~~Exterior openings for continuous ventilation systems, air intake ducted to the return side of the conditioning system, and energy or heat recovery ventilators shall be closed and sealed;~~
- ~~Heating and cooling system(s) shall be turned off; and~~
- ~~Supply and return registers shall not be sealed.~~

~~The air leakage information, including building air leakage result, tester name, date, and contact information, shall be included on the certificate described in Section R401.3.~~

~~For Test Criteria 1 above, the report shall be produced in the following manner: Perform the blower door test and record the *CFM50* ___________. Calculate the total square feet of surface area for the building thermal envelope, all floors, ceilings, and walls (this includes windows and doors) and record the area ______________. Divide *CFM50* by the total square feet and record the result below. If the result is less than or equal to **[0.24 CFM50/SFSA]** the envelope tightness is acceptable; or~~

~~For Test Criteria 2 above, the report shall be produced in the following manner: Perform a blower door test and record the *CFM50* = ____________. Multiply the CFM50 by 60 minutes to create CF/Hour50 and record = _______________. Then calcu- late the total conditioned volume of the home and record = __________________cubic feet. Divide the CF/Hour50 by the total volume and record the result = ______________________ ACH50. If the result is less than or equal to **[4 ACH50]** the envelope tightness is acceptable.~~

~~Property Address: ____ Fan attachment location ______________________ Company Name ________________________ Contact Information: ____~~

~~Signature of Tester ______________________________ Date~~

~~Permit Holder, NC Licensed General Contractor, NC Licensed HVAC Contractor, NC Licensed Home Inspector,~~
~~*Registered Design Professional*, Certified *BPI Envelope Professional*, or Certified *HERS Rater*~~
~~**(circle one)**~~

~~R4D.2~~
~~Duct sealing. Duct air leakage test (Section R403.3.3)~~
~~Sample Worksheet for Alternative Residential Energy Code for Higher Efficiency~~

~~**R403.3.3 Duct leakage (Prescriptive) and Duct Testing (Mandatory).** Duct testing and duct leakage shall be verified by compliance~~
~~with either Section R403.3.3.1 or R403.3.3.2. Duct testing shall be performed and reported by the permit holder, a North Carolina licensed general contractor, a North Carolina licensed HVAC contractor, a North Carolina licensed Home Inspector, a *registered design professional*, a certified *BPI Envelope Professional* or a certified *HERS rater*. A single point depressurization,~~
~~not temperature corrected, test is sufficient to comply with this provision, provided that the duct testing fan assembly(s) has been~~
~~certified by the manufacturer to be capable of conducting tests in accordance with ASTM E1554—07.~~
~~The duct leakage information, including duct leakage test selected and result, tester name, date, and contact information, shall be~~
~~included on the certificate described in Section R401.3.~~
~~For the Test Criteria, the report shall be produced in the following manner: perform the HVAC system air leakage test and record the CFM25. Calculate the total square feet of Conditioned Floor Area (CFA) served by that system. Multiply CFM25 by 100, divide the result by the CFA and record the result. If the result is less than or equal to 4 CFM25/100SF for the "Total duct leakage test" or less than or equal to 3 CFM25/100SF for the "Duct leakage to the outside" test, then the HVAC system air tightness~~
~~is acceptable.~~

~~**Exceptions to testing requirements:**~~
~~1. Duct systems or portions thereof inside the building thermal envelope shall not be required to be leak tested.~~
~~2. Installation of a partial system as part of replacement, renovation or addition does not require a duct leakage test.~~

~~**R403.3.3.1 Total duct leakage.** Total duct leakage less than or equal to 4 cfm (113 L/min) per 100 square feet (9.29 m2) of conditioned floor area served by that system when tested at a pressure differential of 0.1 inches w.g. (25 Pa) across the entire system, including the manufacturer's air handler enclosure. During testing:~~
~~1. Block, if present, ventilation air duct(s) connected to the conditioning system.~~
~~2. The duct air leakage testing equipment shall be attached to the largest return in the system or to the air handler.~~
~~3. The filter shall be removed and the air handler power shall be turned off.~~
~~4. Supply boots or registers and return boxes or grilles shall be taped, plugged, or otherwise sealed air tight.~~
~~5. The hose for measuring the 25 Pascals of pressure differential shall be inserted into the boot of the supply that is nominally closest to the air handler.~~
~~6. Specific instructions from the duct testing equipment manufacturer shall be followed to reach duct test pressure and measure duct air leakage.~~

~~**R403.3.3.2 Duct leakage to the outside.** Conduct the test using fan pressurization of distribution system and building at a fixed reference pressure for combined supply and return leak. Duct leakage to the outside shall be less than or equal to 3 cfm (85 L/min) per 100 square feet (9.29 m2) of conditioned floor area served by that system when tested at a pressure differential of 0.1 inches w.g. (25 Pa) across the entire system, relative to the outside, including the manufacturer's air handler enclosure. During testing:~~
~~1. Block, if present, the ventilation air duct(s) connected to the conditioning system.~~
~~2. The duct air leakage testing equipment shall be attached to the largest return in the system or to the air handler.~~
~~3. The filter shall be removed and the air handler power shall be turned off.~~

~~4. Supply boots or registers and return boxes or grilles shall be taped, plugged, or otherwise sealed air tight or as tight as possible.~~
~~5. The hose for measuring the 25 Pascals of pressure differential shall be inserted into the boot of the supply that is nominally closest to the air handler.~~
~~6. Open all interconnecting doors in the building, close dampers for fireplaces and other operable dampers.~~
~~7. Set up an envelope air moving/ flow-regulating/ flow measurement assembly, such as a blower door, following the manufacturer's prescribed procedure.~~
~~8. Specific instructions from the duct testing equipment manufacturer shall be followed to reach duct test pressure and measure duct air leakage used in combination with a blower door. Typical steps are as follows:~~
~~a. Depressurize the ductwork system to 25 Pa using the measurement hose in Step 5 above.~~
~~b. Depressurize the house to 25 Pa using an envelope air moving/flow-regulating/flow measurement assembly, such as a blower door.~~
~~c. Correct the duct pressure to measure 0 Pa of pressure differential between the house and the ductwork system.~~
~~d. Read the cfm of duct leakage using the procedures for the specific equipment being used. (Note that most automatically calculating pressure gauges cannot compute the CFM25 automatically with a duct-to-house difference in pressure of 0 Pa, so the gauge setting should be set to read CFM instead of CFM25).~~

~~**Complete one duct leakage report for each HVAC system serving the home:**~~

~~Property Address:~~ ____

~~HVAC System Number:~~ _________ ~~Describe area of home served:~~ _____________________

~~CFM25 Total~~ _________~~. Conditioned Floor Area (CFA) served by system:~~ __________ ~~s.f.~~

~~CFM25 × 100 divided by CFA =~~ ____ ~~CFM25/100SF (e.g. 50 CFM25 × 100/ 2,000 CFA = 5 CFM25/100SF)~~

~~Fan attachment location~~ ___________________

~~Company Name~~ ____

~~Contact Information:~~ ____

____

______________________________________ ______________________________

~~Signature of Tester Date~~

~~Permit Holder, NC Licensed General Contractor, NC Licensed HVAC Contractor, NC Licensed Home Inspector,~~ ~~*Registered Design Professional*~~, Certified ~~*BPI Envelope Professional*~~, or Certified ~~*HERS Rater*~~

~~**(circle one)**~~

APPENDIX RA
BOARD OF APPEALS—RESIDENTIAL

Deleted – No change from 2018

~~APPENDIX RB~~
~~SOLAR-READY PROVISIONS—DETACHED ONE- AND TWO-FAMILY DWELLINGS AND TOWNHOUSES~~

~~*The provisions contained in this appendix are not mandatory.*~~

~~SECTION RB101~~
~~SCOPE~~

~~**RB101.1 General.** These provisions shall be applicable for new construction where solar-ready provisions are required.~~

~~SECTION RB102~~
~~GENERAL DEFINITION~~

~~**SOLAR-READY ZONE.** A section or sections of the roof or building overhang designated and reserved for the future installation of a solar photovoltaic or solar thermal system.~~

~~SECTION RB103~~
~~SOLAR-READY ZONE~~

~~**RB103.1 General.** New detached one- and two-family dwellings, and townhouses with not less than 600 square feet (55.74 m^2) of roof area oriented between 110 degrees and 270 degrees of true north shall comply with Sections RB103.2 through RB103.8.~~

~~**Exceptions:**~~

1. ~~New residential buildings with a permanently installed on-site renewable energy system.~~
2. ~~A building where all areas of the roof that would otherwise meet the requirements of Section RB103 are in full or partial shade for more than 70 percent of daylight hours annually.~~

~~**RB103.2 Construction document requirements for solar-ready zone.** Construction documents shall indicate the solar-ready zone.~~

~~**RB103.3 Solar-ready zone area.** The total solar-ready zone area shall be not less than 300 square feet (27.87 m^2) exclusive of mandatory access or setback areas as required by the *International Fire Code*. New townhouses three stories or less in height above grade plane and with a total floor area less than or equal to 2,000 square feet (185.8 m^2) per dwelling shall have a solar-ready zone area of not less than 150 square feet (13.94 m^2). The solar-ready zone shall be composed of areas not less than 5 feet (1524 mm) in width and not less than 80 square feet (7.44 m^2) exclusive of access or setback areas as required by the *International Fire Code*.~~

~~**RB103.4 Obstructions.** Solar-ready zones shall be free from obstructions, including but not limited to vents, chimneys, and roof-mounted equipment.~~

~~**RB103.5 Shading.** The solar-ready zone shall be set back from any existing or new permanently affixed object on the building or site that is located south, east or west of the solar zone a distance not less than two times the object's height above the nearest point on the roof surface. Such objects include, but are not limited to, taller portions of the building itself, parapets, chimneys, antennas, signage, rooftop equipment, trees and roof plantings.~~

~~**RB103.6 Capped roof penetration sleeve.** A capped roof penetration sleeve shall be provided adjacent to a solar-ready zone located on a roof slope of not greater than 1 unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (8-percent slope). The capped roof penetration sleeve shall be sized to accommodate the future photovoltaic system conduit, but shall have an inside diameter of not less than $1^1/_4$ inches (32 mm).~~

~~**RB103.7 Roof load documentation.** The structural design loads for roof dead load and roof live load shall be clearly indicated on the construction documents.~~

~~**RB103.8 Interconnection pathway.** Construction documents shall indicate pathways for routing of conduit or plumbing from the solar-ready zone to the electrical service panel or service hot water system.~~

~~**RB103.9 Electrical service reserved space.** The main electrical service panel shall have a reserved space to allow installation of a dual pole circuit breaker for future solar electric installation and shall be labeled "For Future Solar Electric." The reserved space shall be positioned at the opposite (load) end from the input feeder location or main circuit location.~~

~~**RB103.10 Construction documentation certificate.** A permanent certificate, indicating the solar-ready zone and other requirements of this section, shall be posted near the electrical distribution panel, water heater or other conspicuous location by the builder or registered design professional.~~

APPENDIX RC-Reserved

Burgos, Alexander N

From: Rittlinger, David B
Sent: Monday, April 22, 2024 12:40 PM
To: Liebman, Brian R
Cc: Childs, Nathan D; Burgos, Alexander N
Subject: RE: Building Code filings and status

Brian,
Thank you for confirming a recommended approval of the 2024 NCMC.

David Bruce Rittlinger, PE, LEED AP
Division Chief – Codes and Interpretations

North Carolina
Office of State Fire Marshal
1202 Mail Service Center
Raleigh, NC 27699-1202
919.647.0008
david.rittlinger@ncdoi.gov

Link to free view of 2018 NC Codes
https://codes.iccsafe.org/codes/north-carolina

From: Liebman, Brian R <brian.liebman@oah.nc.gov>
Sent: Monday, April 22, 2024 12:37 PM
To: Rittlinger, David B <david.rittlinger@ncdoi.gov>
Cc: Childs, Nathan D <nchilds@NCDOJ.GOV>; Burgos, Alexander N <alexander.burgos@oah.nc.gov>
Subject: Building Code filings and status

Good afternoon everyone,

Since we have quite a few filings before the RRC for this month's meeting, I thought it would be helpful to recap where I believe all the filings are in the pipeline. For the record, I am going to ask the Commission to extend the period of review for the Existing Building Code, the Fire Code, the Building Code, and the 16 separate amendments filed for those codes.

Amendments to the 2024 Codes:

Admin Code - 4
- 107.1.5 – as amended, recommend approval
- 106.3.1 – withdrawn
- 204.4.5 and 204.4.5.1 – recommend approval
- Appendix H – recommend approval

Plumbing Code – 1
- 702.1, 702.4, 1102.2, and 1102.7 - withdrawn

Filing of full codes:

2024 Existing Building Code – extension
    2 amendments - extension
2024 Fire Code - extension
    8 amendments - extension
2024 Building Code - extension
    6 amendments - extension

2024 Fuel Gas Code – as amended, recommend approval
2024 Mechanical Code – as amended, recommend approval
    2 amendments – recommend approval
2024 Energy Conservation Code – waiting for responses to requests for changes
    1 amendment – no reason to object at this time

Repeals:

Repeal of the 2017/2020 Electrical Codes – recommend approval

So, as I see it, the only thing left that needs to be addressed for the April 30 meeting is the Energy Conservation Code. If I've missed something, or if you have a different understanding of anything, please let me know.

Thanks,
Brian

Brian Liebman
Counsel to the North Carolina Rules Review Commission
Office of Administrative Hearings
(984)236-1948
brian.liebman@oah.nc.gov

Burgos, Alexander N

Subject: FW: NC Building Code Council - NC Building Code Approved Rules (Code Amendment): 2024 NC Mechanical Code

Importance: High

From: Rittlinger, David B <david.rittlinger@ncdoi.gov>
Sent: Friday, April 19, 2024 9:07 AM
To: Liebman, Brian R <brian.liebman@oah.nc.gov>
Cc: Burgos, Alexander N <alexander.burgos@oah.nc.gov>; Childs, Nathan D <nchilds@NCDOJ.GOV>
Subject: RE: NC Building Code Council - NC Building Code Approved Rules (Code Amendment): 2024 NC Mechanical Code
Importance: High

Brian,
Good morning.
This is in an adopted code amendment to the 2024 NC Mechanical Code so its approval is contingent upon the approval of the overall 2024 NC Mechanical Code.
Thank you for your review and work on this.
Let me know if you have any questions.

David Bruce Rittlinger, PE, LEED AP
Division Chief – Codes and Interpretations

North Carolina
Office of State Fire Marshal
1202 Mail Service Center
Raleigh, NC 27699-1202
919.647.0008
david.rittlinger@ncdoi.gov

Link to free view of 2018 NC Codes
https://codes.iccsafe.org/codes/north-carolina

Burgos, Alexander N

Subject: FW: NC Building Code Council - NC Building Code Approved Rules (Code Amendment): 2024 NC Mechanical Code

Importance: High

From: Rittlinger, David B <david.rittlinger@ncdoi.gov>
Sent: Friday, April 19, 2024 9:07 AM
To: Liebman, Brian R <brian.liebman@oah.nc.gov>
Cc: Burgos, Alexander N <alexander.burgos@oah.nc.gov>; Childs, Nathan D <nchilds@NCDOJ.GOV>
Subject: RE: NC Building Code Council - NC Building Code Approved Rules (Code Amendment): 2024 NC Mechanical Code
Importance: High

Brian,
Good morning.
This is in an adopted code amendment to the 2024 NC Mechanical Code so its approval is contingent upon the approval of the overall 2024 NC Mechanical Code.
Thank you for your review and work on this.
Let me know if you have any questions.

David Bruce Rittlinger, PE, LEED AP
Division Chief – Codes and Interpretations

North Carolina
Office of State Fire Marshal
1202 Mail Service Center
Raleigh, NC 27699-1202
919.647.0008
david.rittlinger@ncdoi.gov

Link to free view of 2018 NC Codes
https://codes.iccsafe.org/codes/north-carolina

Burgos, Alexander N

Subject:	FW: NC Building Code Council - NC Building Code Approved Rules (Code Amendment): 2024 NC Mechanical Code
Attachments:	D-31 20231212 Item B-5 2024 NCMC 1101 1103 1104 1106 1107 1109 1110 and Chapter 15 Rev 1. Form_0400_for_Permanentg_Rule_March_2024.docx; D-31 20231212 Item B-5 2024 NCMC 1101 1103 1104 1106 1107 1109 1110 and Chapter 15 Rev 1. Form_0400_for_Permanentg_Rule_March_2024.pdf
Importance:	High

From: Rittlinger, David B <david.rittlinger@ncdoi.gov>
Sent: Friday, April 19, 2024 9:02 AM
To: Liebman, Brian R <brian.liebman@oah.nc.gov>
Cc: Burgos, Alexander N <alexander.burgos@oah.nc.gov>; Childs, Nathan D <nchilds@NCDOJ.GOV>; Holder, Karen <Karen.Holder@ncdoi.gov>
Subject: RE: NC Building Code Council - NC Building Code Approved Rules (Code Amendment): 2024 NC Mechanical Code
Importance: High

Brian.
The adopted code amendment is based on the adopted 2024 NC Mechanical Code.
NCBCC Rule-making Coordinator: High-probability and high-probability systems are revised to be *italicized* in the adopted code amendment.
NCBCC Rule-making Coordinator: Yes. Some table spaces did not contain values previously. There are new additions to the table as well. No changes were made per the comment and response.

The revised Form 400 with the adopted code amendment is attached for consideration.
Let me know if you have any questions.
Thank you for your work on this.

David Bruce Rittlinger, PE, LEED AP
Division Chief – Codes and Interpretations

North Carolina
Office of State Fire Marshal
1202 Mail Service Center
Raleigh, NC 27699-1202
919.647.0008
david.rittlinger@ncdoi.gov

Link to free view of 2018 NC Codes
https://codes.iccsafe.org/codes/north-carolina

REQUEST FOR CHANGES PURSUANT TO G.S. 150B-21.10

AGENCY: North Carolina Building Code Council

RULE CITATION: 2024 North Carolina Mechanical Code, All Provisions

DEADLINE FOR RECEIPT: TBD

***PLEASE NOTE:* This request may extend to several pages. Please be sure you have reached the end of the document.**

The Rules Review Commission staff has completed its review of this Rule prior to the Commission's next meeting. The Commission has not yet reviewed this Rule and therefore there has not been a determination as to whether the Rule will be approved. You may email the reviewing attorney to inquire concerning the staff recommendation.

In reviewing this Rule, the staff recommends the following changes be made:

> *In their comment in opposition to the NC Energy Conservation Code, the NC Homebuilders Association encloses an email exchange between their director of Codes and Construction, Cliff Isaac, and staff at the Building Code Council regarding the Council's failure to incorporate a statutory exemption into the NC Energy Conservation Code.*
>
> *In the final email of the exchange, Building Code Council member Kim Wooten states:*
>
>> ***[t]here are many examples of building codes and state statutes not in agreement**. The NCBCC adopts codes for the general welfare of the public per statute. The General Assembly may make laws that contradict codes and may affect the general welfare of NC citizens, but that effort is independent of the NCBCC (emphasis added).*
>
> *In light of this statement, please disclose any and all provisions of the 2024 NC Mechanical Code that the Council is aware are "not in agreement" with the laws of the State of North Carolina.*
> *NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: The 2024 NC Mechanical Code was adopted pursuant to North Carolina General Statutes Chapter 143, Article 9 by the North Carolina Building Code Council in agreement with the laws of the State of North Carolina. No changes were made per this comment and response.*
> *Thanks for the reply, but I'm not sure this is entirely responsive to my question. Are there any particular provisions within the Mechanical Code that the BCC is aware are outside the authority provided to the BCC by the NC General Statutes?*
> *NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: The NCBCC is not aware of any particular provision within the 2024 NC Mechanical Code that is outside the authority provided to the NCBC by the North Carolina General Statutes. No changes were made per this comment and response.*
> *I noticed various sections that contain similar, if not identical requirements as in the Fuel Gas Code for items such as dryer vents, carbon monoxide detection, saunas, and*

pollution control units. They looked similar, if not identical to me, but I can't be sure. Please confirm if they are identical. Also, why is it necessary to repeat these requirements here? Would a cross reference to the Fuel Gas Code not be sufficient?

NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: Dryer vents, carbon monoxide detectors and alarms, saunas and pollution control units code language appear in both the 2024 NC Mechanical Code and the 2024 NC Fuel Gas Code as the energy source can be either electric or fuel gas. Having this content in both codes is practical for the user depending on the fuel source. No changes were made per this comment and response.

Outside of any appropriate changes regarding fuel source, are the requirements identical? If there are differences between the codes, that could be the source of significant ambiguity.

NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: The dryer vent and sauna code language in the 2024 NC Mechanical Code is specific to electric dryers and saunas. The dryer vent and sauna code language in the 2024 NC Fuel Gas Code is specific to gas-fired dryers and saunas. Electric dryers and saunas and gas-fired dryers and saunas have some differences specific to fuel source and overall dryer and sauna product availability from the marketplace. The carbon monoxide detectors and alarms requirements are identical between the 2024 NC Mechanical Code and the 2024 NC Fuel Gas Code. The pollution control unit requirements in Chapter 5 of the 2024 NC Mechanical Code are specific to commercial kitchen exhaust systems for buildings regardless of fuel source. There are no pollution control unit requirements in the 2024 NC Fuel Gas Code. Pollution control unit requirements covered by federal laws are not included in NC Building Codes. No changes were made per this comment and response.

Please retype the rule accordingly and resubmit it to our office at 1711 New Hope Church Road, Raleigh, North Carolina 27609.

Brian Liebman
Commission Counsel
Date submitted to agency: April 14, 2024

REQUEST FOR CHANGES PURSUANT TO G.S. 150B-21.10

AGENCY: North Carolina Building Code Council

RULE CITATION: 2024 North Carolina Mechanical Code, Ch. 1

DEADLINE FOR RECEIPT: TBD

PLEASE NOTE: ***This request may extend to several pages. Please be sure you have reached the end of the document.***

The Rules Review Commission staff has completed its review of this Rule prior to the Commission's next meeting. The Commission has not yet reviewed this Rule and therefore there has not been a determination as to whether the Rule will be approved. You may email the reviewing attorney to inquire concerning the staff recommendation.

In reviewing this Rule, the staff recommends the following changes be made:

Generally to the Chapter, I noticed that Ch. 5 contains requirements for clothes dryer vents in the same way that the Fuel Gas Code does. They looked similar, if not identical to me, but I can't be sure. Please confirm if they are identical. Also, why is it necessary to repeat the requirements here? Would a cross reference to the Fuel Gas Code not be sufficient?

NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: Dryer vents code language appears in both the 2024 NC Mechanical Code and the 2024 NC Fuel Gas Code as the energy source can be either electric or fuel gas for dryers. Having this content in both codes is practical for the user depending on the fuel source of the dryer. No changes were made per this comment and response.

In 102.3, what happens if it cannot be determined what edition of the code a device or safeguard was installed under?

NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: This sentence is added: "In working with the owner or the owner's authorized agent, the code official has the authority to determine what is reasonable to satisfy the intent of the code when the edition of the code is not known."

In 102.3, how does a reinspection establish whether the owner or owner's agent is responsible for the maintenance of the plumbing system? I don't have a problem with requiring an owner or his agent to be responsible for maintenance, but I don't understand how the reinspection "determine[s] compliance with this provision."

NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: The second sentence is revised as follows: "To determine whether maintenance required under this Code has been performed, the code official shall have the authority to require a mechanical system to be reinspected."

In 102.4, second paragraph, define "minor".

NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: The sentence is changed as follows: "In the discretion of the code official, minor additions, alterations, renovations and repairs to existing mechanical systems shall meet the provisions for new construction, unless such work is done in the same manner and arrangement as was in the existing system, is not hazardous to the public health, safety, or welfare and is approved."

In 102.4, second paragraph, define "hazardous".

Brian Liebman
Commission Counsel
Date submitted to agency: April 14, 2024

NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: The sentence is changed as follows: "In the discretion of the code official, minor additions, alterations, renovations and repairs to existing mechanical systems shall meet the provisions for new construction, unless such work is done in the same manner and arrangement as was in the existing system, is not hazardous to the public health, safety, or welfare and is approved."

In 102.9, this suggests that the code official has the authority to essentially make up new requirements that he considers "necessary for the strength, stability, or proper operation of an existing or proposed plumbing system". Is there statutory authority for this?

NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: The sentence is changed as follows: "Requirements necessary for the strength, stability or proper operation of an existing or proposed mechanical system, or for the public safety, health and general welfare covered by this code shall be determined by the code official."

Please retype the rule accordingly and resubmit it to our office at 1711 New Hope Church Road, Raleigh, North Carolina 27609.

Brian Liebman
Commission Counsel
Date submitted to agency: April 14, 2024

REQUEST FOR CHANGES PURSUANT TO G.S. 150B-21.10

AGENCY: North Carolina Building Code Council

RULE CITATION: 2024 North Carolina Mechanical Code, Ch. 2

DEADLINE FOR RECEIPT: TBD

PLEASE NOTE: ***This request may extend to several pages. Please be sure you have reached the end of the document.***

The Rules Review Commission staff has completed its review of this Rule prior to the Commission's next meeting. The Commission has not yet reviewed this Rule and therefore there has not been a determination as to whether the Rule will be approved. You may email the reviewing attorney to inquire concerning the staff recommendation.

In reviewing this Rule, the staff recommends the following changes be made:

> *In the definition of "Food-Grade Fluid", it limits the additives to anything contained in 21 CFR Parts 174-186. I checked, and noticed that other adjacent parts of the CFR appeared to discuss food additives, so I wanted to make sure those weren't omitted unintentionally. See also Section 1403.3.*
>
> *NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: Parts 174 through 186 are required to be followed to maintain water quality for heat exchanger use in solar thermal systems, not just 174 and 186. The definition and Section 1403.3 are revised accordingly to include the range of applicable parts.*
>
> *Yes, I understood that it was not just 174 and 186, but the range between them. I was referring to the Parts before and after the range, such as Parts 170, 171, and 172 which also refer to food additives.*
>
> *NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: Parts 174 through 186 are the only applicable provisions necessary to demonstrate code-compliant water quality for heat exchangers used in solar thermal systems. No changes were made per this comment and response.*

Please retype the rule accordingly and resubmit it to our office at 1711 New Hope Church Road, Raleigh, North Carolina 27609.

Brian Liebman
Commission Counsel
Date submitted to agency: April 14, 2024

REQUEST FOR CHANGES PURSUANT TO G.S. 150B-21.10

AGENCY: North Carolina Building Code Council

RULE CITATION: 2024 North Carolina Mechanical Code, Ch. 3

DEADLINE FOR RECEIPT: TBD

***PLEASE NOTE:* This request may extend to several pages. Please be sure you have reached the end of the document.**

The Rules Review Commission staff has completed its review of this Rule prior to the Commission's next meeting. The Commission has not yet reviewed this Rule and therefore there has not been a determination as to whether the Rule will be approved. You may email the reviewing attorney to inquire concerning the staff recommendation.

In reviewing this Rule, the staff recommends the following changes be made:

In 301.17, should "rodentproofing" be two words?
NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: "Rodentproofing" has been used as a single word in the lexicon of the NC Building Codes for many years. Rodentproofing appears as a single word in the recently approved 2024 NC Plumbing Code. No changes were made per this comment and response as the edits required do not change the use of the word in applications of the NC Building Codes.
In 304.3, the first sentence refers to "hazardous locations and public garages, private garages, repair garages, automotive motor fuel-dispensing facilities and parking garages . . . ." First, is there a reason for the conjunction between "hazardous locations" and "public garages"? Second, is there a distinction between the more specific types of garage listed and "parking garages"? I notice this language is also in 304.5.
NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: Elevation of ignition sources in public garages, private garages, repair garages, automotive fuel-dispensing facilities and parking garages is required because of they are consider hazardous locations in the application of this section. These types of hazardous locations typically have heavier-than-air flammable and combustible liquids and associated vapors stored within 18 inches of the floor, hence the requirement to elevate ignition sources in the hazardous locations listed. The garage types listed are tied to occupancy classifications in the 2024 NC Building Code. No changes were made per this comment and response.
OK, so is this a grammatical issue then? Because the way the sentence is written, it's a little unclear why it says "hazardous locations and" and then lists a bunch of specific places. Would it change the meaning to delete the "and", add a comma, and make that a list? i.e. "…located in hazardous ~~locations~~ ~~and~~locations, public garages, private garages…"
NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: Hazardous locations can be spaces other than those listed. If someone stores heavier-than-air flammable and combustible liquids in any space within a building, it can be considered a hazardous location and thus require the appliance to be elevated 18 inches above the floor. No changes were made per this comment and response.
That was my thought. It isn't likely to be misread, in my opinion, but someone could use the conjunction there to argue that this provision only applies to a hazardous

location that is also one of the specific places listed. It's grammatically correct, and apparently also inclusive of your intent to say "hazardous locations, public garages, private garages…" in a list, rather than using a conjunction to set it off.

Also, to confirm, there are differences, explained in the Building Code, between the different kinds of garages listed here? Could you point me to where those are defined in the Building Code?

NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: See excerpts below from the 2024 NC Building Code.

[BG] PRIVATE GARAGE. A building or portion of a building in which motor vehicles used by the *owner* or tenants of the building or buildings on the premises are stored or kept, without provisions for repairing or servicing such vehicles for profit.

[BG] OPEN PARKING GARAGE. A structure or portion of a structure with the openings as described in Section 406.5.2 on two or more sides that is used for the parking or storage of private motor vehicles as described in Section 406.5.3.

[BG] MECHANICAL-ACCESS ENCLOSED PARKING GARAGE. An enclosed parking garage that employs parking machines, lifts, elevators or other mechanical devices for vehicle moving from and to street level and in which public occupancy in the garage is prohibited in all areas except the vehicle access bay.

[BG] MECHANICAL-ACCESS OPEN PARKING GARAGES. *Open parking garages* employing parking machines, lifts, elevators or other mechanical devices for vehicles moving from and to street level and in which public occupancy is prohibited above the street level.

[BG] RAMP-ACCESS OPEN PARKING GARAGES. *Open parking garages* employing a series of continuously rising floors or a series of interconnecting ramps between floors permitting the movement of vehicles under their own power from and to the street level.

[BG] REPAIR GARAGE. A building, structure or portion thereof used for servicing or repairing motor vehicles.

There many types of public parking garages based an assortment of open and enclosed configurations and access options. No changes were made per this comment and response.

I think based on this, the term "public garage" is unclear. I think it's clearer to just use the terms from the Building Code that you've cited above.

In 304.3.1, there's an exception in the main rule ("except that a single door is permitted…") that should be moved to the list of exceptions below.

NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: Edited accordingly.

In 307.2.1.1, the Code states that condensate drains shall not directly connect to "any plumbing drain, waste or vent pipe" but then goes on to allow such drains to discharge into a floor sink, floor drain, trench drain, mop sink, hub drain, standpipe, utility sink, or laundry sink. Is this requiring an air gap in the condensate discharge (i.e. "shall not directly connect") or is there some ambiguity created by "any plumbing drain" and the approved list of drains in the next sentence?

NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: Added a sentence after the second sentence to read as follows: "An air gap or air break shall be provided".

Please retype the rule accordingly and resubmit it to our office at 1711 New Hope Church Road, Raleigh, North Carolina 27609.

Brian Liebman
Commission Counsel
Date submitted to agency: April 14, 2024

REQUEST FOR CHANGES PURSUANT TO G.S. 150B-21.10

AGENCY: North Carolina Building Code Council

RULE CITATION: 2024 North Carolina Mechanical Code, Ch. 5

DEADLINE FOR RECEIPT: TBD

***PLEASE NOTE:* This request may extend to several pages. Please be sure you have reached the end of the document.**

The Rules Review Commission staff has completed its review of this Rule prior to the Commission's next meeting. The Commission has not yet reviewed this Rule and therefore there has not been a determination as to whether the Rule will be approved. You may email the reviewing attorney to inquire concerning the staff recommendation.

In reviewing this Rule, the staff recommends the following changes be made:

In 502.4, does "the general requirements of this chapter" refer to 502.1? Or something greater than that? Please specify.

NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: The 2024 NC Fire Code has additional installation and specific ventilation requirements in addition to the general ventilation requirements of Chapter 5 of the 2024 NC Mechanical Code. The reference is provided for convenience to the user of the code as the mechanical and fire code requirements work together to provide a code-compliant stationary storage battery system installation. No changes were made per this comment and response.

OK, but that doesn't answer my question. What are the "general requirements" of Chapter 5? Do you mean simply that stationary battery systems have to comply with all of Chapter 5 and *Section 1207.6.1 of the Fire Code? Or does "general requirements" mean something more specific, i.e. the provision in Chapter 5 labeled "General"?*

NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: The general requirements may be specific to Section 501 but depending on the location of the stationary storage battery systems, other portions of Chapter 5 may be applicable. It is best to not reference just Section 501 as that may exclude applicable code provisions. No changes were made per this comment and response.

Well, in that case, I think saying "general requirements" is a bit unclear. If you just want your regulated public to comply with the rest of Chapter 5, either say explicitly what provisions apply or say "Chapter 5" but don't say "general requirements" when you have a provision labeled "general".

In 504.9, what is a "domestic clothes dryer"? (Please note that I probably did not ask this for the Fuel Gas Code, so if this language is there as well, please make any changes that come from this request to the Fuel Gas Code.)

NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: Domestic clothes dryers are listed and labeled by the manufacturer for use in family living type environments. The exhaust requirements for commercial clothes dryer are per the manufacturer's installation instructions as noted in Section 504.10. Domestic clothes dryers do not generate the heat that commercial clothes dryers generate hence they have separate and less stringent exhaust requirements as noted in Section 504.9. No changes were made per this comment and response.

Brian Liebman
Commission Counsel
Date submitted to agency: April 14, 2024

In 505.1, what is "domestic cooking exhaust"? For both this and the previous request, I'm assuming that "domestic" means residential, and applies to residential dwelling units in apartments and other residential buildings not covered by the Residential Code. Is that correct?
NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: Domestic cooking exhaust equipment and appliances are listed and labeled by the manufacturer for use in dwelling units, break rooms and other sorts of commercial spaces where domestic cooking can occur. In these applications the cooking is limited to the types of cooking typically performed in a home environment. Commercial cooking is handled separately with more stringent requirements covered elsewhere in Chapter 5 of the 2024 NC Mechanical Code. No changes were made per this comment and response.

In 505.3, is there a specific provision of the International Building Code that you require Group I-1 and I-2 occupancies to comply with?
NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: I-1 and I-2 Institutional Group Occupancies have additional life safety and construction requirements for domestic cooking exhaust equipment exhaust ducts given the nature of the types of facilities included in those groups such hospitals and other supervised custodial care facilities. The reference is provided for convenience to the user of the codes as the requirements work together to provide a code-compliant domestic cooking exhaust system in these specific occupancies. No changes were made per this comment and response.
So, are there specific portions of the Building Code that apply in this context? It seems a bit unclear to generally point to the Building Code and in the same sentence point specifically to Section 904.14 of the Fire Code.
NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: The 2024 NC Building Code has specific sections dedicated to I-1 and I-2 occupancies concerning construction requirements that impact the how domestic cooking exhaust ducts are installed. The reference to 2024 NC Fire Code Section 904.14 points specifically to a requirement to install a fire suppression system for domestic cooking exhaust applications in I-1 and I-2 occupancies. No changes were made per this comment and response.
Please add a cross reference to those Building Code sections, then. I think it's confusing to omit them here.
In 510.3, what is the symbol (it looks like a box) added after the text?
NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: The editing box is deleted.

Please retype the rule accordingly and resubmit it to our office at 1711 New Hope Church Road, Raleigh, North Carolina 27609.

Brian Liebman
Commission Counsel
Date submitted to agency: April 14, 2024

REQUEST FOR CHANGES PURSUANT TO G.S. 150B-21.10

AGENCY: North Carolina Building Code Council

RULE CITATION: 2024 North Carolina Mechanical Code, Ch. 6

DEADLINE FOR RECEIPT: TBD

***PLEASE NOTE:* This request may extend to several pages. Please be sure you have reached the end of the document.**

The Rules Review Commission staff has completed its review of this Rule prior to the Commission's next meeting. The Commission has not yet reviewed this Rule and therefore there has not been a determination as to whether the Rule will be approved. You may email the reviewing attorney to inquire concerning the staff recommendation.

In reviewing this Rule, the staff recommends the following changes be made:

> *In 603.8.2, leak testing as required by Section C403 of the Energy Conservation Code is required for an underground duct. Where in Section C403 is leak testing required? Also, would this apply to residential buildings, or would they be covered by R403?*
> *NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: Duct leakage is covered in the Section C403 Building Mechanical Systems of the 2024 NC Energy Conservation Code in various subsections. The requirement is limited to underground ducts serving commercial buildings covered in Section 403 Building Mechanical Systems of the 2024 NC Energy Conservation Code. No changes were made per this comment and response.*
> *OK, but where in Section C403? I'm asking because I looked and didn't see anything requiring leak testing, other than C403.1.2.3 requiring high pressure duct systems to be tested in accordance with SMACNA HVAC Air Duct Leakage Test Manual. Not sure that applies here. I see more requirements for leak testing in C402, but that appears to be restricted to the building thermal envelope.*
> *NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: The requirement is only applicable to high-pressure duct systems. No changes were made per this comment and response.*
> *But 603.8.2 does not say that it is only applicable to high pressure duct systems. It just says "ducts" and 603.8 in general only says "underground ducts". Please specify which provisions here apply only to high pressure duct systems.*

Please retype the rule accordingly and resubmit it to our office at 1711 New Hope Church Road, Raleigh, North Carolina 27609.

Brian Liebman
Commission Counsel
Date submitted to agency: April 14, 2024

REQUEST FOR CHANGES PURSUANT TO G.S. 150B-21.10

AGENCY: North Carolina Building Code Council

RULE CITATION: 2024 North Carolina Mechanical Code, Ch. 7

DEADLINE FOR RECEIPT: TBD

***PLEASE NOTE:* This request may extend to several pages. Please be sure you have reached the end of the document.**

The Rules Review Commission staff has completed its review of this Rule prior to the Commission's next meeting. The Commission has not yet reviewed this Rule and therefore there has not been a determination as to whether the Rule will be approved. You may email the reviewing attorney to inquire concerning the staff recommendation.

In reviewing this Rule, the staff recommends the following changes be made:

> *There appear to be two blank pages following the end of Ch. 7. Just making sure something wasn't accidentally omitted.*
>
> *NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: Nothing omitted. The two blank pages are deleted.*

Please retype the rule accordingly and resubmit it to our office at 1711 New Hope Church Road, Raleigh, North Carolina 27609.

Brian Liebman
Commission Counsel
Date submitted to agency: April 14, 2024

REQUEST FOR CHANGES PURSUANT TO G.S. 150B-21.10

AGENCY: North Carolina Building Code Council

RULE CITATION: 2024 North Carolina Mechanical Code, Ch. 9

DEADLINE FOR RECEIPT: TBD

PLEASE NOTE: ***This request may extend to several pages. Please be sure you have reached the end of the document.***

The Rules Review Commission staff has completed its review of this Rule prior to the Commission's next meeting. The Commission has not yet reviewed this Rule and therefore there has not been a determination as to whether the Rule will be approved. You may email the reviewing attorney to inquire concerning the staff recommendation.

In reviewing this Rule, the staff recommends the following changes be made:

> *In 905.1, the Code requires new wood-burning residential hydronic heaters to be EPA certified. Is there a particular certification, or process that must be followed?*
> *NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: It is an EPA certification stamp that the manufacturer is required to get based on federal law saying they meet clean air standards. The stamp is provided at the point of manufacture. No changes were made per this comment and response.*

Please retype the rule accordingly and resubmit it to our office at 1711 New Hope Church Road, Raleigh, North Carolina 27609.

Brian Liebman
Commission Counsel
Date submitted to agency: April 14, 2024

REQUEST FOR CHANGES PURSUANT TO G.S. 150B-21.10

AGENCY: North Carolina Building Code Council

RULE CITATION: 2024 North Carolina Mechanical Code, Ch. 10

DEADLINE FOR RECEIPT: TBD

PLEASE NOTE: ***This request may extend to several pages. Please be sure you have reached the end of the document.***

The Rules Review Commission staff has completed its review of this Rule prior to the Commission's next meeting. The Commission has not yet reviewed this Rule and therefore there has not been a determination as to whether the Rule will be approved. You may email the reviewing attorney to inquire concerning the staff recommendation.

In reviewing this Rule, the staff recommends the following changes be made:

> *With respect to the rules in Chapter 10 covering boilers, is the BCC empowered to regulate boilers? I thought the Department of Labor had the authority to govern boilers and pressure vessels under Chapter 95, Article 7A? Review of G.S. 143-138(b7) does seem to indicate that the BCC should include rules adopted by the Board of Boiler and Pressure Vessels Rules in an appendix, but not develop those rules themselves. I am aware of the exception in 1001.1, but I am not sure what boilers would not be covered by Ch 95. Please address.*
>
> *NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: The statute includes the boilers that are regulated by NCDOL. Boilers not regulated by NCDOL are covered in Chapter 10 of the 2024 NC Mechanical Code. The NCDOL requirements are quite involved and best not regurgitated here. No changes were made per this comment and response.*

Please retype the rule accordingly and resubmit it to our office at 1711 New Hope Church Road, Raleigh, North Carolina 27609.

Brian Liebman
Commission Counsel
Date submitted to agency: April 14, 2024

REQUEST FOR CHANGES PURSUANT TO G.S. 150B-21.10

AGENCY: North Carolina Building Code Council

RULE CITATION: 2024 North Carolina Mechanical Code, Ch. 11

DEADLINE FOR RECEIPT: TBD

PLEASE NOTE: ***This request may extend to several pages. Please be sure you have reached the end of the document.***

The Rules Review Commission staff has completed its review of this Rule prior to the Commission's next meeting. The Commission has not yet reviewed this Rule and therefore there has not been a determination as to whether the Rule will be approved. You may email the reviewing attorney to inquire concerning the staff recommendation.

In reviewing this Rule, the staff recommends the following changes be made:

In 1101.5, what is the symbol (it looks like a box) added after the text?
NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: The editing box is deleted.

Please retype the rule accordingly and resubmit it to our office at 1711 New Hope Church Road, Raleigh, North Carolina 27609.

Brian Liebman
Commission Counsel
Date submitted to agency: April 14, 2024

SUBMISSION FOR PERMANENT RULE

1. Rule-Making Agency: NC Building Code Council

2. Rule citation & name (name not required for repeal):
2024 NC Mechanical Code Sections 1101, 1103, 1104, 1106, 1107, 1109, 1110 and Chapter 15 (231212 Item B-5)

3. Action:
☐ **ADOPTION** ☒ **AMENDMENT** ☐ **REPEAL** ☐ **READOPTION** ☐ **REPEAL through READOPTION**

4. Rule exempt from RRC review?	**5. Rule automatically subject to legislative review?**
☐ **Yes. Cite authority:**	☐ **Yes. Cite authority:**
☒ **No**	☒ **No**

6. Notice for Proposed Rule:

☒ **Notice Required**
Notice of Text published on: January 16, 2024 in NC Register
Link to Agency notice: https://www.ncosfm.gov/codes/building-code-council-bcc/bcc-hearing-notices
Hearing on: March 18, 2024
Adoption by Agency on: March 19, 2024
☐ **Notice not required under G.S.:**
Adoption by Agency on:

7. Rule establishes or increases a fee? (See G.S. 12-3.1)	**8. Fiscal impact. Check all that apply.**
☐ **Yes** **Agency submitted request for consultation on:** **Consultation not required. Cite authority:** ☒ **No**	☐ **This Rule was part of a combined analysis.** ☐ **State funds affected** ☐ **Local funds affected** ☐ **Substantial economic impact (≥$1,000,000)** ☐ **Approved by OSBM** ☒ **No fiscal note required**

9. REASON FOR ACTION

9A. What prompted this action? Check all that apply:

☒ **Agency**
☐ **Court order / cite:**
☐ **Federal statute / cite:**
☐ **Federal regulation / cite:**
☐ **Legislation enacted by the General Assembly**
Cite Session Law:
☐ **Petition for rule-making**
☐ **Other:**

9B. Explain: These changes will update the 2024 NCMC to reference the latest refrigerant standards and listings, and align Chapter 11 with those updated references. These changes include updating refrigerant classifications, allowed amounts per occupied space, required listings, and installation and testing requirements. The changes are expected to help smooth the transition to alternative refrigerants as HFC refrigerant production is phased-down.

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2025. The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

10. Rulemaking Coordinator: David B. Rittlinger	**11. Signature of Agency Head* or Rule-making Coordinator:**
David B. Rittlinger **Phone: (919)647-0008** **E-Mail: david.rittlinger@ncdoi.gov** **Additional agency contact, if any:** **Phone:** **E-Mail:**	***If this function has been delegated (reassigned) pursuant to G.S. 143B-10(a), submit a copy of the delegation with this form.** **Typed Name: David B. Rittlinger** **Title: Chief Code Consultant**

RRC AND OAH USE ONLY

Action taken:

☐ RRC extended period of review:
☐ RRC determined substantial changes:
☐ Withdrawn by agency
☐ Subject to Legislative Review
☐ Other:

SUBMISSION FOR PERMANENT RULE

1101.2.1 Group A2L, A2, A3 and B1 high-probability equipment. ~~High-probability~~*High-probability* equipment using Group A2L, A2, A3, or B1 refrigerant shall comply with UL 484, UL/CSA 60335-2-40, or UL/CSA 60335-2-89.

….

TABLE 1103.1
REFRIGERANT CLASSIFICATION, AMOUNT AND OEL

CHEMICAL REFRIGERANT	FORMULA	CHEMICAL NAME OF BLEND	REFRIGERANT SAFETY GROUP CLASSIFICATION	AMOUNT OF REFRIGERANT PER OCCUPIED SPACE							[F] DEGREES OF HAZARD[a]
				RCL			LFL			OEL[d]	
				~~Pounds per 1,000 cubic feet~~ lb/MCf	ppm	g/m³	lb/MCf	ppm	g/m³	~~OEL[e]~~ ppm	
R-11~~[d]~~[c]	CCl_3F	trichlorofluoromethane	A1	0.39	1,100	~~6.2~~ 6.1				~~C~~1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-12~~[d]~~[c]	CCl_2F_2	dichlorodifluoromethane	A1	5.6	18,000	90				1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-13~~[d]~~[c]	$CClF_3$	chlorotrifluoromethane	A1	—	—	—				1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-13B1~~[d]~~[c]	$CBrF_3$	bromotrifluoromethane	A1	—	—	—				1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-13I1	CF_3I	trifluoroiodomethane	A1	1.0	2,000	16				500	
R-14	CF_4	tetrafluoromethane (carbon tetrafluoride)	A1	25	110,000	400				1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-22	$CHClF_2$	chlorodifluoromethane	A1	13	59,000	210				1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-23	CHF_3	trifluoromethane (fluoroform)	A1	7.3	41,000	120				1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-30	CH_2Cl_2	dichloromethane (methylene chloride)	B1	—	—	—				—	—
R-31	CH_2ClF	Chlorofluoromethane	-	—	—	—				—	—
R-32	CH_2F_2	difluoromethane (methylene fluoride)	~~A2[e]~~ A2L	4.8	36,000	77	19.1	144,000	306	1,000	1-4-0
R-40	CH_3Cl	chloromethane (methyl chloride)	B2	—	—	—				—	—
R-41	CH_3F	Fluoromethane (methyl fluoride)	-	—	—	—				—	
R-50	CH_4	methane	A3	—	—	—		50,000		1,000	—
R-113~~[d]~~[c]	CCl_2FCClF_2	1,1,2-trichloro-1,2,2-trifluoroethane	A1	1.2	2,600	20				1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-114~~[d]~~[c]	$CClF_2CClF_2$	1,2-dichloro-1,1,2,2-tetrafluoroethane	A1	8.7	20,000	140				1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-115	$CClF_2CF_3$	chloropentafluoroethane	A1	47	120,000	760				1,000	—
R-116	CF_3CF_3	hexafluoroethane	A1	34	97,000	550				1,000	1-0-0
R-123	$CHCl_2CF_3$	2,2-dichloro-1,1,1-trifluoroethane	B1	3.5	9,100	57				50	2-0-0[b]
R-124	$CHClFCF_3$	2-chloro-1,1,1,2-tetrafluoroethane	A1	3.5	10,000	56				1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-125	CHF_2CF_3	pentafluoroethane	A1	23	75,000	370				1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-134a	CH_2FCF_3	1,1,1,2-tetrafluoroethane	A1	13	50,000	210				1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-141b	CH_3CCl_2F	1,1-dichloro-1-fluoroethane	—	0.78	2,600	12	17.8	60,000	287	500	2-1-0

R-142b	CH_3CClF_2	1-chloro-1,1-difluoroethane	A2	5.1	20,000	~~83~~ 82	20.4	80,000	329	1,000	2-4-0
R-143a	CH_3CF_3	1,1,1-trifluoroethane	~~A2[e]~~ A2L	~~4.5~~ 4.4	21,000	70	17.5	82,000	282	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-152a	CH_3CHF_2	1,1-difluoroethane	A2	2.0	12,000	32	8.1	48,000	130	1,000	1-4-0
R-170	CH_3CH_3	ethane	A3	0.54	7,000	~~8.7~~ 8.6	2.4	31,000	38	1,000	2-4-0
R-E170	CH_3OCH_3	Methoxymethane (dimethyl ether)	A3	1.0	8,500	16	4.0	34,000	64	1,000	—
R-218	$CF_3CF_2CF_3$	octafluoropropane	A1	43	90,000	690				1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-227ea	CF_3CHFCF_3	1,1,1,2,3,3,3-heptafluoropropane	A1	36	84,000	580				1,000	—
R-236fa	$CF_3CH_2CF_3$	1,1,1,3,3,3-hexafluoropropane	A1	21	55,000	340				1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-245fa	$CHF_2CH_2CF_3$	1,1,1,3,3-pentafluoropropane	B1	12	34,000	190				300	2-0-0[b]
R-290	$CH_3CH_2CH_3$	propane	A3	~~0.56~~ 0.59	5,300	9.5	2.4	21,000	38	1,000	2-4-0
R-C318	$-(CF_2)_4-$	octafluorocyclobutane	A1	41	80,000	~~660~~ 650				1,000	—

(continued)

TABLE 1103.1—continued
REFRIGERANT CLASSIFICATION, AMOUNT AND OEL

CHEMICAL REFRIGERANT	FORMULA	CHEMICAL NAME OF BLEND	REFRIGERANT SAFETY GROUP CLASSIFICATION	AMOUNT OF REFRIGERANT PER OCCUPIED SPACE							[F] DEGREES OF HAZARD[a]
				RCL			LFL			OEL[d]	
				~~Pounds per 1,000 cubic feet~~ lb/Mcf	ppm	g/m³	lb/Mcf	ppm	g/m³	~~OEL[e]~~ ppm	
R-400~~[d]~~ [c]	zeotrope	R-12/114 (50.0/50.0)	A1	10	28,000	160				1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-400~~[d]~~ [c]	zeotrope	R-12/114 (60.0/40.0)	A1	11	30,000	170				1,000	—
R-401A	zeotrope	R-22/152a/124 (53.0/13.0/34.0)	A1	6.6	27,000	110				1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-401B	zeotrope	R-22/152a/124 (61.0/11.0/28.0)	A1	7.2	30,000	120				1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-401C	zeotrope	R-22/152a/124 (33.0/15.0/52.0)	A1	5.2	20,000	84				1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-402A	zeotrope	R-125/290/22 (60.0/2.0/38.0)	A1	17	66,000	270				1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-402B	zeotrope	R-125/290/22 (38.0/2.0/60.0)	A1	15	63,000	240				1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-403A	zeotrope	R-290/22/218 (5.0/75.0/20.0)	A2	7.6	33,000	120				1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-403B	zeotrope	R-290/22/218 (5.0/56.0/39.0)	A1	18	~~70,000~~ 68,000	290				1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-404A	zeotrope	R-125/143a/134a (44.0/52.0/4.0)	A1	31	130,000	500				1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-405A	zeotrope	R-22/152a/142b/C318 (45.0/7.0/5.5/42.5)	—	16	57,000	260				1,000	—
R-406A	zeotrope	R-22/600a/142b (55.0/4.0/41.0)	A2	4.7	21,000	~~25~~ 75	18.8	82,000	301.9	1,000	—

R-407A	zeotrope	R-32/125/134a (20.0/40.0/40.0)	A1	19	83,000	300				1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-407B	zeotrope	R-32/125/134a (10.0/70.0/20.0)	A1	21	79,000	330				1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-407C	zeotrope	R-32/125/134a (23.0/25.0/52.0)	A1	18	81,000	290				1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-407D	zeotrope	R-32/125/134a (15.0/15.0/70.0)	A1	16	68,000	250				1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-407E	zeotrope	R-32/125/134a (25.0/15.0/60.0)	A1	17	80,000	280				1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-407F	zeotrope	R-32/125/134a (30.0/30.0/40.0)	A1	20	95,000	320				1,000	—
R-407G	zeotrope	R-32/125/134a (2.5/2.5/95.0)	A1	13	52,000	210				1,000	—
R-407H	zeotrope	R-32/125/134a (32.5/15.0/52.5)	A1	19	92,000	300				1,000	—
R-407I	zeotrope	R-32/125/134a (19.5/8.5/72.0)	A1	16	71,100	250				1,000	
R-408A	zeotrope	R-125/143a/22 (7.0/46.0/47.0)	A1	21	~~95,000~~ 94,000	~~340~~ 330				1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-409A	zeotrope	R-22/124/142b (60.0/25.0/15.0)	A1	7.1	29,000	110				1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-409B	zeotrope	R-22/124/142b (65.0/25.0/10.0)	A1	7.3	30,000	120				1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-410A	zeotrope	R-32/125 (50.0/50.0)	A1	26	140,000	420				1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-410B	zeotrope	R-32/125 (45.0/55.0)	A1	27	140,000	430				1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-411A	zeotrope	R-127/22/152a (1.5/87.5/11.0)	A2	2.9	14,000	46	11.6	55,000	185.6	~~990~~ 970	—
R-411B	zeotrope	R-1270/22/152a (3.0/94.0/3.0)	A2	2.8	13,000	45	14.8	70,000	238.3	~~980~~ 940	—
R-412A	zeotrope	R-22/218/142b (70.0/5.0/25.0)	A2	5.1	22,000	82	20.5	87,000	328.6	1,000	—
R-413A	zeotrope	R-218/134a/600a (9.0/88.0/3.0)	A2	5.8	22,000	~~94~~ 93	23.4	88,000	374.9	1,000	—
R-414A	zeotrope	R-22/124/600a/142b (51.0/28.5/4.0/16.5)	A1	6.4	26,000	100				1,000	—
R-414B	zeotrope	R-22/124/600a/142b (50.0/39.0/1.5/9.5)	A1	6.0	23,000	~~95~~ 96				1,000	—

(continued)

TABLE 1103.1—continued
REFRIGERANT CLASSIFICATION, AMOUNT AND OEL

CHEMICAL REFRIGERANT	FORMULA	CHEMICAL NAME OF BLEND	REFRIGERANT SAFETY GROUP CLASSIFICATION	AMOUNT OF REFRIGERANT PER OCCUPIED SPACE							[F] DEGREES OF HAZARD[a]
				RCL			LFL			OEL[d]	
				~~Pounds per 1,000 cubic feet~~ lb/Mcf	ppm	g/m³	lb/Mcf	ppm	g/m³	~~OEL[e]~~ ppm	
R-415A	zeotrope	R-22/152a (82.0/18.0)	A2	2.9	14,000	47	11.7	56,000	187.9	1,000	—
R-415B	zeotrope	R-22/152a (25.0/75.0)	A2	2.1	12,000	34	8.4	47,000	135.1	1,000	—
R-416A	zeotrope	R-134a/124/600 (59.0/39.5/1.5)	A1	3.9	14,000	62				1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-417A	zeotrope	R-125/134a/600 (46.6/50.0/3.4)	A1	3.5	13,000	~~56~~ 55				1,000	2-0-0[b]

R-417B	zeotrope	R-125/134a/600 (79.0/18.3/2.7)	A1	4.3	15,000	~~70~~ 69				1,000	—
R-417C	zeotrope	R-125/134a/600 (19.5/78.8/1.7)	A1	5.4	21,000	87				1,000	—
R-418A	zeotrope	R-290/22/152a (1.5/96.0/2.5)	A2	4.8	22,000	77	19.2	89,000	308.4	1,000	—
R-419A	zeotrope	R-125/134a/E170 (77.0/19.0/4.0)	A2	4.2	15,000	67	16.7	60,000	268.6	1,000	—
R-419B	zeotrope	R-125/134a/E170 (48.5/48.0/3.5)	A2	4.6	17,000	74	18.5	69,000	297.3	1,000	—
R-420A	zeotrope	R-134a/142b (88.0/12.0)	A1	12	~~45,000~~ 44,000	~~190~~ 180				1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-421A	zeotrope	R-125/134a (58.0/42.0)	A1	17	61,000	280				1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-421B	zeotrope	R-125/134a (85.0/15.0)	A1	21	69,000	330				1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-422A	zeotrope	R-125/134a/600a (85.1/11.5/3.4)	A1	18	63,000	290				1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-422B	zeotrope	R-125/134a/600a (55.0/42.0/3.0)	A1	16	56,000	250				1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-422C	zeotrope	R-125/134a/600a (82.0/15.0/3.0)	A1	18	62,000	290				1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-422D	zeotrope	R-125/134a/600a (65.1/31.5/3.4)	A1	16	58,000	260				1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-422E	zeotrope	R-125/134a/600a (58.0/39.3/2.7)	A1	16	57,000	260				1,000	—
R-423A	zeotrope	R-134a/227ea (52.5/47.5)	A1	19	59,000	~~310~~ 300				1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-424A	zeotrope	R-125/134a/600a/600/601a (50.5/47.0/0.9/1.0/0.6)	A1	6.2	23,000	100				~~970~~ 990	2-0-0[b]
R-425A	~~zoetrope~~zeotrope	R-32/134a/227ea (18.5/69.5/12.0)	A1	16	72,000	260				1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-426A	zeotrope	R-125/134a/600a/601a (5.1/93.0/1.3/0.6)	A1	5.2	20,000	83				990	—
R-427A	zeotrope	R-32/125/143a/134a (15.0/25.0/10.0/50.0)	A1	18	79,000	290				1,000	2-1-0
R-428A	zeotrope	R-125/143a/290/600a (77.5/20.0/0.6/1.9)	A1	23	~~83,000~~ 84,000	370				1,000	—
R-429A	zeotrope	R-E170/152a/600a (60.0/10.0/30.0)	A3	0.81	6,300	13	3.2	25,000	83.8	1,000	—
R-430A	zeotrope	R-152a/600a (76.0/24.0)	A3	1.3	8,000	21	5.2	32,000	44.0	1,000	—
R-431A	zeotrope	R-290/152a (71.0/29.0)	A3	~~0.69~~ 0.68	5,500	11	2.7	22,000	38.6	1,000	—
R-432A	zeotrope	R-1270/E170 (80.0/20.0)	A3	0.13	1,200	2.1	2.4	22,000	39.2	~~700~~ 550	—
R-433A	zeotrope	R-1270/290 (30.0/70.0)	A3	0.34	3,100	5.5	2.4	20,000	32.4	~~880~~ 760	—
R-433B	zeotrope	R-1270/290 (5.0-95.0)	A3	~~0.51~~ 0.39	~~4,500~~ 3,500	~~8.1~~ 6.3	2.0	18,000	32.1	950	—
R-433C	zeotrope	R-1270/290 (25.0-75.0)	A3	0.41	~~3,600~~ 3,700	~~6.6~~ 6.5	2.0	18,000	83.8	790	—
R-434A	zeotrope	R-125/143a/600a (63.2/18.0/16.0/2.8)	A1	20	73,000	320				1,000	—

(continued)

TABLE 1103.1—continued
REFRIGERANT CLASSIFICATION, AMOUNT AND OEL

CHEMICAL REFRIGERANT	FORMULA	CHEMICAL NAME OF BLEND	REFRIGERANT SAFETY GROUP CLASSIFICATION	AMOUNT OF REFRIGERANT PER OCCUPIED SPACE							[F] DEGREES OF HAZARD[a]
				RCL			LFL			OEL[d]	
				~~Pounds per 1,000 cubic feet~~ lb/Mcf	ppm	g/m³	lb/Mcf	ppm	g/m³	~~OEL[e]~~ ppm	
R-435A	zeotrope	R-E170/152a (80.0/20.0)	A3	1.1	8,500	17	4.3	34,000	68.2	1,000	—
R-436A	zeotrope	R-290/600a (56.0/44.0)	A3	0.50	4,000	8.1	2.0	16,000	32.3	1,000	—
R-436B	zeotrope	R-290/600a (52.0/48.0)	A3	0.51	4,000	~~8.1~~ 8.2	2.0	16,000	32.7	1,000	—
R-436C	zeotrope	R-290/600a (95.0/5.0)	A3	0.57	5,000	9.1	2.3	20,000	36.5	1,000	
R-437A	zeotrope	R-125/134a/600/601 (19.5/78.5/1.4/0.6)	A1	~~5.0~~ 5.1	19,000	82				990	—
R-438A	zeotrope	R-32/125/134a/600/601a (8.5/45.0/44.2/1.7/0.6)	A1	4.9	20,000	79				990	—
R-439A	zeotrope	R-32/125/600a (50.0/47.0/3.0)	A2	4.7	26,000	76	18.9	104,000	303.3	~~990~~ 1,000	—
R-440A	zeotrope	R-290/134a/152a (0.6/1.6/97.8)	A2	1.9	12,000	31	7.8	46,000	124.7	1,000	—
R-441A	zeotrope	R-170/290/600a/600 (3.1/54.8/6.0/36.1)	A3	0.39	3,200	6.3	2.0	16,000	31.7	1,000	—
R-442A	zeotrope	R-32/125/134a/152a/227ea (31.0/31.0/30.0/3.0/5.0)	A1	21	100,000	330				1,000	—
R-443A	zeotrope	R-1270/290/600a (55.0/40.0/5.0)	A3	0.19	1,700	3.1	2.2	20,000	35.6	~~580~~ 640	—
R-444A	zeotrope	R-32/152a/1234ze(E) (12.0/5.0/83.0)	~~A2[e]~~ A2L	5.1	21,000	81	19.9	82,000	324.8	850	—
R-444B	zeotrope	R-32/152a/1234ze(E) (41.5/10.0/48.5)	~~A2[e]~~ A2L	4.3	23,000	69	17.3	93,000	277.3	~~890~~ 930	—
R-445A	zeotrope	R-744/134a/1234ze(E) (6.0/9.0/85.0)	~~A2[e]~~ A2L	4.2	16,000	67	2.7	63,000	347.4	930	—
R-446A	zeotrope	R-32/1234ze(E)/600 (68.0/29.0/3.0)	~~A2[e]~~ A2L	2.5	16,000	39	13.5	62,000	217.4	960	—
R-447A	zeotrope	R-32/125/1234ze(E) (68.0/3.5/28.5)	~~A2[e]~~ A2L	2.6	16,000	42	18.9	65,000	303.5	~~900~~ 960	—
R-447B	zeotrope	R-32/125/1234ze(E) (68.0/8.0/24.0)	~~A2[e]~~ A2L	~~23~~ 2.6	~~30,000~~ 16,000	~~360~~ 42	20.6	121,000	312.7	970	—
R-448A	zeotrope	R-32/125/1234yf/134a/1234ze(E) (26.0/26.0/20.0/21.0/7.0)	A1	24	110,000	390				~~890~~ 860	—
R-449A	zeotrope	R-32/125/1234yf/134a (24.3/24.7/25.3/25.7)	A1	23	100,000	370				~~830~~ 840	—
R-449B	zeotrope	R-32/125/1234yf/134a (25.2/24.3/23.2/27.3)	A1	23	100,000	370				850	—
R-449C	zeotrope	R-32/125/1234yf/134a (20.0/20.0/31.0/29.0)	A1	23	98,000	360				800	—

R-450A	zeotrope	R-134a/1234ze(E) (42.0/58.0)	A1	20	72,000	320				880	—
R-451A	zeotrope	R-1234yf/134a (89.8/10.2)	~~A2[c]~~ A2L	~~5.3~~ 5.0	18,000	81	20.3	70,000	326.6	~~520~~ 530	—
R-451B	zeotrope	R-1234yf/134a (88.8/11.2)	~~A2[c]~~ A2L	~~5.3~~ 5.0	18,000	81	20.3	70,000	326.6	530	—
R-452A	zeotrope	R-32/125/1234yf (11.0/59.0/30.0)	A1	27	~~10,000~~ 100,000	440				~~780~~ 790	—
R-452B	zeotrope	R-32/125/1234yf (67.0/7.0/26.0)	~~A2[c]~~ A2L	~~23~~ 4.8	30,000	~~360~~ 77	19.3	119,000	310.5	870	—
R-452C	zeotrope	R-32/125/1234yf (12.5/61.0/26.5)	A1	27	100,000	430				~~800~~ 810	—
R-453A	zeotrope	R-32/125/134a/227ea/600/601a (20.0/20.0/53.8/5.0/0.6/ 0.6)	A1	7.8	34,000	120				1,000	—
R-454A	zeotrope	R-32/1234yf (35.0/65.0)	~~A2[c]~~ A2L	~~28~~ 3.2	16,000	~~450~~ 52	18.3	63,000	293.9	690	—
R-454B	zeotrope	R-32/1234yf (68.9/31.1)	~~A2[c]~~ A2L	~~22~~ 3.1	19,000	~~360~~ 49	22.0	77,000	352.6	850	—

(continued)

TABLE 1103.1—continued
REFRIGERANT CLASSIFICATION, AMOUNT AND OEL

CHEMICAL REFRIGERANT	FORMULA	CHEMICAL NAME OF BLEND	REFRIGERANT SAFETY GROUP CLASSIFICATION	AMOUNT OF REFRIGERANT PER OCCUPIED SPACE							[F] DEGREES OF HAZARD[a]
				RCL			LFL			OEL[d]	
				~~Pounds per 1,000 cubic feet~~ lb/Mcf	ppm	g/m³	lb/Mcf	ppm	g/m³	~~OEL[e]~~ ppm	
R-454C	zeotrope	R-32/1234yf (21.5/78.5)	~~A2[c]~~ A2L	~~29~~ 4.4	19,000	~~460~~ 71	18.0	62,000	289.5	620	—
R-455A	zeotrope	R-744/32/1234yf (3.0/21.5/75.5)	~~A2[c]~~ A2L	~~23~~ 4.9	~~30,000~~ 22,000	~~380~~ 79	26.9	118,000	432.1	650	—
R-456A	zeotrope	R-32/134a/1234ze(E) (6.0/45.0/49.0)	A1	20	77,000	320				900	—
R-457A	zeotrope	R-32/1234yf/152a (18.0/70.0/12.0)	~~A2[c]~~ A2L	~~25~~ 3.4	15,000	~~400~~ 54	13.5	60,000	216.3	650	—
R-457B	zeotrope	R-32/1234yf/152a (35.0/55.0/10.0)	A2L	3.7	19,000	59	14.9	76,000	239	730	
R-458A	zeotrope	R-32/125/134a/227ea/236fa (20.5/4.0/61.4/13.5/0.6)	A1	18	76,000	280				1,000	—
R-459A	zeotrope	R-32/1234yf/1234ze(E) (68.0/26.0/6.0)	~~A2[c]~~ A2L	~~23~~ 4.3	27,000	~~360~~ 69	17.4	107,000	278.7	870	—

R-459B	zeotrope	R-32/1234yf/1234ze(E) (21.0/69.0/10.0)	~~A2[e]~~ A2L	30	~~16,000~~ 25,000	~~470~~ 92	23.3	99,000	373.5	640	—
R-460A	zeotrope	R-32/125/134a/1234ze(E) (12.0/52.0/14.0/22.0)	A1	24	92,000	380				~~650~~ 950	—
R-460B	zeotrope	R-32/125/134a/1234ze(E) (28.0/25.0/20.0/27.0)	A1	25	120,000	400				950	—
R-460C	zeotrope	R-32/125/134a/1234ze(E) (2.5/2.5/46.0/49.0)	A1	20	73,000	310				900	
R-461A	zeotrope	R-125/143a/134a/227ea/600a (55.0/5.0/32.0/5.0/3.0)	A1	17	61,000	270				1,000	—
R-462A	zeotrope	R-32/125/143a/134a/600 (9.0/42.0/2.0/44.0/3.0)	A2	3.9	16,000	62	16.6	105,000	265.8	1,000	—
R-463A	zeotrope	R-744/32/125/1234yf/134a (6.0/36.0/30.0/14.0/14.0)	A1	19	98,000	300				990	—
R-464A	zeotrope	R-32/125/1234ze(E)/227ea (27.0/27.0/40.0/6.0)	A1	27	120,000	430				930	
R-465A	zeotrope	R-32/290/1234yf (21.0/7.9/71.1)	A2	2.5	12,000	40	10.0	98,000	160.9	660	
R-466A	zeotrope	R-32/125/13I1 (49.0/11.5/39.5)	A1	6.2	30,000	99				860	
R-467A	zeotrope	R-32/125/134a/600a (22.0/5.0/72.4/0.6)	A2L	6.7	31,000	110				1,000	
R-468A	zeotrope	R-1132a/32/1234yf (3.5/21.5/75.0)	A2L	4.1	18,000	66				610	
R-469A	zeotrope	R-744/R-32/R-125 (35.0/32.5/32.5)	A1	8	53,000	130				1,600	
R-470A	zeotrope	R-744/32/125/134a/1234ze(E)/227ea (10.0/17.0/19.0/7.0/44.0/3.0)	A1	17	77,000	270				1,100	
R-470B	zeotrope	R-744/32/125/134a/1234ze(E)/227ea (10.0/11.5/11.5/3.0/57.0/7.0)	A1	16	72,000	260				1,100	
R-471A	zeotrope	R-1234ze(E)/227ea/1336mzz(E) (78.7/4.3/17.0)	A1	9.7	31,000	160				710	
R-472A	zeotrope	R-744/32/134a (69.0/12.0/19.0)	A1	4.5	35,000	72				2,700	
R-500~~[e]~~ [d]	azeotrope	R-12/152a (73.8/26.2)	A1	~~7.6~~ 7.4	~~30,000~~ 29,000	120				1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-501~~[d]~~ [c]	azeotrope	R-22/12 (75.0/25.0)	A1	13	54,000	210				1,000	—
R-502~~[e]~~ [d]	azeotrope	R-22/115 (48.8/51.2)	A1	21	73,000	330				1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-503~~[e]~~ [d]	azeotrope	R-23/13 (40.1/59.9)	—	—	—	—				1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-504~~[d]~~ [c]	azeotrope	R-32/115 (48.2/51.8)	—	28	140,000	450				1,000	—
R-507A	azeotrope	R-125/143a (50.0/50.0)	A1	32	130,000	~~520~~ 510				1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-508A	azeotrope	R-23/116 (39.0/61.0)	A1	14	55,000	220				1,000	2-0-0[b]

R-508B	azeotrope	R-23/116 (46.0/54.0)	A1	13	52,000	200				1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-509A	azeotrope	R-22/218 (44.0/56.0)	A1	24	75,000	~~390~~ 380				1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-510A	azeotrope	R-E170/600a (88.0/12.0)	A3	0.87	7,300	14	3.5	29,000	56.1	1,000	—
R-511A	azeotrope	R-290/E170 (95.0/5.0)	A3	0.59	5,300	9.5	2.4	21,000	38.0	1,000	—
R-512A	azeotrope	R-134a/152a (5.0/95.0)	A2	1.9	11,000	31	7.7	45,000	123.9	1,000	—
R-513A	azeotrope	R-1234yf/134a (56.0/44.0)	A1	20	72,000	320				650	—
R-513B	azeotrope	R-1234yf/134a (58.5/41.5)	A1	21	74,000	330				640	—
R-514A	azeotrope	R-1336mzz(S)/1130(E) (74.7/25.3)	B1	0.86	2,400	14				320	—
R-515A	azeotrope	R-1234ze(E)/227ea (88.0/12.0)	A1	19	~~62,000~~ 63,000	300				810	—
R-515B	azeotrope	R-1234ze(E)/227ea (91.1/8.9)	A1	18	61,000	290				810	
R-516A	azeotrope	R-1234yf/134a/152a (77.5/8.5/14.0)	A2	~~7.0~~ 3.2	~~27,000~~ 13,000	~~110~~ 52	13.1	50,000	210.1	590	—

(continued)

TABLE 1103.1—continued
REFRIGERANT CLASSIFICATION, AMOUNT AND OEL

CHEMICAL REFRIGERANT	FORMULA	CHEMICAL NAME OF BLEND	REFRIGERANT SAFETY GROUP CLASSIFICATION	AMOUNT OF REFRIGERANT PER OCCUPIED SPACE							[F] DEGREES OF HAZARD[a]
				RCL			LFL			OEL[d]	
				~~Pounds per 1,000 cubic feet~~ lb/Mcf	ppm	g/m³	lb/Mcf	ppm	g/m³	~~OEL[e]~~ ppm	
R-600	$CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_3$	butane	A3	0.15	1,000	2.4	3.0	20,000	48	1,000	1-4-0
R-600a	$CH(CH_3)_2CH_3$	2-methylpropane (isobutane)	A3	0.59	4,000	~~9.6~~ 9.5	2.4	16,000	38	1,000	2-4-0
R-601	$CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_3$	pentane	A3	0.18	1,000	2.9	2.2	12,000	35	600	—
R-601a	$(CH_3)_2CHCH_2CH_3$	2-methylbutane (isopentane)	A3	0.18	1,000	2.9	2.4	13,000	38	600	—
R-610	$CH_3CH_2OCH_2CH_3$	ethoxyethane (ethyl ether)	—	—	—	—				400	—
R-611	$HCOOCH_3$	methyl formate	B2	—	—	—				100	—
R-718	H_2O	water	A1	—	—	—				—	0-0-0
R-744	CO_2	carbon dioxide	A1	4.5	40,000	72				5,000	2-0-0[b]

R-1130(E)	CHCl=CHCl	trans-1,2-dichloroethene	~~B1~~ B2	0.25	1,000	4	16	65,000	258	200	—
R-1132a	$CF_2=CH_2$	1,1-difluoroethylene	A2	2.0	13,000	33	8.1	50,000	131	500	—
R-1150	$CH_2=CH_2$	ethene (ethylene)	A3	—	—	—	2.2	31,000	36	200	1-4-2
R-1224yd(Z)	$CF_3CF=CHCl$	(Z)-1-chloro-2,3,3,3-tetrafluoroethylene	A1	23	60,000	~~360~~ 370				1,000	—
R-1233zd(E)	$CF_3CH=CHCl$	trans-1-chloro-3,3,3-trifluoro-1-propene	A1	5.3	16,000	85				800	—
R-1234yf	$CF_3CF=CH_2$	2,3,3,3-tetrafluoro-1-propene	~~A2[c]~~ A2L	~~4.7~~ 4.5	16,000	75	18.0	62,000	289	500	—
R-1234ze(E)	~~$CF_3CH=CHF$~~ $CF_3CH=CFH$	trans-1,3,3,3-tetrafluoro-1-propene	~~A2[c]~~ A2L	4.7	16,000	~~75~~ 76	18.8	65,000	303	800	—
R-1270	$CH_3CH=CH_2$	Propene (propylene)	A3	0.1	1,000	1.7				500	1-4-1
R-1336mzz(E)	$CF_3CH=CHCF_3$	trans-1,1,1,4,4,4-hexafluoro-2-butene	A1	3.0	7,200	48				400	
R-1336mzz(Z)	$CF_3CHCHCF_3$	cis-1,1,1,4,4,4-hexaflouro-2-butene	A1	~~5.4~~ 5.2	13,000	~~87~~ 84				500	—

For SI: 1 pound = 0.454 kg, 1 cubic foot = $0.0283m^3$

a. Degrees of hazard are for health, fire, and reactivity, respectively, in accordance with NFPA 704.
b. Reduction to 1-0-0 is allowed if analysis satisfactory to the code official shows that the maximum concentration for a rupture or full loss of refrigerant charge would not exceed the IDLH, considering both the refrigerant quantity and room volume.
~~c. The ASHRAE Standard 34 flammability classification for this refrigerant is 2L, which is a subclass of Class 2.~~
~~d.~~ c. Class I ozone depleting substance; prohibited for new installations.
~~e.~~ d. Occupational Exposure Limit based on the OSHA PEL, ACGIH TLV-TWA, the TERA WEEL or consistent value on a time-weighed average (TWA) basis (unless noted C for ceiling) for an 8 hr/d and 40 hr/wk.

….

1104.3.1 Air conditioning for human comfort. ~~In other than industrial *occupancies* where the quantity in a single independent circuit does not exceed the amount in Table 1103.1, Group B1, B2 and B3 refrigerants shall not be used in high-probability systems for air conditioning for human comfort.~~ ~~High-probability systems~~*High-probability systems* used for human comfort shall use Group A1 or A2L refrigerant.

Exceptions:

1. Equipment listed for and used in residential occupancies containing a maximum of 6.6 pounds (3 kg) of refrigerant.
2. Equipment listed for and used in commercial occupancies containing a maximum of 22 pounds (10 kg) of refrigerant.
3. Industrial occupancies.

1104.3.2 ~~Nonindustrial occupancies~~ Group A2, A3, B2 and B3 refrigerants. ~~Group A2 and B2 refrigerants shall not be used in high-probability systems where the quantity of refrigerant in any independent refrigerant circuit exceeds the amount shown in Table 1104.3.2.~~ Group A2 and B2 refrigerants shall not be used in ~~high-probability systems.~~*high-probability systems.* Group A3 and B3 refrigerants shall not be used except where *approved*.

~~Exception~~Exceptions: This section does not apply to: ~~laboratories where the floor area per occupant is not less than 100 square feet (9.3 m^2).~~

1. Laboratories where the floor area per occupant is not less than 100 square feet (9.3 m^2).
2. Listed self-contained systems having a maximum of 0.331 pounds (150 g) of Group A3 refrigerant.
3. Industrial occupancies.
4. Equipment listed for and used in residential occupancies containing a maximum of 6.6 pounds (3 kg) of Group A2 or B2 refrigerant.
5. Equipment listed for and used in commercial occupancies containing a maximum of 22 pounds (10 kg) of Group A2 or B2 refrigerant.

~~TABLE 1104.3.2~~
~~MAXIMUM PERMISSIBLE QUANTITIES OF REFRIGERANTS~~

~~TYPE OF REFRIGERATION SYSTEM~~	~~MAXIMUM POUNDS FOR VARIOUS OCCUPANCIES~~			
	~~Institutional~~	~~Public assembly~~	~~Residential~~	~~All other occupancies~~
~~Sealed absorption system~~				
~~— In exit access~~	~~0~~	~~0~~	~~3.3~~	~~3.3~~
~~— In adjacent outdoor locations~~	~~0~~	~~0~~	~~22~~	~~22~~
~~— In other than exit access~~	~~0~~	~~6.6~~	~~6.6~~	~~6.6~~
~~Unit systems~~				
~~— In other than exit access~~	~~0~~	~~0~~	~~6.6~~	~~6.6~~

~~For SI: 1 pound = 0.454 kg.~~

….

1106.3 ~~Flammable~~ Class 2 and 3 refrigerants. Where refrigerants of Groups A2, A3, B2 and B3 are used, the *machinery room* shall conform to the Class I, Division 2, *hazardous location* classification requirements of NFPA 70.

~~**Exception:** *Machinery rooms* for systems containing Group A2L *refrigerants* that are provided with ventilation in accordance with Section 1106.4.~~

~~**1106.4 Special requirements for Group A2L refrigerant machinery rooms.** *Machinery rooms* with systems containing Group A2L *refrigerants* that do not conform to the Class I, Division 2, hazardous location electrical requirements of NFPA 70, as permitted by the exception to Section 1106.3, shall comply with Sections 1106.4.1 through 1106.4.3.~~

~~**Exception:** *Machinery rooms* conforming to the Class I, Division 2, hazardous location classification requirements of NFPA 70 are not required to comply with Sections 1106.4.1 and 1106.4.2.~~

1106.4 Group A2L and B2L refrigerant. *Machinery rooms* for Group A2L and B2L refrigerant shall comply with Sections 1106.4.1 through Section 1106.4.3.

~~**[F] 1106.4.1 Ventilation system activation.** Ventilation shall be activated by the refrigerant detection system in the *machinery room*. Refrigerant detection systems shall be in accordance with Section 608.9 of the *International Fire Code* and all of the following:~~

1. ~~The detectors shall activate at or below a refrigerant concentration of 25 percent of the LFL.~~
2. ~~Upon activation, the detection system shall activate the emergency ventilation system required by Section 1106.4.2.~~
3. ~~The detection, signaling and control circuits shall be supervised.~~

1106.4.1 Elevated temperatures. Open flame-producing devices or continuously operating hot surfaces over 1290°F (700°C) shall not be permanently installed in the room.

~~**1106.4.2 Emergency ventilation system.** An emergency ventilation system shall be provided at the minimum exhaust rate specified in ASHRAE 15 or Table 1106.4.2. Shutdown of the emergency ventilation system shall be by manual means.~~

1106.4.2 Refrigerant detector. In addition to the requirements of Section 1105.3, refrigerant detectors shall signal an alarm and activate the ventilation system in accordance with the response time specified in Table 1106.4.2.

~~TABLE 1106.4.2~~
~~MINIMUM EXHAUST RATES~~

~~REFRIGERANT~~	~~Q(m/sec)~~	~~Q(cfm)~~
~~R32~~	~~15.4~~	~~32,600~~
~~R143~~	~~13.6~~	~~28,700~~
~~R444A~~	~~6.46~~	~~13,700~~
~~R444B~~	~~10.6~~	~~22,400~~
~~R445A~~	~~7.83~~	~~16,600~~
~~R446A~~	~~23.9~~	~~50,700~~
~~R447A~~	~~23.8~~	~~50,400~~

~~R451A~~	~~7.04~~	~~15,000~~
~~R451B~~	~~7.05~~	~~15,000~~
~~R1234yf~~	~~7.80~~	~~16,600~~
~~R1234ze(E)~~	~~5.92~~	~~12,600~~

TABLE 1106.4.2 GROUP A2L and B2L DETECTOR ACTIVATION

Activation Level	Maximum Response Time (seconds)	ASHRAE 15 Ventilation Level	Alarm Reset	Alarm Type
Less than or equal to the OEL in Table 1103.1	**300**	**1**	**Automatic**	**Trouble**
Less than or equal to the refrigerant concentration level in Table 1103.1	**15**	**2**	**Manual**	**Emergency**

~~**1106.4.3 Emergency ventilation system discharge.** The emergency ventilation system point of discharge to the atmosphere shall be located outside of the structure at not less than 15 feet (4572 mm) above the adjoining grade level and not less than 20 feet (6096 mm) from any window, *ventilation* opening or *exit*.~~

1106.4.3 Mechanical ventilation. The *machinery room* shall have a mechanical ventilation system complying with ASHRAE 15.

….

TABLE 1107.4
REFRIGERANT PIPE

PIPING MATERIAL	STANDARD
Aluminum tube	ASTM B210/ASTM B210M, ASTM B491/B491M
Brass (copper alloy) pipe	ASTM B43
Copper linesets	ASTM B280, ASTM B1003
Copper pipe	ASTM B42, ASTM B302
Copper tube[a]	ASTM B68, ASTM B75, ASTM B88, ASTM B280, ASTM B819
Steel pipe[b]	ASTM A53, ASTM A106, ASTM A333
Steel tube	ASTM A254, ASTM A334

a. Soft annealed copper tubing larger than $1^3/_8$ inch (35 mm) O.D. shall not be used for field-assembled refrigerant piping unless it is protected from mechanical damage.

b. ASTM A53, Type F steel pipe shall ~~not be used for refrigerant lines having an operating temperature less than -20°F (-29°C).~~ only be permitted for discharge lines in pressure relief systems.

….

TABLE 1107.5
REFRIGERANT PIPE FITTINGS

FITTING MATERIAL	STANDARD
Aluminum	ASTM B361
~~Brass (copper alloy)~~	~~ASME B16.15, ASME B16.24~~

Copper <u>and Copper Alloy (Brass)</u>	ASME B16.15, ASME B16.18, ASME B16.22, ASME B16.24, ASME B16.26, ASME B16.50
Steel	ASTM A105, ASTM A181, ASTM A193, ASTM A234, ASTM A420, ASTM A707

….

1107.7 Flexible connectors, expansion and vibration compensators. Flexible connectors and expansion and vibration control devices shall be *listed* and *labeled* for use in refrigerant systems <u>and pressures for which the components are installed</u>.

….

1109.2.2 Refrigerant pipe enclosure. Refrigerant piping shall be protected by locating it within the building elements or within protective enclosures.

Exception: Piping protection within the building elements or protective enclosure shall not be required in any of the following locations:

1. Where installed without ready access or located more than 7 feet 3 inches (2210 mm) above the finished floor.
2. Where located within 6 feet (1829 mm) of the refrigerant unit or *appliance*.
3. Where located in a *machinery room* complying with Section 1105.
4. <u>Outside the building:</u>
   - <u>4.1 Protected from damage from the weather, including, but not limited to, hail, ice, and snow loads and</u>
   - <u>4.2 Protected from damage within the expected foot or traffic path or</u>
   - <u>4.3 Outside, underground, installed not less than 8 inches (200 mm) below finished grade and protected against corrosion.</u>

1109.2.3 Prohibited locations. Refrigerant piping shall not be installed in any of the following locations:

1. Exposed within a fire-resistance-rated exit access corridor.
2. <u>Exposed within</u>~~Within~~ an interior exit stairway.
3. Within an interior exit ramp.
4. Within an exit passageway.
5. Within an elevator, dumbwaiter or other shaft containing a moving object.

….

1109.2.6 Exposed piping surface temperature. Exposed piping with ready access <u>to nonauthorized personnel</u> having surface temperatures greater than 120°F (49°C) or less than 5°F (-15°C) shall be protected from contact or shall have thermal insulation that limits the exposed insulation surface temperature to a range of 5°F (-15°C) to 120°F (49°C).

1109.2.7 Pipe identification. Refrigerant pipe located in areas other than the room or space where the refrigerating *equipment* is located shall be identified. The pipe identification shall be located at intervals not exceeding 20 feet (6096 mm) on the refrigerant piping or pipe insulation. The minimum height of lettering of the identification label shall be $^1/_2$ inch (12.7 mm). The identification shall indicate the refrigerant designation and safety group classification of refrigerant used in the piping system. <u>For Group A2L and B2L refrigerants, the identification shall also include the following statement: "WARNING – Risk of Fire. Flammable Refrigerant."</u> For Group A2, A3, B2 and B3 refrigerants, the identification shall also include the following statement: "DANGER—Risk of Fire or Explosion. Flammable Refrigerant." For any Group B refrigerant, the identification shall also include the following statement: "DANGER—Toxic Refrigerant."

1109.3 Installation requirements for Group A2L<u>, A2, A3,</u> ~~or~~ B2L<u>, B2, or B3</u> refrigerant. Piping systems using Group A2L<u>, A2, A3</u> ~~or~~ B2L<u>, B2, or B3</u> refrigerant shall comply with the requirements of Sections 1109.3.1 and 1109.3.2.

1109.3.1 Pipe protection. In addition to the requirements of Section 305.5, aluminum, copper and steel tube used for Group A2L<u>, A2, A3,</u> ~~and~~ B2L<u>, B2, and B3</u> refrigerants and located in concealed locations where tubing is installed in studs, joists, rafters or similar member spaces, and located less than $1^1/_2$ inches (38 mm) from the nearest edge of the member, shall be continuously protected by shield plates. Protective steel shield plates having a minimum thickness of 0.0575 inch (1.46 mm) (No. 16 gage) shall cover the area of the tube plus the area extending not less than 2 inches (51 mm) beyond both sides of the tube.

1109.3.2 Shaft ventilation. Refrigerant pipe shafts with systems using Group A2L or B2L refrigerant shall be naturally or mechanically ventilated. Refrigerant pipe shafts with one or more systems using any Group A2, A3, B2, or B3 refrigerant shall be continuously mechanically ventilated and shall include a refrigerant detector. The shaft ventilation exhaust outlet shall comply with Section 501.3.1. Naturally ventilated shafts shall have a pipe, duct or conduit not less than 4 inches (102 mm) in diameter that connects to the lowest point of the shaft and extends to the outdoors. The pipe, duct or conduit shall be level or pitched downward to the outdoors. Mechanically ventilated shafts shall have a minimum airflow velocity in accordance with Table 1109.3.2. The mechanical ventilation shall be continuously operated or activated by a refrigerant detector. Systems utilizing a refrigerant detector shall activate the mechanical ventilation at a maximum refrigerant concentration of 25 percent of the lower flammable limit of the refrigerant. The detector, or a sampling tube that draws air to the detector, shall be located in an area where refrigerant from a leak will concentrate. The shaft shall not be required to be ventilated for double-wall refrigerant pipe where the interstitial space of the double-wall pipe is vented to the outdoors.

….

~~**1109.4 Installation requirements for Group A2, A3, B2 or B3 refrigerant.** Piping systems using Group A2, A3, B2 or B3 refrigerant shall comply with the requirements of Sections 1109.4.1 and 1109.4.2.~~

~~**1109.4.1 Piping material.** Piping material for Group A2, A3, B2 or B3 refrigerant located inside the building, except for *machinery rooms*, shall be copper pipe, brass pipe or steel pipe. Pipe joints located in areas other than the *machinery room* shall be welded. Self-contained *listed* and *labeled equipment* or *appliances* shall have piping material based on the listing requirements.~~

~~**1109.4.2 Shaft ventilation.** Refrigerant pipe shafts with systems using Group A2, A3, B2 or B3 refrigerant shall be continuously mechanically ventilated. The shaft ventilation exhaust outlet shall comply with Section 501.3.1. Mechanically ventilated shafts shall have a minimum airflow velocity as specified in Table 1109.3.2. The shaft shall not be required to be ventilated for double-wall refrigerant pipe where the interstitial space of the double-wall pipe is vented to the outdoors.~~

~~1109.5~~1109.4 Refrigerant pipe penetrations. The annular space between the outside of a refrigerant pipe and the inside of a pipe sleeve or opening in a building envelope wall, floor or ceiling assembly penetrated by a refrigerant pipe shall be sealed in an manner with caulking material or foam sealant or closed with a gasketing system. The caulking material, foam sealant or gasketing system shall be designed for the conditions at the penetration location and shall be compatible with the pipe, sleeve and building materials in contact with the sealing materials. Refrigerant pipes penetrating fire-resistance-rated assemblies or membranes of fire-resistance-rated assemblies shall be sealed or closed in accordance with Section 714 of the *International Building Code*.

~~1109.6~~1109.5 Stress and strain. Refrigerant piping shall be installed so as to prevent strains and stresses that exceed the structural strength of the pipe. Where necessary, provisions shall be made to protect piping from damage resulting from vibration, expansion, contraction and structural settlement.

~~**1109.7 Condensate control.** Refrigerating piping and fittings that, during normal operation, will reach a surface temperature below the dew point of the surrounding air, and are located in spaces or areas where condensation has the potential to cause a safety hazard to the building occupants, structure, electrical *equipment* or any other *equipment* or *appliances*, shall be insulated or protected in an *approved* manner to prevent damage from condensation.~~

~~1109.8~~1109.6 Stop valves. Stop valves shall be installed in specified locations in accordance with Sections ~~1109.8.1~~1109.6.1 and ~~1109.8.2~~1109.6.2. Stop valves shall be supported in accordance with Section ~~1109.8.3~~1109.6.3 and identified in accordance with Section ~~1109.8.4~~1109.6.4.

Exceptions:

1. Systems that have a refrigerant pumpout function capable of storing the entire refrigerant charge in a receiver or heat exchanger.
2. Systems that are equipped with provisions for pumping out the refrigerant using either portable or permanently installed refrigerant recovery *equipment*.
3. Self-contained *listed* and *labeled* systems.

~~1109.8.1~~1109.6.1 **Refrigerating systems containing more than 6.6 pounds (3.0 kg) of refrigerant.** Stop valves shall be installed in the following locations on refrigerating systems containing more than 6.6 pounds (3.0 kg) of refrigerant:

1. The suction inlet of each compressor, compressor unit or condensing unit.
2. The discharge outlet of each compressor, compressor unit or condensing unit.
3. The outlet of each liquid receiver.

~~1109.8.2~~1109.6.2 Refrigerating systems containing more than 100 pounds (45 kg) of refrigerant. In addition to stop valves required by Section ~~1109.8.1~~1109.6.1, systems containing more than 100 pounds (45 kg) of refrigerant shall have stop valves installed in the following locations:

1. Each inlet of each liquid receiver.
2. Each inlet and each outlet of each condenser where more than one condenser is used in parallel.

Exceptions:

1. Stop valves shall not be required at the inlet of a receiver in a condensing unit nor at the inlet of a receiver that is an integral part of the condenser.
2. Systems utilizing nonpositive displacement compressors.

~~1109.8.3~~1109.6.3 Stop valve support. Stop valves shall be supported to prevent detrimental stress and strain on the refrigerant piping system. The piping system shall not be utilized to support stop valves on copper tubing or aluminum tubing 1 inch (25.4 mm) outside diameter or larger.

~~1109.8.4~~1109.6.4 Identification. Stop valves shall be identified where their intended purpose is not obvious. Where valves are identified by a numbering or lettering system, legend(s) or key(s) for the valve identification shall be located in the room containing the indoor refrigeration *equipment*. The minimum height of lettering of the identification label shall be $^1/_2$ inch (12.7 mm).

~~1109.9~~1109.7 Pipe Supports. Pipe supports shall be in accordance with Section 305.

….

1110.3 Test gases. The medium used for pressure testing the refrigerant system shall be one of the following inert gases: oxygen-free nitrogen, helium~~,~~ ~~or~~ argon or premixed nonflammable oxygen-free nitrogen with a tracer gas of hydrogen or helium. For R-744 refrigerant systems, carbon dioxide shall be allowed as the test medium. For R-718 refrigerant systems, water shall be allowed as the test medium. ~~Oxygen, air, combustible gases and mixtures containing such gases shall not be used as a test medium. Systems erected on the premises with tubing not exceeding $^5/_8$ inch (15.9 mm) outside diameter shall be allowed to use the refrigerant identified on the nameplate label or marking as the test medium.~~

1110.3.1 Test gases not permitted. Oxygen, air, refrigerants other than those identified in Section 1110.3, combustible gases and mixtures containing such gases shall not be used as the pressure test medium.

….

1110.5 Piping system strength test ~~pressure test and leak test~~. Refrigerating system components and refrigerant piping shall be tested in accordance with ASME B31.5 or this section. Separate tests for isolated portions of the system are permitted provided that all required portions are tested at least once. Pressurize with test gas for a minimum of 10 minutes to not less than the lower of (a) the lowest design pressure for any system component, or (b) the lowest value of set pressure for any pressure relief devices in the system. The design pressures for determination of test pressure shall be the pressure identified on the label nameplate of the condensing unit, compressor, compressor unit, pressure vessel, or other system component with a nameplate. A passing test result shall have no rupture or structural failure of any system component or refrigerant piping. Refrigerant piping and tubing greater than ¾ inch (19 mm) in diameter shall be tested in accordance with ASHRAE 15. ~~The refrigerant piping system shall be tested as a whole or separate tests shall be conducted for the low-pressure side and high-pressure side of the piping system. The refrigerant piping system shall be tested in accordance with both of the following methods:~~

1. ~~The system shall be pressurized for a period of not less than 60 minutes to not less than the lower of the design pressures or the setting of the pressure relief device(s). The design pressures for testing shall be the pressure *listed* on the label nameplate of the condensing unit, compressor, compressor unit, pressure vessel or other system component with a nameplate. Additional test gas shall not be added to the system after the start of the pressure test. The system shall not show loss of pressure on the test pressure measuring device during the pressure test. Where using refrigerant as a test medium in accordance with Section 1110.3, the test pressure shall be not less than the saturation dew point pressure at 77°F (25°C).~~
2. ~~A vacuum of 500 microns shall be achieved. After achieving a vacuum, the system shall be isolated from the vacuum pump. The system pressure shall not rise above 1,500 microns for a period of not less than 10 minutes.~~

~~**1110.5.1 Joints and refrigerant-containing parts in air ducts.** Joints and all refrigerant-containing parts of a refrigerating system located in an air duct of an air-conditioning system that conveys conditioned air to and from human-occupied spaces shall be tested at a pressure of 150 percent of the higher of the design pressure or pressure relief device setting.~~

~~**1110.5.2 Limited charge systems.** Limited charge systems with a pressure relief device, erected on the premises, shall be tested at a pressure not less than one and one-half times the pressure setting of the relief device. *Listed* and *labeled* limited charge systems shall be tested at the *equipment* or *appliance* design pressure.~~

~~**1110.6 Booster compressor.** Where a compressor protected by a pressure relief device is used as a booster to obtain an intermediate pressure, and such compressor discharges into the suction side of another compressor, the booster compressor shall be considered to be a part of the low-pressure side of the system.~~

~~**1110.7 Centrifugal/nonpositive displacement compressors.** Where testing systems using centrifugal or other nonpositive displacement compressors, the entire system shall be considered to be the low-pressure side for test purposes.~~

~~1110.8~~1110.6 Contractor or engineer declaration. The installing contractor or *registered design professional* of record shall issue a certificate of test to the code official for all systems containing 55 pounds (25 kg) or more of refrigerant. The certificate shall give the test date, name of the refrigerant, test medium and the field test pressure applied to the high-pressure side and the low-pressure side of the system. The certification of test shall be signed by the installing contractor or *registered design professional* and shall be made part of the public record.

….

CHAPTER 15

REFERENCED STANDARDS

….

ASHRAE

ASHRAE
1791 Tullie Circle NE
Atlanta, GA 30329

15— ~~2019~~2022

Safety Standard for Refrigeration Systems
1101.1.1, Table 1106.4.2, 1106.4.3, 1110.5

34— ~~2019~~2022

Designation and Safety Classification of Refrigerants
1102.2.1, 1103.1~~, Table 1103.1~~

….

ASTM

ASTM International
100 Barr Harbor Drive, P.O. Box C700
West Conshohocken, PA 19428

….

A333-18

Standard Specification for Seamless and Welded Steel Pipe for Low-Temperature Service and other Applications with required Notch Toughness
Table 1107.4

….

UL

UL LLC
333 Pfingsten Road
Northbrook, IL 60062-2096

SUBMISSION FOR PERMANENT RULE

….

UL/CSA 60335-2-40—~~2019~~2022

Household and Similar Electrical Appliances—Safety—Part 2-40: Particular Requirements for Electrical Heat Pumps, Air-Conditioners and Dehumidifiers – 3rd Edition

908.1, 916.1, 918.1, 918.2, Table 1101.2, 1101.2.1

UL/CSA 60335-2-89—~~17~~2021

Household and Similar Electrical Appliances—Safety—Part 2-89: Particular Requirements for Commercial Refrigerating Appliances with an Incorporated or Remote Refrigerant Unit or Compressor

Table 1101.2, 1101.2.1

Burgos, Alexander N

Subject: FW: 2024 NC Mechanical Code Requests for Changes
Attachments: 2024-0418 DBR Responses 04.2024 - BCC - NC Mechanical Code - Request for Changes - BL responses.docx

From: Liebman, Brian R <brian.liebman@oah.nc.gov>
Sent: Thursday, April 18, 2024 3:57 PM
To: Rittlinger, David B <david.rittlinger@ncdoi.gov>
Cc: Childs, Nathan D <nchilds@NCDOJ.GOV>; Burgos, Alexander N <alexander.burgos@oah.nc.gov>; Holder, Karen <Karen.Holder@ncdoi.gov>
Subject: RE: 2024 NC Mechanical Code Requests for Changes

Back to you.

Thanks,
Brian

Brian Liebman
Counsel to the North Carolina Rules Review Commission
Office of Administrative Hearings
(984)236-1948
brian.liebman@oah.nc.gov

<u>REQUEST FOR CHANGES PURSUANT TO G.S. 150B-21.10</u>

AGENCY: North Carolina Building Code Council

RULE CITATION: 2024 North Carolina Mechanical Code, All Provisions

DEADLINE FOR RECEIPT: TBD

<u>PLEASE NOTE:</u> This request may extend to several pages. Please be sure you have reached the end of the document.

The Rules Review Commission staff has completed its review of this Rule prior to the Commission's next meeting. The Commission has not yet reviewed this Rule and therefore there has not been a determination as to whether the Rule will be approved. You may email the reviewing attorney to inquire concerning the staff recommendation.

In reviewing this Rule, the staff recommends the following changes be made:

In their comment in opposition to the NC Energy Conservation Code, the NC Homebuilders Association encloses an email exchange between their director of Codes and Construction, Cliff Isaac, and staff at the Building Code Council regarding the Council's failure to incorporate a statutory exemption into the NC Energy Conservation Code.

In the final email of the exchange, Building Code Council member Kim Wooten states:

> ***[t]here are many examples of building codes and state statutes not in agreement**. The NCBCC adopts codes for the general welfare of the public per statute. The General Assembly may make laws that contradict codes and may affect the general welfare of NC citizens, but that effort is independent of the NCBCC (emphasis added).*

In light of this statement, please disclose any and all provisions of the 2024 NC Mechanical Code that the Council is aware are "not in agreement" with the laws of the State of North Carolina.

NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: The 2024 NC Mechanical Code was adopted pursuant to North Carolina General Statutes Chapter 143, Article 9 by the North Carolina Building Code Council in agreement with the laws of the State of North Carolina. No changes were made per this comment and response.

Thanks for the reply, but I'm not sure this is entirely responsive to my question. Are there any particular provisions within the Mechanical Code that the BCC is aware are outside the authority provided to the BCC by the NC General Statutes?

NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: The NCBCC is not aware of any particular provision within the 2024 NC Mechanical Code that is outside the authority provided to the NCBC by the North Carolina General Statutes. No changes were made per this comment and response.

I noticed various sections that contain similar, if not identical requirements as in the Fuel Gas Code for items such as dryer vents, carbon monoxide detection, saunas, and

pollution control units. They looked similar, if not identical to me, but I can't be sure. Please confirm if they are identical. Also, why is it necessary to repeat these requirements here? Would a cross reference to the Fuel Gas Code not be sufficient?

NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: Dryer vents, carbon monoxide detectors and alarms, saunas and pollution control units code language appear in both the 2024 NC Mechanical Code and the 2024 NC Fuel Gas Code as the energy source can be either electric or fuel gas. Having this content in both codes is practical for the user depending on the fuel source. No changes were made per this comment and response.

Outside of any appropriate changes regarding fuel source, are the requirements identical? If there are differences between the codes, that could be the source of significant ambiguity.

NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: The dryer vent and sauna code language in the 2024 NC Mechanical Code is specific to electric dryers and saunas. The dryer vent and sauna code language in the 2024 NC Fuel Gas Code is specific to gas-fired dryers and saunas. Electric dryers and saunas and gas-fired dryers and saunas have some differences specific to fuel source and overall dryer and sauna product availability from the marketplace. The carbon monoxide detectors and alarms requirements are identical between the 2024 NC Mechanical Code and the 2024 NC Fuel Gas Code. The pollution control unit requirements in Chapter 5 of the 2024 NC Mechanical Code are specific to commercial kitchen exhaust systems for buildings regardless of fuel source. There are no pollution control unit requirements in the 2024 NC Fuel Gas Code. Pollution control unit requirements covered by federal laws are not included in NC Building Codes. No changes were made per this comment and response.

Please retype the rule accordingly and resubmit it to our office at 1711 New Hope Church Road, Raleigh, North Carolina 27609.

Brian Liebman
Commission Counsel
Date submitted to agency: April 14, 2024

REQUEST FOR CHANGES PURSUANT TO G.S. 150B-21.10

AGENCY: North Carolina Building Code Council

RULE CITATION: 2024 North Carolina Mechanical Code, Ch. 1

DEADLINE FOR RECEIPT: TBD

***PLEASE NOTE:* This request may extend to several pages. Please be sure you have reached the end of the document.**

The Rules Review Commission staff has completed its review of this Rule prior to the Commission's next meeting. The Commission has not yet reviewed this Rule and therefore there has not been a determination as to whether the Rule will be approved. You may email the reviewing attorney to inquire concerning the staff recommendation.

In reviewing this Rule, the staff recommends the following changes be made:

Generally to the Chapter, I noticed that Ch. 5 contains requirements for clothes dryer vents in the same way that the Fuel Gas Code does. They looked similar, if not identical to me, but I can't be sure. Please confirm if they are identical. Also, why is it necessary to repeat the requirements here? Would a cross reference to the Fuel Gas Code not be sufficient?

NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: Dryer vents code language appears in both the 2024 NC Mechanical Code and the 2024 NC Fuel Gas Code as the energy source can be either electric or fuel gas for dryers. Having this content in both codes is practical for the user depending on the fuel source of the dryer. No changes were made per this comment and response.

In 102.3, what happens if it cannot be determined what edition of the code a device or safeguard was installed under?

NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: This sentence is added: "In working with the owner or the owner's authorized agent, the code official has the authority to determine what is reasonable to satisfy the intent of the code when the edition of the code is not known."

In 102.3, how does a reinspection establish whether the owner or owner's agent is responsible for the maintenance of the plumbing system? I don't have a problem with requiring an owner or his agent to be responsible for maintenance, but I don't understand how the reinspection "determine[s] compliance with this provision."

NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: The second sentence is revised as follows: "To determine whether maintenance required under this Code has been performed, the code official shall have the authority to require a mechanical system to be reinspected."

In 102.4, second paragraph, define "minor".

NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: The sentence is changed as follows: "In the discretion of the code official, minor additions, alterations, renovations and repairs to existing mechanical systems shall meet the provisions for new construction, unless such work is done in the same manner and arrangement as was in the existing system, is not hazardous to the public health, safety, or welfare and is approved."

In 102.4, second paragraph, define "hazardous".

NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: The sentence is changed as follows: "In the discretion of the code official, minor additions, alterations, renovations and repairs to existing mechanical systems shall meet the provisions for new construction, unless such work is done in the same manner and arrangement as was in the existing system, is not hazardous to the public health, safety, or welfare and is approved."

In 102.9, this suggests that the code official has the authority to essentially make up new requirements that he considers "necessary for the strength, stability, or proper operation of an existing or proposed plumbing system". Is there statutory authority for this?

NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: The sentence is changed as follows: "Requirements necessary for the strength, stability or proper operation of an existing or proposed mechanical system, or for the public safety, health and general welfare covered by this code shall be determined by the code official."

Please retype the rule accordingly and resubmit it to our office at 1711 New Hope Church Road, Raleigh, North Carolina 27609.

Brian Liebman
Commission Counsel
Date submitted to agency: April 14, 2024

REQUEST FOR CHANGES PURSUANT TO G.S. 150B-21.10

AGENCY: North Carolina Building Code Council

RULE CITATION: 2024 North Carolina Mechanical Code, Ch. 2

DEADLINE FOR RECEIPT: TBD

***PLEASE NOTE:* This request may extend to several pages. Please be sure you have reached the end of the document.**

The Rules Review Commission staff has completed its review of this Rule prior to the Commission's next meeting. The Commission has not yet reviewed this Rule and therefore there has not been a determination as to whether the Rule will be approved. You may email the reviewing attorney to inquire concerning the staff recommendation.

In reviewing this Rule, the staff recommends the following changes be made:

> *In the definition of "Food-Grade Fluid", it limits the additives to anything contained in 21 CFR Parts 174-186. I checked, and noticed that other adjacent parts of the CFR appeared to discuss food additives, so I wanted to make sure those weren't omitted unintentionally. See also Section 1403.3.*
>
> *NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: Parts 174 through 186 are required to be followed to maintain water quality for heat exchanger use in solar thermal systems, not just 174 and 186. The definition and Section 1403.3 are revised accordingly to include the range of applicable parts.*
>
> *Yes, I understood that it was not just 174 and 186, but the range between them. I was referring to the Parts before and after the range, such as Parts 170, 171, and 172 which also refer to food additives.*
>
> *NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: Parts 174 through 186 are the only applicable provisions necessary to demonstrate code-compliant water quality for heat exchangers used in solar thermal systems. No changes were made per this comment and response.*

Please retype the rule accordingly and resubmit it to our office at 1711 New Hope Church Road, Raleigh, North Carolina 27609.

Brian Liebman
Commission Counsel
Date submitted to agency: April 14, 2024

REQUEST FOR CHANGES PURSUANT TO G.S. 150B-21.10

AGENCY: North Carolina Building Code Council

RULE CITATION: 2024 North Carolina Mechanical Code, Ch. 3

DEADLINE FOR RECEIPT: TBD

PLEASE NOTE: ***This request may extend to several pages. Please be sure you have reached the end of the document.***

The Rules Review Commission staff has completed its review of this Rule prior to the Commission's next meeting. The Commission has not yet reviewed this Rule and therefore there has not been a determination as to whether the Rule will be approved. You may email the reviewing attorney to inquire concerning the staff recommendation.

In reviewing this Rule, the staff recommends the following changes be made:

In 301.17, should "rodentproofing" be two words?

NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: "Rodentproofing" has been used as a single word in the lexicon of the NC Building Codes for many years. Rodentproofing appears as a single word in the recently approved 2024 NC Plumbing Code. No changes were made per this comment and response as the edits required do not change the use of the word in applications of the NC Building Codes.

In 304.3, the first sentence refers to "hazardous locations and public garages, private garages, repair garages, automotive motor fuel-dispensing facilities and parking garages . . . ." First, is there a reason for the conjunction between "hazardous locations" and "public garages"? Second, is there a distinction between the more specific types of garage listed and "parking garages"? I notice this language is also in 304.5.

NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: Elevation of ignition sources in public garages, private garages, repair garages, automotive fuel-dispensing facilities and parking garages is required because of they are consider hazardous locations in the application of this section. These types of hazardous locations typically have heavier-than-air flammable and combustible liquids and associated vapors stored within 18 inches of the floor, hence the requirement to elevate ignition sources in the hazardous locations listed. The garage types listed are tied to occupancy classifications in the 2024 NC Building Code. No changes were made per this comment and response.

OK, so is this a grammatical issue then? Because the way the sentence is written, it's a little unclear why it says "hazardous locations <u>and</u>" and then lists a bunch of specific places. Would it change the meaning to delete the "and", add a comma, and make that a list? i.e. "…located in hazardous ~~locations~~ ~~and~~<u>locations,</u> public garages, private garages…"

NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: Hazardous locations can be spaces other than those listed. If someone stores heavier-than-air flammable and combustible liquids in any space within a building, it can be considered a hazardous location and thus require the appliance to be elevated 18 inches above the floor. No changes were made per this comment and response.

That was my thought. It isn't likely to be misread, in my opinion, but someone could use the conjunction there to argue that this provision only applies to a hazardous *location that is also one of the specific places listed. It's grammatically correct, and apparently also inclusive of your intent to say "hazardous locations, public garages, private garages…" in a list, rather than using a conjunction to set it off.*

Also, to confirm, there are differences, explained in the Building Code, between the different kinds of garages listed here? Could you point me to where those are defined in the Building Code?
NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: See excerpts below from the 2024 NC Building Code.

[BG] PRIVATE GARAGE. A building or portion of a building in which motor vehicles used by the *owner* or tenants of the building or buildings on the premises are stored or kept, without provisions for repairing or servicing such vehicles for profit.

[BG] OPEN PARKING GARAGE. A structure or portion of a structure with the openings as described in Section 406.5.2 on two or more sides that is used for the parking or storage of private motor vehicles as described in Section 406.5.3.

[BG] MECHANICAL-ACCESS ENCLOSED PARKING GARAGE. An enclosed parking garage that employs parking machines, lifts, elevators or other mechanical devices for vehicle moving from and to street level and in which public occupancy in the garage is prohibited in all areas except the vehicle access bay.

[BG] MECHANICAL-ACCESS OPEN PARKING GARAGES. *Open parking garages* employing parking machines, lifts, elevators or other mechanical devices for vehicles moving from and to street level and in which public occupancy is prohibited above the street level.

[BG] RAMP-ACCESS OPEN PARKING GARAGES. *Open parking garages* employing a series of continuously rising floors or a series of interconnecting ramps between floors permitting the movement of vehicles under their own power from and to the street level.

[BG] REPAIR GARAGE. A building, structure or portion thereof used for servicing or repairing motor vehicles.

There many types of public parking garages based an assortment of open and enclosed configurations and access options. No changes were made per this comment and response.
I think based on this, the term "public garage" is unclear. I think it's clearer to just use the terms from the Building Code that you've cited above.

In 304.3.1, there's an exception in the main rule ("except that a single door is permitted…") that should be moved to the list of exceptions below.
NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: Edited accordingly.
In 307.2.1.1, the Code states that condensate drains shall not directly connect to "any plumbing drain, waste or vent pipe" but then goes on to allow such drains to discharge into a floor sink, floor drain, trench drain, mop sink, hub drain, standpipe, utility sink, or laundry sink. Is this requiring an air gap in the condensate discharge (i.e. "shall not directly connect") or is there some ambiguity created by "any plumbing drain" and the approved list of drains in the next sentence?
NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: Added a sentence after the second sentence to read as follows: "An air gap or air break shall be provided".

Please retype the rule accordingly and resubmit it to our office at 1711 New Hope Church Road, Raleigh, North Carolina 27609.

Brian Liebman
Commission Counsel
Date submitted to agency: April 14, 2024

REQUEST FOR CHANGES PURSUANT TO G.S. 150B-21.10

AGENCY: North Carolina Building Code Council

RULE CITATION: 2024 North Carolina Mechanical Code, Ch. 5

DEADLINE FOR RECEIPT: TBD

PLEASE NOTE: ***This request may extend to several pages. Please be sure you have reached the end of the document.***

The Rules Review Commission staff has completed its review of this Rule prior to the Commission's next meeting. The Commission has not yet reviewed this Rule and therefore there has not been a determination as to whether the Rule will be approved. You may email the reviewing attorney to inquire concerning the staff recommendation.

In reviewing this Rule, the staff recommends the following changes be made:

In 502.4, does "the general requirements of this chapter" refer to 502.1? Or something greater than that? Please specify.

NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: The 2024 NC Fire Code has additional installation and specific ventilation requirements in addition to the general ventilation requirements of Chapter 5 of the 2024 NC Mechanical Code. The reference is provided for convenience to the user of the code as the mechanical and fire code requirements work together to provide a code-compliant stationary storage battery system installation. No changes were made per this comment and response.

OK, but that doesn't answer my question. What are the "general requirements" of Chapter 5? Do you mean simply that stationary battery systems have to comply with all of Chapter 5 and *Section 1207.6.1 of the Fire Code? Or does "general requirements" mean something more specific, i.e. the provision in Chapter 5 labeled "General"?*

NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: The general requirements may be specific to Section 501 but depending on the location of the stationary storage battery systems, other portions of Chapter 5 may be applicable. It is best to not reference just Section 501 as that may exclude applicable code provisions. No changes were made per this comment and response.

Well, in that case, I think saying "general requirements" is a bit unclear. If you just want your regulated public to comply with the rest of Chapter 5, either say explicitly what provisions apply or say "Chapter 5" but don't say "general requirements" when you have a provision labeled "general".

In 504.9, what is a "domestic clothes dryer"? (Please note that I probably did not ask this for the Fuel Gas Code, so if this language is there as well, please make any changes that come from this request to the Fuel Gas Code.)

NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: Domestic clothes dryers are listed and labeled by the manufacturer for use in family living type environments. The exhaust requirements for commercial clothes dryer are per the manufacturer's installation instructions as noted in Section 504.10. Domestic clothes dryers do not generate the heat that commercial clothes dryers generate hence they have separate and less stringent exhaust requirements as noted in Section 504.9. No changes were made per this comment and response.

In 505.1, what is "domestic cooking exhaust"? For both this and the previous request, I'm assuming that "domestic" means residential, and applies to residential dwelling units in apartments and other residential buildings not covered by the Residential Code. Is that correct?
NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: Domestic cooking exhaust equipment and appliances are listed and labeled by the manufacturer for use in dwelling units, break rooms and other sorts of commercial spaces where domestic cooking can occur. In these applications the cooking is limited to the types of cooking typically performed in a home environment. Commercial cooking is handled separately with more stringent requirements covered elsewhere in Chapter 5 of the 2024 NC Mechanical Code. No changes were made per this comment and response.

In 505.3, is there a specific provision of the International Building Code that you require Group I-1 and I-2 occupancies to comply with?
NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: I-1 and I-2 Institutional Group Occupancies have additional life safety and construction requirements for domestic cooking exhaust equipment exhaust ducts given the nature of the types of facilities included in those groups such hospitals and other supervised custodial care facilities. The reference is provided for convenience to the user of the codes as the requirements work together to provide a code-compliant domestic cooking exhaust system in these specific occupancies. No changes were made per this comment and response.
So, are there specific portions of the Building Code that apply in this context? It seems a bit unclear to generally point to the Building Code and in the same sentence point specifically to Section 904.14 of the Fire Code.
NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: The 2024 NC Building Code has specific sections dedicated to I-1 and I-2 occupancies concerning construction requirements that impact the how domestic cooking exhaust ducts are installed. The reference to 2024 NC Fire Code Section 904.14 points specifically to a requirement to install a fire suppression system for domestic cooking exhaust applications in I-1 and I-2 occupancies. No changes were made per this comment and response.
Please add a cross reference to those Building Code sections, then. I think it's confusing to omit them here.
In 510.3, what is the symbol (it looks like a box) added after the text?
NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: The editing box is deleted.

Please retype the rule accordingly and resubmit it to our office at 1711 New Hope Church Road, Raleigh, North Carolina 27609.

Brian Liebman
Commission Counsel
Date submitted to agency: April 14, 2024

REQUEST FOR CHANGES PURSUANT TO G.S. 150B-21.10

AGENCY: North Carolina Building Code Council

RULE CITATION: 2024 North Carolina Mechanical Code, Ch. 6

DEADLINE FOR RECEIPT: TBD

***PLEASE NOTE:* This request may extend to several pages. Please be sure you have reached the end of the document.**

The Rules Review Commission staff has completed its review of this Rule prior to the Commission's next meeting. The Commission has not yet reviewed this Rule and therefore there has not been a determination as to whether the Rule will be approved. You may email the reviewing attorney to inquire concerning the staff recommendation.

In reviewing this Rule, the staff recommends the following changes be made:

> *In 603.8.2, leak testing as required by Section C403 of the Energy Conservation Code is required for an underground duct. Where in Section C403 is leak testing required? Also, would this apply to residential buildings, or would they be covered by R403?*
> *NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: Duct leakage is covered in the Section C403 Building Mechanical Systems of the 2024 NC Energy Conservation Code in various subsections. The requirement is limited to underground ducts serving commercial buildings covered in Section 403 Building Mechanical Systems of the 2024 NC Energy Conservation Code. No changes were made per this comment and response.*
> *OK, but where in Section C403? I'm asking because I looked and didn't see anything requiring leak testing, other than C403.1.2.3 requiring high pressure duct systems to be tested in accordance with SMACNA HVAC Air Duct Leakage Test Manual. Not sure that applies here. I see more requirements for leak testing in C402, but that appears to be restricted to the building thermal envelope.*
> *NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: The requirement is only applicable to high-pressure duct systems. No changes were made per this comment and response.*
> *But 603.8.2 does not say that it is only applicable to high pressure duct systems. It just says "ducts" and 603.8 in general only says "underground ducts". Please specify which provisions here apply only to high pressure duct systems.*

Please retype the rule accordingly and resubmit it to our office at 1711 New Hope Church Road, Raleigh, North Carolina 27609.

Brian Liebman
Commission Counsel
Date submitted to agency: April 14, 2024

REQUEST FOR CHANGES PURSUANT TO G.S. 150B-21.10

AGENCY: North Carolina Building Code Council

RULE CITATION: 2024 North Carolina Mechanical Code, Ch. 7

DEADLINE FOR RECEIPT: TBD

***PLEASE NOTE:* This request may extend to several pages. Please be sure you have reached the end of the document.**

The Rules Review Commission staff has completed its review of this Rule prior to the Commission's next meeting. The Commission has not yet reviewed this Rule and therefore there has not been a determination as to whether the Rule will be approved. You may email the reviewing attorney to inquire concerning the staff recommendation.

In reviewing this Rule, the staff recommends the following changes be made:

> *There appear to be two blank pages following the end of Ch. 7. Just making sure something wasn't accidentally omitted.*
>
> *NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: Nothing omitted. The two blank pages are deleted.*

Please retype the rule accordingly and resubmit it to our office at 1711 New Hope Church Road, Raleigh, North Carolina 27609.

Brian Liebman
Commission Counsel
Date submitted to agency: April 14, 2024

REQUEST FOR CHANGES PURSUANT TO G.S. 150B-21.10

AGENCY: North Carolina Building Code Council

RULE CITATION: 2024 North Carolina Mechanical Code, Ch. 9

DEADLINE FOR RECEIPT: TBD

PLEASE NOTE: ***This request may extend to several pages. Please be sure you have reached the end of the document.***

The Rules Review Commission staff has completed its review of this Rule prior to the Commission's next meeting. The Commission has not yet reviewed this Rule and therefore there has not been a determination as to whether the Rule will be approved. You may email the reviewing attorney to inquire concerning the staff recommendation.

In reviewing this Rule, the staff recommends the following changes be made:

> *In 905.1, the Code requires new wood-burning residential hydronic heaters to be EPA certified. Is there a particular certification, or process that must be followed?*
> *NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: It is an EPA certification stamp that the manufacturer is required to get based on federal law saying they meet clean air standards. The stamp is provided at the point of manufacture. No changes were made per this comment and response.*

Please retype the rule accordingly and resubmit it to our office at 1711 New Hope Church Road, Raleigh, North Carolina 27609.

Brian Liebman
Commission Counsel
Date submitted to agency: April 14, 2024

REQUEST FOR CHANGES PURSUANT TO G.S. 150B-21.10

AGENCY: North Carolina Building Code Council

RULE CITATION: 2024 North Carolina Mechanical Code, Ch. 10

DEADLINE FOR RECEIPT: TBD

***PLEASE NOTE:* This request may extend to several pages. Please be sure you have reached the end of the document.**

The Rules Review Commission staff has completed its review of this Rule prior to the Commission's next meeting. The Commission has not yet reviewed this Rule and therefore there has not been a determination as to whether the Rule will be approved. You may email the reviewing attorney to inquire concerning the staff recommendation.

In reviewing this Rule, the staff recommends the following changes be made:

> *With respect to the rules in Chapter 10 covering boilers, is the BCC empowered to regulate boilers? I thought the Department of Labor had the authority to govern boilers and pressure vessels under Chapter 95, Article 7A? Review of G.S. 143-138(b7) does seem to indicate that the BCC should include rules adopted by the Board of Boiler and Pressure Vessels Rules in an appendix, but not develop those rules themselves. I am aware of the exception in 1001.1, but I am not sure what boilers would not be covered by Ch 95. Please address.*
> *NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: The statute includes the boilers that are regulated by NCDOL. Boilers not regulated by NCDOL are covered in Chapter 10 of the 2024 NC Mechanical Code. The NCDOL requirements are quite involved and best not regurgitated here. No changes were made per this comment and response.*

Please retype the rule accordingly and resubmit it to our office at 1711 New Hope Church Road, Raleigh, North Carolina 27609.

Brian Liebman
Commission Counsel
Date submitted to agency: April 14, 2024

REQUEST FOR CHANGES PURSUANT TO G.S. 150B-21.10

AGENCY: North Carolina Building Code Council

RULE CITATION: 2024 North Carolina Mechanical Code, Ch. 11

DEADLINE FOR RECEIPT: TBD

PLEASE NOTE: ***This request may extend to several pages. Please be sure you have reached the end of the document.***

The Rules Review Commission staff has completed its review of this Rule prior to the Commission's next meeting. The Commission has not yet reviewed this Rule and therefore there has not been a determination as to whether the Rule will be approved. You may email the reviewing attorney to inquire concerning the staff recommendation.

In reviewing this Rule, the staff recommends the following changes be made:

In 1101.5, what is the symbol (it looks like a box) added after the text?
NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: The editing box is deleted.

Please retype the rule accordingly and resubmit it to our office at 1711 New Hope Church Road, Raleigh, North Carolina 27609.

Brian Liebman
Commission Counsel
Date submitted to agency: April 14, 2024

Burgos, Alexander N

Subject: FW: 2024 NC Mechanical Code Requests for Changes
Attachments: 2024-0418 DBR Responses 04.2024 - BCC - NC Mechanical Code - Request for Changes - BL responses.docx

Importance: High

From: Rittlinger, David B <david.rittlinger@ncdoi.gov>
Sent: Thursday, April 18, 2024 2:46 PM
To: Liebman, Brian R <brian.liebman@oah.nc.gov>
Cc: Childs, Nathan D <nchilds@NCDOJ.GOV>; Burgos, Alexander N <alexander.burgos@oah.nc.gov>; Holder, Karen <Karen.Holder@ncdoi.gov>
Subject: RE: 2024 NC Mechanical Code Requests for Changes
Importance: High

Brian,
Good afternoon.
Responses to your additional comments are included in the attached document.
No changes were generated to the 2024 NC Mechanical Code per these responses so they are not attached to this email.

Let me know if you have any questions.

David Bruce Rittlinger, PE, LEED AP
Division Chief – Codes and Interpretations

North Carolina
Office of State Fire Marshal
1202 Mail Service Center
Raleigh, NC 27699-1202
919.647.0008
david.rittlinger@ncdoi.gov

Link to free view of 2018 NC Codes
https://codes.iccsafe.org/codes/north-carolina

REQUEST FOR CHANGES PURSUANT TO G.S. 150B-21.10

AGENCY: North Carolina Building Code Council

RULE CITATION: 2024 North Carolina Mechanical Code, All Provisions

DEADLINE FOR RECEIPT: TBD

PLEASE NOTE: ***This request may extend to several pages. Please be sure you have reached the end of the document.***

The Rules Review Commission staff has completed its review of this Rule prior to the Commission's next meeting. The Commission has not yet reviewed this Rule and therefore there has not been a determination as to whether the Rule will be approved. You may email the reviewing attorney to inquire concerning the staff recommendation.

In reviewing this Rule, the staff recommends the following changes be made:

> *In their comment in opposition to the NC Energy Conservation Code, the NC Homebuilders Association encloses an email exchange between their director of Codes and Construction, Cliff Isaac, and staff at the Building Code Council regarding the Council's failure to incorporate a statutory exemption into the NC Energy Conservation Code.*
>
> *In the final email of the exchange, Building Code Council member Kim Wooten states:*
>
> > ***[t]here are many examples of building codes and state statutes not in agreement****. The NCBCC adopts codes for the general welfare of the public per statute. The General Assembly may make laws that contradict codes and may affect the general welfare of NC citizens, but that effort is independent of the NCBCC (emphasis added).*
>
> *In light of this statement, please disclose any and all provisions of the 2024 NC Mechanical Code that the Council is aware are "not in agreement" with the laws of the State of North Carolina.*
> *NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: The 2024 NC Mechanical Code was adopted pursuant to North Carolina General Statutes Chapter 143, Article 9 by the North Carolina Building Code Council in agreement with the laws of the State of North Carolina. No changes were made per this comment and response.*
> *Thanks for the reply, but I'm not sure this is entirely responsive to my question. Are there any particular provisions within the Mechanical Code that the BCC is aware are outside the authority provided to the BCC by the NC General Statutes?*
> *NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: The NCBCC is not aware of any particular provision within the 2024 NC Mechanical Code that is outside the authority provided to the NCBC by the North Carolina General Statutes. No changes were made per this comment and response.*
> *I noticed various sections that contain similar, if not identical requirements as in the Fuel Gas Code for items such as dryer vents, carbon monoxide detection, saunas, and*

pollution control units. They looked similar, if not identical to me, but I can't be sure. Please confirm if they are identical. Also, why is it necessary to repeat these requirements here? Would a cross reference to the Fuel Gas Code not be sufficient?

NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: Dryer vents, carbon monoxide detectors and alarms, saunas and pollution control units code language appear in both the 2024 NC Mechanical Code and the 2024 NC Fuel Gas Code as the energy source can be either electric or fuel gas. Having this content in both codes is practical for the user depending on the fuel source. No changes were made per this comment and response.

Outside of any appropriate changes regarding fuel source, are the requirements identical? If there are differences between the codes, that could be the source of significant ambiguity.

NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: The dryer vent and sauna code language in the 2024 NC Mechanical Code is specific to electric dryers and saunas. The dryer vent and sauna code language in the 2024 NC Fuel Gas Code is specific to gas-fired dryers and saunas. Electric dryers and saunas and gas-fired dryers and saunas have some differences specific to fuel source and overall dryer and sauna product availability from the marketplace. The carbon monoxide detectors and alarms requirements are identical between the 2024 NC Mechanical Code and the 2024 NC Fuel Gas Code. The pollution control unit requirements in Chapter 5 of the 2024 NC Mechanical Code are specific to commercial kitchen exhaust systems for buildings regardless of fuel source. There are no pollution control unit requirements in the 2024 NC Fuel Gas Code. Pollution control unit requirements covered by federal laws are not included in NC Building Codes. No changes were made per this comment and response.

Please retype the rule accordingly and resubmit it to our office at 1711 New Hope Church Road, Raleigh, North Carolina 27609.

Brian Liebman
Commission Counsel
Date submitted to agency: April 14, 2024

REQUEST FOR CHANGES PURSUANT TO G.S. 150B-21.10

AGENCY: North Carolina Building Code Council

RULE CITATION: 2024 North Carolina Mechanical Code, Ch. 1

DEADLINE FOR RECEIPT: TBD

***PLEASE NOTE:* This request may extend to several pages. Please be sure you have reached the end of the document.**

The Rules Review Commission staff has completed its review of this Rule prior to the Commission's next meeting. The Commission has not yet reviewed this Rule and therefore there has not been a determination as to whether the Rule will be approved. You may email the reviewing attorney to inquire concerning the staff recommendation.

In reviewing this Rule, the staff recommends the following changes be made:

Generally to the Chapter, I noticed that Ch. 5 contains requirements for clothes dryer vents in the same way that the Fuel Gas Code does. They looked similar, if not identical to me, but I can't be sure. Please confirm if they are identical. Also, why is it necessary to repeat the requirements here? Would a cross reference to the Fuel Gas Code not be sufficient?

NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: Dryer vents code language appears in both the 2024 NC Mechanical Code and the 2024 NC Fuel Gas Code as the energy source can be either electric or fuel gas for dryers. Having this content in both codes is practical for the user depending on the fuel source of the dryer. No changes were made per this comment and response.

In 102.3, what happens if it cannot be determined what edition of the code a device or safeguard was installed under?

NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: This sentence is added: "In working with the owner or the owner's authorized agent, the code official has the authority to determine what is reasonable to satisfy the intent of the code when the edition of the code is not known."

In 102.3, how does a reinspection establish whether the owner or owner's agent is responsible for the maintenance of the plumbing system? I don't have a problem with requiring an owner or his agent to be responsible for maintenance, but I don't understand how the reinspection "determine[s] compliance with this provision."

NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: The second sentence is revised as follows: "To determine whether maintenance required under this Code has been performed, the code official shall have the authority to require a mechanical system to be reinspected."

In 102.4, second paragraph, define "minor".

NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: The sentence is changed as follows: "In the discretion of the code official, minor additions, alterations, renovations and repairs to existing mechanical systems shall meet the provisions for new construction, unless such work is done in the same manner and arrangement as was in the existing system, is not hazardous to the public health, safety, or welfare and is approved."

In 102.4, second paragraph, define "hazardous".

NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: The sentence is changed as follows: "In the discretion of the code official, minor additions, alterations, renovations and repairs to existing mechanical systems shall meet the provisions for new construction, unless such work is done in the same manner and arrangement as was in the existing system, is not hazardous to the public health, safety, or welfare and is approved."

In 102.9, this suggests that the code official has the authority to essentially make up new requirements that he considers "necessary for the strength, stability, or proper operation of an existing or proposed plumbing system". Is there statutory authority for this?

NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: The sentence is changed as follows: "Requirements necessary for the strength, stability or proper operation of an existing or proposed mechanical system, or for the public safety, health and general welfare covered by this code shall be determined by the code official."

Please retype the rule accordingly and resubmit it to our office at 1711 New Hope Church Road, Raleigh, North Carolina 27609.

Brian Liebman
Commission Counsel
Date submitted to agency: April 14, 2024

REQUEST FOR CHANGES PURSUANT TO G.S. 150B-21.10

AGENCY: North Carolina Building Code Council

RULE CITATION: 2024 North Carolina Mechanical Code, Ch. 2

DEADLINE FOR RECEIPT: TBD

PLEASE NOTE: ***This request may extend to several pages. Please be sure you have reached the end of the document.***

The Rules Review Commission staff has completed its review of this Rule prior to the Commission's next meeting. The Commission has not yet reviewed this Rule and therefore there has not been a determination as to whether the Rule will be approved. You may email the reviewing attorney to inquire concerning the staff recommendation.

In reviewing this Rule, the staff recommends the following changes be made:

> *In the definition of "Food-Grade Fluid", it limits the additives to anything contained in 21 CFR Parts 174-186. I checked, and noticed that other adjacent parts of the CFR appeared to discuss food additives, so I wanted to make sure those weren't omitted unintentionally. See also Section 1403.3.*
> *NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: Parts 174 through 186 are required to be followed to maintain water quality for heat exchanger use in solar thermal systems, not just 174 and 186. The definition and Section 1403.3 are revised accordingly to include the range of applicable parts.*
> *Yes, I understood that it was not just 174 and 186, but the range between them. I was referring to the Parts before and after the range, such as Parts 170, 171, and 172 which also refer to food additives.*
> *NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: Parts 174 through 186 are the only applicable provisions necessary to demonstrate code-compliant water quality for heat exchangers used in solar thermal systems. No changes were made per this comment and response.*

Please retype the rule accordingly and resubmit it to our office at 1711 New Hope Church Road, Raleigh, North Carolina 27609.

Brian Liebman
Commission Counsel
Date submitted to agency: April 14, 2024

<u>REQUEST FOR CHANGES PURSUANT TO G.S. 150B-21.10</u>

AGENCY: North Carolina Building Code Council

RULE CITATION: 2024 North Carolina Mechanical Code, Ch. 3

DEADLINE FOR RECEIPT: TBD

<u>PLEASE NOTE:</u> This request may extend to several pages. Please be sure you have reached the end of the document.

The Rules Review Commission staff has completed its review of this Rule prior to the Commission's next meeting. The Commission has not yet reviewed this Rule and therefore there has not been a determination as to whether the Rule will be approved. You may email the reviewing attorney to inquire concerning the staff recommendation.

In reviewing this Rule, the staff recommends the following changes be made:

In 301.17, should "rodentproofing" be two words?
NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: "Rodentproofing" has been used as a single word in the lexicon of the NC Building Codes for many years. Rodentproofing appears as a single word in the recently approved 2024 NC Plumbing Code. No changes were made per this comment and response as the edits required do not change the use of the word in applications of the NC Building Codes.
In 304.3, the first sentence refers to "hazardous locations and public garages, private garages, repair garages, automotive motor fuel-dispensing facilities and parking garages . . . ." First, is there a reason for the conjunction between "hazardous locations" and "public garages"? Second, is there a distinction between the more specific types of garage listed and "parking garages"? I notice this language is also in 304.5.
NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: Elevation of ignition sources in public garages, private garages, repair garages, automotive fuel-dispensing facilities and parking garages is required because of they are consider hazardous locations in the application of this section. These types of hazardous locations typically have heavier-than-air flammable and combustible liquids and associated vapors stored within 18 inches of the floor, hence the requirement to elevate ignition sources in the hazardous locations listed. The garage types listed are tied to occupancy classifications in the 2024 NC Building Code. No changes were made per this comment and response.
OK, so is this a grammatical issue then? Because the way the sentence is written, it's a little unclear why it says "hazardous locations <u>and</u>" and then lists a bunch of specific places. Would it change the meaning to delete the "and", add a comma, and make that a list? i.e. "…located in hazardous ~~locations~~ ~~and~~<u>locations,</u> public garages, private garages…"
NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: Hazardous locations can be spaces other than those listed. If someone stores heavier-than-air flammable and combustible liquids in any space within a building, it can be considered a hazardous location and thus require the appliance to be elevated 18 inches above the floor. No changes were made per this comment and response.

Brian Liebman
Commission Counsel
Date submitted to agency: April 14, 2024

Also, to confirm, there are differences, explained in the Building Code, between the different kinds of garages listed here? Could you point me to where those are defined in the Building Code?

NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: See excerpts below from the 2024 NC Building Code.

[BG] PRIVATE GARAGE. A building or portion of a building in which motor vehicles used by the *owner* or tenants of the building or buildings on the premises are stored or kept, without provisions for repairing or servicing such vehicles for profit.

[BG] OPEN PARKING GARAGE. A structure or portion of a structure with the openings as described in Section 406.5.2 on two or more sides that is used for the parking or storage of private motor vehicles as described in Section 406.5.3.

[BG] MECHANICAL-ACCESS ENCLOSED PARKING GARAGE. An enclosed parking garage that employs parking machines, lifts, elevators or other mechanical devices for vehicle moving from and to street level and in which public occupancy in the garage is prohibited in all areas except the vehicle access bay.

[BG] MECHANICAL-ACCESS OPEN PARKING GARAGES. *Open parking garages* employing parking machines, lifts, elevators or other mechanical devices for vehicles moving from and to street level and in which public occupancy is prohibited above the street level.

[BG] RAMP-ACCESS OPEN PARKING GARAGES. *Open parking garages* employing a series of continuously rising floors or a series of interconnecting ramps between floors permitting the movement of vehicles under their own power from and to the street level.

[BG] REPAIR GARAGE. A building, structure or portion thereof used for servicing or repairing motor vehicles.

There many types of public parking garages based an assortment of open and enclosed configurations and access options. No changes were made per this comment and response.

In 304.3.1, there's an exception in the main rule ("except that a single door is permitted…") that should be moved to the list of exceptions below.

NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: Edited accordingly.

In 307.2.1.1, the Code states that condensate drains shall not directly connect to "any plumbing drain, waste or vent pipe" but then goes on to allow such drains to discharge into a floor sink, floor drain, trench drain, mop sink, hub drain, standpipe, utility sink, or laundry sink. Is this requiring an air gap in the condensate discharge (i.e. "shall not directly connect") or is there some ambiguity created by "any plumbing drain" and the approved list of drains in the next sentence?

NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: Added a sentence after the second sentence to read as follows: "An air gap or air break shall be provided".

Please retype the rule accordingly and resubmit it to our office at 1711 New Hope Church Road, Raleigh, North Carolina 27609.

Brian Liebman
Commission Counsel
Date submitted to agency: April 14, 2024

REQUEST FOR CHANGES PURSUANT TO G.S. 150B-21.10

AGENCY: North Carolina Building Code Council

RULE CITATION: 2024 North Carolina Mechanical Code, Ch. 5

DEADLINE FOR RECEIPT: TBD

PLEASE NOTE: ***This request may extend to several pages. Please be sure you have reached the end of the document.***

The Rules Review Commission staff has completed its review of this Rule prior to the Commission's next meeting. The Commission has not yet reviewed this Rule and therefore there has not been a determination as to whether the Rule will be approved. You may email the reviewing attorney to inquire concerning the staff recommendation.

In reviewing this Rule, the staff recommends the following changes be made:

In 502.4, does "the general requirements of this chapter" refer to 502.1? Or something greater than that? Please specify.

NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: The 2024 NC Fire Code has additional installation and specific ventilation requirements in addition to the general ventilation requirements of Chapter 5 of the 2024 NC Mechanical Code. The reference is provided for convenience to the user of the code as the mechanical and fire code requirements work together to provide a code-compliant stationary storage battery system installation. No changes were made per this comment and response.

OK, but that doesn't answer my question. What are the "general requirements" of Chapter 5? Do you mean simply that stationary battery systems have to comply with all of Chapter 5 and *Section 1207.6.1 of the Fire Code? Or does "general requirements" mean something more specific, i.e. the provision in Chapter 5 labeled "General"?*

NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: The general requirements may be specific to Section 501 but depending on the location of the stationary storage battery systems, other portions of Chapter 5 may be applicable. It is best to not reference just Section 501 as that may exclude applicable code provisions. No changes were made per this comment and response.

In 504.9, what is a "domestic clothes dryer"? (Please note that I probably did not ask this for the Fuel Gas Code, so if this language is there as well, please make any changes that come from this request to the Fuel Gas Code.)

NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: Domestic clothes dryers are listed and labeled by the manufacturer for use in family living type environments. The exhaust requirements for commercial clothes dryer are per the manufacturer's installation instructions as noted in Section 504.10. Domestic clothes dryers do not generate the heat that commercial clothes dryers generate hence they have separate and less stringent exhaust requirements as noted in Section 504.9. No changes were made per this comment and response.

In 505.1, what is "domestic cooking exhaust"? For both this and the previous request, I'm assuming that "domestic" means residential, and applies to residential dwelling units in apartments and other residential buildings not covered by the Residential Code. Is that correct?

Brian Liebman
Commission Counsel
Date submitted to agency: April 14, 2024

NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: Domestic cooking exhaust equipment and appliances are listed and labeled by the manufacturer for use in dwelling units, break rooms and other sorts of commercial spaces where domestic cooking can occur. In these applications the cooking is limited to the types of cooking typically performed in a home environment. Commercial cooking is handled separately with more stringent requirements covered elsewhere in Chapter 5 of the 2024 NC Mechanical Code. No changes were made per this comment and response.

In 505.3, is there a specific provision of the International Building Code that you require Group I-1 and I-2 occupancies to comply with?
NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: I-1 and I-2 Institutional Group Occupancies have additional life safety and construction requirements for domestic cooking exhaust equipment exhaust ducts given the nature of the types of facilities included in those groups such hospitals and other supervised custodial care facilities. The reference is provided for convenience to the user of the codes as the requirements work together to provide a code-compliant domestic cooking exhaust system in these specific occupancies. No changes were made per this comment and response.
So, are there specific portions of the Building Code that apply in this context? It seems a bit unclear to generally point to the Building Code and in the same sentence point specifically to Section 904.14 of the Fire Code.
NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: The 2024 NC Building Code has specific sections dedicated to I-1 and I-2 occupancies concerning construction requirements that impact the how domestic cooking exhaust ducts are installed. The reference to 2024 NC Fire Code Section 904.14 points specifically to a requirement to install a fire suppression system for domestic cooking exhaust applications in I-1 and I-2 occupancies. No changes were made per this comment and response.
In 510.3, what is the symbol (it looks like a box) added after the text?
NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: The editing box is deleted.

Please retype the rule accordingly and resubmit it to our office at 1711 New Hope Church Road, Raleigh, North Carolina 27609.

Brian Liebman
Commission Counsel
Date submitted to agency: April 14, 2024

REQUEST FOR CHANGES PURSUANT TO G.S. 150B-21.10

AGENCY: North Carolina Building Code Council

RULE CITATION: 2024 North Carolina Mechanical Code, Ch. 6

DEADLINE FOR RECEIPT: TBD

***PLEASE NOTE:* This request may extend to several pages. Please be sure you have reached the end of the document.**

The Rules Review Commission staff has completed its review of this Rule prior to the Commission's next meeting. The Commission has not yet reviewed this Rule and therefore there has not been a determination as to whether the Rule will be approved. You may email the reviewing attorney to inquire concerning the staff recommendation.

In reviewing this Rule, the staff recommends the following changes be made:

> *In 603.8.2, leak testing as required by Section C403 of the Energy Conservation Code is required for an underground duct. Where in Section C403 is leak testing required? Also, would this apply to residential buildings, or would they be covered by R403?*
> *NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: Duct leakage is covered in the Section C403 Building Mechanical Systems of the 2024 NC Energy Conservation Code in various subsections. The requirement is limited to underground ducts serving commercial buildings covered in Section 403 Building Mechanical Systems of the 2024 NC Energy Conservation Code. No changes were made per this comment and response.*
> *OK, but where in Section C403? I'm asking because I looked and didn't see anything requiring leak testing, other than C403.1.2.3 requiring high pressure duct systems to be tested in accordance with SMACNA HVAC Air Duct Leakage Test Manual. Not sure that applies here. I see more requirements for leak testing in C402, but that appears to be restricted to the building thermal envelope.*
> *NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: The requirement is only applicable to high-pressure duct systems. No changes were made per this comment and response.*

Please retype the rule accordingly and resubmit it to our office at 1711 New Hope Church Road, Raleigh, North Carolina 27609.

Brian Liebman
Commission Counsel
Date submitted to agency: April 14, 2024

REQUEST FOR CHANGES PURSUANT TO G.S. 150B-21.10

AGENCY: North Carolina Building Code Council

RULE CITATION: 2024 North Carolina Mechanical Code, Ch. 7

DEADLINE FOR RECEIPT: TBD

PLEASE NOTE: ***This request may extend to several pages. Please be sure you have reached the end of the document.***

The Rules Review Commission staff has completed its review of this Rule prior to the Commission's next meeting. The Commission has not yet reviewed this Rule and therefore there has not been a determination as to whether the Rule will be approved. You may email the reviewing attorney to inquire concerning the staff recommendation.

In reviewing this Rule, the staff recommends the following changes be made:

> *There appear to be two blank pages following the end of Ch. 7. Just making sure something wasn't accidentally omitted.*
>
> *NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: Nothing omitted. The two blank pages are deleted.*

Please retype the rule accordingly and resubmit it to our office at 1711 New Hope Church Road, Raleigh, North Carolina 27609.

Brian Liebman
Commission Counsel
Date submitted to agency: April 14, 2024

REQUEST FOR CHANGES PURSUANT TO G.S. 150B-21.10

AGENCY: North Carolina Building Code Council

RULE CITATION: 2024 North Carolina Mechanical Code, Ch. 9

DEADLINE FOR RECEIPT: TBD

***PLEASE NOTE:* This request may extend to several pages. Please be sure you have reached the end of the document.**

The Rules Review Commission staff has completed its review of this Rule prior to the Commission's next meeting. The Commission has not yet reviewed this Rule and therefore there has not been a determination as to whether the Rule will be approved. You may email the reviewing attorney to inquire concerning the staff recommendation.

In reviewing this Rule, the staff recommends the following changes be made:

> *In 905.1, the Code requires new wood-burning residential hydronic heaters to be EPA certified. Is there a particular certification, or process that must be followed?*
> *NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: It is an EPA certification stamp that the manufacturer is required to get based on federal law saying they meet clean air standards. The stamp is provided at the point of manufacture. No changes were made per this comment and response.*

Please retype the rule accordingly and resubmit it to our office at 1711 New Hope Church Road, Raleigh, North Carolina 27609.

Brian Liebman
Commission Counsel
Date submitted to agency: April 14, 2024

REQUEST FOR CHANGES PURSUANT TO G.S. 150B-21.10

AGENCY: North Carolina Building Code Council

RULE CITATION: 2024 North Carolina Mechanical Code, Ch. 10

DEADLINE FOR RECEIPT: TBD

PLEASE NOTE: ***This request may extend to several pages. Please be sure you have reached the end of the document.***

The Rules Review Commission staff has completed its review of this Rule prior to the Commission's next meeting. The Commission has not yet reviewed this Rule and therefore there has not been a determination as to whether the Rule will be approved. You may email the reviewing attorney to inquire concerning the staff recommendation.

In reviewing this Rule, the staff recommends the following changes be made:

> *With respect to the rules in Chapter 10 covering boilers, is the BCC empowered to regulate boilers? I thought the Department of Labor had the authority to govern boilers and pressure vessels under Chapter 95, Article 7A? Review of G.S. 143-138(b7) does seem to indicate that the BCC should include rules adopted by the Board of Boiler and Pressure Vessels Rules in an appendix, but not develop those rules themselves. I am aware of the exception in 1001.1, but I am not sure what boilers would not be covered by Ch 95. Please address.*
>
> *NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: The statute includes the boilers that are regulated by NCDOL. Boilers not regulated by NCDOL are covered in Chapter 10 of the 2024 NC Mechanical Code. The NCDOL requirements are quite involved and best not regurgitated here. No changes were made per this comment and response.*

Please retype the rule accordingly and resubmit it to our office at 1711 New Hope Church Road, Raleigh, North Carolina 27609.

Brian Liebman
Commission Counsel
Date submitted to agency: April 14, 2024

REQUEST FOR CHANGES PURSUANT TO G.S. 150B-21.10

AGENCY: North Carolina Building Code Council

RULE CITATION: 2024 North Carolina Mechanical Code, Ch. 11

DEADLINE FOR RECEIPT: TBD

PLEASE NOTE: ***This request may extend to several pages. Please be sure you have reached the end of the document.***

The Rules Review Commission staff has completed its review of this Rule prior to the Commission's next meeting. The Commission has not yet reviewed this Rule and therefore there has not been a determination as to whether the Rule will be approved. You may email the reviewing attorney to inquire concerning the staff recommendation.

In reviewing this Rule, the staff recommends the following changes be made:

In 1101.5, what is the symbol (it looks like a box) added after the text?
NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: The editing box is deleted.

Please retype the rule accordingly and resubmit it to our office at 1711 New Hope Church Road, Raleigh, North Carolina 27609.

Brian Liebman
Commission Counsel
Date submitted to agency: April 14, 2024

Burgos, Alexander N

Subject: FW: 2024 NC Mechanical Code Requests for Changes
Attachments: 2024-0418 DBR Responses 04.2024 - BCC - NC Mechanical Code - Request for Changes - BL responses.docx

Importance: High

From: Rittlinger, David B <david.rittlinger@ncdoi.gov>
Sent: Thursday, April 18, 2024 2:46 PM
To: Liebman, Brian R <brian.liebman@oah.nc.gov>
Cc: Childs, Nathan D <nchilds@NCDOJ.GOV>; Burgos, Alexander N <alexander.burgos@oah.nc.gov>; Holder, Karen <Karen.Holder@ncdoi.gov>
Subject: RE: 2024 NC Mechanical Code Requests for Changes
Importance: High

Brian,
Good afternoon.
Responses to your additional comments are included in the attached document.
No changes were generated to the 2024 NC Mechanical Code per these responses so they are not attached to this email.

Let me know if you have any questions.

David Bruce Rittlinger, PE, LEED AP
Division Chief – Codes and Interpretations

North Carolina
Office of State Fire Marshal
1202 Mail Service Center
Raleigh, NC 27699-1202
919.647.0008
david.rittlinger@ncdoi.gov

Link to free view of 2018 NC Codes
https://codes.iccsafe.org/codes/north-carolina

REQUEST FOR CHANGES PURSUANT TO G.S. 150B-21.10

AGENCY: North Carolina Building Code Council

RULE CITATION: 2024 North Carolina Mechanical Code, All Provisions

DEADLINE FOR RECEIPT: TBD

***PLEASE NOTE:* This request may extend to several pages. Please be sure you have reached the end of the document.**

The Rules Review Commission staff has completed its review of this Rule prior to the Commission's next meeting. The Commission has not yet reviewed this Rule and therefore there has not been a determination as to whether the Rule will be approved. You may email the reviewing attorney to inquire concerning the staff recommendation.

In reviewing this Rule, the staff recommends the following changes be made:

> *In their comment in opposition to the NC Energy Conservation Code, the NC Homebuilders Association encloses an email exchange between their director of Codes and Construction, Cliff Isaac, and staff at the Building Code Council regarding the Council's failure to incorporate a statutory exemption into the NC Energy Conservation Code.*
>
> *In the final email of the exchange, Building Code Council member Kim Wooten states:*
>
> > ***[t]here are many examples of building codes and state statutes not in agreement**. The NCBCC adopts codes for the general welfare of the public per statute. The General Assembly may make laws that contradict codes and may affect the general welfare of NC citizens, but that effort is independent of the NCBCC (emphasis added).*
>
> *In light of this statement, please disclose any and all provisions of the 2024 NC Mechanical Code that the Council is aware are "not in agreement" with the laws of the State of North Carolina.*
> *NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: The 2024 NC Mechanical Code was adopted pursuant to North Carolina General Statutes Chapter 143, Article 9 by the North Carolina Building Code Council in agreement with the laws of the State of North Carolina. No changes were made per this comment and response.*
> *Thanks for the reply, but I'm not sure this is entirely responsive to my question. Are there any particular provisions within the Mechanical Code that the BCC is aware are outside the authority provided to the BCC by the NC General Statutes?*
> *NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: The NCBCC is not aware of any particular provision within the 2024 NC Mechanical Code that is outside the authority provided to the NCBC by the North Carolina General Statutes. No changes were made per this comment and response.*
> *I noticed various sections that contain similar, if not identical requirements as in the Fuel Gas Code for items such as dryer vents, carbon monoxide detection, saunas, and*

pollution control units. They looked similar, if not identical to me, but I can't be sure. Please confirm if they are identical. Also, why is it necessary to repeat these requirements here? Would a cross reference to the Fuel Gas Code not be sufficient?

NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: Dryer vents, carbon monoxide detectors and alarms, saunas and pollution control units code language appear in both the 2024 NC Mechanical Code and the 2024 NC Fuel Gas Code as the energy source can be either electric or fuel gas. Having this content in both codes is practical for the user depending on the fuel source. No changes were made per this comment and response.

Outside of any appropriate changes regarding fuel source, are the requirements identical? If there are differences between the codes, that could be the source of significant ambiguity.

NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: The dryer vent and sauna code language in the 2024 NC Mechanical Code is specific to electric dryers and saunas. The dryer vent and sauna code language in the 2024 NC Fuel Gas Code is specific to gas-fired dryers and saunas. Electric dryers and saunas and gas-fired dryers and saunas have some differences specific to fuel source and overall dryer and sauna product availability from the marketplace. The carbon monoxide detectors and alarms requirements are identical between the 2024 NC Mechanical Code and the 2024 NC Fuel Gas Code. The pollution control unit requirements in Chapter 5 of the 2024 NC Mechanical Code are specific to commercial kitchen exhaust systems for buildings regardless of fuel source. There are no pollution control unit requirements in the 2024 NC Fuel Gas Code. Pollution control unit requirements covered by federal laws are not included in NC Building Codes. No changes were made per this comment and response.

Please retype the rule accordingly and resubmit it to our office at 1711 New Hope Church Road, Raleigh, North Carolina 27609.

Brian Liebman
Commission Counsel
Date submitted to agency: April 14, 2024

<u>REQUEST FOR CHANGES PURSUANT TO G.S. 150B-21.10</u>

AGENCY: North Carolina Building Code Council

RULE CITATION: 2024 North Carolina Mechanical Code, Ch. 1

DEADLINE FOR RECEIPT: TBD

<u>PLEASE NOTE:</u> This request may extend to several pages. Please be sure you have reached the end of the document.

The Rules Review Commission staff has completed its review of this Rule prior to the Commission's next meeting. The Commission has not yet reviewed this Rule and therefore there has not been a determination as to whether the Rule will be approved. You may email the reviewing attorney to inquire concerning the staff recommendation.

In reviewing this Rule, the staff recommends the following changes be made:

Generally to the Chapter, I noticed that Ch. 5 contains requirements for clothes dryer vents in the same way that the Fuel Gas Code does. They looked similar, if not identical to me, but I can't be sure. Please confirm if they are identical. Also, why is it necessary to repeat the requirements here? Would a cross reference to the Fuel Gas Code not be sufficient?

NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: Dryer vents code language appears in both the 2024 NC Mechanical Code and the 2024 NC Fuel Gas Code as the energy source can be either electric or fuel gas for dryers. Having this content in both codes is practical for the user depending on the fuel source of the dryer. No changes were made per this comment and response.

In 102.3, what happens if it cannot be determined what edition of the code a device or safeguard was installed under?

NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: This sentence is added: "In working with the owner or the owner's authorized agent, the code official has the authority to determine what is reasonable to satisfy the intent of the code when the edition of the code is not known."

In 102.3, how does a reinspection establish whether the owner or owner's agent is responsible for the maintenance of the plumbing system? I don't have a problem with requiring an owner or his agent to be responsible for maintenance, but I don't understand how the reinspection "determine[s] compliance with this provision."

NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: The second sentence is revised as follows: "To determine whether maintenance required under this Code has been performed, the code official shall have the authority to require a mechanical system to be reinspected."

In 102.4, second paragraph, define "minor".

NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: The sentence is changed as follows: "In the discretion of the code official, minor additions, alterations, renovations and repairs to existing mechanical systems shall meet the provisions for new construction, unless such work is done in the same manner and arrangement as was in the existing system, is not hazardous to the public health, safety, or welfare and is approved."

In 102.4, second paragraph, define "hazardous".

Brian Liebman
Commission Counsel
Date submitted to agency: April 14, 2024

NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: The sentence is changed as follows: "In the discretion of the code official, minor additions, alterations, renovations and repairs to existing mechanical systems shall meet the provisions for new construction, unless such work is done in the same manner and arrangement as was in the existing system, is not hazardous to the public health, safety, or welfare and is approved."

In 102.9, this suggests that the code official has the authority to essentially make up new requirements that he considers "necessary for the strength, stability, or proper operation of an existing or proposed plumbing system". Is there statutory authority for this?

NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: The sentence is changed as follows: "Requirements necessary for the strength, stability or proper operation of an existing or proposed mechanical system, or for the public safety, health and general welfare covered by this code shall be determined by the code official."

Please retype the rule accordingly and resubmit it to our office at 1711 New Hope Church Road, Raleigh, North Carolina 27609.

Brian Liebman
Commission Counsel
Date submitted to agency: April 14, 2024

REQUEST FOR CHANGES PURSUANT TO G.S. 150B-21.10

AGENCY: North Carolina Building Code Council

RULE CITATION: 2024 North Carolina Mechanical Code, Ch. 2

DEADLINE FOR RECEIPT: TBD

PLEASE NOTE: ***This request may extend to several pages. Please be sure you have reached the end of the document.***

The Rules Review Commission staff has completed its review of this Rule prior to the Commission's next meeting. The Commission has not yet reviewed this Rule and therefore there has not been a determination as to whether the Rule will be approved. You may email the reviewing attorney to inquire concerning the staff recommendation.

In reviewing this Rule, the staff recommends the following changes be made:

> *In the definition of "Food-Grade Fluid", it limits the additives to anything contained in 21 CFR Parts 174-186. I checked, and noticed that other adjacent parts of the CFR appeared to discuss food additives, so I wanted to make sure those weren't omitted unintentionally. See also Section 1403.3.*
> *NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: Parts 174 through 186 are required to be followed to maintain water quality for heat exchanger use in solar thermal systems, not just 174 and 186. The definition and Section 1403.3 are revised accordingly to include the range of applicable parts.*
> *Yes, I understood that it was not just 174 and 186, but the range between them. I was referring to the Parts before and after the range, such as Parts 170, 171, and 172 which also refer to food additives.*
> *NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: Parts 174 through 186 are the only applicable provisions necessary to demonstrate code-compliant water quality for heat exchangers used in solar thermal systems. No changes were made per this comment and response.*

Please retype the rule accordingly and resubmit it to our office at 1711 New Hope Church Road, Raleigh, North Carolina 27609.

Brian Liebman
Commission Counsel
Date submitted to agency: April 14, 2024

REQUEST FOR CHANGES PURSUANT TO G.S. 150B-21.10

AGENCY: North Carolina Building Code Council

RULE CITATION: 2024 North Carolina Mechanical Code, Ch. 3

DEADLINE FOR RECEIPT: TBD

***PLEASE NOTE:* This request may extend to several pages. Please be sure you have reached the end of the document.**

The Rules Review Commission staff has completed its review of this Rule prior to the Commission's next meeting. The Commission has not yet reviewed this Rule and therefore there has not been a determination as to whether the Rule will be approved. You may email the reviewing attorney to inquire concerning the staff recommendation.

In reviewing this Rule, the staff recommends the following changes be made:

In 301.17, should "rodentproofing" be two words?
NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: "Rodentproofing" has been used as a single word in the lexicon of the NC Building Codes for many years. Rodentproofing appears as a single word in the recently approved 2024 NC Plumbing Code. No changes were made per this comment and response as the edits required do not change the use of the word in applications of the NC Building Codes.
In 304.3, the first sentence refers to "hazardous locations and public garages, private garages, repair garages, automotive motor fuel-dispensing facilities and parking garages . . . ." First, is there a reason for the conjunction between "hazardous locations" and "public garages"? Second, is there a distinction between the more specific types of garage listed and "parking garages"? I notice this language is also in 304.5.
NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: Elevation of ignition sources in public garages, private garages, repair garages, automotive fuel-dispensing facilities and parking garages is required because of they are consider hazardous locations in the application of this section. These types of hazardous locations typically have heavier-than-air flammable and combustible liquids and associated vapors stored within 18 inches of the floor, hence the requirement to elevate ignition sources in the hazardous locations listed. The garage types listed are tied to occupancy classifications in the 2024 NC Building Code. No changes were made per this comment and response.
OK, so is this a grammatical issue then? Because the way the sentence is written, it's a little unclear why it says "hazardous locations <u>and</u>" and then lists a bunch of specific places. Would it change the meaning to delete the "and", add a comma, and make that a list? i.e. "…located in hazardous ~~locations~~ ~~and~~<u>locations,</u> public garages, private garages…"
NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: Hazardous locations can be spaces other than those listed. If someone stores heavier-than-air flammable and combustible liquids in any space within a building, it can be considered a hazardous location and thus require the appliance to be elevated 18 inches above the floor. No changes were made per this comment and response.

Brian Liebman
Commission Counsel
Date submitted to agency: April 14, 2024

Also, to confirm, there are differences, explained in the Building Code, between the different kinds of garages listed here? Could you point me to where those are defined in the Building Code?

NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: See excerpts below from the 2024 NC Building Code.

[BG] PRIVATE GARAGE. A building or portion of a building in which motor vehicles used by the *owner* or tenants of the building or buildings on the premises are stored or kept, without provisions for repairing or servicing such vehicles for profit.

[BG] OPEN PARKING GARAGE. A structure or portion of a structure with the openings as described in Section 406.5.2 on two or more sides that is used for the parking or storage of private motor vehicles as described in Section 406.5.3.

[BG] MECHANICAL-ACCESS ENCLOSED PARKING GARAGE. An enclosed parking garage that employs parking machines, lifts, elevators or other mechanical devices for vehicle moving from and to street level and in which public occupancy in the garage is prohibited in all areas except the vehicle access bay.

[BG] MECHANICAL-ACCESS OPEN PARKING GARAGES. *Open parking garages* employing parking machines, lifts, elevators or other mechanical devices for vehicles moving from and to street level and in which public occupancy is prohibited above the street level.

[BG] RAMP-ACCESS OPEN PARKING GARAGES. *Open parking garages* employing a series of continuously rising floors or a series of interconnecting ramps between floors permitting the movement of vehicles under their own power from and to the street level.

[BG] REPAIR GARAGE. A building, structure or portion thereof used for servicing or repairing motor vehicles.

There many types of public parking garages based an assortment of open and enclosed configurations and access options. No changes were made per this comment and response.

In 304.3.1, there's an exception in the main rule ("except that a single door is permitted…") that should be moved to the list of exceptions below.

NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: Edited accordingly.

In 307.2.1.1, the Code states that condensate drains shall not directly connect to "any plumbing drain, waste or vent pipe" but then goes on to allow such drains to discharge into a floor sink, floor drain, trench drain, mop sink, hub drain, standpipe, utility sink, or laundry sink. Is this requiring an air gap in the condensate discharge (i.e. "shall not directly connect") or is there some ambiguity created by "any plumbing drain" and the approved list of drains in the next sentence?

NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: Added a sentence after the second sentence to read as follows: "An air gap or air break shall be provided".

Please retype the rule accordingly and resubmit it to our office at 1711 New Hope Church Road, Raleigh, North Carolina 27609.

Brian Liebman
Commission Counsel
Date submitted to agency: April 14, 2024

REQUEST FOR CHANGES PURSUANT TO G.S. 150B-21.10

AGENCY: North Carolina Building Code Council

RULE CITATION: 2024 North Carolina Mechanical Code, Ch. 5

DEADLINE FOR RECEIPT: TBD

PLEASE NOTE: ***This request may extend to several pages. Please be sure you have reached the end of the document.***

The Rules Review Commission staff has completed its review of this Rule prior to the Commission's next meeting. The Commission has not yet reviewed this Rule and therefore there has not been a determination as to whether the Rule will be approved. You may email the reviewing attorney to inquire concerning the staff recommendation.

In reviewing this Rule, the staff recommends the following changes be made:

In 502.4, does "the general requirements of this chapter" refer to 502.1? Or something greater than that? Please specify.
NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: The 2024 NC Fire Code has additional installation and specific ventilation requirements in addition to the general ventilation requirements of Chapter 5 of the 2024 NC Mechanical Code. The reference is provided for convenience to the user of the code as the mechanical and fire code requirements work together to provide a code-compliant stationary storage battery system installation. No changes were made per this comment and response.
OK, but that doesn't answer my question. What are the "general requirements" of Chapter 5? Do you mean simply that stationary battery systems have to comply with all of Chapter 5 and *Section 1207.6.1 of the Fire Code? Or does "general requirements" mean something more specific, i.e. the provision in Chapter 5 labeled "General"?*
NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: The general requirements may be specific to Section 501 but depending on the location of the stationary storage battery systems, other portions of Chapter 5 may be applicable. It is best to not reference just Section 501 as that may exclude applicable code provisions. No changes were made per this comment and response.
In 504.9, what is a "domestic clothes dryer"? (Please note that I probably did not ask this for the Fuel Gas Code, so if this language is there as well, please make any changes that come from this request to the Fuel Gas Code.)
NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: Domestic clothes dryers are listed and labeled by the manufacturer for use in family living type environments. The exhaust requirements for commercial clothes dryer are per the manufacturer's installation instructions as noted in Section 504.10. Domestic clothes dryers do not generate the heat that commercial clothes dryers generate hence they have separate and less stringent exhaust requirements as noted in Section 504.9. No changes were made per this comment and response.
In 505.1, what is "domestic cooking exhaust"? For both this and the previous request, I'm assuming that "domestic" means residential, and applies to residential dwelling units in apartments and other residential buildings not covered by the Residential Code. Is that correct?

NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: Domestic cooking exhaust equipment and appliances are listed and labeled by the manufacturer for use in dwelling units, break rooms and other sorts of commercial spaces where domestic cooking can occur. In these applications the cooking is limited to the types of cooking typically performed in a home environment. Commercial cooking is handled separately with more stringent requirements covered elsewhere in Chapter 5 of the 2024 NC Mechanical Code. No changes were made per this comment and response.

In 505.3, is there a specific provision of the International Building Code that you require Group I-1 and I-2 occupancies to comply with?
NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: I-1 and I-2 Institutional Group Occupancies have additional life safety and construction requirements for domestic cooking exhaust equipment exhaust ducts given the nature of the types of facilities included in those groups such hospitals and other supervised custodial care facilities. The reference is provided for convenience to the user of the codes as the requirements work together to provide a code-compliant domestic cooking exhaust system in these specific occupancies. No changes were made per this comment and response.
So, are there specific portions of the Building Code that apply in this context? It seems a bit unclear to generally point to the Building Code and in the same sentence point specifically to Section 904.14 of the Fire Code.
NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: The 2024 NC Building Code has specific sections dedicated to I-1 and I-2 occupancies concerning construction requirements that impact the how domestic cooking exhaust ducts are installed. The reference to 2024 NC Fire Code Section 904.14 points specifically to a requirement to install a fire suppression system for domestic cooking exhaust applications in I-1 and I-2 occupancies. No changes were made per this comment and response.
In 510.3, what is the symbol (it looks like a box) added after the text?
NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: The editing box is deleted.

Please retype the rule accordingly and resubmit it to our office at 1711 New Hope Church Road, Raleigh, North Carolina 27609.

Brian Liebman
Commission Counsel
Date submitted to agency: April 14, 2024

REQUEST FOR CHANGES PURSUANT TO G.S. 150B-21.10

AGENCY: North Carolina Building Code Council

RULE CITATION: 2024 North Carolina Mechanical Code, Ch. 6

DEADLINE FOR RECEIPT: TBD

PLEASE NOTE: ***This request may extend to several pages. Please be sure you have reached the end of the document.***

The Rules Review Commission staff has completed its review of this Rule prior to the Commission's next meeting. The Commission has not yet reviewed this Rule and therefore there has not been a determination as to whether the Rule will be approved. You may email the reviewing attorney to inquire concerning the staff recommendation.

In reviewing this Rule, the staff recommends the following changes be made:

> *In 603.8.2, leak testing as required by Section C403 of the Energy Conservation Code is required for an underground duct. Where in Section C403 is leak testing required? Also, would this apply to residential buildings, or would they be covered by R403?*
> *NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: Duct leakage is covered in the Section C403 Building Mechanical Systems of the 2024 NC Energy Conservation Code in various subsections. The requirement is limited to underground ducts serving commercial buildings covered in Section 403 Building Mechanical Systems of the 2024 NC Energy Conservation Code. No changes were made per this comment and response.*
> *OK, but where in Section C403? I'm asking because I looked and didn't see anything requiring leak testing, other than C403.1.2.3 requiring high pressure duct systems to be tested in accordance with SMACNA HVAC Air Duct Leakage Test Manual. Not sure that applies here. I see more requirements for leak testing in C402, but that appears to be restricted to the building thermal envelope.*
> *NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: The requirement is only applicable to high-pressure duct systems. No changes were made per this comment and response.*

Please retype the rule accordingly and resubmit it to our office at 1711 New Hope Church Road, Raleigh, North Carolina 27609.

Brian Liebman
Commission Counsel
Date submitted to agency: April 14, 2024

<u>REQUEST FOR CHANGES PURSUANT TO G.S. 150B-21.10</u>

AGENCY: North Carolina Building Code Council

RULE CITATION: 2024 North Carolina Mechanical Code, Ch. 7

DEADLINE FOR RECEIPT: TBD

<u>PLEASE NOTE:</u> This request may extend to several pages. Please be sure you have reached the end of the document.

The Rules Review Commission staff has completed its review of this Rule prior to the Commission's next meeting. The Commission has not yet reviewed this Rule and therefore there has not been a determination as to whether the Rule will be approved. You may email the reviewing attorney to inquire concerning the staff recommendation.

In reviewing this Rule, the staff recommends the following changes be made:

> *There appear to be two blank pages following the end of Ch. 7. Just making sure something wasn't accidentally omitted.*
>
> *NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: Nothing omitted. The two blank pages are deleted.*

Please retype the rule accordingly and resubmit it to our office at 1711 New Hope Church Road, Raleigh, North Carolina 27609.

Brian Liebman
Commission Counsel
Date submitted to agency: April 14, 2024

REQUEST FOR CHANGES PURSUANT TO G.S. 150B-21.10

AGENCY: North Carolina Building Code Council

RULE CITATION: 2024 North Carolina Mechanical Code, Ch. 9

DEADLINE FOR RECEIPT: TBD

PLEASE NOTE: ***This request may extend to several pages. Please be sure you have reached the end of the document.***

The Rules Review Commission staff has completed its review of this Rule prior to the Commission's next meeting. The Commission has not yet reviewed this Rule and therefore there has not been a determination as to whether the Rule will be approved. You may email the reviewing attorney to inquire concerning the staff recommendation.

In reviewing this Rule, the staff recommends the following changes be made:

> *In 905.1, the Code requires new wood-burning residential hydronic heaters to be EPA certified. Is there a particular certification, or process that must be followed?*
> *NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: It is an EPA certification stamp that the manufacturer is required to get based on federal law saying they meet clean air standards. The stamp is provided at the point of manufacture. No changes were made per this comment and response.*

Please retype the rule accordingly and resubmit it to our office at 1711 New Hope Church Road, Raleigh, North Carolina 27609.

Brian Liebman
Commission Counsel
Date submitted to agency: April 14, 2024

<u>REQUEST FOR CHANGES PURSUANT TO G.S. 150B-21.10</u>

AGENCY: North Carolina Building Code Council

RULE CITATION: 2024 North Carolina Mechanical Code, Ch. 10

DEADLINE FOR RECEIPT: TBD

<u>PLEASE NOTE:</u> This request may extend to several pages. Please be sure you have reached the end of the document.

The Rules Review Commission staff has completed its review of this Rule prior to the Commission's next meeting. The Commission has not yet reviewed this Rule and therefore there has not been a determination as to whether the Rule will be approved. You may email the reviewing attorney to inquire concerning the staff recommendation.

In reviewing this Rule, the staff recommends the following changes be made:

> *With respect to the rules in Chapter 10 covering boilers, is the BCC empowered to regulate boilers? I thought the Department of Labor had the authority to govern boilers and pressure vessels under Chapter 95, Article 7A? Review of G.S. 143-138(b7) does seem to indicate that the BCC should include rules adopted by the Board of Boiler and Pressure Vessels Rules in an appendix, but not develop those rules themselves. I am aware of the exception in 1001.1, but I am not sure what boilers would not be covered by Ch 95. Please address.*
> *NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: The statute includes the boilers that are regulated by NCDOL. Boilers not regulated by NCDOL are covered in Chapter 10 of the 2024 NC Mechanical Code. The NCDOL requirements are quite involved and best not regurgitated here. No changes were made per this comment and response.*

Please retype the rule accordingly and resubmit it to our office at 1711 New Hope Church Road, Raleigh, North Carolina 27609.

Brian Liebman
Commission Counsel
Date submitted to agency: April 14, 2024

REQUEST FOR CHANGES PURSUANT TO G.S. 150B-21.10

AGENCY: North Carolina Building Code Council

RULE CITATION: 2024 North Carolina Mechanical Code, Ch. 11

DEADLINE FOR RECEIPT: TBD

PLEASE NOTE: ***This request may extend to several pages. Please be sure you have reached the end of the document.***

The Rules Review Commission staff has completed its review of this Rule prior to the Commission's next meeting. The Commission has not yet reviewed this Rule and therefore there has not been a determination as to whether the Rule will be approved. You may email the reviewing attorney to inquire concerning the staff recommendation.

In reviewing this Rule, the staff recommends the following changes be made:

> *In 1101.5, what is the symbol (it looks like a box) added after the text?*
> *NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: The editing box is deleted.*

Please retype the rule accordingly and resubmit it to our office at 1711 New Hope Church Road, Raleigh, North Carolina 27609.

Brian Liebman
Commission Counsel
Date submitted to agency: April 14, 2024

Burgos, Alexander N

Subject: FW: NC Building Code Council - NC Building Code Approved Rules (Code Amendment): 2024 NC Mechanical Code

---

From: Liebman, Brian R <brian.liebman@oah.nc.gov>
Sent: Thursday, April 18, 2024 2:22 PM
To: Rittlinger, David B <david.rittlinger@ncdoi.gov>
Cc: Burgos, Alexander N <alexander.burgos@oah.nc.gov>; Childs, Nathan D <nchilds@NCDOJ.GOV>
Subject: RE: NC Building Code Council - NC Building Code Approved Rules (Code Amendment): 2024 NC Mechanical Code

David,

No questions on this one. I assume you only want this approved if the rest of the Mechanical Code is approved, however, correct?

Thanks,
Brian

Brian Liebman
Counsel to the North Carolina Rules Review Commission
Office of Administrative Hearings
(984)236-1948
brian.liebman@oah.nc.gov

Burgos, Alexander N

Subject: FW: NC Building Code Council - NC Building Code Approved Rules (Code Amendment): 2024 NC Mechanical Code

---

From: Liebman, Brian R <brian.liebman@oah.nc.gov>
Sent: Thursday, April 18, 2024 2:12 PM
To: Rittlinger, David B <david.rittlinger@ncdoi.gov>
Cc: Burgos, Alexander N <alexander.burgos@oah.nc.gov>; Childs, Nathan D <nchilds@NCDOJ.GOV>
Subject: RE: NC Building Code Council - NC Building Code Approved Rules (Code Amendment): 2024 NC Mechanical Code

David, since I don't have a lot of questions about these rules, and what I do have is general to the whole Code, I am just going to put my change requests in this email. See below:

General
Is the formatting here reflective of changes between the 2024 Mechanical Code you currently have pending and this new language, or between the existing 2018 Code and the new language?

I think "high probability" needs to be italicized, as it is a defined term in Ch. 2.

In Table 1103.1, I see a lot of areas where a value has been added to the table, but there's no accompanying strikethrough. I'm assuming this just means there was no value there before, and you've added one, correct?

Thanks,
Brian

Brian Liebman
Counsel to the North Carolina Rules Review Commission
Office of Administrative Hearings
(984)236-1948
brian.liebman@oah.nc.gov

Burgos, Alexander N

Subject: FW: 2024 NC Mechanical Code Requests for Changes
Attachments: 2024-0416 DBR Responses 04.2024 - BCC - NC Mechanical Code - Request for Changes - BL responses.docx

From: Liebman, Brian R <brian.liebman@oah.nc.gov>
Sent: Thursday, April 18, 2024 11:39 AM
To: Rittlinger, David B <david.rittlinger@ncdoi.gov>
Cc: Childs, Nathan D <nchilds@NCDOJ.GOV>; Burgos, Alexander N <alexander.burgos@oah.nc.gov>; Holder, Karen <Karen.Holder@ncdoi.gov>
Subject: RE: 2024 NC Mechanical Code Requests for Changes

Hi David,

Thanks for getting these back to me so soon. I have some responses, which I've added to the request document in blue.

Also, I will be looking at the stand-alone provisions for the Mechanical Code that you sent in earlier this month, and getting those back to you shortly.

Best,
Brian

Brian Liebman
Counsel to the North Carolina Rules Review Commission
Office of Administrative Hearings
(984)236-1948
brian.liebman@oah.nc.gov

REQUEST FOR CHANGES PURSUANT TO G.S. 150B-21.10

AGENCY: North Carolina Building Code Council

RULE CITATION: 2024 North Carolina Mechanical Code, All Provisions

DEADLINE FOR RECEIPT: TBD

***PLEASE NOTE:* This request may extend to several pages. Please be sure you have reached the end of the document.**

The Rules Review Commission staff has completed its review of this Rule prior to the Commission's next meeting. The Commission has not yet reviewed this Rule and therefore there has not been a determination as to whether the Rule will be approved. You may email the reviewing attorney to inquire concerning the staff recommendation.

In reviewing this Rule, the staff recommends the following changes be made:

In their comment in opposition to the NC Energy Conservation Code, the NC Homebuilders Association encloses an email exchange between their director of Codes and Construction, Cliff Isaac, and staff at the Building Code Council regarding the Council's failure to incorporate a statutory exemption into the NC Energy Conservation Code.

In the final email of the exchange, Building Code Council member Kim Wooten states:

> ***[t]here are many examples of building codes and state statutes not in agreement****. The NCBCC adopts codes for the general welfare of the public per statute. The General Assembly may make laws that contradict codes and may affect the general welfare of NC citizens, but that effort is independent of the NCBCC (emphasis added).*

In light of this statement, please disclose any and all provisions of the 2024 NC Mechanical Code that the Council is aware are "not in agreement" with the laws of the State of North Carolina.
NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: The 2024 NC Mechanical Code was adopted pursuant to North Carolina General Statutes Chapter 143, Article 9 by the North Carolina Building Code Council in agreement with the laws of the State of North Carolina. No changes were made per this comment and response.
Thanks for the reply, but I'm not sure this is entirely responsive to my question. Are there any particular provisions within the Mechanical Code that the BCC is aware are outside the authority provided to the BCC by the NC General Statutes?

I noticed various sections that contain similar, if not identical requirements as in the Fuel Gas Code for items such as dryer vents, carbon monoxide detection, saunas, and pollution control units. They looked similar, if not identical to me, but I can't be sure. Please confirm if they are identical. Also, why is it necessary to repeat these requirements here? Would a cross reference to the Fuel Gas Code not be sufficient?

Brian Liebman
Commission Counsel
Date submitted to agency: April 14, 2024

NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: Dryer vents, carbon monoxide detectors and alarms, saunas and pollution control units code language appear in both the 2024 NC Mechanical Code and the 2024 NC Fuel Gas Code as the energy source can be either electric or fuel gas. Having this content in both codes is practical for the user depending on the fuel source. No changes were made per this comment and response.

Outside of any appropriate changes regarding fuel source, are the requirements identical? If there are differences between the codes, that could be the source of significant ambiguity.

Please retype the rule accordingly and resubmit it to our office at 1711 New Hope Church Road, Raleigh, North Carolina 27609.

Brian Liebman
Commission Counsel
Date submitted to agency: April 14, 2024

REQUEST FOR CHANGES PURSUANT TO G.S. 150B-21.10

AGENCY: North Carolina Building Code Council

RULE CITATION: 2024 North Carolina Mechanical Code, Ch. 1

DEADLINE FOR RECEIPT: TBD

PLEASE NOTE: ***This request may extend to several pages. Please be sure you have reached the end of the document.***

The Rules Review Commission staff has completed its review of this Rule prior to the Commission's next meeting. The Commission has not yet reviewed this Rule and therefore there has not been a determination as to whether the Rule will be approved. You may email the reviewing attorney to inquire concerning the staff recommendation.

In reviewing this Rule, the staff recommends the following changes be made:

Generally to the Chapter, I noticed that Ch. 5 contains requirements for clothes dryer vents in the same way that the Fuel Gas Code does. They looked similar, if not identical to me, but I can't be sure. Please confirm if they are identical. Also, why is it necessary to repeat the requirements here? Would a cross reference to the Fuel Gas Code not be sufficient?

NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: Dryer vents code language appears in both the 2024 NC Mechanical Code and the 2024 NC Fuel Gas Code as the energy source can be either electric or fuel gas for dryers. Having this content in both codes is practical for the user depending on the fuel source of the dryer. No changes were made per this comment and response.

In 102.3, what happens if it cannot be determined what edition of the code a device or safeguard was installed under?

NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: This sentence is added: "In working with the owner or the owner's authorized agent, the code official has the authority to determine what is reasonable to satisfy the intent of the code when the edition of the code is not known."

In 102.3, how does a reinspection establish whether the owner or owner's agent is responsible for the maintenance of the plumbing system? I don't have a problem with requiring an owner or his agent to be responsible for maintenance, but I don't understand how the reinspection "determine[s] compliance with this provision."

NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: The second sentence is revised as follows: "To determine whether maintenance required under this Code has been performed, the code official shall have the authority to require a mechanical system to be reinspected."

In 102.4, second paragraph, define "minor".

NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: The sentence is changed as follows: "In the discretion of the code official, minor additions, alterations, renovations and repairs to existing mechanical systems shall meet the provisions for new construction, unless such work is done in the same manner and arrangement as was in the existing system, is not hazardous to the public health, safety, or welfare and is approved."

In 102.4, second paragraph, define "hazardous".

NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: The sentence is changed as follows: "In the discretion of the code official, minor additions, alterations, renovations and repairs to existing mechanical systems shall meet the provisions for new construction, unless such work is done in the same manner and arrangement as was in the existing system, is not hazardous to the public health, safety, or welfare and is approved."

In 102.9, this suggests that the code official has the authority to essentially make up new requirements that he considers "necessary for the strength, stability, or proper operation of an existing or proposed plumbing system". Is there statutory authority for this?

NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: The sentence is changed as follows: "Requirements necessary for the strength, stability or proper operation of an existing or proposed mechanical system, or for the public safety, health and general welfare covered by this code shall be determined by the code official."

Please retype the rule accordingly and resubmit it to our office at 1711 New Hope Church Road, Raleigh, North Carolina 27609.

Brian Liebman
Commission Counsel
Date submitted to agency: April 14, 2024

REQUEST FOR CHANGES PURSUANT TO G.S. 150B-21.10

AGENCY: North Carolina Building Code Council

RULE CITATION: 2024 North Carolina Mechanical Code, Ch. 2

DEADLINE FOR RECEIPT: TBD

***PLEASE NOTE:* This request may extend to several pages. Please be sure you have reached the end of the document.**

The Rules Review Commission staff has completed its review of this Rule prior to the Commission's next meeting. The Commission has not yet reviewed this Rule and therefore there has not been a determination as to whether the Rule will be approved. You may email the reviewing attorney to inquire concerning the staff recommendation.

In reviewing this Rule, the staff recommends the following changes be made:

> *In the definition of "Food-Grade Fluid", it limits the additives to anything contained in 21 CFR Parts 174-186. I checked, and noticed that other adjacent parts of the CFR appeared to discuss food additives, so I wanted to make sure those weren't omitted unintentionally. See also Section 1403.3.*
> *NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: Parts 174 through 186 are required to be followed to maintain water quality for heat exchanger use in solar thermal systems, not just 174 and 186. The definition and Section 1403.3 are revised accordingly to include the range of applicable parts.*
> *Yes, I understood that it was not just 174 and 186, but the range between them. I was referring to the Parts before and after the range, such as Parts 170, 171, and 172 which also refer to food additives.*

Please retype the rule accordingly and resubmit it to our office at 1711 New Hope Church Road, Raleigh, North Carolina 27609.

Brian Liebman
Commission Counsel
Date submitted to agency: April 14, 2024

REQUEST FOR CHANGES PURSUANT TO G.S. 150B-21.10

AGENCY: North Carolina Building Code Council

RULE CITATION: 2024 North Carolina Mechanical Code, Ch. 3

DEADLINE FOR RECEIPT: TBD

***PLEASE NOTE:* This request may extend to several pages. Please be sure you have reached the end of the document.**

The Rules Review Commission staff has completed its review of this Rule prior to the Commission's next meeting. The Commission has not yet reviewed this Rule and therefore there has not been a determination as to whether the Rule will be approved. You may email the reviewing attorney to inquire concerning the staff recommendation.

In reviewing this Rule, the staff recommends the following changes be made:

In 301.17, should "rodentproofing" be two words?
NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: "Rodentproofing" has been used as a single word in the lexicon of the NC Building Codes for many years. Rodentproofing appears as a single word in the recently approved 2024 NC Plumbing Code. No changes were made per this comment and response as the edits required do not change the use of the word in applications of the NC Building Codes.
In 304.3, the first sentence refers to "hazardous locations and public garages, private garages, repair garages, automotive motor fuel-dispensing facilities and parking garages . . . ." First, is there a reason for the conjunction between "hazardous locations" and "public garages"? Second, is there a distinction between the more specific types of garage listed and "parking garages"? I notice this language is also in 304.5.
NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: Elevation of ignition sources in public garages, private garages, repair garages, automotive fuel-dispensing facilities and parking garages is required because of they are consider hazardous locations in the application of this section. These types of hazardous locations typically have heavier-than-air flammable and combustible liquids and associated vapors stored within 18 inches of the floor, hence the requirement to elevate ignition sources in the hazardous locations listed. The garage types listed are tied to occupancy classifications in the 2024 NC Building Code. No changes were made per this comment and response.
OK, so is this a grammatical issue then? Because the way the sentence is written, it's a little unclear why it says "hazardous locations <u>and</u>" and then lists a bunch of specific places. Would it change the meaning to delete the "and", add a comma, and make that a list? i.e. "…located in hazardous ~~locations~~ ~~and~~<u>locations,</u> public garages, private garages…"

Also, to confirm, there are differences, explained in the Building Code, between the different kinds of garages listed here? Could you point me to where those are defined in the Building Code?

In 304.3.1, there's an exception in the main rule ("except that a single door is permitted…") that should be moved to the list of exceptions below.

NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: Edited accordingly.

In 307.2.1.1, the Code states that condensate drains shall not directly connect to "any plumbing drain, waste or vent pipe" but then goes on to allow such drains to discharge into a floor sink, floor drain, trench drain, mop sink, hub drain, standpipe, utility sink, or laundry sink. Is this requiring an air gap in the condensate discharge (i.e. "shall not directly connect") or is there some ambiguity created by "any plumbing drain" and the approved list of drains in the next sentence?

NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: Added a sentence after the second sentence to read as follows: "An air gap or air break shall be provided".

Please retype the rule accordingly and resubmit it to our office at 1711 New Hope Church Road, Raleigh, North Carolina 27609.

Brian Liebman
Commission Counsel
Date submitted to agency: April 14, 2024

REQUEST FOR CHANGES PURSUANT TO G.S. 150B-21.10

AGENCY: North Carolina Building Code Council

RULE CITATION: 2024 North Carolina Mechanical Code, Ch. 5

DEADLINE FOR RECEIPT: TBD

PLEASE NOTE: ***This request may extend to several pages. Please be sure you have reached the end of the document.***

The Rules Review Commission staff has completed its review of this Rule prior to the Commission's next meeting. The Commission has not yet reviewed this Rule and therefore there has not been a determination as to whether the Rule will be approved. You may email the reviewing attorney to inquire concerning the staff recommendation.

In reviewing this Rule, the staff recommends the following changes be made:

In 502.4, does "the general requirements of this chapter" refer to 502.1? Or something greater than that? Please specify.

NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: The 2024 NC Fire Code has additional installation and specific ventilation requirements in addition to the general ventilation requirements of Chapter 5 of the 2024 NC Mechanical Code. The reference is provided for convenience to the user of the code as the mechanical and fire code requirements work together to provide a code-compliant stationary storage battery system installation. No changes were made per this comment and response.

OK, but that doesn't answer my question. What are the "general requirements" of Chapter 5? Do you mean simply that stationary battery systems have to comply with all of Chapter 5 and *Section 1207.6.1 of the Fire Code? Or does "general requirements" mean something more specific, i.e. the provision in Chapter 5 labeled "General"?*

In 504.9, what is a "domestic clothes dryer"? (Please note that I probably did not ask this for the Fuel Gas Code, so if this language is there as well, please make any changes that come from this request to the Fuel Gas Code.)

NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: Domestic clothes dryers are listed and labeled by the manufacturer for use in family living type environments. The exhaust requirements for commercial clothes dryer are per the manufacturer's installation instructions as noted in Section 504.10. Domestic clothes dryers do not generate the heat that commercial clothes dryers generate hence they have separate and less stringent exhaust requirements as noted in Section 504.9. No changes were made per this comment and response.

In 505.1, what is "domestic cooking exhaust"? For both this and the previous request, I'm assuming that "domestic" means residential, and applies to residential dwelling units in apartments and other residential buildings not covered by the Residential Code. Is that correct?

NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: Domestic cooking exhaust equipment and appliances are listed and labeled by the manufacturer for use in dwelling units, break rooms and other sorts of commercial spaces where domestic cooking can occur. In these applications the cooking is limited to the types of cooking typically performed in a home environment. Commercial cooking is handled separately with more stringent *requirements covered elsewhere in Chapter 5 of the 2024 NC Mechanical Code. No changes were made per this comment and response.*

In 505.3, is there a specific provision of the International Building Code that you require Group I-1 and I-2 occupancies to comply with?
NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: I-1 and I-2 Institutional Group Occupancies have additional life safety and construction requirements for domestic cooking exhaust equipment exhaust ducts given the nature of the types of facilities included in those groups such hospitals and other supervised custodial care facilities. The reference is provided for convenience to the user of the codes as the requirements work together to provide a code-compliant domestic cooking exhaust system in these specific occupancies. No changes were made per this comment and response.
So, are there specific portions of the Building Code that apply in this context? It seems a bit unclear to generally point to the Building Code and in the same sentence point specifically to Section 904.14 of the Fire Code.

In 510.3, what is the symbol (it looks like a box) added after the text?
NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: The editing box is deleted.

Please retype the rule accordingly and resubmit it to our office at 1711 New Hope Church Road, Raleigh, North Carolina 27609.

Brian Liebman
Commission Counsel
Date submitted to agency: April 14, 2024

REQUEST FOR CHANGES PURSUANT TO G.S. 150B-21.10

AGENCY: North Carolina Building Code Council

RULE CITATION: 2024 North Carolina Mechanical Code, Ch. 6

DEADLINE FOR RECEIPT: TBD

***PLEASE NOTE:* This request may extend to several pages. Please be sure you have reached the end of the document.**

The Rules Review Commission staff has completed its review of this Rule prior to the Commission's next meeting. The Commission has not yet reviewed this Rule and therefore there has not been a determination as to whether the Rule will be approved. You may email the reviewing attorney to inquire concerning the staff recommendation.

In reviewing this Rule, the staff recommends the following changes be made:

> *In 603.8.2, leak testing as required by Section C403 of the Energy Conservation Code is required for an underground duct. Where in Section C403 is leak testing required? Also, would this apply to residential buildings, or would they be covered by R403?*
> *NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: Duct leakage is covered in the Section C403 Building Mechanical Systems of the 2024 NC Energy Conservation Code in various subsections. The requirement is limited to underground ducts serving commercial buildings covered in Section 403 Building Mechanical Systems of the 2024 NC Energy Conservation Code. No changes were made per this comment and response.*
> *OK, but where in Section C403? I'm asking because I looked and didn't see anything requiring leak testing, other than C403.1.2.3 requiring high pressure duct systems to be tested in accordance with SMACNA HVAC Air Duct Leakage Test Manual. Not sure that applies here. I see more requirements for leak testing in C402, but that appears to be restricted to the building thermal envelope.*

Please retype the rule accordingly and resubmit it to our office at 1711 New Hope Church Road, Raleigh, North Carolina 27609.

Brian Liebman
Commission Counsel
Date submitted to agency: April 14, 2024

REQUEST FOR CHANGES PURSUANT TO G.S. 150B-21.10

AGENCY: North Carolina Building Code Council

RULE CITATION: 2024 North Carolina Mechanical Code, Ch. 7

DEADLINE FOR RECEIPT: TBD

PLEASE NOTE: ***This request may extend to several pages. Please be sure you have reached the end of the document.***

The Rules Review Commission staff has completed its review of this Rule prior to the Commission's next meeting. The Commission has not yet reviewed this Rule and therefore there has not been a determination as to whether the Rule will be approved. You may email the reviewing attorney to inquire concerning the staff recommendation.

In reviewing this Rule, the staff recommends the following changes be made:

There appear to be two blank pages following the end of Ch. 7. Just making sure something wasn't accidentally omitted.

NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: Nothing omitted. The two blank pages are deleted.

Please retype the rule accordingly and resubmit it to our office at 1711 New Hope Church Road, Raleigh, North Carolina 27609.

Brian Liebman
Commission Counsel
Date submitted to agency: April 14, 2024

REQUEST FOR CHANGES PURSUANT TO G.S. 150B-21.10

AGENCY: North Carolina Building Code Council

RULE CITATION: 2024 North Carolina Mechanical Code, Ch. 9

DEADLINE FOR RECEIPT: TBD

PLEASE NOTE: ***This request may extend to several pages. Please be sure you have reached the end of the document.***

The Rules Review Commission staff has completed its review of this Rule prior to the Commission's next meeting. The Commission has not yet reviewed this Rule and therefore there has not been a determination as to whether the Rule will be approved. You may email the reviewing attorney to inquire concerning the staff recommendation.

In reviewing this Rule, the staff recommends the following changes be made:

> *In 905.1, the Code requires new wood-burning residential hydronic heaters to be EPA certified. Is there a particular certification, or process that must be followed?*
> *NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: It is an EPA certification stamp that the manufacturer is required to get based on federal law saying they meet clean air standards. The stamp is provided at the point of manufacture. No changes were made per this comment and response.*

Please retype the rule accordingly and resubmit it to our office at 1711 New Hope Church Road, Raleigh, North Carolina 27609.

Brian Liebman
Commission Counsel
Date submitted to agency: April 14, 2024

REQUEST FOR CHANGES PURSUANT TO G.S. 150B-21.10

AGENCY: North Carolina Building Code Council

RULE CITATION: 2024 North Carolina Mechanical Code, Ch. 10

DEADLINE FOR RECEIPT: TBD

PLEASE NOTE: ***This request may extend to several pages. Please be sure you have reached the end of the document.***

The Rules Review Commission staff has completed its review of this Rule prior to the Commission's next meeting. The Commission has not yet reviewed this Rule and therefore there has not been a determination as to whether the Rule will be approved. You may email the reviewing attorney to inquire concerning the staff recommendation.

In reviewing this Rule, the staff recommends the following changes be made:

> *With respect to the rules in Chapter 10 covering boilers, is the BCC empowered to regulate boilers? I thought the Department of Labor had the authority to govern boilers and pressure vessels under Chapter 95, Article 7A? Review of G.S. 143-138(b7) does seem to indicate that the BCC should include rules adopted by the Board of Boiler and Pressure Vessels Rules in an appendix, but not develop those rules themselves. I am aware of the exception in 1001.1, but I am not sure what boilers would not be covered by Ch 95. Please address.*
>
> *NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: The statute includes the boilers that are regulated by NCDOL. Boilers not regulated by NCDOL are covered in Chapter 10 of the 2024 NC Mechanical Code. The NCDOL requirements are quite involved and best not regurgitated here. No changes were made per this comment and response.*

Please retype the rule accordingly and resubmit it to our office at 1711 New Hope Church Road, Raleigh, North Carolina 27609.

Brian Liebman
Commission Counsel
Date submitted to agency: April 14, 2024

REQUEST FOR CHANGES PURSUANT TO G.S. 150B-21.10

AGENCY: North Carolina Building Code Council

RULE CITATION: 2024 North Carolina Mechanical Code, Ch. 11

DEADLINE FOR RECEIPT: TBD

PLEASE NOTE: ***This request may extend to several pages. Please be sure you have reached the end of the document.***

The Rules Review Commission staff has completed its review of this Rule prior to the Commission's next meeting. The Commission has not yet reviewed this Rule and therefore there has not been a determination as to whether the Rule will be approved. You may email the reviewing attorney to inquire concerning the staff recommendation.

In reviewing this Rule, the staff recommends the following changes be made:

In 1101.5, what is the symbol (it looks like a box) added after the text?
NCBCC Rule Coordinator Response: The editing box is deleted.

Please retype the rule accordingly and resubmit it to our office at 1711 New Hope Church Road, Raleigh, North Carolina 27609.

Brian Liebman
Commission Counsel
Date submitted to agency: April 14, 2024

Burgos, Alexander N

Subject: FW: 2024 NC Mechanical Code Requests for Changes
Attachments: 2024-0416 DBR Responses 04.2024 - BCC - NC Mechanical Code - Request for Changes - Copy.docx; D-1 20230613 Item B-1 2024 NCMC Rev 2. Form_0400_for_Permanent_Rule_December_2023.pdf; D-1 20230613 Item B-1 2024 NCMC Rev 2. Form_0400_for_Permanent_Rule_December_2023.docx; D-1 20230613 Item B-1 2024 NCMC Rev 2. Form_0400_for_Permanent_Rule_December_2023.pdf; RRC 13_NCMC_2024.docx; RRC 13_NCMC_2024.pdf; RRC 14_NCMC_2024.docx; RRC 14_NCMC_2024.pdf; RRC 15_NCMC_Ref_Std_2024.docx; RRC 15_NCMC_Ref_Std_2024.pdf; RRC 16_NCMC_2024_appA.docx; RRC 16_NCMC_2024_appA.pdf; RRC 17_NCMC_2024_appB.docx; RRC 17_NCMC_2024_appB.pdf; RRC 18_NCMC_2024_appC.docx; RRC 18_NCMC_2024_appC.pdf; RRC 01_NCMC_2024.docx; RRC 01_NCMC_2024.pdf; RRC 02_NCMC_2024.docx; RRC 02_NCMC_2024.pdf; RRC 03_NCMC_2024.docx; RRC 03_NCMC_2024.pdf; RRC 04_NCMC_2024.docx; RRC 04_NCMC_2024.pdf; RRC 05_NCMC_2024.docx; RRC 05_NCMC_2024.pdf; RRC 06_NCMC_2024.docx; RRC 06_NCMC_2024.pdf; RRC 07_NCMC_2024.docx; RRC 07_NCMC_2024.pdf; RRC 08_NCMC_2024.docx; RRC 08_NCMC_2024.pdf; RRC 09_NCMC_2024.docx; RRC 09_NCMC_2024.pdf; RRC 10_NCMC_2024.docx; RRC 10_NCMC_2024.pdf; RRC 11_NCMC_2024.docx; RRC 11_NCMC_2024.pdf; RRC 12_NCMC_2024.docx; RRC 12_NCMC_2024.pdf

Importance: High

From: Rittlinger, David B <david.rittlinger@ncdoi.gov>
Sent: Tuesday, April 16, 2024 3:56 PM
To: Liebman, Brian R <brian.liebman@oah.nc.gov>
Cc: Childs, Nathan D <nchilds@NCDOJ.GOV>; Burgos, Alexander N <alexander.burgos@oah.nc.gov>; Holder, Karen <Karen.Holder@ncdoi.gov>
Subject: RE: 2024 NC Mechanical Code Requests for Changes
Importance: High

Brian,
Good afternoon.
Attached are the following documents concerning the 2024 NC Mechanical Code
I have attached a separate pdf and MS Word copy of the amendment to be considered by the RRC as permanent rules.

Documents included:

1. Responses to RRC attorney comments: File: 2024-0416 DBR Responses-04.2024 - BCC - NC Mechanical Code - Request for Changes.docx
2. Revised Form 400
3. RRC formatted review aid documents of the 2024 NC Mechanical Code with changes as noted in the comments responses.

Let me know if you have any questions or comments.

Thank you for your work on this.
Have a great day.

David Bruce Rittlinger, PE, LEED AP
Division Chief – Codes and Interpretations

North Carolina
Office of State Fire Marshal
1202 Mail Service Center
Raleigh, NC 27699-1202
919.647.0008
david.rittlinger@ncdoi.gov

Link to free view of 2018 NC Codes
https://codes.iccsafe.org/codes/north-carolina

SUBMISSION FOR PERMANENT RULE

1. Rule-Making Agency: NC Building Code Council

2. Rule citation & name (name not required for repeal):
2024 North Carolina Mechanical Code (230613 Item B-1)

3. Action:
☐ **ADOPTION** ☒ **AMENDMENT** ☐ **REPEAL** ☐ **READOPTION** ☐ **REPEAL through READOPTION**

4. Rule exempt from RRC review?
☐ **Yes. Cite authority:**
☒ **No**

5. Rule automatically subject to legislative review?
☐ **Yes. Cite authority:**
☒ **No**

6. Notice for Proposed Rule:

☒ **Notice Required**
Notice of Text published on: August 15, 2023 in NC Register, August 1, 2023 agency website
Link to Agency notice:
Hearing on: September 12, 2023
Adoption by Agency on: December 12, 2023
☐ **Notice not required under G.S.:**
Adoption by Agency on:

7. Rule establishes or increases a fee? (See G.S. 12-3.1)

☐ **Yes**
Agency submitted request for consultation on:
Consultation not required. Cite authority:

☒ **No**

8. Fiscal impact. Check all that apply.

☐ **This Rule was part of a combined analysis.**

☐ **State funds affected**
☐ **Local funds affected**
☐ **Substantial economic impact (≥$1,000,000)**
☐ **Approved by OSBM**
☒ **No fiscal note required**

9. REASON FOR ACTION

9A. What prompted this action? Check all that apply:

☒ **Agency**
☐ **Court order / cite:**
☐ **Federal statute / cite:**
☐ **Federal regulation / cite:**
☐ **Legislation enacted by the General Assembly**
Cite Session Law:
☐ **Petition for rule-making**
☐ **Other:**

9B. Explain: This amendment is proposed to protect the public by updating the code to current standards of practice. This rule is not expected to either have a substantial economic impact or increase local and state funds. A fiscal note has not been prepared.

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2025.
The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

SUBMISSION FOR PERMANENT RULE

10. Rulemaking Coordinator: David B. Rittlinger
David B. Rittlinger
Phone: (919)647-0008
E-Mail: david.rittlinger@ncdoi.gov

Additional agency contact, if any:
Phone:
E-Mail:

11. Signature of Agency Head* or Rule-making Coordinator:

DB Rittlinger

***If this function has been delegated (reassigned) pursuant to G.S. 143B-10(a), submit a copy of the delegation with this form.**

Typed Name: David B. Rittlinger
Title: Interim NCDOI-OSFM Deputy Commissioner of Engineering and Chief Code Consultant

RRC AND OAH USE ONLY

Action taken:

☐ RRC extended period of review:
☐ RRC determined substantial changes:
☐ Withdrawn by agency
☐ Subject to Legislative Review
☐ Other:

Documents included:

1. Formatted Review Aide and 2024 North Carolina Mechanical Code: Chapter 1 through Appendix C*

   TEXT THAT IS ~~STRUCKTHROUGH~~ IS DELETED FROM THE 2018 EDITION TO CREATE THE 2024 EDITION.

   TEXT THAT IS UNDERLINED IS NEW TEXT TO CREATE THE 2024 EDITION.

   *Of note, publishing edits to the Cover page, North Carolina Building Code Council members and committees lists, North Carolina Department of Insurance contact information, Preface, Table of Contents and Index are not included as those are publishing edits that do not contain permanent rule content. These publishing edits contain NCBCC and NCDOI contact information, instructions on how to use the code, and guidance on where to find information in the code for the public-at-large. Coordination of the correct page numbers tied to the Table of Contents and Index cannot be accurately completed until the first draft of publishing is completed for NCDOI-OSFM Engineering & Codes staff review prior to completion of publishing by the International Code Council. NCDOI-OSFM Engineering & Codes staff will be coordinating the publication of all these publishing edits with the International Code Council once the proposed 2024 North Carolina Building Codes are approved.

2. Appendix C Code Change Proposal North Carolina Building Code Council (230613 Item B-1) 2024 North Carolina Mechanical Code (File: B-1 2024 NCMC). A link to the petition can be found here: https://www.ncosfm.gov/b-1-2024-ncmc

3. 2017-2023 Approved Amendments to the 2018 North Carolina Mechanical Code (File: 2017-2023 Approved Amendments 230314-Mechanical Code). A link to these amendments can be found here: https://www.ncosfm.gov/2017-2023-approved-amendments-230314mechanical-code

SUBMISSION FOR PERMANENT RULE

(see attached documents)

CHAPTER 1
SCOPE AND ADMINISTRATION

PART 1—SCOPE AND APPLICATION

SECTION 101
SCOPE AND GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

[A] 101.1 Title. These regulations shall be known as the *North Carolina Mechanical Code* as adopted by the North Carolina Building Code Council on ~~June 13, 2017~~December 12, 2023 to be effective January 1, ~~2019~~2025. References to the *International Codes* shall mean the North Carolina Codes. The North Carolina amendments to the *International Codes* are underlined.

[A] 101.2 Scope. This code shall regulate the design, installation, maintenance, *alteration* and inspection of mechanical systems that are permanently installed and utilized to provide control of environmental conditions and related processes within buildings. This code shall also regulate those mechanical systems, system components, *equipment* and ~~appliances~~*appliances* specifically addressed herein. The installation of fuel gas distribution piping and *equipment*, fuel gas-fired ~~appliances~~*appliances* and fuel gas-fired *appliance* venting systems shall be regulated by the *International Fuel Gas Code*.

> **Exception:** Detached one- and two-family dwellings and ~~multiple single-family dwellings (townhouses)~~ townhouses not more than three stories ~~high~~above grade plane in height with a separate means of egress and their accessory structures not more than three stories above grade plane in height shall comply with the *International Residential Code*.

[A] 101.2.1 Appendices. Provisions in the appendices shall not apply unless specifically adopted or referenced in this code.

[A] 101.3 ~~Intent~~Purpose. The purpose of this code is to establish minimum ~~standards~~requirements to provide a reasonable level of safety, health, property protection and ~~public~~general welfare by regulating and controlling the design, construction, installation, quality of materials, location, operation and maintenance or use of mechanical *equipment* or systems.

[A] 101.4 Severability. If a section, subsection, sentence, clause or phrase of this code is, for any reason, held to be unconstitutional, such decision shall not affect the validity of the remaining portions of this code.

101.5 Requirements of other State agencies, occupational licensing boards or commissions. The *North Carolina State Building Codes* do not include all additional requirements for buildings and structures that may be imposed by other State agencies, occupational licensing boards and commissions. It shall be the responsibility of a permit holder, registered design professional, contractor or occupational license holder to determine whether any additional requirements exist.

SECTION 102
APPLICABILITY

[A] 102.1 General. Where there is a conflict between a general requirement and a specific requirement, the specific requirement shall govern. Where, in a specific case, different sections of this code specify different materials, methods of construction or other requirements, the most restrictive shall govern.

[A] 102.2 Existing installations. Except as otherwise provided for in this chapter, a provision in this code shall not require the removal, *alteration* or abandonment of, nor prevent the continued utilization and maintenance of, a mechanical system lawfully in existence at the time of the adoption of this code.

[A] 102.2.1 Existing buildings. Additions, alterations, renovations or repairs related to building or structural issues shall be regulated by the *International Existing Building Code*.

[A] 102.3 Maintenance. Mechanical systems, both existing and new, and parts thereof shall be maintained in proper operating condition in accordance with the original design and in a safe and sanitary condition. Devices or safeguards that are required by this code shall be maintained in compliance with the edition of the code under which they were installed. In working with the owner or the owner's authorized agent, the code official has the authority to determine what is reasonable to satisfy the intent of the code when the edition of the code is not known.

The owner or the owner's authorized agent shall be responsible for maintenance of mechanical systems. To determine ~~compliance with this provision,~~whether maintenance required under this Code has been performed, the code official shall have the authority to require a mechanical system to be reinspected.

[A] 102.4 Additions, alterations or repairs. Additions, alterations, renovations or repairs to a mechanical system shall conform to that required for a new mechanical system without requiring the existing mechanical system to comply with all of the requirements of this code. Additions, ~~alterations~~alterations, renovations or repairs shall not cause an existing mechanical system to become unsafe, hazardous or overloaded.

~~Minor~~In the discretion of the code official, minor additions, alterations, renovations and repairs to existing mechanical systems shall meet the provisions for new construction, unless such work is done in the same manner and arrangement as was in the existing system, is not hazardous to the public health, safety, or welfare and is *approved*.

[A] 102.5 Change in occupancy. It shall be unlawful to make a change in the *occupancy* of any structure ~~which~~that will subject the structure to any special provision of this code applicable to the new *occupancy* without approval. The code official shall certify that such structure meets the intent of the provisions of law governing ~~building~~*building* construction for the proposed new *occupancy* and that such change of *occupancy* does not result in any hazard to the public health, safety or welfare.

[A] 102.6 Historic buildings. The provisions of this code relating to the construction, *alteration*, repair, enlargement, restoration, relocation or moving of buildings or structures shall not be mandatory for existing buildings or structures identified and classified by the state or local jurisdiction as historic buildings where such buildings or structures are judged by the code official to be safe and in the public interest of health, safety and welfare regarding any proposed construction, *alteration*, repair, enlargement, restoration, relocation or moving of buildings.

[A] 102.7 Moved buildings. Except as determined by Section 102.2, mechanical systems that are a part of buildings or structures moved into or within the jurisdiction shall comply with the provisions of this code for new installations.

[A] 102.8 Referenced codes and standards. The codes and standards referenced herein shall be those that are listed in Chapter 15 and such codes and standards shall be considered as part of the requirements of this code to the prescribed extent of each such reference and as further regulated in Sections 102.8.1 and 102.8.2.

Exception: Where enforcement of a code provision would violate the conditions of the listing of the *equipment* or *appliance*, the conditions of the listing and the manufacturer's installation instructions shall apply.

[A] 102.8.1 Conflicts. Where conflicts occur between provisions of this code and the referenced standards, the provisions of this code shall apply.

[A] 102.8.2 Provisions in referenced codes and standards. Where the extent of the reference to a referenced code or standard includes subject matter that is within the scope of this code, the provisions of this code, as applicable, shall take precedence over the provisions in the referenced code or standard.

[A] 102.9 Requirements not covered by this code. Requirements necessary for the strength, stability or proper operation of an existing or proposed mechanical system, or for the public safety, health and general ~~welfare, not specifically~~welfare covered by this code, shall be determined by the code official.

[A] 102.10 Other laws. The provisions of this code shall not be deemed to nullify any provisions of local, state or federal law.

[A] 102.11 Application of references. Reference to chapter section numbers, or to provisions not specifically identified by number, shall be construed to refer to such chapter, section or provision of this code.

PART 2—ADMINISTRATION AND ENFORCEMENT

See the North Carolina Administrative Code and Policies for the administration and enforcement of the North Carolina State Building Codes as adopted by the Building Code Council and enforced by State and local code enforcement officials.

~~SECTION 103~~
~~DEPARTMENT OF MECHANICAL INSPECTIONCODE COMPLIANCE AGENCY~~

~~Deleted. See the *North Carolina Administrative Code and Policies*.~~

~~SECTION 104~~
~~DUTIES AND POWERS OF THE CODE OFFICIAL~~

~~Deleted. See the *North Carolina Administrative Code and Policies*.~~

SECTION ~~105~~103
APPROVAL

[A] ~~105.1~~103.1 Modifications. Where there are practical difficulties involved in carrying out the provisions of this code, the code official shall have the authority to grant modifications for individual cases upon application of the owner or owner's authorized agent, provided that the code official shall first find that special individual reason makes the strict letter of this code impractical and the modification is in compliance with the intent and purpose of this code and does not lessen health, life and fire safety requirements. The details of action granting modifications shall be recorded and entered in the files of the mechanical inspection department.

[A] ~~105.2~~103.2 Alternative materials, ~~methods, equipment and appliances.~~design and methods of construction and equipment. The provisions of this code are not intended to prevent the installation of any material or to prohibit any design or method of construction not specifically prescribed by this code, provided that any such alternative has been *approved*. An alternative ~~material~~material, design or method of construction shall be *approved* where the code official finds that the proposed design ~~is satisfactory and~~satisfactorily complies with the intent of the provisions of this code, and that the material, method or work offered is, for the purpose intended, not less than the equivalent of that prescribed in this code in quality, strength, effectiveness, fire resistance, durability and safety. Where the alternative material, design or method of construction is not ~~approved~~*approved*, the *code official* shall respond in writing, stating the reasons why the alternative was not ~~approved~~*approved*. See the procedural requirements of Section 105 of the North Carolina Administrative Code and Policies for guidance.

[A] ~~105.2.1~~103.2.1 Research reports. Supporting data, where necessary to assist in the approval of materials or assemblies not specifically provided for in this code, shall consist of valid research reports from *approved* sources.

[A] ~~105.3~~103.3 Required testing. Where there is insufficient evidence of compliance with the provisions of this code, or evidence that a material or method does not conform to the requirements of this code, or in order to substantiate claims for alternative materials or methods, the code official shall have the authority to require tests as evidence of compliance to be made at no expense to the jurisdiction.

[A] ~~105.3.1~~103.3.1 Test methods. Test methods shall be as specified in this code or by other recognized test standards. In the absence of recognized and accepted test methods, the code official shall approve the testing procedures.

[A] ~~105.3.2~~103.3.2 Testing agency. Tests shall be performed by an *approved* agency.

[A] ~~105.3.3~~103.3.3 Test reports. Reports of tests shall be retained by the code official for the period required for retention of public records.

[A] ~~105.4~~103.4 Approved materials and equipment. Materials, *equipment* and devices *approved* by the code official shall be constructed and installed in accordance with such approval.

[A] ~~105.5~~103.5 Material, equipment and appliance reuse. Materials, *equipment*, ~~appliances~~*appliances* and devices shall not be reused unless such elements have been reconditioned, tested and placed in good and proper working condition and *approved*.

See the *North Carolina Administrative Code and Policies* for additional guidance.

SECTION ~~106~~104 PERMITS

[A] ~~106.1~~104.1 Where required. An owner, owner's authorized agent or contractor who desires to erect, install, enlarge, alter, repair, remove, convert or replace a mechanical system, the installation of which is regulated by this code, or to cause such work to be performed, shall first make application to the code official and obtain the required permit for the work.

Exception: Where *equipment* and *appliance* replacements or repairs must be performed in an emergency situation, the permit application shall be submitted within the next working business day of the department of mechanical inspection.

[A] ~~106.2~~104.2 Permits not required. Permits shall not be required for the following:

1. Portable heating *appliances*.
2. Portable ventilation *appliances* and *equipment*.
3. Portable cooling units.
4. Steam, hot water or chilled water piping within any heating or cooling *equipment* or *appliances* regulated by this code.
5. The replacement of any minor part that does not alter the approval of *equipment* or an *appliance* or make such *equipment* or *appliance* unsafe.
6. Portable evaporative coolers.
7. Self-contained refrigeration systems that contain 10 pounds (4.5 kg) or less of refrigerant, or that are actuated by motors of 1 horsepower (0.75 kW) or less.
8. Portable fuel cell *appliances* that are not connected to a fixed piping system and are not interconnected to a power grid.

Exemption from the permit requirements of this code shall not be deemed to grant authorization for work to be done in violation of the provisions of this code or other laws or ordinances of this jurisdiction.

See the *North Carolina Administrative Code and Policies* for additional permitting requirements.

~~SECTION 107~~ ~~INSPECTIONS AND TESTING~~~~CONSTRUCTION DOCUMENTS~~ **

~~Deleted. See the *North Carolina Administrative Code and Policies*.~~

~~SECTION 108~~ ~~VIOLATIONS~~~~NOTICE OF APPROVAL~~ **

~~Deleted. See the *North Carolina Administrative Code and Policies*.~~

** ~~SECTION 109~~
~~MEANS OF APPEAL~~FEES

~~Deleted. See the *North Carolina Administrative Code and Policies*.~~

~~SECTION 110~~
~~SERVICE UTILITIES~~ **

~~Deleted. See the *North Carolina Administrative Code and Policies*.~~

** SECTION ~~111~~105
TEMPORARY EQUIPMENT, SYSTEMS AND USES

[A] ~~110.1~~~~111.1~~105.1 General. The code official is authorized to issue a permit for temporary *equipment*, systems and uses. Such permits shall be limited as to time of service, but shall not be permitted for more than 180 days. The code official is authorized to grant extensions for ~~demonstrated cause.~~when the requesting permit holder has demonstrated to the code official's satisfaction that public health, safety and welfare will not be endangered by this temporary authorization.

[A] ~~110.2~~~~111.2~~105.2 Conformance. Temporary *equipment*, systems and uses shall conform to the structural strength, fire safety, means of egress, accessibility, light, ventilation and sanitary requirements of this code as necessary to ensure the public health, safety and general welfare.

[A] ~~110.3~~~~111.3~~105.3 Temporary utilities. The code official is authorized to give permission to temporarily supply utilities before an installation has been fully completed and the final certificate of completion has been issued. The part covered by the temporary certificate shall comply with the requirements specified for temporary lighting, heat or power in the code.

[A] ~~110.4~~~~111.4~~105.4 Termination of approval. The code official is authorized to terminate such permit for temporary *equipment*, systems or uses and to order the temporary *equipment*, systems or uses to be discontinued.

** ~~SECTION 112~~
~~INSPECTIONS AND TESTING~~

~~Deleted. See the *North Carolina Administrative Code and Policies*.~~

~~SECTION 113~~
~~MEANS OF APPEALS~~

~~Deleted. See the *North Carolina Administrative Code and Policies*.~~

~~SECTION 114~~
~~BOARD OF APPEALS~~

~~Deleted. See the *North Carolina Administrative Code and Policies*.~~

** ~~SECTION 115~~
~~VIOLATIONS~~

~~Deleted. See the *North Carolina Administrative Code and Policies*.~~

~~SECTION 116~~
~~STOP WORK ORDER~~

~~Deleted. See the *North Carolina Administrative Code and Policies*.~~

CHAPTER 2
DEFINITIONS

SECTION 201
GENERAL

201.1 Scope. Unless otherwise expressly stated, the following words and terms shall, for the purposes of this code, have the meanings indicated in this chapter.

201.2 Interchangeability. Words used in the present tense include the future; words in the masculine gender include the feminine and neuter; the singular number includes the plural and the plural, the singular.

201.3 Terms defined in other codes. Where terms are not defined in this code and are defined in the *International Building Code*, *International Fire Code*, *International Fuel Gas Code* or *International Plumbing Code*, such terms shall have meanings ascribed to them as in those codes.

201.4 Terms not defined. Where terms are not defined through the methods authorized by this section, such terms shall have ordinarily accepted meanings such as the context implies.

SECTION 202
GENERAL DEFINITIONS

ABRASIVE MATERIALS. Moderately abrasive particulate in high concentrations, and highly abrasive particulate in moderate and high concentrations, such as alumina, bauxite, iron silicate, sand and slag.

ABSORPTION SYSTEM. A refrigerating system in which refrigerant is pressurized by pumping a chemical solution of refrigerant in absorbent, and then separated by the addition of heat in a generator, condensed (to reject heat), expanded, evaporated (to provide refrigeration), and reabsorbed in an absorber to repeat the cycle; the system ~~may~~can be single or multiple effect, the latter using multiple stages or internally cascaded use of heat to improve efficiency.

ACCESS (TO). That which enables a device, *appliance* or *equipment* to be reached by ready access or by a means that first requires the removal or movement of a ~~panel, door~~panel or similar obstruction [see also ~~*"Ready access (to)"]*~~*Ready access (to)*].

AIR. ~~All air~~Air supplied to mechanical *equipment* and ~~appliances~~*appliances* for *combustion*, ventilation, cooling and similar purposes. Standard air is air at standard temperature and pressure, namely, 70ºF (21ºC) and 29.92 inches of mercury (101.3 kPa).

AIR, EXHAUST. Air being removed from any space, *appliance* or piece of *equipment* and conveyed directly to the atmosphere by means of openings or ducts. Relief air is classified as *exhaust air*.

AIR, MAKEUP. Any combination of outdoor and transfer air intended to replace ~~exhaust air~~*exhaust air* and exfiltration.

AIR, OUTDOOR. Ambient air that enters a building through a ventilation system, through intentional openings for natural ventilation, or by infiltration.

AIR, TRANSFER. Air moved from one indoor space to another.

AIR CONDITIONING. The treatment of air so as to control simultaneously the temperature, humidity, cleanness and distribution of the air to meet the requirements of a ~~conditioned space~~*conditioned space*.

AIR DISPERSION SYSTEM. Any diffuser system designed to both convey air within a room, space or area and diffuse air into that space while operating under positive pressure. Systems are commonly constructed of, but not limited to, fabric or plastic film.

AIR DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM. Any system of ducts, ~~plenums~~*plenums* and air-handling *equipment* that circulates air within a space or spaces and includes systems made up of one or more air-handling units.

AIR-CONDITIONING SYSTEM. A system that consists of heat exchangers, blowers, filters, supply, exhaust and return ducts, and shall include any apparatus installed in connection therewith.

AIR-HANDLING UNIT. A blower or fan used for the purpose of distributing supply air to a room, space or area.

[A] ALTERATION. A change in a mechanical system that involves an extension, addition or change to the arrangement, type or purpose of the original installation.

APPLIANCE. A device or apparatus that is manufactured and designed to utilize energy and for which this code provides specific requirements.

APPLIANCE, EXISTING. Any *appliance* regulated by this code ~~which~~that was legally installed prior to the effective date of this code, or for which a permit to install has been issued.

APPLIANCE, VENTED. An *appliance* designed and installed in such a manner that all of the products of *combustion* are conveyed directly from the *appliance* to the outdoor atmosphere through an *approved chimney* or vent system.

APPLIANCE TYPE.

High-heat appliance. Any *appliance* in which the products of *combustion* at the point of entrance to the flue under normal operating conditions have a temperature greater than 2,000ºF (1093ºC).

Low-heat appliance (residential appliance). Any *appliance* in which the products of *combustion* at the point of entrance to the flue under normal operating conditions have a temperature of 1,000ºF (538ºC) or less.

Medium-heat appliance. Any *appliance* in which the products of *combustion* at the point of entrance to the flue under normal operating conditions have a temperature of more than 1,000ºF (538ºC), but not greater than 2,000ºF (1093ºC).

[A] APPROVED. Acceptable to the code official, or other authority having jurisdiction, for compliance with the provisions of the applicable code or referenced standard.

[A] APPROVED AGENCY. An established and recognized agency that is regularly engaged in conducting ~~tests or~~tests, furnishing inspection services or furnishing product certification where such agency has been approved by the code official.

AUTOMATIC BOILER. Any class of boiler that is equipped with the controls and limit devices specified in Chapter 10.

BALANCED VENTILATION. Any combination of concurrently operating mechanical exhaust and mechanical supply whereby the total mechanical exhaust airflow rate is within 10 percent of the total mechanical supply airflow rate.

BATHROOM. A room containing a bathtub, shower, spa or similar bathing fixture (see also "Toilet room.").

BOILER. A closed heating *appliance* intended to supply hot water or steam for space heating, processing or power purposes. Low-pressure boilers operate at pressures less than or equal to 15 pounds per square inch (psi) (103 kPa) for steam and 160 psi (1103 kPa) for water. High-pressure boilers operate at pressures exceeding those pressures. See N.C.G.S. Chapter 95, Article 7A and 13 NCAC 13 for specific requirements on boilers and references to the North Carolina Department of Labor.

BOILER ROOM. A room primarily utilized for the installation of a boiler.

BRAZED JOINT. A gas-tight joint obtained by the joining of metal parts with metallic mixtures or alloys ~~which~~that melt at a temperature above 1,000ºF (538ºC), but lower than the melting temperature of the parts to be joined.

BRAZING. A metal joining process wherein coalescence is produced by the use of a nonferrous filler metal having a melting point above 1,000ºF (538ºC), but lower than that of the base metal being joined. The filler material is distributed between the closely fitted surfaces of the joint by capillary attraction.

BREATHING ZONE. The region within an occupied space between planes 3 and 72 inches (76 and 1829 mm) above the floor and more than 2 feet (610 mm) from the walls of the space or from fixed air-conditioning *equipment*.

BTU. Abbreviation for British thermal unit, which is the quantity of heat required to raise the temperature of 1 pound (454 g) of water 1ºF (0.56ºC) (1 Btu = 1055 J).

[A] BUILDING. Any structure ~~occupied~~utilized or intended for supporting or sheltering any *occupancy*.

CARBON MONOXIDE ALARM. A single- or multiple-station alarm intended to detect carbon monoxide gas and alert occupants by a distinct audible signal. It incorporates a sensor, control components and an alarm notification appliance in a single unit.

CARBON MONOXIDE DETECTOR. A device with an integral sensor to detect carbon monoxide gas and transmit an alarm signal to a connected alarm control unit.

[BF] CEILING RADIATION DAMPER. A *listed* device installed in a ceiling membrane of a fire-resistance-rated floor/ceiling or roof/ceiling assembly to limit automatically the radiative heat transfer through an air inlet/outlet opening. <u>Ceiling radiation dampers are classified for use in either static systems that will automatically shut down in the event of a fire or in dynamic systems that continue to operate during a fire. A dynamic ceiling radiation damper is tested and rated for closure under elevated temperature airflow.</u>

CHIMNEY. A primarily vertical structure containing one or more flues, for the purpose of carrying gaseous products of *combustion* and air from a fuel-burning *appliance* to the outdoor atmosphere.

Factory-built chimney. A *listed* and *labeled chimney* composed of factory-made components, assembled in the field in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and the conditions of the listing.

Masonry chimney. A field-constructed *chimney* composed of solid masonry units, bricks, stones or concrete.

Metal chimney. A field-constructed *chimney* of metal.

CHIMNEY CONNECTOR. A pipe that connects a fuel-burning *appliance* to a *chimney*.

CLEARANCE. The minimum distance through air measured between the heat-producing surface of the mechanical *appliance*, device or *equipment* and the surface of the combustible material or assembly.

CLOSED COMBUSTION SOLID-FUEL-BURNING APPLIANCE. A heat-producing *appliance* that employs a *combustion* chamber that does not have openings other than the flue collar, fuel charging door and adjustable openings provided to control the amount of *combustion air* that enters the *combustion* chamber.

CLOSET. An enclosed or recessed area used to store clothing, linens or other household items.

CLOTHES DRYER. An *appliance* used to dry wet laundry by means of heat.

[A] CODE. These regulations, subsequent amendments thereto, or any emergency rule or regulation that the administrative authority having jurisdiction has lawfully adopted.

[A] CODE OFFICIAL. The officer or other designated authority charged with the administration and enforcement of this code, or a duly authorized representative.

[BF] COMBINATION FIRE/SMOKE DAMPER. A *listed* device installed in ducts and air transfer openings designed to close automatically upon the detection of heat and resist the passage of flame and smoke. The device is installed to operate automatically, be controlled by a smoke detection system, and where required, is capable of being positioned from a fire command center.

COMBUSTIBLE ASSEMBLY. Wall, floor, ceiling or other assembly constructed of one or more component materials that are not defined as noncombustible.

[F] COMBUSTIBLE LIQUID. A liquid having a closed cup flash point at or above 100ºF (38ºC). Combustible liquids shall be subdivided as follows:

Class II. Liquids having a closed cup flash point at or above 100ºF (38ºC) and below 140ºF (60ºC).

Class IIIA. Liquids having a closed cup flash point at or above 140ºF (60ºC) and below 200ºF (93ºC).

Class IIIB. Liquids having a closed cup flash point at or above 200ºF (93ºC).

The category of combustible liquids does not include compressed gases or cryogenic fluids.

COMBUSTIBLE MATERIAL. Any material not defined as noncombustible.

COMBUSTION. In the context of this code, refers to the rapid oxidation of fuel accompanied by the production of heat or heat and light.

COMBUSTION AIR. Air necessary for complete *combustion* of a fuel, including *theoretical air* and excess air.

COMBUSTION CHAMBER. The portion of an *appliance* within which *combustion* occurs.

COMBUSTION PRODUCTS. Constituents resulting from the *combustion* of a fuel with the oxygen of the air, including the inert gases, but excluding excess air.

COMMERCIAL COOKING APPLIANCES. *Appliances* used in a commercial food service establishment for heating or cooking food. ~~food and which produce grease vapors, steam, fumes, smoke or odors that are required to be removed through a local exhaust ventilation system. Such appliances include deep fat fryers; upright broilers; griddles; broilers; steam-jacketed kettles; hot-top ranges; under-fired broilers (charbroilers); ovens; barbecues; rotisseries; and similar appliances. For the purpose of this definition, a food service establishment shall include any building or a portion thereof used for the preparation and serving of food.~~ For the purpose of this definition, a commercial food service establishment is where food is prepared for sale or is prepared on a scale that is by volume and frequency not representative of domestic household cooking.

COMMERCIAL COOKING RECIRCULATING SYSTEM. Self-contained system consisting of the exhaust hood, the cooking *equipment*, the filters and the fire suppression system. The system is designed to capture cooking vapors and residues generated from commercial cooking *equipment*. The system removes contaminants from the *exhaust air* and recirculates the air to the space from which it was withdrawn.

COMMERCIAL KITCHEN HOODS.

Backshelf hood. A backshelf hood is also referred to as a low-proximity hood, or as a sidewall hood where wall mounted. Its front lower lip is low over the *appliance*(s) and is "set back" from the front of the ~~appliance(s)~~*appliance(s)*. It is always closed to the rear of the ~~appliances~~*appliances* by a panel where free-standing, or by a panel or wall where wall mounted, and its height above the cooking surface varies. (This style of hood can be constructed with partial end panels to increase its effectiveness in capturing the effluent generated by the cooking operation.)

Double island canopy hood. A double island canopy hood is placed over back-to-back ~~appliances~~*appliances* or *appliance* lines. It is open on all sides and overhangs both fronts and the sides of the *appliance*(s). It could have a wall panel between the backs of the ~~appliances~~*appliances*. (The fact that *exhaust air* is drawn from both sides of the double canopy to meet in the center causes each side of this hood to emulate a wall canopy hood, and thus it functions much the same with or without an actual wall panel between the backs of the ~~appliances~~*appliances*.)

Eyebrow hood. An eyebrow hood is mounted directly to the face of an *appliance*, such as an oven and dishwasher, above the opening(s) or door(s) from which effluent is emitted, extending past the sides and overhanging the front of the opening to capture the effluent.

Pass-over hood. A pass-over hood is a free-standing form of a backshelf hood constructed low enough to pass food over the top.

Single island canopy hood. A single island canopy hood is placed over a single *appliance* or *appliance* line. It is open on all sides and overhangs the front, rear and sides of the *appliance*(s). A single island canopy is more susceptible to cross drafts and requires a greater ~~*exhaust*~~exhaust ~~*air* flow~~airflow than an equivalent sized wall-mounted canopy to capture and contain effluent generated by the cooking operation(s).

Wall canopy hood. A wall canopy exhaust hood is mounted against a wall above a single *appliance* or line of *appliance*(s), or it could be free-standing with a back panel from the rear of the ~~appliances~~*appliances* to the hood. It overhangs the front and sides of the *appliance*(s) on all open sides.

The wall acts as a back panel, forcing the *makeup air* to be drawn across the front of the cooking *equipment*, thus increasing the effectiveness of the hood to capture and contain effluent generated by the cooking operation(s).

COMPENSATING HOODS. *Compensating hoods* are those having integral (built-in) *makeup air* supply. The *makeup air* supply for such hoods is generally supplied from: short-circuit flow from inside the hood, air curtain flow from the bottom of the front face, and front face discharge from the outside front wall of the hood. The compensating makeup airflow can also be supplied from the rear or side of the hood, or the rear, front or sides of the cooking *equipment*. The makeup airflow can be one or a combination of methods.

COMPRESSOR. A specific machine, with or without accessories, for compressing a gas.

COMPRESSOR, POSITIVE DISPLACEMENT. A compressor in which increase in pressure is attained by changing the internal volume of the compression chamber.

COMPRESSOR UNIT. A compressor with its prime mover and accessories.

CONCEALED LOCATION. A location that cannot be accessed without damaging permanent parts of the building structure or finish surface. Spaces above, below or behind readily removable panels or doors shall not be considered as concealed.

CONDENSATE. The liquid that condenses from a gas (including flue gas) caused by a reduction in temperature.

CONDENSER. A heat exchanger designed to liquefy refrigerant vapor by removal of heat.

CONDENSING UNIT. A specific refrigerating machine combination for a given refrigerant, consisting of one or more power-driven compressors, condensers and, where required, liquid receivers, and the regularly furnished accessories.

CONDITIONED SPACE. ~~For purposes of this code, an~~An area, room or space that is enclosed within the building thermal envelope and that is directly heated or cooled or that is indirectly heated or cooled. Spaces are indirectly heated or cooled where they communicate through openings with conditioned spaces, where they are separated from conditioned spaces by uninsulated walls, floors or ceilings, or where they contain uninsulated ducts, piping or other sources of heating or cooling.

[A] CONSTRUCTION DOCUMENTS. The written, graphic and pictorial documents prepared or assembled for describing the design, location and physical characteristics of the elements of the project necessary for obtaining a building permit. The construction drawings shall be drawn to an appropriate scale.

CONTROL. A manual or automatic device designed to regulate the gas, air, water or electrical supply to, or operation of, a mechanical system.

CONVERSION BURNER. A burner designed to supply gaseous fuel to an *appliance* originally designed to utilize another fuel.

COOKING APPLIANCE. See ~~*"Commercial cooking appliances."*~~ *Commercial cooking appliances.*

DAMPER. A manually or automatically controlled device to regulate draft or the rate of flow of air or *combustion* gases.

Volume damper. A device that, where installed, will restrict, retard or direct the flow of air in a duct, or the products of *combustion* in a heat-producing *appliance*, its vent connector, vent or *chimney* therefrom.

[BS] DESIGN FLOOD ELEVATION. The elevation of the "design flood," including wave height, relative to the datum specified on the community's legally designated flood hazard area map. In areas designated as Zone AO, the *design flood elevation* shall be the elevation of the highest existing grade of the building's perimeter plus the depth number, in feet (mm), specified on the flood hazard map. In areas designated as Zone AO where a depth number is not specified on the map, the depth number shall be taken as being equal to 2 feet (610 mm).

DESIGN WORKING PRESSURE. The maximum allowable working pressure for which a specific part of a system is designed.

DIRECT EVAPORATIVE COOLING. The evaporative cooling process where water evaporates directly into the air stream, reducing the air's dry-bulb temperature and raising its humidity level.

DIRECT REFRIGERATION SYSTEM. A system in which the evaporator or condenser of the refrigerating system is in direct contact with the air or other substances to be cooled or heated.

DIRECT SOLAR SYSTEM. A solar thermal system in which the gas or liquid in the solar collector loop is not separated from the load.

[FG] DIRECT-VENT APPLIANCES. ~~Appliances~~*Appliances* that are constructed and installed so that all air for *combustion* is derived from the outdoor atmosphere and all flue gases are discharged to the outdoor atmosphere.

DISCRETE PRODUCT. Products that are noncontinuous, individual, distinct pieces such as, but not limited to, electrical, plumbing and mechanical products and duct straps, duct fittings, duct registers and pipe hangers.

DRAFT. The pressure difference existing between the *appliance* or any component part and the atmosphere, that causes a continuous flow of air and products of *combustion* through the gas passages of the *appliance* to the atmosphere.

Induced draft. The pressure difference created by the action of a fan, blower or ejector, that is located between the *appliance* and the *chimney* or vent termination.

Natural draft. The pressure difference created by a vent or *chimney* because of its height, and the temperature difference between the flue gases and the atmosphere.

DRAIN-BACK SYSTEM. A solar thermal system in which the fluid in the solar collector loop is gravity drained from the collector into a holding tank under prescribed circumstances.

DRIP. The container placed at a low point in a system of piping to collect condensate and from which the condensate is removable.

DRY CLEANING SYSTEMS. Dry cleaning plants or systems are classified as follows:

Type I. Those systems using Class I flammable liquid solvents having a flash point below 100ºF (38ºC).

Type II. Those systems using Class II combustible liquid solvents having a flash point at or above 100ºF (38ºC) and below 140ºF (60ºC).

Type III. Those systems using Class III combustible liquid solvents having a flash point at or above 140ºF (60ºC).

Types IV and V. Those systems using Class IV nonflammable liquid solvents.

DUCT. A tube or conduit utilized for conveying air. The air passages of self-contained systems are not to be construed as air ducts. This does not include compressed air or vacuum systems.

DUCT FURNACE. A warm-air furnace normally installed in an air distribution duct to supply warm air for heating. This definition shall apply only to a warm-air heating *appliance* that, for air circulation, depends on a blower not furnished as part of the furnace.

DUCT SYSTEM. A continuous passageway for the transmission of air that, in addition to ducts, includes duct fittings, dampers, ~~plenums~~*plenums*, fans and accessory air-handling *equipment* and ~~appliances~~*appliances*.

DUCTLESS MINI-SPLIT SYSTEM. A heating and cooling system that is comprised of one or multiple indoor evaporator/air-handling units and an outdoor condensing unit that is connected by refrigerant piping and electrical wiring. A ductless mini-split system is capable of cooling or heating one or more rooms without the use of a traditional ductwork system.

[BG] DWELLING. A building or portion thereof that contains not more than two *dwelling* units.

[~~BG~~A] DWELLING UNIT. A single unit providing complete, independent living facilities for one or more persons, including permanent provisions for living, sleeping, eating, cooking and sanitation.

ELECTRIC HEATING APPLIANCE. An *appliance* that produces heat energy to create a warm environment by the application of electric power to resistance elements, refrigerant compressors or dissimilar material junctions.

ENERGY RECOVERY VENTILATION SYSTEM. Systems that employ air-to-air heat exchangers to recover energy from or reject energy to *exhaust air* for the purpose of preheating, ~~pre-cooling~~ precooling, humidifying or dehumidifying outdoor *ventilation air* prior to supplying such air to a space, either directly or as part of an HVAC system.

ENVIRONMENTAL AIR. Air that is conveyed to or from occupied areas through ducts ~~which~~that are not part of the heating or air-conditioning system, such as ventilation for human usage, domestic kitchen range exhaust, bathroom exhaust, domestic clothes dryer exhaust and parking garage exhaust.

EQUIPMENT. ~~All piping,~~Piping, ducts, vents, control devices and other components of systems other than ~~appliances~~*appliances* ~~which~~that are permanently installed and integrated to provide control of environmental conditions for buildings. This definition shall also include other systems specifically regulated in this code.

EQUIPMENT, EXISTING. Any *equipment* regulated by this code which was legally installed prior to the effective date of this code, or for which a permit to install has been issued.

EVAPORATIVE COOLER. A device used for reducing the sensible heat of air for cooling by the process of evaporation of water into an airstream.

EVAPORATIVE COOLING SYSTEM. The *equipment* and ~~appliances~~*appliances* intended or installed for the purpose of environmental cooling by an evaporative cooler from which the conditioned air is distributed through ducts or ~~plenums~~*plenums* to the conditioned area.

EVAPORATOR. That part of the system in which liquid refrigerant is vaporized to produce refrigeration.

EXCESS AIR. The amount of air provided in addition to *theoretical air* to achieve complete *combustion* of a fuel, thereby preventing the formation of dangerous products of *combustion*.

EXFILTRATION. Uncontrolled outward air leakage from conditioned spaces through unintentional openings in ceilings, floors and walls to unconditioned spaces or the outdoors caused by pressure differences across these openings resulting from wind, the stack effect created by temperature differences between indoors and outdoors, and imbalances between supply and exhaust airflow rates.

EXHAUST SYSTEM. An assembly of connected ducts, ~~plenums~~*plenums*, fittings, registers, grilles and hoods through which air is conducted from the space or spaces and exhausted to the outdoor atmosphere.

EXTRA-HEAVY-DUTY COOKING APPLIANCE. Extra-heavy-duty cooking ~~appliances~~*appliances* are those utilizing open flame combustion of solid fuel at any time.

[BF] FIRE DAMPER. A *listed* device installed in ducts and air transfer openings designed to close automatically upon detection of heat and to restrict the passage of flame. Fire dampers are classified for use in either static systems that will automatically shut down in the event of a fire, or in dynamic systems that continue to operate during a fire. A dynamic fire damper is tested and rated for closure under elevated temperature airflow.

FIREPLACE. An assembly consisting of a hearth and fire chamber of noncombustible material and provided with a *chimney*, for use with solid fuels.

Factory-built fireplace. A *listed* and *labeled* fireplace and *chimney* system composed of factory-made components, and assembled in the field in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and the conditions of the listing.

Masonry fireplace. A field-constructed fireplace composed of solid masonry units, bricks, stones or concrete.

FIREPLACE STOVE. A free-standing, ~~chimney-connected~~chimney-connected, solid-fuel-burning heater, designed to be operated with the fire chamber doors in either the open or closed position.

[FG] FLAME SAFEGUARD. A device that will automatically shut off the fuel supply to a main burner or group of burners when the means of ignition of such burners becomes inoperative, and when flame failure occurs on the burner or group of burners.

[BF] FLAME SPREAD INDEX. The numerical value assigned to a material tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723.

~~**FLAMMABILITY CLASSIFICATION.**~~**FLAMMABILITY CLASSIFICATION (REFRIGERANT).** ~~Refrigerants shall be assigned to one of the three classes 1, 2, 3 in accordance with ASHRAE 34. For Classes 2 and 3, the heat of *combustion* shall be calculated assuming that *combustion* products are in the gas phase and in their most stable state.~~ The alphabetical/numerical designation used to identify the flammability of refrigerants.

Class 1. ~~Refrigerants that do not show flame propagation when tested in air at 14.7 psia (101 kPa) and 140ºF (60ºC).~~ Indicates a refrigerant with no flame propogation.

Class 2. ~~Refrigerants having a lower flammability limit (LFL) of more than 0.00625 pound per cubic foot (0.10 kg/m3) at 140ºF (60ºC) and 14.7 psia (101 kPa) and a heat of combustion of less than 8169 Btu/lb (19 000 kJ/kg).~~ Indicates a refrigerant with low flammability.

Class 2L. Indicates a refrigerant with low flammability and low burning velocity.

Class 3. ~~Refrigerants that are highly flammable, having a LFL of less than or equal to 0.00625 pound per cubic foot (0.10 kg/m3) at140ºF (60ºC) and 14.7 psia (101 kPa) or a heat of combustion greater than or equal to 8169 Btu/lb (19 000 kJ/kg).~~ Indicates a refrigerant with high flammability.

[F] FLAMMABLE LIQUIDS. Any liquid that has a flash point below 100ºF (38ºC), and has a vapor pressure not exceeding 40 psia (276 kPa) at 100ºF (38ºC). Flammable liquids shall be known as Class I liquids and shall be divided into the following classifications:

Class IA. Liquids having a flash point below 73ºF (23ºC) and a boiling point below 100ºF (38ºC).

Class IB. Liquids having a flash point below 73ºF (23ºC) and a boiling point at or above 100ºF (38ºC).

Class IC. Liquids having a flash point at or above 73ºF (23ºC) and below 100ºF (38ºC).

[F] FLAMMABLE VAPOR OR FUMES. Mixtures of gases in air at concentrations equal to or greater than the LFL and less than or equal to the upper flammability limit (UFL).

[F] FLASH POINT. The minimum temperature corrected to a pressure of 14.7 psia (101 kPa) at which the application of a test flame causes the vapors of a portion of the sample to ignite under the conditions specified by the test procedures and apparatus. The flash point of a liquid shall be determined in accordance with ASTM D56, ASTM D93 or ASTM D3278.

FLEXIBLE AIR CONNECTOR. A conduit for transferring air between an air duct or *plenum* and an air terminal unit or between an air duct or *plenum* and an air inlet or air outlet. Such conduit is limited in its use, length and location.

FLOOR AREA, NET. The actual occupied area, not including unoccupied accessory areas or thicknesses of walls.

[FG] FLOOR FURNACE. A completely self-contained furnace suspended from the floor of the space being heated, taking air for *combustion* from outside such space and with means for observing flames and lighting the *appliance* from such space.

FLUE. A passageway within a *chimney* or vent through which gaseous *combustion* products pass.

FLUE CONNECTION (BREECHING). A passage for conducting the products of *combustion* from a fuel-fired *appliance* to the vent or *chimney* (see also ~~"*Chimney connector*"~~*Chimney connector* and ~~"*Vent connector*")~~.*Vent connector*).

[FG] FLUE GASES. Products of *combustion* and excess air.

FLUE LINER (LINING). A system or material used to form the inside surface of a flue in a *chimney* or vent, for the purpose of protecting the surrounding structure from the effects of *combustion* products and conveying *combustion* products without leakage to the atmosphere.

FOOD-GRADE FLUID. Potable water or a fluid containing additives listed in accordance with the Code of Federal Regulations, Title 21, Food and Drugs, Chapter 1, Food and Drug Administration, Parts ~~174–186.~~174 through 186.

[FG] FUEL GAS. A natural gas, manufactured gas, liquefied petroleum gas or a mixture of these.

FUEL OIL. Kerosene or any hydrocarbon oil having a flash point not less than 100ºF (38ºC).

FUEL-OIL PIPING SYSTEM. A closed piping system that connects a combustible liquid from a source of supply to a fuel-oil-burning *appliance*.

FURNACE. A completely self-contained heating unit that is designed to supply heated air to spaces remote from or adjacent to the *appliance* location.

FURNACE ROOM. A room primarily utilized for the installation of fuel-burning, space-heating and water-heating ~~appliances~~*appliances* other than boilers (see also ~~"*Boiler room*")~~.*Boiler room*).

FUSIBLE PLUG. A device arranged to relieve pressure by operation of a fusible member at a predetermined temperature.

GROUND SOURCE HEAT PUMP LOOP SYSTEM. Piping buried in horizontal or vertical excavations or placed in a body of water for the purpose of transporting heat transfer liquid to and from a heat pump. Included in this definition are closed loop systems in which the liquid is recirculated and open loop systems in which the liquid is drawn from a well or other source.

HAZARDOUS LOCATION. Any location considered to be a fire hazard for flammable vapors, dust, combustible fibers or other highly combustible substances. The location is not necessarily categorized in the *International Building Code* as a high-hazard use group classification.

HEAT EXCHANGER. A device that transfers heat from one medium to another.

HEAT PUMP. A refrigeration system that extracts heat from one substance and transfers it to another portion of the same substance or to a second substance at a higher temperature for a beneficial purpose.

HEAT TRANSFER LIQUID. The operating or thermal storage liquid in a mechanical system, including water or other liquid base, and additives at the concentration present under operating conditions used to move heat from one location to another. Refrigerants are not included as heat transfer liquids.

HEAVY-DUTY COOKING APPLIANCE. Heavy-duty cooking *appliances* include electric under-fired broilers, electric chain (conveyor) broilers, gas under-fired broilers, gas chain (conveyor) broilers, gas open-burner ranges (with or without oven), electric and gas wok ranges, smokers, smoker ovens, and electric and gas over-fired (upright) broilers and salamanders. Such an *appliance* shall not use solid fuel to provide a source of heat for cooking. Pellets and chips if used as flavoring shall not be in a state of open flame combustion at any time. Smoldering chambers shall not introduce embers into the flue at any time.

HIGH-PROBABILITY SYSTEMS. A refrigeration system in which the basic design or the location of components is such that a leakage of refrigerant from a failed connection, seal or component will enter an *occupancy* classified area, other than the *machinery room*.

HIGH-SIDE PRESSURE. The parts of a refrigerating system subject to condenser pressure.

HOOD. An air intake device used to capture by entrapment, impingement, adhesion or similar means, grease, moisture, heat and similar contaminants before they enter a duct system.

Type I. A kitchen hood for collecting and removing grease vapors and smoke. Such hoods are equipped with a fire suppression system.

Type II. A general kitchen hood for collecting and removing steam, vapor, heat, odors and products of *combustion*.

[FG] HYDROGEN GENERATING APPLIANCE. A self-contained package or factory-matched packages of integrated systems for generating gaseous hydrogen. Hydrogen generating ~~appliances~~*appliances* utilize electrolysis, reformation, chemical, or other processes to generate hydrogen.

IGNITION SOURCE. A flame, spark or hot surface capable of igniting flammable vapors or fumes. Such sources include *appliance* burners, burner ignitors and electrical switching devices.

[F] IMMEDIATELY DANGEROUS TO LIFE OR HEALTH (IDLH). The concentration of airborne contaminants that poses a threat of death, immediate or delayed permanent adverse health effects, or effects that could prevent escape from such an environment. This contaminant concentration level is established by the National Institute of Occupational Safety and Health (NIOSH) based on both toxicity and flammability. It is generally expressed in parts per million by volume (ppm v/v) or milligrams per cubic meter (mg/m^3).

INDIRECT EVAPORATIVE COOLING. The evaporative cooling process where water evaporates into a secondary air stream, removing heat from a primary air stream utilizing a heat exchanger.

INDIRECT REFRIGERATION SYSTEM. A system in which a secondary coolant cooled or heated by the refrigerating system is circulated to the air or other substance to be cooled or heated. Indirect systems are distinguished by the following methods of application:

Closed system. A system in which a secondary fluid is either cooled or heated by the refrigerating system and then circulated within a closed circuit in indirect contact with the air or other substance to be cooled or heated.

Double-indirect open-spray system. A system in which the secondary substance for an indirect open-spray system is heated or cooled by an intermediate coolant circulated from a second enclosure.

Open-spray system. A system in which a secondary coolant is cooled or heated by the refrigerating system and then circulated in direct contact with the air or other substance to be cooled or heated.

Vented closed system. A system in which a secondary coolant is cooled or heated by the refrigerating system and then passed through a closed circuit in the air or other substance to be cooled or heated, except that the evaporator or condenser is placed in an open or appropriately vented tank.

INDIRECT SOLAR SYSTEM. A solar thermal system in which the gas or liquid in the solar collector loop circulates between the solar collector and a heat exchanger and such gas or liquid is not drained from the system or supplied to the load during normal operation.

INFILTRATION. Uncontrolled inward air leakage to conditioned spaces through unintentional openings in ceilings, floors and walls from unconditioned spaces or the outdoors caused by pressure differences across these openings resulting from wind, the stack effect created by temperature differences between indoors and outdoors, and imbalances between supply and exhaust airflow rates.

INTERLOCK. A device actuated by another device with which it is directly associated, to govern succeeding operations of the same or allied devices. A circuit in which a given action cannot occur until after one or more other actions have taken place.

JOINT, FLANGED. A joint made by bolting together a pair of flanged ends.

JOINT, FLARED. A metal-to-metal compression joint in which a conical spread is made on the end of a tube that is compressed by a flare nut against a mating flare.

JOINT, MECHANICAL

1. A connection between pipes, fittings, or pipes and fittings that is not welded, brazed, caulked, soldered, solvent cemented or heat fused.

2. A general form of gas or liquid-tight connections obtained by the joining of parts through a positive holding mechanical construction such ~~as~~as, but not limited to, flanged, screwed, clamped or flared connections. These joints include both the press-type and push-fit joining systems. Also see ~~press~~press-connect joint and push-fit joint.

JOINT, PLASTIC ADHESIVE. A joint made in thermoset plastic piping by the use of an adhesive substance ~~which~~that forms a continuous bond between the mating surfaces without dissolving either one of them.

JOINT, PLASTIC HEAT FUSION. A joint made in thermoplastic piping by heating the parts sufficiently to permit fusion of the materials when the parts are pressed together.

JOINT, PLASTIC SOLVENT CEMENT. A joint made in thermoplastic piping by the use of a solvent or solvent cement ~~which~~that forms a continuous bond between the mating surfaces.

JOINT, SOLDERED. A gas-tight joint obtained by the joining of metal parts with metallic mixtures of alloys ~~which~~that melt at temperatures between 400ºF (204ºC) and 1,000ºF (538ºC).

JOINT, WELDED. A gas-tight joint obtained by the joining of metal parts in molten state.

[A] LABELED. *Appliances, equipment*, materials or products to which have been affixed a label, seal, symbol or other identifying mark of a nationally recognized testing laboratory, ~~inspection~~approved agency or other organization concerned with product evaluation that maintains periodic inspection of the production of the ~~above-labeled~~labeled items and whose labeling indicates either that the *appliance, equipment*, material or product meets identified standards or has been tested and found suitable for a specified purpose. ~~(Laboratories, agencies or organizations that have been identified by approval and accreditation bodies, such as ANSI, IAS, ICC or OSHA, are acceptable.)~~

LARGE-DIAMETER CEILING FAN. A ceiling fan that is greater than 7 feet (2134 mm) in diameter. These fans are also referred to as high-volume, low-speed (HVLS) fans.

LIGHT-DUTY COOKING APPLIANCE. Light-duty cooking *appliances* include gas and electric ovens (including standard, bake, roasting, revolving, retherm, convection, combination convection/steamer, countertop conveyorized baking/finishing, deck and pastry), electric and gas steam-jacketed kettles, electric and gas pasta cookers, electric and gas compartment steamers (both pressure and atmospheric) and electric and gas cheesemelters.

[FG] LIMIT CONTROL. A device responsive to changes in pressure, temperature or level for turning on, shutting off or throttling the gas supply to an *appliance*.

LIMITED CHARGE SYSTEM. A system in which, with the compressor idle, the design pressure will not be exceeded when the refrigerant charge has completely evaporated.

[A] LISTED. *Appliances, equipment*, materials, products or services included in a list published by an organization acceptable to the code official and concerned with evaluation of products or services that maintains periodic inspection of production of *listed equipment* or materials or periodic evaluation of services and whose listing states either that the *appliance, equipment*, material, product or service meets identified standards or has been tested and found suitable for a specified purpose. Refer to:

~~http://www.ncdoi.com/OSFM/Engineering_and_Codes/Default.aspx?field1=Code_Enforcement_-_Third_Party_Testing_Agencies&user=Code_Enforcement_Resources~~

https://www.ncosfm.gov/codes/state-electrical-division/qualified-testing-laboratories for a list of North Carolina Approved Third-Party Certification Agencies for electrical and mechanical equipment categories.

LIVING SPACE. Space within a *dwelling unit* utilized for living, sleeping, eating, cooking, bathing, washing and sanitation purposes.

LOWER EXPLOSIVE LIMIT (LEL). See ~~*"LFL"*.~~*LFL.*

[F] LOWER FLAMMABLE LIMIT (LFL). The minimum concentration of vapor in air at which propagation of flame will occur in the presence of an ignition source. The LFL is sometimes referred to as LEL or lower explosive limit.

LOWER FLAMMABLE LIMIT (REFRIGERANT) (LFL). The minimum concentration of refrigerant that is capable of propagating a flame through a homogeneous mixture of refrigerant and air.

LOW-PRESSURE HOT-WATER-HEATING BOILER. A boiler furnishing hot water at pressures not exceeding 160 psi (1103 kPa) and at temperatures not exceeding 250ºF (121ºC).

LOW-PRESSURE STEAM-HEATING BOILER. A boiler furnishing steam at pressures not exceeding 15 psi (103 kPa).

LOW-PROBABILITY PUMP. A pump that is designed to prevent atmospheric release of the pumped fluid by one of the following methods:

1. The pump is permanently sealed.
2. The pump incorporates a static seal.
3. The pump incorporates not less than two sequential dynamic shaft seals to isolate the pumped fluid from atmosphere at shaft penetrations and automatically shuts down upon failure of any seal.

LOW-PROBABILITY SYSTEMS. A refrigeration system in which the basic design or the location of components is such that a leakage of refrigerant from a failed connection, seal or component will not enter an occupancy-classified area, other than the *machinery room*.

LOW-SIDE PRESSURE. The parts of a refrigerating system subject to evaporator pressure.

MACHINERY ROOM. ~~A room meeting prescribed safety requirements and in which refrigeration systems or components thereof are located (see Sections 1105 and 1106).~~ An enclosed space that is required by Chapter 11 to contain refrigeration *equipment* and to comply with Sections 1105 and 1106.

MECHANICAL DRAFT SYSTEM. A venting system designed to remove flue or vent gases by mechanical means, that consists of an induced-draft portion under nonpositive static pressure or a forced-draft portion under positive static pressure.

Forced-draft venting system. A portion of a venting system using a fan or other mechanical means to cause the removal of flue or vent gases under positive static pressure.

Induced-draft venting system. A portion of a venting system using a fan or other mechanical means to cause the removal of flue or vent gases under nonpositive static vent pressure.

Power venting system. A portion of a venting system using a fan or other mechanical means to cause the removal of flue or vent gases under positive static vent pressure.

MECHANICAL EQUIPMENT/APPLIANCE ROOM. A room or space in which nonfuel-fired mechanical *equipment* and *appliances* are located.

MECHANICAL EXHAUST SYSTEM. A system for removing air from a room or space by mechanical means.

MECHANICAL JOINT. See "Joint, mechanical."

MECHANICAL SYSTEM. A system specifically addressed and regulated in this code and composed of components, devices, *appliances* and *equipment*.

MEDIUM-DUTY COOKING APPLIANCE. Medium-duty cooking *appliances* include electric discrete element ranges (with or without oven), electric and gas hot-top ranges, electric and gas griddles, electric and gas double-sided griddles, electric and gas fryers (including open deep fat fryers, donut fryers, kettle fryers and pressure fryers), electric and gas conveyor pizza ovens, electric and gas tilting skillets (braising pans) and electric and gas rotisseries.

MODULAR BOILER. A steam or hot-water-heating assembly consisting of a group of individual boilers called modules intended to be installed as a unit without intervening stop valves. Modules are under one jacket or are individually jacketed. The individual modules shall be limited to a maximum input rating of 400,000 Btu/h (117 228 W) gas, 3 gallons per hour (gph) (11.4 L/h) oil, or 115 kW (electric). See N.C.G.S. 95-69.8, 95-69.9 and 69.10 for specific requirements on boilers and references to the North Carolina Department of Labor.

NATURAL DRAFT SYSTEM. A venting system designed to remove flue or vent gases under nonpositive static vent pressure entirely by natural draft.

NATURAL VENTILATION. The movement of air into and out of a space through intentionally provided openings, such as windows and doors, or through nonpowered ventilators.

NET OCCUPIABLE FLOOR AREA. The floor area of an *occupiable space* defined by the inside surfaces of its walls but excluding shafts, column enclosures and other permanently enclosed, inaccessible and unoccupiable areas. Obstructions in the space such as furnishings, display or storage racks and other obstructions, whether temporary or permanent, shall not be deducted from the space area.

NO-FLOW CONDITION (SOLAR). A condition where thermal energy is not transferred from a solar thermal collector by means of flow of a heat transfer fluid.

NONABRASIVE/ABRASIVE MATERIALS. Nonabrasive particulate in high concentrations, moderately abrasive particulate in low and moderate concentrations, and highly abrasive particulate in low concentrations, such as alfalfa, asphalt, plaster, gypsum and salt.

NONCOMBUSTIBLE MATERIALS. Materials that, when tested in accordance with ASTM E136, have ~~at least~~not fewer than three of four specimens tested meeting all of the following criteria:

1. The recorded temperature of the surface and interior thermocouples shall not at any time during the test rise more than 54ºF (30ºC) above the furnace temperature at the beginning of the test.
2. There shall not be flaming from the specimen after the first 30 seconds.
3. If the weight loss of the specimen during testing exceeds 50 percent, the recorded temperature of the surface and interior thermocouples shall not at any time during the test rise above the furnace air temperature at the beginning of the test, and there shall not be flaming of the specimen.

NONFOOD-GRADE FLUID. Any fluid that is not designated as a food-grade fluid.

[A] OCCUPANCY. The purpose for which a building, or portion thereof, is utilized or occupied.

OCCUPATIONAL EXPOSURE LIMIT (OEL). The time-weighted average (TWA) concentration for a normal ~~eight-hour~~8-hour workday and a 40-hour workweek to which nearly all workers can be repeatedly exposed without adverse effect, based on the OSHA PEL, ACGIH TLV-TWA, ~~AIHA~~TERA OARS WEEL, or consistent value.

OCCUPIABLE SPACE. An enclosed space intended for human activities, excluding those spaces intended primarily for other purposes, such as storage rooms and *equipment* rooms, that are only intended to be occupied occasionally and for short periods of time.

OFFSET (VENT). A combination of *approved* bends that make two changes in direction bringing one section of the vent out of line but into a line parallel with the other section.

OUTDOOR AIR. Air taken from the outdoors, and therefore not previously circulated through the system.

OUTDOOR OPENING. A door, window, louver or skylight openable to the outdoor atmosphere.

OUTLET. A threaded connection or bolted flange in a piping system to which a gas-burning *appliance* is attached.

PANEL HEATING. A method of radiant space heating in which heat is supplied by large heated areas of room surfaces. The heating element usually consists of warm water piping, warm air ducts, or electrical resistance elements embedded in or located behind ceiling, wall or floor surfaces.

PELLET FUEL-BURNING APPLIANCE. A closed-combustion, vented *appliance* equipped with a fuel-feed mechanism for burning processed pellets of solid fuel of a specified size and composition.

PIPING. Where used in this code, "piping" refers to either pipe or tubing, or both.

Pipe. A rigid conduit of iron, steel, copper, ~~brass,~~copper-alloy, or plastic.

Tubing. Semirigid conduit of copper, copper-alloy, aluminum, plastic or steel.

PLASTIC, THERMOPLASTIC. A plastic that is capable of being repeatedly softened by increase of temperature and hardened by decrease of temperature.

PLASTIC, THERMOSETTING. A plastic that is capable of being changed into a substantially infusible or insoluble product when cured under application of heat or chemical means.

PLENUM. An enclosed portion of the building structure, other than an *occupiable space* being conditioned, that is designed to allow air movement, and thereby serve as part of an air distribution system.

POLLUTION-CONTROL UNIT (PCU). Manufactured *equipment"* that is installed in a grease exhaust duct system for the purpose of extracting smoke, grease particles and odors from the exhaust flow by means of a series of filters.

PORTABLE FUEL CELL APPLIANCE. A fuel cell generator of electricity ~~which~~that is not fixed in place. A portable fuel cell *appliance* utilizes a cord and plug connection to a grid-isolated load and has an integral fuel supply.

POWER BOILER. *See* ~~"Boiler."~~*Boiler.*

[A] PREMISES. A lot, plot or parcel of land, including any structure thereon.

~~PRESS~~PRESS-CONNECT JOINT. A permanent mechanical joint incorporating an elastomeric seal or an elastomeric seal and corrosion-resistant grip or bite ring. The joint is made with a pressing tool and jaw or ring approved by the fitting manufacturer.

PRESSURE, FIELD TEST. A test performed in the field to prove system tightness.

PRESSURE RELIEF DEVICE. A pressure-actuated valve or rupture member designed to relieve excessive pressure automatically.

PRESSURE RELIEF VALVE. A pressure-actuated valve held closed by a spring or other means and designed to relieve pressure automatically in excess of the device's setting.

PRESSURE VESSELS. Closed containers, tanks or vessels that are designed to contain liquids or gases, or both, under pressure.

PRESSURE VESSELS—REFRIGERANT. Any refrigerant-containing receptacle in a refrigerating system. This does not include evaporators where each separate section does not exceed 0.5 cubic foot (0.014 m^3) of refrigerant-containing volume, regardless of the maximum inside dimensions, evaporator coils, controls, headers, pumps and piping.

PRESSURE-LIMITING DEVICE. A pressure-responsive mechanism designed to stop automatically the operation of the pressure-imposing element at a predetermined pressure.

PROTECTIVE ASSEMBLY (REDUCED CLEARANCE). Any noncombustible assembly that is *labeled* or constructed in accordance with Table 308.4.2 and is placed between combustible materials or assemblies and mechanical ~~appliances~~*appliances*, devices or *equipment*, for the purpose of reducing required airspace ~~clearances~~*clearances*. Protective assemblies attached directly to a combustible assembly shall not be considered as part of that combustible assembly.

PURGE. To clear of air, water or other foreign substances.

PUSH-FIT JOINTS. A type of mechanical joint consisting of elastomeric seals and corrosion-resistant tube grippers. Such joints are permanent or ~~removable~~removable, depending on the design.

QUICK-OPENING VALVE. A valve that opens completely by fast action, either manually or automatically controlled. A valve requiring one-quarter round turn or less is considered to be quick opening.

RADIANT HEATER. A heater designed to transfer heat primarily by direct radiation.

READY ACCESS (TO). That which enables a device, *appliance* or *equipment* to be directly reached, without requiring the removal or movement of any ~~panel, door~~panel or similar obstruction [see ~~*"Access (to)"]*.~~*Access (to)*].

RECEIVER, LIQUID. A vessel permanently connected to a refrigeration system by inlet and outlet pipes for storage of liquid refrigerant.

RECIRCULATED AIR. Air removed from a conditioned space and intended for reuse as supply air.

RECLAIMED REFRIGERANTS. Refrigerants reprocessed to the same specifications as for new refrigerants by means including distillation. Such refrigerants have been chemically analyzed to verify that the specifications have been met. Reclaiming usually implies the use of processes or procedures that are available only at a reprocessing or manufacturing facility.

RECOVERED REFRIGERANTS. Refrigerants removed from a system in any condition without necessarily testing or processing them.

RECYCLED REFRIGERANTS. Refrigerants from which contaminants have been reduced by oil separation, removal of noncondensable gases, and single or multiple passes through devices that reduce moisture, acidity and particulate matter, such as replaceable core filter driers. These procedures usually are performed at the field job site or in a local service shop.

REFRIGERANT. A substance utilized to produce refrigeration by its expansion or vaporization.

~~**REFRIGERANT SAFETY CLASSIFICATIONS.**~~**REFRIGERANT SAFETY GROUP CLASSIFICATION.** The alphabetical/numerical designation that indicates both the toxicity and flammability classifications of refrigerants. ~~Groupings that indicate the toxicity and flammability classes in accordance with Section 1103.1. The classification group is made up of a letter (A or B) that indicates the toxicity class, followed by a number (1, 2 or 3) that indicates the flammability class. Refrigerant blends are similarly classified, based on the compositions at their worst cases of fractionation, as separately determined for toxicity and flammability. In some cases, the worst case of fractionation is the original formulation.~~

Flammability. ~~See " Flammability classification."~~See *Flammability classification (Refrigerant).*

Toxicity. ~~See " Toxicity classification."~~See *Toxicity classification (Refrigerant).*

~~**REFRIGERATED ROOM OR SPACE.** A room or space in which an evaporator or brine coil is located for the purpose of reducing or controlling the temperature within the room or space to below 68°F (20°C).~~

REFRIGERATING SYSTEM. A combination of interconnected refrigerant-containing parts constituting one closed refrigerant circuit in which a refrigerant is circulated for the purpose of extracting heat.

REFRIGERATION CAPACITY RATING. Expressed as 1 horsepower (0.75 kW), 1 ton or 12,000 Btu/h (3.5 kW), shall all mean the same quantity.

REFRIGERATION MACHINERY ROOM. See ~~*"Machinery room."*~~*Machinery room.*

REFRIGERATION SYSTEM, ABSORPTION. A heat-operated, closed-refrigeration cycle in which a secondary fluid (the absorbent) absorbs a primary fluid (the refrigerant) that has been vaporized in the evaporator.

Direct system. A system in which the evaporator is in direct contact with the material or space refrigerated, or is located in air-circulating passages communicating with such spaces.

Indirect system. A system in which a brine coil cooled by the refrigerant is circulated to the material or space refrigerated, or is utilized to cool the air so circulated. Indirect systems are distinguished by the type or method of application.

REFRIGERATION SYSTEM, MECHANICAL. A combination of interconnected refrigeration-containing parts constituting one closed refrigerant circuit in which a refrigerant is circulated for the purpose of extracting heat and in which a compressor is used for compressing the refrigerant vapor.

REFRIGERATION SYSTEM, SELF-CONTAINED. A complete factory-assembled and tested system that is shipped in one or more sections and that does not have refrigerant-containing parts that are joined in the field by other than companion or block valves.

REFRIGERATION SYSTEM CLASSIFICATION. Refrigeration systems are classified according to the degree of probability that leaked refrigerant from a failed connection, seal or component will enter an occupied area. The distinction is based on the basic design or location of the components.

[A] REGISTERED DESIGN PROFESSIONAL. An individual who is registered or licensed to practice their respective design profession as defined by the statutory requirements of the professional registration laws of the state or jurisdiction in which the project is to be constructed. ~~Design by a registered design professional is not required where exempt under the registration or licensure laws.~~

RETURN AIR. Air removed from an *approved* conditioned space or location and recirculated or exhausted.

RETURN AIR SYSTEM. An assembly of connected ducts, ~~plenums~~*plenums*, fittings, registers and grilles through which air from the space or spaces to be heated or cooled is conducted back to the supply unit (see also ~~"*Supply air system*").~~*Supply air system*).

[FG] ROOM HEATER, VENTED. A free-standing heating unit burning solid or liquid fuel for direct heating of the space in and adjacent to that in which the unit is located.

SAFETY VALVE. A valve that relieves pressure in a steam boiler by opening fully at the rated discharge pressure. The valve is of the spring-pop type.

SELF-CONTAINED EQUIPMENT. Complete, factory-assembled and tested, heating, air-conditioning or refrigeration *equipment* installed as a single unit, and having all working parts, complete with motive power, in an enclosed unit of said machinery.

[BF] SHAFT. An enclosed space extending through one or more stories of a building, connecting vertical openings in successive floors, or floors and the roof.

[BF] SHAFT ENCLOSURE. The walls or construction forming the boundaries of a shaft.

~~[BG]~~[A] SLEEPING UNIT. A room or space in which people sleep, which can also include permanent provisions for living, eating, and either sanitation or kitchen facilities but not both. Such rooms and spaces that are also part of a *dwelling unit* are not ~~sleeping units~~*sleeping units*.

[BF] SMOKE DAMPER. A *listed* device installed in ducts and air transfer openings designed to resist the passage of smoke. The device is installed to operate automatically, controlled by a smoke detection system, and where required, is capable of being positioned from a fire command center.

[BF] SMOKE-DEVELOPED INDEX. A numerical value assigned to a material tested in accordance with ASTM E84.

SOLAR THERMAL SYSTEM. A system that converts solar radiation to thermal energy for use in heating or cooling.

SOLID FUEL (COOKING APPLICATIONS). Applicable to commercial food service operations only, solid fuel is any bulk material such as hardwood, mesquite, charcoal or briquettes that is combusted to produce heat for cooking operations.

SOURCE CAPTURE SYSTEM. A mechanical exhaust system designed and constructed to capture air contaminants at their source and to exhaust such contaminants to the outdoor atmosphere.

[FG] STATIONARY FUEL CELL POWER PLANT. A self-contained package or factory-matched packages ~~which~~that constitute an automatically operated assembly of integrated systems for generating useful electrical energy and recoverable thermal energy that is permanently connected and fixed in place.

STEAM-HEATING BOILER. A boiler operated at pressures not exceeding 15 psi (103 kPa) for steam.

STOP VALVE. A shutoff valve for controlling the flow of liquid or gases.

[BG] STORY. That portion of a building included between the upper surface of a floor and the upper surface of the floor next above, except that the topmost story shall be that portion of a building included between the upper surface of the topmost floor and the ceiling or roof above.

STRENGTH, ULTIMATE. The highest stress level that the component will tolerate without rupture.

SUPPLY AIR. That air delivered to each or any space supplied by the air distribution system or the total air delivered to all spaces supplied by the air distribution system, which is provided for ventilating, heating, cooling, humidification, dehumidification and other similar purposes.

SUPPLY AIR SYSTEM. An assembly of connected ducts, ~~plenums~~*plenums*, fittings, registers and grilles through which air, heated or cooled, is conducted from the supply unit to the space or spaces to be heated or cooled (see also ~~"*Return air system*")~~.*Return air system*).

THEORETICAL AIR. The exact amount of air required to supply oxygen for complete *combustion* of a given quantity of a specific fuel.

THERMAL RESISTANCE (*R*). A measure of the ability to retard the flow of heat. The *R*-value is the reciprocal of thermal conductance.

[P] THIRD-PARTY CERTIFICATION AGENCY. An approved agency operating a product or material certification system that incorporates initial product testing, assessment and surveillance of a manufacturer's quality control system.

Refer to:

~~http://www.ncdoi.com/OSFM/Engineering_and_Codes/Default.aspx?field1=Code_Enforcement_-_Third_Party_Testing_Agencies&user=Code_Enforcement_Resources~~

https://www.ncosfm.gov/codes/state-electrical-division/qualified-testing-laboratories for a list of North Carolina Approved Third-Party Certification Agencies for electrical and mechanical equipment categories.

[P] THIRD-PARTY CERTIFIED. Certification obtained by the manufacturer indicating that the function and performance characteristics of a product or material have been determined by testing and ongoing surveillance by an approved third-party certification agency. Assertion of certification is in the form of identification in accordance with the requirements of the third-party certification agency.

[P] THIRD-PARTY TESTED. Procedure by which an approved testing laboratory provides documentation that a product, material or system conforms to specified requirements.

TLV-TWA (THRESHOLD LIMIT VALUE-TIME-WEIGHTED AVERAGE). The time-weighted average concentration of a refrigerant or other chemical in air for a normal 8-hour workday and a 40-hour workweek, to which nearly all workers are repeatedly exposed, day after day, without adverse effects, as adopted by the American Conference of Government Industrial Hygienists (ACGIH).

TOILET ROOM. A room containing a water closet and, frequently, a lavatory, but not a bathtub, shower, spa or similar bathing fixture.

~~**TOXICITY CLASSIFICATION.**~~**TOXICITY CLASSIFICATION (REFRIGERANT).** ~~Refrigerants shall be classified for toxicity in one of two classes in accordance with ASHRAE 34:~~ An alphabetical designation used to identify the toxicity of refrigerants. Class A indicates a refrigerant with low toxicity. Class B indicates a refrigerant with high toxicity.

~~**Class A.** Refrigerants that have an occupational exposure limit (OEL) of 400 parts per million (ppm) or greater.~~

~~**Class B.** Refrigerants that have an OEL of less than 400 ppm.~~

TRANSITION FITTINGS, PLASTIC TO STEEL. An adapter for joining plastic pipe to steel pipe. The purpose of this fitting is to provide a permanent, pressure-tight connection between two materials ~~which~~that cannot be joined directly one to another.

[FG] UNIT HEATER. A self-contained *appliance* of the fan type, designed for the delivery of warm air directly into the space in which the *appliance* is located.

UNVENTED ALCOHOL FUEL-BURNING DECORATIVE APPLIANCE. A stationary, self-contained *appliance* intended to be directly or indirectly secured to a wall or floor and not intended for duct connection. Such *appliance* burns alcohol and is made in a manufacturing facility for subsequent delivery to the installation site.

VENT. A pipe or other conduit composed of factory-made components, containing a passageway for conveying *combustion* products and air to the atmosphere, *listed* and *labeled* for use with a specific type or class of *appliance*.

Pellet vent. A vent *listed* and *labeled* for use with *listed* pellet-fuel-burning ~~appliances~~*appliances*.

Type L vent. A vent *listed* and *labeled* for use with the following:

1. Oil-burning ~~appliances~~*appliances* that are *listed* for use with Type L vents.
2. Gas-fired ~~appliances~~*appliances* that are *listed* for use with Type B vents.

VENT CONNECTOR. The pipe that connects an *approved* fuel-fired *appliance* to a vent.

VENT DAMPER DEVICE, AUTOMATIC. A device intended for installation in the venting system, in the outlet of an individual automatically operated fuel-burning *appliance* that is designed to open the venting system automatically when the *appliance* is in operation and to close off the venting system automatically when the *appliance* is in a standby or shutdown condition.

VENTILATION. The natural or mechanical process of supplying conditioned or unconditioned air to, or removing such air from, any space.

VENTILATION AIR. That portion of supply air that comes from the outside (outdoors), plus any recirculated air that has been treated to maintain the desired quality of air within a designated space.

[FG] VENTING SYSTEM. A continuous open passageway from the flue collar of an *appliance* to the outdoor atmosphere for the purpose of removing flue or vent gases. A venting system is usually composed of a vent or a *chimney* and vent connector, if used, assembled to form the open passageway.

WATER HEATER. Any heating *appliance* or *equipment* that heats potable water and supplies such water to the potable hot water distribution system.

ZONE. One *occupiable space* or several occupiable spaces with similar *occupancy* classification (see Table 403.3.1.1), occupant density, zone air distribution effectiveness and zone primary airflow rate per unit area.

CHAPTER 3
GENERAL REGULATIONS

SECTION 301
GENERAL

301.1 Scope. This chapter shall govern the approval and installation of all *equipment* and ~~appliances~~*appliances* that comprise parts of the building mechanical systems regulated by this code in accordance with Section 101.2.

301.2 Energy utilization. Heating, ventilating and air-conditioning systems of all structures shall be designed and installed for efficient utilization of energy in accordance with the *International Energy Conservation Code*.

301.3 Identification. Each length of pipe and tubing and each pipe fitting utilized in a mechanical system shall bear the identification of the manufacturer as required by the listing or standard for the piping or tubing.

301.4 Plastic pipe, fittings and components. ~~(Deleted).~~Plastic pipe, fittings and components shall be *third-party certified* and meet the applicable standards listed in the *International Mechanical Code*.

301.5 Third-party testing and certification. Piping, tubing and fittings shall comply with the applicable referenced standards, specifications and performance criteria of this code and shall be identified in accordance with Section 301.3. Piping, tubing and fittings shall either be tested by an approved third-party testing agency or certified by an approved *third-party certification agency*.

301.6 Fuel gas appliances and equipment. The approval and installation of fuel gas distribution piping and *equipment*, fuel gas-fired ~~appliances~~*appliances* and fuel gas-fired *appliance* venting systems shall be in accordance with the *International Fuel Gas Code*.

301.7 Listed and labeled. ~~Appliances~~*Appliances* regulated by this code shall be *listed* and *labeled* for the application in which they are installed and used, unless otherwise *approved* in accordance with Section 105.

Exceptions:

1. Listing and labeling of *equipment* and ~~appliances~~*appliances* used for refrigeration shall be in accordance with Section 1101.2.
2. Field erected equipment shall be deemed acceptable, provided it is assembled using listed components and parts, if the design thereof is by a *registered design professional*.

301.8 Labeling. Labeling shall be in accordance with the procedures set forth in Sections 301.8.1 through 301.8.2.3.

301.8.1 Testing. An *approved* agency shall test a representative sample of the mechanical *equipment* and ~~appliances~~*appliances* being *labeled* to the relevant standard or standards. The *approved* agency shall maintain a record of all of the tests performed. The record shall provide sufficient detail to verify compliance with the test standard.

301.8.2 Inspection and identification. The *approved* agency shall periodically perform an inspection, which shall be in-plant if necessary, of the mechanical *equipment* and ~~appliances~~*appliances* to be *labeled*. The inspection shall verify that the *labeled* mechanical *equipment* and ~~appliances~~*appliances* are representative of the mechanical *equipment* and ~~appliances~~*appliances* tested.

301.8.2.1 Independent. The agency to be *approved* shall be objective and competent. To confirm its objectivity, the agency shall disclose all possible conflicts of interest.

301.8.2.2 Equipment. An *approved* agency shall have adequate *equipment* to perform all required tests. The *equipment* shall be periodically calibrated.

301.8.2.3 Personnel. An *approved* agency shall employ experienced personnel educated in conducting, supervising and evaluating tests.

301.9 Label information. A permanent factory-applied nameplate(s) shall be affixed to ~~appliances~~*appliances* on which shall appear in legible lettering, the manufacturer's name or trademark, the model number, serial number and the seal or mark of the *approved* agency. A label shall ~~also~~ include the following:

1. Electrical *equipment* and ~~appliances~~*appliances*: Electrical rating in volts, amperes and motor phase; identification of individual electrical components in volts, amperes or watts, motor phase; Btu/h (W) output; and required clearances.
2. Absorption units: Hourly rating in Btu/h (W); minimum hourly rating for units having step or automatic modulating controls; type of fuel; type of refrigerant; cooling capacity in Btu/h (W); and required clearances.
3. Fuel-burning units: Hourly rating in Btu/h (W); type of fuel *approved* for use with the *appliance*; and required clearances.
4. Electric comfort heating ~~appliances~~*appliances*: electric rating in volts, amperes and phase; Btu/h (W) output rating; individual marking for each electrical component in amperes or watts, volts and phase; and required ~~clearances~~*clearances* from combustibles.

301.10 Electrical. Electrical wiring, controls and connections to *equipment* and ~~appliances~~*appliances* regulated by this code shall be in accordance with ~~NFPA 70.~~the *North Carolina Electrical Code*.

301.11 Plumbing connections. Potable water supply and building drainage system connections to *equipment* and ~~appliances~~*appliances* regulated by this code shall be in accordance with the *International Plumbing Code*.

301.12 Fuel types. Fuel-fired ~~appliances~~*appliances* shall be designed for use with the type of fuel to which they will be connected and the altitude at which they are installed. ~~Appliances~~*Appliances* that comprise parts of the building mechanical system shall not be converted for the usage of a different fuel, except where *approved* and converted in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. The fuel input rate shall not be increased or decreased beyond the limit rating for the altitude at which the *appliance* is installed.

301.13 Vibration isolation. Where vibration isolation of *equipment* and ~~appliances~~*appliances* is employed, an *approved* means of supplemental restraint shall be used to accomplish the support and restraint.

301.14 Repair. Defective material or parts shall be replaced or repaired in such a manner so as to preserve the original approval or listing.

301.15 Wind resistance. Mechanical *equipment*, ~~appliances~~*appliances* and supports that are exposed to wind shall be designed and installed to resist the wind pressures determined in accordance with the *International Building Code*.

[BS] 301.16 Flood hazard. For structures located in flood hazard areas, mechanical systems, equipment and ~~appliances~~*appliances* shall be located at or above the elevation required by Section 1612 of the *International Building Code* for utilities and attendant ~~equipment~~*equipment*.

Exception: Mechanical systems, ~~equipment~~*equipment* and ~~appliances~~*appliances* are permitted to be located below the elevation required by Section 1612 of the of the *International Building Code* for utilities and attendant equipment provided that they are designed and installed to prevent water from entering or accumulating within the components and to resist hydrostatic and hydrodynamic loads and stresses, including the effects of buoyancy, during the occurrence of flooding up to such elevation.

[BS] 301.16.1 Coastal high-hazard areas and coastal A zones. In coastal high-hazard areas and coastal A zones, mechanical systems and *equipment* shall not be mounted on or penetrate walls intended to break away under flood loads.

301.17 Rodentproofing. Buildings or structures and the walls enclosing habitable or occupiable rooms and spaces in which persons live, sleep or work, or in which feed, food or foodstuffs are stored, prepared, processed, served or sold, shall be constructed to protect against the entrance of rodents in accordance with the *International Building Code*.

301.17.1 Foundation and exterior wall sealing. Annular spaces around pipes, electric cables, conduits or other openings in the walls shall be protected against the passage of rodents by closing such opening with cement mortar, concrete masonry, silicone caulking or noncorrosive metal.

301.18 Seismic resistance. Where earthquake loads are applicable in accordance with the *International Building Code*, mechanical system ~~supports~~supports, anchorage and bracing shall be designed and installed for ~~the~~ seismic forces in accordance with Chapter 16 of the *International Building Code*.

301.19 Pipe and duct penetrations. Openings for pipe and duct penetrations in walls, floors or ceilings shall be larger than the penetrating pipe or duct. Openings through concrete or masonry building elements shall be sleeved. The annular space surrounding pipe and duct penetrations shall be protected in an *approved* manner in accordance with the *International Building Code*.

SECTION 302
PROTECTION OF STRUCTURE

302.1 Structural safety. The building or structure shall not be weakened by the installation of mechanical systems. Where floors, walls, ceilings or any other portion of the building or structure are required to be altered or replaced in the process of installing or repairing any system, the building or structure shall be left in a safe structural condition in accordance with the *International Building Code*.

302.2 Penetrations of floor/ceiling assemblies and fire-resistance-rated assemblies. Penetrations of floor/ceiling assemblies and assemblies required to have a fire-resistance rating shall be protected in accordance with Chapter 7 of the *International Building Code*.

[BS] 302.3 Cutting, notching and boring in wood framing. The cutting, notching and boring of wood framing members shall comply with Sections 302.3.1 through 302.3.4.

[BS] 302.3.1 Joist notching. Notches on the ends of joists shall not exceed one-fourth the joist depth. Holes bored in joists shall not be within 2 inches (51 mm) of the top or bottom of the joist, and the diameter of any such hole shall not exceed one-third the depth of the joist. Notches in the top or bottom of joists shall not exceed one-sixth the depth and shall not be located in the middle third of the span.

[BS] 302.3.2 Stud cutting and notching. In exterior walls and bearing partitions, a wood stud shall not be cut or notched in excess of 25 percent of its depth. In nonbearing partitions that do not support loads other than the weight of the partition, a stud shall not be cut or notched in excess of 40 percent of its depth.

[BS] 302.3.3 Bored holes. The diameter of bored holes in wood studs shall not exceed 40 percent of the stud depth. The diameter of bored holes in wood studs shall not exceed 60 percent of the stud depth in nonbearing partitions. The diameter of bored holes in wood studs shall not exceed 60 percent of the stud depth in any wall where each stud is doubled, provided that not more than two such successive doubled studs are so bored. The edge of the bored hole shall be not closer than $^5/_8$ inch (15.9 mm) to the edge of the stud. Bored holes shall be not located at the same section of stud as a cut or notch.

[BS] 302.3.4 Engineered wood products. Cuts, notches and holes bored in trusses, structural composite lumber, structural glue-laminated members and I-joists are prohibited except where permitted by the manufacturer's recommendations or where the effects of such alterations are specifically considered in the design of the member by a registered design professional.

[BS] 302.4 Alterations to trusses. Truss members and components shall not be cut, drilled, notched, spliced or otherwise altered in any way without written concurrence and approval of a *registered design professional*. Alterations resulting in the addition of loads to any member, such as HVAC *equipment* and water heaters, shall not be permitted without verification that the truss is capable of supporting such additional loading.

[BS] 302.5 Cutting, notching and boring in steel framing. The cutting, notching and boring of steel framing members shall comply with Sections 302.5.1 through 302.5.3.

[BS] 302.5.1 Cutting, notching and boring holes in structural steel framing. The cutting, notching and boring of holes in structural steel framing members shall be as prescribed by the *registered design professional*.

[BS] 302.5.2 Cutting, notching and boring holes in cold-formed steel framing. Flanges and lips of load-bearing cold-formed steel framing members shall not be cut or notched. Holes in webs of load-bearing cold-formed steel framing members shall be permitted along the centerline of the web of the framing member and shall not exceed the dimensional limitations, penetration spacing or minimum hole edge distance as prescribed by the *registered design professional*. Cutting, notching and boring holes of steel floor/roof decking shall be as prescribed by the *registered design professional*.

[BS] 302.5.3 Cutting, notching and boring holes in non-structural cold-formed steel wall framing. Flanges and lips of nonstructural cold-formed steel wall studs shall not be cut or notched. Holes in webs of nonstructural cold-formed steel wall studs shall be permitted along the centerline of the web of the framing member, shall not exceed $1^1/_2$ inches (38 mm) in width or 4 inches (102 mm) in length, and shall not be spaced less than 24 inches (610 mm) center to center from another hole or less than 10 inches (254 mm) from the bearing end.

SECTION 303
EQUIPMENT AND APPLIANCE LOCATION

303.1 General. *Equipment* and ~~appliances~~*appliances* shall be located as required by this section, specific requirements elsewhere in this code and the conditions of the *equipment* and *appliance* listing.

303.2 Hazardous locations. ~~Appliances~~*Appliances* shall not be located in a *hazardous location* unless *listed* and *approved* for the specific installation.

303.3 Prohibited locations. Fuel-fired ~~appliances~~*appliances* shall not be located in, or obtain *combustion* air from, any of the following rooms or spaces:

1. Sleeping rooms.
2. Bathrooms.
3. Toilet rooms.
4. Storage closets.
5. Surgical rooms.

Exception: This section shall not apply to the following ~~appliances~~*appliances*:

1. *Direct-vent* *appliances* that obtain all *combustion* air directly from the outdoors.
2. Solid fuel-fired ~~appliances~~*appliances*, provided that combustion air is provided in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.
3. ~~Appliances~~*Appliances* installed in a dedicated enclosure in which all *combustion* air is taken directly from the outdoors, in accordance with Chapter 7. *Access* to such enclosure shall be through a solid door, weather-stripped in accordance with the exterior door air leakage requirements of the *International Energy Conservation Code* and equipped with an *approved* self-closing device.

303.4 Protection from damage. ~~Appliances~~*Appliances* shall not be installed in a location where subject to mechanical damage unless protected by *approved* barriers. ~~Protection is not required for *appliances* located out of the vehicle's normal travel path.~~

303.5 Indoor locations. Furnaces and boilers installed in closets and alcoves shall be listed for such installation.

303.6 Outdoor locations. ~~Appliances~~*Appliances* installed in other than indoor locations shall be *listed* and *labeled* for outdoor installation.

303.7 Pit locations. ~~Appliances~~*Appliances* installed in pits or excavations shall not come in direct contact with the surrounding ~~soil.~~ soil and shall be installed not less than 2 inches (51 mm) above the pit floor. The sides of the pit or excavation shall be held back not less than 12 inches (305 mm) from the *appliance*. Where the depth exceeds 12 inches (305 mm) below adjoining grade, the walls of the pit or excavation shall be lined with concrete or masonry. Such concrete or masonry shall extend not less than 4 inches (102 mm) above adjoining grade and shall have sufficient lateral load-bearing capacity to resist collapse. Excavation on the control side of the *appliance* shall extend not less than 30 inches (762 mm) horizontally. The *appliance* shall be protected from flooding in an *approved* manner.

[BF] 303.8 Elevator shafts. Mechanical systems shall not be located in an elevator shaft.

303.9 Fireplaces in Group I-2, Condition 2 occupancies. Fuel-burning *appliances* and fireplaces in Group I-2, Condition 2 *occupancies* shall be in accordance with Section 901.4.

SECTION 304
INSTALLATION

304.1 General. *Equipment* and ~~appliances~~*appliances* shall be installed as required by the terms of their approval, in accordance with the conditions of the listing, the manufacturer's installation instructions and this code. Manufacturer's installation instructions shall be available on the job site at the time of inspection.

304.2 Conflicts. Where conflicts between this code and the conditions of listing or the manufacturer's installation instructions occur, the provisions of this code shall apply.

Exception: Where a code provision is less restrictive than the conditions of the listing of the *equipment* or *appliance* or the manufacturer's installation instructions, the conditions of the listing and the manufacturer's installation instructions shall apply.

304.3 Elevation of ignition source. *Equipment* and ~~appliances~~*appliances* having an *ignition source* and located in hazardous locations and public garages, private garages, repair garages, automotive motor fuel-dispensing facilities and parking garages shall be elevated such that the source of ignition is not less than 18 inches (457 mm) above the floor surface on which the *equipment* or *appliance* rests. For the purpose of this section, rooms or spaces that are not part of the living space of a *dwelling unit* and that communicate directly with a private garage through openings shall be considered to be part of the private garage.

Exception: Elevation of the ignition source is not required for ~~appliances~~*appliances* that are listed as flammable vapor ignition resistant.

304.3.1 Parking garages. Connection of a parking garage with any room in which there is a fuel-fired *appliance* shall be by means of a vestibule providing a two-doorway ~~separation, except that a single door is permitted where the sources of ignition in the *appliance* are elevated in accordance with Section 304.3.~~separation.

~~**Exception:**~~

Exceptions:

1. A single door is permitted where the sources of ignition in the *appliance* are elevated in accordance with Section 304.3.

2. This section shall not apply to ~~appliance~~*appliance* installations complying with Section 304.6.

~~1. This section shall not apply to *appliance* installations complying with Section 304.6.~~

304.4 Prohibited equipment and appliance location. ~~Equipment~~*Equipment* and ~~appliances~~*appliances* having an *ignition source* shall not be installed in Group H ~~occupancies~~*occupancies* or control areas where open use, handling or dispensing of combustible, flammable or explosive materials occurs.

[FG] 304.5 Hydrogen-generating and refueling operations. Hydrogen-generating and refueling ~~appliances~~*appliances* shall be installed and located in accordance with their listing and the manufacturer's instructions. Ventilation shall be required in accordance with Section 304.5.1, 304.5.2 or 304.5.3 in public garages, private garages, repair garages, automotive motor fuel-dispensing facilities and parking garages that contain hydrogen-generating ~~appliances~~*appliances* or refueling systems. For the purpose of this section, rooms or spaces that are not part of the living space of a *dwelling unit* and that communicate directly with a private garage through openings shall be considered to be part of the private garage.

[FG] 304.5.1 Natural ventilation. Indoor locations intended for hydrogen-generating or refueling operations shall be limited to a maximum floor area of 850 square feet (79 m^2) and shall communicate with the outdoors in accordance with Sections 304.5.1.1 and 304.5.1.2. The maximum rated output capacity of hydrogen-generating ~~appliances~~*appliances* shall not exceed 4 standard cubic feet per minute (0.00189 m^3/s) of hydrogen for each 250 square feet ~~(23.2~~(23 m^2) of floor area in such spaces. The minimum cross-sectional dimension of air openings shall be 3 inches (76 mm). Where ducts are used, they shall be of the same cross-sectional area as the free area of the openings to which they connect. In such locations, *equipment* and ~~appliances~~*appliances* having an *ignition source* shall be located such that the source of ignition is not within 12 inches (305 mm) of the ceiling.

[FG] 304.5.1.1 Two openings. Two permanent openings shall be provided within the garage. The upper opening shall be located entirely within 12 inches (305 mm) of the ceiling of the garage. The lower opening shall be located entirely within 12 inches (305 mm) of the floor of the garage. Both openings shall be provided in the same exterior wall. The openings shall communicate directly with the outdoors and shall have a minimum free area of $^{1}/_{2}$ square foot per 1,000 cubic feet (1 $m^2/610\ m^3$) of garage volume.

[FG] 304.5.1.2 Louvers and grilles. In calculating free area required by Section 304.5.1, the required size of openings shall be based on the net free area of each opening. If the free area through a design of louver or grille is known, it shall be used in calculating the size opening required to provide the free area specified. If the design and free area are not known, it shall be assumed that wood louvers will have 25-percent free area and metal louvers and grilles will have 75-percent free area. Louvers and grilles shall be fixed in the open position.

[FG] 304.5.2 Mechanical ventilation. Indoor locations intended for hydrogen-generating or refueling operations shall be ventilated in accordance with Section 502.16. In such locations, *equipment* and ~~appliances~~*appliances* having an *ignition source* shall be located such that the source of ignition is below the mechanical ventilation outlet(s).

[FG] 304.5.3 Specially engineered installations. As an alternative to the provisions of Sections 304.5.1 and 304.5.2, the necessary supply of air for ventilation and dilution of flammable gases shall be provided by an *approved* engineered system.

304.6 Public garages. ~~Appliances~~*Appliances* located in public garages, motor fuel-dispensing facilities, repair garages or other areas frequented by motor vehicles, shall be installed not less than 8 feet (2438 mm) above the floor. Where motor vehicles are capable of passing under an *appliance*, the *appliance* shall be installed at the ~~clearances~~*clearances* required by the *appliance* manufacturer and not less than 1 foot (305 mm) higher than the tallest vehicle garage door opening.

Exception: The requirements of this section shall not apply where the ~~appliances~~*appliances* are protected from motor vehicle impact and installed in accordance with Section 304.3 and NFPA 30A.

304.7 Private garages. ~~Appliances~~*Appliances* located in private garages and carports shall be installed with a minimum clearance of 6 feet (1829 mm) above the floor.

Exception: The requirements of this section shall not apply where the ~~appliances~~*appliances* are protected from motor vehicle impact and installed in accordance with Section 304.3.

304.8 Construction and protection. Boiler rooms and furnace rooms shall be protected as required by the *International Building Code*.

304.9 Clearances to combustible construction. Heat-producing *equipment* and *appliances* shall be installed to maintain the required *clearances* to combustible construction as specified in the listing and manufacturer's instructions. Such ~~clearances~~*clearances* shall be reduced only in accordance with Section 308. *Clearances* to combustibles shall include such considerations as door swing, drawer pull, overhead projections or shelving and window swing, shutters, coverings and drapes. Devices such as doorstops or limits, closers, drapery ties or guards shall not be used to provide the required *clearances*.

304.10 Clearances from grade. *Equipment* and *appliances* installed at grade level shall be supported on a level concrete slab or other *approved* material extending not less than 2 inches (76 mm) above adjoining grade or shall be suspended not less than 6 inches (152 mm) above adjoining grade. Such support shall be in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

~~**304.10 Under-floor and exterior grade installations.**~~

~~**304.10.1 Exterior grade installations.** Equipment and appliances installed above grade level shall be supported on a solid base or approved material a minimum of 2 inches (51 mm) thick.~~

~~**304.10.2 Under-floor installation.** Suspended equipment shall be a minimum of 6 inches (152 mm) above the adjoining grade. See Section 603.14 for ductwork support heights.~~

~~**304.10.3 Crawl space supports.** A support shall be provided at each corner of the unit not less than 8 inches by 8 inches (203.2 mm by 203.2 mm). The unit shall be supported a minimum of 2 inches (51 mm) above grade. When constructed of brick, the bricks shall be mortared together.~~

~~All units stacked shall be mortared together. Fabricated units, formed concrete, or other approved materials shall be permitted.~~

~~**304.10.4 Drainage.** Below-grade installations shall be provided with a natural drain or an automatic lift or sump pump. For pit requirements, see Section 303.7~~

[BE] 304.11 Guards. Guards shall be provided where various ~~appliances~~*appliances*, ~~equipment~~*equipment*, fans or other components that require service and roof hatch openings are located within 10~~6~~ feet (3048 mm)~~(1829 mm)~~ of a roof edge or open side of a walking surface and such edge or open side is located more than 30 inches (762 mm) above the floor, roof, or grade below. The guard shall extend not less than 30 inches (762 mm) beyond each end of ~~appliances, equipment, fans and roof hatch openings.~~ components, *appliances*, *equipment* and fans that require service and each end of the roof hatch parallel to the roof edge. The top of the guard shall be located not less than 42 inches (1067 mm) above the elevated surface adjacent to the guard. The guard shall be constructed so as to prevent the passage of a 21-inch-diameter (533 mm) sphere and shall comply with the loading requirements for guards specified in the *International Building Code*.

Exceptions:

1. Guards are not required where ~~permanent~~ fall arrest/restraint anchorage connector devices that comply with ANSI/ASSP Z359.1 ~~ANSI/ASSE Z 359.1~~ are ~~affixed for use during the entire lifetime of the roof covering. The devices shall be re-evaluated for possible replacement when the entire roof covering is replaced. The devices shall be placed not more than 10 feet (3048 mm) on center along hip and ridge lines and placed not less than 10 feet (3048 mm) from roof edges and the open sides of walking surfaces.~~installed.
2. Guards not required at the time of original installation are not required by this section for ~~equipment~~*equipment* and *appliances* that are repaired or replaced.

304.12 Area served. ~~Appliances~~*Appliances* serving different areas of a building other than where they are installed shall be permanently marked in an *approved* manner that uniquely identifies the *appliance* and the area it serves.

SECTION 305
PIPING SUPPORT

305.1 General. Mechanical system piping shall be supported in accordance with this section.

305.2 Materials. Pipe hangers and supports shall have sufficient strength to withstand all anticipated static and specified dynamic loading conditions associated with the intended use. Pipe hangers and supports that are in direct contact with piping shall be of *approved* materials that are compatible with the piping and that will not promote galvanic action.

305.3 Structural attachment. Hangers and anchors shall be attached to the building construction in an *approved* manner.

305.4 Interval of support. Piping shall be supported at distances not exceeding the spacing specified in Table 305.4, or in accordance with ANSI/MSS SP-58.

TABLE 305.4
PIPING SUPPORT SPACING[a]

PIPING MATERIAL	MAXIMUM HORIZONTAL SPACING (feet)	MAXIMUM VERTICAL SPACING (feet)
ABS pipe	4	10[c]
Aluminum pipe and tubing	10	15
~~Brass pipe~~	~~10~~	~~10~~
~~Brass tubing, 1 1/4-inch diameter and smaller~~	~~6~~	~~10~~
~~Brass tubing, 1 1/2-inch diameter and larger~~	~~10~~	~~10~~
Cast-iron pipe[b]	5	15
Copper or copper-alloy pipe	12	10
~~Copper or copper-alloy tubing, 1 1/4-inch diameter and smaller~~	~~6~~	~~10~~

Copper or copper-alloy tubing ~~tubing, 1 1 /2-inch diameter and larger~~	~~6~~ 8	10
CPVC pipe or tubing, 1 inch and smaller	3	10[c]
CPVC pipe or tubing, ~~$1\frac{1}{4}$-inch~~ $1\frac{1}{4}$-inches and larger	4	10[c]
Lead pipe	Continuous	4
PB pipe or tubing	$2\frac{2}{3}$ (32 inches)	4
PE-RT 1 inch and smaller	$2\frac{2}{3}$ (32 inches)	10[c]
PE-RT $1\frac{1}{4}$ inches and larger	4	10[c]
PEX tubing 1 inch and smaller	$2\frac{2}{3}$ (32 inches)	10[c]
PEX tubing $1\frac{1}{4}$ inches and larger	4	10[c]
Polypropylene (PP) pipe or tubing, 1 inch and smaller	$2\frac{2}{3}$ (32 inches)	10[c]
Polypropylene (PP) pipe or tubing, $1\frac{1}{4}$ inches and larger	4	10[c]
PVC pipe	4	10[c]
Steel pipe	12	15
Steel tubing	8	10

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.
a. See Section 301.18.
b. The maximum horizontal spacing of cast-iron pipe hangers shall be increased to 10 feet where 10-foot lengths of pipe are installed.
c. Mid-story guide.

305.5 Protection against physical damage. In concealed locations where piping, other than cast-iron or steel, is installed through holes or notches in studs, joists, rafters or similar members less than $1\frac{1}{2}$ inches (38 mm) from the nearest edge of the member, the pipe shall be protected by shield plates. Protective steel shield plates having a minimum thickness of 0.0575 inch (1.463 mm) (No. 16 gage) shall cover the area of the pipe where the member is notched or bored, and shall extend not less than 2 inches (51 mm) above sole plates and below top plates.

SECTION 306
ACCESS AND SERVICE SPACE

306.1 Access. *Appliances*, controls devices, heat exchangers and HVAC system components that utilize energy shall be accessible for inspection, service, repair and replacement without disabling the function of a fire-resistance-rated assembly or removing permanent construction, other appliances, venting systems or any other piping or ducts not connected to the *appliance* being inspected, serviced, repaired or replaced. A level working space not less than 30 inches deep and 30 inches wide (762 mm by 762 mm) shall be provided in front of the control side to service an *appliance*.

~~**306.1.1 Central furnaces.** Deleted.~~

306.2 Appliances in rooms. Rooms containing ~~appliances~~*appliances* shall be provided with a door and an unobstructed passageway measuring not less than 36 inches (914 mm) wide and 80 inches (2032 mm) high.

Exception: Within a *dwelling unit*, ~~appliances~~*appliances* installed in a compartment, alcove, basement or similar space shall be accessed by an opening or door and an unobstructed passageway measuring not less than 24 inches (610 mm) wide and large enough to allow removal of the largest *appliance* in the space, provided that a level service space of not less than 30 inches (762 mm) deep and the height of the *appliance*, but not less than 30 inches (762 mm), is present at the front or service side of the *appliance* with the door open.

306.3 Appliances in attics and above hard ceilings. Attics containing ~~appliances~~*appliances* shall be provided with an opening and unobstructed passageway large enough to allow removal of the largest component of the *appliance*. The passageway shall be not less than 30 inches (762 mm) high and 22 inches (559 mm) wide and not more than 20 feet (6096 mm) in length measured along the centerline of the passageway from the opening to the *appliance*. The passageway shall have continuous solid flooring not less than 24 inches (610 mm) wide. A level service space not less than 30 inches (762 mm) deep and 30 inches (762 mm) wide shall be present at the front or service side of the *appliance*. The clear access opening dimensions shall be not less than 20 inches by 30 inches (508 mm by 762 mm), and large enough to allow removal of the largest component of the *appliance*.

Exceptions:

1. The passageway and level service space are not required where the *appliance* is capable of being serviced and removed through the required opening.
2. Where the passageway is not less than 6 feet (1829 mm) high for its entire length, the passageway shall not be limited in length.

306.3.1 Electrical requirements.~~requirements - lighting outlet and receptacle.~~ A luminaire controlled by a switch located at the required passageway opening and a receptacle outlet shall be provided at or near the *equipment* or *appliance* location in accordance with the *North Carolina Electrical Code*. ~~For reference and coordination purposes only, refer to *North Carolina Electrical Code* Article 210.63 for receptacle, and Article 210.70 (C) for lighting outlet and switch location.~~

306.4 Appliances under floors. Underfloor spaces containing ~~appliances~~*appliances* shall be provided with an access opening and unobstructed passageway large enough to remove the largest component of the *appliance*. The passageway shall be not less than 22 inches (559 mm) high and 36 inches (914 mm) wide, nor more than 20 feet (6096 mm) in length measured along the centerline of the passageway from the opening to the *appliance*. A level service space not less than 30 inches (762 mm) deep and 30 inches (762 mm) wide shall be present at the front or service side of the *appliance*. If the depth of the passageway or the service space exceeds 12 inches (305 mm) below the adjoining grade, the walls of the passageway shall be lined with concrete or masonry. Such concrete or masonry shall extend not less than 4 inches (102 mm) above the adjoining grade and shall have sufficient lateral-bearing capacity to resist collapse. The clear access opening dimensions shall be not less than 22 inches high by 30 inches wide (559 mm by 762 mm), and large enough to allow removal of the largest component of the *appliance*.

Exceptions:

1. The passageway is not required where the level service space is present when the access is open and the *appliance* is capable of being serviced and removed through the required opening.
2. Where the passageway is not less than 6 feet (1829 mm) high for its entire length, the passageway shall not be limited in length.

306.4.1 Electrical requirements.~~requirements - lighting outlet and receptacle.~~ A luminaire controlled by a switch located at the required passageway opening and a receptacle outlet shall be provided at or near the *equipment* or *appliance* location in accordance with ~~NFPA 70.~~the *North Carolina Electrical Code*. ~~For reference and coordination purposes only, refer to *North Carolina Electrical Code* Article 210.63 for receptacle, and Article 210.70 (C) for lighting outlet and switch location.~~

306.5 Equipment and appliances on roofs or elevated structures. Where *equipment* or ~~appliances~~*appliances* requiring periodic maintenance are installed on, located on, or suspended from an elevated structure or the roof of a building such that personnel will have to climb higher than 16 feet (4877 mm) above grade or finished floor to access such ~~equipment~~*equipment* or ~~appliances~~*appliances*, an interior or exterior means of access shall be provided. Such access shall not require climbing over obstructions greater than 30 inches (762 mm) in height or walking on roofs having a slope greater than ~~4~~four units vertical in 12 units horizontal (33-percent slope). Such access shall not require the use of portable ladders. Where access involves climbing over parapet walls, the height shall be measured to the top of the parapet wall.

Exception: Where permanent means of access is technically infeasible, wall-mounted ~~equipment~~*equipment* and ~~appliance~~*appliance* maintenance, replacement and repairs that are over 16 feet can be serviced by motorized equipment ~~*upon*~~upon *approval*. The owner/tenant shall provide a maintenance service and cleaning schedule contract that shall be renewed annually.

Permanent ladders installed to provide the required access shall comply with the following minimum design criteria:

1. The side railing shall extend above the parapet or roof edge not less than 30 inches (762 mm).
2. Ladders shall have rung spacing not to exceed 14 inches (356 mm) on center. The uppermost rung shall be not greater than 24 inches (610 mm) below the upper edge of the roof hatch, roof or parapet, as applicable.
3. Ladders shall have a toe spacing not less than 6 inches (152 mm) deep.
4. There shall be not less than 18 inches (457 mm) between rails.
5. Rungs shall have a diameter not less than 0.75-inch ~~(19~~(19.1 mm) and be capable of withstanding a 300-pound ~~(136.1~~(136 kg) load.
6. Ladders over 30 feet (9144 mm) in height shall be provided with offset sections and landings capable of withstanding 100 pounds per square foot ~~(488.2~~(488 kg/m^2). Landing dimensions shall be not less than 18 inches (457 mm) and not less than the width of the ladder served. A guard rail shall be provided on all open sides of the landing.
7. Climbing clearance. The distance from the centerline of the rungs to the nearest permanent object on the climbing side of the ladder shall be not less than 30 inches (762 mm) measured perpendicular to the rungs. This distance shall be maintained from the point of ladder access to the bottom of the roof hatch. A minimum clear width of 15 inches (381 mm) shall be provided on both sides of the ladder measured from the midpoint of and parallel with the rungs except where cages or wells are installed.
8. Landing required. The ladder shall be provided with a clear and unobstructed bottom landing area having a minimum dimension of 30 inches (762 mm) by 30 inches (762 mm) centered in front of the ladder.
9. Ladders shall be protected against corrosion by *approved* means.
10. Access to ladders shall be provided at all times. This requirement does not preclude the owner from securing the ladder from unauthorized access.

Catwalks installed to provide the required access shall be not less than 24 inches (610 mm) wide and shall have railings as required for service platforms.

Exception: This section shall not apply to Group R-3 *occupancies*.

306.5.1 Sloped roofs. Where ~~appliances~~*appliances*, *equipment*, fans or other components that require periodic maintenance are installed on a roof having a slope of three units vertical in 12 units horizontal (25-percent slope) or greater and having an edge more than 30 inches (762 mm) above grade at such edge, a level platform shall be provided on each side of the *appliance* or *equipment* to which access is required for service, repair or maintenance. The platform shall be not less than 30 inches (762 mm) in any dimension and shall be provided with guards. The guards shall extend not less than 42 inches (1067 mm) above the platform, shall be constructed so as to prevent the passage of a 21-inch-diameter (533 mm) sphere and shall comply with the loading requirements for guards specified in the *International Building Code*. Access shall not require walking on roofs having a slope greater than four units vertical in 12 units horizontal (33-percent slope). Where access involves obstructions greater than 30 inches (762 mm) in height, such obstructions shall be provided with ladders installed in accordance with Section 306.5 or stairways installed in accordance with the requirements specified in the *International Building Code* in the path of travel to and from ~~appliances~~*appliances*, fans or *equipment* requiring service.

306.5.2 Electrical requirements.~~Receptable.~~ A receptacle outlet shall be provided at or near the *equipment or appliance* location in accordance with the *North Carolina Electrical Code*. ~~For reference and coordination purposes only, refer to *North Carolina Electrical Code* Article 210.63 for receptacle.~~

SECTION 307
CONDENSATE DISPOSAL

307.1 Fuel-burning appliances. Liquid *combustion* by-products of condensing ~~appliances~~*appliances* shall be collected and discharged to an *approved* plumbing fixture or disposal area in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions. Condensate piping shall be of *approved* corrosion-resistant material and shall not be smaller than the drain connection on the ~~appliance~~*appliance*. Such piping shall maintain a minimum horizontal slope in the direction of discharge of not less than one-eighth unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (1-percent slope).

307.2 Evaporators, condensing furnaces and cooling coils. Condensate drain systems shall be provided for *equipment* and ~~appliances~~*appliances* containing evaporators, cooling coils or condensing furnaces. Condensate drain systems shall be designed, constructed and installed in accordance with Sections 307.2.1 through 307.2.5.

Exception: Evaporators and cooling coils that are designed to operate in sensible cooling only and not support condensation shall not be required to meet the requirements of this section.

307.2.1 Condensate disposal. Condensate from all condensing furnaces, cooling coils and evaporators shall be conveyed from the drain pan outlet to an *approved* place of disposal. Such piping shall maintain a minimum horizontal slope in the direction of discharge of not less than one-eighth unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (1-percent slope). Where pumps are used, they shall be installed with a factory-equipped auxiliary high-level switch and shall shut off equipment served upon activation of the auxiliary high-level switch. ~~Where damage to any building components will occur as a result of overflow from the pump, the pump shall also be located in the auxiliary drain pan or in a separate drain pan equipped with a separate drain line or water-level detection device.~~ Condensate shall not discharge into a street, alley or other areas so as to cause a nuisance.

307.2.1.1 Condensate discharge. Condensate drains shall not directly connect to any plumbing drain, waste or vent pipe. Condensate drains shall not discharge into a plumbing fixture other than a floor sink, floor drain, trench drain, mop sink, hub drain, standpipe, utility sink or laundry sink. An air gap or air break shall be provided. Condensate drain connections to a lavatory wye branch tailpiece or to a bathtub overflow pipe are prohibited. Except where discharging to grade outdoors, the point of discharge of condensate drains shall be located within the same occupancy, tenant space or *dwelling unit* as the source of the condensate.

307.2.2 Drain pipe materials and sizes. Components of the condensate disposal system shall be ABS, cast iron, ~~galvanized steel, copper,~~ copper and copper alloy, CPVC, cross-linked polyethylene, galvanized steel, PE-RT, polyethylene, ~~ABS,~~ polypropylene, ~~CPVC,~~ ~~PVC,~~ PVC or ~~polypropylene~~ PVDF pipe or tubing. Components shall be selected for the pressure and temperature rating of the installation. Joints and connections shall be made in accordance with the applicable provisions of Chapter 7 of the *International Plumbing Code* relative to the material type. Condensate waste and drain line size shall be not less than $^{3}/_{4}$-inch ~~(19.1 mm)~~ pipe size~~internal diameter~~ and shall not decrease in size from the drain pan connection to the place of condensate disposal. Where the drain pipes from more than one unit are manifolded together for condensate drainage, the pipe or tubing shall be sized in accordance with an *approved* method. ~~Provisions shall be made to prevent the formation of condensation on the exterior of primary condensate drain piping if condensate dripping off the pipe could cause damage to any building component.~~ *Condensate piping* shall be insulated to an R-value of not less than ~~R-3.~~R-3 to prevent the formation of condensation on the exterior of the piping.

TABLE 307.2.2
CONDENSATE DRAIN SIZING

Deleted.

307.2.3 Auxiliary and secondary drain systems. In addition to the requirements of Section 307.2.1, where damage to any building components could occur as a result of overflow from the *equipment* primary condensate removal system, one of the following auxiliary protection methods shall be provided for each cooling coil or fuel-fired *appliance* that produces condensate:

1. An auxiliary drain pan with a separate drain shall be provided under the coils on which condensation will occur. The auxiliary pan drain shall discharge to a conspicuous point of disposal to alert occupants in the event of a stoppage of the primary drain. The pan shall have a minimum depth of $1^{1}/_{2}$ inches (38 mm), shall be not less than 3 inches (76 mm) larger than the unit, or the coil dimensions in width and length and shall be constructed of corrosion-resistant material. Galvanized sheet steel pans shall have a minimum thickness of not less than 0.0236 inch (0.6010 mm) (No. 24 gage). Nonmetallic pans shall have a minimum thickness of not less than 0.0625 inch (1.6 mm).

    ~~a. *Appliances* with primary condensate pans above *appliance* components. Cooling coils mounted above the air handler or furnace shall have a secondary drain piped to auxiliary pan under air handler to avoid condensate migrating through *appliance* components before reaching the auxiliary drain pan.~~

To prevent condensate migrating through the *appliance*, whenever cooling coils are located above the auxiliary drain pan, a secondary drain shall be piped from the overflow drain of the *equipment*-supplied drain pan to the auxiliary drain pan.

2. A separate overflow drain line shall be connected to the drain pan provided with the *equipment*. Such overflow drain shall discharge to a conspicuous point of disposal to alert occupants in the event of a stoppage of the primary drain. The overflow drain line shall connect to the drain pan at a higher level than the primary drain connection.
3. An auxiliary drain pan without a separate drain line shall be provided under the coils on which condensate will occur. Such pan shall be equipped with a water-level detection device conforming to UL 508 that will shut off the *equipment* served prior to overflow of the pan. The auxiliary drain pan shall be constructed in accordance with Item 1 of this section.
4. A water-level detection device conforming to UL 508 shall be provided that will shut off the *equipment* served in the event that the primary drain is blocked. The device shall be installed in the primary drain line upstream of the primary drain line trap, the overflow drain line, or in the equipment-supplied drain pan, located at a point higher than the primary drain line connection and below the overflow rim of such pan.

Exception: Fuel-fired ~~appliances~~*appliances* that automatically shut down operation in the event of a stoppage in the condensate drainage system.

307.2.3.1 Water-level monitoring devices. On down-flow units and all other coils that do not have a secondary drain or provisions to install a secondary or auxiliary drain pan, a water-level monitoring device shall be installed inside the primary drain pan. This device shall shut off the *equipment* served in the event that the primary drain becomes restricted. Devices installed in the drain line shall not be permitted.

307.2.3.2 Appliance, equipment and insulation in pans. Where ~~appliances~~*appliances*, *equipment* or insulation are subject to water damage when auxiliary drain pans fill, that portion of the *appliance*, *equipment* and insulation shall be installed above the rim of the pan. Supports located inside of the pan to support the *appliance* or *equipment* shall be water resistant and *approved*.

307.2.4 Traps. Condensate drains shall be trapped as required by the *equipment* or *appliance* manufacturer.

307.2.4.1 Ductless mini-split system traps. Ductless mini-split ~~equipment~~*equipment* that produces condensate shall be provided with an inline check valve located in the drain line, or a trap.

307.2.5 Drain line maintenance. Condensate drain lines shall be configured to permit the clearing of blockages and performance of maintenance without requiring the drain line to be cut.

307.3 Condensate pumps. Condensate pumps located in uninhabitable spaces, such as attics and crawl spaces, shall be connected to the ~~appliance~~*appliance* or ~~equipment~~*equipment* served such that when the pump fails, the ~~appliance~~*appliance* or ~~equipment~~*equipment* will be prevented from operating. Pumps shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

SECTION 308
CLEARANCE REDUCTION

308.1 Scope. This section shall govern the reduction in required *clearances* to combustible materials and combustible assemblies for *chimneys*, vents, kitchen exhaust ~~equipment~~*equipment*, mechanical ~~appliances~~*appliances*, and mechanical devices and *equipment*.

308.2 Listed appliances and equipment. The reduction of the required *clearances* to combustibles for *listed* and *labeled* ~~appliances~~*appliances* and *equipment* shall be in accordance with the requirements of this section except that such ~~clearances~~*clearances* shall not be reduced where reduction is specifically prohibited by the terms of the *appliance* or *equipment* listing.

308.3 Protective assembly construction and installation. Reduced *clearance* protective assemblies, including structural and support elements, shall be constructed of noncombustible materials. Spacers utilized to maintain an airspace between the protective assembly and the protected material or assembly shall be noncombustible. Where a space between the protective assembly and protected combustible material or assembly is specified, the same space shall be provided around the edges of the protective assembly and the spacers shall be placed so as to allow air circulation by convection in such space. Protective assemblies shall not be placed less than 1 inch (25 mm) from the mechanical ~~appliances~~*appliances*, devices or *equipment*, regardless of the allowable reduced *clearance*.

308.4 Allowable reduction. The reduction of required *clearances* to combustible assemblies or combustible materials shall be based on the utilization of a reduced *clearance* protective assembly in accordance with Section 308.4.1 or 308.4.2.

308.4.1 Labeled assemblies. The allowable ~~clearance~~*clearance* reduction shall be based on an approved reduced ~~clearance~~*clearance* protective assembly that has been tested and bears the ~~label~~*label* of an ~~approved agency~~*approved agency*.

308.4.2 Reduction table. The allowable *clearance* reduction shall be based on one of the methods specified in Table 308.4.2. Where required *clearances* are not listed in Table 308.4.2, the reduced *clearances* shall be determined by linear interpolation between the distances listed in the table. Reduced *clearances* shall not be derived by extrapolation below the range of the table.

TABLE 308.4.2
CLEARANCE REDUCTION METHODS[b]

TYPE OF PROTECTIVE ASSEMBLY[a]	REDUCED CLEARANCE WITH PROTECTION (inches)[a]							
	Horizontal combustible assemblies located above the heat source				Horizontal combustible assemblies located beneath the heat source and all vertical combustible assemblies			
	Required clearance to combustibles without protection (inches)[a]				Required clearance to combustibles without protection (inches)			
	36	18	9	6	36	18	9	6
Galvanized sheet steel, having a minimum thickness of 0.0236 inch (No. 24 gage), mounted on 1-inch glass fiber or mineral wool batt reinforced with wire on the back, 1 inch off the combustible assembly	18	9	5	3	12	6	3	3
Galvanized sheet steel, having a minimum thickness of 0.0236 inch (No. 24 gage), spaced 1 inch off the combustible assembly	18	9	5	3	12	6	3	2
Two layers of galvanized sheet steel, having a minimum thickness of 0.0236 inch (No. 24 gage), having a 1-inch airspace between layers, spaced 1 inch off the combustible assembly	18	9	5	3	12	6	3	3
Two layers of galvanized sheet steel, having a minimum thickness of 0.0236 inch (No. 24 gage), having 1 inch of fiberglass insulation between layers, spaced 1 inch off the combustible assembly	18	9	5	3	12	6	3	3
0.5-inch inorganic insulating board, over 1 inch of fiberglass or mineral wool batt, against the combustible assembly	24	12	6	4	18	9	5	3
$3^1/_2$-inch brick wall, spaced 1 inch off the combustible wall	—	—	—	—	12	6	6	6
$3^1/_2$-inch brick wall, against the combustible wall	—	—	—	—	24	12	6	5

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, °C = [(°F) – 32]/1.8, 1 pound per cubic foot = 16.02 kg/m^3, 1.0 Btu • in/(ft^2 • h • °F) = 0.144 W/m^2 • K.

a. Mineral wool and glass fiber batts (blanket or board) shall have a minimum density of 8 pounds per cubic foot and a minimum melting point of 1,500°F. Insulation material utilized as part of a clearance reduction system shall have a thermal conductivity of 1.0 Btu • in/(ft^2 • h • °F) or less. Insulation board shall be formed of noncombustible material.

b. For limitations on clearance reduction for solid fuel-burning appliances, masonry chimneys, connector pass-throughs, masonry fire places and kitchen ducts, see Sections 308.4.2.1 through 308.4.2.5.

308.4.2.1 Solid fuel-burning appliances. The *clearance* reduction methods specified in Table 308.4.2 shall not be utilized to reduce the *clearance* required for solid fuel-burning ~~appliances~~*appliances* that are *labeled* for installation with

~~appliances~~*clearances* of 12 inches (305 mm) or less. Where ~~appliances~~*appliances* are *labeled* for installation with *clearances* of greater than 12 inches (305 mm), the *clearance* reduction methods of Table 308.4.2 shall not reduce the *clearance* to less than 12 inches (305 mm).

308.4.2.2 Masonry chimneys. The *clearance* reduction methods specified in Table 308.4.2 shall not be utilized to reduce the *clearances* required for masonry *chimneys* as specified in Chapter 8 and the *International Building Code*.

308.4.2.3 Chimney connector pass-throughs. The *clearance* reduction methods specified in Table 308.4.2 shall not be utilized to reduce the ~~clearances~~*clearances* required for *chimney* connector pass-throughs as specified in Section 803.10.4.

308.4.2.4 Masonry fireplaces. The *clearance* reduction methods specified in Table 308.4.2 shall not be utilized to reduce the ~~clearances~~*clearances* required for masonry fireplaces as specified in Chapter 8 and the *International Building Code*.

308.4.2.5 Kitchen exhaust ducts. The *clearance* reduction methods specified in Table 308.4.2 shall not be utilized to reduce the minimum *clearances* required by Section 506.3.11.1 for kitchen exhaust ducts enclosed in a shaft.

SECTION 309
TEMPERATURE CONTROL

[BG] 309.1 Space-heating systems. Interior spaces intended for human occupancy shall be provided with active or passive space-heating systems capable of maintaining an indoor temperature of not less than 68°F (20°C) at a point 3 feet (914 mm) above floor on the design heating day. The installation of portable space heaters shall not be used to achieve compliance with this section.

Exceptions:

1. Interior spaces where the primary purpose is not associated with human comfort.
2. Group F, H, S and U ~~occupancies~~*occupancies*.

SECTION 310
EXPLOSION CONTROL

[F] 310.1 Required. Structures occupied for purposes involving explosion hazards shall be provided with explosion control where required by the *International Fire Code*. Explosion control systems shall be designed and installed in accordance with Section 911 of the *International Fire Code*.

SECTION 311
SMOKE AND HEAT VENTS

[F] 311.1 Required. *Approved* smoke and heat vents shall be installed in the roofs of one-story buildings where required by the *International Fire Code*. Smoke and heat vents shall be designed and installed in accordance with the *International Fire Code*.

SECTION 312
HEATING AND COOLING LOAD CALCULATIONS

312.1 Load calculations. Heating and cooling system design loads for the purpose of sizing systems, ~~appliances~~*appliances* and *equipment* shall be determined in accordance with the procedures described in the ASHRAE/ACCA Standard 183. Alternatively, design loads shall be determined by an *approved* equivalent computation procedure, using the design parameters specified in Chapter 3 [CE] of the *International Energy Conservation Code*.

~~For one- and two-family dwellings and townhouses, heating and cooling equipment shall be sized in accordance with ACCA Manual S based on building loads calculated in accordance with ACCA Manual J, or other approved heating and cooling calculation methodologies.~~

For permitting, inspections, certificate of compliance or certificate of occupancy, verification of ~~Calculations for HVAC Systems - ACCA Manual D, ACCA Manual J nor ACCA Manual S~~<u>load and sizing</u> calculation submittals and ~~review~~<u>reviews</u> shall not be required.

~~(Commentary reference 21 NCAC 50 .0505 GENERAL SUPERVISION AND STANDARD OF COMPETENCE)~~

SECTION 313
CARBON MONOXIDE ALARMS

~~**313.1 Carbon monoxide alarms.** In new construction, one-and two-family *dwellings* and townhouses within which fuel-fired *appliances* or *fireplaces* are installed or that have attached garages shall be provided with an *approved carbon monoxide alarm* installed outside of each separate sleeping area in the immediate vicinity of the bedroom(s) as directed by the alarm manufacturer.~~

~~**313.2 Where required-existing *dwellings*.** In existing *dwellings*, where interior *alterations*, repairs, or additions requiring a building permit occur, or where one or more sleeping rooms are added or created, or where fuel-fired *appliances* or fireplaces are added or replaced, *carbon monoxide alarms* shall be provided in accordance with Section 313.1.~~

> ~~**Exception:** Work involving the exterior surfaces of *dwellings*, such as the replacement of roofing or siding, or the addition or replacement of windows or doors, or the addition of a porch or deck, or the installation of a fuel-fire *appliance* that cannot introduce carbon monoxide to the interior of the *dwelling*, are exempt from the requirements of this section.~~

~~**313.3 Alarm requirements.** The required *carbon monoxide alarms* shall be audible in all bedrooms over background noise levels with all intervening doors closed. Single station *carbon monoxide alarms* shall be listed as complying with UL 2034 and shall be installed in accordance with this code and the manufacturer's installation instructions. Battery powered, plug-in, or hard-wired alarms are acceptable for use.~~

~~**313.4 Carbon monoxide detection.**~~

~~**313.4.1 General.** Carbon monoxide detection shall be installed in accordance with Sections 313.4.1 through 313.4.6.~~

~~**313.4.1.1 Where required.** Carbon monoxide detection shall be provided in Group A-2, I-1, I-2, I-4 and R occupancies and in classrooms in Group E occupancies in the locations specified in Section 313.4.2 where any of the conditions in Sections 313.4.1.2 through 313.4.1.6 exist.~~

~~**313.4.1.2 Fuel-burning appliances and fuel-burning fireplaces.** Carbon monoxide detection shall be provided in Group A-2 occupancies, *dwelling units, sleeping units* and classrooms that contain a fuel-burning appliance or a fuel-burning fireplace.~~

~~**313.4.1.3 Forced-air furnaces.** Carbon monoxide detection shall be provided in Group A-2 occupancies, dwelling units, sleeping units and classrooms served by a fuel-burning, forced-air furnace.~~

> ~~**Exception:** Carbon monoxide detection shall not be required in *dwelling units, sleeping units* and classrooms where carbon monoxide detection is provided in the first room or area served by each main duct leaving the furnace, and the carbon monoxide alarm signals are automatically transmitted to an approved location.~~

~~**313.4.1.4 Fuel-burning appliances outside of dwelling units, sleeping units and classrooms.** Carbon monoxide detection shall be provided in *dwelling units, sleeping units* and classrooms located in buildings that contain fuel-burning appliances or fuel-burning fireplaces.~~

~~**Exceptions:**~~

1. ~~Carbon monoxide detection shall not be required in *dwelling units, sleeping units* and classrooms if there are no communicating openings between the fuel-burning appliance or fuel-burning fireplace and the *dwelling unit, sleeping unit* or classroom.~~
2. ~~Carbon monoxide detection shall not be required in *dwelling units, sleeping units* and classrooms if carbon monoxide detection is provided in one of the following locations:~~

~~2.1. In an *approved* location between the fuel-burning appliance or fuel-burning fireplace and the *dwelling unit*, *sleeping unit* or classroom.~~

~~2.2. On the ceiling of the room containing the fuel-burning appliance or fuel-burning fireplace.~~

~~**313.4.1.5 Private garages.** Carbon monoxide detection shall be provided in *dwelling units*, *sleeping units* and classrooms in buildings with attached *private garages*.~~

~~**Exceptions:**~~

1. ~~Carbon monoxide detection shall not be required where there are no communicating openings between the *private garage* and the *dwelling unit*, *sleeping unit* or classroom.~~
2. ~~Carbon monoxide detection shall not be required in *dwelling units*, *sleeping units* and classrooms located more than one *story* above or below a *private garage*.~~
3. ~~Carbon monoxide detection shall not be required where the *private garage* connects to the building through an *open-ended corridor*.~~
4. ~~Where carbon monoxide detection is provided in an *approved* location between openings to a *private garage* and *dwelling units*, *sleeping units* or classrooms, carbon monoxide detection shall not be required in the *dwelling units*, *sleeping units* or classrooms.~~

~~**313.4.1.6 Exempt garages.** For determining compliance with Section 313.4.1.5, an *open parking garage* complying with Section 406.5 of the *International Building Code* or an enclosed parking garage complying with Section 406.6 of the *International Building Code* shall not be considered a *private garage*.~~

~~**313.4.2 Locations.** Where required by Section 313.4.1.1, carbon monoxide detection shall be installed in the locations specified in Sections 313.4.2.1 through 313.4.2.3.~~

~~**313.4.2.1 Dwelling units.** Carbon monoxide detection shall be installed in *dwelling units* outside of each separate sleeping area in the immediate vicinity of the bedrooms. Where a fuel-burning appliance is located within a bedroom or its attached bathroom, carbon monoxide detection shall be installed within the bedroom.~~

~~**313.4.2.2 Sleeping units.** Carbon monoxide detection shall be installed in *sleeping units*.~~

~~**Exception:** Carbon monoxide detection shall be allowed to be installed outside of each separate sleeping area in the immediate vicinity of the *sleeping unit* where the *sleeping unit* or its attached bathroom does not contain a fuel-burning appliance and is not served by a forced air furnace.~~

~~**313.4.2.3 Group E occupancies.** Carbon monoxide detection shall be installed in classrooms in Group E occupancies. Carbon monoxide alarm signals shall be automatically transmitted to an on-site location that is staffed by school personnel.~~

~~**Exception:** Carbon monoxide alarm signals shall not be required to be automatically transmitted to an on-site location that is staffed by school personnel in Group E occupancies with an *occupant load* of 30 or less.~~

~~**313.4.3 Detection equipment.** Carbon monoxide detection required by Sections 313.4.1 through 313.4.2.3 shall be provided by carbon monoxide alarms complying with Section 313.4.4 or carbon monoxide detection systems complying with Section 313.4.5.~~

~~**313.4.4 Carbon monoxide alarms.** *Carbon monoxide alarms* shall comply with Sections 313.4.4.1 through 313.4.4.3.~~

~~**313.4.4.1 Power source.** *Carbon monoxide alarms* shall receive their primary power from the building wiring where such wiring is served from a commercial source, and when primary power is interrupted, shall receive power from a battery. Wiring shall be permanent and without a disconnecting switch other than that required for overcurrent protection.~~

~~**Exceptions:**~~

1. ~~Where installed in buildings without commercial power, battery-powered *carbon monoxide alarms* shall be an acceptable alternative.~~
2. ~~In A-2 occupancies the *carbon monoxide detector* shall be permitted to be battery-powered.~~

~~**313.4.4.2 Listings.** *Carbon monoxide alarms* shall be listed in accordance with UL 2034.~~

~~**313.4.4.3 Combination alarms.** Combination carbon monoxide/smoke alarms shall be an acceptable alternative to *carbon monoxide alarms*. Combination carbon monoxide/smoke alarms shall be listed in accordance with UL 2034 and UL 217.~~

~~**313.4.5 Carbon monoxide detection systems.** Carbon monoxide detection systems shall be an acceptable alternative to *carbon monoxide alarms* and shall comply with Sections 313.4.5.1 through 313.4.5.3.~~

~~**313.4.5.1 General.** Carbon monoxide detection systems shall comply with NFPA 720. *Carbon monoxide detectors* shall be *listed* in accordance with UL 2075.~~

~~**313.4.5.2 Locations.** *Carbon monoxide detectors* shall be installed in the locations specified in Section 313.4.2. These locations supersede the locations specified in NFPA 720.~~

~~**313.4.5.3 Combination detectors.** Combination carbon monoxide/smoke detectors installed in carbon monoxide detection systems shall be an acceptable alternative to *carbon monoxide detectors*, provided they are listed in accordance with UL 2075 and UL 268.~~

~~**313.4.6 Maintenance.** *Carbon monoxide alarms* and carbon monoxide detection systems shall be maintained in accordance with NFPA 720. *Carbon monoxide alarms* and *carbon monoxide detectors* that become inoperable or begin producing end-of-life signals shall be replaced.~~

313.1 General. Carbon monoxide detection shall be installed in new buildings in accordance with Sections 313.1.1 through 313.6. Carbon monoxide detection shall be installed in existing buildings in accordance with NCGS 143-138(b2) and applicable sections of the *International Existing Building Code*.

313.1.1 Where required. Carbon monoxide detection shall be provided in Group A-2, I, and R occupancies and in classrooms in Group E occupancies in the locations specified in Section 313.2 where any of the conditions in Sections 313.1.2 through 313.1.6 exist.

313.1.2 Fuel-burning appliances and fuel-burning fireplaces. Carbon monoxide detection shall be provided in Group A-2 occupancies, *dwelling units*, *sleeping units* and classrooms that contain a fuel-burning appliance or a fuel-burning fireplace.

313.1.3 Fuel-burning forced-air furnaces. Carbon monoxide detection shall be provided in Group A-2 occupancies, *dwelling units*, *sleeping units* and classrooms served by a fuel-burning, forced-air furnace.

Exception: Carbon monoxide detection shall not be required in *dwelling units*, *sleeping units* and classrooms where a carbon monoxide detector is provided in the first room or area served by each main duct leaving the furnace, and the carbon monoxide alarm signals are automatically transmitted to an *approved* location.

313.1.4 Fuel-burning appliances outside of dwelling units, sleeping units and classrooms. Carbon monoxide detection shall be provided in *dwelling units*, *sleeping units* and classrooms located in buildings that contain fuel-burning appliances or fuel-burning fireplaces.

Exceptions:

1. Carbon monoxide detection shall not be required in *dwelling units*, *sleeping units* and classrooms without communicating openings between the fuel-burning appliance or fuel-burning fireplace and the *dwelling unit*, *sleeping unit* or classroom.
2. Carbon monoxide detection shall not be required in *dwelling units*, *sleeping units* and classrooms where a carbon monoxide detector is provided in one of the following locations:
   2.1. In an *approved* location between the fuel-burning appliance or fuel-burning fireplace and the *dwelling unit*, *sleeping unit* or classroom.
   2.2. On the ceiling of the room containing the fuel-burning appliance or fuel-burning fireplace.

313.1.5 Private garages. Carbon monoxide detection shall be provided in *dwelling units*, *sleeping units* and classrooms in buildings with attached private garages.

Exceptions:

1. Carbon monoxide detection shall not be required in *dwelling units*, *sleeping units* and classrooms without communicating openings between the private garage and the *dwelling unit*, *sleeping unit* or classroom.

2. Carbon monoxide detection shall not be required in *dwelling units*, *sleeping units* and classrooms located more than one story above or below a private garage.

3. Carbon monoxide detection shall not be required where the private garage connects to the building through an *open-ended corridor*.

4. Where a carbon monoxide detector is provided in an *approved* location between openings to a private garage and *dwelling units*, *sleeping units* or classrooms.

313.1.6 Exempt garages. For determining compliance with Section 313.1.5, an open parking garage complying with Section 406.5 of the *International Building Code* or an enclosed parking garage complying with Section 406.6 of the *International Building Code* shall not be considered a private garage.

313.2 Locations. Where required by Section 313.1.1, carbon monoxide detection shall be installed in the locations specified in Sections 313.2.1 through 313.2.3.

313.2.1 Dwelling units. Carbon monoxide detection shall be installed in *dwelling units* outside of each separate sleeping area in the immediate vicinity of the bedrooms. Where a fuel-burning appliance is located within a bedroom or its attached bathroom, carbon monoxide detection shall be installed within the bedroom.

313.2.2 Sleeping units. Carbon monoxide detection shall be installed in *sleeping units*.

Exceptions:

1. Carbon monoxide detection shall be allowed to be installed outside of each separate sleeping area in the immediate vicinity of the *sleeping unit* where the *sleeping unit* or its attached bathroom does not contain a fuel-burning appliance and is not served by a forced-air furnace.
2. In Group I-3, carbon monoxide detection shall be allowed to be installed outside of each separate sleeping area in the immediate vicinity of the *sleeping unit.*

313.2.3 Group E occupancies. Carbon monoxide detectors shall be installed in classrooms in Group E occupancies. Carbon monoxide alarm signals shall be automatically transmitted to an on-site location that is staffed by school personnel.

Exception: Carbon monoxide alarm signals shall not be required to be automatically transmitted to an on-site location that is staffed by school personnel in Group E occupancies with an *occupant load* of 30 or less.

313.3 Carbon monoxide detection. Carbon monoxide detection required by Sections 313.1 through 313.2.3 shall be provided by carbon monoxide alarms complying with Section 313.4 or carbon monoxide detection systems complying with Section 313.5.

313.4 Carbon monoxide alarms. Carbon monoxide alarms shall comply with Sections 313.4.1 through 313.4.4.

313.4.1 Power source. Carbon monoxide alarms shall receive their primary power from the building wiring where such wiring is served from a commercial source, and when primary power is interrupted, shall receive power from a battery. Wiring shall be permanent and without a disconnecting switch other than that required for overcurrent protection.

Exceptions:

1. Where installed in buildings without commercial power, battery-powered carbon monoxide alarms shall be an acceptable alternative.

2. In A-2 occupancies the carbon monoxide detector shall be permitted to be battery-powered.

313.4.2 Listings. Carbon monoxide alarms shall be *listed* in accordance with UL 2034.

313.4.3 Locations. Carbon monoxide alarms shall only be installed in *dwelling units* and in *sleeping units*. They shall not be installed in locations where the code requires carbon monoxide detectors to be used.

313.4.4 Combination alarms. Combination carbon monoxide/smoke alarms shall be an acceptable alternative to carbon monoxide alarms. Combination carbon monoxide/smoke alarms shall be *listed* in accordance with UL 217 and UL 2034.

313.5 Carbon monoxide detection systems. Carbon monoxide detection systems shall be an acceptable alternative to carbon monoxide alarms and shall comply with Sections 313.5.1 through 313.5.3.

313.5.1 General. Carbon monoxide detection systems shall comply with NFPA 720. Carbon monoxide detectors shall be *listed* in accordance with UL 2075.

313.5.2 Locations. Carbon monoxide detectors shall be installed in the locations specified in Section 313.2. These locations supersede the locations specified in NFPA 720.

313.5.3 Combination detectors. Combination carbon monoxide/smoke detectors installed in carbon monoxide detection systems shall be an acceptable alternative to carbon monoxide detectors, provided that they are *listed* in accordance with UL 268 and UL 2075.

313.6 Maintenance. Carbon monoxide alarms and carbon monoxide detection systems shall be maintained in accordance with NFPA 720. Carbon monoxide alarms and carbon monoxide detectors that become inoperable or begin producing end-of-life signals shall be replaced.

313.6.1 Enclosed parking garages. Carbon monoxide and nitrogen dioxide detectors installed in enclosed parking garages in accordance with Section 404.1 of the *International Mechanical Code* shall be maintained in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and their listing. Detectors that become inoperable or begin producing end-of-life signals shall be replaced.

CHAPTER 4
VENTILATION

SECTION 401
GENERAL

401.1 Scope. This chapter shall govern the ventilation of spaces within a building intended to be occupied. Mechanical exhaust systems, including exhaust systems serving clothes dryers and cooking *appliances*; hazardous exhaust systems; dust, stock and refuse conveyor systems; subslab soil exhaust systems; smoke control systems; energy recovery ventilation systems and other systems specified in Section 502 shall comply with Chapter 5.

401.2 Ventilation required. Every occupied space shall be ventilated by natural means in accordance with Section 402 or by mechanical means in accordance with Section 403. *Dwelling units* complying with the air leakage requirements of the *International Energy Conservation Code* shall be ventilated by mechanical means in accordance with Section 403. Ambulatory care facilities and Group I-2 *occupancies* shall be ventilated by mechanical means in accordance with Section 407.

401.3 When required. Ventilation shall be provided during the periods that the room or space is occupied.

401.4 Intake opening location. Air intake openings shall comply with all of the following:

1. Intake openings shall be located not less than 10 feet (3048 mm) from lot lines or buildings on the same lot.
2. Mechanical and gravity outdoor air intake openings shall be located not less than 10 feet (3048 mm) horizontally from any hazardous or noxious contaminant source, such as vents, streets, alleys, parking lots and loading docks, except as specified in Item 3 or Section 501.3.1. Outdoor air intake openings shall be permitted to be located less than 10 feet (3048 mm) horizontally from streets, alleys, parking lots and loading docks provided that the openings are located not less than 25 feet (7620 mm) vertically above such locations. Where openings front on a street or public way, the distance shall be measured from the closest edge of the street or public way.
3. Intake openings shall be located not less than 3 feet (914 mm) below contaminant sources where such sources are located within 10 feet (3048 mm) of the opening. Separation is not required between intake air openings and living space *exhaust air* openings of an individual *dwelling unit* or *sleeping unit* where an approved factory-built intake/exhaust combination termination fitting is used to separate the air streams in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.
4. Intake openings on structures in flood hazard areas shall be at or above the elevation required by Section 1612 of the *International Building Code* for utilities and attendant equipment.

401.5 Intake opening protection. Air intake openings that terminate outdoors shall be protected with corrosion-resistant screens, louvers or grilles. Openings in louvers, grilles and screens shall be sized in accordance with Table 401.5, and shall be protected against local weather conditions. Louvers that protect air intake openings in structures located in hurricane-prone regions, as defined in the *International Building Code*, shall comply with AMCA 550. Outdoor air intake openings located in exterior walls shall meet the provisions for exterior wall opening protectives in accordance with the *International Building Code*.

TABLE 401.5
OPENING SIZES IN LOUVERS, GRILLES AND SCREENS PROTECTING AIR INTAKE OPENINGS

OUTDOOR OPENING TYPE	MINIMUM AND MAXIMUM OPENING SIZES IN LOUVERS, GRILLES AND SCREENS[a] ~~MEASURED IN ANY DIRECTION~~
Intake openings in residential occupancies	Not < $^1/_4$ inch and not > $^1/_2$ inch
Intake openings in other than residential occupancies	> $^1/_4$ inch and not > 1 inch

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. For rectangular openings, the table requirements apply to the shortest side. For round openings, the table requirements apply to the diameter. For square openings, the table requirements apply to any side.

~~**401.5.1** Louvers that protect air intake openings in structures located in hurricane-prone regions, as defined in the *International Building Code*, shall comply with AMCA 550.~~

~~Exception: One and two-family dwellings~~

~~**401.5.2** Outdoor air intake openings located in exterior walls shall meet the provisions for exterior wall opening protectives in accordance with the *International Building Code*.~~

401.6 Contaminant sources. Stationary local sources producing ~~air-borne~~airborne particulates, heat, odors, fumes, spray, vapors, smoke or gases in such quantities as to be irritating or injurious to health shall be provided with an exhaust system in accordance with Chapter 5 or a means of collection and removal of the contaminants. Such exhaust shall discharge directly to an *approved* location at the exterior of the building.

SECTION 402
NATURAL VENTILATION

[BG] 402.1 Natural ventilation. *Natural ventilation* of an occupied space shall be through windows, doors, louvers or other openings to the outdoors. The operating mechanism for such openings shall be provided with ready access so that the openings are readily controllable by the building occupants.

[BG] 402.2 Ventilation area required. The minimum openable area to the outdoors shall be 4 percent of the floor area being ventilated.

[BG] 402.3 Adjoining spaces. Where rooms and spaces without openings to the outdoors are ventilated through an adjoining room, the opening to the adjoining rooms shall be unobstructed and shall have an area not less than 8 percent of the floor area of the interior room or space, but not less than 25 square feet (2.3 m^2). The minimum openable area to the outdoors shall be based on the total floor area being ventilated.

Exception: Exterior openings required for ventilation shall be permitted to open into a thermally isolated sunroom addition or patio cover, provided that the openable area between the sunroom addition or patio cover and the interior room has an area of not less than 8 percent of the floor area of the interior room or space, but not less than 20 square feet (1.86 m^2). The minimum openable area to the outdoors shall be based on the total floor area being ventilated.

[BG] 402.4 Openings below grade. Where openings below grade provide required *natural ventilation*, the ~~outside~~outdoor horizontal clear space measured perpendicular to the opening shall be one and one-half times the depth of the opening. The depth of the opening shall be measured from the average adjoining ground level to the bottom of the opening.

SECTION 403
MECHANICAL VENTILATION

403.1 Ventilation system. Mechanical ventilation shall be provided by a method of supply air and return or *exhaust air* except that mechanical ventilation air requirements for Group R-2, R-3 and R-4 ~~occupancies~~*occupancies* ~~three stories and less in height above grade plane~~ shall be provided by an exhaust system, supply system or combination thereof. The amount of supply air shall be approximately equal to the amount of return and *exhaust air*. The system shall not be prohibited from producing negative or positive pressure. The system to convey *ventilation air* shall be designed and installed in accordance with Chapter 6.

403.2 Outdoor air required. The minimum outdoor airflow rate shall be determined in accordance with Section 403.3.

Exception: Where the *registered design professional* demonstrates that an engineered ventilation system design will prevent the maximum concentration of contaminants from exceeding that obtainable by the rate of outdoor air ventilation determined in accordance with Section 403.3, the minimum required rate of outdoor air shall be reduced in accordance with such engineered system design.

403.2.1 Recirculation of air. The outdoor air required by Section 403.3 shall not be recirculated. Air in excess of that required by Section 403.3 shall not be prohibited from being recirculated as a component of supply air to building spaces, except that:

1. Ventilation air shall not be recirculated from one *dwelling* to another or to dissimilar *occupancies*.
2. Supply air to a swimming pool and associated deck areas shall not be recirculated unless such air is dehumidified to maintain the relative humidity of the area at 60 percent or less. Air from this area shall not be recirculated to other spaces where more than 10 percent ~~or more~~ of the resulting supply airstream consists of air recirculated from these spaces. The design and installation of dehumidification systems shall comply with ANSI/ACCA 10 Manual SPS or other approved methodologies.
3. Where mechanical exhaust is required by Note b in Table 403.3.1.1, recirculation of air from such spaces shall be prohibited. Recirculation of air that is contained completely within such spaces shall not be prohibited. Where recirculation of air is prohibited, all air supplied to such spaces shall be exhausted, including any air in excess of that required by Table 403.3.1.1.
4. Where mechanical exhaust is required by Note g in Table 403.3.1.1, mechanical exhaust is required and recirculation from such spaces is prohibited where more than 10 percent ~~or more~~ of the resulting supply airstream consists of air recirculated from these spaces. Recirculation of air that is contained completely within such spaces shall not be prohibited.

403.2.2 Transfer air. Except where recirculation from such spaces is prohibited by Table 403.3.1.1, air transferred from occupiable spaces is not prohibited from serving as *makeup air* for required exhaust systems in such spaces as kitchens, baths, toilet rooms, elevators and smoking lounges. The amount of transfer air and *exhaust air* shall be sufficient to provide the flow rates as specified in Section 403.3.1.1. The required outdoor airflow rates specified in Table 403.3.1.1 shall be introduced directly into such spaces or into the occupied spaces from which air is transferred or a combination of both.

403.3 Outdoor air and local exhaust airflow rates. Group R-2, R-3 and R-4 occupancies three stories and less in height above grade plane shall be provided with outdoor air and local exhaust in accordance with Section 403.3.2. ~~All other~~Other buildings intended to be occupied shall be provided with outdoor air and local exhaust in accordance with Section 403.3.1.

403.3.1 Other buildings intended to be occupied. The design of local exhaust systems and ventilation systems for outdoor air for *occupancies* other than Group R-2, R-3 and R-4 three stories and less above grade plane shall comply with Sections 403.3.1.1 through ~~403.3.1.5.~~403.3.1.4.

403.3.1.1 Outdoor airflow rate. Ventilation systems shall be designed to have the capacity to supply the minimum outdoor airflow rate, determined in accordance with this section. In each occupiable space, the ventilation system shall be designed to deliver the required rate of outdoor airflow to the *breathing zone*. The occupant load utilized for design of the ventilation system shall be not less than the number determined from the estimated maximum occupant load rate indicated in Table 403.3.1.1. Ventilation rates for occupancies not represented in Table 403.3.1.1 shall be those for a listed *occupancy* classification that is most similar in terms of occupant density, activities and building construction; or shall be determined by an *approved* engineering analysis. The ventilation system shall be designed to supply the required rate of *ventilation air* continuously during the period the building is occupied, except as otherwise stated in other provisions of the code.

With the exception of smoking lounges, the ventilation rates in Table 403.3.1.1 are based on the absence of smoking in occupiable spaces. Where smoking is anticipated in a space other than a smoking lounge, the ventilation system serving the space shall be designed to provide ventilation over and above that required by Table 403.3.1.1 in accordance with accepted engineering practice.

Exception: The occupant load is not required to be determined based on the estimated maximum occupant load rate indicated in Table 403.3.1.1 where *approved* statistical data document the accuracy of an alternative anticipated occupant density.

TABLE 403.3.1.1
MINIMUM VENTILATION RATES

OCCUPANCY CLASSIFICATION	OCCUPANT DENSITY #/1000 FT[2 a]	PEOPLE OUTDOOR AIRFLOW RATE IN BREATHING ZONE, R_p CFM/PERSON	AREA OUTDOOR AIRFLOW RATE IN BREATHING ZONE, R_a CFM/FT[2 a]	EXHAUST AIRFLOW RATE CFM/FT[2 a]

Correctional facilities				
Booking/waiting	50	7.5	0.06	—
Cells				
without plumbing fixtures	25	5	0.12	—
with plumbing fixtures[g]	25	5	0.12	1.0
Day room	30	5	0.06	—
Dining halls (see ~~food~~“Food and beverage ~~service~~service”)	—	—	—	—
Guard stations	15	5	0.06	—
Dry cleaners, laundries				
Coin-operated dry cleaner	20	15	—	—
Coin-operated laundries	20	7.5	~~0.06~~ 0.12	—
Commercial dry cleaner	30	30	—	—
Commercial laundry	10	~~25~~ 5	0.12	—
Storage, pick up	30	7.5	0.12	—
Education				
Art classroom	20	10	0.18	0.7
Auditoriums	150	5	0.06	—
Classrooms (ages 5–8)	25	7.5	—	—
Classrooms (age 9 plus)	35	7.5	—	—
Computer lab	25	10	0.12	—
Corridors (see ~~public spaces~~“Public spaces”)	—	—	—	—
Day care (through age 4)	25	10	0.18	—
Lecture classroom	65	7.5	0.06	—
Lecture hall (fixed seats)	150	7.5	0.06	—
Locker/dressing rooms[g]	—	—	—	0.25
Media center	25	10	0.12	—
Multiuse assembly	100	7.5	0.06	—
Music/theater/dance	35	10	0.06	—
Science laboratories[i]	25	10	0.18	—
Smoking lounges[b]	70	60	—	—
Sports locker rooms[g]	—	—	—	0.5
Wood/metal shops[g]	20	10	0.18	0.5

Food and beverage service				
Bars, cocktail lounges	100	7.5	0.18	—
Cafeteria, fast food	100	7.5	0.18	—
Dining rooms	70	7.5	0.18	—
Kitchens (cooking)[b]	20	7.5	0.12	0.7

(continued)

TABLE 403.3.1.1—continued
MINIMUM VENTILATION RATES

OCCUPANCY CLASSIFICATION	OCCUPANT DENSITY #/1000 FT[2 a]	PEOPLE OUTDOOR AIRFLOW RATE IN BREATHING ZONE, R_p CFM/PERSON	AREA OUTDOOR AIR-FLOW RATE IN BREATHING ZONE, R_a CFM/FT[2 a]	EXHAUST AIRFLOW RATE CFM/FT[2 a]
Hotels, motels, resorts and dormitories				
Bathrooms/toilet—private[g]	—	—	—	25/50[f]
Bedroom/living room	10	5	0.06	—
Conference/meeting	50	5	0.06	—
Dormitory sleeping areas	20	5	0.06	—
Gambling casinos	120	7.5	0.18	—
Lobbies/prefunction	30	7.5	0.06	—
Multipurpose assembly	120	5	0.06	—

Offices				
Conference rooms	50	5	0.06	—
Main entry lobbies	10	5	0.06	—
Office spaces	5	5	0.06	—
Reception areas	30	5	0.06	—
Telephone/data entry	60	5	0.06	—
Private dwellings, single and multiple				
Garages, common for multiple units[b]	—	—	—	0.75
Garages, below dwelling units[j]	—	—	—	100 cfm per car
Kitchens[b]	—	—	—	~~25~~ 50/100[f]
Living areas[c]	Based ~~upon~~on number of bedrooms. First bedroom, 2; each additional bedroom, 1	0.35 ACH but not less than 15 cfm/person	—	—
Toilet rooms and bathrooms[g]	—	—	—	~~20~~ 25/50[f]
Public spaces				
Corridors	—	—	0.06	—
Courtrooms	70	5	0.06	—
Elevator car	—	—	—	1.0
Legislative chambers	50	5	0.06	—
Libraries	10	5	0.12	—
Museums (children's)	40	7.5	0.12	—
Museums/galleries	40	7.5	0.06	—
Places of religious worship	120	5	0.06	—
Shower room (per shower head)[g]	—	—	—	50/20[f]
Smoking lounges[b]	70	60	—	—
Toilet rooms — public[g]	—	—	—	50/70[e]

Retail stores, sales floors and showroom floors				
Dressing rooms	—	—	—	0.25
Mall common areas	40	7.5	0.06	—
Sales	15	7.5	0.12	—
Shipping and receiving	2	10	0.12	—
Smoking lounges[b]	70	60	—	—
Storage rooms	—	—	0.12	—
Warehouses (see ~~storage~~"Storage")	—	10	0.06	—

(continued)

TABLE 403.3.1.1—continued
MINIMUM VENTILATION RATES

OCCUPANCY CLASSIFICATION	OCCUPANT DENSITY #/1000 FT[2 a]	PEOPLE OUTDOOR AIRFLOW RATE IN BREATHING ZONE, R_p CFM/PERSON	AREA OUTDOOR AIRFLOW RATE IN BREATHING ZONE, R_a CFM/FT[2 a]	EXHAUST AIRFLOW RATE CFM/FT[2 a]
Specialty shops				
Automotive motor fuel-dispensing stations[b]	—	—	—	1.5
Barber	25	7.5	0.06	0.5
Beauty salons[b]	25	20	0.12	0.6
Embalming room[b]	—	—	—	2.0
Nail salons [b, h]	25	20	0.12	0.6
Pet shops (animal areas)[b]	10	7.5	0.18	0.9
Supermarkets	8	7.5	0.06	—

Sports and amusement				
Bowling alleys (seating areas)	40	10	0.12	—
Disco/dance floors	100	20	0.06	—
Game arcades	20	7.5	0.18	—
Gym, stadium, arena (play area)	7	20	~~0.30~~ 0.18	—
Health club/aerobics room	40	20	0.06	—
Health club/weight room	10	20	0.06	—
Ice arenas without combustion engines	—	—	0.30	0.5
Spectator areas	150	7.5	0.06	—
Swimming pools (pool and deck area)	—	—	0.48	—
Storage				
Refrigerated warehouses/freezers	—	10	—	—
Repair garages, enclosed parking garages[b, d]	—	—	—	0.75
Warehouses	—	10	0.06	—
Theaters				
Auditoriums (see ~~education~~ “Education”)	—	—	—	—
Lobbies	150	5	0.06	—
Stages, studios	70	10	0.06	—
Ticket booths	60	5	0.06	—
Transportation				
Platforms	100	7.5	0.06	—
Transportation waiting	100	7.5	0.06	—

Workrooms				
Bank vaults/safe deposit	5	5	0.06	—
Computer (without printing)	4	5	0.06	—
Copy, printing rooms	4	5	0.06	0.5
Darkrooms	—	—	—	1.0
Meat processing[c]	10	15	—	—
Pharmacy (prep. area)	10	5	0.18	—
Photo studios	10	5	0.12	—

For SI: 1 cubic foot per minute = 0.0004719 m^3/s, 1 ton = 908 kg, 1 cubic foot per minute per square foot = 0.00508 $m^3/(s \cdot m^2)$, °C = [(°F) – 32]/1.8, 1 square foot = 0.0929 m^2.

a. Based ~~upon~~on net occupiable floor area.

b. Mechanical exhaust required and the recirculation of air from such spaces to other spaces is prohibited. Recirculation of air that is contained completely within such spaces shall not be prohibited (see Section 403.2.1, Item 3).

c. Spaces unheated or maintained below 50°F are not covered by these requirements unless the occupancy is continuous.

d. Ventilation systems in enclosed parking garages shall comply with Section 404.

e. Rates are per water closet or urinal. The higher rate shall be provided where the exhaust system is designed to operate intermittently. The lower rate shall be permitted only where the exhaust system is designed to operate continuously while occupied.

f. Rates are per room unless otherwise indicated. The higher rate shall be provided where the exhaust system is designed to operate intermittently. The lower rate shall be permitted only where the exhaust system is designed to operate continuously while occupied.

g. Mechanical exhaust is required and recirculation from such spaces to other spaces is ~~prohibited except that recirculation shall be permitted where the resulting supply airstream consists of not more than 10 percent air recirculated from these spaces.~~ prohibited. For occupancies other than science laboratories, where there is a wheel-type energy recovery ventilation (ERV) unit in the exhaust system design, the volume of air leaked from the exhaust airstream into the outdoor airstream within the ERV shall be less than 10 percent of the outdoor air volume. Recirculation of air that is contained completely within such spaces shall not be prohibited (see Section 403.2.1, Items 2 and 4).

h. For nail salons, each manicure and pedicure station shall be provided with a source capture system capable of exhausting not less than 50 cfm per station. Exhaust inlets shall be located in accordance with Section 502.20. Where one or more required source capture systems operate continuously during occupancy, the exhaust rate from such systems shall be permitted to be applied to the exhaust flow rate required by Table 403.3.1.1 for the nail salon.

i. Commentary: Refer to design guidelines, North Carolina Department of Public Instruction School Planning, Z9.5 American National Standard for Laboratory Ventilation.

j. If the tenants of the dwelling have exclusive use of the garage below, no exhaust is required.

403.3.1.1.1 Zone outdoor airflow. The minimum outdoor airflow required to be supplied to each zone shall be determined as a function of *occupancy* classification and space air distribution effectiveness in accordance with Sections 403.3.1.1.1.1 through 403.3.1.1.1.3.

403.3.1.1.1.1 Breathing zone outdoor airflow. The outdoor airflow rate required in the *breathing zone* (V_{bz}) of the *occupiable space* or spaces in a zone shall be determined in accordance with Equation 4-1.

$$V_{bz} = R_p P_z + R_a A_z \qquad \textbf{(Equation 4-1)}$$

where:

A_z = Zone floor area: the net *occupiable floor area* of the space or spaces in the zone.
P_z = Zone population: the number of people in the space or spaces in the zone.
R_p = People outdoor air rate: the outdoor airflow rate required per person from Table 403.3.1.1.
R_a = Area outdoor air rate: the outdoor airflow rate required per unit area from Table 403.3.1.1.

403.3.1.1.1.2 Zone air distribution effectiveness. The zone air distribution effectiveness (E_z) shall be determined using Table 403.3.1.1.1.2.

TABLE 403.3.1.1.1.2
ZONE AIR DISTRIBUTION EFFECTIVENESS[a, b, c, d]

AIR DISTRIBUTION CONFIGURATION	E_z
Ceiling or floor supply of cool air	1.0[e]
Ceiling or floor supply of warm air and floor return	1.0
Ceiling supply of warm air and ceiling return	0.8[f]
Floor supply of warm air and ceiling return	0.7
Makeup air drawn in on the opposite side of the room from the exhaust ~~and/or~~or return	0.8
Makeup air drawn in near to the exhaust ~~and/or~~or return location	0.5

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 foot per minute = 0.00506 m/s, °C = [(°F) – 32]/1.8.

a. "Cool air" is air cooler than space temperature.
b. "Warm air" is air warmer than space temperature.
c. "Ceiling" includes any point above the breathing zone.
d. "Floor" includes any point below the breathing zone.
e. Zone air distribution effectiveness of 1.2 shall be permitted for systems with a floor supply of cool air and ceiling return, provided that low-velocity displacement ventilation achieves unidirectional flow and thermal stratification.
f. Zone air distribution effectiveness of 1.0 shall be permitted for systems with a ceiling supply of warm air, provided that supply air temperature is less than 15°F above space temperature and provided that the 150-foot-per-minute supply air jet reaches to within $4^1/_2$ feet of floor level.

403.3.1.1.1.3 Zone outdoor airflow. The zone outdoor airflow rate (V_{oz}), shall be determined in accordance with Equation 4-2.

$$V_{oz} = \frac{V_{bz}}{E_z}$$ **(Equation 4-2)**

Exception: K–12 schools shall be exempt from use of this effectiveness factor ($V_{oz} = V_{bz}$).

403.3.1.1.2 System outdoor airflow. The outdoor air required to be supplied by each ventilation system shall be determined in accordance with Sections 403.3.1.1.2.1 through ~~403.3.1.1.2.3~~403.3.1.1.2.3.4 as a function of system type and zone outdoor airflow rates.

403.3.1.1.2.1 Single zone systems. Where one air handler supplies a mixture of outdoor air and recirculated return air to only one zone, the system outdoor air intake flow rate (V_{ot}) shall be determined in accordance with Equation 4-3.

$$V_{ot} = V_{oz}$$ **(Equation 4-3)**

403.3.1.1.2.2 100-percent outdoor air systems. Where one air handler supplies only outdoor air to one or more zones, the system outdoor air intake flow rate (V_{ot}) shall be determined using Equation 4-4.

$$V_{ot} = \Sigma_{all\ zones} V_{oz}$$ **(Equation 4-4)**

403.3.1.1.2.3 Multiple zone recirculating systems. Where one air handler supplies a mixture of outdoor air and recirculated return air to more than one zone, the system outdoor air intake flow rate (V_{ot}) shall be determined in accordance with Sections 403.3.1.1.2.3.1 through 403.3.1.1.2.3.4.

Exception: Use of ASHRAE 62.1-2019 Simplified Procedure Section 6.2.4.3 for multiple zone recirculating systems for Sections 403.3.1.1.2.3.1 and 403.3.1.1.2.3.2.

403.3.1.1.2.3.1 Primary outdoor air fraction. The primary outdoor air fraction (Z_p) shall be determined for each zone in accordance with Equation 4-5.

$$Z_p = \frac{V_{oz}}{V_{pz}}$$ **(Equation 4-5)**

where:

V_{pz} = Primary airflow: The airflow rate supplied to the zone from the ~~air-handling~~ airhandling unit at which the outdoor air intake is located. It includes outdoor intake air and recirculated air from that air-handling unit but does not include air transferred or air recirculated to the zone by other means. For design purposes, V_{pz} shall be the zone design primary airflow rate, except for zones with variable air volume supply and V_{pz} shall be the lowest expected primary airflow rate to the zone when it is fully occupied.

403.3.1.1.2.3.2 System ventilation efficiency. The system ventilation efficiency (E_v) shall be determined using Table 403.3.1.1.2.3.2 or Appendix A of ASHRAE 62.1.

TABLE 403.3.1.1.2.3.2
SYSTEM VENTILATION EFFICIENCY[a, b]

Max (Z_p)	E_v
≤ 0.15	1
≤ 0.25	0.9
≤ 0.35	0.8
≤ 0.45	0.7
≤ 0.55	0.6
≤ 0.65	0.5
≤ 0.75	0.4
> 0.75	0.3

a. *Max (Z_p)* is the largest value of Z_p calculated using Equation 4-5 among all the zones served by the system.
b. Interpolating between table values shall be permitted.

403.3.1.1.2.3.3 Uncorrected outdoor air intake. The uncorrected outdoor air intake flow rate (V_{ou}) shall be determined in accordance with Equation 4-6.

$$V_{ou} = D\Sigma_{all\ zones} R_p P_z + \Sigma_{all\ zones} R_a A_z$$ **(Equation 4-6)**

where:

D = Occupant diversity: the ratio of the system population to the sum of the zone populations, determined in accordance with Equation 4-7 .

$$D = \frac{P_s}{\Sigma_{all\ zones} P_z}$$ **(Equation 4-7)**

where:

P_s = System population: The total number of occupants in the area served by the system. For design purposes, P_s shall be the maximum number of occupants expected to be concurrently in all zones served by the system.

403.3.1.1.2.3.4 Outdoor air intake flow rate. The outdoor air intake flow rate (V_{ot}) shall be determined in accordance with Equation 4-8.

$$V_{ot} = \frac{V_{ou}}{E_v}$$ **(Equation 4-8)**

Exception: K–12 schools shall be exempt from use of this effectiveness factor ($V_{ot} = V_{ou}$).

403.3.1.2 Exhaust ventilation. Exhaust airflow rate shall be provided in accordance with the requirements of Table 403.3.1.1. Outdoor air introduced into a space by an exhaust system shall be considered as contributing to the outdoor airflow required by Table 403.3.1.1.

403.3.1.3 System operation. The minimum flow rate of outdoor air that the ventilation system must be capable of supplying during its operation shall be permitted to be based on the rate per person indicated in Table 403.3.1.1 and the actual number of occupants present. Where demand-controlled ventilation is employed to adjust the outdoor airflow rate based on the actual number of occupants present, the minimum quantity of outdoor air shall not fall below that determined from the area outdoor airflow rate column of Table 403.3.1.1 during periods when the building is expected to be occupied.

403.3.1.4 Variable air volume system control. Variable air volume air distribution systems, other than those designed to supply only 100-percent outdoor air, shall be provided with controls to regulate the flow of outdoor air. Such control system shall be designed to maintain the flow rate of outdoor air at a rate of not less than that required by Section 403.3 over the entire range of supply air operating rates.

~~**403.3.1.5 Balancing.** The *ventilation* air distribution system shall be provided with means to adjust the system to achieve not less than the minimum ventilation airflow rate as required by Sections 403.3 and 403.3.1.2. Ventilation systems shall be balanced by an *approved* method. Such balancing shall verify that the ventilation system is capable of supplying and exhausting the airflow rates required by Sections 403.3 and 403.3.1.2.~~

403.3.2 Group R-2, R-3 and R-4 occupancies, three stories and less. The design of local exhaust systems and ventilation systems for outdoor air in Group R-2, R-3 and R-4 ~~occupancies~~*occupancies* three stories and less in height above grade plane shall comply with Sections 403.3.2.1 through ~~403.3.2.3.~~403.3.2.5.

403.3.2.1 Outdoor air for dwelling units. An outdoor air ventilation system consisting of a mechanical exhaust system, supply system or combination thereof shall be installed for each ~~dwelling unit~~*dwelling unit*. Local exhaust or supply systems, including outdoor air ducts connected to the return side of an air handler, are permitted to serve as such a system. The outdoor air ventilation system shall be designed to provide the required rate of outdoor air continuously during the period that the building is occupied. The minimum continuous outdoor airflow rate shall be determined in accordance with Equation 4-9.

$$Q_{OA} = 0.01A_{floor} + 7.5(N_{br} + 1)$$ **(Equation 4-9)**

where:

Q_{OA} = outdoor airflow rate, cfm

A_{floor} = floor area, ft^2

N_{br} = number of bedrooms; not to be less than one

~~Exception:~~Exceptions:

1. The outdoor air ventilation system is not required to operate continuously where the system has controls that enable operation for not less than 1 hour of each 4-hour period. The average outdoor airflow rate over the 4-hour period shall be not less than that prescribed by Equation 4-9.

2. The minimum mechanical ventilation rate determined in accordance with Equation 4-9 shall be reduced by 30 percent provided that both of the following conditions apply:

   2.1. A ducted system supplies ventilation air directly to each bedroom and to one or more of the following rooms:

      2.1.1. Living room.

      2.1.2. Dining room.

      2.1.3. Kitchen.

   2.2. The whole-house ventilation system is a *balanced ventilation* system.

403.3.2.2 Outdoor air for other spaces. Corridors and other common areas within the conditioned space shall be provided with outdoor air at a rate of not less than 0.06 cfm [0.0003 $m^3/(s \cdot m^2)$] per square foot of floor area.

403.3.2.3 Local exhaust. Local exhaust systems shall be provided in kitchens, bathrooms and toilet rooms and shall have the capacity to exhaust the minimum airflow rate determined in accordance with Table 403.3.2.3.

TABLE 403.3.2.3
MINIMUM REQUIRED LOCAL EXHAUST RATES FOR GROUP R-2, R-3 AND R-4 OCCUPANCIES

AREA TO BE EXHAUSTED	EXHAUST RATE CAPACITY
Kitchens	100 cfm intermittent or 25 cfm continuous
Bathrooms and toilet rooms	50 cfm intermittent or 20 cfm continuous

For SI: 1 cubic foot per minute = 0.0004719 m^3/s.

403.3.2.4 System controls. Where provided within a *dwelling unit*, controls for outdoor air ventilation systems shall include text or a symbol indicating the system's function.

403.3.2.5 Ventilating equipment. Fans providing exhaust or outdoor air shall be *listed* and *labeled* to provide the minimum required air flow in accordance with ANSI/AMCA 210-ANSI/ASHRAE 51.

SECTION 404
ENCLOSED PARKING GARAGES

404.1 Enclosed parking garages. ~~Where mechanical ventilation systems for enclosed parking garages operate intermittently, such operation shall be automatic by means of carbon monoxide detectors applied in conjunction with nitrogen dioxide detectors. Such detectors shall be installed in accordance with their manufacturers' recommendations.~~ Mechanical ventilation systems for enclosed parking garages shall operate continuously or shall be automatically operated by means of carbon monoxide detectors applied in conjunction with nitrogen dioxide detectors. Such detectors shall be listed in accordance with UL 2075 and installed in accordance with their listing and the manufacturer's instructions. Automatic operation shall cycle the ventilation system between the following two modes of operation:

1. Full-on at an airflow rate of not less than 0.75 cfm per square foot [0.0038 $m^3/(s \cdot m^2)$] of the floor area served.
2. Standby at an airflow rate of not less than 0.05 cfm per square foot [0.00025 $m^3/(s \cdot m^2)$] of the floor area served.

~~**404.2 Minimum ventilation.** Automatic operation of the system shall not reduce the ventilation airflow rate below 0.05 cfm per square foot (0.00025 m3/s • m2) of the floor area and the system shall be capable of producing a ventilation airflow rate of 0.75 cfm per square foot (0.0038 m3/s • m2) of floor area.~~

~~**404.3**~~**404.2 Occupied spaces accessory to public garages.** Connecting offices, waiting rooms, ticket booths and similar uses that are accessory to a public garage shall be maintained at a positive pressure and shall be provided with ventilation in accordance with Section 403.3.1.

SECTION 405
SYSTEMS CONTROL

405.1 General. Mechanical ventilation systems shall be provided with manual or automatic controls that will operate such systems whenever the spaces are occupied. Air-conditioning systems that supply required *ventilation air* shall be provided with controls designed to automatically maintain the required outdoor air supply rate during occupancy.

405.2 Fan shutdown controls. In Group I-2 and I-3 occupancies, each air distribution system shall be equipped with a manual emergency control to stop supply and return air in an emergency. The control device shall be mounted in a readily accessible location and be identified.

> **Exception:** Air-handling equipment serving a single space.

SECTION 406
VENTILATION OF UNINHABITED SPACES

406.1 General. Uninhabited spaces, such as crawl spaces and attics, shall be provided with *natural ventilation* openings as required by the *International Building Code* or shall be provided with a mechanical exhaust and supply air system. The mechanical exhaust rate shall be not less than 0.02 cfm per square foot (0.00001 $m^3/s \cdot m^2$) of horizontal area and shall be automatically controlled to operate when the relative humidity in the space served exceeds 60 percent.

> ~~**Exception:** As otherwise permitted in the *North Carolina Building Code*.~~

SECTION 407
AMBULATORY CARE FACILITIES AND GROUP I-2 OCCUPANCIES

407.1 General. Mechanical ventilation for ambulatory care facilities and Group I-2 *occupancies* shall be designed and installed in accordance with this ~~code and ASHRAE 170.~~ code, ASHRAE 170 and NFPA 99.

SECTION 408
INDOOR FIRING RANGES

408.1 Indoor firing ranges. See Section 502.19.

CHAPTER 5
EXHAUST SYSTEMS

SECTION 501
GENERAL

501.1 Scope. This chapter shall govern the design, construction and installation of mechanical exhaust systems, including exhaust systems serving clothes dryers and cooking ~~appliances~~*appliances*; hazardous exhaust systems; dust, stock and refuse conveyor systems; subslab soil exhaust systems; smoke control systems; energy recovery ventilation systems and other systems specified in Section 502.

501.2 Independent system required. Single or combined mechanical exhaust systems for environmental air shall be independent of all other exhaust systems. ~~Dryer~~Dryer, domestic kitchen and hazardous exhaust shall be independent of all other systems. Type I exhaust systems shall be independent of all other exhaust systems except as provided in Section 506.3.5. Single or combined Type II exhaust systems for food-processing operations shall be independent of all other exhaust systems. ~~Kitchen~~ Commercial kitchen exhaust systems shall be constructed in accordance with ~~Section 505 for domestic equipment and~~Sections 506 through ~~509~~ ~~for commercial equipment.~~509.

501.3 Exhaust discharge. The air removed by every mechanical exhaust system shall be discharged outdoors at a point where it will not cause a public nuisance and not less than the distances specified in Section 501.3.1. The air shall be discharged to a location from which it cannot again be readily drawn in by a ventilating system. Air shall not be exhausted into an ~~attic,~~attic or crawl space, or be directed onto walkways. ~~walkways, balconies, decks, breezeways, covered walkways and similar horizontal projections.~~

Exceptions:

1. Whole-house ventilation-type attic fans shall be permitted to discharge into the attic space of *dwelling units* having private attics.
2. Commercial cooking recirculating systems.
3. Where installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and where mechanical or *natural ventilation* is otherwise provided in accordance with Chapter 4, *listed* and *labeled* domestic ductless range hoods shall not be required to discharge to the outdoors.

501.3.1 Location of exhaust outlets. The termination point of exhaust outlets and ducts discharging to the outdoors shall be located with the following minimum distances:

1. For ducts conveying explosive or flammable vapors, fumes or dusts: 30 feet (9144 mm) from property lines; 10 feet (3048 mm) from operable openings into buildings; 6 feet (1829 mm) from exterior walls and roofs; 30 feet (9144 mm) from combustible walls and operable openings into buildings ~~which~~that are in the direction of the exhaust discharge; 10 feet (3048 mm) above adjoining grade.
2. For other product-conveying outlets: 10 feet (3048 mm) from the property lines; 3 feet (914 mm) from exterior walls and roofs; 10 feet (3048 mm) from operable openings into buildings; 10 feet (3048 mm) above adjoining grade.
3. For all *environmental air* exhaust: 3 feet (914 mm) from property lines; 3 feet (914 mm) from operable openings into buildings for all *occupancies* other than Group U; and 10 feet (3048 mm) from mechanical air intakes. Such exhaust shall not be considered hazardous or noxious. Separation is not required between intake air openings and living space *exhaust air* openings of an individual *dwelling unit* or *sleeping unit* where an approved factory-built intake/exhaust combination termination fitting is used to separate the air streams in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.
4. Exhaust outlets serving structures in flood hazard areas shall be installed at or above the elevation required by Section 1612 of the *International Building Code* for utilities and attendant equipment.
5. For specific ~~systems~~systems, see the following sections:
   - 5.1. Clothes dryer exhaust, Section 504.4.
   - 5.2. Kitchen hoods and other kitchen exhaust *equipment*, Sections 506.3.13, 506.4 and 506.5.

5.3. ~~Dust~~Dust, stock and refuse conveying systems, Section 511.2.

5.4. Subslab soil exhaust systems, Section 512.4.

5.5. Smoke control systems, Section 513.10.3.

5.6. Refrigerant discharge, Section 1105.7.

5.7. *Machinery room* discharge, Section 1105.6.1.

501.3.2 Exhaust opening protection. Exhaust openings that terminate outdoors shall be protected with corrosion-resistant screens, louvers or grilles. Openings in screens, louvers and grilles shall be sized not less than $^1/_4$ inch (6.4 mm) and not larger than $^1/_2$ inch (12.7 mm). Openings shall be protected against local weather conditions. Louvers that protect exhaust openings in structures located in hurricane-prone regions, as defined in the *International Building Code*, shall comply with AMCA Standard 550.

~~**Exception:** One- and two-family dwellings.~~

Outdoor openings located in exterior walls shall meet the provisions for exterior wall opening protectives in accordance with the *International Building Code*.

501.4 Pressure equalization. Mechanical exhaust systems shall be sized to remove the quantity of air required by this chapter to be exhausted. The system shall operate when air is required to be exhausted. Where mechanical exhaust is required in a room or space in other than ~~occupancies~~*occupancies* in Group R-3 and *dwelling units* in Group R-2, such space shall be maintained with a neutral or negative pressure. If a greater quantity of air is supplied by a mechanical ventilating supply system than is removed by a mechanical exhaust for a room, adequate means shall be provided for the natural or mechanical exhaust of the excess air supplied. If only a mechanical exhaust system is installed for a room or if a greater quantity of air is removed by a mechanical exhaust system than is supplied by a mechanical ventilating supply system for a room, adequate *makeup air* shall be provided to satisfy the deficiency.

~~**Exception:** Domestic exhaust systems in residential occupancies and similar uses (domestic clothes dryer, domestic range hood, domestic bathroom exhaust).~~

501.5 Ducts. Where exhaust duct construction is not specified in this chapter, such construction shall comply with Chapter 6.

SECTION 502
REQUIRED SYSTEMS

502.1 General. An exhaust system shall be provided, maintained and operated as specifically required by this section and for all occupied areas where machines, vats, tanks, furnaces, forges, salamanders and other *appliances*, *equipment* and processes in such areas produce or throw off dust or particles sufficiently light to float in the air, or ~~which~~ emit heat, odors, fumes, spray, gas or ~~smoke,~~smoke in such quantities so as to be irritating or injurious to health or safety.

502.1.1 Exhaust location. The inlet to an exhaust system shall be located in the area of heaviest concentration of contaminants.

[F] 502.1.2 Fuel-dispensing areas. The bottom of an air inlet or exhaust opening in fuel-dispensing areas shall be located not more than 18 inches (457 mm) above the floor.

502.1.3 Equipment, appliance and service rooms. *Equipment*, *appliance* and system service rooms that house sources of odors, fumes, noxious gases, smoke, steam, dust, spray or other contaminants shall be designed and constructed so as to prevent spreading of such contaminants to other occupied parts of the building.

[F] 502.1.4 Hazardous exhaust. The mechanical exhaust of high concentrations of dust or hazardous vapors shall conform to the requirements of Section 510.

[F] 502.2 Aircraft fueling and defueling. Compartments housing piping, pumps, air eliminators, water separators, hose reels and similar *equipment* used in aircraft fueling and defueling operations shall be adequately ventilated at floor level or within the floor itself.

[F] 502.3 Battery-charging areas for powered industrial trucks and equipment. Ventilation shall be provided in an *approved* manner in battery-charging areas for powered industrial trucks and *equipment* to prevent a dangerous accumulation of flammable gases.

[F] 502.4 Stationary storage battery systems. Stationary storage battery ~~systems, as regulated by~~systems shall be regulated and ventilated in accordance with Section ~~608~~1207.6.1 of the *International Fire Code*~~*Code*,~~ ~~shall be provided with ventilation in accordance with this chapter and Section 502.4.1 or 502.4.2.~~and the general requirements of this chapter.

~~**Exception:** Lithium-ion and lithium metal polymer batteries shall not require additional ventilation beyond that which would normally be required for human occupancy of the space.~~

~~**[F] 502.4.1 Hydrogen limit in rooms.** For flooded lead acid, flooded nickel cadmium and VRLA batteries, the ventilation system shall be designed to limit the maximum concentration of hydrogen to 1.0 percent of the total volume of the room.~~

~~**[F] 502.4.2 Ventilation rate in rooms.** Continuous ventilation shall be provided at a rate of not less than 1 cubic foot per minute per square foot (cfm/ft^2) [0.00508 m^3/(s m^2)] of floor area of the room.~~

~~**[F] 502.4.3 Supervision.** Mechanical ventilation systems required by Section 502.4 shall be supervised by an approved central, proprietary or remote station service or shall initiate an audible and visual signal at a constantly attended on-site location.~~

[F] 502.5 ~~Valve-regulated lead-acid batteries~~Ventilation of battery systems in cabinets. ~~Valve-regulated lead-acid (VRLA) batteries installed in cabinets, as regulated by Section 608.6.2 of the *International Fire Code*, shall be provided with ventilation in accordance with Section 502.5.1 or 502.5.2.~~Stationary storage battery systems installed in cabinets shall be provided with ventilation in accordance with Section 502.4.

~~**[F] 502.5.1 Hydrogen limit in cabinets.** The cabinet ventilation system shall be designed to limit the maximum concentration of hydrogen to 1.0 percent of the total volume of the cabinet during the worst-case event of simultaneous boost charging of all batteries in the cabinet.~~

~~**[F] 502.5.2 Ventilation rate in cabinets.** Continuous cabinet ventilation shall be provided at a rate of not less than 1 cubic foot per minute per square foot (cfm/ft^2) [0.00508 m^3/(s · m^2)] of the floor area covered by the cabinet. The room in which the cabinet is installed shall be ventilated as required by Section 502.4.1 or 502.4.2.~~

~~**[F] 502.5.3 Supervision.** Mechanical ventilation systems required by Section 502.5 shall be supervised by an approved central, proprietary or remote station service or shall initiate an audible and visual signal at a constantly attended on-site location.~~

[F] 502.6 Dry cleaning plants. Ventilation in dry cleaning plants shall be adequate to protect employees and the public in accordance with this section and DOL 29 CFR Part 1910.1000, where applicable.

[F] 502.6.1 Type II systems. Type II dry cleaning systems shall be provided with a mechanical ventilation system that is designed to exhaust 1 cubic foot of air per minute for each square foot of floor area (1 cfm/ft^2) [0.00508 m^3/ (s • m^2)] in dry cleaning rooms and in drying rooms. The ventilation system shall operate automatically when the dry cleaning *equipment* is in operation and shall have manual controls at an *approved* location.

[F] 502.6.2 Type IV and V systems. Type IV and V dry cleaning systems shall be provided with an automatically activated exhaust ventilation system to maintain an air velocity of not less than 100 feet per minute (0.51 m/s) through the loading door when the door is opened.

Exception: Dry cleaning units are not required to be provided with exhaust ventilation where an exhaust hood is installed immediately outside of and above the loading door ~~which~~and operates at an airflow rate as follows:

$$Q = 100 \times A_{LD}$$ **~~Equation~~(Equation 5-1)**

where:

Q = Flow rate exhausted through the hood, cubic feet per minute.

A_{LD} = Area of the loading door, square feet.

[F] 502.6.3 Spotting and pretreating. Scrubbing tubs, scouring, brushing or spotting operations shall be located such that solvent vapors are captured and exhausted by the ventilating system.

[F] 502.7 Application of flammable finishes. Mechanical exhaust as required by this section shall be provided for operations involving the application of flammable finishes.

[F] 502.7.1 During construction. Ventilation shall be provided for operations involving the application of materials containing flammable solvents in the course of construction, *alteration* or demolition of a structure.

[F] 502.7.2 Limited spraying spaces. Positive mechanical ventilation that provides not less than six complete air changes per hour shall be installed in limited spraying spaces. Such system shall meet the requirements of the *International Fire Code* for handling flammable vapors. Explosion venting is not required.

[F] 502.7.3 Flammable vapor areas. Mechanical ventilation of flammable vapor areas shall be provided in accordance with Sections 502.7.3.1 through 502.7.3.6.

[F] 502.7.3.1 Operation. Mechanical ventilation shall be kept in operation at all times while spraying operations are being conducted and for a sufficient time thereafter to allow vapors from drying coated articles and finishing material residue to be exhausted. Spraying *equipment* shall be interlocked with the ventilation of the flammable vapor area such that spraying operations cannot be conducted unless the ventilation system is in operation.

[F] 502.7.3.2 Recirculation. Air exhausted from spraying operations shall not be recirculated.

Exceptions:

1. Air exhausted from spraying operations shall be permitted to be recirculated as *makeup air* for unmanned spray operations provided that:
   - 1.1. The solid particulate has been removed.
   - 1.2. The vapor concentration is less than 25 percent of the lower flammable limit (LFL).
   - 1.3. *Approved equipment* is used to monitor the vapor concentration.
   - 1.4. An alarm is sounded and spray operations are automatically shut down if the vapor concentration exceeds 25 percent of the LFL.
   - 1.5. In the event of shutdown of the vapor concentration monitor, 100 percent of the air volume specified in Section 510 is automatically exhausted.
2. Air exhausted from spraying operations is allowed to be recirculated as *makeup air* to manned spraying operations where all of the conditions provided in Exception 1 are included in the installation and documents have been prepared to show that the installation does not pose a life safety hazard to personnel inside the spray booth, spraying space or spray room.

[F] 502.7.3.3 Air velocity. The ventilation system shall be designed, installed and maintained so that the flammable contaminants are diluted in noncontaminated air to maintain concentrations in the exhaust airflow below 25 percent of the contaminant's lower flammable limit (LFL). In addition, the spray booth shall be provided with mechanical ventilation so that the average air velocity through openings is in accordance with Sections 502.7.3.3.1 and 502.7.3.3.2.

[F] 502.7.3.3.1 Open face or open front spray booth. For spray application operations conducted in an open face or open front spray booth, the ventilation system shall be designed, installed and maintained so that the average air velocity into the spray booth through all openings is not less than 100 feet per minute (0.51 m/s).

Exception: For fixed or automated electrostatic spray application equipment, the average air velocity into the spray booth through all openings shall be not less than 50 feet per minute (0.25 m/s).

[F] 502.7.3.3.2 Enclosed spray booth or spray room with openings for product conveyance. For spray application operations conducted in an enclosed spray booth or spray room with openings for product conveyance, the ventilation system shall be designed, installed and maintained so that the average air velocity into the spray booth through openings is not less than 100 feet per minute (0.51 m/s).

Exceptions:

1. For fixed or automated electrostatic spray application equipment, the average air velocity into the spray booth through all openings shall be not less than 50 feet per minute (0.25 m/s).
2. Where methods are used to reduce cross drafts that can draw vapors and overspray through openings from the spray booth or spray room, the average air velocity into the spray booth or spray room shall be that necessary to capture and confine vapors and overspray to the spray booth or spray room.

[F] 502.7.3.4 Ventilation obstruction. Articles being sprayed shall be positioned in a manner that does not obstruct collection of overspray.

[F] 502.7.3.5 Independent ducts. Each spray booth and spray room shall have an independent exhaust duct system discharging to the outdoors.

Exceptions:

1. Multiple spray booths having a combined frontal area of 18 square feet (1.67 m^2) or less are allowed to have a common exhaust where identical spray-finishing material is used in each booth. If more than one fan serves one booth, such fans shall be interconnected so that all fans operate simultaneously.
2. Where treatment of exhaust is necessary for air pollution control or energy conservation, ducts shall be allowed to be manifolded if all of the following conditions are met:
   - 2.1. The sprayed materials used are compatible and will not react or cause ignition of the residue in the ducts.
   - 2.2. Nitrocellulose-based finishing material shall not be used.
   - 2.3. A filtering system shall be provided to reduce the amount of overspray carried into the duct manifold.
   - 2.4. Automatic sprinkler protection shall be provided at the junction of each booth exhaust with the manifold, in addition to the protection required by this chapter.

[F] 502.7.3.6 Fan motors and belts. Electric motors driving exhaust fans shall not be placed inside booths or ducts. Fan rotating elements shall be nonferrous or nonsparking or the casing shall consist of, or be lined with, such material. Belts shall not enter the duct or booth unless the belt and pulley within the duct are tightly enclosed.

[F] 502.7.4 Dipping operations. Flammable vapor areas of dip tank operations shall be provided with mechanical ventilation adequate to prevent the dangerous accumulation of vapors. Required ventilation systems shall be so arranged that the failure of any ventilating fan will automatically stop the dipping conveyor system.

[F] 502.7.5 Electrostatic apparatus. The flammable vapor area in spray-finishing operations involving electrostatic apparatus and devices shall be ventilated in accordance with Section 502.7.3.

[F] 502.7.6 Powder coating. Exhaust ventilation for powder-coating operations shall be sufficient to maintain the atmosphere below one-half of the minimum explosive concentration for the material being applied. Nondeposited, air-suspended powders shall be removed through exhaust ducts to the powder recovery system.

[F] 502.7.7 Floor resurfacing operations. To prevent the accumulation of flammable vapors during floor resurfacing operations, mechanical ventilation at a minimum rate of 1 cfm/ft^2 [0.00508 $m^3/(s \cdot m^2)$] of area being finished shall be provided. Such exhaust shall be by *approved* temporary or portable means. Vapors shall be exhausted to the ~~exterior of the building.~~ <u>outdoors.</u>

[F] 502.8 Hazardous materials—general requirements. Exhaust ventilation systems for structures containing hazardous materials shall be provided as required in Sections 502.8.1 through 502.8.5.

[F] 502.8.1 Storage in excess of the maximum allowable quantities. Indoor storage areas and storage buildings for hazardous materials in amounts exceeding the maximum allowable quantity per control area shall be provided with mechanical exhaust ventilation or *natural ventilation* where *natural ventilation* can be shown to be acceptable for the materials as stored.

Exceptions:

1. Storage areas for flammable solids complying with Section 5904 of the *International Fire Code*.
2. Storage areas and storage buildings for fireworks and explosives complying with Chapter 56 of the *International Fire Code*.

[F] 502.8.1.1 System requirements. Exhaust ventilation systems shall comply with all of the following:

1. The installation shall be in accordance with this code.
2. Mechanical ventilation shall be provided at a rate of not less than 1 cfm per square foot [0.00508 $m^3/(s \cdot m^2)$] of floor area over the storage area.

3. The systems shall operate continuously unless alternate designs are *approved*.
4. A manual shutoff control shall be provided outside of the room in a position adjacent to the access door to the room or in another *approved* location. The switch shall be a break-glass or other *approved* type and shall be *labeled*: VENTILATION SYSTEM EMERGENCY SHUTOFF.
5. The exhaust ventilation shall be designed to consider the density of the potential fumes or vapors released. For fumes or vapors that are heavier than air, exhaust shall be taken from a point within 12 inches (305 mm) of the floor. For fumes or vapors that are lighter than air, exhaust shall be taken from a point within 12 inches (305 mm) of the highest point of the room.
6. The location of both the exhaust and inlet air openings shall be designed to provide air movement across all portions of the floor or room to prevent the accumulation of vapors.
7. The *exhaust air* shall not be recirculated to occupied areas if the materials stored are capable of emitting hazardous vapors and contaminants have not been removed. Air contaminated with explosive or flammable vapors, fumes or dusts; flammable, highly toxic or toxic gases; or radioactive materials shall not be recirculated.

[F] 502.8.2 Gas rooms, exhausted enclosures and gas cabinets. The ventilation system for gas rooms, exhausted enclosures and gas cabinets for any quantity of hazardous material shall be designed to operate at a negative pressure in relation to the surrounding area. Highly toxic and toxic gases shall comply with Sections 502.9.7.1, 502.9.7.2 and 502.9.8.4.

[F] 502.8.3 Indoor dispensing and use. Indoor dispensing and use areas for hazardous materials in amounts exceeding the maximum allowable quantity per control area shall be provided with exhaust ventilation in accordance with Section 502.8.1.

Exception: Ventilation is not required for dispensing and use of flammable solids other than finely divided particles.

[F] 502.8.4 Indoor dispensing and use—point sources. Where gases, liquids or solids in amounts exceeding the maximum allowable quantity per control area and having a hazard ranking of 3 or 4 in accordance with NFPA 704 are dispensed or used, mechanical exhaust ventilation shall be provided to capture gases, fumes, mists or vapors at the point of generation.

Exception: Where it can be demonstrated that the gases, liquids or solids do not create harmful gases, fumes, mists or vapors.

[F] 502.8.5 Closed systems. Where closed systems for the use of hazardous materials in amounts exceeding the maximum allowable quantity per control area are designed to be opened as part of normal operations, ventilation shall be provided in accordance with Section 502.8.4.

[F] 502.9 Hazardous materials—requirements for specific materials. Exhaust ventilation systems for specific hazardous materials shall be provided as required in Section 502.8 and Sections 502.9.1 through 502.9.11.

[F] 502.9.1 Compressed gases—medical gas systems. Rooms for the storage of compressed medical gases in amounts exceeding the permit amounts for compressed gases in the *International Fire Code*, and that do not have an exterior wall, shall be exhausted through a duct to the exterior of the building. Both separate airstreams shall be enclosed in a 1-hour-rated shaft enclosure from the room to the exterior. *Approved* mechanical ventilation shall be provided at a minimum rate of 1 cfm/ft^2 [0.00508 m^3/(s • m^2)] of the area of the room.

Gas cabinets for the storage of compressed medical gases in amounts exceeding the maximum allowable quantity per control area for compressed gases in the *International Fire Code* shall be connected to an exhaust system. The average velocity of ventilation at the face of access ports or windows shall be not less than 200 feet per minute (1.02 m/s) with a minimum velocity of 150 feet per minute (0.76 m/s) at any point at the access port or window.

[F] 502.9.2 Corrosives. Where corrosive materials in amounts exceeding the maximum allowable quantity per control area are dispensed or used, mechanical exhaust ventilation in accordance with Section 502.8.4 shall be provided.

[F] 502.9.3 Cryogenics. Storage areas for stationary or portable containers of cryogenic fluids in any quantity shall be ventilated in accordance with Section 502.8. Indoor areas where cryogenic fluids in any quantity are dispensed shall be ventilated in accordance with the requirements of Section 502.8.4 in a manner that captures any vapor at the point of generation.

Exception: Ventilation for indoor dispensing areas is not required where it can be demonstrated that the cryogenic fluids do not create harmful vapors.

[F] 502.9.4 Explosives. Squirrel cage blowers shall not be used for exhausting hazardous fumes, vapors or gases in operating buildings and rooms for the manufacture, assembly or testing of explosives. Only nonferrous fan blades shall be used for fans located within the ductwork and through which hazardous materials are exhausted. Motors shall be located outside the duct.

[F] 502.9.5 Flammable and combustible liquids. Exhaust ventilation systems shall be provided as required by Sections 502.9.5.1 through 502.9.5.5 for the storage, use, dispensing, mixing and handling of flammable and combustible liquids. Unless otherwise specified, this section shall apply to any quantity of flammable and combustible liquids.

~~Exception:~~Exceptions:

1. This section shall not apply to flammable and combustible liquids that are exempt from the *International Fire Code*.
2. The storage of beer, distilled spirits and wine in barrels and casks conforming to the requirements of the *International Fire Code*.

[F] 502.9.5.1 Vaults. Vaults that contain tanks of Class I liquids shall be provided with continuous ventilation at a rate of not less than 1 cfm/ft^2 of floor area [0.00508 m^3/(s • m^2)], but not less than 150 cfm ~~(4 m^3/min).~~(4.25 m^3/min). Failure of the exhaust airflow shall automatically shut down the dispensing system. The exhaust system shall be designed to provide air movement across all parts of the vault floor. Supply and exhaust ducts shall extend to a point not greater than 12 inches (305 mm) and not less than 3 inches (76 mm) above the floor. The exhaust system shall be installed in accordance with the provisions of NFPA 91. Means shall be provided to automatically detect any flammable vapors and to automatically shut down the dispensing system upon detection of such flammable vapors in the exhaust duct at a concentration of 25 percent of the LFL.

[F] 502.9.5.2 Storage rooms and warehouses. Liquid storage rooms and liquid storage warehouses for quantities of liquids exceeding those specified in the *International Fire Code* shall be ventilated in accordance with Section 502.8.1.

[F] 502.9.5.3 Cleaning machines. Areas containing machines used for parts cleaning in accordance with the *International Fire Code* shall be adequately ventilated to prevent accumulation of vapors.

[F] 502.9.5.4 Use, dispensing and mixing. Continuous mechanical ventilation shall be provided for the use, dispensing and mixing of flammable and combustible liquids in open or closed systems in amounts exceeding the maximum allowable quantity per control area and for bulk transfer and process transfer operations. The ventilation rate shall be not less than 1 cfm/ft^2 [0.00508 m^3/(s • m^2)] of floor area over the design area. Provisions shall be made for the introduction of *makeup air* in a manner that will include all floor areas or pits where vapors can collect. Local or spot ventilation shall be provided where needed to prevent the accumulation of hazardous vapors.

Exception: Where *natural ventilation* can be shown to be effective for the materials used, dispensed or mixed.

[F] 502.9.5.5 Bulk plants or terminals. Ventilation shall be provided for portions of properties where flammable and combustible liquids are received by tank vessels, pipelines, tank cars or tank vehicles and ~~which~~ are stored or blended in bulk for the purpose of distributing such liquids by tank vessels, pipelines, tank cars, tank vehicles or containers as required by Sections 502.9.5.5.1 through 502.9.5.5.3.

[F] 502.9.5.5.1 General. Ventilation shall be provided for rooms, buildings and enclosures in which Class I liquids are pumped, used or transferred. Design of ventilation systems shall consider the relatively high specific gravity of the vapors. Where *natural ventilation* is used, adequate openings in outside walls at floor level, unobstructed except by louvers or coarse screens, shall be provided. Where *natural ventilation* is inadequate, mechanical ventilation shall be provided.

[F] 502.9.5.5.2 Basements and pits. Class I liquids shall not be stored or used within a building having a basement or pit into which flammable vapors can travel, unless such area is provided with ventilation designed to prevent the accumulation of flammable vapors therein.

[F] 502.9.5.5.3 Dispensing of Class I liquids. Containers of Class I liquids shall not be drawn from or filled within buildings unless a provision is made to prevent the accumulation of flammable vapors in hazardous concentrations. Where mechanical ventilation is required, it shall be kept in operation while flammable vapors could be present.

[F] 502.9.6 Highly toxic and toxic liquids. Ventilation exhaust shall be provided for highly toxic and toxic liquids as required by Sections 502.9.6.1 and 502.9.6.2.

[F] 502.9.6.1 Treatment system. This provision shall apply to indoor and outdoor storage and use of highly toxic and toxic liquids in amounts exceeding the maximum allowable quantities per control area. Exhaust scrubbers or other systems for processing vapors of highly toxic liquids shall be provided where a spill or accidental release of such liquids can be expected to release highly toxic vapors at normal temperature and pressure.

[F] 502.9.6.2 Open and closed systems. Mechanical exhaust ventilation shall be provided for highly toxic and toxic liquids used in open systems in accordance with Section 502.8.4. Mechanical exhaust ventilation shall be provided for highly toxic and toxic liquids used in closed systems in accordance with Section 502.8.5.

Exception: Liquids or solids that do not generate highly toxic or toxic fumes, mists or vapors.

[F] 502.9.7 Highly toxic and toxic compressed gases—any quantity. Ventilation exhaust shall be provided for highly toxic and toxic compressed gases in any quantity as required by Sections 502.9.7.1 and 502.9.7.2.

[F] 502.9.7.1 Gas cabinets. Gas cabinets containing highly toxic or toxic compressed gases in any quantity shall comply with Section 502.8.2 and the following requirements:

1. The average ventilation velocity at the face of gas cabinet access ports or windows shall be not less than 200 feet per minute (1.02 m/s) with a minimum velocity of 150 feet per minute (0.76 m/s) at any point at the access port or window.
2. Gas cabinets shall be connected to an exhaust system.
3. Gas cabinets shall not be used as the sole means of exhaust for any room or area.

[F] 502.9.7.2 Exhausted enclosures. Exhausted enclosures containing highly toxic or toxic compressed gases in any quantity shall comply with Section 502.8.2 and the following requirements:

1. The average ventilation velocity at the face of the enclosure shall be not less than 200 feet per minute (1.02 m/s) with a minimum velocity of 150 feet per minute (0.76 m/s).
2. Exhausted enclosures shall be connected to an exhaust system.
3. Exhausted enclosures shall not be used as the sole means of exhaust for any room or area.

[F] 502.9.8 Highly toxic and toxic compressed gases—quantities exceeding the maximum allowable quantity per control area. Ventilation exhaust shall be provided for highly toxic and toxic compressed gases in amounts exceeding the maximum allowable quantities per control area as required by Sections 502.9.8.1 through 502.9.8.6.

[F] 502.9.8.1 Ventilated areas. The room or area in which indoor gas cabinets or exhausted enclosures are located shall be provided with exhaust ventilation. Gas cabinets or exhausted enclosures shall not be used as the sole means of exhaust for any room or area.

[F] 502.9.8.2 Local exhaust for portable tanks. A means of local exhaust shall be provided to capture leakage from indoor and outdoor portable tanks. The local exhaust shall consist of portable ducts or collection systems designed to be applied to the site of a leak in a valve or fitting on the tank. The local exhaust system shall be located in a gas room. Exhaust shall be directed to a treatment system where required by the *International Fire Code*.

[F] 502.9.8.3 Piping and controls—stationary tanks. Filling or dispensing connections on indoor stationary tanks shall be provided with a means of local exhaust. Such exhaust shall be designed to capture fumes and vapors. The exhaust shall be directed to a treatment system where required by the *International Fire Code*.

[F] 502.9.8.4 Gas rooms. The ventilation system for gas rooms shall be designed to operate at a negative pressure in relation to the surrounding area. The exhaust ventilation from gas rooms shall be directed to an exhaust system.

[F] 502.9.8.5 Treatment system. The exhaust ventilation from gas cabinets, exhausted enclosures and gas rooms, and local exhaust systems required in Sections 502.9.8.2 and 502.9.8.3 shall be directed to a treatment system where required by the *International Fire Code*.

[F] 502.9.8.6 Process equipment. Effluent from indoor and outdoor process *equipment* containing highly toxic or toxic compressed gases which could be discharged to the atmosphere shall be processed through an exhaust scrubber or other processing system. Such systems shall be in accordance with the *International Fire Code*.

[F] 502.9.9 Ozone gas generators. Ozone cabinets and ozone gas-generator rooms for systems having a maximum ozone-generating capacity of $^{1}/_{2}$ pound (0.23 kg) or more over a 24-hour period shall be mechanically ventilated at a rate of not less than six air changes per hour. For cabinets, the average velocity of ventilation at *makeup air* openings with cabinet doors closed shall be not less than 200 feet per minute (1.02 m/s).

[F] 502.9.10 LP-gas distribution facilities. LP-gas distribution facilities shall be ventilated in accordance with NFPA 58.

[F] 502.9.10.1 Portable container use. Above-grade underfloor spaces or basements in which portable LP-gas containers are used or are stored awaiting use or resale shall be provided with an *approved* means of ventilation.

Exception: Department of Transportation (DOT) specification cylinders with a maximum water capacity of ~~2.5~~2.7 pounds ~~(1~~(1.2 kg) for use in completely self-contained hand torches and similar applications. The quantity of LP-gas shall not exceed 20 pounds (9 kg).

[F] 502.9.11 Silane gas. Exhausted enclosures and gas cabinets for the indoor storage of silane gas in amounts exceeding the maximum allowable quantities per control area shall comply with Chapter 64 of the *International Fire Code*.

[F] 502.10 Hazardous production materials (HPM). Exhaust ventilation systems and materials for ducts utilized for the exhaust of HPM shall comply with this section, other applicable provisions of this code, the *International Building Code* and the *International Fire Code*.

[F] 502.10.1 Where required. Exhaust ventilation systems shall be provided in the following locations in accordance with the requirements of this section and the *International Building Code*.

1. Fabrication areas: Exhaust ventilation for fabrication areas shall comply with the *International Building Code*. Additional manual control switches shall be provided where required by the code official.
2. Workstations: A ventilation system shall be provided to capture and exhaust gases, fumes and vapors at workstations.
3. Liquid storage rooms: Exhaust ventilation for liquid storage rooms shall comply with Section 502.8.1.1 and the *International Building Code*.
4. HPM rooms: Exhaust ventilation for HPM rooms shall comply with Section 502.8.1.1 and the *International Building Code*.
5. Gas cabinets: Exhaust ventilation for gas cabinets shall comply with Section 502.8.2. The gas cabinet ventilation system is allowed to connect to a workstation ventilation system. Exhaust ventilation for gas cabinets containing highly toxic or toxic gases shall also comply with Sections 502.9.7 and 502.9.8.
6. Exhausted enclosures: Exhaust ventilation for exhausted enclosures shall comply with Section 502.8.2. Exhaust ventilation for exhausted enclosures containing highly toxic or toxic gases shall also comply with Sections 502.9.7 and 502.9.8.
7. Gas rooms: Exhaust ventilation for gas rooms shall comply with Section 502.8.2. Exhaust ventilation for gas rooms containing highly toxic or toxic gases shall also comply with Sections 502.9.7 and 502.9.8.
8. Cabinets containing pyrophoric liquids or Class 3 water-reactive liquids: Exhaust ventilation for cabinets in fabrication areas containing pyrophoric liquids shall be as required in Section 2705.2.3.4 of the *International Fire Code*.

[F] 502.10.2 Penetrations. Exhaust ducts penetrating fire barriers constructed in accordance with Section 707 of the *International Building Code* or horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711 of the *International Building Code* shall be contained in a shaft of equivalent fire-resistance-rated construction. Exhaust ducts shall not penetrate fire walls. Fire dampers shall not be installed in exhaust ducts.

[F] 502.10.3 Treatment systems. Treatment systems for highly toxic and toxic gases shall comply with the *International Fire Code*.

502.11 Motion picture projectors. Motion picture projectors shall be exhausted in accordance with Section 502.11.1 or 502.11.2.

502.11.1 Projectors with an exhaust discharge. Projectors equipped with an exhaust discharge shall be directly connected to a mechanical exhaust system. The exhaust system shall operate at an exhaust rate as indicated by the manufacturer's installation instructions.

502.11.2 Projectors without exhaust connection. Projectors without an exhaust connection shall have contaminants exhausted through a mechanical exhaust system. The exhaust rate for electric arc projectors shall be not less than 200 cubic feet per minute (cfm) (0.09 m^3/s) per lamp. The exhaust rate for xenon projectors shall be not less than 300 cfm (0.14 m^3/s) per lamp. Xenon projector exhaust shall be at a rate such that the exterior temperature of the lamp housing does not exceed 130°F (54°C). The lamp and projection room exhaust systems, whether combined or independent, shall not be interconnected with any other exhaust or return system within the building.

[F] 502.12 Organic coating processes. Enclosed structures involving organic coating processes in which Class I liquids are processed or handled shall be ventilated at a rate of not less than 1 cfm/ft^2 [0.00508 $m^3/(s \cdot m^2)$] of solid floor area. Ventilation shall be accomplished by exhaust fans that intake at floor levels and discharge to a safe location outside the structure. Noncontaminated intake air shall be introduced in such a manner that all portions of solid floor areas are provided with continuous uniformly distributed air movement.

502.13 Public garages. Mechanical exhaust systems for public garages, as required in Chapter 4, shall operate continuously or in accordance with Section 404.

502.14 Motor vehicle operation. In areas where motor vehicles operate, mechanical ventilation shall be provided in accordance with Section 403. Additionally, areas in which stationary motor vehicles are operated shall be provided with a *source capture system* that connects directly to the motor vehicle exhaust systems. Such system shall be engineered by a registered design professional or shall be factory-built ~~equipment~~*equipment* designed and sized for the purpose.

Exceptions:

1. This section shall not apply where the motor vehicles being operated or repaired are electrically powered.
2. This section shall not apply to one- and two-family dwellings.
3. This section shall not apply to motor vehicle service areas where engines are operated inside the building only for the duration necessary to move the motor vehicles in and out of the building.

[F] 502.15 Repair garages. Where Class I liquids or LP-gas are stored or used within a building having a basement or pit wherein flammable vapors could accumulate, the basement or pit shall be provided with ventilation designed to prevent the accumulation of flammable vapors therein.

[F] 502.16 Repair garages for ~~natural gas and hydrogen-fueled vehicles.~~vehicles fueled by lighter-than-air fuels. Repair garages used for the conversion and repair of ~~natural gas- or hydrogen-fueled~~ vehicles that use compressed natural gas, liquefied natural gas, hydrogen or other lighter-than-air motor fuels shall be provided with an *approved* mechanical exhaust ventilation system. The mechanical exhaust ventilation system shall be in accordance with ~~Sections~~Section 502.16.1 and ~~502.16.2.~~ or 502.16.2 as applicable.

~~**Exception:** Where *approved* by the code official, *natural ventilation* shall be permitted in lieu of mechanical ventilation.~~

Exceptions:

1. Repair garages where work is not performed on the fuel system and is limited to exchange of parts and maintenance not requiring open flame or welding on the compressed natural gas, liquefied natural gas, hydrogen or other lighter-than-air-fueled motor vehicle.
2. Repair garages for hydrogen-fueled vehicles where work is not performed on the hydrogen storage tank and is limited to the exchange of parts and maintenance not requiring open flame or welding on the hydrogen-fueled vehicle. During the work, the entire hydrogen fuel system shall contain a quantity of hydrogen that is less than 200 cubic feet (5.6 m^3).

[F] 502.16.1 ~~Design.~~Repair garages for hydrogen-fueled vehicles. ~~Indoor locations shall be ventilated utilizing air supply inlets and exhaust outlets arranged to provide uniform air movement to the extent practical. Inlets shall be uniformly arranged on exterior walls near floor level. Outlets shall be located at the high point of the room in exterior walls or the roof.~~ Repair garages used for the repair of hydrogen-fueled vehicles shall be provided with an approved exhaust ventilation system in accordance with this code and Chapter 6 of NFPA 2.

~~Ventilation shall be by a continuous mechanical ventilation system or by a mechanical ventilation system activated by a continuously monitoring natural gas detection system, or for hydrogen, a continuously monitoring flammable gas detection system, each activating at a gas concentration of 25 percent of the lower flammable limit (LFL). In all cases, the system shall shut down the fueling system in the event of failure of the ventilation system.~~

~~The ventilation rate shall be not less than 1 cubic foot per minute per 12 cubic feet [0.00138 $m^3/(s \cdot m^3)$] of room volume.~~

[F] 502.16.2 Exhaust ventilation system. Repair garages used for the repair of compressed natural gas, liquefied natural gas or other lighter-than-air motor fuel, other than hydrogen, shall be provided with an approved mechanical exhaust ventilation system. The mechanical exhaust ventilation system shall be in accordance with this code and Sections 502.16.2.1 and 502.16.2.2.

Exception: Where approved, natural ventilation shall be an alternative to mechanical exhaust ventilation.

[F] 502.16.2.1 Design. For indoor locations, air supply inlets and exhaust outlets for mechanical ventilation shall be arranged to provide uniformly distributed air movement with inlets uniformly arranged on walls near floor level and outlets located at the high point of the room in walls or the roof.

Failure of the exhaust ventilation system shall cause the fueling system to shut down.

The exhaust ventilation rate shall be not less than 1 cubic foot per minute (0.03 m^3/min) per 12 cubic feet (0.34 m^3) of room volume.

[F] 502.16.2.2 Operation. The mechanical exhaust ventilation system shall operate continuously.

Exceptions:

1. Mechanical exhaust ventilation systems that are interlocked with a gas detection system designed in accordance with the *International Fire Code*.
2. Mechanical exhaust ventilation systems in garages that are used only for the repair of vehicles fueled by liquid fuels or odorized gases, such as ~~CNG,~~compressed natural gas, where the exhaust ventilation system is electrically interlocked with the lighting circuit.

502.17 Tire rebuilding or recapping. Each room where rubber cement is used or mixed, or where flammable or combustible solvents are applied, shall be ventilated in accordance with the applicable provisions of NFPA 91.

502.17.1 Buffing machines. Each buffing machine shall be connected to a dust-collecting system that prevents the accumulation of the dust produced by the buffing process.

502.18 Specific rooms. Specific rooms, including bathrooms, locker rooms, smoking lounges and toilet rooms, shall be exhausted in accordance with the ventilation requirements of Chapter 4.

502.19 Indoor firing ranges. Ventilation shall be provided in an *approved* manner in areas utilized as indoor firing ranges. Ventilation shall be designed to protect employees and the public in accordance with DOL 29 CFR 1910.1025 where applicable.

502.20 Manicure and pedicure stations. Manicure and pedicure stations shall be provided with an exhaust system in accordance with Table 403.3.1.1, Note h. Manicure tables and pedicure stations not provided with factory-installed exhaust inlets shall be provided with exhaust inlets located not more than 12 inches (305 mm) horizontally and vertically from the point of chemical application.

502.20.1 Operation. The exhaust system for manicure and pedicure stations shall have controls that operate the system continuously when the space is occupied.

SECTION 503
MOTORS AND FANS

503.1 General. Motors and fans shall be sized to provide the required air movement. Motors in areas that contain flammable vapors or dusts shall be of a type *approved* for such environments. A manually operated remote control installed at an *approved* location shall be provided to shut off fans or blowers in flammable vapor or dust systems. Electrical *equipment* and ~~applianc-~~

~~es~~*appliances* used in operations that generate explosive or flammable vapors, fumes or dusts shall be interlocked with the ventilation system so that the *equipment* and ~~appliances~~*appliances* cannot be operated unless the ventilation fans are in operation. Motors for fans used to convey flammable vapors or dusts shall be located outside the duct or shall be protected with *approved* shields and dustproofing. Motors and fans shall be provided with a means of access for servicing and maintenance.

503.2 Fans. Parts of fans in contact with explosive or flammable vapors, fumes or dusts shall be of nonferrous or nonsparking materials, or their casing shall be lined or constructed of such material. Where the size and hardness of materials passing through a fan are capable of producing a spark, both the fan and the casing shall be of nonsparking materials. Where fans are required to be spark resistant, their bearings shall not be within the airstream, and all parts of the fan shall be grounded. Fans in systems-handling materials that are capable of clogging the blades, and fans in buffing or woodworking exhaust systems, shall be of the radial-blade or tube-axial type.

503.3 Equipment and appliance identification plate. *Equipment* and ~~appliances~~*appliances* used to exhaust explosive or flammable vapors, fumes or dusts shall bear an identification plate stating the ventilation rate for which the system was designed.

503.4 Corrosion-resistant fans. Fans located in systems conveying corrosives shall be of materials that are resistant to the corrosive or shall be coated with corrosion-resistant materials.

SECTION 504
CLOTHES DRYER EXHAUST

504.1 Installation. Clothes dryers shall be exhausted in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Dryer exhaust systems ~~shall be independent of all other systems and~~ shall convey the moisture and any products of *combustion* to the outside of the building.

Exception: This section shall not apply to *listed* and *labeled* condensing (ductless) clothes dryers.

504.2 Exhaust penetrations. Where a clothes dryer exhaust duct penetrates a wall or ceiling membrane, the annular space shall be sealed with noncombustible material, *approved* fire caulking or a noncombustible dryer exhaust duct wall receptacle. Ducts that exhaust clothes dryers shall not penetrate or be located within any fireblocking, draft-stopping or any wall, floor/ceiling or other assembly required by the *International Building Code* to be fire-resistance rated, unless such duct is constructed of galvanized steel or aluminum of the thickness specified in Section 603.4 and the fire-resistance rating is maintained in accordance with the *International Building Code*. Fire dampers, combination fire/smoke dampers and any similar devices that will obstruct the exhaust flow shall be prohibited in clothes dryer exhaust ducts.

504.3 Cleanout. Each vertical riser shall be provided with a means for cleanout.

504.4 Exhaust installation. Dryer exhaust ducts for clothes dryers shall terminate on the outside of the building and shall be equipped with a backdraft damper. Screens shall not be installed at the duct or weathercap termination. Ducts shall not be connected or installed with sheet metal screws or other fasteners that will obstruct the exhaust flow. Clothes dryer exhaust ducts shall not be connected to a vent connector, vent or *chimney*. Clothes dryer exhaust ducts shall not extend into or through ducts or *plenums*. Clothes dryer exhaust ducts shall be sealed in accordance with Section 603.9.

504.4.1 Termination location. Exhaust duct terminations shall be in accordance with the dryer manufacturer's installation instructions. Where the manufacturer's instructions do not specify a termination location, the exhaust duct shall terminate not less than 3 feet (914 mm) in any direction from openings into buildings, including openings in ventilated soffits. The exhaust duct terminations shall not discharge onto walkways, balconies, decks, breezeways, covered walkways and similar horizontal projections. Exhaust ducts shall terminate not less than 12 inches (305 mm) above finished grade.

Exception: Where the duct termination is less than 12 inches (305 mm) above finished grade, an areaway shall be provided with a cross-sectional area not less than 200 square inches (1290 cm^2). The bottom of the duct termination shall be no less than 12 inches (305 mm) above the areaway bottom.

504.4.2 Exhaust termination outlet and passageway size. The passageway of dryer exhaust duct terminals shall be undiminished in size and shall provide an open area of not less than 12.5 square inches (8065 mm^2).

504.5 Dryer exhaust duct power ventilators. Domestic dryer exhaust duct power ventilators shall be ~~listed~~*listed* and ~~labeled~~*labeled* to UL 705 for use in dryer exhaust duct systems. The dryer exhaust duct power ventilator shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

504.6 Booster fans prohibited. Domestic booster fans shall not be installed in dryer exhaust systems.

~~504.6~~504.7 Makeup air. Where ~~a closet~~an enclosed space is less than 70 square feet and is designed for the installation of a clothes dryer, an opening having an area of not less than 100 square inches (0.0645 m^2) shall be provided in the ~~closet~~ enclosure or *makeup air* shall be provided by other *approved* means.

~~504.7~~504.8 Protection required. Protective shield plates shall be placed where nails or screws from finish or other work are likely to penetrate the clothes dryer exhaust duct. Shield plates shall be placed on the finished face of all framing members where there is less than $1^1/_4$ inches (32 mm) between the duct and the finished face of the framing member. Protective shield plates shall be constructed of steel, have a thickness of 0.062 inch (1.6 mm) and extend not less than 2 inches (51 mm) above sole plates and below top plates.

~~504.8~~504.9 Domestic clothes dryer ducts. Exhaust ducts for domestic clothes dryers shall conform to the requirements of Sections ~~504.8.1~~504.9.1 through ~~504.8.6.~~504.9.6.

~~504.8.1~~504.9.1 Material and size. Exhaust ducts shall have a smooth interior finish and shall be constructed of metal ~~a minimum~~not less than 0.0157 inch (0.4 mm) in ~~thick~~thickness (28 ga galv. 26 ga Al). With the exception of the transition duct, flexible ducts are prohibited. The exhaust duct size shall be 4 inches (102 mm) nominal in diameter.

~~504.8.2~~504.9.2 Duct installation. Exhaust ducts shall be supported at 4-foot (1219 mm) intervals and secured in place. The insert end of the duct shall extend into the adjoining duct or fitting in the direction of airflow. Ducts shall not be joined with screws or similar fasteners that protrude into the inside of the duct. Ducts shall be sealed in accordance with Section 603.9. Ducts shall be mechanically fastened by one of the following methods.

a. Nonmetallic mechanical fasteners (tie-straps) shall be listed to UL 181B.

b. Metal band duct clamps are not required to be listed.

Where dryer exhaust ducts are enclosed in wall or ceiling cavities, such cavities shall allow the installation of the duct without deformation.

~~504.8.3~~504.9.3 Transition ducts. Transition ducts used to connect the dryer to the exhaust duct system shall be a single length that is *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 2158A. Transition ducts shall be not greater than 8 feet (2438 mm) in length and shall not be concealed within construction, and must remain entirely within the room where the ~~appliance~~*appliance* is located.

~~504.8.4~~504.9.4 Duct length. The maximum allowable exhaust duct length shall be determined by one of the methods specified in Sections ~~504.8.4.1~~504.9.4.1 through ~~504.8.4.3.~~504.9.4.3.

~~504.8.4.1~~504.9.4.1 Specified length. The maximum length of the exhaust duct shall be 35 feet (10 668 mm) from the connection to the transition duct from the dryer to the outlet terminal. Where fittings are used, the maximum length of the exhaust duct shall be reduced in accordance with Table ~~504.8.4.1.~~504.9.4.1.

TABLE ~~504.8.4.1.~~504.9.4.1
DRYER EXHAUST DUCT FITTING EQUIVALENT LENGTH

DRYER EXHAUST DUCT FITTING TYPE	EQUIVALENT LENGTH
4″ radius mitered 45-degree elbow	2 feet 6 inches
4″ radius mitered 90-degree elbow	5 feet
6″ radius smooth 45-degree elbow	1 foot
6″ radius smooth 90-degree elbow	1 foot 9 inches
8″ radius smooth 45-degree elbow	1 foot
8″ radius smooth 90-degree elbow	1 foot 7 inches

10″ radius smooth 45-degree elbow	9 inches
10″ radius smooth 90-degree elbow	1 foot 6 inches

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 degree = 0.0175 rad.

~~504.8.4.2~~504.9.4.2 Manufacturer's instructions. The maximum length of the exhaust duct shall be determined by the dryer manufacturer's installation instructions. The code official shall be provided with a copy of the installation instructions for the make and model of the dryer. Where the exhaust duct is to be concealed, the installation instructions shall be provided to the code official prior to the concealment inspection. In the absence of fitting equivalent length calculations from the clothes dryer manufacturer, Table ~~504.8.4.1~~504.9.4.1 shall be used.

~~504.8.4.3~~504.9.4.3 Dryer exhaust duct power ventilator length. The maximum length of the exhaust duct shall be determined by the dryer exhaust duct power ventilator manufacturer's installation instructions.

~~504.8.5~~504.9.5 Length identification. Where the exhaust duct equivalent length exceeds 35 feet (10 668 mm), the equivalent length of the exhaust duct shall be identified on a permanent label or tag. The label or tag shall be located within 6 feet (1829 mm) of the exhaust duct connection.

1. Labels shall be permanently stenciled, laminated, or commercially available plastic or metal tags.
2. Labels shall state, at a minimum (fill in the blank):

   Caution: Equivalent length of _____ ~~feet.~~feet including _____ 45 deg. elbows and _____ 90 deg. elbows. Any installed dryer must be equipped with an exhaust system that meets or exceeds this equivalent length requirement.
3. Labels can be attached to wall or vent receptor.

~~504.8.6~~504.9.6 Exhaust duct required. Where space for a clothes dryer is provided, an exhaust duct system shall be installed. Where the clothes dryer is not installed at the time of occupancy, the exhaust duct shall be capped at the location of the future dryer.

Exception: Where a *listed* condensing clothes dryer is installed prior to occupancy of structure.

~~**504.8.7 Duct termination.** Exhaust ducts shall terminate not less than 12 inches (305 mm) above finished grade.~~

~~**Exception:** Where the duct termination is less than 12 inches (305 mm) above finished grade, an areaway shall be provided with a cross-sectional area not less than 200 square inches (1290 cm2). The bottom of the duct termination shall be no less than 12 inches (305 mm) above the areaway bottom.~~

~~504.9~~504.10 Commercial clothes dryers. The installation of dryer exhaust ducts serving commercial clothes dryers shall comply with the *appliance* manufacturer's installation instructions. Exhaust fan motors installed in exhaust systems shall be located outside of the airstream. In multiple installations, the fan shall operate continuously or be interlocked to operate when any individual unit is operating. Ducts shall have a minimum *clearance* of 6 inches (152 mm) to combustible materials. Clothes dryer transition ducts used to connect the *appliance* to the exhaust duct system shall be limited to single lengths not to exceed 8 feet (2438 mm) in length and shall be *listed* and *labeled* for the application. Transition ducts shall not be concealed within construction.

~~504.10~~504.11 Common exhaust systems for clothes dryers located in multistory structures. Where a common multistory duct system is designed and installed to convey exhaust from multiple clothes dryers, the construction of the system shall be in accordance with all of the following:

1. The shaft in which the duct is installed shall be constructed and fire-resistance rated as required by the *International Building Code*.
2. Dampers shall be prohibited in the exhaust duct. Penetrations of the shaft and ductwork shall be protected in accordance with Section 607.5.5, Exception 2.
3. Rigid metal ductwork shall be installed within the shaft to convey the exhaust. The ductwork shall be constructed of sheet steel having a minimum thickness of 0.0187 inch (0.4712 mm) (No. 26 gage) and in accordance with SMACNA ~~*Duct Construction Standards.*~~Duct Construction Standards.
4. The ductwork within the shaft shall be designed and installed without offsets.

5. The exhaust fan motor design shall be in accordance with Section 503.2.
6. The exhaust fan motor shall be located outside of the airstream.
7. The exhaust fan shall run continuously, and shall be connected to a standby power source.
8. Exhaust fan operation shall be monitored in an *approved* location and shall initiate an audible or visual signal when the fan is not in operation.
9. ~~Makeup air~~*Makeup air* shall be provided for the exhaust system.
10. A cleanout opening shall be located at the base of the shaft to provide *access* to the duct to allow for cleaning and inspection. The finished opening shall be not less than 12 inches by 12 inches (305 mm by 305 mm).
11. Screens shall not be installed at the termination.
12. The common multistory duct system shall serve only clothes dryers and shall be independent of other exhaust systems.

SECTION 505
DOMESTIC ~~KITCHEN~~COOKING EXHAUST EQUIPMENT

505.1 ~~Domestic systems.~~General. ~~Where domestic range hoods and domestic appliances equipped with downdraft exhaust are provided, such hoods and appliances shall discharge to the outdoors through sheet metal ducts constructed of galvanized steel, stainless steel, aluminum or copper. Such ducts shall have smooth inner walls, shall be air tight, shall be equipped with a back-draft damper, and shall be independent of all other exhaust systems.~~ Domestic cooking exhaust *equipment* shall comply with the requirements of this section.

505.2 Domestic cooking exhaust. Where domestic cooking exhaust *equipment* is provided, it shall comply with the following as applicable:

1. The fan for overhead range hoods and downdraft exhaust *equipment* not integral with the cooking *appliance* shall be *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 507.
2. Overhead range hoods and downdraft exhaust *equipment* with integral fans shall comply with UL 507.
3. Domestic cooking *appliances* with integral downdraft exhaust *equipment* shall be *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 858 or ANSI Z21.1.
4. Microwave ovens with integral exhaust for installation over the cooking surface shall be *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 923.

505.3 Exhaust ducts. Domestic cooking exhaust *equipment* shall discharge to the outdoors through sheet metal ducts constructed of galvanized steel, stainless steel, aluminum or copper. Such ducts shall have smooth inner walls, shall be airtight and shall be equipped with a backdraft damper. Installations in Group I-1 and I-2 *occupancies* shall be in accordance with the *International Building Code* and Section 904.14 of the *International Fire Code*.

Exceptions:

1. In other than ~~Group~~Groups I-1 and I-2, where installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and where mechanical or natural ventilation is otherwise provided in accordance with Chapter 4, ~~listed~~*listed* and ~~labeled~~*labeled* ductless range hoods shall not be required to discharge to the outdoors.
2. Ducts for domestic kitchen cooking ~~appliances~~*appliances* equipped with downdraft exhaust systems shall be permitted to be constructed of Schedule 40 PVC pipe and fittings provided that the installation complies with all of the following:
   - 2.1. The duct shall be installed under a concrete slab poured on grade.
   - 2.2. The underfloor trench in which the duct is installed shall be completely backfilled with sand or gravel.
   - 2.3. The PVC duct shall extend not more than 1 inch (25 mm) above the indoor concrete floor surface.
   - 2.4. The PVC duct shall extend not more than 1 inch (25 mm) above grade outside of the building.
   - 2.5. The PVC ducts shall be solvent cemented.

~~505.2~~505.4 Makeup air required Exhaust hood systems capable of exhausting in excess of 400 cfm~~cubic feet per minute~~ (0.19 m^3/s) shall be provided with *makeup air* at a rate approximately equal to the *exhaust air* rate. ~~rate that is in excess of 400 cubic feet per minute (0.19 m^3/s)~~. Such *makeup air* systems shall be equipped with a means of closure and shall be automatically controlled to start and operate simultaneously with the exhaust system.

> ~~**Exception:** Where all appliances in the house are direct-vent, power-vent, unvented, or electric, makeup air shall be provided where exhaust fans are capable of exhausting more than 600 cubic feet per minute (0.28 m3/s). Exhaust hood systems capable of exhausting more than 600 cubic feet per minute (0.28 m3/s) shall be provided with makeup air at a rate approximately equal to the exhaust air rate that is in excess of 600 cubic feet per minute (0.28 m3/s).~~

~~505.3~~505.5 Common exhaust systems for domestic kitchens located in multistory structures. Where a common multistory duct system is designed and installed to convey exhaust from multiple domestic kitchen exhaust systems, the construction of the system shall be in accordance with all of the following: ~~following, or other *approved* method:~~

1. The shaft in which the duct is installed shall be constructed and fire-resistance rated as required by the *International Building Code*.
2. Dampers shall be prohibited in the exhaust duct, except as specified in Section ~~505.1.~~505.3. Penetrations of the shaft and ductwork shall be protected in accordance with Section 607.5.5, Exception 2.
3. Rigid metal ductwork shall be installed within the shaft to convey the exhaust. The ductwork shall be constructed of sheet steel having a minimum thickness of 0.0187 inch (0.4712 mm) (No. 26 gage) and in accordance with SMACNA ~~*Duct Construction Standards.*~~Duct Construction Standards.
4. The ductwork within the shaft shall be designed and installed without offsets.
5. The exhaust fan motor design shall be in accordance with Section 503.2.
6. The exhaust fan motor shall be located outside of the airstream.
7. The exhaust fan shall run continuously, and shall be connected to a standby power source.
8. Exhaust fan operation shall be monitored in an approved location and shall initiate an audible or visual signal when the fan is not in operation.
9. Where the exhaust rate for an individual kitchen exceeds 400 cfm (0.19 m^3/s) ~~makeup air~~*makeup air* shall be provided in accordance with Section ~~505.2.~~505.4.
10. A cleanout opening shall be located at the base of the shaft to provide access to the duct to allow for cleanout and inspection. The finished openings shall be not less than 12 inches by 12 inches (305 mm by 305 mm).
11. Screens shall not be installed at the termination.
12. The common multistory duct system shall serve only kitchen exhaust and shall be independent of other exhaust systems.

~~505.4~~505.6 Other than Group R. In other than Group R ~~occupancies~~*occupancies*, where domestic ~~cooking appliances are utilized for domestic purposes, such appliances may be provided with domestic range hoods. Hoods and exhaust systems shall be in accordance with Sections 505.1 and 505.2 if the makeup air required in Section 505.2 is not already provided via the buildings ventilation system. Also, see the exception to Section 507.1.2.~~ cooktops, ranges, and open-top broilers are used for domestic purposes, domestic cooking exhaust systems shall be provided.

SECTION 506
COMMERCIAL KITCHEN HOOD VENTILATION SYSTEM DUCTS AND EXHAUST EQUIPMENT

506.1 General. Commercial kitchen hood ventilation ducts and exhaust *equipment* shall comply with the requirements of this section. Commercial kitchen grease ducts shall be designed for the type of cooking *appliance* and hood served.

506.2 Corrosion protection. Ducts exposed to the outside atmosphere or subject to a corrosive environment shall be protected against corrosion in an *approved* manner.

506.3 Ducts serving Type I hoods. Type I exhaust ducts shall be independent of all other exhaust systems except as provided in Section 506.3.5. Commercial kitchen duct systems serving Type I hoods shall be designed, constructed and installed in accordance with Sections 506.3.1 through 506.3.13.3.

506.3.1 Duct materials. Ducts serving Type I hoods shall be constructed of materials in accordance with Sections 506.3.1.1 and 506.3.1.2.

506.3.1.1 Grease duct materials. Grease ducts serving Type I hoods shall be constructed of steel having a minimum thickness of 0.0575 inch (1.463 mm) (No. 16 gage) or stainless steel not less than 0.0450 inch (1.14 mm) (No. 18 gage) in thickness.

Exception: Factory-built commercial kitchen grease ducts *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 1978 and installed in accordance with Section 304.1.

506.3.1.2 Makeup air ducts. ~~Makeup air~~*Makeup air* ducts connecting to or within 18 inches (457 mm) of a Type I hood shall be constructed and installed in accordance with Sections 603.1, 603.3, 603.4, 603.9, 603.10 and 603.12. Duct insulation installed within 18 inches (457 mm) of a Type I hood shall be noncombustible or shall be *listed* for the application.

506.3.2 Joints, seams and penetrations of grease ducts. Joints, seams and penetrations of grease ducts shall be made with a continuous liquid-tight weld or braze made on the external surface of the duct system.

Exceptions:

1. Penetrations shall not be required to be welded or brazed where sealed by devices that are *listed* for the application.
2. Internal welding or brazing shall not be prohibited provided that the joint is formed or ground smooth and is provided with ready access for inspection.
3. Factory-built commercial kitchen grease ducts *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 1978 and installed in accordance with Section 304.1.

506.3.2.1 Duct joint types. Duct joints shall be butt joints, welded flange joints with a maximum flange depth of $^1/_2$ inch (12.7 mm) or overlapping duct joints of either the telescoping or bell type. Overlapping joints shall be installed to prevent ledges and obstructions from collecting grease or interfering with gravity drainage to the intended collection point. The difference between the inside cross-sectional dimensions of overlapping sections of duct shall not exceed $^1/_4$ inch (6.4 mm). The length of overlap for overlapping duct joints shall not exceed 2 inches (51 mm).

506.3.2.2 Duct-to-hood joints. Duct-to-hood joints shall be made with continuous internal or external liquid-tight welded or brazed joints. Such joints shall be smooth, accessible for inspection, and without grease traps.

Exceptions: This section shall not apply to:

1. A vertical duct-to-hood collar connection made in the top plane of the hood in accordance with all of the following:
   - 1.1. The hood duct opening shall have a 1-inch-deep (25 mm), full perimeter, welded flange turned down into the hood interior at an angle of 90 degrees (1.57 rad) from the plane of the opening.
   - 1.2. The duct shall have a 1-inch-deep (25 mm) flange made by a 1-inch by 1-inch (25 mm by 25 mm) angle iron welded to the full perimeter of the duct not less than 1 inch (25 mm) above the bottom end of the duct.
   - 1.3. A gasket rated for use at not less than 1,500ºF (816ºC) is installed between the duct flange and the top of the hood.
   - 1.4. The duct-to-hood joint shall be secured by stud bolts not less than $^1/_4$ inch (6.4 mm) in diameter welded to the hood with a spacing not greater than 4 inches (102 mm) on center for the full perimeter of the opening. The bolts and nuts shall be secured with lockwashers.
2. *Listed* and *labeled* duct-to-hood collar connections installed in accordance with Section 304.1.

506.3.2.3 Duct-to-exhaust fan connections. Duct-to-exhaust fan connections shall be flanged and gasketed at the base of the fan for vertical discharge fans; shall be flanged, gasketed and bolted to the inlet of the fan for side-inlet utility fans; and shall be flanged, gasketed and bolted to the inlet and outlet of the fan for in-line fans. Gasket and sealing materials shall be rated for continuous duty at a temperature of not less than 1,500ºF (816ºC).

506.3.2.4 Vibration isolation. A vibration isolation connector for connecting a duct to a fan shall consist of noncombustible packing in a metal sleeve joint of *approved* design or shall be a coated-fabric flexible duct connector *listed* and *labeled* for the application. Vibration isolation connectors shall be installed only at the connection of a duct to a fan inlet or outlet.

506.3.2.5 Grease duct test. Prior to the use or concealment of any portion of a grease duct system, a leakage test shall be performed in the presence of the ~~code official.~~*code official* or shall be witnessed by a professional engineer who shall provide certification of performance to the *code official*. Ducts shall be considered to be concealed where installed in shafts or covered by coatings or wraps that prevent the ductwork from being visually inspected on all sides. The permit holder shall be responsible to provide the necessary *equipment* and perform the grease duct leakage test. A light test shall be performed to determine that all welded and brazed joints are liquid tight.

A light test shall be performed by passing a lamp having a power rating of not less than 100 watts through the entire section of ductwork to be tested. The lamp shall be open so as to emit light equally in all directions perpendicular to the duct walls. A test shall be performed for the entire duct system, including the hood-to-duct connection. The duct work shall be permitted to be tested in sections, provided that every joint is tested. For *listed* factory-built grease ducts, this test shall be limited to duct joints assembled in the field and shall exclude factory welds.

506.3.3 Grease duct supports. Grease duct bracing and supports shall be of noncombustible material securely attached to the structure and designed to carry gravity and seismic loads within the stress limitations of the *International Building Code*. Bolts, screws, rivets and other mechanical fasteners shall not penetrate duct walls.

506.3.4 Air velocity. Grease duct systems serving a Type I hood shall be designed and installed to provide an air velocity within the duct system of not less than 500 feet per minute (2.5 m/s).

Exception: The velocity limitations shall not apply within duct transitions utilized to connect ducts to differently sized or shaped openings in hoods and fans, provided that such transitions do not exceed 3 feet (914 mm) in length and are designed to prevent the trapping of grease.

506.3.5 Separation of grease duct system. A separate grease duct system shall be provided for each Type I hood. A separate grease duct system is not required where all of the following conditions are met:

1. All interconnected hoods are located within the same story.
2. All interconnected hoods are located within the same room or in adjoining rooms.
3. Interconnecting ducts do not penetrate assemblies required to be fire-resistance rated.
4. The grease duct system does not serve solid-fuel-fired ~~appliances~~*appliances*.

506.3.6 Grease duct clearances. Where enclosures are not required, grease duct systems and exhaust *equipment* serving a Type I hood shall have a *clearance* to combustible construction of not less than 18 inches (457 mm), and shall have a *clearance* to noncombustible construction and gypsum wallboard attached to noncombustible structures of not less than 3 inches (76 mm).

Exceptions:

1. Factory-built commercial kitchen grease ducts *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 1978.
2. *Listed* and *labeled* exhaust *equipment* installed in accordance with Section 304.1.
3. Where commercial kitchen grease ducts are continuously covered on all sides with a *listed* and *labeled* field-applied grease duct enclosure material, system, product or method of construction specifically evaluated for such purpose in accordance with ASTM E2336, the required *clearance* shall be in accordance with the listing of such material, system, product or method.

506.3.7 Prevention of grease accumulation in grease ducts. Duct systems serving a Type I hood shall be constructed and installed so that grease cannot collect in any portion thereof, and the system shall slope not less than one-fourth unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (2-percent slope) toward the hood or toward a grease reservoir designed and installed in accordance with Section 506.3.7.1. Where horizontal ducts exceed 75 feet (22 860 mm) in length, the slope shall be not less than one unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (8.3-percent slope).

Exception: Factory-built grease ducts shall be installed at a slope that is in accordance with the listing and manufacturer's installation instructions.

506.3.7.1 Grease duct reservoirs.

Grease duct reservoirs shall:

1. Be constructed as required for the grease duct they serve.
2. Be located on the bottom of the horizontal duct or the bottommost section of the duct riser.
3. Extend across the full width of the duct and have a length of not less than 12 inches (305 mm).
4. Have a depth of not less than 1 inch (25 mm).
5. Have a bottom that slopes to a drain.
6. Be provided with a cleanout opening constructed in accordance with Section 506.3.8 and installed to provide direct access to the reservoir. The cleanout opening shall be located on a side or on top of the duct so as to permit cleaning of the reservoir.
7. Be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions where manufactured devices are utilized.

506.3.8 Grease duct cleanouts and openings. Grease duct cleanouts and openings shall comply with all of the following:

1. Grease ducts shall not have openings except where required for the operation and maintenance of the system.
2. Sections of grease ducts that are inaccessible from the hood or discharge openings shall be provided with cleanout openings spaced not more than 20 feet (6096 mm) apart and not more than 10 feet (3048 mm) from changes in direction greater than 45 degrees (0.79 rad).
3. Cleanouts and openings shall be equipped with tight-fitting doors constructed of steel having a thickness not less than that required for the duct.
4. Cleanout doors shall be installed liquid tight.
5. Door assemblies including any frames and gaskets shall be approved for the application and shall not have fasteners that penetrate the duct.
6. Gasket and sealing materials shall be rated for not less than 1,500ºF (816ºC).
7. Listed door assemblies shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

506.3.8.1 Personnel entry. Where ductwork is large enough to allow entry of personnel, not less than one *approved* or *listed* opening having dimensions not less than 22 inches by 20 inches (559 mm by 508 mm) shall be provided in the horizontal sections, and in the top of vertical risers. Where such entry is provided, the duct and its supports shall be capable of supporting the additional load, and the cleanouts specified in Section 506.3.8 are not required.

506.3.8.2 Cleanouts serving in-line fans. A cleanout shall be provided for both the inlet side and outlet side of an in-line fan except where a duct does not connect to the fan. Such cleanouts shall be located within 3 feet (914 mm) of the fan duct connections.

506.3.9 Grease duct horizontal cleanouts. Cleanouts serving horizontal sections of grease ducts shall:

1. Be spaced not more than 20 feet (6096 mm) apart.
2. Be located not more than 10 feet (3048 mm) from changes in direction that are greater than 45 degrees (0.79 rad).
3. Be located on the bottom only where other locations are not available and shall be provided with internal damming of the opening such that grease will flow past the opening without pooling. Bottom cleanouts and openings shall be approved for the application and installed liquid tight.
4. Not be closer than 1 inch (25 mm) from the edges of the duct.
5. Have opening dimensions of not less than 12 inches by 12 inches (305 mm by 305 mm). Where such dimensions preclude installation, the opening shall be not less than 12 inches (305 mm) on one side and shall be large enough to provide access for cleaning and maintenance.

6. ~~Shall be~~Be located at grease reservoirs.
7. Be located within 3 feet (914 mm) of horizontal discharge fans.

506.3.10 Underground grease duct installation. Underground grease duct installations shall comply with all of the following:

1. Underground grease ducts shall be constructed of steel having a minimum thickness of 0.0575 inch (1.463 mm) (No. 16 gage) and shall be coated to provide protection from corrosion or shall be constructed of stainless steel having a minimum thickness of 0.0450 inch (1.140 mm) (No. 18 gage).
2. The underground duct system shall be tested and approved in accordance with Section 506.3.2.5 prior to coating or placement in the ground.
3. The underground duct system shall be completely encased in concrete with a minimum thickness of 4 inches (102 mm).
4. Ducts shall slope toward grease reservoirs.
5. A grease reservoir with a cleanout to allow cleaning of the reservoir shall be provided at the base of each vertical duct riser.
6. Cleanouts shall be provided with access to permit cleaning and inspection of the duct in accordance with Section 506.3.
7. Cleanouts in horizontal ducts shall be installed on the topside of the duct.
8. Cleanout locations shall be legibly identified at the point of access from the interior space.

506.3.11 Grease duct enclosures. A commercial kitchen grease duct serving a Type I hood that penetrates a ceiling, wall, floor or any concealed space shall be enclosed from the point of penetration to the outlet terminal. In-line exhaust fans not located outdoors shall be enclosed as required for grease ducts. A duct shall penetrate exterior walls only at locations where unprotected openings are permitted by the *International Building Code*. The duct enclosure shall serve a single grease duct and shall not contain other ducts, piping or wiring systems. Duct enclosures shall be a shaft enclosure in accordance with Section 506.3.11.1, a field-applied enclosure assembly in accordance with Section 506.3.11.2 or a factory-built enclosure assembly in accordance with Section 506.3.11.3. Duct enclosures shall have a fire-resistance rating of not less than that of the assembly penetrated and not less than 1 hour. Fire dampers and smoke dampers shall not be installed in grease ducts.

Exception: A duct enclosure shall not be required for a grease duct or hood that penetrates only a nonfire-resistance-rated roof/ceiling assembly.

506.3.11.1 Shaft enclosure. Grease ducts constructed in accordance with Section 506.3.1 shall be permitted to be enclosed in accordance with the *International Building Code* requirements for shaft construction. Such grease duct systems and exhaust *equipment* shall have a *clearance* to combustible construction of not less than 18 inches (457 mm), and shall have a *clearance* to noncombustible construction and gypsum wallboard attached to noncombustible structures of not less than 6 inches ~~(76~~ (152 mm). Duct enclosures shall be sealed around the duct at the point of penetration and vented to the outside of the building through the use of weather-protected openings.

506.3.11.2 Field-applied grease duct enclosure. Grease ducts constructed in accordance with Section 506.3.1 shall be enclosed by a *listed* and *labeled* field-applied grease duct enclosure material, systems, product, or method of construction specifically evaluated for such purpose in accordance with ASTM E2336. The surface of the duct shall be continuously covered on all sides from the point at which the duct originates to the outlet terminal. Duct penetrations shall be protected with a through-penetration firestop system tested and *listed* in accordance with ASTM E814 or UL 1479 and having a “F” and “T” rating equal to the fire-resistance rating of the assembly being penetrated. The grease duct enclosure and firestop system shall be installed in accordance with the listing and the manufacturer’s instructions. Partial application of a field-applied grease duct enclosure shall not be installed for the sole purpose of reducing ~~clearances~~*clearances* to combustibles at isolated sections of grease duct. Exposed duct-wrap systems shall be protected where subject to physical damage.

506.3.11.3 Factory-built grease duct enclosure assemblies. Factory-built grease ducts incorporating integral enclosure materials shall be *listed* and *labeled* for use as grease duct enclosure assemblies specifically evaluated for such purpose in accordance with UL 2221. Duct penetrations shall be protected with a through-penetration firestop system tested and *listed* in accordance with ASTM E814 or UL 1479 and having an “F” and “T” rating equal to the fire-resistance rating of the assembly being penetrated. The grease duct enclosure assembly and firestop system shall be installed in accordance with the listing and the manufacturer's instructions.

506.3.12 Grease duct fire-resistive access opening. Where cleanout openings are located in ducts within a fire-resistance-rated enclosure, access openings shall be provided in the enclosure at each cleanout point. Access openings shall be equipped with tight-fitting sliding or hinged doors that are equal in fire-resistive protection to that of the shaft or enclosure. An *approved* sign shall be placed on access opening panels with wording as follows: "ACCESS PANEL. DO NOT OBSTRUCT."

506.3.13 Exhaust outlets serving Type I hoods. Exhaust outlets for grease ducts serving Type I hoods shall conform to the requirements of Sections 506.3.13.1 through 506.3.13.3.

506.3.13.1 Termination above the roof. Exhaust outlets that terminate above the roof shall have the discharge opening located not less than 40 inches (1016 mm) above the roof surface.

506.3.13.2 Termination through an exterior wall. Exhaust outlets shall be permitted to terminate through exterior walls where the smoke, grease, gases, vapors and odors in the discharge from such terminations do not create a public nuisance or a fire hazard. Such terminations shall not be located where protected openings are required by the *International Building Code*. ~~Other exterior openings shall not be located within 3 feet (914 mm) of such terminations.~~ Such terminations shall be located in accordance with Section 506.3.13.3 and shall not be located within 3 feet (914 mm) of any opening in the exterior wall.

506.3.13.3 Termination location. Exhaust outlets shall be located not less than 10 feet (3048 mm) horizontally from parts of the same or contiguous buildings, adjacent buildings and adjacent property lines and shall be located not less than 10 feet (3048 mm) above the adjoining grade level. Exhaust outlets shall be located not less than 10 feet (3048 mm) horizontally from or not less than 3 feet (914 mm) above air intake openings into any building.

Exception: Exhaust outlets shall terminate not less than 5 feet (1524 mm) horizontally from parts of the same or contiguous building, an adjacent building, adjacent property line and air intake openings into a building where air from the exhaust outlet discharges away from such locations.

506.4 Ducts serving Type II hoods. Commercial kitchen exhaust systems serving Type II hoods shall comply with Sections 506.4.1 and 506.4.2.

506.4.1 Ducts. Ducts and ~~plenums~~*plenums* serving Type II hoods shall be constructed of rigid metallic materials. Duct construction, installation, bracing and supports shall comply with Chapter 6. Ducts subject to positive pressure and ducts conveying moisture-laden or waste-heat-laden air shall be constructed, joined and sealed in an *approved* manner.

506.4.2 Type II terminations. Exhaust outlets serving Type II hoods shall terminate in accordance with the hood manufacturer's installation instructions and shall comply with all of the following:

1. Exhaust outlets shall terminate not less than 3 feet (914 mm) in any direction from openings into the building.
2. Outlets shall terminate not less than 10 feet (3048 mm) from property lines or buildings on the same lot.
3. Outlets shall terminate not less than 10 feet (3048 mm) above grade.
4. Outlets that terminate above a roof shall terminate not less than 30 inches (762 mm) above the roof surface.
5. Outlets shall terminate not less than 30 inches (762 mm) from exterior vertical walls.
6. Outlets shall be protected against local weather conditions.
7. Outlets shall not be directed onto walkways.
8. Outlets shall meet the provisions for exterior wall opening protectives in accordance with the *International Building Code*.

506.5 Exhaust equipment. Exhaust *equipment*, including fans and grease reservoirs, shall comply with Sections 506.5.1 through ~~506.5.5~~506.5.6 and shall be of an *approved* design or shall be *listed* for the application.

506.5.1 Exhaust fans. Exhaust fan housings serving a Type I hood shall be constructed as required for grease ducts in accordance with Section 506.3.1.1.

Exception: Fans *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 762.

506.5.1.1 Fan motor. Exhaust fan motors shall be located outside of the exhaust airstream.

506.5.1.2 In-line fan location. Where enclosed duct systems are connected to in-line fans ~~not protected by fire-rated enclosures or field-applied grease duct enclosure, and~~ not located outdoors, ~~then~~ the fan shall be located in a room or space having the same fire-resistance rating as the duct enclosure. Access shall be provided for servicing and cleaning of fan components. Such rooms or spaces shall be ventilated in accordance with the fan manufacturer's installation instructions.

506.5.2 Pollution-control units. The installation of pollution-control units shall be in accordance with all of the following:

1. Pollution-control units shall be *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 8782.
2. Fans serving pollution-control units shall be *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 762.
3. Bracing and supports for pollution-control units shall be of noncombustible material securely attached to the structure and designed to carry gravity and seismic loads within the stress limitations of the *International Building Code*.
4. Pollution-control units located indoors shall be *listed* and *labeled* for such use. Where enclosed duct systems, as required by Section 506.3.11, are connected to a pollution control unit, such unit shall be *listed* and *labeled*, in accordance with UL 2221 or ASTM E2336, for location in an enclosure having the same fire-resistance rating as the duct enclosure. Access shall be provided for servicing and cleaning of the unit. The space or enclosure shall be ventilated in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.
5. *Clearances* shall be maintained between the pollution-control unit and combustible material in accordance with the listing.
6. Roof-mounted pollution-control units shall be listed for outdoor installation and shall be mounted not less than 18 inches (457 mm) above the roof.
7. Exhaust outlets for pollution-control units shall be in accordance with Section 506.3.13.
8. An airflow differential pressure control shall be provided to monitor the pressure drop across the filter sections of a pollution-control unit. When the airflow is reduced below the design velocity, the airflow differential pressure control shall activate a visual alarm located in the area where cooking operations occur.
9. Pollution-control units shall be provided with a factory-installed fire suppression system.
10. Service space shall be provided in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions for the pollution control unit and the requirements of Section 306.
11. Wash-down drains shall discharge through a grease interceptor and shall be sized for the flow. Drains shall be sealed with a trap or other approved means to prevent air bypass. Where a trap is utilized it shall have a seal depth that accounts for the system pressurization and evaporation between cleanings.
12. Protection from freezing shall be provided for the water supply and fire suppression systems where such systems are subject to freezing.
13. Duct connections to pollution-control units shall be in accordance with Section 506.3.2.3. Where water splash or carryover can occur in the transition duct as a result of a washing operation, the transition duct shall slope downward toward the cabinet drain pan for a length not less than 18 inches (457 mm). Ducts shall transition to the full size of the unit's inlet and outlet openings.
14. Extra-heavy-duty *appliance* exhaust systems shall not be connected to pollution-control units except where such units are specifically designed and listed for use with solid fuels.
15. Pollution-control units shall be maintained in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

~~506.5.2~~506.5.3 Exhaust fan discharge. Exhaust fans shall be positioned so that the discharge will not impinge on the roof, other *equipment* or ~~appliances~~*appliances* or parts of the structure. A vertical discharge fan shall be manufactured with an *approved* drain outlet at the lowest point of the housing to permit drainage of grease to an *approved* grease reservoir.

~~506.5.3~~506.5.4 Exhaust fan mounting.

Upblast fans serving Type I hoods and installed in a vertical or horizontal position shall be hinged, supplied with a flexible weatherproof electrical cable to permit inspection and cleaning and shall be equipped with a means of restraint to limit the swing of the fan on its hinge. The ductwork shall extend not less than 18 inches (457 mm) above the roof surface.

~~506.5.4~~506.5.5 Clearances. Exhaust *equipment* serving a Type I hood shall have a *clearance* to combustible construction of not less than 18 inches (457 mm).

Exception: Factory-built exhaust *equipment* installed in accordance with Section 304.1 and *listed* for a lesser *clearance*.

~~506.5.5~~506.5.6 Termination location. The outlet of exhaust *equipment* serving Type I hoods shall be in accordance with Section 506.3.13.

Exception: The minimum horizontal distance between vertical discharge fans and parapet-type building structures shall be 2 feet (610 mm), provided that such structures are not higher than the top of the fan discharge opening.

SECTION 507
COMMERCIAL KITCHEN HOODS

507.1 General. Commercial kitchen exhaust hoods shall comply with the requirements of this section. Hoods shall be Type I or II and shall be designed to capture and confine cooking vapors and residues. A Type I or Type II hood shall be installed at or above ~~all *commercial cooking*~~ *appliances* in accordance with Sections 507.2 and 507.3. Where any cooking *appliance* under a single hood requires a Type I hood, a Type I hood shall be installed. Where a Type II hood is required, a Type I or Type II hood shall be installed. Where a Type I hood is installed, the installation of the entire system, including the hood, ducts, exhaust ~~equipment~~*equipment* and ~~makeup air~~*makeup air* system shall comply with the requirements of Sections 506, 507, 508 and 509.

Exceptions:

1. Factory-built commercial exhaust hoods that are ~~listed~~*listed* and ~~labeled~~*labeled* in accordance with UL 710, and installed in accordance with Section 304.1, shall not be required to comply with Sections 507.1.5, 507.2.3, 507.2.5, 507.2.8, 507.3.1, 507.3.3, 507.4 and 507.5.
2. Factory-built commercial cooking recirculating systems that are ~~listed~~*listed* and ~~labeled~~*labeled* in accordance with UL 710B, and installed in accordance with Section 304.1, shall not be required to comply with Sections 507.1.5, 507.2.3, 507.2.5, 507.2.8, 507.3.1, 507.3.3, 507.4 and 507.5. Spaces in which such systems are located shall be considered to be kitchens and shall be ventilated in accordance with Table 403.3.1.1. For the purpose of determining the floor area required to be ventilated, each individual *appliance* shall be considered as occupying not less than 100 square feet (9.3 m^2).
3. Where cooking ~~appliances~~*appliances* are equipped with integral down-draft exhaust systems and such ~~appliances~~*appliances* and exhaust systems are ~~listed~~*listed* and ~~labeled~~*labeled* for the application in accordance with NFPA 96, a hood shall not be required at or above them.
4. Smoker ovens with integral exhaust systems, provided that the *appliance* is installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions, is listed and tested for the application, and complies with Chapter 5.

507.1.1 Operation. Commercial kitchen exhaust hood systems shall operate during the cooking operation. The hood exhaust rate shall comply with the listing of the hood or shall comply with Section 507.5. The exhaust fan serving a Type I hood shall have automatic controls that will activate the fan when any ~~appliance~~*appliance* that requires such Type I ~~Hood~~hood is turned on, or a means of interlock shall be provided that will prevent operation of such ~~appliances~~*appliances* when the exhaust fan is not turned on. Where one or more temperature or radiant energy sensors are used to activate a Type I hood exhaust fan, the fan shall activate not more than 15 minutes after the first ~~appliance~~*appliance* served by that hood has been turned on. A method of interlock between an exhaust hood system and ~~appliances~~*appliances* equipped with standing pilot burners shall not cause the pilot burners to be extinguished. A method of interlock between an exhaust hood system and cooking ~~appliances~~*appliances* shall not involve or depend ~~upon~~on any component of a fire-extinguishing system.

The net exhaust volumes for hoods shall be permitted to be reduced during part-load cooking conditions, where engineered or *listed* multispeed or variable speed controls automatically operate the exhaust system to maintain capture and removal of cooking effluents as required by this section. Reduced volumes shall not be below that required to maintain capture and removal of effluents from the idle cooking ~~appliances~~*appliances* that are operating in a standby mode.

507.1.1.1 Multiple hoods utilizing a single exhaust system. Where heat or radiant energy sensors are utilized in hood systems consisting of multiple hoods served by a single exhaust system, such sensors shall be provided in each hood. Sensors shall be capable of being accessed from the hood outlet or from a cleanout location.

507.1.2 Domestic cooking appliances used for commercial purposes. Domestic cooking ~~appliances~~*appliances* utilized for commercial purposes shall be provided with Type I or Type II hoods as required for the type of ~~appliances~~*appliances* and processes in accordance with Sections 507.2 and 507.3. Domestic cooking ~~appliances~~*appliances* utilized for domestic ~~purposes~~cooking shall comply with Section 505.

~~**Exception:** A maximum of two domestic ranges installed in dwelling units, churches, schools, day care centers, break areas and similar installations.~~

507.1.3 Fuel-burning appliances. Where vented fuel-burning ~~appliances~~*appliances* are located in the same room or space as the hood, provisions shall be made to prevent the hood system from interfering with normal operation of the *appliance* vents.

507.1.4 Cleaning. A hood shall be designed to provide for thorough cleaning of the entire hood.

507.1.5 Exhaust outlets. Exhaust outlets located within the hood shall be located so as to optimize the capture of particulate matter. Each outlet shall serve not more than a 12-foot (3658 mm) section of hood.

507.2 Type I hoods. Type I hoods shall be installed where cooking *appliances* produce grease or ~~smoke.~~smoke as a result of the cooking process. Type I hoods shall be installed over *medium-duty,* *heavy-duty* and *extra-heavy-duty cooking appliances.* ~~Type I hoods shall be installed over *light-duty* and *medium-duty cooking appliances* that produce grease or smoke.~~

Exception: A Type I hood shall not be required for an electric cooking ~~appliance~~*appliance* where an approved testing agency provides documentation that the ~~appliance~~*appliance* effluent contains 5 mg/m^3 or less of grease when tested at an exhaust flow rate of 500 cfm (0.236 m^3/s) in accordance with UL 710B.

507.2.1 Type I exhaust flow rate label. Type I hoods shall bear a label indicating the minimum exhaust flow rate in cfm per linear foot (1.55 L/s per linear meter) of hood that provides for capture and containment of the exhaust effluent for the cooking ~~appliances~~*appliances* served by the hood, based on the cooking ~~appliance~~*appliance* duty classifications defined in this code.

507.2.2 Type I extra-heavy-duty. Type I hoods for use over *extra-heavy-duty cooking appliances* shall not cover *heavy-*, *medium-* or *light-duty appliances*. Such hoods shall discharge to an exhaust system that is independent of other exhaust systems.

507.2.3 Type I materials. Type I hoods shall be constructed of steel having a minimum thickness of 0.0466 inch (1.181 mm) (No. 18 gage) or stainless steel not less than 0.0335 inch [0.8525 mm (No. 20 MSG)] in thickness.

507.2.4 Type I supports. Type I hoods shall be secured in place by noncombustible supports. Type I hood supports shall be adequate for the applied load of the hood, the unsupported ductwork, the effluent loading and the possible weight of personnel working in or on the hood.

507.2.5 Type I hoods. External hood joints, seams and penetrations for Type I hoods shall be made with a continuous external liquid-tight weld or braze to the lowest outermost perimeter of the hood. Internal hood joints, seams, penetrations, filter support frames and other appendages attached inside the hood shall not be required to be welded or brazed but shall be otherwise sealed to be grease tight.

Exceptions:

1. Penetrations shall not be required to be welded or brazed where sealed by devices that are *listed* for the application.
2. Internal welding or brazing of seams, joints and penetrations of the hood shall not be prohibited provided that the joint is formed smooth or ground so as to not trap grease, and is readily cleanable.

507.2.6 Clearances for Type I hood. A Type I hood shall be installed with a *clearance* to combustibles of not less than 18 inches (457 mm).

~~Exception:~~Exceptions:

1. *Clearance* shall not be required from gypsum wallboard or $^{1}/_{2}$-inch (12.7 mm) or thicker cementitious wallboard attached to noncombustible structures provided that a smooth, cleanable, nonabsorbent and noncombustible material is installed between the hood and the gypsum or cementitious wallboard over an area extending not less than 18 inches (457 mm) in all directions from the hood.

2. Type I hoods *listed* and *labeled* for *clearances* less than 18 inches (457 mm) in accordance with UL 710 shall be installed with the *clearances* specified by such listings.

507.2.7 Type I hoods penetrating a ceiling. Type I hoods or portions thereof penetrating a ceiling, wall or furred space shall comply with Section 506.3.11. Field-applied enclosure systems shall be ~~listed~~*listed* and ~~labeled~~*labeled* for use in the configuration required to meet this code section.

507.2.8 Type I grease filters. Type I hoods shall be equipped with grease filters ~~listed~~*listed* and ~~labeled~~*labeled* in accordance with UL 1046. Grease filters shall be provided with access for cleaning or replacement. The lowest edge of a grease filter located above the cooking surface shall be not less than the height specified in Table 507.2.8.

TABLE 507.2.8
MINIMUM DISTANCE BETWEEN THE LOWEST EDGE OF A GREASE FILTER AND THE COOKING SURFACE OR THE HEATING SURFACE

TYPE OF COOKING APPLIANCES	HEIGHT ABOVE COOKING SURFACE (feet)
Without exposed flame	0.5
Exposed flame and burners	2
Exposed charcoal and charbroil type	3.5

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

507.2.8.1 Criteria. Filters shall be of such size, type and arrangement as will permit the required quantity of air to pass through such units at rates not exceeding those for which the filter or unit was designed or *approved*. Filter units shall be installed in frames or holders so as to be readily removable without the use of separate tools, unless designed and installed to be cleaned in place and the system is equipped for such cleaning in place. Where filters are designed and required to be cleaned, removable filter units shall be of a size that will allow them to be cleaned in a dishwashing machine or pot sink. Filter units shall be arranged in place or provided with drip-intercepting devices to prevent grease or other condensate from dripping into food or on food preparation surfaces.

507.2.8.2 Mounting position of grease filters. Filters shall be installed at an angle of not less than 45 degrees (0.79 rad) from the horizontal and shall be equipped with a drip tray beneath the lower edge of the filters.

507.2.9 Grease gutters for Type I hood. Grease gutters shall drain to an *approved* collection receptacle that is fabricated, designed and installed to allow access for cleaning. ~~The container shall have a maximum capacity not exceeding 1 gallon (3.8 L) unless otherwise approved by the *code official*.~~

507.3 Type II hoods. Type II hoods shall be installed above dishwashers and *appliances* ~~*light-duty appliances* and *medium-duty appliances*~~ that produce heat or moisture and do not produce grease or smoke as a result of the cooking process, except where the heat and moisture loads from such ~~appliances~~*appliances* are incorporated into the HVAC system design or into the design of a separate removal system. Type II hoods shall be installed above all *appliances* ~~*light-duty appliances* and *medium-duty appliances*~~ that produce products of combustion and do not produce grease or smoke as a result of the cooking process. Spaces containing cooking *appliances* that do not require Type II hoods shall be provided with exhaust at a rate of 0.70 cfm per square foot (0.00356 $m^3/(s \cdot m^2)$). For the purpose of determining the floor area required to be exhausted, each individual *appliance* that is not required to be installed under a Type II hood shall be considered as occupying not less than 100 square feet (9.3 m^2). Such additional square footage shall be provided with exhaust at a rate of 0.70 cfm per square foot [0.00356 $m^3/(s \cdot m^2)$]. ~~Spaces containing cooking *appliances* that do not require Type II hoods shall be ventilated in accordance with Section 403.3.~~

507.3.1 Type II hood materials. Type II hoods shall be constructed of steel having a minimum thickness of 0.0296 inch (0.7534 mm) (No. 22 gage) or stainless steel not less than 0.0220 inch (0.5550 mm) (No. 24 gage) in thickness, copper sheets weighing not less than 24 ounces per square foot (7.3 kg/m^2) or of other *approved* material and gage.

507.3.2 Type II supports. Type II hood supports shall be adequate for the applied load of the hood, the unsupported ductwork, the effluent loading and the possible weight of personnel working in or on the hood.

507.3.3 Type II hoods joint, seams and penetrations. Joints, seams and penetrations for Type II hoods shall be constructed as set forth in Chapter 6, shall be sealed on the interior of the hood and shall provide a smooth surface that is readily cleanable and watertight.

507.4 Hood size and location. Hoods shall comply with the overhang, setback and height requirements in accordance with Sections 507.4.1 and 507.4.2, based on the type of hood.

507.4.1 Canopy size and location. The inside lower edge of canopy-type Type I and II commercial hoods shall overhang or extend a horizontal distance of not less than 6 inches (152 mm) beyond the edge of the top horizontal surface of the *appliance* on all open sides. The vertical distance between the front lower lip of the hood and such surface shall not exceed 4 feet (1219 mm).

Exception: The hood shall be permitted to be flush with the outer edge of the cooking surface where the hood is closed to the *appliance* side by a noncombustible wall or panel.

507.4.2 Noncanopy size and location. Noncanopy-type hoods shall be located not greater than 3 feet (914 mm) above the cooking surface. The edge of the hood shall be set back not greater than 1 foot (305 mm) from the edge of the cooking surface.

507.5 Capacity of hoods. Commercial food service hoods shall exhaust a minimum net quantity of air determined in accordance with this section and Sections 507.5.1 through 507.5.5. The net quantity of *exhaust air* shall be calculated by subtracting any airflow supplied directly to a hood cavity from the total exhaust flow rate of a hood. Where any combination of *heavy-duty, medium-duty* and *light-duty cooking appliances* are utilized under a single hood, the exhaust rate required by this section for the heaviest duty *appliance* covered by the hood shall be used for the entire hood.

507.5.1 Extra-heavy-duty cooking appliances. The minimum net airflow for hoods, as determined by Section 507.1, used for *extra-heavy-duty cooking appliances* shall be determined as follows:

Type of Hood	CFM per linear foot of hood
Backshelf/pass-over	Not allowed
Double island canopy (per side)	550
Eyebrow	Not allowed
Single island canopy	700
Wall-mounted canopy	550

For SI: 1 cfm per linear foot = 1.55 L/s per linear meter.

507.5.2 Heavy-duty cooking appliances. The minimum net airflow for hoods, as determined by Section 507.1, used for *heavy-duty cooking appliances* shall be determined as follows:

Type of Hood	CFM per linear foot of hood
Backshelf/pass-over	400
Double island canopy	400

(per side)	
Eyebrow	Not allowed
Single island canopy	600
Wall-mounted canopy	400

For SI: 1 cfm per linear foot = 1.55 L/s per linear meter.

507.5.3 Medium-duty cooking appliances. The minimum net airflow for hoods, as determined by Section 507.1, used for *medium-duty cooking appliances* shall be determined as follows:

Type of Hood	CFM per linear foot of hood
Backshelf/pass-over	300
Double island canopy (per side)	300
Eyebrow	250
Single island canopy	500
Wall-mounted canopy	300

For SI: 1 cfm per linear foot = 1.55 L/s per linear meter.

507.5.4 Light-duty cooking appliances. The minimum net airflow for hoods, as determined by Section 507.1, used for *light-duty* cooking *appliances* and food service preparation shall be determined as follows:

Type of Hood	CFM per linear foot of hood
Backshelf/pass-over	250
Double island canopy (per side)	250
Eyebrow	250
Single island canopy	400
Wall-mounted canopy	200

For SI: 1 cfm per linear foot = 1.55 L/s per linear meter.

507.5.5 Dishwashing appliances. The minimum net airflow for Type II hoods used for dishwashing ~~appliances~~*appliances* shall be 100 cfm per linear foot (155 L/s per linear meter) of hood length.

Exception: Dishwashing ~~appliances~~*appliances* and *equipment* installed in accordance with Section 507.3.

507.6 Performance test. A performance test shall be conducted upon completion and before final approval of the installation of a ventilation system serving *commercial cooking appliances*. The test shall verify the rate of exhaust airflow required by Section 507.5, makeup airflow required by Section 508 and proper operation as specified in this chapter. The permit holder shall furnish the necessary test *equipment* and devices required to perform the tests.

507.6.1 Capture and containment test. The permit holder shall verify capture and containment performance of the exhaust system. This field test shall be conducted with all ~~appliances~~*appliances* under the hood at operating temperatures, with all sources of outdoor air providing *makeup air* for the hood operating and with all sources of recirculated air providing conditioning for the space in which the hood is located operating. Capture and containment shall be verified visually by observing smoke or steam produced by actual or simulated cooking, such as ~~with smoke candles, smoke puffers, and similar means.~~ that provided by smoke generators.

507.6.2 Certification. These tests shall be witnessed by the code official, or by a professional engineer who shall provide certification of performance to the code official.

SECTION 508
COMMERCIAL KITCHEN MAKEUP AIR

508.1 Makeup air. *Makeup air* shall be supplied during the operation of commercial kitchen exhaust systems that are provided for *commercial cooking appliances*. The amount of *makeup air* supplied to the building from all sources shall be approximately equal to the amount of *exhaust air* for all exhaust systems for the building. The *makeup air* shall not reduce the effectiveness of the exhaust system. *Makeup air* shall be provided by gravity or mechanical means or both. Mechanical *makeup air* systems shall be automatically controlled to start and operate simultaneously with the exhaust system. *Makeup air* intake opening locations shall comply with Section 401.4.

508.1.1 Makeup air temperature. The temperature differential between *makeup air* and the air in the conditioned space shall not exceed 10ºF (6ºC) except where the added heating and cooling loads of the *makeup air* do not exceed the capacity of the HVAC system.

508.1.2 Air balance. Design plans for a facility with a commercial kitchen ventilation system shall include a schedule or diagram indicating the design outdoor air balance. The design outdoor air balance shall indicate all exhaust and replacement air for the facility, plus the net exfiltration if applicable. The total replacement air airflow rate shall equal the total exhaust airflow rate plus the net exfiltration.

508.2 Compensating hoods. Manufacturers of compensating hoods shall provide a label indicating the minimum exhaust ~~flow~~ flow, ~~and/or~~the maximum makeup airflow or both that provides capture and containment of the exhaust effluent.

Exception: Compensating hoods with *makeup air* supplied only from the front face discharge and side face discharge openings shall not be required to be labeled with the maximum makeup airflow.

SECTION 509
FIRE SUPPRESSION SYSTEMS

509.1 Where required. ~~*Commercial cooking*~~*Cooking appliances* required by Section 507.2 to have a Type I hood shall be provided with an *approved* automatic fire suppression system complying with the *International Building Code* and the *International Fire Code*.

SECTION 510
HAZARDOUS EXHAUST SYSTEMS

510.1 General. This section shall govern the design and construction of duct systems for hazardous exhaust and shall determine where such systems are required. Hazardous exhaust systems are systems designed to capture and control hazardous emissions generated from product handling or processes, and convey those emissions to the outdoors. Hazardous emissions include flammable vapors, gases, fumes, mists or dusts, and volatile or airborne materials posing a health hazard, such as toxic or corrosive materials. For the purposes of this section, the health-hazard rating of materials shall be as specified in NFPA 704.

For the purposes of the provisions of Section 510, a laboratory shall be defined as a facility where the use of chemicals is related to testing, analysis, teaching, research or developmental activities. Chemicals are used or synthesized on a nonproduction basis, rather than in a manufacturing process.

510.2 Where required. A hazardous exhaust system shall be required wherever operations involving the handling or processing of hazardous materials, in the absence of such exhaust systems and under normal operating conditions, have the potential to create one of the following conditions:

1. A flammable vapor, gas, fume, mist or dust is present in concentrations exceeding 25 percent of the lower flammability limit of the substance for the expected room temperature.
2. A vapor, gas, fume, mist or dust with a health-hazard rating of 4 is present in any concentration.
3. A vapor, gas, fume, mist or dust with a health-hazard rating of 1, 2 or 3 is present in concentrations exceeding 1 percent of the median lethal concentration of the substance for acute inhalation toxicity.

Exception: Laboratories, as defined in Section 510.1, except where the concentrations listed in Item 1 are exceeded or a vapor, gas, fume, mist or dust with a health-hazard rating of 1, 2, 3 or 4 is present in concentrations exceeding 1 percent of the median lethal concentration of the substance for acute inhalation toxicity.

[F] 510.2.1 Lumber yards and woodworking facilities. *Equipment* or machinery located inside buildings at lumber yards and woodworking facilities ~~which~~that generates or emits combustible dust shall be provided with an *approved* dust-collection and exhaust system installed in accordance with this section and the *International Fire Code*. *Equipment* and systems that are used to collect, process or convey combustible dusts shall be provided with an *approved* explosion-control system.

[F] 510.2.2 Combustible fibers. *Equipment* or machinery within a building ~~which~~that generates or emits combustible fibers shall be provided with an *approved* dust-collecting and exhaust system. Such systems shall comply with this code and the *International Fire Code*.

510.3 Design and operation. The design and operation of the exhaust system shall be such that flammable contaminants are diluted in noncontaminated air to maintain concentrations in the exhaust flow below 25 percent of the contaminant's lower flammability limit.

~~**510.4 Independent system.** Hazardous exhaust systems shall be independent of other types of exhaust systems.~~

~~510.5~~510.4 Incompatible materials and common shafts. Incompatible materials, as defined in the *International Fire Code*, shall not be exhausted through the same hazardous exhaust system. Hazardous exhaust systems shall not share common shafts with other duct systems, except where such systems are hazardous exhaust systems originating in the same fire area.

Exception: The provisions of this section shall not apply to laboratory exhaust systems where all of the following conditions apply:

1. All of the hazardous exhaust ductwork and other laboratory exhaust within both the occupied space and the shafts are under negative pressure while in operation.
2. The hazardous exhaust ductwork manifolded together within the occupied space must originate within the same fire area.
3. Hazardous exhaust ductwork originating in different fire areas and manifolded together in a common shaft shall meet the provisions of Section 717.5.3, Exception 1, Item 1.1 of the *International Building Code*.
4. Each control branch has a flow-regulating device.
5. Perchloric acid hoods and connected exhaust shall be prohibited from manifolding.
6. Radioisotope hoods are equipped with filtration, carbon beds or both where required by the *registered design professional*.
7. Biological safety cabinets are filtered.
8. Each hazardous exhaust duct system shall be served by redundant exhaust fans that comply with either of the following:
   - 8.1. The fans shall operate simultaneously in parallel and each fan shall be individually capable of providing the required exhaust rate.
   - 8.2. Each of the redundant fans is controlled so as to operate when the other fan has failed or is shut down for servicing.

~~510.6~~510.5 Design. Systems for removal of vapors, gases and smoke shall be designed by the constant velocity or equal friction methods. Systems conveying particulate matter shall be designed employing the constant velocity method.

~~510.6.1~~510.5.1 Balancing. Systems conveying explosive or radioactive materials shall be prebalanced by duct sizing. Other systems shall~~may~~ be balanced by duct sizing ~~or~~ with balancing devices, such as dampers. Dampers provided to balance airflow shall ~~be provided with~~have securely fixed minimum-position blocking devices to prevent restricting the flow below the required volume or velocity.

~~510.6.2~~510.5.2 Emission control. The design of the system shall be such that the emissions are confined to the area in which they are generated by air currents, hoods or enclosures and shall be exhausted by a duct system to a safe location or treated by removing contaminants.

~~510.6.3~~510.5.3 Hoods required. Hoods or enclosures shall be used where contaminants originate in a limited area of a space. The design of the hood or enclosure shall be such that air currents created by the exhaust systems will capture the contaminants and transport them directly to the exhaust duct.

~~510.6.4~~510.5.4 Contaminant capture and dilution. The velocity and circulation of air in work areas shall be such that contaminants are captured by an airstream at the area where the emissions are generated and conveyed into a product-conveying duct system. Contaminated air from work areas where hazardous contaminants are generated shall be diluted below the thresholds specified in Section 510.2 with air that does not contain other hazardous contaminants.

~~510.6.5~~510.5.5 Makeup air. *Makeup air* from all sources shall be provided during operations at a rate approximately equal to the rate that air is exhausted by the hazardous exhaust system. *Makeup air* shall be provided by gravity or mechanical means or both. Mechanical *makeup air* systems shall be automatically controlled to start and operate simultaneously with the exhaust system. The *makeup air* shall not reduce the effectiveness of the exhaust system. *Makeup air* intakes shall be located in accordance with Section 401.4.

~~510.6.6~~510.5.6 Clearances. The minimum *clearance* between hoods and combustible construction shall be the *clearance* required by the duct system.

~~510.6.7~~510.5.7 Ducts. Hazardous exhaust duct systems shall extend directly to the exterior of the building and shall not extend into or through ducts and ~~plenums~~*plenums*.

~~510.7~~510.6 Penetrations. Penetrations of structural elements by a hazardous exhaust system shall conform to Sections ~~510.7.1~~ 510.6.1 through ~~510.7.4~~510.6.4.

Exception: Duct penetrations within Group H-5 ~~occupancies~~*occupancies* as allowed by the *International Building Code*.

~~510.7.1~~510.6.1 Fire dampers and smoke dampers. Fire dampers and smoke dampers are prohibited in hazardous exhaust ducts.

~~510.7.1.1~~510.6.1.1 Shaft penetrations. Hazardous exhaust ducts that penetrate fire-resistance-rated shafts shall comply with Section ~~714.3.1~~714.4.1 or ~~714.3.1.2~~714.4.1.2 of the *International Building Code*.

~~510.7.2~~510.6.2 Floors. Hazardous exhaust systems that penetrate a floor/ceiling assembly shall be enclosed in a fire-resistance-rated shaft constructed in accordance with the *International Building Code*.

~~510.7.3~~510.6.3 Wall assemblies. Hazardous exhaust duct systems that penetrate fire-resistance-rated wall assemblies shall be enclosed in fire-resistance-rated construction from the point of penetration to the outlet terminal, except where the interior of the duct is equipped with an approved automatic fire suppression system. Ducts shall be enclosed in accordance with the *International Building Code* requirements for shaft construction and such enclosure shall have a minimum fire-resistance rating of not less than the highest fire-resistance-rated wall assembly penetrated.

~~510.7.4~~510.6.4 Fire walls. Ducts shall not penetrate a fire wall.

~~510.8~~510.7 Suppression required. Ducts shall be protected with an *approved* automatic fire suppression system installed in accordance with the *International Building Code*.

Exceptions:

1. An approved automatic fire suppression system shall not be required in ducts conveying materials, fumes, mists and vapors that are nonflammable and noncombustible under all conditions and at any concentrations.

2. Automatic fire suppression systems shall not be required in metallic and noncombustible, non-metallic exhaust ducts in semiconductor fabrication facilities.
3. An *approved* automatic fire suppression system shall not be required in ducts where the largest cross-sectional diameter of the duct is less than 10 inches (254 mm).
4. For laboratories, as defined in Section 510.1, automatic fire protection systems shall not be required in laboratory hoods or exhaust systems.

510.7.1 Duct cleanout.

Ducts conveying combustible dust as part of a dust collection system shall be equipped with cleanouts that are provided with approved access, predesigned to be disassembled for cleaning, or engineered for automatic cleanouts. Where provided, cleanouts shall be located at the base of each vertical duct riser and at intervals not exceeding 20 feet (6096 mm) in horizontal sections of duct.

~~510.9~~510.8 Duct construction. Ducts used to convey hazardous exhaust shall be constructed of materials *approved* for installation in such an exhaust system and shall comply with one of the following:

1. Ducts shall be constructed of *approved* G90 galvanized sheet steel, with a minimum nominal thickness as specified in Table ~~510.9.~~510.8.
2. Ducts~~Nonmetallic ducts~~ used in systems exhausting nonflammable corrosive fumes or vapors shall be constructed of nonmetallic materials that exhibit a flame spread index of 25 or less and a smoke-developed index of 50 or less when tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723 and that are *listed* and *labeled* for the application.

Where the products being exhausted are detrimental to the duct material, the ducts shall be constructed of alternative materials that are compatible with the exhaust.

TABLE ~~510.9~~510.8
MINIMUM DUCT THICKNESS

DIAMETER OF DUCT OR MAXIMUM SIDE DIMENSION	MINIMUM NOMINAL THICKNESS		
	Nonabrasive materials	Nonabrasive/abrasive materials	Abrasive materials
0–8 inches	0.028 inch (No. 24 gage)	0.034 inch (No. 22 gage)	0.040 inch (No. 20 gage)
9–18 inches	0.034 inch (No. 22 gage)	0.040 inch (No. 20 gage)	0.052 inch (No. 18 gage)
19–30 inches	0.040 inch (No. 20 gage)	0.052 inch (No. 18 gage)	0.064 inch (No. 16 gage)
Over 30 inches	0.052 inch (No. 18 gage)	0.064 inch (No. 16 gage)	0.079 inch (No. 14 gage)

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

~~510.9.1~~510.8.1 Duct joints. Ducts shall be made tight with lap joints having a minimum lap of 1 inch (25 mm). Joints used in ANSI/SMACNA Round Industrial Duct Construction Standards and ANSI/SMACNA Rectangular Industrial Duct Construction Standards are also acceptable.

~~510.9.2~~510.8.2 Clearance to combustibles. Ducts shall have a *clearance* to combustibles in accordance with Table ~~510.9.2.~~ 510.8.2. Exhaust gases having temperatures in excess of 600ºF (316ºC) shall be exhausted to a *chimney* in accordance with Section 511.2.

TABLE ~~510.9.2~~510.8.2
CLEARANCE TO COMBUSTIBLES

TYPE OF EXHAUST OR TEMPERATURE OF EXHAUST (°F)	CLEARANCE TO COMBUSTIBLES (inches)

Less than 100	1
100–600	12
Flammable vapors	6

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, °C = [(°F) – 32]/1.8.

~~510.9.3~~510.8.3 Explosion relief. Systems exhausting potentially explosive mixtures shall be protected with an *approved* explosion relief system or by an *approved* explosion prevention system designed and installed in accordance with NFPA 69. An explosion relief system shall be designed to minimize the structural and mechanical damage resulting from an explosion or deflagration within the exhaust system. An explosion prevention system shall be designed to prevent an explosion or deflagration from occurring.

~~510.10~~510.9 Supports. Ducts shall be supported at intervals not exceeding 10 feet (3048 mm). Supports shall be constructed of noncombustible material.

SECTION 511 DUST, STOCK AND REFUSE CONVEYING SYSTEMS

511.1 Dust, stock and refuse conveying systems. Dust, stock and refuse conveying systems shall comply with the provisions of Section ~~510 and~~510, Sections 511.1.1 through ~~511.2.~~511.2 and the *International Fire Code*.

511.1.1 Collectors and separators. Collectors and separators involving such systems as centrifugal separators, bag filter systems and similar devices, and associated supports shall be constructed of noncombustible materials and shall be located on the exterior of the building or structure. A collector or separator shall not be located nearer than 10 feet (3048 mm) to combustible construction or to an unprotected wall or floor opening, unless the collector is provided with a metal vent pipe that extends above the highest part of any roof with a distance of 30 feet (9144 mm).

Exceptions:

1. Collectors such as "Point of Use" collectors, close extraction weld fume collectors, spray finishing booths, stationary grinding tables, sanding booths, and integrated or machine-mounted collectors shall be permitted to be installed indoors provided that the installation is in accordance with the *International Fire Code* and NFPA 70.
2. Collectors in independent exhaust systems handling combustible dusts shall be permitted to be installed indoors provided that such collectors are installed in compliance with the *International Fire Code* and NFPA 70.

511.1.2 Discharge pipe. Discharge piping shall conform to the requirements for ducts, including clearances required for high-heat ~~appliances~~*appliances*, as contained in this code. A delivery pipe from a cyclone collector shall not convey refuse directly into the firebox of a boiler, furnace, Dutch oven, refuse burner, incinerator or other *appliance*.

511.1.3 Conveying systems exhaust discharge. An exhaust system shall discharge to the outside of the building either directly by flue or indirectly through the bin or vault into which the system discharges except where the contaminants have been removed. Exhaust system discharge shall be permitted to be recirculated provided that the solid particulate has been removed at a minimum efficiency of 99.9 percent at 10 microns (10.01 mm), vapor concentrations are less than 25 percent of the LFL, and *approved equipment* is used to monitor the vapor concentration.

511.1.4 Spark protection. The outlet of an open-air exhaust terminal shall be protected with an *approved* metal or other noncombustible screen to prevent the entry of sparks.

511.1.5 Explosion ~~relief vents.~~control. ~~A safety or explosion relief vent~~Explosion control shall be provided in accordance with the requirements of the *International Fire Code* on all systems that convey combustible dust or combustible refuse or stock ~~of an explosive nature,~~that produces combustible dusts in such a manner that the concentration and conditions could create a fire or explosion hazard. Determination of concentrations or conditions that are deemed to not create a fire or explosion hazard shall be based on a Dust Hazard Analysis prepared in accordance with ~~the requirements~~ Section 2203.2 of the ~~*International Building Code.*~~*International Fire Code*.

511.1.5.1 Screens. Where a screen is installed in a safety relief vent, the screen shall be attached so as to permit ready release under the explosion pressure.

511.1.5.2 Hoods. The relief vent shall be provided with an *approved* noncombustible cowl or hood, or with a counterbalanced relief valve or cover arranged to prevent the escape of hazardous materials, gases or liquids.

511.2 Exhaust outlets. Outlets for exhaust that exceed 600ºF (315ºC) shall be designed as a *chimney* in accordance with Table 511.2.

TABLE 511.2
CONSTRUCTION, CLEARANCE AND TERMINATION REQUIREMENTS FOR SINGLE-WALL METAL CHIMNEYS

CHIMNEYS SERVING	MINIMUM THICKNESS		TERMINATION				CLEARANCE			
				Above any part of building within (feet)			Combustible construction (inches)		Noncombustible construction	
	Walls (inch)	Lining	Above roof opening (feet)	10	25	50	Interior inst.	Exterior inst.	Interior inst.	Exterior inst.
High-heat appliances (Over 2,000°F)[a]	0.127 (No. 10 MSG)	$4^{1}/_{2}$″ laid on $4^{1}/_{2}$″ bed	20	—	—	20	See Note c			
Low-heat appliances (1,000°F normal operation)	0.127 (No. 10 MSG)	None	3	2	—	—	18	6	Up to 18″ diameter, 2″ Over 18″ diameter, 4″	
Medium-heat appliances (2,000°F maximum)[b]	0.127 (No. 10 MSG)	Up to 18″ dia.—$2^{1}/_{2}$″ Over 18″—$4^{1}/_{2}$″ on $4^{1}/_{2}$″ bed	10	—	10	—	36	24		

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, °C = [(°F) – 32]/1.8.
a. Lining shall extend from bottom to top of outlet.
b. Lining shall extend from 24 inches below connector to 24 feet above.
c. Clearance shall be as specified by the design engineer and shall have sufficient clearance from buildings and structures to avoid overheating combustible materials (maximum 160°F).

SECTION 512
SUBSLAB SOIL EXHAUST SYSTEMS

512.1 General. Where a subslab soil exhaust system is provided, the duct shall conform to the requirements of this section.

512.2 Materials. Subslab soil exhaust system duct material shall be air duct material *listed* and *labeled* to the requirements of UL 181 for Class 0 air ducts, or any of the following piping materials that comply with the *International Plumbing Code* as building sanitary drainage and vent pipe: cast iron; galvanized steel; ~~brass or~~copper ~~pipe; copper~~or copper-alloy pipe and tube of a weight not less than ~~that of copper drainage tube, Type~~type DWV; and plastic piping.

512.3 Grade. Exhaust system ducts shall not be trapped and shall have a minimum slope of one-eighth unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (1-percent slope).

512.4 Termination. Subslab soil exhaust system ducts shall extend through the roof and terminate not less than 6 inches (152 mm) above the roof and not less than 10 feet (3048 mm) from any operable openings or air intake.

512.5 Identification. Subslab soil exhaust ducts shall be permanently identified within each floor level by means of a tag, stencil or other *approved* marking.

SECTION 513
SMOKE CONTROL SYSTEMS

[F] 513.1 Scope and purpose. This section applies to mechanical and passive smoke control systems that are required by the *International Building Code* or the *International Fire Code*. The purpose of this section is to establish minimum requirements for the design, installation and acceptance testing of smoke control systems that are intended to provide a tenable environment for the evacuation or relocation of occupants. These provisions are not intended for the preservation of contents, the timely restoration of operations, or for assistance in fire suppression or overhaul activities. Smoke control systems regulated by this section serve a different purpose than the ~~smoke- and heat-venting~~smoke and heat removal provisions found in Section 910 of the *International Building Code* or the *International Fire Code*.

[F] 513.2 General design requirements. Buildings, structures, or parts thereof required by the *International Building Code* or the *International Fire Code* to have a smoke control system or systems shall have such systems designed in accordance with the applicable requirements of Section 909 of the *International Building Code* and the generally accepted and well-established principles of engineering relevant to the design. The *construction documents* shall include sufficient information and detail to describe adequately the elements of the design necessary for the proper implementation of the smoke control systems. These documents shall be accompanied with sufficient information and analysis to demonstrate compliance with these provisions.

[F] 513.3 Special inspection and test requirements. In addition to the ordinary inspection and test requirements that buildings, structures and parts thereof are required to undergo, smoke control systems subject to the provisions of Section 909 of the *International Building Code* shall undergo special inspections and tests sufficient to verify the proper commissioning of the smoke control design in its final installed condition. The design submission accompanying the *construction documents* shall clearly detail procedures and methods to be used and the items subject to such inspections and tests. Such commissioning shall be in accordance with generally accepted engineering practice and, where possible, based on published standards for the particular testing involved. The special inspections and tests required by this section shall be conducted under the same terms as found in Section 1704 of the *International Building Code*.

[F] 513.4 Analysis. A rational analysis supporting the types of smoke control systems to be employed, their methods of operation, the systems supporting them and the methods of construction to be utilized shall accompany the submitted *construction documents* and shall include, but not be limited to, the items indicated in Sections 513.4.1 through 513.4.7.

[F] 513.4.1 Stack effect. The system shall be designed such that the maximum probable normal or reverse stack effects will not adversely interfere with the system's capabilities. In determining the maximum probable stack effects, altitude, elevation, weather history and interior temperatures shall be used.

[F] 513.4.2 Temperature effect of fire. Buoyancy and expansion caused by the design fire in accordance with Section 513.9 shall be analyzed. The system shall be designed such that these effects do not adversely interfere with its capabilities.

[F] 513.4.3 Wind effect. The design shall consider the adverse effects of wind. Such consideration shall be consistent with the wind-loading provisions of the *International Building Code*.

[F] 513.4.4 HVAC systems. The design shall consider the effects of the heating, ventilating and air-conditioning (HVAC) systems on both smoke and fire transport. The analysis shall include all permutations of systems' status. The design shall consider the effects of fire on the HVAC systems.

[F] 513.4.5 Climate. The design shall consider the effects of low temperatures on systems, property and occupants. Air inlets and exhausts shall be located so as to prevent snow or ice blockage.

[F] 513.4.6 Duration of operation. All portions of active or engineered smoke control systems shall be capable of continued operation after detection of the fire event for a period of not less than either 20 minutes or 1.5 times the calculated egress time, whichever is greater.

[F] 513.4.7 Smoke control system interaction. The design shall consider the interaction effects of the operation of multiple smoke control systems for all design scenarios.

[F] 513.5 Smoke barrier construction. Smoke barriers required for passive smoke control and a smoke control system using the pressurization method shall comply with Section 709 of the *International Building Code*. The maximum allowable leakage area shall be the aggregate area calculated using the following leakage area ratios:

1. Walls: $A/A_w = 0.00100$
2. Interior exit stairways and ramps and exit passageways: $A/A_w = 0.00035$
3. Enclosed exit access stairways and ramps and all other shafts: $A/A_w = 0.00150$
4. Floors and roofs: $A/A_F = 0.00050$

where:

A = Total leakage area, square feet (m^2).

A_F = Unit floor or roof area of barrier, square feet (m^2).

A_w = Unit wall area of barrier, square feet (m^2).

The leakage area ratios shown do not include openings created by gaps around doors and operable windows. The total leakage area of the smoke barrier shall be determined in accordance with Section 513.5.1 and tested in accordance with Section 513.5.2.

[F] 513.5.1 Total leakage area. Total leakage area of the barrier is the product of the smoke barrier gross area times the allowable leakage area ratio, plus the area of other openings such as gaps around doors and operable windows.

[F] 513.5.2 Testing of leakage area. Compliance with the maximum total leakage area shall be determined by achieving the minimum air pressure difference across the barrier with the system in the smoke control mode for mechanical smoke control systems utilizing the pressurization method. Compliance with the maximum total leakage area of passive smoke control systems shall be verified through methods such as door fan testing or other methods, as *approved* by the fire code official.

[F] 513.5.3 Opening protection. Openings in smoke barriers shall be protected by automatic-closing devices actuated by the required controls for the mechanical smoke control system. Door openings shall be protected by door assemblies complying with the requirements of the *International Building Code* for doors in smoke barriers.

Exceptions:

1. Passive smoke control systems with automatic-closing devices actuated by spot-type smoke detectors *listed* for releasing service installed in accordance with the *International Building Code*.
2. Fixed openings between smoke zones ~~which~~that are protected utilizing the airflow method.
3. In Group I-1 Condition 2, Group I-2 and ambulatory care facilities, where a pair of opposite-swinging doors are installed across a corridor in accordance with Section 513.5.3.1, the doors shall not be required to be protected in accordance with Section 716 of the *International Building Code*. The doors shall be close-fitting within operational tolerances and shall not have a center mullion or undercuts in excess of $^3/_4$ inch (19.1 mm), louvers or grilles. The doors shall have head and jamb stops and astragals or rabbets at meeting edges and, where permitted by the door manufacturer's listing, positive-latching devices are not required.
4. In Group I-2 and ~~ambulatory care facilties~~*ambulatory care facilities*, where such doors are special-purpose horizontal sliding, accordion or folding door assemblies installed in accordance with Section 1010.1.4.3 of the *International Building Code* and are automatic closing by smoke detection in accordance with Section ~~716.5.9.3~~716.2.6.5 of the *International Building Code*.
5. Group I-3.
6. Openings between smoke zones with clear ceiling heights of 14 feet (4267 mm) or greater and bank down capacity of greater than 20 minutes as determined by the design fire size.

[F] 513.5.3.1 Group I-1 Condition 2, Group I-2 and ambulatory care facilities. In Group I-1 Condition 2, Group I-2 and *ambulatory care facilities*, where doors are installed across a *corridor*, the doors shall be automatic closing by smoke detection in accordance with Section ~~716.5.9.3~~716.2.6.5 of the *International Building Code* and shall have a vision panel with fire-protection-rated glazing materials in fire-protection-rated frames, the area of which shall not exceed that tested.

[F] 513.5.3.2 Ducts and air transfer openings. Ducts and air transfer openings are required to be protected with a minimum Class II, 250ºF (121ºC) smoke damper complying with the *International Building Code*.

[F] 513.6 Pressurization method. The primary mechanical means of controlling smoke shall be by pressure differences across smoke barriers. Maintenance of a tenable environment is not required in the smoke control zone of fire origin.

[F] 513.6.1 Minimum pressure difference. The ~~minimum~~ pressure difference across a smoke barrier used to separate smoke zones shall be not less than 0.05-inch water gage (12.4 Pa) in fully sprinklered buildings.

In buildings permitted to be other than fully sprinklered, the smoke control system shall be designed to achieve pressure differences not less than two times the maximum calculated pressure difference produced by the design fire.

[F] 513.6.2 Maximum pressure difference. The maximum air pressure difference across a smoke barrier shall be determined by required door-opening or closing forces. The actual force required to open exit doors when the system is in the smoke control mode shall be in accordance with the *International Building Code*. Opening and closing forces for other doors shall be determined by standard engineering methods for the resolution of forces and reactions. The calculated force to set a side-hinged, swinging door in motion shall be determined by:

$F = F_{dc} + K(WA\Delta P)/2(W - d)$ **(Equation ~~5-1)~~5-2)**

where:

A = Door area, square feet (m^2).

d = Distance from door handle to latch edge of door, feet (m).

F = Total door opening force, pounds (N).

F_{dc} = Force required to overcome closing device, pounds (N).

K = Coefficient 5.2 (1.0).

W = Door width, feet (m).

ΔP = Design pressure difference, inches (Pa) water gage.

[F] 513.6.3 Pressurized stairways and elevator hoistways. Where stairways or elevator hoistways are pressurized, such pressurization systems shall comply with Section 513 as smoke control systems, in addition to the requirements of Sections 909.20 of the *International Building Code* and 909.21 of the *International Fire Code*.

[F] 513.7 Airflow design method. Where *approved* by the code official, smoke migration through openings fixed in a permanently open position, which are located between smoke control zones by the use of the airflow method, shall be permitted. The design airflows shall be in accordance with this section. Airflow shall be directed to limit smoke migration from the fire zone. The geometry of openings shall be considered to prevent flow reversal from turbulent effects. Smoke control systems using the airflow method shall be designed in accordance with NFPA 92.

[F] 513.7.1 Prohibited conditions. This method shall not be employed where either the quantity of air or the velocity of the airflow will adversely affect other portions of the smoke control system, unduly intensify the fire, disrupt plume dynamics or interfere with exiting. Airflow toward the fire shall not exceed 200 feet per minute (1.02 m/s). Where the calculated airflow exceeds this limit, the airflow method shall not be used.

[F] 513.8 Exhaust method. Where *approved* by the building official, mechanical smoke control for large enclosed volumes, such as in atriums or malls, shall be permitted to utilize the exhaust method. Smoke control systems using the exhaust method shall be designed in accordance with NFPA 92.

[F] 513.8.1 Exhaust rate. The height of the lowest horizontal surface of the accumulating smoke layer shall be maintained not less than 6 feet (1829 mm) above any walking surface ~~which~~that forms a portion of a required egress system within the smoke zone.

[F] 513.9 Design fire. The design fire shall be based on a rational analysis performed by the *registered design professional* and *approved* by the code official. The design fire shall be based on the analysis in accordance with Section 513.4 and this section.

[F] 513.9.1 Factors considered. The engineering analysis shall include the characteristics of the fuel, fuel load, effects included by the fire and whether the fire is likely to be steady or unsteady.

[F] 513.9.2 Design fire fuel. Determination of the design fire shall include consideration of the type of fuel, fuel spacing and configuration.

[F] 513.9.3 Heat-release assumptions. The analysis shall make use of the best available data from *approved* sources and shall not be based on excessively stringent limitations of combustible material.

[F] 513.9.4 Sprinkler effectiveness assumptions. A documented engineering analysis shall be provided for conditions that assume fire growth is halted at the time of sprinkler activation.

[F] 513.10 Equipment. *Equipment* such as, but not limited to, fans, ducts, automatic dampers and balance dampers shall be suitable for their intended use, suitable for the probable exposure temperatures that the rational analysis indicates, and as *approved* by the code official.

[F] 513.10.1 Exhaust fans. Components of exhaust fans shall be rated and certified by the manufacturer for the probable temperature rise to which the components will be exposed. This temperature rise shall be computed by:

$T_s = (Q_c/mc) + (T_a)$ **(Equation ~~5-2)~~5-3))**

where:

c = Specific heat of smoke at smoke-layer temperature, Btu/lb°F (kJ/kg • K).

m = Exhaust rate, pounds per second (kg/s).

Q_c = Convective heat output of fire, Btu/s (kW).

T_a = Ambient temperature, °F (K).

T_s = Smoke temperature, °F (K).

Exception: Reduced T_s as calculated based on the assurance of adequate dilution air.

[F] 513.10.2 Ducts. Duct materials and joints shall be capable of withstanding the probable temperatures and pressures to which they are exposed as determined in accordance with Section 513.10.1. Ducts shall be constructed and supported in accordance with Chapter 6. Ducts shall be leak tested to 1.5 times the maximum design pressure in accordance with nationally accepted practices. Measured leakage shall not exceed 5 percent of design flow. Results of such testing shall be a part of the documentation procedure. Ducts shall be supported directly from fire-resistance-rated structural elements of the building by substantial, noncombustible supports.

Exception: Flexible connections, for the purpose of vibration isolation, that are constructed of *approved* fire-resistance-rated materials.

[F] 513.10.3 Equipment, inlets and outlets. *Equipment* shall be located so as to not expose uninvolved portions of the building to an additional fire hazard. Outdoor air inlets shall be located so as to minimize the potential for introducing smoke or flame into the building. Exhaust outlets shall be so located as to minimize reintroduction of smoke into the building and to limit exposure of the building or adjacent buildings to an additional fire hazard.

[F] 513.10.4 Automatic dampers. Automatic dampers, regardless of the purpose for which they are installed within the smoke control system, shall be *listed* and conform to the requirements of *approved* recognized standards.

[F] 513.10.5 Fans. In addition to other requirements, belt-driven fans shall have 1.5 times the number of belts required for the design duty with the minimum number of belts being two. Fans shall be selected for stable performance based on normal temperature and, where applicable, elevated temperature. Calculations and manufacturer's fan curves shall be part of the documentation procedures. Fans shall be supported and restrained by noncombustible devices in accordance with the structural design requirements of the *International Building Code*. Motors driving fans shall not be operating beyond their nameplate horsepower (kilowatts) as determined from measurement of actual current draw. Motors driving fans shall have a minimum service factor of 1.15.

[F] 513.11 Standby power. The smoke control system shall be supplied with standby power in accordance with Section 2702 of the *International Building Code*.

[F] 513.11.1 Equipment room. The standby power source and its transfer switches shall be in a room separate from the normal power transformers and switch gear and ventilated directly to and from the exterior. The room shall be enclosed with not less than 1-hour fire-resistance-rated fire barriers constructed in accordance with Section 707 of the *International Building Code* or horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711 of the *International Building Code,* or both.

[F] 513.11.2 Power sources and power surges. Elements of the smoke management system relying on volatile memories or the like shall be supplied with uninterruptible power sources of sufficient duration to span 15-minute primary power interruption. Elements of the smoke management system susceptible to power surges shall be suitably protected by conditioners, suppressors or other *approved* means.

[F] 513.12 Detection and control systems. Fire detection systems providing control input or output signals to mechanical smoke control systems or elements thereof shall comply with the requirements of Section 907 of the *International Building Code*. Such systems shall be equipped with a control unit complying with UL 864 and listed as smoke control *equipment*.

[F] 513.12.1 Verification. Control systems for mechanical smoke control systems shall include provisions for verification. Verification shall include positive confirmation of actuation, testing, manual override and the presence of power downstream of all disconnects. A preprogrammed weekly test sequence shall report abnormal conditions audibly, visually and by printed report. The preprogrammed weekly test shall operate all devices, ~~equipment~~*equipment* and components used for smoke control.

Exception: Where verification of individual components tested through the preprogrammed weekly testing sequence will interfere with, and produce unwanted effects to, normal building operation, such individual components are permitted to be bypassed from the preprogrammed weekly testing, where *approved* by the building official and in accordance with both of the following:

1. Where the operation of components is bypassed from the preprogrammed weekly test, presence of power downstream of all disconnects shall be verified weekly by a listed control unit.
2. Testing of all components bypassed from the preprogrammed weekly test shall be in accordance with Section 909.20.6 of the *International Fire Code*.

[F] 513.12.2 Wiring. In addition to meeting the requirements of NFPA 70, all wiring, regardless of voltage, shall be fully enclosed within continuous raceways.

[F] 513.12.3 Activation. Smoke control systems shall be activated in accordance with the *International Building Code* or the *International Fire Code*.

[F] 513.12.4 Automatic control. Where complete automatic control is required or used, the automatic control sequences shall be initiated from an appropriately zoned automatic sprinkler system complying with Section 903.3.1.1 of the *International Fire Code*, from manual controls ~~that are readily accessible to~~provided with *ready access* for the fire department, and any smoke detectors required by engineering analysis.

[F] 513.13 Control-air tubing. Control-air tubing shall be of sufficient size to meet the required response times. Tubing shall be flushed clean and dry prior to final connections. Tubing shall be adequately supported and protected from damage. Tubing passing through concrete or masonry shall be sleeved and protected from abrasion and electrolytic action.

[F] 513.13.1 Materials. Control-air tubing shall be hard-drawn copper, Type L, ACR in accordance with ASTM B42, ASTM B43, ASTM B68, ASTM B88, ASTM B251 and ASTM B280. Fittings shall be wrought copper or ~~brass,~~copper alloy, solder type in accordance with ASME B16.18 or ASME B16.22. Changes in direction shall be made with appropriate tool bends. ~~Brass~~Copper-alloy compression-type fittings shall be used at final connection to devices; other joints shall be brazed using a BCuP5 brazing alloy with solidus above 1,100ºF (593ºC) and ~~liquids~~liquidus below 1,500ºF (816ºC). Brazing flux shall be used on ~~copper-to-brass~~copper-to-copper alloy joints only.

Exception: Nonmetallic tubing used within control panels and at the final connection to devices provided that all of the following conditions are met:

1. Tubing shall comply with the requirements of Section 602.2.1.3.
2. Tubing and connected device shall be completely enclosed within a galvanized or paint-grade steel enclosure having a minimum thickness of 0.0296 inch (0.7534 mm) (No. 22 gage). Entry to the enclosure shall be by copper tubing with a protective grommet of Neoprene or Teflon or by suitable brass compression to male barbed adapter.
3. Tubing shall be identified by appropriately documented coding.
4. Tubing shall be neatly tied and supported within the enclosure. Tubing bridging cabinets and doors or ~~moveable~~ movable devices shall be of sufficient length to avoid tension and excessive stress. Tubing shall be protected against abrasion. Tubing ~~serving~~connected to devices on doors shall be fastened along hinges.

[F] 513.13.2 Isolation from other functions. Control tubing serving other than smoke control functions shall be isolated by automatic isolation valves or shall be an independent system.

[F] 513.13.3 Testing. Control-air tubing shall be tested at three times the operating pressure for not less than 30 minutes without any noticeable loss in gauge pressure prior to final connection to devices.

[F] 513.14 Marking and identification. The detection and control systems shall be clearly marked at all junctions, accesses and terminations.

[F] 513.15 Control diagrams. Identical control diagrams shall be provided and maintained as required by the *International Fire Code*.

[F] 513.16 Fire fighter's smoke control panel. A fire fighter's smoke control panel for fire department emergency response purposes only shall be provided in accordance with the *International Fire Code*.

[F] 513.17 System response time. Smoke control system activation shall comply with the *International Fire Code*.

[F] 513.18 Acceptance testing. Devices, *equipment*, components and sequences shall be tested in accordance with the *International Fire Code*.

[F] 513.19 System acceptance. Acceptance of the smoke control system shall be in accordance with the *International Fire Code*.

SECTION 514
ENERGY RECOVERY VENTILATION SYSTEMS

514.1 General. Energy recovery ventilation systems shall be installed in accordance with this section. Where required for purposes of energy conservation, energy recovery ventilation systems shall comply with the *International Energy Conservation Code*. Ducted heat recovery ventilators shall be ~~listed~~*listed* and ~~labeled~~*labeled* in accordance with UL 1812. Nonducted heat recovery ventilators shall be ~~listed~~*listed* and ~~labeled~~*labeled* in accordance with UL 1815.

514.2 Prohibited applications. Energy recovery ventilation systems shall not be used in the following systems:

1. Hazardous exhaust systems covered in Section 510.
2. Dust, stock and refuse systems that convey explosive or flammable vapors, fumes or dust.
3. Smoke control systems covered in Section 513.
4. Commercial kitchen exhaust systems serving Type I ~~or Type II~~ hoods.
5. Clothes dryer exhaust systems covered in Section 504.

Exception: The application of ERV equipment that recovers sensible heat only utilizing coil-type heat exchangers shall not be limited by this section.

514.3 Access. A means of access shall be provided to the heat exchanger and other components of the system as required for service, maintenance, repair or replacement.

514.4 Recirculated air. Air conveyed within energy recovery systems shall not be considered as recirculated air where the energy recovery ventilation system is constructed to limit cross-leakage between air streams to less than 10 percent ~~or less~~ of the total airflow design capacity.

CHAPTER 6
DUCT SYSTEMS

SECTION 601
GENERAL

601.1 Scope. Duct systems used for the movement of air in air-conditioning, heating, ventilating and exhaust systems shall conform to the provisions of this chapter except as otherwise specified in Chapters 5 and 7.

Exception: Ducts discharging combustible material directly into any *combustion* chamber shall conform to the requirements of NFPA 82.

~~[BF]~~[BE] 601.2 Air movement in egress elements. Corridors shall not serve as supply, return, exhaust, relief or *ventilation air* ducts.

Exceptions:

1. Use of a corridor as a source of *makeup air* for exhaust systems in rooms that open directly onto such corridors, including toilet rooms, bathrooms, dressing rooms, smoking lounges and janitor closets, shall be permitted, provided that each such corridor is directly supplied with outdoor air at a rate greater than the rate of *makeup air* taken from the corridor.
2. Where located within a *dwelling unit*, the use of corridors for conveying return air shall not be prohibited.
3. Where located within tenant spaces of 1,000 square feet (93 m^2) or less in area, use of corridors for conveying return air is permitted.
4. ~~Incidental air movement from pressurized rooms within health care facilities, provided that the corridor is not the primary source of supply or return to the room.~~Transfer air movement required to maintain pressurization difference within health care facilities in accordance with ASHRAE 170.

~~[BF]~~[BE] 601.2.1 Corridor ceiling. Use of the space between the corridor ceiling and the floor or roof structure above as a return air *plenum* is permitted for one or more of the following conditions:

1. The corridor is not required to be of fire-resistance-rated construction.
2. The corridor is separated from the *plenum* by fire-resistance-rated construction.
3. The air-handling system serving the corridor is shut down upon activation of the air-handling unit smoke detectors required by this code.
4. The air-handling system serving the corridor is shut down upon detection of sprinkler waterflow where the building is equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system.
5. The space between the corridor ceiling and the floor or roof structure above the corridor is used as a component of an *approved* engineered smoke control system.

~~[BF]~~[BE] 601.3 Exits. *Equipment* and ductwork for exit enclosure ventilation shall comply with one of the following items:

1. Such *equipment* and ductwork shall be located exterior to the building and shall be directly connected to the exit enclosure by ductwork enclosed in construction as required by the *International Building Code* for shafts.
2. Where such *equipment* and ductwork is located within the exit enclosure, the intake air shall be taken directly from the outdoors and the *exhaust air* shall be discharged directly to the outdoors, or such air shall be conveyed through ducts enclosed in construction as required by the *International Building Code* for shafts.
3. Where located within the building, such *equipment* and ductwork shall be separated from the remainder of the building, including other mechanical *equipment*, with construction as required by the *International Building Code* for shafts.

In each case, openings into fire-resistance-rated construction shall be limited to those needed for maintenance and operation and shall be protected by self-closing fire-resistance-rated devices in accordance with the *International Building Code* for enclosure wall opening protectives. Exit enclosure ventilation systems shall be independent of other building ventilation systems.

601.4 Contamination prevention. Exhaust ducts under positive pressure, *chimneys* and vents shall not extend into or pass through ducts or ~~plenums~~*plenums*.

Exceptions:

1. Exhaust systems located in ceiling return air ~~plenums~~*plenums* over spaces that are permitted to have 10 percent recirculation in accordance with Section 403.2.1, Item 4. The exhaust duct joints, seams and connections shall comply with Section 603.9.
2. This section shall not apply to ~~chimneys~~*chimneys* and vents that pass through ~~plenums~~*plenums* where such venting systems comply with one of the following requirements:
   2.1. The venting system shall be listed for positive pressure applications and shall be sealed in accordance with the vent manufacturer's instructions.
   2.2. The venting system shall be installed such that fittings and joints between sections are not installed in the above ceiling space.
   2.3. The venting system shall be installed in a conduit or enclosure with sealed joints separating the interior of the conduit or enclosure from the ceiling space.

601.5 Return air openings. Return air openings for heating, ventilation and air-conditioning systems shall comply with all of the following:

1. Openings shall not be located less than 10 feet (3048 mm) measured in any direction from an open combustion ~~chamber~~ chamber, including *factory-built* and *masonry fireplaces* or draft hood of another ~~appliance~~*appliance* located in the same room or space.
2. Return air shall not be taken from a hazardous or insanitary location or a refrigeration room as defined in this code.
3. The amount of return air taken from any room or space shall be not greater than the flow rate of supply air delivered to such room or space.
4. Return and transfer openings shall be sized in accordance with the ~~appliance~~*appliance* or ~~equipment~~*equipment* manufacturer's installation instructions, ACCA Manual D or the design of the registered design professional.
5. Return air taken from one ~~dwelling unit~~*dwelling unit* shall not be discharged into another ~~dwelling unit~~*dwelling unit*.
6. Return air shall not be taken from a closet, bathroom, toilet room, kitchen, garage, boiler room, furnace ~~room~~room, crawl space or unconditioned attic.
7. Return air shall not be taken from indoor swimming pool enclosures and associated deck areas.

   Exceptions:

   1. Where the air from such spaces is dehumidified in accordance with Section 403.2.1, Item 2.
   2. Dedicated HVAC systems serving only such spaces.

Exceptions:

1. Taking return air from a kitchen is not prohibited where such return air openings serve the kitchen and are located not less than 10 feet (3048 mm) from the cooking ~~appliances~~*appliances*.
2. Taking return air from a kitchen is not prohibited in a *dwelling unit* where the kitchen and living spaces are in a single room and the cooking *appliance* is electric and located not less than 5 feet (1524 mm) in any direction from the return air intake opening.
3. Dedicated forced air systems serving only the garage shall not be prohibited from obtaining return air from the garage.

~~7. A room or space containing a fuel-burning appliance or fireplace where such room or space serves as the sole source of return air.~~
~~7.1. This shall not apply where the fuel-burning appliance is a direct-vent appliance.~~
~~7.2. This shall not apply where the room or space complies with the following requirements:~~
~~7.2.1. The return air shall be taken from a room or space having a volume exceeding 1 cubic foot for each 10 Btu/h (9.6L/W) of combined input rating of all fuel-burning appliances therein.~~
~~7.2.2. The volume of supply air discharged back into the same space shall be approximately equal to the volume of return air taken from the space.~~
~~7.2.3. Return air inlets shall not be located within 10 feet (3048 mm) of any appliance firebox or draft hood in the same room or space.~~
~~7.3. This shall not apply to rooms or spaces containing solid fuel-burning appliances, provided that return-air inlets are located not less than 10 feet (3048 mm) from the firebox of the appliances.~~
~~7.4. This shall not apply to rooms and spaces containing a fireplace provided that return air inlets are located not less than 10 feet (3048 mm) from the fireplace opening.~~

SECTION 602
PLENUMS

602.1 General. Supply, return, exhaust, relief and ventilation air ~~plenums~~*plenums* shall be limited to uninhabited crawl spaces, areas above a ceiling or below the floor, attic ~~spaces and~~spaces, mechanical ~~equipment~~*equipment* ~~rooms.~~rooms and the framing cavities addressed in Section 602.3. ~~Plenums~~*Plenums* shall be limited to one fire area. Air systems shall be ducted from the boundary of the fire area served directly to the air-handling ~~equipment~~*equipment*. Fuel-fired ~~appliances~~*appliances* shall not be installed within a ~~plenum~~*plenum*.

602.2 Construction. *Plenum* enclosure construction materials that are exposed to the airflow shall comply with the requirements of Section 703.5 of the *International Building Code* or such materials shall have a flame spread index of not more than 25 and a smoke-developed index of not more than 50 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723.

The use of gypsum boards to form ~~plenums~~*plenums* shall be limited to systems where the air temperatures do not exceed 125ºF (52ºC) and the building and mechanical system design conditions are such that the gypsum board surface temperature will be maintained above the airstream dew-point temperature. ~~Air plenums~~Supply air *plenums* formed by gypsum boards shall not be incorporated in air-handling systems utilizing *direct evaporative* ~~evaporative coolers.~~ *cooling* systems.

602.2.1 Materials within plenums. Except as required by Sections 602.2.1.1 through ~~602.2.1.7,~~602.2.1.8, materials within ~~plenums~~*plenums* shall be noncombustible or shall be ~~listed~~*listed* and ~~labeled~~*labeled* as having a flame spread index of not more than 25 and a smoke-developed index of not more than 50 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723.

Exceptions:

1. Rigid and flexible ducts and connectors shall conform to Section 603.
2. Duct coverings, linings, tape and connectors shall conform to Sections 603 and 604.
3. This section shall not apply to materials exposed within ~~plenums~~*plenums* ~~in one- and two-family dwellings.~~or *mechanical equipment rooms* used as *plenums* in *dwelling units.*
4. This section shall not apply to smoke detectors.
5. Combustible materials fully enclosed within one of the following:
    5.1. Continuous noncombustible raceways or enclosures.
    5.2. Approved gypsum board assemblies.
    5.3. Materials ~~listed~~*listed* and ~~labeled~~*labeled* for installation within a ~~plenum.~~*plenum* and listed for the application.
6. Materials in Group H, Division 5 fabrication areas and the areas above and below the fabrication area that share a common air recirculation path with the fabrication area.
7. ~~This section shall not apply to materials exposed within equipment rooms and furnace rooms in dwelling units.~~

602.2.1.1 Wiring. Combustible electrical wires and cables and optical fiber cables exposed within a ~~plenum~~*plenum* shall be ~~listed~~*listed* and *labeled* as having a ~~maximum~~ peak optical density ~~of~~not greater than 0.50, ~~0.50 or less,~~ an average optical density ~~of~~not greater than 0.15, ~~0.15 or less,~~ and a ~~maximum~~ flame spread distance ~~of~~not greater than 5 feet (1524 mm) ~~or less~~ when tested in accordance with NFPA ~~262~~262, or shall be installed in metal raceways or metal sheathed cable. Combustible optical fiber and communication raceways exposed within a ~~plenum~~*plenum* shall be ~~listed~~*listed* and *labeled* as having a ~~maximum~~ peak optical density ~~of~~not greater than 0.5, ~~0.5 or less,~~ an average optical density ~~of~~not greater than 0.15, ~~0.15 or less,~~ and a ~~maximum~~ flame spread distance ~~of~~not greater than 5 feet (1524 mm) ~~or less~~ when tested in accordance with ~~ANSI/UL 2024.~~UL 2024. Only plenum-rated wires and cables shall be installed in plenum-rated raceways. ~~Electrical wires and cables, optical fiber cables and raceways addressed in the section shall be listed and labeled and shall be installed in accordance with NFPA 70.~~

602.2.1.2 Fire sprinkler piping. Plastic fire sprinkler piping exposed within a *plenum* shall be used only in wet pipe systems and shall be *listed* and *labeled* as ~~have~~having a peak optical density not greater than 0.50, an average optical density not greater than 0.15, and a flame spread ~~of~~distance not greater than 5 feet (1524 mm) when tested in accordance with UL 1887. ~~Piping shall be *listed* and *labeled*.~~

602.2.1.3 Pneumatic tubing. Combustible pneumatic tubing exposed within a *plenum* shall be *listed* and *labeled* as ~~have~~having a peak optical density not greater than 0.50, an average optical density not greater than 0.15, and a flame spread ~~of~~distance not greater than 5 feet (1524 mm) when tested in accordance with UL 1820. ~~Combustible pneumatic tubing shall be *listed* and *labeled*.~~

602.2.1.4 Electrical equipment in plenums. Electrical *equipment* exposed within a *plenum* shall comply with Sections 602.2.1.4.1 and 602.2.1.4.2.

602.2.1.4.1 Equipment in metallic enclosures. Electrical *equipment* with metallic enclosures exposed within a *plenum* shall be permitted.

602.2.1.4.2 Equipment in combustible enclosures. Electrical *equipment* with combustible enclosures exposed within a *plenum* shall be *listed* and *labeled* for such use in accordance with UL 2043.

602.2.1.5 Discrete plumbing and mechanical products in plenums. Where discrete plumbing and mechanical products and appurtenances are located in a ~~plenum~~*plenum* and have exposed combustible material, they shall be ~~listed~~*listed* and ~~labeled~~*labeled* for such use in accordance with UL 2043.

602.2.1.6 Foam plastic ~~insulation.~~in plenums as interior finish or interior trim. Foam plastic ~~insulation used~~ in ~~plenums~~*plenums* used as interior wall or ceiling finish or ~~as~~ interior trim shall exhibit a flame spread index of ~~75~~25 or less and a smoke-developed index of ~~450~~50 or less when tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723 ~~and shall also comply with one or more Sections of 602.2.1.6.1, 602.2.1.6.2 and 602.2.1.6.3.~~at the maximum thickness and density intended for use, and shall be tested in accordance with NFPA 286 and meet the acceptance criteria of Section 803.1.2 of the *International Building Code*. As an alternative to testing to NFPA 286, the foam plastic shall be approved based on tests conducted in accordance with Section 2603.9 of the *International Building Code*.

Exceptions:

1. Foam plastic in *plenums* used as interior wall or ceiling finish or interior trim shall exhibit a flame spread index of 75 or less and a smoke-developed index of 450 or less when tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723 at the maximum thickness and density intended for use, where it is separated from the airflow in the *plenum* by a thermal barrier complying with Section 2603.4 of the *International Building Code*.
2. Foam plastic in *plenums* used as interior wall or ceiling finish or interior trim, shall exhibit a flame spread index of 75 or less and a smoke-developed index of 450 or less when tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723 at the maximum thickness and density intended for use, where it is separated from the airflow in the *plenum* by corrosion-resistant steel having a base metal thickness of not less than 0.0160 inch (0.4 mm).
3. Foam plastic in *plenums* used as interior wall or ceiling finish or interior trim, shall exhibit a flame spread index of 75 or less and a smoke-developed index of 450 or less when tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723 at the maximum thickness and density intended for use, where it is separated from the airflow in the *plenum* by not less than a 1-inch (25 mm) thickness of masonry or concrete.

~~**602.2.1.6.1 Separation required.** The foam plastic insulation shall be separated from the plenum by a thermal barrier complying with Section 2603.4 of the *International Building Code* and shall exhibit a flame spread index of 75 or less~~

~~and a smoke-developed index of 450 or less when tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723 at the thickness and density intended for use.~~

~~**602.2.1.6.2 Approval.** The foam plastic insulation shall exhibit a flame spread index of 25 or less and a smoke-developed index of 50 or less when tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723 at the thickness and density intended for use and shall meet the acceptance criteria of Section 803.1.2 of the *International Building Code* when tested in accordance with NFPA 286. The foam plastic insulation shall be approved based on tests conducted in accordance with Section 2603.9 of the *International Building Code*.~~

~~**602.2.1.6.3 Covering.** The foam plastic insulation shall be covered by corrosion-resistant steel having a base metal thickness of not less than 0.0160 inch (0.4 mm) and shall exhibit a flame spread index of 75 or less and a smoke-developed index of 450 or less when tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723 at the thickness and density intended for use.~~

602.2.1.7 Plastic plumbing ~~pipe~~piping and ~~tube.~~tubing. Plastic piping and tubing used in plumbing systems shall be *listed* and *labeled* as having a flame spread index not greater than 25 and a smoke-developed index not greater than 50 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723.~~Plastic piping and tubing used in plumbing systems shall be listed and shall exhibit a flame spread index of not more than 25 and a smoke-developed index of not more than 50 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723.~~

Exception: Plastic water distribution piping and tubing *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 2846 as having a peak optical density not greater than 0.50, an average optical density not greater than 0.15, and a flame spread distance not greater than 5 feet (1524 mm), and installed in accordance with its listing.

602.2.1.8 Pipe and duct insulation within plenums. Pipe and duct insulation contained within *plenums*, including insulation adhesives, shall have a flame spread index of not more than 25 and a smoke-developed index of not more than 50 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723, using the specimen preparation and mounting procedures of ASTM E2231. Pipe and duct insulation shall not flame, glow, smolder or smoke when tested in accordance with ASTM C411 at the temperature to which they are exposed in service. The test temperature shall not fall below 250°F (121°C). Pipe and duct insulation shall be *listed* and *labeled*. Pipe and duct insulation shall not be used to reduce the maximum flame spread and smoke-developed indices except where the pipe or duct and its related insulation, coatings, and adhesives are tested as a composite assembly in accordance with Section 602.2.1.7.

602.3 Stud cavity and joist space plenums. Stud wall cavities and the spaces between solid floor joists to be utilized as air ~~plenums~~*plenums* shall comply with the following conditions:

1. Such cavities or spaces shall not be utilized as a *plenum* for supply air.
2. Such cavities or spaces shall not be part of a required fire-resistance-rated assembly.
3. Stud wall cavities shall not convey air from more than one floor level.
4. Stud wall cavities and joist space ~~plenums~~*plenums* shall comply with the floor penetration protection requirements of the *International Building Code*.
5. Stud wall cavities and joist space ~~plenums~~*plenums* shall be isolated from adjacent concealed spaces by *approved* fireblocking as required in the *International Building Code*.
6. Stud wall cavities in the outside walls of building envelope assemblies shall not be utilized as air ~~plenums~~*plenums*.

[BS] 602.4 Flood hazard. For structures located in flood hazard areas, ~~plenum~~*plenum* spaces shall be located above the elevation required by Section 1612 of the *International Building Code* for utilities and attendant equipment or shall be designed and constructed to prevent water from entering or accumulating within the ~~plenum~~*plenum* spaces during floods up to such elevation. If the ~~plenum~~*plenum* spaces are located below the elevation required by Section 1612 of the *International Building Code* for utilities and attendant equipment, they shall be capable of resisting hydrostatic and hydrodynamic loads and stresses, including the effects of buoyancy, during the occurrence of flooding up to such elevation.

SECTION 603
DUCT CONSTRUCTION AND INSTALLATION

603.1 General. An air distribution system shall be designed and installed to supply the required distribution of air. The installation of an air distribution system shall not affect the fire protection requirements specified in the *International Building Code*. Ducts shall be constructed, braced, reinforced and installed to provide structural strength and durability.

603.2 Duct sizing. Ducts installed within a single ~~dwelling unit~~*dwelling unit* shall be sized in accordance with ACCA Manual D, the ~~appliance~~*appliance* manufacturer's installation instructions or other approved methods. Ducts installed within all other buildings shall be sized in accordance with the ASHRAE *Handbook of Fundamentals* or other equivalent computation procedure.

603.3 Duct classification. Ducts shall be classified based on the maximum operating pressure of the duct at pressures of positive or negative 0.5, 1.0, 2.0, 3.0, 4.0, 6.0 or 10.0 inches (1 inch w.c. = 248.7 Pa) of water column. The pressure classification of ducts shall equal or exceed the design pressure of the air distribution in which the ducts are utilized.

603.4 Metallic ducts. Metallic ducts shall be constructed as specified in the SMACNA *HVAC Duct Construction Standards—Metal and Flexible*.

~~**Exception:**~~**Exceptions:**

1. Ducts installed within single *dwelling units* shall have a minimum thickness as specified in Table 603.4.
2. Domestic clothes dryer exhausts shall have a minimum thickness as specified in Section 504.9.1.

TABLE 603.4
DUCT CONSTRUCTION MINIMUM SHEET METAL THICKNESS FOR SINGLE DWELLING UNITS

DUCT SIZE	MINIMUM THICKNESS (inches)	EQUIVALENT GAGE (GALVANIZED)	ALUMINUM MINIMUM THICKNESS (inches) [gage]
Round ducts and enclosed rectangular ducts			
14 inches or less	0.013	30	0.0159 [26 ga]
Over 14 inches	0.016	28	0.0201 [24 ga]
Exposed rectangular ducts			
14 inches or less	0.016	28	0.0201 [24 ga]
Over 14 inches	0.019	26	0.0253 [22 ga]

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

NOTE TO RRC: TABLE 603.4 "DUCT CONSTRUCTION MINIMUM SHEET METAL THICKNESS FOR SINGLE DWELLING UNITS" ABOVE HAS BEEN DELETED AND REPLACED WITH TABLE 603.4 "DUCT CONSTRUCTION MINIMUM SHEET METAL THICKNESS FOR SINGLE DWELLING UNITS[a] " BELOW.

TABLE 603.4
DUCT CONSTRUCTION MINIMUM SHEET METAL THICKNESS FOR SINGLE DWELLING UNITS[a]

ROUND DUCT DIAMETER (inches)	STATIC PRESSURE			
	$^1/_2$-inch water gauge		1-inch water gauge	
	Thickness (inches)		Thickness (inches)	
	Galvanized	Aluminum	Galvanized	Aluminum
< 12	0.013 (30 ga.)	0.018 (24 ga.)	0.013 (30 ga.)	0.018 (24 ga.)
12 to14	0.013 (30 ga.)	0.018 (24 ga.)	0.016 (28 ga.)	0.023 (22 ga.)
15 to 17	0.016 (28 ga.)	0.023 (22 ga.)	0.019 (26 ga.)	0.027 (20 ga.)
18	0.016 (28 ga.)	0.023 (22 ga.)	0.024 (24 ga.)	0.034 (18 ga.)

19 to 20	0.019 (26 ga.)	0.027 (20 ga.)	0.024 (24 ga.)	0.034 (18 ga.)

RECTANGULAR DUCT DIMENSION (inches)	STATIC PRESSURE			
	½-inch water gauge		1-inch water gauge	
	Thickness (inches)		Thickness (inches)	
	Galvanized	Aluminum	Galvanized	Aluminum
≤ 8	0.013 (30 ga.)	0.018 (24 ga.)	0.013 (30 ga.)	0.018 (24 ga.)
9 to 10	0.013 (30 ga.)	0.018 (24 ga.)	0.016 (28 ga.)	0.023 (22 ga.)
11 to 12	0.016 (28 ga.)	0.023 (22 ga.)	0.019 (26 ga.)	0.027 (20 ga.)
13 to 16	0.019 (26 ga.)	0.027 (20 ga.)	0.019 (26 ga.)	0.027 (20 ga.)
17 to 18	0.019 (26 ga.)	0.027 (20 ga.)	0.024 (24 ga.)	0.034 (18 ga.)
19 to 20	0.024 (24 ga.)	0.034 (18 ga.)	0.024 (24 ga.)	0.034 (18 ga.)

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1-inch water gauge = 249 Pa.

a. Ductwork that exceeds 20 inches by dimension or exceeds a pressure of 1-inch water gauge shall be constructed in accordance with SMACNA *HVAC Duct Construction Standards—Metal and Flexible*.

603.4.1 Minimum fasteners. Round metallic ducts shall be mechanically fastened by means of not less than three sheet metal screws or rivets spaced equally around the joint.

Exception: Where a duct connection is made that is partially inaccessible, three screws or rivets shall be equally spaced on the exposed portion so as to prevent a hinge effect.

603.4.2 Duct lap. Crimp joints for round and oval metal ducts shall be lapped not less than 1 inch (25 mm) and the male end of the duct shall extend into the adjoining duct in the direction of airflow.

603.5 Nonmetallic ducts. Nonmetallic ducts shall be constructed with Class 0 or Class 1 duct material and shall comply with UL 181. Fibrous duct construction shall conform to the SMACNA *Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards* or NAIMA *Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards*. The air temperature within nonmetallic ducts shall not exceed 250ºF (121ºC).

603.5.1 Gypsum ducts. The use of gypsum boards to form air shafts (ducts) shall be limited to return air systems where the air temperatures do not exceed 125ºF (52ºC) and the gypsum board surface temperature is maintained above the airstream dew-point temperature. ~~Air~~Supply air ducts formed by gypsum boards shall not be incorporated in air-handling systems utilizing *direct evaporative* ~~evaporative coolers.~~ *cooling* systems.

603.5.2 Phenolic ducts. Nonmetallic phenolic ducts shall be constructed and installed in accordance with the SMACNA *Phenolic Duct Construction Standards*.

603.6 Flexible air ducts and flexible air connectors. Flexible air ducts, both metallic and nonmetallic, shall comply with Sections 603.6.1, 603.6.1.1, 603.6.3 and 603.6.4. Flexible air connectors, both metallic and nonmetallic, shall comply with Sections 603.6.2 through 603.6.4.

603.6.1 Flexible air ducts. Flexible air ducts, both metallic and nonmetallic, shall be tested in accordance with UL 181. Such ducts shall be *listed* and *labeled* as Class 0 or Class 1 flexible air ducts and shall be installed in accordance with Section 304.1.

603.6.1.1 Duct length. Flexible air ducts shall not be limited in length.

603.6.2 Flexible air connectors. Flexible air connectors, both metallic and nonmetallic, shall be tested in accordance with UL 181. Such connectors shall be *listed* and *labeled* as Class 0 or Class 1 flexible air connectors and shall be installed in accordance with Section 304.1.

603.6.2.1 Connector length. Flexible air connectors shall be limited in length to 14 feet (4267 mm).

603.6.2.2 Connector penetration limitations. Flexible air connectors shall not pass through any wall, floor or ceiling.

603.6.3 Air temperature. The design temperature of air to be conveyed in flexible air ducts and flexible air connectors shall be less than 250ºF (121ºC).

603.6.4 Flexible air duct and air connector clearance. Flexible air ducts and air connectors shall be installed with a minimum *clearance* to an *appliance* as specified in the *appliance* manufacturer's installation instructions.

603.7 Rigid duct penetrations. Duct system penetrations of walls, floors, ceilings and roofs and air transfer openings in such building components shall be protected as required by Section 607. Ducts in a private garage that penetrate a wall or ceiling that separates a dwelling ~~unit~~ from a private garage shall be continuous, shall be constructed of sheet steel having a thickness of not less than 0.0187 inch (0.4712 mm) (No. 26 gage) ~~or other approved noncombustible material of equivalent durability~~ and shall not have openings into the garage. Fire and smoke dampers are not required in such ducts passing through the wall or ceiling separating a dwelling ~~unit~~ from a private garage except where required by Chapter 7 of the *International Building Code*.

603.8 Underground ducts. Ducts shall be *approved* for underground installation. Metallic ducts not having an *approved* protective coating shall be completely encased in not less than 2 inches (51 mm) of concrete.

603.8.1 Slope. Ducts shall have a minimum slope of $^1/_8$ inch per foot (10.4 mm/m) to allow drainage to a point provided with access.

603.8.2 Sealing. Ducts shall be ~~sealed and~~sealed, secured and tested prior to ~~pouring the~~ concrete ~~encasement.~~encasement or direct burial. Ducts shall be leak tested as required by Section C403 of the *International Energy Conservation Code*.

603.8.3 Plastic ducts and fittings. Plastic ducts shall be constructed of PVC having a minimum pipe stiffness of 8 psi (55 kPa) at 5-percent deflection when tested in accordance with ASTM D2412. Plastic duct fittings shall be constructed of either PVC or high-density polyethylene. Plastic duct and fittings shall be utilized in underground installations only. The maximum design temperature for systems utilizing plastic duct and fittings shall be 150°F (66°C).

603.9 Joints, seams and connections. ~~All longitudinal~~Longitudinal and transverse joints, seams and connections in metallic and nonmetallic ducts shall be constructed as specified in SMACNA *HVAC Duct Construction Standards—Metal and Flexible* and NAIMA *Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards*. ~~All joints,~~Joints, longitudinal and transverse seams and connections in ductwork shall be securely fastened and sealed with welds, gaskets, mastics (adhesives), mastic-plus-embedded-fabric systems, liquid sealants or tapes. Tapes and mastics used to seal fibrous glass ductwork shall be ~~listed~~*listed* and ~~labeled~~*labeled* in accordance with UL 181A and shall be marked "181 A-P" for pressure-sensitive tape, "181 A-M" for mastic or "181 A-H" for heat-sensitive tape. Tapes and mastics used to seal metallic and flexible air ducts and flexible air connectors shall comply with UL 181B and shall be marked "181 B-FX" for pressure-sensitive tape or "181 B-M" for mastic. Duct connections to flanges of air distribution system ~~equipment~~*equipment* shall be sealed and mechanically fastened. Mechanical fasteners for use with flexible nonmetallic air ducts shall comply with UL 181B and shall be marked "181 B-C." Closure systems used to seal all ductwork shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Unlisted duct tape is not permitted as a sealant on any metal ducts.

~~Exceptions:~~Exception:

~~1.~~ Continuously welded joints and seams in ducts.

~~2. Ducts exposed within the conditioned space that the ducts serve shall not be required to be sealed.~~

603.10 Supports. Ducts shall be supported in accordance with SMACNA *HVAC Duct Construction Standards—Metal and Flexible*. Flexible and other factory-made ducts shall be supported in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

~~**603.10.1 For one- and two-family dwellings and townhouses.** Metal ducts shall be securely supported. Where hung or suspended, metal straps a minimum of 1 inch (25 mm) in width and equivalent to or heavier gage than the duct being supported shall be used. Straps, when used, shall be at maximum 64-inch (1626 mm) intervals and shall be securely attached to the building structure. Straps shall be attached to the duct at a minimum of two points with screws or rivets. Hanger systems shall comply with this section or other approved means.~~
~~Nonmetallic or listed duct systems shall be supported in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.~~
~~All equipment shall be supported independently of the duct system except when the duct is used as a support base.~~
~~When used as a support base, the duct shall be of sufficient strength and designed to support the weight of the unit.~~
~~Listed bases shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.~~

603.11 Furnace connections. Ducts connecting to a furnace shall have a *clearance* to combustibles in accordance with the furnace manufacturer's installation instructions.

603.12 Condensation. Provisions shall be made to prevent the formation of condensation on the exterior of any ~~new~~newly-installed duct. ~~Ducts installed in attics, crawl spaces or outdoors,~~Newly-installed ducts insulated in accordance with ~~Section 403.2.1, or Section 503.2.7 of~~ the *North Carolina Energy Conservation Code* shall be deemed to meet the intent of this section.

[BS] 603.13 Flood hazard areas. For structures in flood hazard areas, ducts shall be located above the elevation required by Section 1612 of the *International Building Code* for utilities and attendant equipment or shall be designed and constructed to prevent water from entering or accumulating within the ducts during floods up to such elevation. If the ducts are located below the elevation required by Section 1612 of the *International Building Code* for utilities and attendant equipment, the ducts shall be capable of resisting hydrostatic and hydrodynamic loads and stresses, including the effects of buoyancy, during the occurrence of flooding up to such elevation.

603.14 Location. Ducts shall not be installed in or within 4 inches (102 mm) of the earth, except where such ducts comply with Section 603.8.

603.15 Mechanical protection. Ducts installed in locations where they are exposed to mechanical damage by vehicles or from other causes shall be protected by *approved* barriers.

603.16 Weather protection. Ducts including linings, coverings and vibration isolation connectors installed on the exterior of the building shall be protected against the elements.

603.17 Air dispersion systems (flexible fabric duct systems). Air dispersion systems shall:

1. Be installed entirely in exposed locations.
2. Be utilized in systems under positive pressure.
3. Not pass through or penetrate fire-resistant-rated construction.
4. Be ~~listed~~*listed* and ~~labeled~~*labeled* in compliance with UL 2518.

603.18 Registers, grilles and diffusers. Duct registers, grilles and diffusers shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Volume dampers or other means of supply air adjustment shall be provided in the branch ducts or at each individual duct register, grille or diffuser. Each volume damper or other means of supply air adjustment used in balancing shall be provided with access.

603.18.1 Floor registers. Floor registers shall resist, without structural failure, a 200-pound (90.8 kg) concentrated load on a 2-inch-diameter (51 mm) disc applied to the most critical area of the exposed face.

603.18.2 Prohibited locations. Diffusers, registers and grilles shall be prohibited in the floor or its upward extension within toilet and bathing rooms required by the *International Building Code* to have smooth, hard, non-absorbent surfaces.

Exception: *Dwelling units*.

~~**603.19 Return air intake (nonengineered systems).** If only one central return air grille is installed, it shall be of a size sufficient to return a volume of air compatible with the cfm requirements and the temperature rise limitations specified by the equipment manufacturer. The face velocity of return air grilles shall not exceed 450 feet per minute (fpm) (2.3 m/s). At least one separate return shall be installed on each level of a multilevel structure. For split-level and split-foyer structures, one return may serve more than one level if located within the split area and the total area of the levels does not exceed 1,600 square feet (148.6 m2). Return air grilles shall not be located in bathrooms. The return air from one residential living unit shall not be mixed with the return air from other living units.~~

~~In dwellings with 1,600 square feet (148.6 m2) or less of conditioned area, a central return is permitted. When the dwelling contains more than 1,600 square feet (148.6 m2) of conditioned area, additional returns shall be provided. Each return shall serve not more than 1,600 square feet (148.6 m2) of area and shall be located in the area it serves. Return air may travel through the living space to the return air grille if there are no restrictions, such as solid doors, to the air movement. Undercut doors are allowed. When panned joists are used for return air, the structural integrity shall be maintained. Air capacity for joists 16 inches (406 mm) on center shall be a maximum of 375 cubic feet per minute (0.177 m3/s) for 8-inch (203 mm) joists and 525 cubic feet per minute (0.248 m3/s) for 10-inch (254 mm) joists. Wiring located in spaces used for return air ducts shall comply with the *North Carolina Electrical Code*.~~

~~**603.20 Under-floor furnace plenums.** Under-floor furnace plenums shall be prohibited in new structures. Modification or repairs to existing under-floor furnace plenums in existing structures shall conform to the requirements of this section.~~

~~**603.20.1 General.** The space shall be cleaned of loose combustible materials and scrap, and shall be tightly enclosed. The ground surface of the space shall be covered with a moisture barrier having a minimum thickness of 4 mils (0.1 mm). Plumbing waste cleanouts shall not be located within the space.~~

~~**603.20.2 Materials.** The under-floor space, including the sidewall insulation, shall be formed by materials having flame spread ratings not greater than 200 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.~~

~~**603.20.3 Furnace connections.** A duct shall extend from the furnace supply outlet to not less than 6 inches (152 mm) below the combustible framing. This duct shall comply with the provisions of Section 603. A noncombustible receptacle shall be installed below any floor opening into the plenum in accordance with the following requirements:~~

~~1. The receptacle shall be securely suspended from the floor members and shall not be more than 18 inches (457 mm) below the floor opening.~~

~~2. The area of the receptacle shall extend 3 inches (76 mm) beyond the opening on all sides.~~

~~3. The perimeter of the receptacle shall have a vertical lip at least 1 inch (25 mm) high at the open sides.~~

~~**603.20.4 Access.** Access to an under-floor furnace plenum shall be provided through an opening in the floor with minimum dimensions of 18 inches by 24 inches (457 mm by 610 mm).~~

~~**603.20.5 Furnace controls.** The furnace shall be equipped with an automatic control that will start the air-circulating fan when the air in the furnace bonnet reaches a temperature not higher than 150°F (66°C). The furnace shall additionally be equipped with an approved automatic control that limits the outlet air temperature to 200°F (93°C).~~

SECTION 604
INSULATION

604.1 General. Duct insulation shall conform to the requirements of Sections 604.2 through 604.13 and the *International Energy Conservation Code*. ~~Replacement or addition of cooling equipment to existing ductwork located in an attic shall require the ductwork to be insulated. Replacement of heating or the addition of cooling equipment in a crawl space or conditioned basement shall not require the existing ductwork to be insulated. Unconditioned basement ductwork shall require insulation with the addition of cooling equipment.~~

604.2 Surface temperature. Ducts that operate at temperatures exceeding 120°F (49°C) shall have sufficient thermal insulation to limit the exposed surface temperature to 120°F (49°C).

604.3 Coverings and linings. ~~Coverings~~Duct coverings and linings, including adhesives where used, shall have a flame spread index not more than 25 and a smoke-developed index not more than 50, when tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723, using the specimen preparation and mounting procedures of ASTM E2231. Duct coverings and linings shall not flame, glow, smolder or smoke when tested in accordance with ASTM C411 at the temperature to which they are exposed in service. The test temperature shall not fall below 250°F (121°C). Coverings and linings shall be ~~listed~~*listed* and ~~labeled~~*labeled*.

Exception: Polyurethane foam insulation that is spray applied to the exterior of ducts in attics and crawl spaces shall be subject to all of the following requirements:

1. The foam plastic insulation shall have a flame spread index not greater than 25 and a smoke-developed index not greater than 450, when tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723, using the specimen preparation and mounting procedures of ASTM E2231.
2. The foam plastic insulation shall not flame, glow, smolder or smoke when tested in accordance with ASTM C411 at the temperature to which they are exposed in service. The test temperature shall not fall below 250°F (121°C).
3. The foam plastic insulation complies with the requirements of Section 2603 of the *International Building Code*.

4. The foam plastic insulation is protected against ignition in accordance with the requirements of Section 2603.4.1.6 of the *International Building Code*.

604.4 Foam plastic insulation. Foam plastic used as duct coverings and linings shall conform to the requirements of Section 604.

~~**Exceptions:** Spray application of polyurethane foam to the exterior of ducts in attics and crawl spaces shall be permitted in one- and two-family dwellings subject to all of the following:~~

~~1. The flame spread index is not greater than 25 and the smoke-developed index is not greater than 450 at the specified installed thickness.~~

~~2. The foam plastic is protected in accordance with the ignition barrier requirements of the *North Carolina Residential Code*, Sections R316.5.3 and R316.5.4.~~

~~3. The foam plastic complies with the requirements of *North Carolina Residential Code*, Section R316.~~

604.5 Appliance insulation. *Listed* and *labeled* ~~appliances~~*appliances* that are internally insulated shall be considered as conforming to the requirements of Section 604.

604.6 Penetration of assemblies. Duct coverings shall not penetrate a wall or floor required to have a fire-resistance rating or required to be fireblocked.

604.7 Identification. External duct insulation, except spray polyurethane foam, and factory-insulated flexible duct shall be legibly printed or identified at intervals not greater than 36 inches (914 mm) with the name of the manufacturer, the thermal resistance *R*-value at the specified installed thickness and the flame spread and smoke-developed ~~indexes~~indices of the composite materials. Duct insulation product *R*-values shall be based on insulation only, excluding air films, vapor retarders or other duct components, and shall be based on tested *C*-values at 75ºF (24ºC) mean temperature at the installed thickness, in accordance with recognized industry procedures. The installed thickness of duct insulation used to determine its *R*-value shall be determined as follows:

1. For duct board, duct liner and factory-made rigid ducts not normally subjected to compression, the nominal insulation thickness shall be used.
2. For duct wrap, the installed thickness shall be assumed to be 75 percent (25 percent compression) of nominal thickness.
3. For factory-made flexible air ducts, the installed thickness shall be determined by dividing the difference between the actual outside diameter and nominal inside diameter by two.
4. For spray polyurethane foam, the aged *R*-value per inch (mm), measured in accordance with recognized industry standards, shall be provided to the customer in writing at the time of foam application.

604.8 Lining installation. Linings shall be interrupted at the area of operation of a fire damper and at not less than 6 inches (152 mm) upstream of and 6 inches (152 mm) downstream of electric-resistance and fuel-burning heaters in a duct system. Metal nosings or sleeves shall be installed over exposed duct liner edges that face opposite the direction of airflow.

604.9 Thermal continuity. Where a duct liner has been interrupted, a duct covering of equal thermal performance shall be installed.

~~**Exception:** See Section 604.6.~~

604.10 Service openings. Service openings shall not be concealed by duct coverings unless the exact location of the opening is properly identified.

604.11 Vapor retarders. Where ducts used for cooling are externally insulated, the insulation shall be covered with a vapor retarder having a maximum permeance of 0.05 perm [2.87 ng/(Pa • s • m^2)] or aluminum foil having a minimum thickness of 2 mils (0.051 mm). Insulations having a permeance of 0.05 perm [2.87 ng/(Pa • s • m^2)] or less shall not be required to be covered. ~~All joints~~Joints and seams shall be sealed to maintain the continuity of the vapor retarder.

Exception: A vapor retarder is not required for spray polyurethane foam insulation having a water vapor permeance of not greater than 3 perms per inch [1722 ng/(s • m^2 • Pa)] at the installed thickness.

604.12 Weatherproof barriers. Insulated exterior ducts shall be protected with an *approved* weatherproof barrier.

604.13 Internal insulation. Materials used as internal insulation and exposed to the airstream in ducts shall be shown to be durable when tested in accordance with UL 181. Exposed internal insulation that is not impermeable to water shall not be used to line ducts or ~~plenums~~*plenums* from the exit of a cooling coil to the downstream end of the drain pan.

SECTION 605
AIR FILTERS

605.1 General. Heating and air-conditioning systems shall be provided with *approved* air filters. Filters shall be installed such that all return air, outdoor air and *makeup air* is filtered upstream from any heat exchanger or coil. Filters shall be installed in an *approved* convenient location. Liquid adhesive coatings used on filters shall have a flash point not lower than 325ºF (163ºC).

605.2 Approval. Media-type and electrostatic-type air filters shall be *listed* and *labeled*. Media-type air filters shall comply with UL 900. ~~High efficiency~~High-efficiency particulate air filters shall comply with UL 586. Electrostatic-type air filters shall comply with UL 867. Air filters utilized within *dwelling units* shall be designed for the intended application and shall not be required to be *listed* and *labeled*.

605.3 Airflow over the filter. Ducts shall be constructed to allow an even distribution of air over the entire filter.

SECTION 606
SMOKE DETECTION SYSTEMS CONTROL

606.1 Controls required. Air distribution systems shall be equipped with smoke detectors *listed* and *labeled* for installation in air distribution systems, as required by this section. Duct smoke detectors shall comply with UL 268A. Other smoke detectors shall comply with UL 268.

606.2 Where required. Smoke detectors shall be installed where indicated in Sections 606.2.1 through 606.2.3.

Exception: Smoke detectors shall not be required where air distribution systems are incapable of spreading smoke beyond the enclosing walls, floors and ceilings of the room or space in which the smoke is generated.

606.2.1 Return air systems. Smoke detectors shall be installed in return air systems with a design capacity greater than 2,000 cfm (0.9 m^3/s), in the return air duct or *plenum* upstream of any filters, *exhaust air* connections, outdoor air connections, or decontamination *equipment* and ~~appliances~~*appliances*.

Exception: Smoke detectors are not required in the return air system where all portions of the building served by the air distribution system are protected by area smoke detectors connected to a fire alarm system in accordance with the *International Fire Code*. The area smoke detection system shall comply with Section 606.4.

606.2.2 Common supply and return air systems. Where multiple air-handling systems share common supply or return air ducts or ~~plenums~~*plenums* with a combined design capacity greater than 2,000 cfm (0.9 m^3/s), the return air system shall be provided with smoke detectors in accordance with Section 606.2.1.

~~**Exceptions:**~~**Exception:** Individual smoke detectors shall not be required for each fan-powered terminal unit, provided that such units do not have an individual design capacity greater than 2,000 cfm (0.9 m^3/s) and will be shut down by activation of one of the following:

~~1. Individual smoke detectors shall not be required for any fan-powered unit serving only one space.~~

~~2. Individual smoke detectors shall not be required for each fan-powered terminal unit, provided that such units do not have an individual design capacity greater than 2,000 cfm (0.9 m3/s) and will be shut down by activation of one of the following:~~

~~2.1~~1. Smoke detectors required by Sections 606.2.1 and 606.2.3.

~~2.2~~2. An *approved* area smoke detector system located in the return air *plenum* serving such units.

~~2.3~~3. An area smoke detector system as prescribed in the exception to Section 606.2.1.

In all cases, the smoke detectors shall comply with Sections 606.4 and 606.4.1.

606.2.3 Return air risers. Where return air risers serve two or more stories and serve any portion of a return air system having a design capacity greater than 15,000 cfm (7.1 m^3/s), smoke detectors shall be installed at each story. Such smoke detectors shall be located upstream of the connection between the return air riser and any air ducts or ~~plenums~~*plenums*.

[F] 606.3 Installation. Smoke detectors required by this section shall be installed in accordance with NFPA 72. The required smoke detectors shall be installed to monitor the entire airflow conveyed by the system including return air and exhaust or relief air. Access shall be provided to smoke detectors for inspection and maintenance.

[F] 606.4 Controls operation. Upon activation, the smoke detectors shall shut down all operational capabilities of the air distribution system in accordance with the listing and labeling of ~~appliances~~*appliances* used in the system. Air distribution systems that are part of a smoke control system shall switch to the smoke control mode upon activation of a detector.

[F] 606.4.1 Supervision. The duct smoke detectors shall be connected to a fire alarm system where a fire alarm system is required by Section 907.2 of the *International Fire Code*. The actuation of a duct smoke detector shall activate a visible and audible supervisory signal at a constantly attended location. In facilities that are required to be monitored by a supervising station, duct smoke detectors shall report only as a supervisory signal, not as a fire alarm.

Exceptions:

1. The supervisory signal at a constantly attended location is not required where the duct smoke detector activates the building's alarm-indicating ~~appliances~~*appliances*.
2. In ~~occupancies~~*occupancies* not required to be equipped with a fire alarm system, actuation of a smoke detector shall activate a visible and audible signal in an *approved* location. Duct smoke detector trouble conditions shall activate a visible or audible signal in an *approved* location and shall be identified as air duct detector trouble.

SECTION 607
DUCT AND TRANSFER OPENINGS

[BF] 607.1 General. The provisions of this section shall govern the protection of duct penetrations and air transfer openings in assemblies required to be protected.

[BF] 607.1.1 Ducts ~~and air transfer openings.~~between shafts. Ducts transitioning horizontally between shafts shall not require a shaft enclosure provided that the duct penetration into each associated shaft is protected with dampers complying with this section.

[BF] 607.1.2 Ducts that penetrate fire-resistance-rated assemblies without dampers. Ducts that penetrate fire-resistance-rated ~~assemblies~~walls and are not required by this section to have dampers shall comply with the requirements of Sections ~~714.2~~714.3 through ~~714.3.3~~714.4.3 of the *International Building Code*. Ducts that penetrate horizontal assemblies not required to be contained within a shaft and not required by this section to have fire dampers shall comply with the requirements of ~~Sections 714.4~~Section 714.5 of the *International Building Code*.

[BF] 607.1.2.1 Ducts that penetrate nonfire-resistance-rated assemblies. The space around a duct penetrating a nonfire-resistance-rated floor assembly shall comply with Section 717.6.3 of the *International Building Code*.

[BF] 607.2 Installation. Fire dampers, smoke dampers, combination fire/smoke dampers and ceiling radiation dampers located within air distribution and smoke control systems shall be installed in accordance with ~~the requirements of this section, and~~ the manufacturer's ~~instructions and listing.~~instructions, the dampers' listing and Sections 607.2.1 through 607.2.3.

[BF] 607.2.1 Smoke control system. Where the installation of a fire damper will interfere with the operation of a required smoke control system in accordance with Section 909 of the *International Building Code*, *approved* alternative protection shall be used. Where mechanical systems including ducts and dampers used for normal building ventilation serve as part of the smoke control system, the expected performance of these systems in smoke control mode shall be addressed in the rational analysis required by Section 909.4 of the *International Building Code*.

607.2.2 Hazardous exhaust ducts. Fire dampers for hazardous exhaust duct systems shall comply with Section 510.

[BF] 607.2.3 Static dampers. Fire dampers and ceiling radiation dampers that are listed for use in static systems shall be installed only in heating, ventilation and air-conditioning systems that are automatically shut down in the event of a fire.

[BF] 607.3 Damper testing, ratings and actuation. Damper testing, ratings and actuation shall be in accordance with Sections 607.3.1 through ~~607.3.3.~~607.3.3.5.

[BF] 607.3.1 Damper testing. *Dampers* shall be ~~listed~~*listed* and ~~labeled~~*labeled* in accordance with the standards in this section. *Fire dampers* shall comply with the requirements of UL 555. ~~Only *fire dampers* and ceiling radiation dampers labeled for use in dynamic systems shall be installed in heating, ventilating and air-conditioning systems designed to operate with fans on during a fire.~~ *Smoke dampers* shall comply with the requirements of UL 555S. *Combination fire/smoke dampers* shall comply with the requirements of both UL 555 and UL 555S. *Ceiling radiation dampers* shall comply with the requirements of UL 555C or shall be tested as part of a fire-resistance-rated floor/ceiling or roof/ceiling assembly in accordance with ASTM E119 or UL 263. Corridor dampers shall comply with requirements of both UL 555 and UL 555S. Corridor dampers shall demonstrate acceptable closure performance when subjected to 150 feet per minute (0.76 m/s) velocity across the face of the damper using the UL 555 fire exposure test.

[BF] 607.3.2 Damper rating. Damper ratings shall be in accordance with Sections 607.3.2.1 through 607.3.2.4.

[BF] 607.3.2.1 Fire damper ratings. Fire dampers shall have the minimum ~~fire protection~~ rating specified in Table ~~607.3.2.1~~607.3.2.1. ~~for the type of penetration~~.

[BF] TABLE 607.3.2.1
FIRE DAMPER RATING

TYPE OF PENETRATION	MINIMUM DAMPER RATING (hour)
Less than 3-hour fire-resistance-rated assemblies	$1^{1}/_{2}$
3-hour or greater fire-resistance-rated assemblies	3

[BF] 607.3.2.2 Smoke damper ratings. Smoke damper leakage ratings shall be Class I or II. Elevated temperature ratings shall be not less than 250°F (121°C).

[BF] 607.3.2.3 Combination fire/smoke damper ratings. Combination fire/smoke dampers shall have the minimum fire protection rating specified for fire dampers in Table 607.3.2.1 ~~for the type of penetration~~ and shall have ~~a~~the minimum ~~smoke damper~~ rating ~~as~~ specified for smoke dampers in Section 607.3.2.2.

[BF] 607.3.2.4 Corridor damper ratings. Corridor dampers shall have the following minimum ratings:

1. ~~One hour~~One-hour fire-resistance rating.
2. Class I or II leakage rating as specified in Section 607.3.2.2.

[BF] 607.3.3 Damper actuation. Damper actuation shall be in accordance with Sections 607.3.3.1 through ~~607.3.3.4~~607.3.3.5 as applicable.

[BF] 607.3.3.1 Fire damper actuation.~~actuation device.~~ ~~The fire damper actuation device~~Primary heat-responsive devices used to actuate fire dampers shall meet one of the following requirements:

1. The operating temperature shall be approximately 50°F (28°C) above the normal temperature within the duct system, but not less than 160°F (71°C).
2. The operating temperature shall be not more than 350°F (177°C) where located in a smoke control system complying with Section 909 of the *International Building Code*.

[BF] 607.3.3.2 Smoke damper actuation. The smoke damper shall close upon actuation of a *listed* smoke detector or detectors installed in accordance with Section 907.3 of the *International Building Code* and one of the following methods, as applicable:

1. Where a smoke damper is installed within a duct, a smoke detector shall be installed inside the duct or outside the duct with sampling tubes protruding into the duct. The detector or tubes within the duct shall be within 5 feet (1524 mm) of the damper. Air outlets and inlets shall not be located between the detector or tubes and the damper.

The detector shall be *listed* for the air velocity, temperature and humidity anticipated at the point where it is installed. Other than in mechanical smoke control systems, dampers shall be closed upon fan shutdown where local smoke detectors require a minimum velocity to operate.

2. Where a smoke damper is installed above smoke barrier doors in a smoke barrier, a spot-type detector shall be installed on either side of the smoke barrier door opening. The detector shall be listed for releasing service if used for direct interface with the damper.
3. Where a smoke damper is installed within an unducted opening in a wall, a spot-type detector shall be installed within 5 feet (1524 mm) horizontally of the damper. The detector shall be listed for releasing service if used for direct interface with the damper.
4. Where a smoke damper is installed in a corridor wall or ceiling, the damper shall be permitted to be controlled by a smoke detection system installed in the corridor.
5. Where a smoke detection system is installed in all areas served by the duct in which the damper will be located, the smoke dampers shall be permitted to be controlled by the smoke detection system.

[BF] 607.3.3.3 Combination fire/smoke damper actuation. Combination fire/smoke damper actuation shall be in accordance with Sections 607.3.3.1 and 607.3.3.2. Combination fire/smoke dampers installed in smoke control system shaft penetrations shall not be activated by local area smoke detection unless it is secondary to the smoke management system controls.

[BF] 607.3.3.4 Ceiling radiation damper actuation. The operating temperature of a ceiling radiation damper actuation device shall be 50°F (28°C) above the normal temperature within the duct system, but not less than 160°F (71°C).

[BF] 607.3.3.5 Corridor damper actuation. Corridor damper actuation shall be in accordance with Sections 607.3.3.1 and 607.3.3.2.

[BF] 607.4 Access and identification. ~~Fire~~Access and identification of fire and smoke dampers shall ~~be provided with an approved means of access, large enough to permit inspection and maintenance of the damper and its operating parts. The access shall not affect the integrity of fire-resistance-rated assemblies. The access openings shall not reduce the fire-resistance rating of the assembly. Access points shall be permanently identified on the exterior by a label having letters not less than 0.5 inch (12.7 mm) in height reading: FIRE/SMOKE DAMPER, SMOKE DAMPER or FIRE DAMPER. Access doors in ducts shall be tight fitting and suitable for the required duct construction.~~comply with Sections 607.4.1 through 607.4.2.

[BF] 607.4.1 Access. Fire and smoke dampers shall be provided with an *approved* means of access that is large enough to permit inspection and maintenance of the damper and its operating parts. Dampers equipped with fusible links, internal operators or both shall be provided with an access door that is not less than 12 inches (305 mm) square or provided with a removable duct section.

[BF] 607.4.1.1 Fire-resistance rating. The access shall not affect the integrity of fire-resistance-rated assemblies. The access openings shall not reduce the fire-resistance rating of the assembly. Access doors in ducts shall be tight fitting and suitable for the required duct construction.

[BF] 607.4.1.2 Restricted access. Where space constraints or physical barriers restrict access to a damper for periodic inspection and testing, the damper shall be a single- or multi-blade damper and shall comply with the remote inspection requirements of NFPA 80 or NFPA 105.

[BF] 607.4.2 Identification. Access points shall be permanently identified on the exterior by a label having letters not less than $^1/_2$ inch (12.7 mm) in height reading: FIRE/SMOKE DAMPER, SMOKE DAMPER or FIRE DAMPER.

[BF] 607.5 Where required.~~Location and installation.~~ Fire dampers, smoke dampers, combination fire/smoke dampers, ceiling radiation dampers and corridor dampers shall be provided at the locations prescribed in Sections 607.5.1 through 607.5.7 and shall be shown and identified on the building plans by the designer. Where an assembly is required to have both fire dampers and smoke dampers, combination fire/smoke dampers or a fire damper and smoke damper shall be provided.

[BF] 607.5.1 Fire walls. Ducts and air transfer openings permitted in fire walls in accordance with Section 706.11 of the *International Building Code* shall be protected with *listed* fire dampers installed in accordance with their listing.

[BF] 607.5.1.1 Horizontal exits. A *listed smoke damper* designed to resist the passage of smoke shall be provided at each point that a duct or air transfer opening penetrates a *fire wall* that serves as a horizontal *exit.*

[BF] 607.5.2 Fire barriers. Ducts and air transfer openings that penetrate fire barriers shall be protected with *listed* fire dampers installed in accordance with their listing. Ducts and air transfer openings shall not penetrate enclosures for interior exit stairways and ramps and exit passageways except as permitted by Sections 1023.5 and 1024.6, respectively, of the *International Building Code*.

Exception: Fire dampers are not required at penetrations of fire barriers where any of the following apply:

1. Penetrations are tested in accordance with ASTM E119 or UL 263 as part of the fire-resistance-rated assembly.
2. Ducts are used as part of an *approved* smoke control system in accordance with Section 513 and where the fire damper would interfere with the operation of the smoke control system.
3. Such walls are penetrated by fully ducted HVAC systems, have a required fire-resistance rating of 1 hour or less, are in areas of other than Group H and are in buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2 of the *International Building Code*. For the purposes of this exception, a fully ducted HVAC system shall be a duct system for the structure's HVAC system. Such a duct system shall be constructed of sheet steel not less than 26 gage [0.0217 inch (0.55 mm)] thickness and shall be continuous from the air-handling *appliance* or *equipment* to the air outlet and inlet terminals. Flexible air connectors shall be permitted in a fully ducted system, limited to the following installations:
   3.1. Nonmetallic flexible connections that connect a duct to an air handling unit or *equipment* located within a mechanical room in accordance with Section 603.9.
   3.2. Nonmetallic flexible air connectors in accordance with Section 603.6.2 that connect an overhead metal duct to a ceiling diffuser where the metal duct and ceiling diffuser are located within the same room.

[BF] 607.5.2.1 Horizontal exits. A *listed smoke damper* designed to resist the passage of smoke shall be provided at each point that a duct or air transfer opening penetrates a *fire barrier* that serves as a horizontal *exit*.

[BF] 607.5.3 Fire partitions. Ducts and air transfer openings that penetrate fire partitions shall be protected with *listed* fire dampers installed in accordance with their listing.

Exception: In ~~occupancies~~*occupancies* other than Group H, fire dampers are not required where any of the following apply:

1. Corridor walls in buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2 of the *International Building Code* and the duct is protected as a through penetration in accordance with Section 714 of the *International Building Code*.
2. The partitions are tenant partitions in covered and open mall buildings where the walls are not required by provisions elsewhere in the *International Building Code* to extend to the underside of the floor or roof sheathing, slab or deck above.
3. The duct system is constructed of *approved* materials in accordance with Section 603 and the duct penetrating the wall complies with all of the following requirements:
   3.1. The duct shall not exceed 100 square inches (0.06 m^2).
   3.2. The duct shall be constructed of steel not less than 0.0217 inch (0.55 mm) in thickness.
   3.3. The duct shall not have openings that communicate the corridor with adjacent spaces or rooms.
   3.4. The duct shall be installed above a ceiling.
   3.5. The duct shall not terminate at a wall register in the fire-resistance-rated wall.
   3.6. A minimum 12-inch-long (305 mm) by 0.060-inch-thick (1.52 mm) steel sleeve shall be centered in each duct opening. The sleeve shall be secured to both sides of the wall and all four sides of the sleeve with minimum $1^1/_2$-inch by $1^1/_2$-inch by 0.060-inch (38 mm by 38 mm by 1.52 mm) steel retaining angles. The retaining angles shall be secured to the sleeve and the wall with No. 10 (M5) screws. The annular space between the steel sleeve and the wall opening shall be filled with rock (mineral) wool batting on all sides.
4. Such walls are penetrated by ducted HVAC systems, have a required fire-resistance rating of 1 hour or less, and are in areas of other than Group H and are in buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in

accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2 of the *International Building Code*. For the purposes of this exception, a ducted HVAC system shall be a duct system for conveying supply, return or ~~exhaust air~~*exhaust air* as part of the structure's HVAC system. Such a duct system shall be constructed of sheet steel not less than 26 gage in thickness and shall be continuous from the air-handling ~~appliance~~*appliance* or ~~equipment~~*equipment* to the air outlet and inlet terminals.

[BF] 607.5.4 Corridors/smoke barriers. A *listed* smoke damper designed to resist the passage of smoke shall be provided at each point a duct or air transfer opening penetrates a smoke barrier wall or a corridor enclosure required to have smoke and draft control doors in accordance with the *International Building Code*.

A corridor damper shall be provided where corridor ceilings, constructed as required for the corridor walls as permitted in Section 708.4, Exception 3, of the *International Building Code*, are penetrated.

A ceiling radiation damper shall be provided where the ceiling membrane of a fire-resistance-rated floor/ceiling or roof/ceiling assembly, constructed as permitted in Section 708.4, Exception 2, of the *International Building Code*, is penetrated.

Smoke dampers and smoke damper actuation methods shall comply with Section 607.5.4.1.

Exceptions:

1. Smoke dampers are not required in corridor penetrations where the building is equipped throughout with an *approved* smoke control system in accordance with Section 513 and smoke dampers are not necessary for the operation and control of the system.
2. Smoke dampers are not required in smoke barrier penetrations where the openings in ducts are limited to a single smoke compartment and the ducts are constructed of steel.
3. Smoke dampers are not required in corridor penetrations where the duct is constructed of steel not less than 0.019 inch (0.48 mm) in thickness and there are no openings serving the corridor.
4. Smoke dampers are not required in smoke barriers required by Section 407.5 of the *International Building Code* for Group ~~I-2~~I-2, Condition 2 where the HVAC system is fully ducted in accordance with Section 603 and where buildings are equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 of the *International Building Code* and equipped with quick-response sprinklers in accordance with Section 903.3.2 of the *International Building Code*.

[BF] 607.5.4.1 Smoke damper. Smoke dampers shall close as required by Section 607.3.3.2.

[BF] 607.5.5 Shaft enclosures. Shaft enclosures that are permitted to be penetrated by ducts and air transfer openings shall be protected with ~~*approved*~~listed fire and smoke dampers installed in accordance with their listing.

Exceptions:

1. Fire dampers are not required at penetrations of shafts where any of the following apply:
   - 1.1. Steel exhaust subducts having a wall thickness of not less than 0.0187 inch (0.4712 mm) extend not less than 22 inches (559 mm) vertically in exhaust shafts ~~provided that there is a continuous airflow upward to the outdoors.~~and an exhaust fan is installed at the upper terminus of the shaft that is powered continuously, in accordance with Section 909.11 of the *International Building Code*, so as to maintain a continuous airflow upward to the outdoors.
   - 1.2. Penetrations are tested in accordance with ASTM E119 or UL 263 as part of the fire-resistance-rated assembly.
   - 1.3. Ducts are used as part of an *approved* smoke control system in accordance with Section 909 of the *International Building Code*, and where the fire damper will interfere with the operation of the smoke control system.
   - 1.4. The penetrations are in parking garage exhaust or supply shafts that are separated from other building shafts by not less than 2-hour fire-resistance-rated construction.
2. In Group B and R ~~occupancies~~*occupancies* equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 of the *International Building Code*, smoke dampers are not required at penetrations of

shafts where kitchen, clothes dryer, bathroom and toilet room exhaust openings with steel exhaust subducts, having a ~~minimum~~wall thickness of not less than 0.0187 inch ~~(0.4712 mm)~~ (0.4712 mm), ~~(No. 26 gage),~~ extend not less than 22 inches (559 mm) vertically and the exhaust fan at the upper terminus is powered continuously in accordance with the provisions of Section 909.11 of the *International Building Code*, and maintains airflow upward to the outdoors.

3. Smoke dampers are not required at penetrations of exhaust or supply shafts in parking garages that are separated from other building shafts by not less than 2-hour fire-resistance-rated construction.
4. Smoke dampers are not required at penetrations of shafts where ducts are used as part of an *approved* mechanical smoke control system designed in accordance with Section 909 of the *International Building Code* and where the smoke damper will interfere with the operation of the smoke control system.
5. Fire dampers and combination fire/smoke dampers are not required in kitchen and clothes dryer exhaust systems ~~installed in accordance with~~where dampers are prohibited by this code.

[BF] 607.5.5.1 Continuous upward flow. Fire dampers and smoke dampers shall not be installed in shafts that are required to maintain continuous airflow upward where closure of the damper would result in the loss of airflow.

[BF] ~~607.5.5.1~~607.5.5.2 Enclosure at the bottom. Shaft enclosures that do not extend to the bottom of the building or structure shall be protected in accordance with Section 713.11 of the *International Building Code*.

[BF] 607.5.6 Exterior walls. Ducts and air transfer openings in fire-resistance-rated exterior walls required to have protected openings in accordance with Section 705.10 of the *International Building Code* shall be protected with *listed* fire dampers installed in accordance with their listing.

[BF] 607.5.7 Smoke partitions. A *listed* smoke damper designed to resist the passage of smoke shall be provided at each point where an air transfer opening penetrates a smoke partition. Smoke dampers and smoke damper actuation methods shall comply with Section 607.3.3.2.

Exception: Where the installation of a smoke damper will interfere with the operation of a required smoke control system in accordance with Section 513, *approved* alternative protection shall be used.

[BF] 607.6 Horizontal assemblies. Penetrations by air ducts of a floor, floor/ceiling assembly or the ceiling membrane of a roof/ceiling assembly shall be protected by a shaft enclosure that complies with Section 713 and Sections 717.6.1 through 717.6.3 of the *International Building Code* or shall comply with Sections 607.6.1 through 607.6.3.

[BF] 607.6.1 Through penetrations. In ~~occupancies~~*occupancies* other than Groups I-2 and I-3, a duct constructed of *approved* materials in accordance with Section 603 that penetrates a fire-resistance-rated floor/ceiling assembly that connects not more than two stories is permitted without shaft enclosure protection provided that a *listed* fire damper is installed at the floor line or the duct is protected in accordance with Section ~~714.4~~714.5 of the *International Building Code*. For air transfer openings, see Item 6, Section 712.1.9 of the *International Building Code*.

Exception: A duct is permitted to penetrate three floors or less without a fire damper at each floor provided that it meets all of the following requirements:

1. The duct shall be contained and located within the cavity of a wall and shall be constructed of steel having a minimum thickness of 0.0187 inch (0.4712 mm) (No. 26 gage).
2. The duct shall open into only one *dwelling unit* or *sleeping unit* and the duct system shall be continuous from the unit to the exterior of the building.
3. The duct shall not exceed a 4-inch (102 mm) nominal diameter and the total area of such ducts shall not exceed 100 square inches for any 100 square feet (64 516 mm^2 per 9.3 m^2) of the floor area.
4. The annular space around the duct is protected with materials that prevent the passage of flame and hot gases sufficient to ignite cotton waste when subjected to ASTM E119 or UL 263 time-temperature conditions under a minimum positive pressure differential of 0.01 inch (2.49 Pa) of water at the location of the penetration for the time period equivalent to the fire-resistance rating of the construction penetrated.
5. Grille openings located in a ceiling of a fire-resistance-rated floor/ceiling or roof/ceiling assembly shall be protected with a *listed* ceiling radiation damper installed in accordance with Section 607.6.2.1.

[BF] 607.6.2 Membrane penetrations. Ducts and air transfer openings constructed of *approved* materials, in accordance with Section 603, that penetrate the ceiling membrane of a fire-resistance-rated floor/ceiling or roof/ceiling assembly shall be protected with one of the following:

1. A shaft enclosure in accordance with Section 713 of the *International Building Code*.
2. A *listed* ceiling radiation damper installed at the ceiling line where a duct penetrates the ceiling of a fire-resistance-rated floor/ceiling or roof/ceiling assembly.

   Exceptions:

   1. A fire-resistance-rated assembly tested in accordance with ASTM E119 or UL 263 showing that ceiling radiation dampers are not required in order to maintain the fire-resistance rating of the assembly.
   2. Where exhaust duct or outdoor air duct penetrations are protected in accordance with Section 714.5.1.2 of the *International Building Code*, are located within the cavity of a wall and do not pass through another *dwelling unit* or tenant space.
   3. Where duct and air transfer openings are protected with a duct outlet penetration system tested as part of a fire-resistance-rated assembly in accordance with ASTM E119 or UL 263.
3. A *listed* ceiling radiation damper installed at the ceiling line where a diffuser with no duct attached penetrates the ceiling of a fire-resistance-rated floor/ceiling or roof/ceiling assembly.

   Exceptions:

   1. A fire-resistance-rated assembly tested in accordance with ASTM E119 or UL 263 showing that ceiling radiation dampers are not required in order to maintain the fire-resistance rating of the assembly.
   2. Where duct and air transfer openings are protected with a duct outlet penetration system tested as part of a fire-resistance-rated assembly in accordance with ASTM E119 or UL 263.

[BF] 607.6.2.1 Ceiling radiation ~~dampers.~~dampers testing and installation. *Ceiling radiation dampers* shall be tested in accordance with Section 607.3.1. *Ceiling radiation dampers* shall be installed in accordance with the details listed in the fire-resistance-rated assembly and the manufacturer's installation instructions and the listing. ~~*Ceiling radiation dampers* are not required where any of the following apply:~~

~~1. Tests in accordance with ASTM E119 or UL 263 have shown that ceiling radiation dampers are not necessary to maintain the fire-resistance rating of the assembly.~~
~~2. Where exhaust duct penetrations are protected in accordance with Section 714.4.1.2 of the *International Building Code*, are located within the cavity of a wall, and do not pass through another dwelling unit or tenant space.~~
~~3. Where duct and air transfer openings are protected with a duct outlet protection system tested as part of a fire-resistance-rated assembly in accordance with ASTM E119 or UL 263.~~

[BF] 607.6.2.1.1 Dynamic systems. Ceiling radiation dampers installed in heating, ventilation and air-conditioning systems designed to operate with fans on during a fire shall be labelled for use in dynamic systems.

[BF] 607.6.2.1.2 Static systems. Static ceiling radiation dampers shall be installed only in systems that are not designed to operate during a fire.

Exceptions:

1. Where a static ceiling radiation damper is installed at the opening of a duct, a smoke detector shall be installed inside the duct or outside the duct with sampling tubes protruding into the duct. The detector or tubes within the duct shall be within 5 feet (1524 mm) of the damper. Air outlets and inlets shall not be located between the detector or tubes and the damper. The detector shall be listed for the air velocity, temperature and humidity anticipated at the point where it is installed. Other than in mechanical smoke control systems, dampers shall be closed upon fan shutdown where local smoke detectors require a minimum velocity to operate.
2. Where a static ceiling radiation damper is installed in a ceiling, the ceiling radiation damper shall be permitted to be controlled by a smoke detection system installed within the same room or area as the ceiling radiation damper.

3. A static ceiling radiation damper shall be permitted to be installed within a room where an occupant sensor is provided within the room that will shut down the system.

[BF] 607.6.3 Nonfire-resistance-rated floor assemblies. Duct systems constructed of approved materials in accordance with Section 603 that penetrate nonfire-resistance-rated floor assemblies shall be protected by any of the following methods:

1. A shaft enclosure in accordance with Section 713 of the *International Building Code*.
2. The duct connects not more than two stories, and the annular space around the penetrating duct is protected with an *approved* noncombustible material that resists the free passage of flame and the products of *combustion*.
3. In floor assemblies composed of noncombustible materials, a shaft shall not be required where the duct connects not more than three stories, and the annular space around the penetrating duct is protected with an approved noncombustible material that resists the free passage of flame and the products of combustion and a fire damper is installed at each floor line.

Exception: Fire dampers are not required in ducts within individual residential *dwelling units*.

[BF] 607.7 Flexible ducts and air connectors. Flexible ducts and air connectors shall not pass through any fire-resistance-rated assembly.

SECTION 608
BALANCING

608.1 Balancing. Air distribution, ventilation and exhaust systems shall be provided with means to adjust the system to achieve the design airflow rates and shall be balanced by an *approved* method. Ventilation air distribution shall be balanced by an *approved* method and such balancing shall verify that the air distribution system is capable of supplying and exhausting the airflow rates required by Chapter 4.

CHAPTER 7
COMBUSTION AIR

SECTION 701
GENERAL

701.1 Scope. Solid fuel-burning *appliances* shall be provided with *combustion air* in accordance with the ~~appliance~~*appliance* manufacturer's installation instructions. Oil-fired *appliances* shall be provided with *combustion air* in accordance with NFPA 31. The methods of providing *combustion air* in this chapter do not apply to fireplaces, fireplace stoves and direct-vent *appliances*. The requirements for combustion and dilution air for gas-fired *appliances* shall be in accordance with the *International Fuel Gas Code*.

701.2 Dampered openings. Where combustion air openings are provided with volume, smoke or fire dampers, the dampers shall be interlocked with the firing cycle of the ~~appliances~~*appliances* served, so as to prevent operation of any ~~appliance~~*appliance* that draws combustion air from the room or space when any of the dampers are closed. Manual dampers shall not be installed in combustion air ducts. Ducts not provided with dampers and that pass through rated construction shall be enclosed in a shaft in accordance with the *International Building Code*.

CHAPTER 8
CHIMNEYS AND VENTS

SECTION 801
GENERAL

801.1 Scope. This chapter shall govern the installation, maintenance, repair and approval of factory-built *chimneys*, *chimney* liners, vents and connectors. This chapter shall govern the utilization of masonry ~~chimneys~~*chimneys*. Gas-fired *appliances* shall be vented in accordance with the *International Fuel Gas Code*.

801.2 General. Every fuel-burning *appliance* shall discharge the products of *combustion* to a vent, factory-built *chimney* or masonry *chimney*, except for *appliances* vented in accordance with Section 804. The *chimney* or vent shall be designed for the type of *appliance* being vented.

~~**Exceptions:**~~**Exception:** Commercial cooking *appliances* vented by a Type I hood installed in accordance with Section 507.

1. ~~Commercial cooking *appliances* vented by a Type I hood installed in accordance with Section 507.~~
2. ~~Residential appliances installed in accordance with their listing.~~

801.2.1 Oil-fired appliances. Oil-fired *appliances* shall be vented in accordance with this code and NFPA 31.

801.3 Masonry chimneys. Masonry *chimneys* shall be constructed in accordance with the *International Building Code*.

801.4 Positive flow. Venting systems shall be designed and constructed so as to develop a positive flow adequate to convey all *combustion* products to the outside atmosphere.

801.5 Design. Venting systems shall be designed in accordance with this chapter or shall be *approved* engineered systems.

801.6 Minimum size of chimney or vent. Except as otherwise provided for in this chapter, the size of the *chimney* or vent, serving a single *appliance*, except engineered systems, shall have a minimum area equal to the area of the *appliance* connection.

801.7 Solid fuel appliance flues. The cross-sectional area of a flue serving a solid-fuel-burning *appliance* shall be not greater than three times the cross-sectional area of the *appliance* flue collar or flue outlet.

801.8 Abandoned inlet openings. Abandoned inlet openings in ~~chimneys~~*chimneys* and vents shall be closed by an *approved* method.

801.9 Positive pressure. Where an *appliance* equipped with a forced or induced draft system creates a positive pressure in the venting system, the venting system shall be designed and *listed* for positive pressure applications.

801.10 Connection to fireplace. Connection of *appliances* to *chimney* flues serving fireplaces shall be in accordance with Sections 801.10.1 through 801.10.3.

801.10.1 Closure and access. A noncombustible seal shall be provided below the point of connection to prevent entry of room air into the flue. Means shall be provided for *access* to the flue for inspection and cleaning.

801.10.2 Connection to factory-built fireplace flue. An *appliance* shall not be connected to a flue serving a factory-built fireplace unless the *appliance* is specifically *listed* for such installation. The connection shall be made in accordance with the *appliance* manufacturer's installation instructions.

801.10.3 Connection to masonry fireplace flue. A connector shall extend from the *appliance* to the flue serving a masonry fireplace such that the flue gases are exhausted directly into the flue. The connector shall be provided with access or shall be removable for inspection and cleaning of both the connector and the flue. *Listed* direct connection devices shall be installed in accordance with their listing.

801.11 Multiple solid fuel prohibited. A solid fuel-burning *appliance* or fireplace shall not connect to a *chimney* passageway venting another *appliance*.

801.12 Chimney entrance. Connectors shall connect to a *chimney* flue at a point not less than 12 inches (305 mm) above the lowest portion of the interior of the *chimney* flue.

801.13 Cleanouts. Masonry *chimney* flues shall be provided with a cleanout opening having a minimum height of 6 inches (152 mm). The upper edge of the opening shall be located not less than 6 inches (152 mm) below the lowest *chimney* inlet opening. The cleanout shall be provided with a tight-fitting, noncombustible cover.

Exception: Cleanouts shall not be required for *chimney* flues serving masonry fireplaces, if such flues are provided with access through the fireplace opening.

801.14 Connections to exhauster. *Appliance* connections to a *chimney* or vent equipped with a power exhauster shall be made on the inlet side of the exhauster. Joints and piping on the positive pressure side of the exhauster shall be *listed* for positive pressure applications as specified by the manufacturer's installation instructions for the exhauster.

801.15 Fuel-fired appliances. Masonry chimneys utilized to vent fuel-fired *appliances* shall be located, constructed and sized as specified in the manufacturer's installation instructions for the *appliances* being vented.

801.16 Flue lining. Masonry chimneys shall be lined. The lining material shall be compatible with the type of *appliance* connected, in accordance with the *appliance* listing and manufacturer's installation instructions. *Listed* materials used as flue linings shall be installed in accordance with their listings and the manufacturer's instructions.

801.16.1 Residential and low-heat appliances (general). Flue lining systems for use with residential-type and low-heat ~~appliances~~*appliances* shall be limited to the following:

1. Clay flue lining complying with the requirements of ASTM C315 or equivalent. Clay flue lining shall be installed in accordance with the *International Building Code*.
2. *Listed* and *labeled chimney* lining systems complying with UL 1777.
3. Other *approved* materials that will resist, without cracking, softening or corrosion, flue gases and condensate at temperatures up to 1,800°F (982°C).

801.17 Space around lining. The space surrounding a flue lining system or other vent installed within a masonry *chimney* shall not be used to vent any other *appliance*. This shall not prevent the installation of a separate flue lining in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions and this code.

801.18 Existing chimneys and vents. Where an *appliance* is permanently disconnected from an existing *chimney* or vent, or where an *appliance* is connected to an existing *chimney* or vent during the process of a new installation, the *chimney* or vent shall comply with Sections 801.18.1 through 801.18.4.

801.18.1 Size. The *chimney* or vent shall be resized as necessary to control flue gas condensation in the interior of the *chimney* or vent and to provide the *appliance* or *appliances* served with the required draft. For the venting of oil-fired *appliances* to masonry ~~chimneys~~*chimneys*, the resizing shall be in accordance with NFPA 31.

801.18.2 Flue passageways. The flue gas passageway shall be free from obstructions and combustible deposits and shall be cleaned if previously used for venting a solid or liquid fuel-burning *appliance* or fireplace. The flue liner, *chimney* inner wall or vent inner wall shall be continuous and shall be free from cracks, gaps, perforations or other damage or deterioration ~~which~~that would allow the escape of *combustion* products, including gases, moisture and creosote. Where an oil-fired *appliance* is connected to an existing masonry *chimney*, such *chimney* flue shall be repaired or relined in accordance with NFPA 31.

801.18.3 Cleanout. Masonry ~~chimneys~~*chimneys* shall be provided with a cleanout opening complying with Section 801.13.

801.18.4 Clearances. ~~Chimneys~~*Chimneys* and vents shall have airspace *clearance* to combustibles in accordance with the *International Building Code* and the *chimney* or vent manufacturer's installation instructions.

Exception: Masonry chimneys without the required airspace *clearances* shall be permitted to be used if lined or relined with a *chimney* lining system *listed* for use in chimneys with reduced *clearances* in accordance with UL 1777. The *chimney clearance* shall be not less than permitted by the terms of the *chimney* liner listing and the manufacturer's instructions.

801.18.4.1 Fireblocking. Noncombustible fireblocking shall be provided in accordance with the *International Building Code*.

801.19 Multistory prohibited. Common venting systems for ~~appliances~~*appliances* located on more than one floor level shall be prohibited, except where all of the ~~appliances~~*appliances* served by the common vent are located in rooms or spaces that are accessed only from the outdoors. The *appliance* enclosures shall not communicate with the occupiable areas of the building.

801.20 Plastic vent joints. Plastic pipe and fittings used to vent ~~appliances~~*appliances* shall be installed in accordance with the *appliance* manufacturer's installation instructions. ~~Solvent cement joints between ABS pipe and fittings shall be cleaned. Solvent cement joints between CPVC pipe and fittings or PVC pipe and fittings shall be primed. The primer shall be a contrasting color, or an ultraviolet primer may be used.~~

801.21 Blocked vent switch. Oil-fired *appliances* shall be equipped with a device that will stop burner operation in the event that the venting system is obstructed. Such device shall have a manual reset and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

SECTION 802
VENTS

802.1 General. Vent systems shall be *listed* and *labeled*. Type L vents and pellet vents shall be tested in accordance with UL 641.

802.2 Vent application. The application of vents shall be in accordance with Table 802.2.

TABLE 802.2
VENT APPLICATION

VENT TYPES	APPLIANCE TYPES
Type L oil vents	Oil-burning appliances listed and labeled for venting with Type L vents; gas appliances listed and labeled for venting with Type B vents.
Pellet vents	Pellet fuel-burning appliances listed and labeled for venting with pellet vents.

802.3 Installation. Vent systems shall be sized, installed and terminated in accordance with the vent and *appliance* manufacturer's installation instructions.

802.4 Vent termination caps required. Type L vents shall terminate with a *listed* and *labeled* cap in accordance with the vent manufacturer's installation instructions.

802.5 Type L vent terminations. Type L vents shall terminate not less than 2 feet (610 mm) above the highest point of the roof penetration and not less than 2 feet (610 mm) higher than any portion of a building within 10 feet (3048 mm).

802.6 Minimum vent heights. Vents shall terminate not less than 5 feet (1524 mm) in vertical height above the highest connected *appliance* flue collar.

Exceptions:

1. Venting systems of direct vent *appliances* shall be installed in accordance with the *appliance* and the vent manufacturer's instructions.
2. *Appliances listed* for outdoor installations incorporating integral venting means shall be installed in accordance with their listings and the manufacturer's installation instructions.
3. Pellet vents shall be installed in accordance with the *appliance* and the vent manufacturer's installation instructions.

802.7 Support of vents. All portions of vents shall be adequately supported for the design and weight of the materials employed.

802.8 Insulation shield. Where vents pass through insulated assemblies, an insulation shield constructed of not less than No. 26 gage sheet metal shall be installed to provide *clearance* between the vent and the insulation material. The *clearance* shall be not less than the *clearance* to combustibles specified by the vent manufacturer's installation instructions. Where vents pass through attic space, the shield shall terminate not less than 2 inches (51 mm) above the insulation materials and shall be secured in place to prevent displacement. Insulation shields provided as part of a *listed* vent system shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

802.9 Door swing. ~~Appliance~~*Appliance* and ~~equipment~~*equipment* vent terminals shall be located such that doors cannot swing within 12 inches (305 mm) horizontally of the vent terminals. Door-stops or closers shall not be installed to obtain this clearance.

SECTION 803
CONNECTORS

803.1 Connectors required. Connectors shall be used to connect *appliances* to the vertical *chimney* or vent, except where the *chimney* or vent is attached directly to the *appliance*.

803.2 Location. Connectors shall be located entirely within the room in which the connecting *appliance* is located, except as provided for in Section 803.10.4. Where passing through an unheated space, a connector shall not be constructed of single-wall pipe.

803.3 Size. The connector shall not be smaller than the size of the flue collar supplied by the manufacturer of the *appliance*. Where the *appliance* has more than one flue outlet, and in the absence of the manufacturer's specific instructions, the connector area shall be not less than the combined area of the flue outlets for which it acts as a common connector.

803.4 Branch connections. Branch connections to the vent connector shall be made in accordance with the vent manufacturer's instructions.

803.5 Manual dampers. Manual dampers shall not be installed in connectors except in *chimney* connectors serving solid fuel-burning *appliances*.

803.6 Automatic dampers. Automatic dampers shall be *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 17 for oil-fired heating ~~appliances~~*appliances*. The dampers shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. An automatic vent damper device shall not be installed on an existing *appliance* unless the *appliance* is *listed* and *labeled* and the device is installed in accordance with the terms of its listing. The name of the installer and date of installation shall be marked on a label affixed to the damper device.

803.7 Connectors serving two or more appliances. Where two or more connectors enter a common vent or *chimney*, the smaller connector shall enter at the highest level consistent with available headroom or *clearance* to combustible material.

803.8 Vent connector construction. Vent connectors shall be constructed of metal. The minimum thickness of the connector shall be 0.0136 inch (0.345 mm) (No. 28 gage) for galvanized steel, 0.022 inch (0.6 mm) (No. 26 B & S gage) for copper, and 0.020 inch (0.5 mm) (No. 24 B & S gage) for aluminum.

803.9 Chimney connector construction. *Chimney* connectors for low-heat *appliances* shall be of sheet steel pipe having resistance to corrosion and heat not less than that of galvanized steel specified in Table 803.9(1). Connectors for medium-heat *appliances* and high-heat ~~appliances~~*appliances* shall be of sheet steel not less than the thickness specified in Table 803.9(2).

TABLE 803.9(1)
MINIMUM CHIMNEY CONNECTOR THICKNESS
FOR LOW-HEAT APPLIANCES

DIAMETER OF CONNECTOR (inches)	MINIMUM NOMINAL THICKNESS (galvanized) (inches)
5 and smaller~~Less than 6~~	0.022 (No. 26 gage)
Larger than 5 and up to 10~~6 to 10~~	0.028 (No. 24 gage)
Larger than 10 and up to 16	0.034 (No. 22 gage)

~~Over 10 through 16~~	
Larger than 16	0.064 (No. 16 gage)

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

TABLE 803.9(2)
MINIMUM CHIMNEY CONNECTOR THICKNESS
FOR MEDIUM- AND HIGH-HEAT APPLIANCES

AREA (square inches)	EQUIVALENT ROUND DIAMETER (inches)	MINIMUM THICKNESS (inches)
0–154	0–14	0.0575 (No. 16 gage)
155–201	15–16	0.075 (No. 14 gage)
202–254	17–18	0.0994 (No. 12 gage)
Greater than 254	Greater than 18	0.1292 (No. 10 gage)

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 square inch = 645.16 mm^2.

803.10 Installation. Connectors shall be installed in accordance with Sections 803.10.1 through 803.10.6.

803.10.1 Supports and joints. Connectors shall be supported in an *approved* manner, and joints shall be fastened with sheet metal screws, rivets or other *approved* means.

803.10.2 Length. The maximum horizontal length of a single-wall connector shall be 75 percent of the height of the *chimney* or vent.

803.10.3 Connection. The connector shall extend to the inner face of the *chimney* or vent liner, but not beyond. A connector entering a masonry *chimney* shall be cemented to masonry in an *approved* manner. Where thimbles are installed to facilitate removal of the connector from the masonry *chimney*, the thimble shall be permanently cemented in place with high-temperature cement.

803.10.4 Connector pass-through. *Chimney* connectors shall not pass through any floor or ceiling, nor through a fire-resistance-rated wall assembly. *Chimney* connectors for domestic-type *appliances* shall not pass through walls or partitions constructed of combustible material to reach a masonry *chimney* except where one of the following ~~apply:~~applies:

1. The connector is *labeled* for wall pass-through and is installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.
2. The connector is put through a device *labeled* for wall pass-through.
3. The connector has a diameter not larger than 10 inches (254 mm) and is installed in accordance with one of the methods in Table 803.10.4. Concealed metal parts of the pass-through system in contact with flue gases shall be of stainless steel or equivalent material that resists corrosion, softening or cracking up to 1,800ºF (980ºC).

TABLE 803.10.4
CHIMNEY CONNECTOR SYSTEMS AND CLEARANCES TO
COMBUSTIBLE WALL MATERIALS FOR DOMESTIC HEATING APPLIANCES[a, b, c, d]

System A (12-inch clearance)	A 3.5-inch-thick brick wall shall be framed into the combustible wall. An 0.625-inch-thick fire-clay liner (ASTM C315 or equivalent)[e] shall be firmly cemented in the center of the brick wall maintaining a 12-inch clearance to combustibles. The clay liner shall run from the outer surface of the bricks to the inner surface of the chimney liner.
System B (9-inch clearance)	A labeled solid-insulated factory-built chimney section (1-inch insulation) the same inside diameter as the connector shall be utilized. Sheet steel supports cut to maintain a 9-inch clearance to combustibles shall be fastened to the wall surface and to the chimney section. Fasteners shall not penetrate the chimney flue liner. The chimney length shall be flush with the masonry chimney liner and sealed to the masonry with water-insoluble refractory cement. Chimney manufacturers' parts shall be utilized to securely fasten the chimney connector to the chimney section.

System C (6-inch clearance)	A steel ventilated thimble having a minimum thickness of 0.0236 inch (No. 24 gage) having two 1-inch air channels shall be installed with a steel chimney connector. Steel supports shall be cut to maintain a 6-inch clearance between the thimble and combustibles. The chimney connector and steel supports shall have a minimum thickness of 0.0236 inch (No. 24 gage). One side of the support shall be fastened to the wall on all sides. Glass-fiber insulation shall fill the 6-inch space between the thimble and the supports.
System D (2-inch clearance)	A labeled solid-insulated factory-built chimney section (1-inch insulation) with a diameter 2 inches larger than the chimney connector shall be installed with a steel chimney connector having a minimum thickness of 0.0236 inch (No. 24 gage). Sheet steel supports shall be positioned to maintain a 2-inch clearance to combustibles and to hold the chimney connector to ensure that a 1-inch airspace surrounds the chimney connector through the chimney section. The steel support shall be fastened to the wall on all sides and the chimney section shall be fastened to the supports. Fasteners shall not penetrate the liner of the chimney section.

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1.0 Btu ~~x~~• in/ft² • h • °F = 0.144 W/m² • K.

a. Insulation material that is part of the wall pass-through system shall be noncombustible and shall have a thermal conductivity of 1.0 Btu ~~x~~ • in/ft² • h • °F or less.
b. All clearances and thicknesses are minimums.
c. Materials utilized to seal penetrations for the connector shall be noncombustible.
d. Connectors for all systems except System B shall extend through the wall pass-through system to the inner face of the flue liner.
e. ASTM C315.

803.10.5 Pitch. Connectors shall rise vertically to the *chimney* or vent with a minimum pitch equal to one-fourth unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (2-percent slope).

803.10.6 Clearances. Connectors shall have a minimum *clearance* to combustibles in accordance with Table 803.10.6. The ~~clearances~~*clearances* specified in Table 803.10.6 apply, except where the ~~listing~~*listing* and ~~labeling~~*labeling* of an *appliance* specifies a different *clearance*, in which case the *labeled clearance* shall apply. The *clearance* to combustibles for connectors shall be reduced only in accordance with Section 308.

TABLE 803.10.6
CONNECTOR CLEARANCES TO COMBUSTIBLES

TYPE OF APPLIANCE	MINIMUM CLEARANCE (inches)
Domestic-type appliances	
Chimney and vent connectors Electric and oil incinerators Oil and solid-fuel appliances Oil appliances labeled for venting with Type L vents	 18 18 9
Commercial, industrial-type appliances	
Low-heat appliances Chimney connectors Oil and solid-fuel boilers, furnace and water heaters Oil unit heaters Other low-heat industrial appliances	 18 18 18

Medium-heat appliances Chimney connectors All oil and solid-fuel appliances	36
High-heat appliances Masonry or metal connectors All oil and solid-fuel appliances	(As determined by the code official)

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

SECTION 804
DIRECT-VENT, INTEGRAL VENT AND MECHANICAL DRAFT SYSTEMS

804.1 Direct-vent terminations. Vent terminals for *direct-vent appliances* shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

804.2 Appliances with integral vents. *Appliances* incorporating integral venting means shall be installed in accordance with their listings and the manufacturer's installation instructions.

804.2.1 Terminal clearances. *Appliances* designed for natural draft venting and incorporating integral venting means shall be located so that a minimum *clearance* of 9 inches (229 mm) is maintained between vent terminals and from any openings through which *combustion* products enter the building. *Appliances* using forced draft venting shall be located so that a minimum ~~clearance~~*clearance* of 12 inches (305 mm) is maintained between vent terminals and from any openings through which *combustion* products enter the building.

804.3 Mechanical draft systems. Mechanical draft systems of either forced or induced draft design shall be ~~listed~~*listed* and ~~labeled~~*labeled* in accordance with UL 378 and shall comply with Sections 804.3.1 through ~~804.3.7.~~804.3.8.

804.3.1 Forced draft systems. Forced draft systems and all portions of induced draft systems under positive pressure during operation shall be designed and installed so as to be gas tight to prevent leakage of *combustion* products into a building.

804.3.2 Automatic shutoff. Power exhausters serving automatically fired *appliances* shall be electrically connected to each *appliance* to prevent operation of the *appliance* when the power exhauster is not in operation.

804.3.3 Termination. The termination of *chimneys* or vents equipped with power exhausters shall be located not less than 10 feet (3048 mm) from the lot line or from adjacent buildings. The exhaust shall be directed away from the building.

804.3.4 Horizontal terminations. Horizontal terminations shall comply with the following requirements:

1. Where located adjacent to walkways, the termination of mechanical draft systems shall be not less than 7 feet (2134 mm) above the level of the walkway.
2. Vents shall terminate ~~at least~~not less than 3 feet (914 mm) above any forced air inlet located within 10 feet (3048 mm).
3. The vent system shall terminate ~~at least~~not less than 4 feet (1219 mm) below, 4 feet (1219 mm) horizontally from or 1 foot (305 mm) above any door, window or gravity air inlet into the building.
4. The vent termination point shall not be located closer than 3 feet (914 mm) to an interior corner formed by two walls perpendicular to each other.
5. The vent termination shall not be mounted directly above or within 3 feet (914 mm) horizontally from an oil tank vent or gas meter.
6. The bottom of the vent termination shall be located ~~at least~~not less than 12 inches (305 mm) above finished grade.

804.3.5 Vertical terminations. Vertical terminations shall comply with the following requirements:

1. Where located adjacent to walkways, the termination of mechanical draft systems shall be not less than 7 feet (2134 mm) above the level of the walkway.
2. Vents shall terminate not less than 3 feet (914 mm) above any forced air inlet located within 10 feet (3048 mm) horizontally.
3. Where the vent termination is located below an adjacent roof structure, the termination point shall be located not less than 3 feet (914 mm) from such structure.
4. The vent shall terminate not less than 4 feet (1219 mm) below, 4 feet (1219 mm) horizontally from or 1 foot (305 mm) above any door, window or gravity air inlet for the building.
5. A vent cap shall be installed to prevent rain from entering the vent system.
6. The vent termination shall be located not less than 3 feet (914 mm) horizontally from any portion of the roof structure.

804.3.6 Exhauster connections. An *appliance* vented by natural draft shall not be connected into a vent, *chimney* or vent connector on the discharge side of a mechanical flue exhauster.

804.3.7 Exhauster sizing. Mechanical flue exhausters and the vent system served shall be sized and installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

804.3.8 Mechanical draft systems for manually fired appliances and fireplaces. A mechanical draft system shall be permitted to be used with manually fired ~~appliances~~*appliances* and fireplaces where such system complies with all of the following requirements:

1. The mechanical draft device shall be ~~listed~~*listed* and ~~labeled~~*labeled* in accordance with UL 378, and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.
2. A device shall be installed that produces visible and audible warning upon failure of the mechanical draft device or loss of electrical power, at any time that the mechanical draft device is turned on. This device shall be equipped with a battery backup if it receives power from the building wiring.
3. A smoke detector shall be installed in the room with the *appliance* or fireplace. This device shall be equipped with a battery backup if it receives power from the building wiring.

SECTION 805
FACTORY-BUILT CHIMNEYS

805.1 Listing. Factory-built *chimneys* shall be *listed* and *labeled* and shall be installed and terminated in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

805.2 Solid fuel appliances. Factory-built *chimneys* installed in *dwelling units* with solid fuel-burning *appliances* shall comply with the Type HT requirements of UL 103 and shall be marked "Type HT" and "Residential Type and Building Heating *Appliance Chimney."*

Exception: *Chimneys* for use with open *combustion* chamber fireplaces shall comply with the requirements of UL 103 and shall be marked "Residential Type and Building Heating *Appliance Chimney."*

Chimneys for use with open *combustion* chamber ~~appliances~~*appliances* installed in buildings other than *dwelling units* shall comply with the requirements of UL 103 and shall be marked "Building Heating *Appliance Chimney"* or "Residential Type and Building Heating *Appliance Chimney."*

805.3 Factory-built fireplaces. *Chimneys* for use with factory-built fireplaces shall comply with the requirements of UL 127.

~~805.3~~805.4 Factory-built chimney offsets. Where a factory-built ~~chimney~~*chimney* assembly incorporates offsets, no part of the ~~chimney~~*chimney* shall be at an angle of more than 30 degrees (0.52 rad) from vertical at any point in the assembly and the ~~chimney~~*chimney* assembly shall not include more than four elbows.

~~805.4~~805.5 Support. Where factory-built *chimneys* are supported by structural members, such as joists and rafters, such members shall be designed to support the additional load.

~~805.5~~805.6 Medium-heat appliances. Factory-built *chimneys* for medium-heat ~~appliances~~*appliances* producing flue gases having a temperature above 1,000ºF (538ºC) measured at the entrance to the *chimney* shall comply with UL 959.

~~805.6~~805.7 Decorative shrouds. Decorative shrouds shall not be installed at the termination of factory-built *chimneys* except where such shrouds are *listed* and *labeled* for use with the specific factory-built *chimney* system and are installed in accordance with Section 304.1.

~~805.7~~805.8 ~~Factory-built fireplaces.~~Insulation shield. ~~*Chimneys* for use with factory-built fireplaces shall comply with the requirements of UL 127.~~Where factory-built *chimneys* pass through insulated assemblies, an insulation shield constructed of steel having a thickness of not less than 0.0187 inch (0.4712 mm) (No. 26 gage) shall be installed to provide *clearance* between the *chimney* and the insulation material. The *clearance* shall be not less than the *clearance* to combustibles specified by the *chimney* manufacturer's installation instructions. Where *chimneys* pass through attic space, the shield shall terminate not less than 2 inches (51 mm) above the insulation materials and shall be secured in place to prevent displacement. Insulation shields provided as part of a *listed chimney* system shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

SECTION 806
METAL CHIMNEYS

806.1 General. Metal *chimneys* shall be constructed and installed in accordance with NFPA 211.

CHAPTER 9
SPECIFIC APPLIANCES, FIREPLACES AND SOLID FUEL-BURNING EQUIPMENT

SECTION 901
GENERAL

901.1 Scope. This chapter shall govern the approval, design, installation, construction, maintenance, *alteration* and repair of the ~~appliances~~*appliances* and *equipment* specifically identified herein and factory-built fireplaces. The approval, design, installation, construction, maintenance, *alteration* and repair of gas-fired ~~appliances~~*appliances* shall be regulated by the *International Fuel Gas Code*.

901.2 General. The requirements of this chapter shall apply to the mechanical *equipment* and ~~appliances~~*appliances* regulated by this chapter, in addition to the other requirements of this code.

901.3 Hazardous locations. Fireplaces and solid fuel-burning ~~appliances~~*appliances* shall not be installed in hazardous locations.

901.4 Solid fuel-burning fireplaces and appliances in Group I-2, Condition 2. In Group I-2, Condition 2 *occupancies*, solid fuel-burning fireplaces and *appliances* are prohibited.

SECTION 902
MASONRY FIREPLACES

902.1 General. Masonry fireplaces shall be constructed in accordance with the *International Building Code*.

902.2 Fireplace accessories. ~~Listed~~*Listed* and ~~labeled~~*labeled* fireplace accessories shall be installed in accordance with the conditions of the listing and the manufacturer's instructions. Fireplace accessories shall comply with UL 907.

SECTION 903
FACTORY-BUILT FIREPLACES

903.1 General. Factory-built fireplaces shall be *listed* and *labeled* and shall be installed in accordance with the conditions of the listing. Factory-built fireplaces shall be tested in accordance with UL 127.

903.2 Hearth extensions. Hearth extensions of approved factory-built fireplaces shall be installed in accordance with the listing of the fireplace. The hearth extension shall be readily distinguishable from the surrounding floor area. ~~Listed~~*Listed* and ~~labeled~~*labeled* hearth extensions shall comply with UL 1618.

903.3 Unvented gas log heaters. An unvented gas log heater shall not be installed in a factory-built fireplace unless the fireplace system has been specifically tested, *listed* and *labeled* for such use in accordance with UL 127.

903.4 Gasketed fireplace doors. A gasketed fireplace door shall not be installed on a factory-built fireplace except where the fireplace system has been specifically tested, ~~listed~~*listed* and ~~labeled~~*labeled* for such use in accordance with UL 127.

SECTION 904
PELLET FUEL-BURNING APPLIANCES

904.1 General. Pellet fuel-burning *appliances* shall be *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with ASTM E1509 and shall be installed in accordance with the terms of the listing.

SECTION 905
FIREPLACE STOVES AND ROOM HEATERS

905.1 General. Fireplace stoves and solid-fuel-type room heaters shall be *listed* and *labeled* and shall be installed in accordance with the conditions of the listing. Fireplace stoves shall be tested in accordance with UL 737. Solid-fuel-type room heaters shall be tested in accordance with UL 1482. Fireplace inserts intended for installation in fireplaces shall be *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with the requirements of UL 1482 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. New wood-burning residential hydronic heaters shall be EPA certified.

905.2 Connection to fireplace. The connection of solid fuel ~~appliances~~*appliances* to *chimney* flues serving fireplaces shall comply with Sections 801.7 and 801.10.

905.3 Hearth extensions. Hearth extensions for fireplace stoves shall be installed in accordance with the listing of the fireplace stove. The hearth extension shall be readily distinguishable from the surrounding floor area. ~~Listed~~*Listed* and ~~labeled~~*labeled* hearth extensions shall comply with UL 1618.

SECTION 906
FACTORY-BUILT BARBECUE APPLIANCES

906.1 General. Factory-built barbecue ~~appliances~~*appliances* shall be of an *approved* type and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions, this chapter and Chapters 3, 5, 7 and 8, and the *International Fuel Gas Code*.

SECTION 907
INCINERATORS AND CREMATORIES

907.1 General. Incinerators and crematories shall be *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 791 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

SECTION 908
COOLING TOWERS, EVAPORATIVE CONDENSERS AND FLUID COOLERS

908.1 General. A cooling tower used in conjunction with an air-conditioning *appliance* shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Factory-built cooling towers shall be ~~listed~~*listed* in accordance with UL 1995 or UL/CSA 60335-2-40.

908.2 Access. Cooling towers, evaporative condensers and fluid coolers shall be provided with ready access.

908.3 Location. Cooling towers, evaporative condensers and fluid coolers shall be located to prevent the discharge of vapor plumes from entering occupied spaces. Plume discharges shall be not less than 5 feet (1524 mm) above or 20 feet (6096 mm) away from any ventilation inlet to a building. Location on the property shall be as required for buildings in accordance with the *International Building Code*.

908.4 Support and anchorage. Supports for cooling towers, evaporative condensers and fluid coolers shall be designed in accordance with the *International Building Code*. Seismic restraints shall be as required by the *International Building Code*.

908.5 Water supply. Cooling towers, evaporative coolers and fluid coolers shall be provided with an approved water supply, sized for peak demand. The quality of water shall be provided in accordance with the ~~equipment~~*equipment* manufacturer's recommendations. The piping system and protection of the potable water supply system shall be installed as required by the *International Plumbing Code*.

908.6 Drainage. Drains, overflows and blowdown provisions shall be indirectly connected to an *approved* disposal location. Discharge of chemical waste shall be *approved* by the appropriate regulatory authority.

908.7 Refrigerants and hazardous fluids. Heat exchange *equipment* that contains a refrigerant and that is part of a closed refrigeration system shall comply with Chapter 11. Heat exchange *equipment* containing heat transfer fluids which are flammable, combustible or hazardous shall comply with the *International Fire Code*.

908.8 Cooling towers. Cooling towers, both open circuit and closed circuit type, and evaporative condensers shall comply with Sections 908.8.1 and 908.8.2.

908.8.1 Conductivity or flow-based control of cycles of concentration. Cooling towers and evaporative condensers shall include controls that automate system bleed based on conductivity, fraction of metered makeup volume, metered bleed volume, recirculating pump run time or bleed time.

908.8.2 Drift eliminators. Cooling towers and evaporative condensers shall be equipped with drift eliminators that have a maximum drift rate of 0.005 percent of the circulated water flow rate as established in the equipment's design specifications.

SECTION 909
VENTED WALL FURNACES

909.1 General. Vented wall furnaces shall be installed in accordance with their listing and the manufacturer's instructions. Oil-fired furnaces shall be tested in accordance with UL 730.

909.2 Location. Vented wall furnaces shall be located so as not to cause a fire hazard to walls, floors, combustible furnishings or doors. Vented wall furnaces installed between bathrooms and adjoining rooms shall not circulate air from bathrooms to other parts of the building.

909.3 Door swing. Vented wall furnaces shall be located so that a door cannot swing within 12 inches (305 mm) of an air inlet or air outlet of such furnace measured at right angles to the opening. Doorstops or door closers shall not be installed to obtain this *clearance*.

909.4 Ducts prohibited. Ducts shall not be attached to wall furnaces. Casing extension boots shall not be installed unless *listed* as part of the *appliance*.

909.5 Manual shutoff valve. A manual shutoff valve shall be installed ahead of all controls.

909.6 Access. Vented wall furnaces shall be provided with access for cleaning of heating surfaces, removal of burners, replacement of sections, motors, controls, filters and other working parts, and for adjustments and lubrication of parts requiring such attention. Panels, grilles and access doors that must be removed for normal servicing operations shall not be attached to the building construction.

SECTION 910
FLOOR FURNACES

910.1 General. Floor furnaces shall be installed in accordance with their listing and the manufacturer's instructions. Oil-fired furnaces shall be tested in accordance with UL 729.

910.2 Placement. Floor furnaces shall not be installed in the floor of any aisle or passageway of any auditorium, public hall, place of assembly, or in any egress element from any such room or space.

With the exception of wall register models, a floor furnace shall not be placed closer than 6 inches (152 mm) to the nearest wall, and wall register models shall not be placed closer than 6 inches (152 mm) to a corner.

The furnace shall be placed such that a drapery or similar combustible object will not be nearer than 12 inches (305 mm) to any portion of the register of the furnace. Floor furnaces shall not be installed in concrete floor construction built on grade. The controlling thermostat for a floor furnace shall be located within the same room or space as the floor furnace or shall be located in an adjacent room or space that is permanently open to the room or space containing the floor furnace.

910.3 Bracing. The floor around the furnace shall be braced and headed with a support framework design in accordance with the *International Building Code*.

910.4 Clearance. The lowest portion of the floor furnace shall have not less than a 6-inch (152 mm) ~~clearance~~*clearance* from the grade level; except where the lower 6-inch (152 mm) portion of the floor furnace is sealed by the manufacturer to prevent entrance of water, the minimum ~~clearance~~*clearance* shall be reduced to not less than 2 inches (51 mm). Where these ~~clearances~~*clearances* are not present, the ground below and to the sides shall be excavated to form a pit under the furnace so that the required ~~clearance~~*clearance* is provided beneath the lowest portion of the furnace. A 12-inch (305 mm) minimum ~~clear-~~

~~ance~~*clearance* shall be provided on all sides except the control side, which shall have an 18-inch (457 mm) minimum ~~clear-ance~~*clearance*.

SECTION 911
DUCT FURNACES

911.1 General. Duct furnaces shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Electric duct furnaces shall comply with UL 1996.

SECTION 912
INFRARED RADIANT HEATERS

912.1 General. Electric infrared radiant heaters shall comply with UL 499.

912.2 Support. Infrared radiant heaters shall be fixed in a position independent of fuel and electric supply lines. Hangers and brackets shall be noncombustible material.

912.3 Clearances. Heaters shall be installed with ~~clearances~~*clearances* from combustible material in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

SECTION 913
CLOTHES DRYERS

913.1 General. Clothes dryers shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Electric residential clothes dryers shall be tested in accordance with UL 2158. Electric coin-operated clothes dryers shall be tested in accordance with UL 2158. Electric commercial clothes dryers shall be tested in accordance with UL 1240.

913.2 Exhaust required. Clothes dryers shall be exhausted in accordance with Section 504.

913.3 Clearances. Clothes dryers shall be installed with *clearance* to combustibles in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

SECTION 914
SAUNA HEATERS

914.1 Location and protection. Sauna heaters shall be located so as to minimize the possibility of accidental contact by a person in the room.

914.1.1 Guards. Sauna heaters shall be protected from accidental contact by an *approved* guard or barrier of material having a low coefficient of thermal conductivity. The guard shall not substantially affect the transfer of heat from the heater to the room.

914.2 Installation. Sauna heaters shall be *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 875 and shall be installed in accordance with their listing and the manufacturer's instructions.

914.3 Access. Panels, grilles and access doors that are required to be removed for normal servicing operations shall not be attached to the building.

914.4 Heat and time controls. Sauna heaters shall be equipped with a thermostat that will limit room temperature to 194ºF (90ºC). If the thermostat is not an integral part of the sauna heater, the heat-sensing element shall be located within 6 inches (152 mm) of the ceiling. If the heat-sensing element is a capillary tube and bulb, the assembly shall be attached to the wall or other support, and shall be protected against physical damage.

914.4.1 Timers. A timer, if provided to control main burner operation, shall have a maximum operating time of 1 hour. The control for the timer shall be located outside the sauna room.

914.5 Sauna room. A ventilation opening into the sauna room shall be provided. The opening shall be not less than 4 inches by 8 inches (102 mm by 203 mm) located near the top of the door into the sauna room.

914.5.1 Warning notice. The following permanent notice, constructed of *approved* material, shall be mechanically attached to the sauna room on the outside:

WARNING: DO NOT EXCEED 30 MINUTES IN SAUNA. EXCESSIVE EXPOSURE CAN BE HARMFUL TO HEALTH. ANY PERSON WITH POOR HEALTH SHOULD CONSULT A PHYSICIAN BEFORE USING SAUNA.

The words shall contrast with the background and the wording shall be in letters not less than $^1/_4$-inch (6.4 mm) high.

Exception: This section shall not apply to one- and two-family dwellings.

SECTION 915
ENGINE AND GAS TURBINE-POWERED EQUIPMENT AND APPLIANCES

915.1 General. The installation of liquid-fueled stationary internal *combustion* engines and gas turbines, including exhaust, fuel storage and piping, shall meet the requirements of NFPA 37. Stationary engine generator assemblies shall meet the requirements of UL 2200.

915.2 Powered equipment and appliances. Permanently installed *equipment* and ~~appliances~~*appliances* powered by internal *combustion* engines and turbines shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and NFPA 37.

SECTION 916
POOL AND SPA HEATERS

916.1 General. Pool and spa heaters shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Oil-fired pool and spa heaters shall be tested in accordance with ~~UL 726~~UL 1261. ~~Electric pool and spa heaters shall be tested in accordance with UL 1261.~~ Pool and spa heat pump water heaters shall comply with UL 1995, UL/CSA 60335-2-40 or CSA C22.2 No. 236.

Exception: Portable residential spas and portable residential exercise spas shall comply with UL 1563 or CSA C22.2 No. 218.1.

SECTION 917
COOKING APPLIANCES

917.1 Cooking appliances. Cooking ~~appliances~~*appliances* that are designed for permanent installation, including ranges, ovens, stoves, broilers, grills, fryers, griddles and barbecues, shall be *listed*, *labeled* and installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Commercial electric cooking ~~appliances~~*appliances* shall be *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 197. Household electric ranges shall be *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 858. Microwave cooking ~~appliances~~*appliances* shall be *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 923. Oil-burning stoves shall be *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 896. Solid-fuel-fired ovens shall be *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 2162.

917.2 Domestic appliances. Cooking ~~appliances~~*appliances* installed within *dwelling units* and within areas where domestic cooking operations occur shall be *listed* and *labeled* as household-type ~~appliances~~*appliances* for domestic use.

917.3 Installation of microwave oven over a cooking appliance. The installation of a ~~listed~~*listed* and ~~labeled~~*labeled* cooking ~~appliance~~*appliance* or microwave oven over a ~~listed~~*listed* and ~~labeled~~*labeled* cooking ~~appliance~~*appliance* shall conform to the terms of the upper ~~appliance's listing~~*appliance's listing* and ~~label~~*label* and the manufacturer's installation instructions.

SECTION 918
FORCED-AIR WARM-AIR FURNACES

918.1 Forced-air furnaces. Oil-fired furnaces shall be tested in accordance with UL 727. Electric furnaces shall be tested in accordance with UL 1995 or UL/CSA 60335-2-40. Solid fuel furnaces shall be tested in accordance with UL 391. Forced-air furnaces shall be installed in accordance with the listings and the manufacturer's instructions.

918.2 Heat pumps. Electric heat pumps shall be tested in accordance with UL 1995 or UL/CSA 60335-2-40.

918.3 Dampers. Volume dampers shall not be placed in the air inlet to a furnace in a manner that will reduce the required air to the furnace.

918.4 Circulating air ducts for forced-air warm-air furnaces. Circulating air for fuel-burning, forced-air-type, warm-air furnaces shall be conducted into the blower housing from outside the furnace enclosure by continuous airtight ducts.

918.5 Outdoor and return air openings. Outdoor intake openings shall be located in accordance with Section 401.4. Return air openings shall be located in accordance with Section 601.5.

918.6 Outdoor opening protection. Outdoor air intake openings shall be protected in accordance with Section 401.5.

918.7 Refrigeration coils in warm-air furnaces. When a cooling coil is located in the supply plenum of a warm-air furnace, the furnace blower shall be rated at not less than 0.5-inch water column (124 Pa) static pressure unless the furnace is ~~listed~~*listed* and ~~labeled~~*labeled* for use with a cooling coil. Cooling coils shall not be located upstream from ~~heat exchangers~~*heat exchangers* unless ~~listed~~*listed* and ~~labeled~~*labeled* for such use. Conversion of existing furnaces for use with cooling coils shall be permitted provided the furnace will operate within the temperature rise specified for the furnace.

SECTION 919
CONVERSION BURNERS

919.1 Conversion burners. The installation of conversion burners shall conform to ANSI Z21.8.

SECTION 920
UNIT HEATERS

920.1 General. Unit heaters shall be installed in accordance with the listing and the manufacturer's instructions. Oil-fired unit heaters shall be tested in accordance with UL 731.

920.2 Support. Suspended-type unit heaters shall be supported by elements that are designed and constructed to accommodate the unit heater weight and dynamic loads. Hangers and brackets shall be of noncombustible material. Suspended-type oil-fired unit heaters shall be installed in accordance with NFPA 31.

920.3 Ductwork. A unit heater shall not be attached to a warm-air duct system unless *listed* for such installation.

<u>**920.4 Prohibited uses.** In Group I-2 and ambulatory care facilities, suspended-type unit heaters are prohibited in corridors, exit access stairways and ramps, exit stairways and ramps, and patient sleeping areas.</u>

SECTION 921
VENTED ROOM HEATERS

921.1 General. Vented room heaters shall be *listed* and *labeled* and shall be installed in accordance with the conditions of the listing and the manufacturer's instructions.

SECTION 922
KEROSENE AND OIL-FIRED STOVES

922.1 General. Kerosene and oil-fired stoves shall be ~~listed~~*listed* and ~~labeled~~*labeled* and shall be installed in accordance with the conditions of the listing and the manufacturer's instructions. Kerosene and oil-fired stoves shall comply with NFPA 31 and UL 896.

SECTION 923
SMALL CERAMIC KILNS

923.1 General. Kilns shall be ~~listed~~*listed* and ~~labeled~~*labeled* unless otherwise approved in accordance with Section 105.2. Electric kilns shall comply with UL 499. The approval of unlisted appliances in accordance with Section 105.2 shall be based on approved engineering evaluation.

923.1.1 Installation. Kilns shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and the provisions of this code.

SECTION 924
STATIONARY FUEL CELL POWER SYSTEMS

924.1 General. Stationary fuel cell power systems having a power output not exceeding 10 MW shall be tested in accordance with ANSI/CSA America FC 1 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions, NFPA 853, the *International Building Code* and the *International Fire Code*.

SECTION 925
MASONRY HEATERS

925.1 General. Masonry heaters shall be constructed in accordance with the *International Building Code*.

SECTION 926
GASEOUS HYDROGEN SYSTEMS

926.1 Installation. The installation of gaseous hydrogen systems shall be in accordance with the applicable requirements of this code, the *International Fire Code*, the *International Fuel Gas Code* and the *International Building Code*.

SECTION 927
RADIANT HEATING SYSTEMS

927.1 General. Electric radiant heating systems shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and shall be ~~listed~~*listed* for the application.

927.2 Clearances. ~~Clearances~~*Clearances* for radiant heating panels or elements to any wiring, outlet boxes and junction boxes used for installing electrical devices or mounting luminaires shall be in accordance with the *International Building Code* and NFPA 70.

927.3 Installation on wood or steel framing. Radiant panels installed on wood or steel framing shall conform to the following requirements:

1. Heating panels shall be installed parallel to framing members and secured to the surface of framing members or shall be mounted between framing members.
2. Mechanical fasteners shall penetrate only the unheated portions provided for this purpose. Panels shall not be fastened at any point closer than $^1/_4$ inch (6.4 mm) to an element. Other methods of attachment of the panels shall be in accordance with the panel installation instructions.
3. Unless ~~listed~~*listed* and ~~labeled~~*labeled* for field cutting, heating panels shall be installed as complete units.

927.4 Installation in concrete or masonry. Radiant heating systems installed in concrete or masonry shall conform to the following requirements:

1. Radiant heating systems shall be identified as being suitable for the installation, and shall be secured in place as specified in the manufacturer's instructions.

2. Radiant heating panels and radiant heating panel sets shall not be installed where they bridge expansion joints unless they are protected from expansion and contraction.

927.5 Finish surfaces. Finish materials installed over radiant heating panels and systems shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Surfaces shall be secured so that fasteners do not pierce the radiant heating elements.

SECTION 928
EVAPORATIVE COOLING EQUIPMENT

928.1 General. Evaporative cooling ~~equipment~~*equipment* shall:

1. Be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.
2. Be installed on level platforms in accordance with Section 304.10.
3. Have openings in exterior walls or roofs flashed in accordance with the *International Building Code*.
4. Be provided with an approved water supply, sized for peak demand. The quality of water shall be provided in accordance with the *equipment* manufacturer's recommendations. The piping system and protection of the potable water supply system shall be installed as required by the *International Plumbing Code*.
5. Have air intake opening locations in accordance with Section 401.4.

SECTION 929
UNVENTED ALCOHOL FUEL-BURNING DECORATIVE APPLIANCES

929.1 General. *Unvented alcohol fuel-burning decorative appliances* shall be *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 1370 and shall be installed in accordance with the conditions of the listing, manufacturer's installation instructions and Chapter 3.

SECTION 930
LARGE-DIAMETER CEILING FANS

930.1 General. Where provided, large-diameter ceiling fans shall be tested and *labeled* in accordance with AMCA 230, *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 507, and installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

SECTION ~~929~~931
BASEBOARD CONVECTORS

~~929.1~~931.1 Baseboard convectors. Electric baseboard convectors shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions and the *North Carolina Electrical Code*.

SECTION ~~930~~932
DUCT HEATERS

~~930.1~~932.1 General. Electric duct heaters shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions and the *North Carolina Electrical Code*. Electric furnaces shall be tested in accordance with UL 1996.

~~930.2~~932.2 Installation. Electric duct heaters shall be installed so they will not create a fire hazard. Class I ducts, duct coverings and linings shall be interrupted at each heater to provide the clearances specified in the manufacturer's installation instructions. Such interruptions are not required for duct heaters ~~listed~~*listed* and ~~labeled~~*labeled* for zero clearance to ~~combustible materials~~*combustible materials*. Insulation installed in the immediate area of each heater shall be classified for the maximum temperature produced on the duct surface.

~~930.3~~932.3 Installation with heat pumps and air conditioners. Duct heaters located within 4 feet (1219 mm) of a heat pump or air conditioner shall be ~~listed~~*listed* and ~~labeled~~*labeled* for such installations. The heat pump or air conditioner shall additionally be ~~listed~~*listed* and ~~labeled~~*labeled* for such duct heater installations.

~~930.4~~932.4 Access. Duct heaters shall be ~~accessible for servicing, and clearance shall be maintained to permit adjustment, servicing and replacement of controls and heating elements.~~ located to allow access for servicing, and clearance shall be maintained to permit adjustment, servicing and replacement of controls and heating elements.

~~930.5~~932.5 Fan interlock. The fan circuit shall be provided with an interlock to prevent heater operation when the fan is not operating.

CHAPTER 10

BOILERS, WATER HEATERS AND PRESSURE VESSELS

SECTION 1001
GENERAL

1001.1 Scope. This chapter shall govern the installation, *alteration* and repair of boilers, water heaters and pressure vessels.

Exceptions:

1. Pressure vessels used for unheated water supply.
2. Portable unfired pressure vessels and Interstate Commerce Commission containers.
3. Containers for bulk oxygen and medical gas.
4. Unfired pressure vessels having a volume of 5 cubic feet (0.14 m^3) or less operating at pressures not exceeding 250 pounds per square inch (psi) (1724 kPa) and located within ~~occupancies~~*occupancies* of Groups B, F, H, M, R, S and U.
5. Pressure vessels used in refrigeration systems that are regulated by Chapter 11 of this code.
6. Pressure tanks used in conjunction with coaxial cables, telephone cables, power cables and other similar humidity control systems.
7. Any boiler or pressure vessel subject to inspection by federal or state inspectors. See N.C.G.S. Chapter 95, Article 69.10 for a complete list of equipment that is exempt from this code but under the jurisdiction of the North Carolina Department of Labor.

SECTION 1002
WATER HEATERS

1002.1 General. Potable water heaters and hot water storage tanks shall be ~~listed~~*listed* and ~~labeled~~*labeled* and installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions, the *International Plumbing Code* and this code. ~~All water~~Water heaters shall be capable of being removed without first removing a permanent portion of the building structure. The potable water connections and relief valves for all water heaters shall conform to the requirements of the *International Plumbing Code*. Domestic electric water heaters shall comply with UL 174 or UL 1453. Commercial electric water heaters shall comply with UL 1453. Oil-fired water heaters shall comply with UL 732. Solid-fuel-fired water heaters shall comply with UL 2523. ~~Thermal solar~~Solar thermal water ~~heaters~~heating systems shall comply with Chapter 14 and ~~UL 174 or UL 1453.~~ICC 900/SRCC 300.

1002.2 Water heaters utilized for space heating. Water heaters utilized both to supply potable hot water and provide hot water for space-heating applications shall be *listed* and *labeled* for such applications by the manufacturer and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and the *International Plumbing Code*.

1002.2.1 Sizing. Water heaters utilized for both potable water heating and space-heating applications shall be sized to prevent the space-heating load from diminishing the required potable water-heating capacity.

1002.2.2 Temperature limitation. Where a combination potable water-heating and space-heating system requires water for space heating at temperatures higher than 140ºF (60ºC), a temperature-actuated mixing valve that conforms to ASSE 1017 shall be provided to temper the water supplied to the potable hot water distribution system to a temperature of 140ºF (60ºC) or less.

1002.3 Supplemental water-heating devices. Potable water-heating devices that utilize refrigerant-to-water heat exchangers shall be *approved* and installed in accordance with the *International Plumbing Code* and the manufacturer's instructions.

SECTION 1003
PRESSURE VESSELS

1003.1 General. All pressure vessels, unless otherwise approved, shall be constructed and certified in accordance with the ASME *Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code*, and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and nationally recognized standards. Directly fired pressure vessels shall meet the requirements of Section 1004.

1003.2 Piping. All piping materials, fittings, joints, connections and devices associated with systems utilized in conjunction with pressure vessels shall be designed for the specific application and shall be *approved*.

1003.3 Welding. Welding on pressure vessels shall be performed by an R-Stamp holder in accordance with the National Board Inspection Code, Part 3 or in accordance with an *approved* standard.

SECTION 1004
BOILERS

1004.1 Standards. Boilers shall be designed, constructed and certified in accordance with the ASME *Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code*, Section I or IV. Controls and safety devices for boilers with fuel input ratings of less than 12,500,000 Btu/hr (3,662,500 W) ~~or less~~ shall meet the requirements of ASME CSD-1. Controls and safety devices for boilers with inputs greater than or equal to 12,500,000 Btu/hr (3,662,500 W) shall meet the requirements of NFPA 85. Packaged oil-fired boilers shall be ~~listed~~*listed* and ~~labeled~~*labeled* in accordance with UL 726. Packaged electric boilers shall be ~~listed~~*listed* and ~~labeled~~*labeled* in accordance with UL 834. Solid-fuel-fired boilers shall be ~~listed~~*listed* and ~~labeled~~*labeled* in accordance with UL 2523.

1004.2 Installation. In addition to the requirements of this code, the installation of boilers shall conform to the manufacturer's instructions. Operating instructions of a permanent type shall be attached to the boiler. Boilers shall have all controls set, adjusted and tested by the installer. The manufacturer's rating data and the nameplate shall be attached to the boiler.

1004.3 Working clearance. ~~Clearances~~*Clearances* shall be maintained around boilers, generators, heaters, tanks and related *equipment* and ~~appliances~~*appliances* so as to permit inspection, servicing, repair, replacement and visibility of all gauges. ~~When~~Where boilers are installed or replaced, ~~clearance~~*clearance* shall be provided to allow access for inspection, maintenance and repair. Passageways around all sides of boilers shall have an unobstructed width of not less than 18 inches (457 mm), unless otherwise *approved*.

1004.3.1 Top clearance. ~~Clearances~~*Clearances* from the tops of boilers to the ceiling or other overhead obstruction shall be in accordance with Table 1004.3.1.

TABLE 1004.3.1
BOILER TOP CLEARANCES

BOILER TYPE	MINIMUM CLEARANCES FROM TOP OF BOILER TO CEILING OR OTHER OVERHEAD OBSTRUCTION (feet)
All boilers with manholes on top of the boiler except where a greater clearance is required in this table.	3
All boilers without manholes on top of the boiler except high-pressure steam boilers and where a greater clearance is required in this table.	2
High-pressure steam boilers with steam generating capacity not exceeding 5,000 pounds per hour.	3
High-pressure steam boilers with steam generating capacity exceeding 5,000 pounds per hour.	7
High-pressure steam boilers having heating surface not exceeding 1,000 square feet.	3
High-pressure steam boilers having heating surface in excess of 1,000 square feet.	7
High-pressure steam boilers with input not exceeding 5,000,000 Btu/h.	3
High-pressure steam boilers with input in excess of 5,000,000 Btu/h.	7

Steam-heating boilers and hot water-heating boilers with input exceeding 5,000,000 Btu/h.	3
Steam-heating boilers exceeding 5,000 pounds of steam per hour.	3
Steam-heating boilers and hot water-heating boilers having heating surface exceeding 1,000 square feet.	3

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 square foot = 0.0929 m^2, 1 pound per hour = 0.4536 kg/h, 1 Btu/h = 0.293 W.

1004.4 Mounting. *Equipment* shall be set or mounted on a level base capable of supporting and distributing the weight contained thereon. Boilers, tanks and *equipment* shall be secured in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

1004.5 Floors. Boilers shall be mounted on floors of noncombustible construction, unless *listed* for mounting on combustible flooring.

1004.6 Boiler rooms and enclosures. Boiler rooms and enclosures and access thereto shall comply with the *International Building Code* and Chapter 3 of this code. Boiler rooms shall be equipped with a floor drain or other *approved* means for disposing of liquid waste.

1004.7 Operating adjustments and instructions. Hot water and steam boilers shall have all operating and safety controls set and operationally tested by the installing contractor. A complete control diagram and boiler operating instructions shall be furnished by the installer for each installation.

SECTION 1005
BOILER CONNECTIONS

1005.1 Valves. Every boiler or modular boiler shall have a shutoff valve in the supply and return piping. For multiple boiler or multiple modular boiler installations, each boiler or modular boiler shall have individual shutoff valves in the supply and return piping.

Exception: Shutoff valves are not required in a system having a single low-pressure steam boiler.

1005.2 Potable water supply. The water supply to all boilers shall be connected in accordance with the *International Plumbing Code*.

SECTION 1006
SAFETY AND PRESSURE
RELIEF VALVES AND CONTROLS

1006.1 Safety valves for steam boilers. Steam boilers shall be protected with a safety ~~valve(s).~~valve.

1006.2 Safety relief valves for hot water boilers. Hot water boilers shall be protected with a safety relief ~~valve(s).~~valve.

1006.3 Pressure relief for pressure vessels. Pressure vessels shall be protected with a pressure relief valve or pressure-limiting device as required by the manufacturer's installation instructions for the pressure vessel.

1006.4 Approval of safety and safety relief valves. Safety and safety relief valves shall be *listed* and *labeled*, and shall have a minimum rated capacity for the *equipment* or ~~appliances~~*appliances* served. Safety and safety relief valves shall be set at not greater than the nameplate pressure rating of the boiler or pressure vessel.

1006.5 Installation. Safety or relief valves shall be installed directly into the safety or relief valve opening on the boiler or pressure vessel. Valves shall not be located on either side of a safety or relief valve connection. The relief valve shall discharge by gravity.

1006.6 Safety and relief valve discharge. Safety and relief valve discharge pipes shall be of rigid pipe that is *approved* for the temperature of the system. ~~The discharge pipe shall be the same diameter as the safety or relief valve outlet. Safety and relief valves shall not discharge so as to be a hazard, a potential cause of damage or otherwise a nuisance. High pressure-steam safety~~

~~valves shall be vented to the outside of the structure. Where a low-pressure safety valve or a relief valve discharges to the drainage system, the installation shall conform to the *International Plumbing Code*.~~ High-pressure-steam safety valves shall be vented to the outside of the structure. The discharge piping serving pressure relief valves, temperature relief valves and combinations of such valves shall:

1. Not be directly connected to the drainage system.
2. Discharge through an air break located in the same room as the *appliance*.
3. Not be smaller than the diameter of the outlet of the valve served and shall discharge full size to the air break.
4. Serve a single relief device and shall not connect to piping serving any other relief device or *equipment*.
5. Discharge to the floor, to the pan serving the boiler or storage tank, to a waste receptor or to the outdoors.
6. Discharge in a manner that does not cause personal injury or structural damage.
7. Discharge to a termination point that is readily observable by the building occupants.
8. Not be trapped.
9. Be installed so as to flow by gravity.
10. Not terminate more than 6 inches (152 mm) above the floor or waste receptor.
11. Not have a threaded connection at the end of such piping.
12. Not have valves or tee fittings.
13. Be constructed of those materials listed in Section 605.4 of the *International Plumbing Code* or materials tested, rated and approved for such use in accordance with ASME A112.4.1.

1006.7 Boiler safety devices. Boilers shall be equipped with controls and limit devices as required by the manufacturer's installation instructions and the conditions of the listing.

1006.8 Electrical requirements. The power supply to the electrical control system shall be from a two-wire branch circuit that has a grounded conductor, or from an isolation transformer with a two-wire secondary. Where an isolation transformer is provided, one conductor of the secondary winding shall be grounded. Control voltage shall not exceed 150 volts nominal, line to line. Control and limit devices shall interrupt the ungrounded side of the circuit. A means of manually disconnecting the control circuit shall be provided and controls shall be arranged so that when deenergized, the burner shall be inoperative. Such disconnecting means shall be capable of being locked in the off position and shall be provided with ready access.

SECTION 1007
BOILER LOW-WATER CUTOFF

1007.1 General. Steam and hot water boilers shall be protected with a low-water cutoff control.

> **Exception:** A low-water cutoff is not required for coil-type and water-tube-type boilers that require forced circulation of water through the boiler and that are protected with a flow sensing control.

1007.2 Operation. Low-water cutoff controls and flow sensing controls required by Section 1007.1 shall automatically stop the *combustion* operation of the *appliance* when the water level drops below the lowest safe water level as established by the manufacturer or when water circulation stops, respectively.

SECTION 1008
BOTTOM BLOWOFF VALVE

1008.1 General. Steam boilers shall be equipped with bottom blowoff valve(s). The valve(s) shall be installed in the opening provided on the boiler. The minimum size of the valve(s) and associated piping shall be the size specified by the boiler manufacturer or the size of the boiler blowoff-valve opening. Where the maximum allowable working pressure of the boiler exceeds 100 psig (689 kPa), two bottom blowoff valves shall be provided consisting of either two slow-opening valves in series or one quick-opening valve and one slow-opening valve in series, with the quick-opening valve installed closest to the boiler.

1008.2 Discharge. Blowoff valves shall discharge to a safe place of disposal. Where discharging to the drainage system, the installation shall conform to the *International Plumbing Code*.

SECTION 1009
HOT WATER BOILER EXPANSION TANK

1009.1 Where required. An expansion tank shall be installed in every hot water system. For multiple boiler installations, not less than one expansion tank is required. Expansion tanks shall be of the closed or open type. Tanks shall be rated for the pressure of the hot water system.

Exception: Expansion tanks shall not be required in the collector loop of drain-back systems.

1009.2 Closed-type expansion tanks. Closed-type expansion tanks shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Expansion tanks for systems designed to have an operating pressure in excess of 30 psi (207 kPa) shall be constructed and certified in accordance with the ASME *Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code*. The size of the tank shall be based on the capacity of the hot-water-heating system. The minimum size of the tank shall be determined in accordance with the following equation:

$$V_t = \frac{(0.00041T - 0.0466)V_s}{\left(\frac{P_a}{P_f}\right) - \left(\frac{P_a}{P_o}\right)}$$

(Equation 10-1)

For SI:

$$V_t = \frac{(0.000738T - 0.03348)V_s}{\left(\frac{P_a}{P_f}\right) - \left(\frac{P_a}{P_o}\right)}$$

where:

V_t = Minimum volume of tanks (gallons) (L).

V_s = Volume of system, not including expansion tanks (gallons) (L).

T = Average operating temperature (°F) (°C).

P_a = Atmospheric pressure (psi) (kPa).

P_f = Fill pressure (psi) (kPa).

P_o = Maximum operating pressure (psi) (kPa).

1009.3 Open-type expansion tanks. Open-type expansion tanks shall be located not less than 4 feet (1219 mm) above the highest heating element. The tank shall be adequately sized for the hot water system. An overflow with a minimum diameter of 1 inch (25 mm) shall be installed at the top of the tank. The overflow shall discharge to the drainage system in accordance with the *International Plumbing Code*.

SECTION 1010
GAUGES

1010.1 Hot water boiler gauges. Every hot water boiler shall have a pressure gauge and a temperature gauge, or a combination pressure and temperature gauge. The gauges shall indicate the temperature and pressure within the normal range of the system's operation.

1010.2 Steam boiler gauges. Every steam boiler shall have a water-gauge glass and a pressure gauge. The pressure gauge shall indicate the pressure within the normal range of the system's operation.

1010.2.1 Water-gauge glass. The gauge glass shall be installed so that the midpoint is at the normal boiler water level.

SECTION 1011
TESTS

1011.1 Tests. Upon completion of the assembly and installation of boilers and pressure vessels, acceptance tests shall be conducted in accordance with the requirements of the ASME *Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code* or the manufacturer's requirements, and such tests shall be approved. A copy of all test documents along with all manufacturer's data reports required by the ASME *Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code* shall be submitted to the code official.

1011.2 Test gauges. An indicating test gauge shall be connected directly to the boiler or pressure vessel where it is visible to the operator throughout the duration of the test. The pressure gauge scale shall be graduated over a range of not less than one and one-half times and not greater than four times the maximum test pressure. Gauges utilized for testing shall be calibrated and certified by the test operator.

CHAPTER 11
REFRIGERATION

SECTION 1101
GENERAL

1101.1 Scope. This chapter shall govern the design, installation, construction and repair of refrigeration systems that vaporize and liquefy a fluid during the refrigerating cycle. ~~Refrigerant piping design and installation, including pressure vessels and pressure relief devices, shall conform to this code.~~ Permanently installed refrigerant storage systems and other components shall be considered as part of the refrigeration system to which they are attached.

1101.1.1 Refrigerants other than ammonia. Refrigerant piping design and installation for systems containing a refrigerant other than ammonia, including pressure vessels and pressure relief devices, shall comply with this chapter and ASHRAE 15.

1101.1.2 Ammonia refrigerant. Refrigeration systems using ammonia as the refrigerant shall comply with IIAR 2, IIAR 3, IIAR 4 and IIAR 5 and shall not be required to comply with this chapter.

1101.2 Factory-built equipment and appliances. *Listed* and *labeled* self-contained, factory-built *equipment* and ~~appliances~~*appliances* shall be tested in accordance with ~~UL 207, 412, 471, 1995 or UL/CSA 60335-2-40.~~the applicable standards specified in Table 1101.2. Such *equipment* and ~~appliances~~*appliances* are deemed to meet the design, manufacture and factory test requirements of this code if installed in accordance with their listing and the manufacturer's instructions.

TABLE 1101.2
FACTORY-BUILT EQUIPMENT AND APPLIANCES

EQUIPMENT	STANDARDS
Refrigeration fittings, including press-connect, flared and threaded	UL 109 and UL 207
Air-conditioning equipment	UL 1995 or UL/CSA 60335-2-40
Packaged terminal air conditioners and heat pumps	UL 484 or UL/CSA 60335-2-40
Split-system air conditioners and heat pumps	UL 1995 or UL/CSA 60335-2-40
Dehumidifiers	UL 474 or UL/CSA 60335-2-40
Unit coolers	UL 412 or UL/CSA 60335-2-89
Commercial refrigerators, freezers, beverage coolers and walk-in coolers	UL 471 or UL/CSA 60335-2-89
Refrigerating units and walk-in coolers	UL 427 or UL 60335-2-89
Refrigerant-containing components and accessories	UL 207

1101.3 Protection. Any portion of a refrigeration system that is subject to physical damage shall be protected in an *approved* manner.

1101.4 Water connection. Water supply and discharge connections associated with refrigeration systems shall be made in accordance with this code and the *International Plumbing Code*.

1101.5 Fuel gas connection. Fuel gas devices, *equipment* and ~~appliances~~*appliances* used with refrigeration systems shall be installed in accordance with the *International Fuel Gas Code*.

~~**1101.6 General.** Refrigeration systems shall comply with the requirements of this code and, except as modified by this code, ASHRAE 15. Ammonia-refrigerating systems shall comply with this code and, except as modified by this code, ASHRAE 15 and IIAR 2.~~

~~**1101.7**~~**1101.6 Maintenance.** Mechanical refrigeration systems shall be maintained in proper operating condition, free from accumulations of oil, dirt, waste, excessive corrosion, other debris and leaks.

~~1101.8~~1101.7 Change in refrigerant type. The type of refrigerant in refrigeration systems having a refrigerant circuit containing more than 220 pounds (99.8 kg) of Group A1 or 30 pounds (13.6 kg) of any other group refrigerant shall not be changed without prior notification to the code official and compliance with the applicable code provisions for the new refrigerant type.

[F] ~~1101.9~~1101.8 Refrigerant discharge. Notification of refrigerant discharge shall be provided in accordance with the *International Fire Code*.

~~1101.10~~1101.9 Locking access port caps. Deleted.

SECTION 1102
SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS

1102.1 General. The system classification, allowable refrigerants, maximum quantity, enclosure requirements, location limitations, and field pressure test requirements shall be determined as follows:

1. Determine the refrigeration system's classification, in accordance with Section 1103.3.
2. Determine the refrigerant classification in accordance with Section 1103.1.
3. Determine the maximum allowable quantity of refrigerant in accordance with Section 1104, based on type of refrigerant, system classification and *occupancy*.
4. Determine the system enclosure requirements in accordance with Section 1104.
5. Refrigeration *equipment* and *appliance* location and installation shall be subject to the limitations of Chapter 3.
6. Nonfactory-tested, field-erected *equipment* and ~~appliances~~*appliances* shall be pressure tested in accordance with Section ~~1108.~~1110.

1102.2 Refrigerants. The refrigerant shall be that which the *equipment* or *appliance* was designed to utilize or converted to utilize. Refrigerants not identified in Table 1103.1 shall be *approved* before use.

1102.2.1 Mixing. Refrigerants, including refrigerant blends, with different designations in ASHRAE 34 shall not be mixed in a system.

Exception: Addition of a second refrigerant is allowed where permitted by the *equipment* or *appliance* manufacturer to improve oil return at low temperatures. The refrigerant and amount added shall be in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

1102.2.2 Purity. Refrigerants used in refrigeration systems shall be new, recovered or *reclaimed refrigerants* in accordance with Section 1102.2.2.1, 1102.2.2.2 or 1102.2.2.3. Where required by the *equipment* or *appliance* owner or the code official, the installer shall furnish a signed declaration that the refrigerant used meets the requirements of Section 1102.2.2.1, 1102.2.2.2 or 1102.2.2.3.

Exception: The refrigerant used shall meet the purity specifications set by the manufacturer of the *equipment* or *appliance* in which such refrigerant is used where such specifications are different from that specified in Sections 1102.2.2.1, 1102.2.2.2 and 1102.2.2.3.

1102.2.2.1 New refrigerants. Refrigerants shall be of a purity level specified by the *equipment* or *appliance* manufacturer.

1102.2.2.2 Recovered refrigerants. Refrigerants that are recovered from refrigeration and air-conditioning systems shall not be reused in other than the system from which they were recovered and in other systems of the same owner. *Recovered refrigerants* shall be filtered and dried before reuse. *Recovered refrigerants* that show clear signs of contamination shall not be reused unless reclaimed in accordance with Section 1102.2.2.3.

1102.2.2.3 Reclaimed refrigerants. Used refrigerants shall not be reused in a different owner's *equipment* or ~~appliances~~*appliances* unless tested and found to meet the purity requirements of ~~ARI~~AHRI 700. Contaminated refrigerants shall not be used unless reclaimed and found to meet the purity requirements of ~~ARI~~AHRI 700.

1102.3 Access port protection. Deleted.

SECTION 1103
REFRIGERATION SYSTEM CLASSIFICATION

1103.1 Refrigerant classification. Refrigerants shall be classified in accordance with ASHRAE 34 as listed in Table 1103.1.

TABLE 1103.1
REFRIGERANT CLASSIFICATION, AMOUNT AND OEL

CHEMICAL REFRIGERANT	FORMULA	CHEMICAL NAME OF BLEND	REFRIGERANT CLASSIFICATION	AMOUNT OF REFRIGERANT PER OCCUPIED SPACE				[F] DEGREES OF HAZARD[a]
				Pounds per 1,000 cubic feet	ppm	g/m³	OEL[e]	
R-11[d]	CCl_3F	trichlorofluoromethane	A1	0.39	1,100	6.2	C1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-12[d]	CCl_2F_2	dichlorodifluoromethane	A1	5.6	18,000	90	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-13[d]	$CClF_3$	chlorotrifluoromethane	A1	—	—	—	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-13B1[d]	$CBrF_3$	bromotrifluoromethane	A1	—	—	—	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-14	CF_4	tetrafluoromethane (carbon tetrafluoride)	A1	25	110,000	400	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-22	$CHClF_2$	chlorodifluoromethane	A1	13	59,000	210	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-23	CHF_3	trifluoromethane (fluoroform)	A1	7.3	41,000	120	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-30	CH_2Cl_2	dichloromethane (methylene chloride)	B1	—	—	—	—	—
R-32	CH_2F_2	difluoromethane (methylene fluoride)	A2[~~f~~ c]	4.8	36,000	77	1,000	1-4-0
R-40	CH_3Cl	chloromethane (methyl chloride)	B2	—	—	—	—	—
R-50	CH_4	methane	A3	—	—	—	1,000	—
R-113[d]	CCl_2FCClF_2	1,1,2-trichloro-1,2,2-trifluoroethane	A1	1.2	2,600	20	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-114[d]	$CClF_2CClF_2$	1,2-dichloro-1,1,2,2-tetrafluoroethane	A1	8.7	20,000	140	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-115	$CClF_2CF_3$	chloropentafluoroethane	A1	47	120,000	760	1,000	—
R-116	CF_3CF_3	hexafluoroethane	A1	34	97,000	550	1,000	1-0-0
R-123	$CHCl_2CF_3$	2,2-dichloro-1,1,1-trifluoroethane	B1	3.5	9,100	57	50	2-0-0[b]
R-124	$CHClFCF_3$	2-chloro-1,1,1,2-tetrafluoroethane	A1	3.5	10,000	56	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-125	CHF_2CF_3	pentafluoroethane	A1	23	75,000	370	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-134a	CH_2FCF_3	1,1,1,2-tetrafluoroethane	A1	13	50,000	210	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-141b	CH_3CCl_2F	1,1-dichloro-1-fluoroethane	—	0.78	2,600	12	500	2-1-0
R-142b	CH_3CClF_2	1-chloro-1,1-difluoroethane	A2	5.1	20,000	83	1,000	2-4-0
R-143a	CH_3CF_3	1,1,1-trifluoroethane	A2[~~f~~ c]	4.5	21,000	70	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-152a	CH_3CHF_2	1,1-difluoroethane	A2	2.0	12,000	32	1,000	1-4-0
R-170	CH_3CH_3	ethane	A3	0.54	7,000	8.7	1,000	2-4-0
R-E170	CH_3OCH_3	Methoxymethane (dimethyl ether)	A3	1.0	8,500	16	1,000	—
R-218	$CF_3CF_2CF_3$	octafluoropropane	A1	43	90,000	690	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-227ea	CF_3CHFCF_3	1,1,1,2,3,3,3-heptafluoropropane	A1	36	84,000	580	1,000	—
R-236fa	$CF_3CH_2CF_3$	1,1,1,3,3,3-hexafluoropropane	A1	21	55,000	340	1,000	2-0-0[b]

R-245fa	$CHF_2CH_2CF_3$	1,1,1,3,3-pentafluoropropane	B1	12	34,000	190	300	2-0-0[b]
R-290	$CH_3CH_2CH_3$	propane	A3	0.56	5,300	9.5	1,000	2-4-0
R-C318	$-(CF_2)_4-$	octafluorocyclobutane	A1	41	80,000	660	1,000	—

(continued)

TABLE 1103.1—continued
REFRIGERANT CLASSIFICATION, AMOUNT AND OEL

CHEMICAL REFRIGERANT	FORMULA	CHEMICAL NAME OF BLEND	REFRIGERANT CLASSIFICATION	AMOUNT OF REFRIGERANT PER OCCUPIED SPACE				[F] DEGREES OF HAZARD[a]
				Pounds per 1,000 cubic feet	ppm	g/m^3	OEL[e]	
R-400[d]	zeotrope	R-12/114 (50.0/50.0)	A1	10	28,000	160	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-400[d]	zeotrope	R-12/114 (60.0/40.0)	A1	11	30,000	170	1,000	—
R-401A	zeotrope	R-22/152a/124 (53.0/13.0/34.0)	A1	6.6	27,000	110	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-401B	zeotrope	R-22/152a/124 (61.0/11.0/28.0)	A1	7.2	30,000	120	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-401C	zeotrope	R-22/152a/124 (33.0/15.0/52.0)	A1	5.2	20,000	84	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-402A	zeotrope	R-125/290/22 (60.0/2.0/38.0)	A1	17	66,000	270	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-402B	zeotrope	R-125/290/22 (38.0/2.0/60.0)	A1	15	63,000	240	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-403A	zeotrope	R-290/22/218 (5.0/75.0/20.0)	A2	7.6	33,000	120	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-403B	zeotrope	R-290/22/218 (5.0/56.0/39.0)	A1	18	70,000	290	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-404A	zeotrope	R-125/143a/134a (44.0/52.0/4.0)	A1	31	130,000	500	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-405A	zeotrope	R-22/152a/142b/C318 (45.0/7.0/5.5/42.5)	—	16	57,000	260	1,000	—
R-406A	zeotrope	R-22/600a/142b (55.0/4.0/41.0)	A2	4.7	21,000	25	1,000	—
R-407A	zeotrope	R-32/125/134a (20.0/40.0/40.0)	A1	19	83,000	300	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-407B	zeotrope	R-32/125/134a (10.0/70.0/20.0)	A1	21	79,000	330	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-407C	zeotrope	R-32/125/134a (23.0/25.0/52.0)	A1	18	81,000	290	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-407D	zeotrope	R-32/125/134a (15.0/15.0/70.0)	A1	16	68,000	250	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-407E	zeotrope	R-32/125/134a (25.0/15.0/60.0)	A1	17	80,000	280	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-407F	zeotrope	R-32/125/134a (30.0/30.0/40.0)	A1	20	95,000	320	1,000	—
R-407G	zeotrope	R-32/125/134a (2.5/2.5/95.0)	A1	13	52,000	210	1,000	—
R-407H	zeotrope	R-32/125/134a (32.5/15.0/52.5)	A1	19	92,000	300	1,000	—
R-408A	zeotrope	R-125/143a/22 (7.0/46.0/47.0)	A1	21	95,000	340	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-409A	zeotrope	R-22/124/142b (60.0/25.0/15.0)	A1	7.1	29,000	110	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-409B	zeotrope	R-22/124/142b (65.0/25.0/10.0)	A1	7.3	30,000	120	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-410A	zeotrope	R-32/125 (50.0/50.0)	A1	26	140,000	420	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-410B	zeotrope	R-32/125 (45.0/55.0)	A1	27	140,000	430	1,000	2-0-0[b]

R-411A	zeotrope	R-127/22/152a (1.5/87.5/11.0)	A2	2.9	14,000	46	990	—
R-411B	zeotrope	R-1270/22/152a (3.0/94.0/3.0)	A2	2.8	13,000	45	980	—
R-412A	zeotrope	R-22/218/142b (70.0/5.0/25.0)	A2	5.1	22,000	82	1,000	—
R-413A	zeotrope	R-218/134a/600a (9.0/88.0/3.0)	A2	5.8	22,000	94	1,000	—
R-414A	zeotrope	R-22/124/600a/142b (51.0/28.5/4.0/16.5)	A1	6.4	26,000	100	1,000	—
R-414B	zeotrope	R-22/124/600a/142b (50.0/39.0/1.5/9.5)	A1	6.0	23,000	95	1,000	—

(continued)

TABLE 1103.1—continued
REFRIGERANT CLASSIFICATION, AMOUNT AND OEL

CHEMICAL REFRIGERANT	FORMULA	CHEMICAL NAME OF BLEND	REFRIGERANT CLASSIFICATION	AMOUNT OF REFRIGERANT PER OCCUPIED SPACE				[F] DEGREES OF HAZARD[a]
				Pounds per 1,000 cubic feet	ppm	g/m^3	OEL[e]	
R-415A	zeotrope	R-22/152a (82.0/18.0)	A2	2.9	14,000	47	1,000	—
R-415B	zeotrope	R-22/152a (25.0/75.0)	A2	2.1	12,000	34	1,000	—
R-416A	zeotrope	R-134a/124/600 (59.0/39.5/1.5)	A1	3.9	14,000	62	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-417A	zeotrope	R-125/134a/600 (46.6/50.0/3.4)	A1	3.5	13,000	56	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-417B	zeotrope	R-125/134a/600 (79.0/18.3/2.7)	A1	4.3	15,000	70	1,000	—
R-417C	zeotrope	R-125/134a/600 (19.5/78.8/1.7)	A1	5.4	21,000	87	1,000	—
R-418A	zeotrope	R-290/22/152a (1.5/96.0/2.5)	A2	4.8	22,000	77	1,000	—
R-419A	zeotrope	R-125/134a/E170 (77.0/19.0/4.0)	A2	4.2	15,000	67	1,000	—
R-419B	zeotrope	R-125/134a/E170 (48.5/48.0/3.5)	A2	4.6	17,000	74	1,000	—
R-420A	zeotrope	R-134a/142b (88.0/12.0)	A1	12	45,000	190	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-421A	zeotrope	R-125/134a (58.0/42.0)	A1	17	61,000	280	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-421B	zeotrope	R-125/134a (85.0/15.0)	A1	21	69,000	330	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-422A	zeotrope	R-125/134a/600a (85.1/11.5/3.4)	A1	18	63,000	290	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-422B	zeotrope	R-125/134a/600a (55.0/42.0/3.0)	A1	16	56,000	250	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-422C	zeotrope	R-125/134a/600a (82.0/15.0/3.0)	A1	18	62,000	290	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-422D	zeotrope	R-125/134a/600a (65.1/31.5/3.4)	A1	16	58,000	260	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-422E	zeotrope	R-125/134a/600a (58.0/39.3/2.7)	A1	16	57,000	260	1,000	—
R-423A	zeotrope	R-134a/227ea (52.5/47.5)	A1	19	59,000	310	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-424A	zeotrope	R-125/134a/600a/600/601a (50.5/47.0/0.9/1.0/0.6)	A1	6.2	23,000	100	970	2-0-0[b]
R-425A	zoetrope	R-32/134a/227ea (18.5/69.5/12.0)	A1	16	72,000	260	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-426A	zeotrope	R-125/134a/600a/601a (5.1/93.0/1.3/0.6)	A1	5.2	20,000	83	990	—
R-427A	zeotrope	R-32/125/143a/134a (15.0/25.0/10.0/50.0)	A1	18	79,000	290	1,000	2-1-0

R-428A	zeotrope	R-125/143a/290/600a (77.5/20.0/0.6/1.9)	A1	23	83,000	370	1,000	—
R-429A	zeotrope	R-E170/152a/600a (60.0/10.0/30.0)	A3	0.81	6,300	13	1,000	—
R-430A	zeotrope	R-152a/600a (76.0/24.0)	A3	1.3	8,000	21	1,000	—
R-431A	zeotrope	R-290/152a (71.0/29.0)	A3	0.69	5,500	11	1,000	—
R-432A	zeotrope	R-1270/E170 (80.0/20.0)	A3	0.13	1,200	2.1	700	—
R-433A	zeotrope	R-1270/290 (30.0/70.0)	A3	0.34	3,100	5.5	880	—
R-433B	zeotrope	R-1270/290 (5.0-95.0)	A3	0.51	4,500	8.1	950	—
R-433C	zeotrope	R-1270/290 (25.0-75.0)	A3	0.41	3,600	6.6	790	—
R-434A	zeotrope	R-125/143a/600a (63.2/18.0/16.0/2.8)	A1	20	73,000	320	1,000	—

(continued)

TABLE 1103.1—continued
REFRIGERANT CLASSIFICATION, AMOUNT AND OEL

CHEMICAL REFRIGER-ANT	FORMULA	CHEMICAL NAME OF BLEND	REFRIGERANT CLASSIFICA-TION	AMOUNT OF REFRIGERANT PER OCCUPIED SPACE				[F] DE-GREES OF HAZ-ARD[a]
				Pounds per 1,000 cubic feet	ppm	g/m³	OEL[e]	
R-435A	zeotrope	R-E170/152a (80.0/20.0)	A3	1.1	8,500	17	1,000	—
R-436A	zeotrope	R-290/600a (56.0/44.0)	A3	0.50	4,000	8.1	1,000	—
R-436B	zeotrope	R-290/600a (52.0/48.0)	A3	0.51	4,000	8.1	1,000	—
R-437A	zeotrope	R-125/134a/600/601 (19.5/78.5/1.4/0.6)	A1	5.0	19,000	82	990	—
R-438A	zeotrope	R-32/125/134a/600/601a (8.5/45.0/44.2/1.7/0.6)	A1	4.9	20,000	79	990	—
R-439A	zeotrope	R-32/125/600a (50.0/47.0/3.0)	A2	4.7	26,000	76	990	—
R-440A	zeotrope	R-290/134a/152a (0.6/1.6/97.8)	A2	1.9	12,000	31	1,000	—
R-441A	zeotrope	R-170/290/600a/600 (3.1/54.8/6.0/36.1)	A3	0.39	3,200	6.3	1,000	—
R-442A	zeotrope	R-32/125/134a/152a/227ea (31.0/31.0/30.0/3.0/5.0)	A1	21	100,000	330	1,000	—
R-443A	zeotrope	R-1270/290/600a (55.0/40.0/5.0)	A3	0.19	1,700	3.1	580	—
R-444A	zeotrope	R-32/152a/1234ze(E) (12.0/5.0/83.0)	A2[c]	5.1	21,000	81	850	—
R-444B	zeotrope	R-32/152a/1234ze(E) (41.5/10.0/48.5)	A2[c]	4.3	23,000	69	890	—
R-445A	zeotrope	R-744/134a/1234ze(E) (6.0/9.0/85.0)	A2[c]	4.2	16,000	67	930	—
R-446A	zeotrope	R-32/1234ze(E)/600 (68.0/29.0/3.0)	A2[c]	2.5	16,000	39	960	—
R-447A	zeotrope	R-32/125/1234ze(E) (68.0/3.5/28.5)	A2[c]	2.6	16,000	42	900	—
R-447B	zeotrope	R-32/125/1234ze(E) (68.0/8.0/24.0)	A2[c]	23	30,000	360	970	—
R-448A	zeotrope	R-32/125/1234yf/134a/1234ze(E) (26.0/26.0/20.0/21.0/7.0)	A1	24	110,000	390	890	—
R-449A	zeotrope	R-32/125/1234yf/134a (24.3/24.7/25.3/25.7)	A1	23	100,000	370	830	—

R-449B	zeotrope	R-32/125/1234yf/134a (25.2/24.3/23.2/27.3)	A1	23	100,000	370	850	—
R-449C	zeotrope	R-32/125/1234yf/134a (20.0/20.0/31.0/29.0)	A1	23	98,000	360	800	—
R-450A	zeotrope	R-134a/1234ze(E) (42.0/58.0)	A1	20	72,000	320	880	—
R-451A	zeotrope	R-1234yf/134a (89.8/10.2)	A2[c]	5.3	18,000	81	520	—
R-451B	zeotrope	R-1234yf/134a (88.8/11.2)	A2[c]	5.3	18,000	81	530	—
R-452A	zeotrope	R-32/125/1234yf (11.0/59.0/30.0)	A1	27	10,000	440	780	—
R-452B	zeotrope	R-32/125/1234yf (67.0/7.0/26.0)	A2[c]	23	30,000	360	870	—
R-452C	zeotrope	R-32/125/1234yf (12.5/61.0/26.5)	A1	27	100,000	430	800	—
R-453A	zeotrope	R-32/125/134a/227ea/600/601a (20.0/20.0/53.8/5.0/0.6/0.6)	A1	7.8	34,000	120	1,000	—
R-454A	zeotrope	R-32/1234yf (35.0/65.0)	A2[c]	28	16,000	450	690	—
R-454B	zeotrope	R-32/1234yf (68.9/31.1)	A2[c]	22	19,000	360	850	—

(continued)

TABLE 1103.1—continued
REFRIGERANT CLASSIFICATION, AMOUNT AND OEL

CHEMICAL REFRIGERANT	FORMULA	CHEMICAL NAME OF BLEND	REFRIGERANT CLASSIFICATION	AMOUNT OF REFRIGERANT PER OCCUPIED SPACE				[F] DEGREES OF HAZARD[a]
				Pounds per 1,000 cubic feet	ppm	g/m^3	OEL[e]	
R-454C	zeotrope	R-32/1234yf (21.5/78.5)	A2[c]	29	19,000	460	620	—
R-455A	zeotrope	R-744/32/1234yf (3.0/21.5/75.5)	A2[c]	23	30,000	380	650	—
R-456A	zeotrope	R-32/134a/1234ze(E) (6.0/45.0/49.0)	A1	20	77,000	320	900	—
R-457A	zeotrope	R-32/1234yf/152a (18.0/70.0/12.0)	A2[c]	25	15,000	400	650	—
R-458A	zeotrope	R-32/125/134a/227ea/236fa (20.5/4.0/61.4/13.5/0.6)	A1	18	76,000	280	1,000	—
R-459A	zeotrope	R-32/1234yf/1234ze(E) (68.0/26.0/6.0)	A2[c]	23	27,000	360	870	—
R-459B	zeotrope	R-32/1234yf/1234ze(E) (21.0/69.0/10.0)	A2[c]	30	16,000	470	640	—
R-460A	zeotrope	R-32/125/134a/1234ze(E) (12.0/52.0/14.0/22.0)	A1	24	92,000	380	650	—
R-460B	zeotrope	R-32/125/134a/1234ze(E) (28.0/25.0/20.0/27.0)	A1	25	120,000	400	950	—
R-461A	zeotrope	R-125/143a/134a/227ea/600a (55.0/5.0/32.0/5.0/3.0)	A1	17	61,000	270	1,000	—
R-462A	zeotrope	R-32/125/143a/134a/600 (9.0/42.0/2.0/44.0/3.0)	A2	3.9	16,000	62	1,000	—
R-463A	zeotrope	R-744/32/125/1234yf/134a (6.0/36.0/30.0/14.0/14.0)	A1	19	98,000	300	990	—
R-500[e]	azeotrope	R-12/152a (73.8/26.2)	A1	7.6	30,000	120	1,000	2-0-0[b]

R-501[d]	azeotrope	R-22/12 (75.0/25.0)	A1	13	54,000	210	1,000	—
R-502[e]	azeotrope	R-22/115 (48.8/51.2)	A1	21	73,000	330	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-503[e]	azeotrope	R-23/13 (40.1/59.9)	—	—	—	—	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-504[d]	azeotrope	R-32/115 (48.2/51.8)	—	28	140,000	450	1,000	—
R-507A	azeotrope	R-125/143a (50.0/50.0)	A1	32	130,000	520	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-508A	azeotrope	R-23/116 (39.0/61.0)	A1	14	55,000	220	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-508B	azeotrope	R-23/116 (46.0/54.0)	A1	13	52,000	200	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-509A	azeotrope	R-22/218 (44.0/56.0)	A1	24	75,000	390	1,000	2-0-0[b]
R-510A	azeotrope	R-E170/600a (88.0/12.0)	A3	0.87	7,300	14	1,000	—
R-511A	azeotrope	R-290/E170 (95.0/5.0)	A3	0.59	5,300	9.5	1,000	—
R-512A	azeotrope	R-134a/152a (5.0/95.0)	A2	1.9	11,000	31	1,000	—
R-513A	azeotrope	R-1234yf/134a (56.0/44.0)	A1	20	72,000	320	650	—
R-513B	azeotrope	R-1234yf/134a (58.5/41.5)	A1	21	74,000	330	640	—
R-514A	azeotrope	R-1336mzz(S)/1130(E) (74.7/25.3)	B1	0.86	2,400	14	320	—
R-515A	azeotrope	R-1234ze(E)/227ea (88.0/12.0)	A1	19	62,000	300	810	—
R-516A	azeotrope	R-1234yf/134a/152a (77.5/8.5/14.0)	A2	7.0	27,000	110	590	—

(continued)

TABLE 1103.1—continued
REFRIGERANT CLASSIFICATION, AMOUNT AND OEL

CHEMICAL REFRIGERANT	FORMULA	CHEMICAL NAME OF BLEND	REFRIGER-ANT CLASSI-FICATION	AMOUNT OF REFRIGERANT PER OCCUPIED SPACE				[F] DE-GREES OF HAZ-ARD[a]
				Pounds per 1,000 cubic feet	ppm	g/m^3	OEL[e]	
R-600	$CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_3$	butane	A3	0.15	1,000	2.4	1,000	1-4-0
R-600a	$CH(CH_3)_2CH_3$	2-methylpropane (isobutane)	A3	0.59	4,000	9.6	1,000	2-4-0
R-601	$CH_3CH_2CH_2$ CH_2CH_3	pentane	A3	0.18	1,000	2.9	600	—
R-601a	$(CH_3)_2CHCH_2CH_3$	2-methylbutane (isopentane)	A3	0.18	1,000	2.9	600	—
R-610	$CH_3CH_2OCH_2CH_3$	ethoxyethane (ethyl ether)	—	—	—	—	400	—
R-611	$HCOOCH_3$	methyl formate	B2	—	—	—	100	—
~~R-717~~	~~NH_3~~	~~ammonia~~	~~B2[f]~~	~~0.014~~	~~320~~	~~0.22~~	~~25~~	~~3-3-0[c]~~
R-718	H_2O	water	A1	—	—	—	—	0-0-0
R-744	CO_2	carbon dioxide	A1	4.5	40,000	72	5,000	2-0-0[b]
R-1130(E)	CHCl=CHCl	trans-1,2-dichloroethene	B1	0.25	1,000	4	200	—
R-1132a	$CF_2=CH_2$	1,1-difluoroethylene	A2	2.0	13,000	33	500	—

R-1150	$CH_2=CH_2$	ethene (ethylene)	A3	—	—	—	200	1-4-2
R-1224yd(Z)	$CF_3CF=CHCl$	(Z)-1-chloro-2,3,3,3-tetrafluoroethylene	A1	23	60,000	360	1,000	—
R-1233zd(E)	$CF_3CH=CHCl$	trans-1-chloro-3,3,3-trifluoro-1-propene	A1	5.3	16,000	85	800	—
R-1234yf	$CF_3CF=CH_2$	2,3,3,3-tetrafluoro-1-propene	A2~~[f]~~[c]	4.7	16,000	75	500	—
R-1234ze(E)	$CF_3CH=CHF$	trans-1,3,3,3-tetrafluoro-1-propene	A2~~[f]~~[c]	4.7	16,000	75	800	—
R-1270	$CH_3CH=CH_2$	Propene (propylene)	A3	0.1	1,000	1.7	500	1-4-1
R-1336mzz(Z)	$CF_3CHCHCF_3$	cis-1,1,1,4,4,4-hexaflouro-2-butene	A1	5.4	13,000	87	500	—

For SI: 1 pound = 0.454 kg, 1 cubic foot = 0.0283m^3

a. Degrees of hazard are for health, fire, and reactivity, respectively, in accordance with NFPA 704.

b. Reduction to 1-0-0 is allowed if analysis satisfactory to the code official shows that the maximum concentration for a rupture or full loss of refrigerant charge would not exceed the IDLH, considering both the refrigerant quantity and room volume.

c. ~~For installations that are entirely outdoors, use 3-1-0.~~The ASHRAE Standard 34 flammability classification for this refrigerant is 2L, which is a subclass of Class 2.

d. Class I ozone depleting substance; prohibited for new installations.

e. Occupational Exposure Limit based on the OSHA PEL, ACGIH TLV-TWA, the ~~AIHA~~ TERA WEEL or consistent value on a ~~time-weigthed~~ time-weighed average (TWA) basis (unless noted C for ceiling) for an 8 hr/d and 40 hr/wk.

~~f. The ASHRAE Standard 34 flammability classification for this refrigerant is 2L, which is subclass of Class 2.~~

1103.2 Occupancy classification. Locations of refrigerating systems are described by *occupancy* classifications that consider the ability of people to respond to potential exposure to refrigerants. Where *equipment* or ~~appliances~~*appliances*, other than piping, are located outside a building and within 20 feet (6096 mm) of any building opening, such *equipment* or ~~appliances~~*appliances* shall be governed by the *occupancy* classification of the building. *Occupancy* classifications shall be defined as follows:

1. Institutional *occupancy* is that portion of premises from which occupants cannot readily leave without the assistance of others because they are disabled, debilitated or confined. Institutional *occupancies* include, among others, hospitals, nursing homes, asylums and spaces containing locked cells.
2. Public assembly *occupancy* is that portion of premises where large numbers of people congregate and from which occupants cannot quickly vacate the space. Public assembly *occupancies* include, among others, auditoriums, ballrooms, classrooms, passenger depots, restaurants and theaters.
3. Residential *occupancy* is that portion of premises that provides the occupants with complete independent living facilities, including permanent provisions for living, sleeping, eating, cooking and sanitation. Residential *occupancies* include, among others, dormitories, hotels, multiunit apartments and private residences.
4. Commercial *occupancy* is that portion of premises where people transact business, receive personal service or purchase food and other goods. Commercial *occupancies* include, among others, office and professional buildings, markets (but not large mercantile occupancies) and work or storage areas that do not qualify as industrial *occupancies*.
5. Large mercantile *occupancy* is that portion of premises where more than 100 persons congregate on levels above or below street level to purchase personal merchandise.
6. Industrial *occupancy* is that portion of premises that is not open to the public, where access by authorized persons is controlled, and that is used to manufacture, process or store goods such as chemicals, food, ice, meat or petroleum.
7. Mixed *occupancy* occurs where two or more *occupancies* are located within the same building. Where each *occupancy* is isolated from the rest of the building by tight walls, floors and ceilings and by self-closing doors, the requirements for each *occupancy* shall apply to its portion of the building. Where the various *occupancies* are not so isolated, the *occupancy* having the most stringent requirements shall be the governing *occupancy*.

1103.3 System classification. Refrigeration systems shall be classified according to the degree of probability that refrigerant leaked from a failed connection, seal or component could enter an occupied area. The distinction is based on the basic design or location of the components.

1103.3.1 Low-probability systems. Double-indirect open-spray systems, indirect closed systems and indirect-vented closed systems shall be classified as low-probability systems, provided that all refrigerant-containing piping and fittings are isolated ~~when~~where the quantities in Table 1103.1 are exceeded.

1103.3.2 High-probability systems. Direct systems and indirect open-spray systems shall be classified as high-probability systems.

Exception: An indirect open-spray system shall not be required to be classified as a high-probability system if the pressure of the secondary coolant is at all times (operating and standby) greater than the pressure of the refrigerant.

SECTION 1104
SYSTEM APPLICATION REQUIREMENTS

1104.1 General. The refrigerant, occupancy and system classification cited in this section shall be determined in accordance with Sections 1103.1, 1103.2 and 1103.3, respectively.

1104.2 Machinery room. Except as provided in Sections 1104.2.1 and 1104.2.2, all components containing the refrigerant shall be located either outdoors or in a *machinery room* where the quantity of refrigerant in an independent circuit of a system exceeds the amounts shown in Table 1103.1. For refrigerant blends not listed in Table 1103.1, the same requirement shall apply ~~when~~where the amount for any blend component exceeds that indicated in Table 1103.1 for that component. This requirement shall also apply ~~when~~where the combined amount of the blend components exceeds a limit of 69,100 parts per million (ppm) by volume. ~~Machinery rooms~~*Machinery rooms* required by this section shall be constructed and maintained in accordance with Section 1105 for Group A1 and B1 refrigerants and in accordance with Sections 1105 and 1106 for Group A2, B2, A3 and B3 refrigerants.

Exceptions:

1. ~~Machinery rooms~~*Machinery rooms* are not required for *listed equipment* and ~~appliances~~*appliances* containing not more than 6.6 pounds (3 kg) of refrigerant, regardless of the refrigerant's safety classification, where installed in accordance with the ~~equipment's~~*equipment's* or ~~appliance's~~*appliance's* listing and the *equipment* or *appliance* manufacturer's installation instructions.
2. Piping in compliance with Section 1107 is allowed in other locations to connect components installed in a *machinery room* with those installed outdoors.

1104.2.1 Institutional occupancies. The amounts shown in Table 1103.1 shall be reduced by 50 percent for all areas of institutional ~~occupancies~~*occupancies* except kitchens, laboratories and mortuaries. The total of all Group A2, B2, A3 and B3 refrigerants shall not exceed 550 pounds (250 kg) in occupied areas or ~~machinery rooms~~*machinery rooms*.

1104.2.2 Industrial occupancies and refrigerated rooms. This section applies only to rooms and spaces that: are within industrial ~~occupancies~~*occupancies*; contain a refrigerant evaporator; are maintained at temperatures below 68°F (20°C); and ~~refrigerated rooms~~are used for manufacturing, food and beverage preparation, meat cutting, other processes and storage. Where a *machinery* room~~Machinery rooms are~~ would otherwise be required by Section 1104.2, a *machinery room* shall not be required where all of the following conditions are met:

1. The space containing the machinery is separated from other ~~occupancies~~*occupancies* by tight construction with tight-fitting doors.
2. Access is restricted to authorized personnel.
3. ~~The floor area per occupant is not less than 100 square feet (9.3 m2) where machinery is located on floor levels with exits more than 6.6 feet (2012 mm) above the ground. Where provided with egress directly to the outdoors or into *approved* building exits, the minimum floor area shall not apply.~~

~~4.~~3. Refrigerant detectors are installed as required for ~~machinery rooms~~*machinery rooms* in accordance with Section 1105.3.

Exception: Refrigerant detectors are not required in unoccupied areas that contain only continuous piping that does not include valves, valve assemblies, *equipment* or *equipment* connections.

~~5.~~4. Surfaces having temperatures exceeding 800°F (427°C) and open flames are not present where any Group A2, B2, A3 or B3 refrigerant is used (see Section 1104.3.4).

~~6.~~5. All electrical *equipment* and ~~appliances~~*appliances* conform to Class I, Division 2, *hazardous location* classification requirements of NFPA 70 where the quantity of any Group A2, B2, A3 or B3 refrigerant~~refrigerant, other than ammonia,~~ in a single independent circuit would exceed 25 percent of the lower flammability limit (LFL) upon release to the space.

~~7.~~6. All refrigerant-containing parts in systems with a total connected compressor power exceeding 100 horsepower (hp) (74.6 kW) ~~drive power,~~ except evaporators used for refrigeration or dehumidification, condensers used for heating, control and pressure relief valves for ~~either;~~either, low-probability pumps and connecting piping~~, shall be~~ are located either outdoors or in a *machinery room*.

1104.3 Refrigerant restrictions. Refrigerant applications, maximum quantities and use shall be restricted in accordance with Sections 1104.3.1 through 1104.3.4.

1104.3.1 Air conditioning for human comfort. In other than industrial ~~occupancies~~*occupancies* where the quantity in a single independent circuit does not exceed the amount in Table 1103.1, Group B1, B2 and B3 refrigerants shall not be used in high-probability systems for ~~air-conditioning~~air conditioning for human comfort.

1104.3.2 Nonindustrial occupancies. Group A2 and B2 refrigerants shall not be used in high-probability systems where the quantity of refrigerant in any independent refrigerant circuit exceeds the amount shown in Table 1104.3.2. Group A3 and B3 refrigerants shall not be used except where *approved*.

Exception: This section does not apply to laboratories where the floor area per occupant is not less than 100 square feet (9.3 m^2).

TABLE 1104.3.2
MAXIMUM PERMISSIBLE QUANTITIES OF REFRIGERANTS

TYPE OF REFRIGERATION SYSTEM	MAXIMUM POUNDS FOR VARIOUS OCCUPANCIES			
	Institutional	Public ~~Assembly~~assembly	Residential	All other occupancies
Sealed absorption system				
In exit access	0	0	3.3	3.3
In adjacent outdoor locations	0	0	22	22
In other than exit access	0	6.6	6.6	6.6
Unit systems				
In other than exit access	0	0	6.6	6.6

For SI: 1 pound = 0.454 kg.

1104.3.3 All occupancies. The total of all Group A2, B2, A3 and B3 refrigerants ~~other than R-717, ammonia,~~ shall not exceed 1,100 pounds (499 kg) except where *approved*.

1104.3.4 Protection from refrigerant decomposition. Where any device having an open flame or surface temperature greater than 800°F (427°C) is used in a room containing more than 6.6 pounds (3 kg) of refrigerant in a single independent circuit, a hood and exhaust system shall be provided in accordance with Section 510. Such exhaust system shall exhaust *combustion* products to the outdoors.

Exception: A hood and exhaust system shall not be required where any of the following apply:

1. The refrigerant is ~~R-717,~~ R-718 (water) or ~~R-744.~~R-744 (carbon dioxide).
2. The *combustion* air is ducted from the outdoors in a manner that prevents leaked refrigerant from being combusted.
3. A refrigerant detector is used to stop the *combustion* in the event of a refrigerant leak (see Sections 1105.3 and 1105.5).

1104.4 Volume calculations. Volume calculations shall be in accordance with Sections 1104.4.1 through 1104.4.3.

1104.4.1 Noncommunicating spaces. Where the refrigerant-containing parts of a system are located in one or more spaces that do not communicate through permanent openings or HVAC ducts, the volume of the smallest, enclosed occupied space shall be used to determine the permissible quantity of refrigerant in the system.

1104.4.2 Communicating spaces. Where an evaporator or condenser is located in an air duct system, the volume of the smallest, enclosed occupied space served by the duct system shall be used to determine the maximum allowable quantity of refrigerant in the system.

Exception: If airflow to any enclosed space cannot be reduced below one-quarter of its maximum, the entire space served by the air duct system shall be used to determine the maximum allowable quantity of refrigerant in the system.

1104.4.3 Plenums. Where the space above a suspended ceiling is continuous and part of the supply or return air *plenum* system, this space shall be included in calculating the volume of the enclosed space.

SECTION 1105
MACHINERY ROOM, GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

[BF] 1105.1 Design and construction. ~~Machinery rooms~~*Machinery rooms* shall be designed and constructed in accordance with the *International Building Code* and this section.

1105.2 Openings. Ducts and air handlers in the *machinery room* that operate at a lower pressure than the room shall be sealed to prevent any refrigerant leakage from entering the airstream.

[F] 1105.3 Refrigerant detector. Refrigerant detectors in ~~machinery rooms~~*machinery rooms* shall be provided as required by ~~Section~~Sections ~~606.8~~608.9 and 608.18 of the *International Fire Code*.

1105.4 Tests. Periodic tests of the mechanical ventilating system shall be performed in accordance with manufacturer's specifications and as required by the code official.

1105.5 Fuel-burning appliances. Fuel-burning ~~appliances~~*appliances* and *equipment* having open flames and that use *combustion* air from the *machinery room* shall not be installed in a *machinery room*.

Exceptions:

1. Where the refrigerant is ~~carbon dioxide or water.~~water (R-718) or carbon dioxide (R-744).
2. Fuel-burning ~~appliances~~*appliances* shall not be prohibited in the same *machinery room* with refrigerant-containing *equipment* or ~~appliances~~*appliances* where *combustion* air is ducted from outside the *machinery room* and sealed in such a manner as to prevent any refrigerant leakage from entering the *combustion* chamber, or where a refrigerant vapor detector is employed to automatically shut off the *combustion* process in the event of refrigerant leakage.

1105.6 Ventilation. ~~Machinery rooms~~*Machinery rooms* shall be mechanically ventilated to the outdoors.

Exception: Where a refrigerating system is located outdoors more than 20 feet (6096 mm) from any building opening and is enclosed by a penthouse, lean-to or other open structure, natural or mechanical ventilation shall be provided. Location of the openings shall be based on the relative density of the refrigerant to air. The free-aperture cross section for the ventilation of the *machinery room* shall be not less than:

$$F = \sqrt{G}$$ **(Equation 11-1)**

For SI: $F = 0.138\sqrt{G}$

where:

F = The free opening area in square feet (m^2).

G = The mass of refrigerant in pounds (kg) in the largest system, any part of which is located in the *machinery room*.

1105.6.1 Discharge location. The discharge of the air shall be to the outdoors in accordance with Chapter 5. Exhaust from mechanical ventilation systems shall be discharged not less than 20 feet (6096 mm) from a property line or openings into buildings.

1105.6.1.1 Indoor exhaust opening location. Indoor mechanical exhaust intake openings shall be located where refrigerant leakage is likely to concentrate based on the refrigerant's relative density to air, and the locations of the air current paths and refrigerating machinery.

1105.6.2 Makeup air. Provisions shall be made for *makeup air* to replace that being exhausted. Openings for *makeup air* shall be located to avoid intake of *exhaust air*. Supply and exhaust ducts to the *machinery room* shall not serve any other area, shall be constructed in accordance with Chapter 5 and shall be covered with corrosion-resistant screen of not less than $^{1}/_{4}$-inch (6.4 mm) mesh.

1105.6.3 Ventilation rate. ~~For other than ammonia systems, the mechanical~~Mechanical ventilation systems shall be capable of exhausting the minimum quantity of air both at normal operating and emergency conditions, as required by Sections 1105.6.3.1 and 1105.6.3.2. ~~The minimum required emergency ventilation rate for ammonia shall be 30 air changes per hour in accordance with IIAR2.~~ Multiple fans or multispeed fans shall be allowed to produce the emergency ventilation rate and to obtain a reduced airflow for normal ventilation.

1105.6.3.1 Quantity—normal ventilation. During occupied conditions, the mechanical ventilation system shall exhaust the larger of the following:

1. Not less than 0.5 cfm per square foot (0.0025 $m^3/s \cdot m^2$) of *machinery room* area or 20 cfm (0.009 m^3/s) per person.
2. A volume required to limit the room temperature rise to 18°F (10°C) taking into account the ambient heating effect of all machinery in the room.

1105.6.3.2 Quantity—emergency conditions. Upon actuation of the refrigerant detector required in Section 1105.3, the mechanical ventilation system shall *exhaust air* from the *machinery room* in the following quantity:

$$Q = 100 \times \sqrt{G}$$ **(Equation 11-2)**

For SI: $Q = 0.07 \times \sqrt{G}$

where:

Q = The airflow in cubic feet per minute (m^3/s).

G = The design mass of refrigerant in pounds (kg) in the largest system, any part of which is located in the *machinery room*.

1105.7 Termination of relief devices. Pressure relief devices, fusible plugs and purge systems located within the *machinery room* shall terminate outside of the structure at a location not less than 15 feet (4572 mm) above the adjoining grade level and not less than 20 feet (6096 mm) from any window, ventilation opening or exit.

~~**1105.8 Ammonia discharge.** Pressure relief valves for ammonia systems shall discharge in accordance with ASHRAE 15.~~

[F] ~~1105.9~~1105.8 Emergency pressure control system. ~~Permanently installed refrigeration systems containing more than 6.6 pounds (3 kg) of flammable, toxic or highly toxic refrigerant or ammonia~~Emergency pressure control systems shall be provided ~~with an emergency pressure control system~~ in accordance with Section ~~606.10~~608.11 of the *International Fire Code*.

[BE] 1105.9 Means of egress. *Machinery rooms* larger than 1,000 square feet (93 m^2) shall have not less than two exits or exit access doorways. Where two exit access doorways are required, one such doorway is permitted to be served by a fixed ladder or an alternating tread device. Exit access doorways shall be separated by a horizontal distance equal to one-half the maximum horizontal dimension of the room. All portions of *machinery rooms* shall be within 150 feet (45 720 mm) of an exit or exit access doorway. An increase in exit access travel distance is permitted in accordance with Section 1017.1 of the *International Building Code*. Exit and exit access doorways shall swing in the direction of egress travel and shall be equipped with panic hardware, regardless of the occupant load served. Exit and exit access doorways shall be tight fitting and self-closing.

SECTION 1106
MACHINERY ROOM, SPECIAL REQUIREMENTS

1106.1 General. Where required by Section 1104.2, the *machinery room* shall meet the requirements of this section in addition to the requirements of Section 1105.

1106.2 Elevated temperature. There shall not be an open flame-producing device or continuously operating hot surface over 800°F (427°C) permanently installed in the room.

~~**1106.3 Ammonia room ventilation.** Ventilation systems in ammonia machinery rooms shall be operated continuously at the ventilation rate specified in Section 1105.6.3.~~

~~**Exceptions:**~~

~~1. Machinery rooms equipped with a vapor detector that will automatically start the ventilation system at the ventilation rate specified in Section 1105.6.3, and that will actuate an alarm at a detection level not to exceed 1,000 ppm.~~

~~2. Machinery rooms conforming to the Class 1, Division 2, *hazardous location* classification requirements of NFPA 70.~~

~~**1106.4**~~**1106.3 Flammable refrigerants.** Where refrigerants of Groups A2, A3, B2 and B3 are used, the *machinery room* shall conform to the Class I, Division 2, *hazardous location* classification requirements of NFPA 70.

Exception: ~~Ammonia machinery rooms that are provided with ventilation in accordance with Section 1106.3.~~*Machinery rooms* for systems containing Group A2L *refrigerants* that are provided with ventilation in accordance with Section 1106.4.

~~1106.5~~**1106.4 Special requirements for Group A2L refrigerant machinery rooms.** *Machinery rooms* with systems containing Group A2L *refrigerants* that do not conform to the Class I, Division 2, hazardous location electrical requirements of NFPA 70, as permitted by the exception to Section 1106.3, shall comply with Sections 1106.4.1 through 1106.4.3.

Exception: *Machinery rooms* conforming to the Class I, Division 2, hazardous location classification requirements of NFPA 70 are not required to comply with Sections 1106.4.1 and 1106.4.2.

[F] 1106.4.1 Ventilation system activation. Ventilation shall be activated by the refrigerant detection system in the *machinery room*. Refrigerant detection systems shall be in accordance with Section 608.9 of the *International Fire Code* and all of the following:

1. The detectors shall activate at or below a refrigerant concentration of 25 percent of the LFL.
2. Upon activation, the detection system shall activate the emergency ventilation system required by Section 1106.4.2.
3. The detection, signaling and control circuits shall be supervised.

1106.4.2 Emergency ventilation system. An emergency ventilation system shall be provided at the minimum exhaust rate specified in ASHRAE 15 or Table 1106.4.2. Shutdown of the emergency ventilation system shall be by manual means.

TABLE 1106.4.2
MINIMUM EXHAUST RATES

REFRIGERANT	Q(m/sec)	Q(cfm)
R32	15.4	32,600
R143	13.6	28,700
R444A	6.46	13,700
R444B	10.6	22,400
R445A	7.83	16,600
R446A	23.9	50,700

R447A	23.8	50,400
R451A	7.04	15,000
R451B	7.05	15,000
R1234yf	7.80	16,600
R1234ze(E)	5.92	12,600

1106.4.3 Emergency ventilation system discharge. The emergency ventilation system point of discharge to the atmosphere shall be located outside of the structure at not less than 15 feet (4572 mm) above the adjoining grade level and not less than 20 feet (6096 mm) from any window, *ventilation* opening or *exit*.

[F] 1106.5 Remote controls. Remote control of the mechanical ~~equipment~~*equipment* and ~~appliances~~*appliances* located in the ~~machinery room~~*machinery room* shall comply with Sections 1106.5.1 and 1106.5.2.

[F] 1106.5.1 Refrigeration system emergency shutoff. A clearly identified switch of the break-glass type or with an approved tamper-resistant cover shall provide off-only control of refrigerant compressors, refrigerant pumps, and normally closed, automatic refrigerant valves located in the ~~machinery room~~*machinery room*. Additionally, this ~~equipment~~*equipment* shall be automatically shut off whenever the refrigerant vapor concentration in the ~~machinery room~~*machinery room* exceeds the vapor detector's upper detection limit or 25 percent of the LEL, whichever is lower.

[F] 1106.5.2 Ventilation system. A clearly identified switch of the break-glass type or with an approved tamper-resistant cover shall provide on-only control of the *machinery room* ventilation fans.

[F] 1106.6 Emergency signs and labels. Refrigeration units and systems shall be provided with *approved* emergency signs, charts, and labels in accordance with the *International Fire Code*.

SECTION 1107
~~REFRIGERANT~~ PIPING MATERIAL

1107.1 ~~General.~~Piping. ~~The design of refrigerant piping shall be in accordance with ASME B31.5. Refrigerant piping shall be installed, tested and placed in operation in accordance with this chapter.~~Refrigerant piping material for other than R-717 (ammonia) systems shall conform to the requirements in this section. Piping material and installations for R-717 (ammonia) refrigeration systems shall comply with IIAR 2.

~~**1107.2 Piping location.** Refrigerant piping that crosses an open space that affords passageway in any building shall be not less than 7 feet 3 inches (2210 mm) above the floor unless the piping is located against the ceiling of such space. Refrigerant piping shall not be placed in any elevator, dumbwaiter or other shaft containing a moving object or in any shaft that has openings to living quarters or to means of egress. Refrigerant piping shall not be installed in an enclosed vertical or horizontal exit enclosure~~.

~~**1107.2.1 Piping in concrete floors.** Refrigerant piping installed in concrete floors shall be encased in pipe ducts. The piping shall be isolated and supported to prevent damaging vibration, stress and corrosion.~~

~~**1107.2.2 Refrigerant penetrations.** Refrigerant piping shall not penetrate floors, ceilings or roofs.~~

~~**Exceptions:**~~

~~1. Penetrations connecting the basement and the first floor.~~

~~2. Penetrations connecting the top floor and a machinery penthouse or roof installation.~~

~~3. Penetrations connecting adjacent floors served by the refrigeration system.~~

~~4. Penetrations by piping in a direct system where the refrigerant quantity does not exceed Table 1103.1 for the smallest occupied space through which the piping passes.~~

~~5. In other than industrial occupancies and where the refrigerant quantity exceeds Table 1103.1 for the smallest space, penetrations for piping that connects separate pieces of *equipment* that are either:~~

~~5.1. Enclosed by an *approved* gas-tight, fire-resistive duct or shaft with openings to those floors served by the refrigeration system.~~

~~5.2. Located on the exterior of the building where vented to the outdoors or to the space served by the system and not used as an air shaft, closed court or similar space.~~

1107.2 Used materials. Used pipe, fittings, valves and other materials that are to be reused shall be clean and free from foreign materials and shall be approved for reuse.

~~**1107.3 Pipe enclosures.** Rigid or flexible metal enclosures or pipe ducts shall be provided for soft, annealed copper tubing and used for refrigerant piping erected on the premises and containing other than Group A1 or B1 refrigerants. Enclosures shall not be required for connections between condensing units and the nearest riser box(es), provided such connections do not exceed 6 feet (1829 mm) in length.~~

1107.3 Materials rating. Materials, joints and connections shall be rated for the operating temperature and pressure of the refrigerant system. Materials shall be suitable for the type of refrigerant and type of lubricant in the refrigerant system. Magnesium alloys shall not be used in contact with any halogenated refrigerants. Aluminum, zinc, magnesium and their alloys shall not be used in contact with R-40 (methyl chloride).

~~**1107.4 Condensation.** Refrigerating piping and fittings, brine piping and fittings that, during normal operation, will reach a surface temperature below the dew point of the surrounding air, and are located in spaces or areas where condensation will cause a safety hazard to the building occupants, structure, electrical *equipment* or any other *equipment* or appliances, shall be protected in an *approved* manner to prevent such damage.~~

1107.4 Piping materials standards. Refrigerant pipe shall conform to one or more of the standards listed in Table 1107.4. The exterior of the pipe shall be protected from corrosion and degradation.

TABLE 1107.4
REFRIGERANT PIPE

PIPING MATERIAL	STANDARD
Aluminum tube	ASTM B210/ASTM B210M, ASTM B491/B491M
Brass (copper alloy) pipe	ASTM B43
Copper linesets	ASTM B280, ASTM B1003
Copper pipe	ASTM B42, ASTM B302
Copper tube[a]	ASTM B68, ASTM B75, ASTM B88, ASTM B280, ASTM B819
Steel pipe[b]	ASTM A53, ASTM A106
Steel tube	ASTM A254, ASTM A334

a. Soft annealed copper tubing larger than $1^3/_8$ inch (35 mm) O.D. shall not be used for field-assembled refrigerant piping unless it is protected from mechanical damage.
b. ASTM A53, Type F steel pipe shall not be used for refrigerant lines having an operating temperature less than -20°F (-29°C).

1107.4.1 Steel pipe Groups A2, A3, B2, and B3. The minimum weight of steel pipe for Group A2, A3, B2 and B3 refrigerants shall be Schedule 80 for sizes $1^1/_2$ inches or less in diameter.

~~**1107.5 Materials for refrigerant pipe and tubing.** Piping materials shall be as set forth in Sections 1107.5.1 through 1107.5.5.~~

~~**1107.5.1 Steel pipe.** Carbon steel pipe with a wall thickness not less than Schedule 80 shall be used for Group A2,~~

~~A3, B2 or B3 refrigerant liquid lines for sizes 1.5 inches (38 mm) and smaller. Carbon steel pipe with a wall thickness not less than Schedule 40 shall be used for Group A1 or B1 refrigerant liquid lines 6 inches (152 mm) and smaller, Group A2, A3, B2 or B3 refrigerant liquid lines sizes 2 inches (51 mm) through 6 inches (152 mm) and all refrigerant suction and discharge lines 6 inches (152 mm) and smaller. Type F steel pipe shall not be used for refrigerant lines having an operating temperature less than -20°F (-29°C).~~

~~**1107.5.2 Copper and brass pipe.** Standard iron-pipe size, copper and red brass (not less than 80-percent copper) pipe shall conform to ASTM B42 and ASTM B443.~~

~~**1107.5.3 Copper tube.** Copper tube used for refrigerant piping erected on the premises shall be seamless copper tube of Type ACR (hard or annealed) complying with ASTM B280. Where *approved*, copper tube for refrigerant piping erected on the premises shall be seamless copper tube of Type K, L or M (drawn or annealed) in accordance with ASTM B88. Annealed temper copper tube shall not be used in sizes larger than a 2-inch (51 mm) nominal size. Mechanical joints shall not be used on annealed temper copper tube in sizes larger than 7/8-inch (22.2 mm) OD size.~~

~~**1107.5.4 Copper tubing joints.** Copper tubing joints used in refrigerating systems containing Group A2, A3, B2 or B3 refrigerants shall be brazed. Soldered joints shall not be used in such refrigerating systems.~~

~~**1107.5.5 Aluminum tube.** Type 3003-0 aluminum tubing with high-pressure fittings shall not be used with methyl chloride and other refrigerants known to attack aluminum.~~

~~**1107.6 Joints and refrigerant-containing parts in air ducts.** Joints and all refrigerant-containing parts of a refrigerating system located in an air duct of an air-conditioning system carrying conditioned air to and from human-occupied space shall be constructed to withstand, without leakage, a pressure of 150 percent of the higher of the design pressure or pressure relief device setting.~~

~~**1107.7 Exposure of refrigerant pipe joints.** Refrigerant pipe joints erected on the premises shall be exposed for visual inspection prior to being covered or enclosed.~~

~~**1107.8 Stop valves.** Systems containing more than 6.6 pounds (3 kg) of a refrigerant in systems using positive-displacement compressors shall have stop valves installed as follows:~~

~~1. At the inlet of each compressor, compressor unit or condensing unit.~~
~~2. At the discharge outlet of each compressor, compressor unit or condensing unit and of each liquid receiver.~~

~~**Exceptions:**~~

~~1. Systems that have a refrigerant pumpout function capable of storing the entire refrigerant charge in a receiver or heat exchanger.~~
~~2. Systems that are equipped with provisions for pumpout of the refrigerant using either portable or permanently installed recovery *equipment*.~~
~~3. Self-contained systems.~~

~~**1107.8.1 Liquid receivers.** Systems containing 100 pounds (45 kg) or more of a refrigerant, other than systems utilizing nonpositive displacement compressors, shall have stop valves, in addition to those required by Section 1107.8, on each inlet of each liquid receiver. Stop valves shall not be required on the inlet of a receiver in a condensing unit, nor on the inlet of a receiver which is an integral part of the condenser.~~

~~**1107.8.2 Copper tubing.** Stop valves used with soft annealed copper tubing or hard-drawn copper tubing 7/8- inch (22.2 mm) OD standard size or smaller shall be securely mounted, independent of tubing fastenings or supports.~~

~~**1107.8.3 Identification.** Stop valves shall be identified where their intended purpose is not obvious. Numbers shall not be used to label the valves, unless a key to the numbers is located near the valves.~~

1107.5 Pipe fittings. Refrigerant pipe fittings shall be approved for installation with the piping materials to be installed, and shall conform to one of more of the standards *listed* in Table 1107.5 or shall be *listed* and *labeled* as complying with UL 207.

TABLE 1107.5
REFRIGERANT PIPE FITTINGS

FITTING MATERIAL	STANDARD
Aluminum	ASTM B361
Brass (copper alloy)	ASME B16.15, ASME B16.24
Copper	ASME B16.15, ASME B16.18, ASME B16.22, ASME B16.24, ASME B16.26, ASME B16.50

Steel	ASTM A105, ASTM A181, ASTM A193, ASTM A234, ASTM A420, ASTM A707

1107.5.1 Copper brazed field swaged. The minimum and maximum cup depth of field-fabricated copper brazed swaged fitting connections shall comply with Table 1107.5.1.

TABLE 1107.5.1
COPPER BRAZED SWAGED CUP DEPTHS

FITTING SIZE (inch)	MINIMUM DEPTH (inch)	MAXIMUM DEPTH (inch)
1/8	0.15	0.23
3/16	0.16	0.24
1/4	0.17	0.26
3/8	0.20	0.30
1/2	0.22	0.33
5/8	0.24	0.36
3/4	0.25	0.38
1	0.28	0.42
1 1/4	0.31	0.47
1 1/2	0.34	0.51
2	0.40	0.60
2 1/2	0.47	0.71
3	0.53	0.80
3 1/2	0.59	0.89
4	0.64	0.96

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

1107.6 Valves. Valves shall be of materials that are compatible with the type of piping material, refrigerants and oils in the system. Valves shall be *listed* and *labeled* and rated for the temperatures and pressures of the refrigerant systems in which the valves are installed.

1107.7 Flexible connectors, expansion and vibration compensators. Flexible connectors and expansion and vibration control devices shall be *listed* and *labeled* for use in refrigerant systems.

SECTION 1108
~~FIELD TEST~~JOINTS AND CONNECTIONS

~~**1108.1 General.** Every refrigerant-containing part of every system that is erected on the premises, except compressors, condensers, vessels, evaporators, safety devices, pressure gauges and control mechanisms that are *listed* and factory tested, shall be tested and proved tight after complete installation, and before operation. Tests shall include both the high- and low-pressure sides of each system at not less than the lower of the design pressures or the setting of the pressure relief device(s). The design pressures for testing shall be those listed on the condensing unit, compressor or compressor unit nameplate, as required by ASHRAE 15.~~

~~**Exceptions:**~~

~~1. Gas bulk storage tanks that are not permanently connected to a refrigeration system.~~

~~2. Systems erected on the premises with copper tubing not exceeding 5/8-inch (15.8 mm) OD, with wall thickness as required by ASHRAE 15, shall be tested in accordance with Section 1108.1, or by means of refrigerant charged into the system at the saturated vapor pressure of the refrigerant at 70°F (21°C) or higher.~~

~~3. Limited-charge systems equipped with a pressure relief device, erected on the premises, shall be tested at a pressure not less than one and one-half times the pressure setting of the relief device. If the *equipment* or *appliance* has been tested by the manufacturer at one and one-half times the design pressure, the test after erection on the premises shall be conducted at the design pressure.~~

~~**1108.1.1 Booster compressor.** Where a compressor is used as a booster to obtain an intermediate pressure and discharges into the suction side of another compressor, the booster compressor shall be considered a part of the low side, provided that it is protected by a pressure relief device.~~

~~**1108.1.2 Centrifugal/nonpositive displacement compressors.**~~

~~In field-testing systems using centrifugal or other nonpositive displacement compressors, the entire system shall be considered as the low-side pressure for field test purposes.~~

~~**1108.2 Test gases.** Tests shall be performed with an inert dried gas including, but not limited to, nitrogen and carbon dioxide. Oxygen, air, combustible gases and mixtures containing such gases shall not be used.~~

~~**Exception:** The use of air is allowed to test R-717, ammonia, systems provided that they are subsequently evacuated before charging with refrigerant.~~

~~**1108.3 Test apparatus.** The means used to build up the test pressure shall have either a pressure-limiting device or a pressure- reducing device and a gauge on the outlet side.~~

~~**1108.4 Declaration.** A certificate of test shall be provided for all systems containing 55 pounds (25 kg) or more of refrigerant. The certificate shall give the name of the refrigerant and the field test pressure applied to the high side and the low side of the system. The certification of test shall be signed by the installer and shall be made part of the public record.~~

1108.1 Approval. Joints and connections shall be of an *approved* type. Joints and connections shall be tight for the pressure of the refrigerant system when tested in accordance with Section 1110.

1108.1.1 Joints between different piping materials. Joints between different piping materials shall be made with *approved* adapter fittings. Joints between dissimilar metallic piping materials shall be made with a dielectric fitting or a dielectric union conforming to dielectric tests of ASSE 1079. Adapter fittings with threaded ends between different materials shall be joined with thread lubricant in accordance with Section 1108.3.4.

1108.2 Preparation of pipe ends. Pipe shall be cut square, reamed and chamfered, and shall be free from burrs and obstructions. Pipe ends shall have full-bore openings and shall not be undercut.

1108.3 Joint preparation and installation. Where required by Sections 1108.4 through 1108.9, the preparation and installation of brazed, flared, mechanical, press-connect, soldered, threaded and welded joints shall comply with Sections 1108.3.1 through 1108.3.5.

1108.3.1 Brazed joints. Joint surfaces shall be cleaned. An *approved* flux shall be applied where required by the braze filler metal manufacturer. The piping being brazed shall be purged of air to remove the oxygen and filled with one of the following inert gases: oxygen-free nitrogen, helium or argon. The piping system shall be pre-purged with an inert gas for a minimum time corresponding to five volume changes through the piping system prior to brazing. The pre-purge rate shall be at a minimum velocity of 100 feet per minute (0.508 m/s). The inert gas shall be directly connected to the tube system being brazed to prevent the entrainment of ambient air. After the pre-purge, the inert gas supply shall be maintained through the piping during the brazing operation at a minimum pressure of 1.0 psi (6.89 kPa) and a maximum pressure of 3.0 psi (20.67 kPa). The joint shall be brazed with a filler metal conforming to AWS A5.8.

1108.3.2 Mechanical joints. Mechanical joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

1108.3.2.1 Flared joints. Flared fittings shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer’s instructions. The flared fitting shall be used with the tube material specified by the fitting manufacturer. The flared tube end shall be made by a tool designed for that operation.

1108.3.2.2 Press-connect joints. *Press-connect joints* shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer’s instructions.

1108.3.3 Soldered joints. Joint surfaces to be soldered shall be cleaned and a flux conforming to ASTM B813 shall be applied. The joint shall be soldered with a solder conforming to ASTM B32. Solder joints shall be limited to refrigerant systems using Group A1 refrigerant and having a pressure of less than or equal to 200 psi (1378 kPa).

1108.3.4 Threaded joints. Threads shall conform to ASME B1.1, ASME B1.13M, ASME B1.20.1 or ASME B1.20.3. Thread lubricant, pipe-joint compound or thread tape shall be applied on the external threads only and shall be approved for application on the piping material.

1108.3.5 Welded joints. Joint surfaces to be welded shall be cleaned by an *approved* procedure. Joints shall be welded with an *approved* filler metal.

1108.4 Aluminum tube. Joints between aluminum tubing or fittings shall be brazed, mechanical, press-connect or welded joints conforming to Section 1108.3.

1108.5 Brass (copper alloy) pipe. Joints between brass pipe or fittings shall be brazed, mechanical, press-connect, threaded or welded joints conforming to Section 1108.3.

1108.6 Copper pipe. Joints between copper or copper-alloy pipe or fittings shall be brazed, mechanical, press-connect, soldered, threaded or welded joints conforming to Section 1108.3.

1108.7 Copper tube. Joints between copper or copper-alloy tubing or fittings shall be brazed, flared, mechanical, press-connect or soldered joints.

1108.8 Steel pipe. Joints between steel pipe or fittings shall be mechanical joints, threaded, press-connect or welded joints conforming to Section 1108.3.

1108.9 Steel tube. Joints between steel tubing or fittings shall be flared, mechanical, press-connect or welded joints conforming to Section 1108.3.

~~[F]~~ SECTION 1109
REFRIGERANT PIPE INSTALLATION

1109.1 General. Refrigerant piping installations, other than R-717 (ammonia) refrigeration systems, shall comply with the requirements of this section. The design of refrigerant piping shall be in accordance with ASME B31.5.

1109.2 Piping location. Refrigerant piping shall comply with the installation location requirements of Sections 1109.2.1 through 1109.2.7. Refrigerant piping for Groups A2L and B2L shall also comply with the requirements of Section 1109.3. Refrigerant piping for Groups A2, A3, B2 and B3 shall also comply with the requirements of Section 1109.4.

1109.2.1 Minimum height. Exposed refrigerant piping installed in open spaces that afford passage shall be not less than 7 feet 3 inches (2210 mm) above the finished floor.

1109.2.2 Refrigerant pipe enclosure. Refrigerant piping shall be protected by locating it within the building elements or within protective enclosures.

Exception: Piping protection within the building elements or protective enclosure shall not be required in any of the following locations:

1. Where installed without ready access or located more than 7 feet 3 inches (2210 mm) above the finished floor.
2. Where located within 6 feet (1829 mm) of the refrigerant unit or *appliance*.
3. Where located in a *machinery room* complying with Section 1105.

1109.2.3 Prohibited locations. Refrigerant piping shall not be installed in any of the following locations:

1. Exposed within a fire-resistance-rated exit access corridor.
2. Within an interior exit stairway.
3. Within an interior exit ramp.
4. Within an exit passageway.
5. Within an elevator, dumbwaiter or other shaft containing a moving object.

1109.2.4 Piping in concrete floors. Refrigerant piping installed in concrete floors shall be encased in pipe, conduit or ducts. The piping shall be protected to prevent damage from vibration, stress and corrosion.

1109.2.5 Refrigerant pipe shafts. Refrigerant piping that penetrates two or more floor/ceiling assemblies shall be enclosed in a fire-resistance-rated shaft enclosure. The fire-resistance-rated shaft enclosure shall comply with Section 713 of the *International Building Code*.

Exceptions:

1. Systems using R-718 refrigerant (water).
2. Piping in a direct system using Group A1 refrigerant where the refrigerant quantity does not exceed the limits of Table 1103.1 for the smallest occupied space through which the piping passes.
3. Piping located on the exterior of the building where vented to the outdoors.

1109.2.6 Exposed piping surface temperature. Exposed piping with ready access having surface temperatures greater than 120°F (49°C) or less than 5°F (-15°C) shall be protected from contact or shall have thermal insulation that limits the exposed insulation surface temperature to a range of 5°F (-15°C) to 120°F (49°C).

1109.2.7 Pipe identification. Refrigerant pipe located in areas other than the room or space where the refrigerating *equipment* is located shall be identified. The pipe identification shall be located at intervals not exceeding 20 feet (6096 mm) on the refrigerant piping or pipe insulation. The minimum height of lettering of the identification label shall be $^{1}/_{2}$ inch (12.7 mm). The identification shall indicate the refrigerant designation and safety group classification of refrigerant used in the piping system. For Group A2, A3, B2 and B3 refrigerants, the identification shall also include the following statement: "DANGER—Risk of Fire or Explosion. Flammable Refrigerant." For any Group B refrigerant, the identification shall also include the following statement: "DANGER—Toxic Refrigerant."

1109.3 Installation requirements for Group A2L or B2L refrigerant. Piping systems using Group A2L or B2L refrigerant shall comply with the requirements of Sections 1109.3.1 and 1109.3.2.

1109.3.1 Pipe protection. In addition to the requirements of Section 305.5, aluminum, copper and steel tube used for Group A2L and B2L refrigerants and located in concealed locations where tubing is installed in studs, joists, rafters or similar member spaces, and located less than 1$^{1}/_{2}$ inches (38 mm) from the nearest edge of the member, shall be continuously protected by shield plates. Protective steel shield plates having a minimum thickness of 0.0575 inch (1.46 mm) (No. 16 gage) shall cover the area of the tube plus the area extending not less than 2 inches (51 mm) beyond both sides of the tube.

1109.3.2 Shaft ventilation. Refrigerant pipe shafts with systems using Group A2L or B2L refrigerant shall be naturally or mechanically ventilated. The shaft ventilation exhaust outlet shall comply with Section 501.3.1. Naturally ventilated shafts shall have a pipe, duct or conduit not less than 4 inches (102 mm) in diameter that connects to the lowest point of the shaft and extends to the outdoors. The pipe, duct or conduit shall be level or pitched downward to the outdoors. Mechanically ventilated shafts shall have a minimum airflow velocity in accordance with Table 1109.3.2. The mechanical ventilation shall be continuously operated or activated by a refrigerant detector. Systems utilizing a refrigerant detector shall activate the mechanical ventilation at a maximum refrigerant concentration of 25 percent of the lower flammable limit of the refrigerant. The detector, or a sampling tube that draws air to the detector, shall be located in an area where refrigerant from a leak will concentrate. The shaft shall not be required to be ventilated for double-wall refrigerant pipe where the interstitial space of the double-wall pipe is vented to the outdoors.

TABLE 1109.3.2
SHAFT VENTILATION VELOCITY

CROSS-SECTIONAL AREA OF SHAFT (square inches)	MINIMUM VENTILATION VELOCITY (feet per minute)
≤ 20	100
> 20 ≤ 250	200
> 250 ≤ 1,250	300
> 1,250	400

For SI: 1 square inch = 645 mm^2, 1 foot per minute = 0.0058 m/s.

1109.4 Installation requirements for Group A2, A3, B2 or B3 refrigerant. Piping systems using Group A2, A3, B2 or B3 refrigerant shall comply with the requirements of Sections 1109.4.1 and 1109.4.2.

1109.4.1 Piping material. Piping material for Group A2, A3, B2 or B3 refrigerant located inside the building, except for *machinery rooms*, shall be copper pipe, brass pipe or steel pipe. Pipe joints located in areas other than the *machinery room* shall be welded. Self-contained *listed* and *labeled equipment* or *appliances* shall have piping material based on the listing requirements.

1109.4.2 Shaft ventilation. Refrigerant pipe shafts with systems using Group A2, A3, B2 or B3 refrigerant shall be continuously mechanically ventilated. The shaft ventilation exhaust outlet shall comply with Section 501.3.1. Mechanically ventilated shafts shall have a minimum airflow velocity as specified in Table 1109.3.2. The shaft shall not be required to be ventilated for double-wall refrigerant pipe where the interstitial space of the double-wall pipe is vented to the outdoors.

1109.5 Refrigerant pipe penetrations. The annular space between the outside of a refrigerant pipe and the inside of a pipe sleeve or opening in a building envelope wall, floor or ceiling assembly penetrated by a refrigerant pipe shall be sealed in an *approved* manner with caulking material or foam sealant or closed with a gasketing system. The caulking material, foam sealant or gasketing system shall be designed for the conditions at the penetration location and shall be compatible with the pipe, sleeve and building materials in contact with the sealing materials. Refrigerant pipes penetrating fire-resistance-rated assemblies or membranes of fire-resistance-rated assemblies shall be sealed or closed in accordance with Section 714 of the *International Building Code*.

1109.6 Stress and strain. Refrigerant piping shall be installed so as to prevent strains and stresses that exceed the structural strength of the pipe. Where necessary, provisions shall be made to protect piping from damage resulting from vibration, expansion, contraction and structural settlement.

1109.7 Condensate control. Refrigerating piping and fittings that, during normal operation, will reach a surface temperature below the dew point of the surrounding air, and are located in spaces or areas where condensation has the potential to cause a safety hazard to the building occupants, structure, electrical *equipment* or any other *equipment* or *appliances*, shall be insulated or protected in an *approved* manner to prevent damage from condensation.

1109.8 Stop valves. Stop valves shall be installed in specified locations in accordance with Sections 1109.8.1 and 1109.8.2. Stop valves shall be supported in accordance with Section 1109.8.3 and identified in accordance with Section 1109.8.4.

Exceptions:

1. Systems that have a refrigerant pumpout function capable of storing the entire refrigerant charge in a receiver or heat exchanger.
2. Systems that are equipped with provisions for pumping out the refrigerant using either portable or permanently installed refrigerant recovery *equipment*.
3. Self-contained *listed* and *labeled* systems.

1109.8.1 Refrigerating systems containing more than 6.6 pounds (3.0 kg) of refrigerant. Stop valves shall be installed in the following locations on refrigerating systems containing more than 6.6 pounds (3.0 kg) of refrigerant:

1. The suction inlet of each compressor, compressor unit or condensing unit.
2. The discharge outlet of each compressor, compressor unit or condensing unit.
3. The outlet of each liquid receiver.

1109.8.2 Refrigerating systems containing more than 100 pounds (45 kg) of refrigerant. In addition to stop valves required by Section 1109.8.1, systems containing more than 100 pounds (45 kg) of refrigerant shall have stop valves installed in the following locations:

1. Each inlet of each liquid receiver.
2. Each inlet and each outlet of each condenser where more than one condenser is used in parallel.

Exceptions:

1. Stop valves shall not be required at the inlet of a receiver in a condensing unit nor at the inlet of a receiver that is an integral part of the condenser.

2. Systems utilizing nonpositive displacement compressors.

1109.8.3 Stop valve support. Stop valves shall be supported to prevent detrimental stress and strain on the refrigerant piping system. The piping system shall not be utilized to support stop valves on copper tubing or aluminum tubing 1 inch (25.4 mm) outside diameter or larger.

1109.8.4 Identification. Stop valves shall be identified where their intended purpose is not obvious. Where valves are identified by a numbering or lettering system, legend(s) or key(s) for the valve identification shall be located in the room containing the indoor refrigeration *equipment*. The minimum height of lettering of the identification label shall be $^{1}/_{2}$ inch (12.7 mm).

1109.9 Pipe Supports. Pipe supports shall be in accordance with Section 305.

SECTION 1110
REFRIGERATION PIPING SYSTEM TEST

1110.1 General. Refrigerant piping systems, other than R-717 (ammonia) refrigeration systems, that are erected in the field shall be pressure tested for strength and leak tested for tightness, in accordance with the requirements of this section, after installation and before being placed in operation. Tests shall include both the high- and low-pressure sides of each system.

Exception: *Listed* and *labeled equipment*, including compressors, condensers, vessels, evaporators, gas bulk storage tanks, safety devices, pressure gauges and control mechanisms, shall not be required to be tested.

1110.2 Exposure of refrigerant piping system. Refrigerant pipe and joints installed in the field shall be exposed for visual inspection and testing prior to being covered or enclosed.

1110.3 Test gases. The medium used for pressure testing the refrigerant system shall be one of the following inert gases: oxygen-free nitrogen, helium or argon. For R-744 refrigerant systems, carbon dioxide shall be allowed as the test medium. For R-718 refrigerant systems, water shall be allowed as the test medium. Oxygen, air, combustible gases and mixtures containing such gases shall not be used as a test medium. Systems erected on the premises with tubing not exceeding $^{5}/_{8}$ inch (15.9 mm) outside diameter shall be allowed to use the refrigerant identified on the nameplate label or marking as the test medium.

1110.4 Test apparatus. The means used to pressurize the refrigerant piping system shall have on its outlet side a test pressure measuring device and either a pressure-limiting device or a pressure-reducing device. The test pressure measuring device shall have an accuracy of ±3 percent or less of the test pressure and shall have a resolution of 5 percent or less of the test pressure.

~~1108.3.1~~1110.4.1 Test gauges. Gauges used for testing shall be as follows:
1. Tests requiring a pressure of 10 pounds per square inch (psi) (69 kPa) or less shall utilize a testing gauge having increments of 0.10 psi (0.69 kPa) or less.
2. Tests requiring a pressure of greater than 10 psi (69 kPa) but less than or equal to 100 psi (689 kPa) shall utilize a testing gauge having increments of 1 psi (6.9 kPa) or less.
3. Tests requiring a pressure of greater than 100 psi (689 kPa) shall utilize a testing gauge having increments of 2 psi (14 kPa) or less.

1110.5 Piping system pressure test and leak test. The refrigerant piping system shall be tested as a whole or separate tests shall be conducted for the low-pressure side and high-pressure side of the piping system. The refrigerant piping system shall be tested in accordance with both of the following methods:

1. The system shall be pressurized for a period of not less than 60 minutes to not less than the lower of the design pressures or the setting of the pressure relief device(s). The design pressures for testing shall be the pressure *listed* on the label nameplate of the condensing unit, compressor, compressor unit, pressure vessel or other system component with a nameplate. Additional test gas shall not be added to the system after the start of the pressure test. The system shall not show loss of pressure on the test pressure measuring device during the pressure test. Where using refrigerant as a test medium in accordance with Section 1110.3, the test pressure shall be not less than the saturation dew point pressure at 77°F (25°C).
2. A vacuum of 500 microns shall be achieved. After achieving a vacuum, the system shall be isolated from the vacuum pump. The system pressure shall not rise above 1,500 microns for a period of not less than 10 minutes.

1110.5.1 Joints and refrigerant-containing parts in air ducts. Joints and all refrigerant-containing parts of a refrigerating system located in an air duct of an air-conditioning system that conveys conditioned air to and from human-occupied spaces shall be tested at a pressure of 150 percent of the higher of the design pressure or pressure relief device setting.

1110.5.2 Limited charge systems. Limited charge systems with a pressure relief device, erected on the premises, shall be tested at a pressure not less than one and one-half times the pressure setting of the relief device. *Listed* and *labeled* limited charge systems shall be tested at the *equipment* or *appliance* design pressure.

1110.6 Booster compressor. Where a compressor protected by a pressure relief device is used as a booster to obtain an intermediate pressure, and such compressor discharges into the suction side of another compressor, the booster compressor shall be considered to be a part of the low-pressure side of the system.

1110.7 Centrifugal/nonpositive displacement compressors. Where testing systems using centrifugal or other nonpositive displacement compressors, the entire system shall be considered to be the low-pressure side for test purposes.

1110.8 Contractor or engineer declaration. The installing contractor or *registered design professional* of record shall issue a certificate of test to the code official for all systems containing 55 pounds (25 kg) or more of refrigerant. The certificate shall give the test date, name of the refrigerant, test medium and the field test pressure applied to the high-pressure side and the low-pressure side of the system. The certification of test shall be signed by the installing contractor or *registered design professional a*nd shall be made part of the public record.

[F] SECTION ~~1109~~1111
PERIODIC TESTING

[F] ~~1109.1~~1111.1 Testing required. ~~Deleted.~~The following emergency devices and systems shall be periodically tested in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and as required by the code official:

1. Treatment and flaring systems.
2. Valves and appurtenances necessary to the operation of emergency refrigeration control boxes.
3. Fans and associated *equipment* intended to operate emergency ventilation systems.
4. Detection and alarm systems.

CHAPTER 12
HYDRONIC PIPING

SECTION 1201
GENERAL

1201.1 Scope. The provisions of this chapter shall govern the construction, installation, *alteration* and repair of hydronic piping systems. This chapter shall apply to hydronic piping systems that are part of heating, ventilation and air-conditioning systems. Such piping systems shall include steam, hot water, chilled water, steam condensate and ground source heat pump loop systems. Potable cold and hot water distribution systems shall be installed in accordance with the *International Plumbing Code*.

1201.2 Sizing. Piping and piping system components for hydronic systems shall be sized for the demand of the system.

1201.3 Standards. As an alternative to the provisions of Sections 1202 and 1203, piping shall be designed, installed, inspected and tested in accordance with ASME B31.9.

SECTION 1202
MATERIAL

1202.1 Piping. Piping material shall conform to the standards cited in this section.

Exception: Embedded piping regulated by Section 1209.

1202.2 Used materials. Reused pipe, fittings, valves or other materials shall be clean and free from foreign materials and shall be *approved* by the code official for reuse.

1202.3 Material rating. Materials shall be rated for the operating temperature and pressure of the hydronic system. Materials shall be suitable for the type of fluid in the hydronic system.

1202.4 Piping materials standards. Hydronic pipe shall conform to the standards listed in Table 1202.4. The exterior of the pipe shall be protected from corrosion and degradation.

TABLE 1202.4
HYDRONIC PIPE

MATERIAL	STANDARD (see Chapter 15)
Acrylonitrile butadiene styrene (ABS) plastic pipe	ASTM D1527; ASTM F2806
Chlorinated polyvinyl chloride (CPVC) plastic pipe	ASTM D2846; ASTM F441; ASTM F442
Chlorinated polyvinyl chloride/aluminum/chlorinated polyvinyl chloride (CPVC/AL/CPVC)	ASTM F2855
Copper or copper-alloy pipe	ASTM B42; ASTM B43; ASTM B302
Copper or copper-alloy tube (Type K, L or M)	ASTM B75; ASTM B88; ASTM B135; ASTM B251
Cross-linked polyethylene/aluminum/cross-linked polyethylene (PEX-AL-PEX) pressure pipe	ASTM F1281; CSA CAN/CSA-B-137.10
Cross-linked polyethylene (PEX) tubing	ASTM F876; ~~ASTM F877;~~ ASTM F3253; CSA B137.5
Ductile iron pipe	AWWA C115/A21.15; AWWA C151/A21.51
Lead pipe	FS WW-P-325B
Polyethylene/aluminum/polyethylene (PE-AL-PE) pressure pipe	ASTM F1282; CSA B137.9

Polypropylene (PP) plastic pipe	ASTM F2389
Polyvinyl chloride (PVC) plastic pipe	ASTM D1785; ASTM D2241
Raised temperature polyethylene (PE-RT)	ASTM F2623; ASTM ~~F2769~~F2769; CSA B137.18
Steel pipe	ASTM A53; ASTM A106
Steel tubing	ASTM A254

1202.5 Pipe fittings. Hydronic pipe fittings shall be *approved* for installation with the piping materials to be installed, and shall conform to the respective pipe standards or to the standards listed in Table 1202.5.

TABLE 1202.5
HYDRONIC PIPE FITTINGS

MATERIAL	STANDARD (see Chapter 15)
Copper and copper alloys	ASME B16.15; ASME B16.18; ASME B16.22; ASME B16.24; ASME B16.26; ~~ASTM F1974; ASTM B16.24;~~ ASME ~~B16.51~~ B16.51; ASSE 1061; ASTM F1974
CPVC	ASSE 1061; ASTM D2846; ASTM F438; ASTM F439
Ductile iron and gray iron	ANSI/AWWA C110/A21.10; ~~AWWA C153/A21.53;~~ ASTM A395; ASTM A536; ASTM F1476; ASTM ~~F1548~~ F1548; AWWA C153/A21.53
Ductile iron	ANSI/AWWA C153/A21.53
Gray iron	ASTM A126
Malleable iron	ASME B16.3
PE-RT fittings	ASSE 1061; ASTM D3261; ASTM F1807; ASTM F2098; ASTM F2159; ASTM F2735; ASTM ~~F2769~~ F2769; CSA B137.1; CSA B137.18
PEX fittings	ASSE 1061; ASTM F877; ASTM F1807; ASTM F1960; ASTM F2080; ASTM ~~F2159~~ F2159; ASTM F3253
Plastic	ASTM D2466; ASTM D2467; ASTM D2846; ~~ASTM F438; ASTM F439;~~ ASTM F877; ASTM F2389; ASTM F2735
Steel	ASME B16.5; ASME B16.9; ASME B16.11; ASME B16.28; ASTM A53; ASTM A106; ASTM A234; ASTM A395; ASTM A420; ASTM A536; ~~ASTM A395;~~ ASTM F1476; ASTM F1548

1202.6 Valves. Valves shall be constructed of materials that are compatible with the type of piping material and fluids in the system. Valves shall be rated for the temperatures and pressures of the systems in which the valves are installed.

1202.7 Flexible connectors, expansion and vibration compensators. Flexible connectors, expansion and vibration control devices and fittings shall be of an *approved* type.

SECTION 1203
JOINTS AND CONNECTIONS

1203.1 Approval. Joints and connections shall be of an *approved* type. Joints and connections shall be tight for the pressure of the hydronic system.

1203.1.1 Joints between different piping materials. Joints between different piping materials shall be made with *approved* adapter fittings.

1203.2 Preparation of pipe ends. Pipe shall be cut square, reamed and chamfered, and shall be free from burrs and obstructions. Pipe ends shall have full-bore openings and shall not be undercut.

1203.3 Joint preparation and installation. Where required by Sections 1203.4 through ~~1203.14~~1203.13, the preparation and installation of brazed, mechanical, soldered, solvent-cemented, threaded and welded joints shall comply with Sections 1203.3.1 through ~~1203.3.8.~~1203.3.8.2.

1203.3.1 Brazed joints. Joint surfaces shall be cleaned. An *approved* flux shall be applied where required. The joint shall be brazed with a filler metal conforming to AWS A5.8.

1203.3.2 Mechanical joints. Mechanical joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

1203.3.3 Soldered joints. ~~Joint surfaces shall be cleaned.~~Solder joints shall be made in accordance with ASTM B828. Cut tube ends shall be reamed to the full inside diameter of the tube end. A flux conforming to ASTM B813 shall be applied. The joint shall be soldered with a solder conforming to ASTM B32.

1203.3.4 Solvent-cemented joints. Joint surfaces shall be clean and free from moisture. An *approved* primer shall be applied to CPVC and PVC pipe-joint surfaces. Joints shall be made while the cement is wet. Solvent cement conforming to the following standards shall be applied to all joint surfaces:

1. ASTM D2235 for ABS joints.
2. ASTM F493 for CPVC joints.
3. ASTM D2564 for PVC joints.

CPVC joints shall be made in accordance with ASTM D2846.

Exception: For CPVC pipe joint connections, a primer is not required where all of the following conditions apply:

1. The solvent cement used is third-party certified as conforming to ASTM F493.
2. The solvent cement is yellow in color.
3. The solvent cement is used only for joining $^1/_2$-inch (12.7 mm) through 2-inch (51 mm) diameter CPVC pipe and fittings.
4. The CPVC pipe ~~and~~or fittings are manufactured in accordance with ASTM D2846.

1203.3.5 Threaded joints. Threads shall conform to ASME B1.20.1. Schedule 80 or heavier plastic pipe shall be threaded with dies specifically designed for plastic pipe. Thread lubricant, pipe-joint compound or tape shall be applied on the male threads only and shall be *approved* for application on the piping material.

1203.3.6 Welded joints. Joint surfaces shall be cleaned by an *approved* procedure. Joints shall be welded with an *approved* filler metal.

1203.3.7 Grooved and shouldered mechanical joints. Grooved and shouldered mechanical joints shall conform to the requirements of ASTM F1476 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

1203.3.8 Mechanically formed tee fittings. Mechanically extracted outlets shall have a height not less than three times the thickness of the branch tube wall.

1203.3.8.1 Full flow assurance. Branch tubes shall not restrict the flow in the run tube. A dimple/depth stop shall be formed in the branch tube to ensure that penetration into the outlet is of the correct depth. For inspection purposes, a second dimple shall be placed $^1/_4$ inch (6.4 mm) above the first dimple. Dimples shall be aligned with the tube run.

1203.3.8.2 Brazed joints. Mechanically formed tee fittings shall be brazed in accordance with Section 1203.3.1.

1203.4 ABS plastic pipe. Joints between ABS plastic pipe or fittings shall be solvent-cemented or threaded joints conforming to Section 1203.3.

~~**1203.5 Brass pipe.** Joints between brass pipe or fittings shall be brazed, mechanical, threaded or welded joints conforming to Section 1203.3.~~

~~**1203.6 Brass tubing.** Joints between brass tubing or fittings shall be brazed, mechanical or soldered joints conforming to Section 1203.3.~~

~~1203.7~~1203.5 Copper or copper-alloy pipe. Joints between copper or copper-alloy pipe or fittings shall be brazed, mechanical, soldered, threaded or welded joints conforming to Section 1203.3.

~~1203.8~~1203.6 Copper or copper-alloy tubing. Joints between copper or copper-alloy tubing or fittings shall be brazed, mechanical or soldered joints conforming to Section 1203.3, flared joints conforming to Section ~~1203.8.1,~~1203.6.1, push-fit joints conforming to Section ~~1203.8.2~~1203.6.2 or *~~press-type~~press-connect joints* conforming to Section ~~1203.8.3.~~1203.6.3.

~~1203.8.1~~1203.6.1 Flared joints. Flared joints shall be made by a tool designed for that operation.

~~1203.8.2~~1203.6.2 Push-fit joints. Push-fit joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

~~1203.8.2~~1203.6.3 ~~Press~~Press-connect joints. *~~Press~~Press-connect joints* shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

~~1203.9~~1203.7 CPVC plastic pipe. Joints between CPVC plastic pipe or fittings shall be mechanical, solvent-cemented or threaded joints conforming to Section 1203.3.

1203.8 CPVC/AL/CPVC plastic pipe. Joints between CPVC/AL/CPVC plastic pipes or fittings shall be mechanical, solvent-cemented or threaded joints conforming to Section 1203.3.

~~1203.10~~1203.9 Polybutylene plastic pipe and tubing. Joints between polybutylene plastic pipe and tubing or fittings shall be mechanical joints conforming to Section 1203.3 or heat-fusion joints conforming to Section ~~1203.10.1.~~1203.9.1.

~~1203.10.1~~1203.9.1 Heat-fusion joints. Joints shall be of the socket-fusion or butt-fusion type. Joint surfaces shall be clean and free from moisture. Joint surfaces shall be heated to melt temperatures and joined. The joint shall be undisturbed until cool. Joints shall be made in accordance with ASTM D3309.

~~1203.11~~1203.10 Cross-linked polyethylene (PEX) plastic tubing. Joints between cross-linked polyethylene plastic tubing and fittings shall conform to Sections ~~1203.11.1~~1203.10.1 ~~and~~through ~~1203.11.2.~~1203.10.3. Mechanical joints shall conform to Section 1203.3.

~~1203.11.1~~1203.10.1 Compression-type fittings. Where compression-type fittings include inserts and ferrules or O-rings, the fittings shall be installed without omitting the inserts and ferrules or O-rings.

~~1203.11.2~~1203.10.2 Plastic-to-metal connections. Soldering on the metal portion of the system shall be performed not less than 18 inches (457 mm) from a plastic-to-metal adapter in the same water line.

1203.10.3 Push-fit fittings. Push-fit fittings shall comply with ASSE 1061 and be used with PEX tubing that is rated for use with such fittings by the tubing manufacturer.

~~1203.12~~1203.11 PVC plastic pipe. Joints between PVC plastic pipe and fittings shall be solvent-cemented or threaded joints conforming to Section 1203.3.

~~1203.13~~1203.12 Steel pipe. Joints between steel pipe or fittings shall be mechanical joints that are made with an *approved* elastomeric seal, or shall be threaded or welded joints conforming to Section 1203.3.

~~1203.14~~1203.13 Steel tubing. Joints between steel tubing or fittings shall be mechanical or welded joints conforming to Section 1203.3.

~~1203.15~~1203.14 Polypropylene (PP) plastic. Joints between PP plastic pipe and fittings shall comply with Sections ~~1203.15.1~~1203.14.1 and ~~1203.15.2.~~1203.14.2.

~~1203.15.1~~1203.14.1 Heat-fusion joints. Heat-fusion joints for polypropylene (PP) pipe and tubing joints shall be installed with socket-type heat-fused polypropylene fittings, electro-fusion polypropylene fittings or by butt fusion. Joint surfaces shall be clean and free from moisture. The joint shall be undisturbed until cool. Joints shall be made in accordance with ASTM F2389.

~~1203.15.2~~1203.14.2 Mechanical and compression sleeve joints. Mechanical and compression sleeve joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

~~1203.16~~1203.15 Raised temperature polyethylene (PE-RT) plastic tubing. Joints between raised temperature polyethylene tubing and fittings shall conform to Sections ~~1203.16.1 and~~1203.15.1 through ~~1203.16.1.2.~~1203.15.3. Mechanical joints shall conform to Section 1203.3.

~~1203.16.1~~1203.15.1 Compression-type fittings. Where compression-type fittings include inserts and ferrules or O-rings, the fittings shall be installed without omitting the inserts and ferrules or O-rings.

~~1203.16.2~~1203.15.2 PE-RT-to-metal connections. Solder joints in a metal pipe shall not occur within 18 inches (457 mm) of a transition from such metal pipe to PE-RT pipe.

1203.15.3 Push-fit fittings. Push-fit fittings shall comply with ASSE 1061 and be used with PE-RT tubing that is rated for use with such fittings by the tubing manufacturer.

~~1203.17~~1203.16 Polyethylene/aluminum/polyethylene (PE-AL-PE) pressure pipe. Joints between polyethylene/aluminum/polyethylene pressure pipe and fittings shall conform to Sections ~~1203.17.1~~1203.16.1 and ~~1203.17.2.~~1203.16.2. Mechanical joints shall comply with Section 1203.3.

~~1203.17.1~~1203.16.1 Compression-type fittings. Where compression-type fittings include inserts and ferrules or O-rings, the fittings shall be installed without omitting the inserts and ferrules or O-rings.

~~1203.17.2~~1203.16.2 PE-AL-PE-to-metal connections. Solder joints in a metal pipe shall not occur within 18 inches (457 mm) of a transition from such metal pipe to PE-AL-PE pipe.

~~1203.18~~1203.17 Cross-linked polyethylene/aluminum/cross-linked polyethylene (PEX-AL-PEX) pressure pipe. Joints between cross-linked polyethylene/aluminum/cross-linked polyethylene pressure pipe and fittings shall conform to Sections ~~1203.18.1~~1203.17.1 and ~~1203.8.2.~~1203.17.2. Mechanical joints shall comply with Section 1203.3.

~~1203.18.1~~1203.17.1 Compression-type fittings. Where compression-type fittings include inserts and ferrules or O-rings, the fittings shall be installed without omitting the inserts and ferrules or O-rings.

~~1203.18.2~~1203.17.2 PEX-AL-PEX-to-metal connections. Solder joints in a metal pipe shall not occur within 18 inches (457 mm) of a transition from such metal pipe to PEX-AL-PEX pipe.

SECTION 1204
PIPE INSULATION

1204.1 Insulation characteristics. Pipe insulation installed in buildings shall conform to the requirements of the *International Energy Conservation Code*; shall be tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723, using the specimen preparation and mounting procedures of ASTM E2231; and shall have a maximum flame spread index of 25 and a smoke-developed index not exceeding 450. Insulation installed in an air *plenum* shall comply with Section 602.2.1.

Exception: The maximum flame spread index and smoke-developed index shall not apply to one- and two-family dwellings.

1204.2 Required thickness. Hydronic piping shall be insulated to the thickness required by the *International Energy Conservation Code*.

SECTION 1205
VALVES

1205.1 Where required. Shutoff valves shall be installed in hydronic piping systems in the locations indicated in Sections 1205.1.1 through 1205.1.6.

1205.1.1 Heat exchangers. Shutoff valves shall be installed on the supply and return side of a heat exchanger.

Exception: Shutoff valves shall not be required where heat exchangers are integral with a boiler; or are a component of a manufacturer's boiler and heat exchanger packaged unit and are capable of being isolated from the hydronic system by the supply and return valves required by Section 1005.1.

1205.1.2 Central systems. Shutoff valves shall be installed on the building supply and return of a central utility system.

1205.1.3 Pressure vessels. Shutoff valves shall be installed on the connection to any pressure vessel.

1205.1.4 Pressure-reducing valves. Shutoff valves shall be installed on both sides of a pressure-reducing valve.

1205.1.5 Equipment and appliances. Shutoff valves shall be installed on connections to mechanical *equipment* and ~~appli-ances~~*appliances*. This requirement does not apply to components of a hydronic system such as pumps, air separators, metering devices and similar *equipment*.

1205.1.6 Expansion tanks. Shutoff valves shall be installed at connections to nondiaphragm-type expansion tanks.

1205.2 Reduced pressure. A pressure relief valve shall be installed on the low-pressure side of a hydronic piping system that has been reduced in pressure. The relief valve shall be set at the maximum pressure of the system design. The valve shall be installed in accordance with Section 1006.

SECTION 1206
PIPING INSTALLATION

1206.1 General. Piping, valves, fittings and connections shall be installed in accordance with the conditions of approval.

1206.2 System drain down. Hydronic piping systems shall be designed and installed to permit the system to be drained. Where the system drains to the plumbing drainage system, the installation shall conform to the requirements of the *International Plumbing Code*.

Exception: The buried portions of systems embedded underground or under floors.

1206.3 Protection of potable water. The potable water system shall be protected from backflow in accordance with the *International Plumbing Code*.

1206.4 Pipe penetrations. Openings for pipe penetrations in walls, floors or ceilings shall be larger than the penetrating pipe. Openings through concrete or masonry building elements shall be sleeved. The annular space surrounding pipe penetrations shall be protected in accordance with the *International Building Code*.

1206.5 Clearance to combustibles. A pipe in a hydronic piping system in which the exterior temperature exceeds 250°F (121°C) shall have a minimum *clearance* of 1 inch (25 mm) to combustible materials.

1206.6 Contact with building material. A hydronic piping system shall not be in direct contact with building materials that cause the piping material to degrade or corrode, or that interfere with the operation of the system.

1206.7 Water hammer. The flow velocity of the hydronic piping system shall be controlled to reduce the possibility of water hammer. Where a quick-closing valve creates water hammer, an *approved* water-hammer arrestor shall be installed. The arrestor shall be located within a range as specified by the manufacturer of the quick-closing valve.

1206.8 Steam piping pitch. Steam piping shall be installed to drain to the boiler or the steam trap. Steam systems shall not have drip pockets that reduce the capacity of the steam piping.

1206.9 Strains and stresses. Piping shall be installed so as to prevent detrimental strains and stresses in the pipe. Provisions shall be made to protect piping from damage resulting from expansion, contraction and structural settlement. Piping shall be installed so as to avoid structural stresses or strains within building components.

1206.9.1 Flood hazard. Piping located in a flood hazard area shall be capable of resisting hydrostatic and hydrodynamic loads and stresses, including the effects of buoyancy, during the occurrence of flooding to the *design flood elevation*.

1206.10 Pipe support. Pipe shall be supported in accordance with Section 305.

1206.11 Condensation. Provisions shall be made to prevent the formation of condensation on the exterior of piping.

SECTION 1207
TRANSFER FLUID

1207.1 Flash point. The flash point of transfer fluid in a hydronic piping system shall be not less than 50°F (28°C) above the maximum system operating temperature.

1207.2 Makeup water. The transfer fluid shall be compatible with the makeup water supplied to the system.

SECTION 1208
TESTS

1208.1 General. Hydronic piping systems shall be tested hydrostatically at one and one-half times the maximum system design pressure, but not less than 100 psi (689 kPa). The duration of each test shall be not less than 15 minutes.

> **Exception:** For PEX piping systems, testing with a compressed gas shall be an alternative to hydrostatic testing where compressed air or other gas pressure testing is specifically authorized by all of the manufacturers' instructions for the PEX pipe and fitting products installed at the time the system is being tested, and compressed air or other gas testing is not otherwise prohibited by applicable codes, laws or regulations outside of this code.

~~1201.4~~1208.2 Test gauges. Gauges used for testing shall be as follows:

1. Tests requiring a pressure of 10 pounds per square inch (psi) (69 kPa) or less shall utilize a testing gauge having increments of 0.10 psi (0.69 kPa) or less.
2. Tests requiring a pressure of greater than 10 psi (69 kPa) but less than or equal to 100 psi (689 kPa) shall utilize a testing gauge having increments of 1 psi (6.9 kPa) or less.
3. Tests requiring a pressure of greater than 100 psi (689 kPa) shall utilize a testing gauge having increments of 2 psi (14 kPa) or less.

SECTION 1209
EMBEDDED PIPING

1209.1 Materials. Piping for heating panels shall be standard-weight steel pipe, Type L copper tubing, polybutylene or other *approved* plastic pipe or tubing rated at 100 psi (689 kPa) at 180°F (82°C).

1209.2 Pressurizing during installation. Piping to be embedded in concrete shall be pressure tested prior to pouring concrete. During pouring, the pipe shall be maintained at the proposed operating pressure.

1209.3 Embedded joints. Joints of pipe or tubing that are embedded in a portion of the building, such as concrete or plaster, shall be in accordance with the requirements of Sections 1209.3.1 through ~~1209.3.4.~~1209.3.5.

1209.3.1 Steel pipe joints. Steel pipe shall be welded by electrical arc or oxygen/acetylene method.

1209.3.2 Copper tubing joints. Copper tubing shall be joined by brazing complying with Section 1203.3.1.

1209.3.3 Polybutylene joints. Polybutylene pipe and tubing shall be installed in continuous lengths or shall be joined by heat fusion in accordance with Section ~~1203.10.1.~~1203.9.1.

1209.3.4 Polyethylene of raised temperature (PE-RT) joints. PE-RT tubing shall be installed in continuous lengths or shall be joined by hydronic fittings listed in Table 1202.5.

1209.3.5 Cross-linked polyethylene (PEX) joints. PEX tubing shall be installed in continuous lengths or shall be joined by hydronic fittings listed in Table 1202.5.

1209.4 Not embedded related piping. Joints of other piping in cavities or running exposed shall be joined by *approved* methods in accordance with manufacturer's installation instructions and related sections of this code.

1209.5 ~~Thermal barrier~~Insulation and thermal break required. Radiant floor heating systems shall be provided with insulation and a thermal ~~barrier~~break in accordance with Sections 1209.5.1 ~~through 1209.5.4.~~and 1209.5.2. Insulation *R*-values for slab-on-grade and suspended floor installation shall be in accordance with the *International Energy Conservation Code*.

> **Exception:** Insulation shall not be required in engineered systems where it can be demonstrated that the insulation will decrease the efficiency or have a negative effect on the installation.

~~**1209.5.1 Slab-on-grade installation.** Radiant piping utilized in slab-on-grade applications shall be provided with insulating materials installed beneath the piping having a minimum R-value of 5.~~

~~**1209.5.2 Suspended floor installation.** In suspended floor applications, insulation shall be installed in the joist bay cavity serving the heating space above and shall consist of materials having a minimum R-value of 11~~.

~~1209.5.3~~1209.5.1 **Thermal break required.** A thermal break shall be provided consisting of asphalt expansion joint materials or similar insulating materials at a point where a heated slab meets a foundation wall or other conductive slab.

~~1209.5.4~~1209.5.2 **~~Thermal barrier~~Insulation material marking.** Insulating materials utilized in ~~thermal barriers~~radiant floor heating systems shall be installed such that the manufacturer's *R*-value mark is readily observable upon inspection.

SECTION 1210
PLASTIC PIPE GROUND-SOURCE
HEAT PUMP LOOP SYSTEMS

1210.1 Ground-source heat pump-loop water piping. Ground-source heat pump ground-loop piping and tubing material for water-based systems shall conform to the standards cited in this section.

1210.2 Used materials. Reused pipe, fittings, valves, and other materials shall not be permitted in ground-source heat pump loop systems.

1210.3 Material rating. Pipe and tubing shall be rated for the operating temperature and pressure of the ground-source heat pump loop system. Fittings shall be suitable for the pressure applications and recommended by the manufacturer for installation with the pipe and tubing material installed. Where used underground, materials shall be suitable for burial.

1210.4 Piping and tubing materials standards. Ground-source heat pump ground-loop pipe and tubing shall conform to the standards listed in Table 1210.4.

TABLE 1210.4
GROUND-SOURCE LOOP PIPE

MATERIAL	STANDARD (see Chapter 15)
Chlorinated polyvinyl chloride (CPVC)	ASTM D2846; ASTM F441; ASTM F442
Cross-linked polyethylene (PEX)	ASTM F876; ~~ASTM F 877;~~ CSA ~~B137.5~~B137.5; CSA C448; NSF 358-3
Polyethylene/aluminum/polyethylene (PE-AL-PE) pressure pipe	ASTM F1282; CSA B137.9
High-density polyethylene (HDPE)	ASTM D2737; ASTM D3035; ASTM F714; AWWA C901; CSA B137.1; CSA C448; NSF 358-1
Polypropylene (PP-R)	ASTM F2389; CSA ~~B137.11~~ B137.11; NSF 358-2
Polyvinyl chloride (PVC)	ASTM D1785; ASTM D2241
Raised temperature polyethylene (PE-RT)	ASTM ~~F2623~~F2623; ASTM F2769; CSA B137.18; CSA C448; NSF 358-4

1210.5 Fittings. Ground-source heat pump pipe fittings shall be approved for installation with the piping materials to be installed, shall conform to the standards listed in Table 1210.5 and, if installed underground, shall be suitable for burial.

TABLE 1210.5
GROUND-SOURCE LOOP PIPE FITTINGS

PIPE MATERIAL	STANDARD (see Chapter 15)
Chlorinated polyvinyl chloride (CPVC)	ASTM D2846; ASTM F437; ASTM F438; ASTM F439; CSA B137.6
Cross-linked polyethylene (PEX)	ASTM F877; ASTM F1807; ASTM F1960; ASTM F2080; ASTM F2159; ASTM F2434; CSA ~~B137.5~~B137.5; CSA C448; NSF 358-3
Polyethylene/aluminum/polyethylene (PE-AL-PE)	ASTM F1282; ASTM F2434; CSA B137.9
~~High Density~~ High-density polyethylene (HDPE)	ASTM D2683; ASTM D3261; ASTM F1055; CSA B137.1; CSA C448; NSF 358-1

Polypropylene (PP-R)	ASTM F2389; CSA ~~B137.11~~B137.11; NSF 358-2
Polyvinyl chloride (PVC)	ASTM D2464; ASTM D2466; ASTM D2467; CSA B137.2; CSA B137.3
Raised temperature polyethylene (PE-RT)	ASTM D3261; ASTM F1807; ASTM F2098; ASTM F2159; ASTM F2735; ASTM F2769; CSA ~~B137.1~~B137.1; CSA B137.18; CSA C448; NSF 358-4

1210.6 Joints. Joints and connections shall be of an approved type. Joints and connections shall be tight for the pressure of the ground-source loop system. Joints used underground shall be approved for buried applications.

1210.6.1 Joints between different piping materials. Joints between different piping materials shall be made with approved transition fittings.

1210.6.2 Preparation of pipe ends. Pipe shall be cut square ~~square, be reamed,~~ and be free from burrs and obstructions. ~~CPVC, PE and PVC pipe shall be chamfered.~~ Pipe ends shall have full-bore openings and shall ~~not be undercut.~~ be prepared in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

1210.6.3 Joint preparation and installation. Where required by Sections 1210.6.4 through ~~1210.6.6,~~1210.6.8, the preparation and installation of mechanical and thermoplastic-welded joints shall comply with Sections 1210.6.3.1 and 1210.6.3.2.

1210.6.3.1 Mechanical joints. Mechanical joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

1210.6.3.2 Thermoplastic-welded joints. Joint surfaces for thermoplastic-welded joints shall be cleaned by an approved procedure. Joints shall be welded in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

1210.6.4 CPVC plastic pipe. Joints between CPVC plastic pipe or fittings shall be solvent-cemented or threaded joints complying with Section 1203.3.

1210.6.5 Cross-linked polyethylene (PEX) plastic tubing. Joints between cross-linked polyethylene plastic tubing and fittings shall comply with Sections 1210.6.5.1 and 1210.6.5.2. Mechanical joints shall comply with Section 1210.6.3.

1210.6.5.1 Compression-type fittings. Where compression-type fittings include inserts and ferrules or O-rings, the fittings shall be installed without omitting the inserts and ferrules or O-rings.

1210.6.5.2 Plastic-to-metal connections. Soldering on the metal portion of the system shall be performed not less than 18 inches (457 mm) from a plastic-to-metal adapter in the same water line.

1210.6.6 Polyethylene plastic pipe and tubing for ground-source heat pump loop systems. Joints between polyethylene plastic pipe and tubing or fittings for ground-source heat pump loop systems shall be heat-fusion joints complying with Section 1210.6.6.1, electrofusion joints complying with Section 1210.6.6.2, or stab-type insertion joints complying with Section 1210.6.6.3.

1210.6.6.1 Heat-fusion joints. Joints shall be of the socket-fusion, saddle-fusion or butt-fusion type, joined in accordance with ASTM D2657. Joint surfaces shall be clean and free from moisture. Joint surfaces shall be heated to melt temperatures and joined. The joint shall be undisturbed until cool. Fittings shall be manufactured in accordance with ASTM D2683 or ASTM D3261.

1210.6.6.2 Electrofusion joints. Joints shall be of the electrofusion type. Joint surfaces shall be clean and free from moisture, and scoured to expose virgin resin. Joint surfaces shall be heated to melt temperatures for the period of time specified by the manufacturer. The joint shall be undisturbed until cool. Fittings shall be manufactured in accordance with ASTM F1055.

1210.6.6.3 Stab-type insert fittings. Joint surfaces shall be clean and free from moisture. Pipe ends shall be chamfered and inserted into the fittings to full depth. Fittings shall be manufactured in accordance with ASTM F1924.

1210.6.7 Polypropylene (PP) plastic. Joints between PP plastic pipe and fittings shall comply with Sections 1210.6.7.1 and 1210.6.7.2.

1210.6.7.1 Heat-fusion joints. Heat-fusion joints for polypropylene (PP) pipe and tubing joints shall be installed with socket-type heat-fused polypropylene fittings, electrofusion polypropylene fittings or by butt fusion. Joint surfaces shall be clean and free from moisture. The joint shall be undisturbed until cool. Joints shall be made in accordance with ASTM F2389.

1210.6.7.2 Mechanical and compression sleeve joints. Mechanical and compression sleeve joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

1210.6.8 Raised temperature polyethylene (PE-RT) plastic tubing. Joints between raised temperature polyethylene tubing and fittings shall comply with Sections 1210.6.8.1 and 1210.6.8.2. Mechanical joints shall comply with Section 1210.6.3.

1210.6.8.1 Compression-type fittings. Where compression-type fittings include inserts and ferrules or O-rings, the fittings shall be installed without omitting the inserts and ferrules or O-rings.

1210.6.8.2 PE-RT-to-metal connections. Solder joints in a metal pipe shall not occur within 18 inches (457 mm) of a transition from such metal pipe to PE-RT pipe.

1210.6.9 PVC plastic pipe. Joints between PVC plastic pipe and fittings shall be solvent-cemented or threaded joints complying with Section 1203.3.

1210.7 Shutoff valves. Shutoff valves shall be installed in ground-source loop piping systems in the locations indicated in Sections 1210.7.1 through 1210.7.7.

1210.7.1 Heat exchangers. Shutoff valves shall be installed on the supply and return side of a heat exchanger.

Exception: Shutoff valves shall not be required where heat exchangers are integral with a boiler or are a component of a manufacturer's boiler and heat exchanger packaged unit and are capable of being isolated from the hydronic system by the supply and return valves required by Section 1005.1.

1210.7.2 Central systems. Shutoff valves shall be installed on the building supply and return of a central utility system.

1210.7.3 Pressure vessels. Shutoff valves shall be installed on the connection to any pressure vessel.

1210.7.4 Pressure-reducing valves. Shutoff valves shall be installed on both sides of a pressure-reducing valve.

1210.7.5 Equipment and appliances. Shutoff valves shall be installed on connections to mechanical *equipment* and ~~appliances~~*appliances*. This requirement does not apply to components of a ground-source loop system such as pumps, air separators, metering devices, and similar *equipment*.

1210.7.6 Expansion tanks. Shutoff valves shall be installed at connections to nondiaphragm-type expansion tanks.

1210.7.7 Reduced pressure. A pressure relief valve shall be installed on the low-pressure side of a hydronic piping system that has been reduced in pressure. The relief valve shall be set at the maximum pressure of the system design. The valve shall be installed in accordance with Section 1006.

1210.8 Installation. Piping, valves, fittings and connections shall be installed in accordance with ~~the conditions of approval.~~ ANSI/CSA/IGSHPA C448 and the manufacturer's instructions.

1210.8.1 Protection of potable water. Where ground-source heat pump ground-loop systems have a connection to a potable water supply, the potable water system shall be protected from backflow in accordance with the *International Plumbing Code*.

1210.8.2 Pipe penetrations. Openings for pipe penetrations in walls, floors and ceilings shall be larger than the penetrating pipe. Openings through concrete or masonry building elements shall be sleeved. The annular space surrounding pipe penetrations shall be protected in accordance with the *International Building Code*.

1210.8.3 Clearance from combustibles. A pipe in a ground-source heat pump piping system having an exterior surface temperature exceeding 250°F (121°C) shall have a minimum *clearance* of 1 inch (25 mm) from combustible materials.

1210.8.4 Contact with building material. A ground-source heat pump ground-loop piping system shall not be in direct contact with building materials that cause the piping or fitting material to degrade or corrode, or that interfere with the operation of the system.

1210.8.5 Strains and stresses. Piping shall be installed so as to prevent detrimental strains and stresses in the pipe. Provisions shall be made to protect piping from damage resulting from expansion, contraction and structural settlement. Piping shall be installed so as to avoid structural stresses or strains within building components.

1210.8.6 Flood hazard. Piping located in a flood hazard area shall be capable of resisting hydrostatic and hydrodynamic loads and stresses, including the effects of buoyancy, during the occurrence of flooding to the *design flood elevation*.

1210.8.7 Pipe support. Pipe shall be supported in accordance with Section 305.

1210.8.8 Velocities. Ground-source heat pump ground-loop systems shall be designed so that the flow velocities do not exceed the maximum flow velocity recommended by the pipe and fittings manufacturer and shall be controlled to reduce the possibility of water hammer.

1210.8.9 Labeling and marking. Ground-source heat pump ground-loop system piping shall be marked with tape, metal tags or other method where it enters a building indicating “GROUND-SOURCE HEAT PUMP LOOP SYSTEM.” The marking shall indicate any antifreeze used in the system by name and concentration.

1210.8.10 Chemical compatibility. Antifreeze and other materials used in the system shall be chemically compatible with the pipe, tubing, fittings and mechanical systems.

1210.9 Makeup water. The transfer fluid shall be compatible with the makeup water supplied to the system.

1210.10 Tests. Before connection header trenches are backfilled, the assembled loop system shall be pressure tested with water at 100 psi (689 kPa) for 15 minutes, in which time there shall not be observed leaks. Flow and pressure loss testing shall be performed and the actual flow rates and pressure drops shall be compared to the calculated design values. If actual flow rate or pressure drop values differ from calculated design values by more than 10 percent, the cause shall be identified and corrective action taken.

1210.11 Embedded piping. Ground-source heat pump ground-loop piping to be embedded in concrete shall be pressure tested prior to pouring concrete. During pouring, the pipe shall be maintained at the proposed operating pressure.

CHAPTER 13
FUEL OIL PIPING AND STORAGE

SECTION 1301
GENERAL

1301.1 Scope. This chapter shall govern the design, installation, construction and repair of fuel oil storage and piping systems. The storage of fuel oil and flammable and combustible liquids shall be in accordance with Chapters 6 and 57 of the *International Fire Code*.

1301.2 Storage and piping systems. Fuel oil storage systems shall comply with Section 603.3 of the *International Fire Code*. Fuel oil piping systems shall comply with the requirements of this code.

> ~~**Exception:** Fuel-oil storage tanks for one- and two-family dwellings and townhouses shall comply with Section 1309.~~

1301.3 Fuel type. An *appliance* shall be designed for use with the type of fuel to which it will be connected. Such *appliance* shall not be converted from the fuel specified on the rating plate for use with a different fuel without securing reapproval from the code official.~~See Section 301.12.~~

1301.4 Fuel tanks, ~~piping~~piping, fittings and valves. The tank, ~~piping~~piping, fittings and valves for ~~appliances~~*appliances* burning oil shall be installed in accordance with the requirements of this chapter. Where an oil burner is served by a tank, any part of which is above the level of the burner inlet connection and where the fuel supply line is taken from the top of the tank, an *approved* antisiphon valve or other siphon-breaking device shall be installed in lieu of the shutoff valve.

1301.5 Tanks abandoned or removed. All exterior above-grade fill piping shall be removed when tanks are abandoned or removed. Tank abandonment and removal shall be in accordance with Section 5704.2.13 of the *International Fire Code*.

SECTION 1302
MATERIAL

1302.1 General. Piping materials shall conform to the standards cited in this section.

1302.2 Rated for system. All materials shall be rated for the operating temperatures and pressures of the system, and shall be compatible with the type of liquid.

1302.3 Pipe standards. Fuel oil pipe shall comply with one of the standards listed in Table 1302.3.

TABLE 1302.3
FUEL OIL PIPING AND FITTINGS

MATERIAL	STANDARD (see Chapter 15)
Copper or copper-alloy pipe and fittings	ASTM B42; ASTM B43; ASTM ~~B302~~B302; ASTM F3226
Copper or copper-alloy tubing and fittings (Type K, L or M)	ASME B16.51; ASTM B75; ASTM B88; ASTM ~~B280~~B280; ASTM F3226
Labeled pipe	(See Section 1302.4)
Nonmetallic pipe	ASTM D2996
Steel and stainless steel pipe and fittings	ASTM A53; ASTM ~~A106~~A106; ASTM A312; ASTM F3226
Steel and stainless steel tubing and fittings	ASTM A254; ASTM A269; ASTM ~~A539~~A539; ASTM F3226

1302.4 Nonmetallic pipe. Nonmetallic pipe shall be *listed* and *labeled* as being acceptable for the intended application for flammable and combustible liquids. Nonmetallic pipe shall be installed only ~~outside,~~outdoors, underground.

1302.5 Fittings and valves. Fittings and valves shall be *approved* for the piping systems, and shall be compatible with, or shall be of the same material as, the pipe or tubing.

1302.6 Bending of pipe. Pipe shall be *approved* for bending. Pipe bends shall be made with *approved equipment*. The bend shall not exceed the structural limitations of the pipe.

1302.7 Pumps. Pumps that are not part of an *appliance* shall be of a positive-displacement type. The pump shall automatically shut off the supply when not in operation. Pumps shall be *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 343.

1302.8 Flexible connectors and hoses. Flexible connectors and hoses shall be *listed* and *labeled* ~~in accordance with UL 536.~~as being acceptable for the intended application for flammable and combustible liquids.

1302.9 Piping systems. Above-ground piping systems shall be *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 1369. Underground piping systems shall be *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 971A.

SECTION 1303
JOINTS AND CONNECTIONS

1303.1 Approval. Joints and connections shall be *approved* and of a type *approved* for fuel oil piping systems. Threaded joints and connections shall be made tight with suitable lubricant or pipe compound. Unions requiring gaskets or packings, right or left couplings, and sweat fittings employing solder having a melting point of less than 1,000°F (538°C) shall not be used in oil lines. Cast-iron fittings shall not be used. Joints and connections shall be tight for the pressure required by test.

1303.1.1 Joints between different piping materials. Joints between different piping materials shall be made with *approved* adapter fittings. Joints between different metallic piping materials shall be made with *approved* dielectric fittings or ~~brass~~copper-alloy converter fittings.

1303.2 Preparation of pipe ends. Pipe shall be cut square, reamed and chamfered and be free from all burrs and obstructions. Pipe ends shall have full-bore openings and shall not be undercut.

1303.3 Joint preparation and installation. Where required by Sections 1303.4 through ~~1303.10,~~1303.9, the preparation and installation of brazed, mechanical, ~~threaded,~~threaded, press-connect and welded joints shall comply with Sections 1303.3.1 through ~~1303.3.4.~~1303.3.5.

1303.3.1 Brazed joints. All joint surfaces shall be cleaned. An *approved* flux shall be applied where required. The joints shall be brazed with a filler metal conforming to AWS A5.8.

1303.3.2 Mechanical joints. Mechanical joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. ~~Press-connect joints shall conform to one of the standards listed in Table 1302.3.~~

1303.3.3 Threaded joints. Threads shall conform to ASME B1.20.1. Pipe-joint compound or tape shall be applied on the male threads only.

1303.3.4 Welded joints. All joint surfaces shall be cleaned by an *approved* procedure. The joint shall be welded with an *approved* filler metal.

1303.3.5 Press-connect joints. *Press-connect joints* shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and shall conform to one of the standards listed in Table 1302.3.

~~**1303.4 Brass pipe.** Joints between brass pipe or fittings shall be brazed, mechanical, threaded or welded joints complying with Section 1303.3.~~

~~**1303.5 Brass tubing.** Joints between brass tubing or fittings shall be brazed or mechanical joints complying with Section 1303.3.~~

~~1303.6~~1303.4 Copper or copper-alloy pipe. Joints between copper or copper-alloy pipe or fittings shall be brazed, mechanical, ~~threaded~~threaded, press-connect or welded joints complying with Section 1303.3.

~~1303.7~~1303.5 Copper or copper-alloy tubing. Joints between copper or copper-alloy tubing or fittings shall be brazed, mechanical ~~joints complying with Section 1303.3,~~ or *press-connect joints* complying with Section 1303.3. ~~press connect joints that conform to one of the standards in Table 1302.3 or flared joints. Flared joints shall be made by a tool designed for that operation.~~

~~1303.8~~1303.6 Nonmetallic pipe. Joints between nonmetallic pipe or fittings shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions for the *labeled* pipe and fittings.

~~1303.9~~1303.7 Steel and stainless steel pipe. Joints between steel or stainless steel pipe or fittings shall be ~~threaded~~threaded, press-connect or welded joints complying with Section 1303.3 or mechanical joints complying with Section ~~1303.9.1~~1303.7.1.

~~1303.9.1~~1303.7.1 Mechanical joints. Joints shall be made with an *approved* elastomeric seal. Mechanical joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Mechanical joints shall be installed ~~outside,~~outdoors, underground, unless otherwise *approved*.

~~1303.10~~1303.8 Steel and stainless steel tubing. Joints between steel or stainless steel tubing or fittings shall be ~~mechanical~~ mechanical, press-connect or welded joints complying with Section 1303.3.

~~1303.11~~1303.9 Piping protection. Proper allowance shall be made for expansion, contraction, jarring and vibration. Piping other than tubing, connected to underground tanks, except straight fill lines and test wells, shall be provided with flexible connectors, or otherwise arranged to permit the tanks to settle without impairing the tightness of the piping connections.

SECTION 1304
PIPING SUPPORT

1304.1 General. Pipe supports shall be in accordance with Section 305.

SECTION 1305
FUEL OIL SYSTEM INSTALLATION

1305.1 Size. The fuel oil system shall be sized for the maximum capacity of fuel oil required. The minimum size of a supply line shall be $^3/_8$-inch (9.5 mm) inside diameter nominal pipe or $^3/_8$-inch (9.5 mm) ~~od~~outside diameter tubing. The minimum size of a return line shall be $^1/_4$-inch (6.4 mm) inside diameter nominal pipe or $^5/_{16}$-inch (7.9 mm) outside diameter tubing. Copper tubing shall have 0.035-inch (0.9 mm) nominal and 0.032-inch (0.8 mm) minimum wall thickness.

1305.2 Protection of pipe, equipment and appliances. Fuel oil pipe, *equipment* and ~~appliances~~*appliances* shall be protected from physical damage.

1305.2.1 Flood hazard. Fuel oil pipe, ~~equipment~~*equipment* and ~~appliances~~*appliances* located in flood hazard areas shall be located above the elevation required by Section 1612 of the *International Building Code* for utilities and attendant equipment or shall be capable of resisting hydrostatic and hydrodynamic loads and stresses, including the effects of buoyancy, during the occurrence of flooding up to such elevation.

1305.3 Supply piping. Supply piping shall connect to the top of the fuel oil tank. Fuel oil shall be supplied by a transfer pump or automatic pump or by other *approved* means.

Exception: This section shall not apply to inside or above-ground fuel oil tanks.

1305.4 Return piping. Return piping shall connect to the top of the fuel oil tank. Valves shall not be installed on return piping.

1305.5 System pressure. The system shall be designed for the maximum pressure required by the fuel-oil-burning *appliance*. Air or other gases shall not be used to pressurize tanks.

1305.6 Fill piping. A fill pipe shall terminate outside of a building at a point not less than 2 feet (610 mm) from any building opening at the same or lower level. A fill pipe shall terminate in a manner designed to minimize spilling when the filling hose is disconnected. Fill opening shall be equipped with a tight metal cover designed to discourage tampering.

1305.7 Vent piping. Liquid fuel vent pipes shall terminate outside of buildings at a point not less than 2 feet (610 mm) measured vertically or horizontally from any building opening. Outer ends of vent pipes shall terminate in a weatherproof vent cap or fitting or be provided with a weatherproof hood. Vent caps shall have a minimum free open area equal to the cross-sectional area of the vent pipe and shall not employ screens finer than No. 4 mesh. Vent pipes shall terminate sufficiently above the ground to avoid being obstructed with snow or ice. Vent pipes from tanks containing heaters shall be extended to a location where oil vapors discharging from the vent will be readily diffused. If the static head with a vent pipe filled with oil exceeds 10 pounds per square inch (psi) (69 kPa), the tank shall be designed for the maximum static head that will be imposed.

Liquid fuel vent pipes shall not be cross connected with fill pipes, lines from burners or overflow lines from auxiliary tanks.

1305.8 Pipe penetrations. Openings for pipe penetrations in walls, floors or ceilings shall be larger than the penetrating pipe. Openings through concrete or masonry building elements shall be sleeved. The annular space surrounding pipe penetrations shall be sealed and protected in an *approved* manner in accordance with the *International Building Code*.

SECTION 1306
OIL GAUGING

1306.1 Level indication. Tanks in which a constant oil level is not maintained by an automatic pump shall be equipped with a method of determining the oil level.

1306.2 Test wells. Test wells shall not be installed inside buildings. For ~~outside~~outdoor service, test wells shall be equipped with a tight metal cover designed to discourage tampering.

1306.3 Inside tanks. The gauging of inside tanks by means of measuring sticks shall not be permitted. An inside tank provided with fill and vent pipes shall be provided with a device to indicate either visually or audibly at the fill point when the oil in the tank has reached a predetermined safe level.

1306.4 Gauging devices. Gauging devices such as liquid level indicators or signals shall be designed and installed so that oil vapor will not be discharged into a building from the liquid fuel supply system. Liquid-level indicating gauges shall comply with UL 180.

1306.5 Gauge glass. A tank used in connection with any oil burner shall not be equipped with a glass gauge or any gauge ~~which,~~that, when broken, will permit the escape of oil from the tank.

SECTION 1307
FUEL OIL VALVES

1307.1 Building shutoff. A shutoff valve shall be installed on the fuel-oil supply line at the entrance to the building. Inside or above-ground tanks are permitted to have valves installed at the tank. The valve shall be capable of stopping the flow of fuel oil to the building or to the *appliance* served where the valve is installed at a tank inside the building. Valves shall comply with UL 842.

1307.2 Appliance shutoff. A shutoff valve shall be installed at the connection to each *appliance* where more than one fuel-oil-burning *appliance* is installed.

1307.3 Pump relief valve. A relief valve shall be installed on the pump discharge line where a valve is located downstream of the pump and the pump is capable of exceeding the pressure limitations of the fuel oil system.

1307.4 Fuel-oil heater relief valve. A relief valve shall be installed on the discharge line of fuel-oil-heating ~~appliances~~*appliances*.

1307.5 Relief valve operation. The relief valve shall discharge fuel oil when the pressure exceeds the limitations of the system. The discharge line shall connect to the fuel oil tank.

SECTION 1308
TESTING

1308.1 Testing required. Fuel oil piping shall be tested in accordance with NFPA 31.

1308.1.1 Test gauges. Gauges used for testing shall be as follows:

1. Tests requiring a pressure of 10 pounds per square inch (psi) (69 kPa) or less shall utilize a testing gauge having increments of 0.10 psi (0.69 kPa) or less.
2. Tests requiring a pressure of greater than 10 psi (69 kPa) but less than or equal to 100 psi (689 kPa) shall utilize a testing gauge having increments of 1 psi (6.9 kPa) or less.
3. Tests requiring a pressure of greater than 100 psi (689 kPa) shall utilize a testing gauge having increments of 2 psi (14 kPa) or less.

~~SECTION 1309~~
~~OIL TANKS FOR ONE- AND TWO-FAMILY DWELLINGS AND TOWNHOUSES~~

~~**1309.1 Materials.** Supply tanks shall be listed and labeled and shall conform to UL 142 for above-ground tanks, UL 58 for underground tanks, and UL 80 for inside tanks.~~

~~**1309.2 Above-ground tanks.** The maximum amount of fuel oil stored above ground or inside of a building shall be 660 gallons (2498 L). The supply tank shall be supported on rigid noncombustible supports to prevent settling or shifting.~~

~~**1309.2.1 Tanks with buildings.** Supply tanks for use inside of buildings shall be of such size and shape to permit installation and removal from dwellings as whole units. Supply tanks larger than 10 gallons (38 L) shall be placed not less than 5 feet (1524 mm) from any fire or flame either within or external to any fuel-burning appliance.~~

~~**1309.2.2 Outside above-ground tanks.** Tanks installed outside above ground shall be a minimum of 5 feet (1524 mm) from an adjoining property line. Such tanks shall be protected from the weather and from physical damage.~~

~~**1309.3 Underground tanks.** Excavations for underground tanks shall not undermine the foundations of existing structures. The clearance from the tank to the nearest wall of a basement, pit or property line shall not be less than 1 foot (305 mm). Tanks shall be set on and surrounded with noncorrosive inert materials such as clean earth, sand or gravel well tamped in place. Tanks shall be covered with not less than 1 foot (305 mm) of earth. Corrosion protection shall be provided in accordance with Section 1309.8.~~

~~**1309.4 Multiple tanks.** Cross connection of two supply tanks shall be permitted in accordance with Section 1309.7.~~

~~**1309.5 Oil gauges.** Inside tanks shall be provided with a device to indicate when the oil in the tank has reached a predetemined safe level. Glass gauges or a gauge subject to breakage that could result in the escape of oil from the tank shall not be used.~~

~~**1309.6 Flood-resistant installation.** In areas prone to flooding as established by Table R301.2(1) of the *International Residential Code*, tanks shall be installed at or above the design flood elevation established in Section R324 of the *International Residential Code* or shall be anchored to prevent flotation, collapse and lateral movement under conditions of the design flood.~~

~~**1309.7 Cross connection of tanks.** Cross connection of supply tanks, not exceeding 660 gallons (2498 L) of aggregate capacity, with gravity flow from one tank to another, shall be acceptable provided that the two tanks are on the same horizontal plane.~~

~~**1309.8 Corrosion protection.** Underground tanks and buried piping shall be protected by corrosion-resistant coatings or alloys or fiberglass-reinforced plastic.~~

CHAPTER 14
SOLAR THERMAL SYSTEMS

SECTION 1401
GENERAL

1401.1 Scope. This chapter shall govern the design, construction, installation, *alteration* and repair of solar thermal systems, *equipment* and ~~appliances~~*appliances* intended to utilize solar energy for space heating or cooling, domestic hot water heating, swimming pool heating or process heating.

1401.2 Potable water supply. Potable water supplies to solar systems shall be protected against contamination in accordance with the *International Plumbing Code*.

> **Exception:** Where all solar system piping is a part of the potable water distribution system, in accordance with the requirements of the *International Plumbing Code*, and all components of the piping system are *listed* for potable water use, cross-connection protection measures shall not be required.

1401.3 Heat exchangers. Heat exchangers used in domestic water-heating systems shall be *approved* for the intended use. The system shall have adequate protection to ensure that the potability of the water supply and distribution system is properly safeguarded.

1401.4 Solar ~~energy~~thermal equipment and appliances. Solar ~~energy~~thermal *equipment* and ~~appliances~~*appliances* shall conform to the requirements of this chapter and ICC 900/SRCC 300. Solar thermal systems shall be *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with ICC 900/SRCC 300 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's ~~instructions.~~instructions and ICC 900/SRCC 300.

> **1401.4.1 Collectors and panels.** Solar thermal collectors and panels shall be *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with ICC 901/SRCC 100.

SECTION 1402
DESIGN AND INSTALLATION

1402.1 General. The design and installation of solar thermal systems shall comply with Sections 1402.1 through 1402.8. Solar thermal systems shall be *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with ICC 900/SRCC 300 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and ICC 900/SRCC 300.

~~1402.1~~1402.2 Access. Access shall be provided to solar ~~energy~~thermal *equipment* ~~and appliances~~ for maintenance. Solar thermal systems and appurtenances shall not obstruct or interfere with the operation of any doors, windows or other building components requiring operation or access. Roof-mounted solar thermal *equipment* shall not obstruct or interfere with the operation of roof-mounted *equipment*, *appliances*, chimneys, roof hatches, smoke vents, skylights and other roof penetrations and openings.

~~1402.5.1~~1402.3 Pressure and temperature. Solar ~~energy~~thermal system components containing pressurized fluids shall be protected against pressures and temperatures exceeding design limitations with ~~a~~ pressure and temperature relief ~~valve.~~ valves or pressure relief valves. ~~Each section of the system in which excessive pressures are capable of developing shall have a relief device located so that a section cannot be valved off or otherwise isolated from a relief device. Relief valves shall comply with the requirements of Section 1006.4 and discharge in accordance with Section 1006.6~~ System components shall have a working pressure rating of not less than the setting of the pressure relief device.

> **1402.3.1 Relief device.** Each section of the system in which excessive pressures are capable of developing shall have a relief device located so that a section cannot be valved off or otherwise isolated from a relief device. Relief valves shall comply with the requirements of Section 1006.6. For indirect solar systems, pressure relief valves in solar loops shall also comply with ICC 900/SRCC 300.

> **~~1402.5.2~~1402.3.2 Vacuum.** ~~The solar energy system~~System components that might be subjected to a vacuum while in operation or during shutdown shall be designed to withstand such vacuum or shall be protected with vacuum relief valves.

~~1402.5.3~~1402.4 **Protection from freezing.** System components shall be protected from damage by freezing of heat transfer liquids at the lowest ambient temperatures that will be encountered during the operation of the system. Freeze protection shall be provided in accordance with ICC 900/SRCC 300. Drain-back systems shall be installed in compliance with Section 1402.4.1 and systems utilizing freeze-protection valves shall comply with Section 1402.4.2.

1402.4.1 ~~**Collectors mounted above the roof.**~~**Drain-back systems.** ~~Where mounted on or above the roof covering, the collector array and supporting construction shall be constructed of noncombustible materials or fire-retardant-treated wood conforming to the *International Building Code* to the extent required for the type of roof construction of the building to which the collectors are accessory.~~Drain-back systems shall be designed and installed to allow for manual gravity draining of fluids from areas subject to freezing to locations not subject to freezing, and air filling of the components and piping. Such piping and components shall maintain a horizontal slope in the direction of flow of not less than one-fourth unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (2-percent slope). Piping and components subject to manual gravity draining shall permit subsequent air filling upon drainage and air storage or venting upon refilling.

> ~~**Exception:** The use of plastic solar collector covers shall be limited to those *approved* plastics meeting the requirements for plastic roof panels in the *International Building Code*.~~

1402.4.2 Freeze-protection valves. Freeze-protection valves shall discharge in a manner that does not create a hazard or structural damage.

1402.5 Protection of potable water. Where a solar thermal system heats potable water to supply a potable hot water distribution or any other type of heating system, the solar thermal system shall be in accordance with Sections 1402.5.1 through 1402.5.3 as applicable.

1402.5.1 Indirect systems. Water supplies of any type shall not be connected to the solar heating loop of an indirect solar thermal hot water heating system. This requirement shall not prohibit the presence of inlets or outlets on the solar heating loop for the purposes of servicing the fluid in the solar heating loop.

1402.5.2 Direct systems for potable water distribution systems. Where a solar thermal system directly heats potable water for a potable water distribution system, the pipe, fittings, valves and other components that are in contact with the potable water in the system shall comply with the requirements of the *International Plumbing Code*.

1402.5.3 Direct systems for other than potable water distribution systems. Where a solar thermal system directly heats water for a system other than a potable water distribution system, a potable water supply connected to such system shall be protected against backflow in accordance with the *International Plumbing Code*.

~~**1402.2**~~**1402.6 Protection of equipment.** Solar thermal *equipment* exposed to vehicular traffic shall be installed not less than 6 feet (1829 mm) above the finished floor.

Exception: This section shall not apply where the *equipment* is protected from motor vehicle impact.

1402.7 Protection of structure. In the process of installing or repairing any part of a solar thermal system, the building or structure shall be left in a safe structural condition in accordance with Sections 302, 1402.7.1 and 1402.7.2.

~~**1402.3**~~**1402.7.1 Controlling condensation.** Where attics or structural spaces are part of a passive solar system, ventilation of such spaces, as required by Section 406, is not required where other *approved* means of controlling condensation are provided.

~~**1402.6**~~**1402.7.2 Penetrations.** Roof and wall penetrations shall be flashed and sealed to prevent entry of water, rodents and ~~insects.~~insects in accordance with Section 302.

~~**1402.5**~~**1402.8 Equipment.** The solar ~~energy~~thermal system shall be equipped in accordance with the requirements of Sections ~~1402.5.1~~1402.8.1 through ~~1402.5.4.~~1402.8.5.3.

1402.8.1 Collectors and panels. Solar collectors and panels shall comply with Sections 1402.8.1.1 through 1402.8.1.4.

1402.8.1.1 Design. Solar thermal collectors and panels shall be *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with ICC 901/SRCC 100.

1402.8.1.2 Rooftop-mounted solar thermal collectors and systems. The roof shall be constructed to support the loads imposed by roof-mounted solar collectors. Where mounted on or above the roof covering, the collector array, mounting systems and their attachments to the roof shall be constructed of noncombustible materials or fire-retardant-treated wood conforming to the *International Building Code* to the extent required for the type of roof construction of the building to which the collectors are accessory.

~~1402.4 Roof-mounted collectors.~~1402.8.1.3 Collectors as roof covering. Roof-mounted solar collectors that also serve as a roof covering shall conform to the requirements for roof coverings in accordance with the *International Building Code*.

Exception: The use of plastic solar collector covers shall be limited to those *approved* light-transmitting plastics meeting the requirements for plastic roof panels in Section 2609 of the *International Building Code*.

1402.8.1.4 Collector sensors. Collector sensor installation, sensor location and the protection of exposed sensor wires from degradation shall be in accordance with ICC 900/SRCC 300, NFPA 70 and the collector manufacturer's instructions.

~~1401.5~~1402.8.2 Ducts. Ducts utilized in solar heating and cooling systems shall be constructed and installed in accordance with ~~Chapter 6 of this code.~~Chapter 6.

~~1402.7~~1402.8.2.1 Filtering. Air transported to occupied spaces through ~~rock or~~ dust-producing materials by means other than natural convection shall be filtered ~~at the outlet from the heat storage system.~~before entering the occupied space in accordance with Section 605.

1402.8.3 Piping. Potable piping shall be installed in accordance with the *International Plumbing Code*. Hydronic piping shall be installed in accordance with Chapter 12 of this code. Mechanical system piping shall be supported in accordance with Section 305.

1402.8.3.1 Piping insulation. Piping shall be insulated in accordance with the requirements of the *International Energy Conservation Code*. Exterior insulation shall be protected from degradation. The entire solar loop shall be insulated. Where split-style insulation is used, the seam shall be sealed. Fittings shall be fully insulated. Insulation shall comply with Section 1204.1.

Exceptions:

1. Those portions of the piping that are used to help prevent the system from overheating shall not be required to be insulated.
2. Those portions of piping that are exposed to solar radiation, made of the same material as the solar collector absorber plate and covered in the same manner as the solar collector absorber, or that are used to collect additional solar energy, shall not be required to be insulated.
3. Piping in solar thermal systems using unglazed solar collectors to heat a swimming pool shall not be required to be insulated.

1402.8.4 Heat exchangers. Heat exchangers used in domestic water-heating systems shall be approved for the intended use. The system shall have adequate protection to ensure that the potability of the water supply and distribution system is properly safeguarded.

1402.8.4.1 Double-wall heat exchangers. Heat exchangers utilizing a nonfood-grade fluid shall be separated from the potable water by double-wall construction. An air gap open to the atmosphere shall be provided between the two walls. The discharge location from the double-wall heat exchanger shall be visible.

1402.8.4.2 Single-wall heat exchangers. Food-grade fluids shall be used as the heat transfer fluid in singlewall heat exchangers.

1402.8.5 Water heaters and hot water storage tanks. Auxiliary water heaters, boilers and water storage tanks associated with solar thermal systems shall comply with Chapter 10 and ICC 900/SRCC 300.

1402.8.5.1 Hot water storage tank insulation. Hot water storage tanks shall be insulated and such insulation shall have an *R*-value of not less than R-12.5.

1402.8.5.2 Outdoor locations. Storage tanks and heating *equipment* installed in outdoor locations shall be designed for outdoor installation.

1402.8.5.3 Storage tank sensors. Storage tank sensors shall comply with ICC 900/SRCC 300.

1402.8.6 Solar loop. Solar loops shall be in accordance with Sections 1402.8.6.1 and 1402.8.6.2.

1402.8.6.1 Solar loop isolation. Valves shall be installed to allow the solar loop to be isolated from the remainder of the system.

1402.8.6.2 Drain and fill valve caps. Drain caps shall be installed on drain and fill valves.

~~1402.5.4~~1402.8.7 Expansion tanks. Liquid single-phase solar energy systems shall be equipped with expansion tanks sized in accordance with Section ~~1009.~~1009, except that additional expansion tank acceptance volume equal to the total volume of liquid contained in the installed solar collectors and piping above the collectors shall be included.

SECTION 1403
HEAT TRANSFER FLUIDS

1403.1 Flash point. The flash point of the ~~actual~~ heat transfer fluid utilized in a solar system shall be not less than 50°F (28°C) above the design maximum nonoperating (no-flow) temperature of the fluid attained in the collector.

1403.2 Heat transfer fluids. Heat transfer gases and liquids shall be rated to withstand the system's maximum design temperature under operating conditions without degradation. Heat transfer fluids shall be in accordance with ICC 900/SRCC 300.

1403.3 Food-grade additives. Any food-grade fluid used as a heat transfer fluid containing additives shall be third-party listed by an approved agency to the appropriate section of the Code of Federal Regulations, Title 21, Food and Drugs, Chapter 1, Food and Drug Administration, Parts ~~174–186.~~174 through 186.

1403.4 Toxicity. The use of toxic fluids shall comply with Title 15 of the Federal Hazardous Substances Act and Chapter 60 of the *International Fire Code*.

~~1403.2~~1403.5 Flammable gases and liquids. A flammable liquid or gas shall not be utilized as a heat transfer fluid. The flash point of liquids used in *occupancies* classified in Gtroup H or F shall not be lower unless *approved*.

SECTION 1404
~~MATERIALS~~LABELING

1404.1 Collectors. Factory-built solar thermal collectors shall ~~be listed and labeled, and~~ bear a label showing the manufacturer's name ~~and address, model number, collector dry weight, collector maximum allowable operating and nonoperating temperatures and pressures, minimum allowable temperatures and the types of heat transfer fluids that are compatible with the collector. The label shall clarify that these specifications apply only to the collector.~~and serial number or certification number.

1404.2 ~~Thermal storage units.~~Water storage tanks. Pressurized ~~thermal storage units~~water storage tanks shall ~~be *listed* and *labeled*, and~~ bear a label showing the manufacturer's name and address, model number, serial number, storage unit maximum and minimum allowable operating temperatures, and storage unit maximum and minimum allowable operating ~~pressures and the types of heat transfer fluids compatible with the storage unit.~~pressures. The label shall clarify that these specifications apply only to the ~~thermal storage unit.~~water storage tanks.

1404.3 Fluid safety labeling. Drain and fill valves shall be labeled with a description and warning that identifies the fluid in that loop as "Potable Water," "Food-Grade Fluid," "Nonfood-Grade Fluid" or "Toxic." Labeling shall also be provided that reads as follows: "Fluid could be discharged at high temperature or pressure or both. Unauthorized alterations to this system could result in a health hazard or a hazardous condition."

1404.4 Heat exchangers. Heat exchangers shall be labeled to indicate the heat exchanger type with one of the following:

1. "Single-wall without leak protection."
2. "Double-wall without leak protection."
3. "Double-wall with leak protection."

CHAPTER 15

REFERENCED STANDARDS

User note:

About this chapter: *This code contains numerous references to standards that are used to provide requirements for materials and methods of construction. This chapter contains a comprehensive list of all standards that are referenced in this code. These standards, in essence, are part of this code to the extent of the reference to the standard. This chapter lists the standards that are referenced in various sections of this document.*

The standards are listed herein by the promulgating agency of the standard, the standard identification, the effective date and title, and the section or sections of this document that reference the standard. The application of the referenced standards shall be as specified in Section 102.8.

ACCA

Air Conditioning Contractors of America
2800 Shirlington Road, Suite 300
Arlington, VA 22206

ANSI/ACCA 1 ~~Manual D—2011~~ Manual D—2016

Residential Duct Systems
~~601.4~~ 601.5, 603.2

ANSI/ACCA 10 Manual SPS—2010 RA 2017

HVAC Design for Swimming Pools and Spas
403.2.1

ANSI/ASHRAE/ACCA 183—2007 (reaffirmed ~~2011)~~ 2014)

Peak Cooling and Heating Load Calculations in Buildings Except Low-rise Residential Buildings
312.1

~~Manual J Residential Load Calculations, Eighth Edition . . . . . 312~~
~~Manual S Residential Equipment Selection, Second Edition . . . . . 312~~

AHRI

Air-Conditioning, Heating & Refrigeration Institute
~~4100 North Fairfax Drive, Suite 200~~ 2311 Wilson Blvd., Suite 400
Arlington, VA ~~22203~~ 22201

700—~~2011~~ 700—2017

with Addendum 1: ~~Purity Specifications for Fluorocarbon and Other Refrigerants~~ Specifications for Refrigerants
1102.2.2.3

AMCA

Air Movement and Control Association International
30 West University Drive
Arlington Heights, IL 60004

230—15

Laboratory Methods of Testing Air Circulating Fans for Rating and Certification
930.1

ANSI/AMCA 210—16/ANSI/ASHRAE 51—16

Laboratory Methods of Testing Fans for Aerodynamic Performance Rating
403.3.2.5

ANSI/AMCA ~~550—08~~ 550—15 (Rev. 09/18)

Test Method for High Velocity Wind Driven Rain Resistant Louvers
401.5, 501.3.2

ANSI

American National Standards Institute
25 West 43rd Street, 4th Floor
New York, NY 10036

Z21.1/CSA 1.1—2016

Household Cooking Gas Appliances
505.2

Z21.8—1994 ~~(R2002)~~ (R2017)

Installation of Domestic Gas Conversion Burners
919.1

ASHRAE

ASHRAE
1791 Tullie Circle NE
Atlanta, GA 30329

15—2019

Safety Standard for Refrigeration Systems
1101.1.1, ~~1101.6, 1105.8,~~ 1106.4.2, ~~1108.1~~

34—2019

Designation and Safety Classification of Refrigerants
~~202,~~ 1102.2.1, ~~1103.1~~ 1103.1, Table 1103.1

~~62.1—2013~~ 62.1—2019

Ventilation for Acceptable Indoor Air Quality
403.3.1.1.2.3, 403.3.1.1.2.3.2

~~170—2008~~ 170—2017

Ventilation of Health Care Facilities
~~407~~ 407.1, 601.2

~~180—2012~~

~~Standard Practice for Inspection and Maintenance of Commercial Building HVAC Systems~~
~~102.3~~

ANSI/AMCA 210–ANSI/ASHRAE 51—16

Laboratory Methods of Testing Fans for Aerodynamic Performance Rating
403.3.2.5

~~ASHRAE—2013~~ ASHRAE—2017

ASHRAE Fundamentals Handbook
603.2

ASME

American Society of Mechanical Engineers
Two Park Avenue
New York, NY 10016-5990

A112.4.1—2009 (R2019)

Water Heater Relief Valve Drain Tubes
1006.6

B1.1—2003

Unified Inch Screw Threads, UN and UNR Thread Form
1108.3.4

B1.13M—2006

Metric Screw Threads: M Profile
1108.3.4

~~B1.20.1—1983(R2006)~~ B1.20.1—2013(R2018)

Pipe Threads, General Purpose (Inch)
1108.3.4, 1203.3.5, 1303.3.3

B1.20.3—1976

Dryseal Pipe Threads, Inch
1108.3.4

~~B16.3—2011~~ B16.3—2016

Malleable Iron Threaded Fittings, Classes 150 & 300
Table 1202.5

~~B16.5—2009~~ B16.5—2017

Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings NPS 1/2 through NPS 24
Table 1202.5

~~B16.9—2007~~ B16.9—2019

~~Factory Made~~Factory-made Wrought Steel Buttwelding Fittings
Table 1202.5

~~B16.11—2011~~ B16.11—2016

Forged Fittings, Socket-welding and Threaded
Table 1202.5

~~B16.15—2011~~ B16.15—2018

Cast ~~Bronze~~ Alloy Threaded ~~Fittings~~ Fittings: Classes 125 and 250
Table 1107.5, Table 1202.5

~~B16.18—2012~~ B16.18—2018

Cast Copper Alloy Solder Joint Pressure Fittings
513.13.1, Table 1107.5, Table 1202.5

~~B16.22—(R2010)~~ B16.22—2018

Wrought Copper and Copper Alloy Solder Joint Pressure Fittings
513.13.1, Table 1107.5, Table 1202.5

~~B16.24—2011~~ B16.24—2016

Cast Copper Alloy Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings: Class 150, 300, 400, 600, 900, 1500 and 2500
Table 1107.5, Table 1202.5

~~B16.26—2011~~ B16.26—2018

Cast Copper Alloy Fittings for Flared Copper Tubes
Table 1107.5, Table 1202.5

B16.28—1994

Wrought Steel Buttwelding Short Radius Elbows and Returns
Table 1202.5

B16.50—2018

Wrought Copper and Copper Alloy Braze-joint Pressure Fittings
Table 1107.5

~~B16.51—2011~~ B16.51—2018

Copper and Copper Alloy Press-connect ~~Press-Connect~~ Pressure Fittings
Table ~~1202.5~~ 1202.5, Table 1302.3

~~B31.5—2010~~ B31.5—2019

Refrigeration Piping and Heat Transfer Components
~~1107.1~~ 1109.1

~~B31.9—2011~~ B31.9—2020

Building Services Piping
1201.3

~~BPVC—2010/2011 addenda~~ BPVC—2019

ASME Boiler & Pressure Vessel Code—07 Edition
1003.1, 1004.1, 1009.2, 1011.1

~~CSD-1—2012~~ CSD-1—2018

Controls and Safety Devices for Automatically Fired Boilers
1004.1

ASSE

~~American Society of Sanitary Engineering~~ ASSE International
~~901 Canterbury, Suite A~~ 18927 Hickory Creek Drive, Suite 220
~~Westlake, OH 44145~~ Mokena, IL 60448

~~1017—2010~~ 1017—2009

Performance Requirements for Temperature Actuated Mixing Values for Hot Water Distribution Systems
1002.2.2

1061—2015

Performance Requirements for Push Fit Fittings
Table 1202.5, 1203.10.3, 1203.15.3

1079—2005

Performance Requirements for Dielectric Pipe Unions
1108.1.1

~~ASSE~~ASSP

~~American Society of Safety Engineers~~ American Society of Safety Professionals
~~1800 East Oakton Street~~ 520 N. Northwest Highway
~~Des Plaines,~~ Park Ridge, IL ~~60018~~ 60068

~~ANSI/ASSP Z359.1—2007~~ ANSI/ASSP Z359.1—2020

~~Safety Requirements for Personal Fall Arrest Systems, Subsystems and Components, Part of the~~ The Fall Protection Code
304.11

ASTM

ASTM International
100 Barr Harbor Drive, P.O. Box C700
West Conshohocken, PA 19428

~~A53/A53M—12~~ A53/A53M—2018

Specification for Pipe, Steel, Black and Hot-dipped, Zinc-coated, Welded and Seamless
Table 1107.4, Table 1202.4, Table 1202.5, Table 1302.3

A105/A105M—18

Standard Specification for Carbon Steel Forgings for Piping Applications
Table 1107.5

~~A106/A106M—11~~ A106/A106M—2018

Specification for Seamless Carbon Steel Pipe for ~~High-Temperature~~ High-temperature Service
Table 1107.4, Table 1202.4, Table 1202.5, Table 1302.3

~~A126—09~~ A126—04(2014)

Specification for Gray Iron Castings for Valves, Flanges and Pipe Fittings
Table 1202.5

A181/A181M—14

Standard Specification for Carbon Steel Forgings, for General-purpose Piping
Table 1107.5

A193/A193M—19

Standard Specification for Alloy-steel and Stainless Steel Bolting for High Temperature or High Pressure Service and Other Special Purpose Applications
Table 1107.5

~~A234/A234M—11a~~ A234/A234M—18A

Standard Specification for Piping Fittings of Wrought Carbon Steel ~~And~~ and Alloy Steel ~~For~~ for Moderate and High Temperature Service
Table 1107.5, Table 1202.5

~~A254—97 (2007)~~ A254—2010(2018)

Specification for Copper Brazed Steel Tubing
Table 1107.4, Table 1202.4, Table 1302.3

A269—15

Standard Specification for Seamless and Welded Austenitic Stainless Steel Tubing for General Service
Table 1302.3

A312—2018

Standard Specification for Seamless, Welded, and Heavily Cold Worked Austenitic Stainless Steel Pipes
Table 1302.3

A334/A334M—04a(2016)

Standard Specification for Seamless and Welded Carbon and Alloy-steel Tubes for Low-temperature Service
Table 1107.4

~~A395/A395M—99(2009)~~ A395/A395M—99(2014)

Standard Specification for Ferritic Ductile Iron ~~Pressure-Retaining~~ Pressure-retaining Castings for Use at Elevated Temperatures
Table 1202.5 ~~1202.5, Table 1302.3~~

~~A420/A420M—10A~~ A420/A420M—2016

Specification for Piping Fittings of Wrought Carbon Steel and Alloy Steel for Low-temperature Service
Table 1107.5, Table 1202.5

~~A536—84(2009)~~ A536—84(2014)

Standard Specification for Ductile Iron Castings
Table 1202.5

A539—99

Specification for Electric-resistance-welded Coiled Steel Tubing for Gas and Fuel Oil Lines
Table 1302.3

A707/A707M—19

Standard Specification for Forged Carbon and Alloy Steel Flanges for Low-temperature Service
Table 1107.5

~~B32—08~~ B32—08(2014)

Specification for Solder Metal
1108.3.3, 1203.3.3

~~B42—10~~ B42—15a

Specification for Seamless Copper Pipe, Standard Sizes
513.13.1, ~~1107.5.2, Table 1302.3,~~ Table 1107.4, Table 1202.4, Table 1302.3

~~B43—09~~ B43—15

Specification for Seamless Red Brass Pipe, Standard Sizes
513.13.1, ~~1107.5.2, Table 1302.3,~~ Table 1107.4, Table 1202.4, Table 1302.3

~~B68—11~~ B68/B68M—11

Specification for Seamless Copper Tube, Bright Annealed
Table 1107.4, 513.13.1

~~B75—11~~ B75/B75M—11

Specification for Seamless Copper Tube
Table 1107.4, Table 1202.4, Table 1302.3

~~B88—09~~ B88—2016

Specification for Seamless Copper Water Tube
513.13.1, ~~1107.5.3,~~ Table 1107.4, Table 1202.4, Table 1302.3

~~B135—10~~ B135/B135M—17

Specification for Seamless Brass Tube
Table 1202.4

B210/B210M—12

Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-alloy Drawn Seamless Tubes
Table 1107.4

~~B251-10~~ B251/B251M—2017

Specification for General Requirements for Wrought Seamless Copper and Copper-alloy Tube
513.13.1, Table 1202.4

~~B280-08~~ B280—2018

Specification for Seamless Copper Tube for Air Conditioning and Refrigeration Field Service
513.13.1, ~~1107.5.3,~~ Table 1107.4, Table 1302.3

~~B302-12~~ B302—2017

Specification for Threadless Copper Pipe, Standard Sizes
Table 1107.4, Table 1202.4, Table 1302.3

B361—16

Standard Specification for Factory-made Wrought Aluminum and Aluminum-alloy Welding Fittings
Table 1107.5

B491/B491M—15

Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-alloy Extruded Round Tubes for General-purpose Applications
Table 1107.4

~~B813-10~~ B813—2016

Specification for Liquid and Paste Fluxes for Soldering of Copper and Copper Alloy Tube
1108.3.3, 1203.3.3

B819—2018

Standard Specification for Seamless Copper Tube for Medical Gas Systems
Table 1107.4

B828—2016

Practice for Making Capillary Joints by Soldering of Copper and Copper Alloy Tube and Fittings
1203.3.3

B1003—16

Standard Specification for Seamless Copper Tube for Linesets
Table 1107.4

~~C315—07(2011)~~ C315—2007(2016)

Specification for Clay Flue Liners and Chimney Pots
801.16.1, Table 803.10.4

~~C411—11~~ C411—2017

Test Method for Hot-surface Performance of High-temperature Thermal Insulation
602.2.1.8, 604.3

~~D56—05(2010)~~ D56—2016A

Test Method for Flash Point by Tag Closed Cup Tester
202

~~D93—12~~ D93—18

Test Method for Flash Point of Pensky-Martens Closed Cup Tester
202

D1527—99(2005)

Specification for Acrylonitrile-Butadiene-Styrene (ABS) Plastic Pipe, Schedules 40 and 80
Table 1202.4

~~D1693—13~~

~~Test Method for Environmental Stress-cracking of Ethylene Plastics~~
~~Table 1202.4~~

~~D1785—12~~ D1785—15E1

Specification for Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Pipe, Schedules 40, 80 and 120
Table 1202.4, Table 1210.4

~~D2235—04(2011)~~ D2235—2004(2016)

Specifications for Solvent Cement for Acrylonitrile-Butadiene-Styrene (ABS) Plastic Pipe and Fittings
1203.3.4

~~D2241—09~~ D2241—15

Specification for Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Pressure-rated Pipe (SDR-Series)
Table 1202.4, Table 1210.4

~~D2282—99(2005)~~

~~Specification for Acrylonitrile-Butadiene-Styrene (ABS) Plastic Pipe (SDR-PR)~~
~~Table 1202.4~~

~~D2412—11~~ D2412—11(2018)

Test Method for Determination of External Loading Characteristics of Plastic Pipe by Parallel-plate Loading
603.8.3

~~D2464—13~~ D2464—15

Standard Specification for Threaded Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Pipe Fittings, Schedule 80
Table 1210.5

~~D2466—06~~ D2466—2017

Specification for Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Pipe Fittings, Schedule 40
Table 1202.5, Table 1210.5

~~D2467—06~~ D2467—15

Specification for Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Pipe Fittings, Schedule 80
Table 1202.5, Table 1210.5

~~D2564—12~~ D2564—2012(2018)

Specification for Solvent Cements for Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Piping Systems
1203.3.4

~~D2657—07~~ D2657—2007(2015)

Standard Practice for Heat Fusion Joining of Polyolefin Pipe and Fittings
~~Table 1210.5~~1210.6.6.1

~~D2683—2010E1~~ D2683—14

Specification for Socket-type Polyethylene Fittings for Outside Diameter-controlled Polyethylene Pipe and Tubing
Table 1210.5, 1210.6.6.1

~~D2737—12A~~ D2737—12a

Standard Specification for Polyethylene (PE) Plastic Tubing
Table 1210.4

~~D2846/D2846M—09BE1~~ D2846/D2846M—2017BE1

Specification for Chlorinated Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Plastic ~~Hot and Cold Water~~ Hot- and Cold-water Distribution Systems
Table 1202.4, Table 1202.5, 1203.3.4, Table ~~1210.4~~ 1210.4, Table 1210.5

~~D2996—01(2007)e01~~ D2996—2017

Specification for Filament-wound Fiberglass (Glass Fiber Reinforced Thermosetting Resin) Pipe
Table 1302.3

~~D3035—2012E1~~ D3035—15

Specification for Polyethylene (PE) Plastic Pipe (DR-PR) Based on Controlled Outside Diameter
Table 1210.4

~~D3261—12~~ D3261—2016

Specification for Butt Heat Fusion Polyethylene (PE) Plastic Fittings for Polyethylene (PE) Plastic Pipe and Tubing
Table 1202.5, Table 1210.5, 1210.6.6.1

~~D3278—1996(2011)~~ D3278—96(2011)

Test Methods for Flash Point of Liquids by Small Scale Closed-cup Apparatus
202

D3309—96a(2002)

Specification for Polybutylene (PB) Plastic ~~Hot and Cold Water~~ Hot- and Cold-water Distribution Systems
~~Table 1202.4, 1203.10.1~~ 1203.9.1

~~E84—2013A~~ E84—2018B

Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials
202, ~~510.9,~~ 510.8, 602.2, 602.2.1, 602.2.1.6, ~~602.2.1.6.1, 602.2.1.6.2, 602.2.1.6.3,~~ 602.2.1.7, 602.2.1.8, 604.3, 1204.1

~~E119—2012a~~ E119—2018B

Test Method for Fire Tests of Building Construction and Materials
607.3.1, 607.5.2, 607.5.5, 607.6.1, ~~607.2.1,~~ 607.6.2

~~E136—2012~~ E136—2019

Standard Test Method for ~~Behavior~~ Assessing Combustibility of Materials Using ~~in~~ a Vertical Tube Furnace at 750 Degrees C
202

~~E814—2013~~ E814—2013A(2017)

Standard Test Method for Fire Tests of ~~Through-penetration Fire Stops~~ Penetration Firestop Systems
506.3.11.2, 506.3.11.3

~~E1509—12~~ E1509—2012(2017)

Specification for Room Heaters, Pellet Fuel-burning Type
904.1

~~E2231—09~~ E2231—2018

Standard Practice for Specimen Preparation and Mounting of Pipe and Duct Insulation Materials to Assess Surface Burning Characteristics
602.2.1.8, 604.3, 1204.1

~~E2336—04(2013)~~ E2336—16

Standard Test Methods for Fire Resistive Grease Duct Enclosure Systems
506.3.6, ~~506.3.11.2~~ 506.3.11.2, 506.5.2

~~F437—09~~ F437—15

Specification for Threaded Chlorinated Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Plastic Pipe Fittings, Schedule 80
Table 1210.5

~~F438—09~~ F438—2017

Specification for Socket Type Chlorinated Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Plastic Pipe Fittings, Schedule 40
Table 1202.5, Table 1210.5

~~F439—12~~ F439—13

Specification for Socket Type Chlorinated Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Plastic Pipe Fittings, Schedule 80
Table 1202.5, Table 1210.5

~~F441/F441M—13~~ F441/F441M—15

Specification for Chlorinated Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Plastic Pipe, Schedules 40 and 80
Table 1202.4, Table 1210.4

~~F442/F442M—13~~ F442/F442M—13e1

Specification for Chlorinated Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Plastic Pipe (SDR-PR)
Table 1202.4, Table 1210.4

~~F493—10~~ F493—14

Specification for Solvent Cements for Chlorinated Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Plastic Pipe and Fittings
1203.3.4

F714—13

Standard Specification for Polyethylene (PE) Plastic Pipe (SDR-PR) Based on Outside Diameter
Table 1210.4

~~F876—13~~ F876—2018A

Specification for Cross-linked Polyethylene (PEX) Tubing
Table 1202.4, Table 1210.4

~~F877—2011A~~ F877—2018A

Specification for Cross-linked Polyethylene (PEX) Plastic ~~Hot and Cold Water~~ Hot- and Cold-water Distribution Systems
~~Table 1202.4,~~ Table 1202.5, ~~Table 1210.4~~ Table 1210.5

~~F1055—13~~ F1055—2016A

Specification for Electrofusion Type Polyethylene Fittings for Outside Diameter Controlled Polyethylene and ~~Cross-linked~~ Cross linked Polyethylene (PEX) Pipe and Tubing
Table 1210.5, 1210.6.6.2

~~F1281—11~~ F1281—2017

Specification for Cross-linked Polyethylene/Aluminum/Crosslinked Polyethylene (PEX-AL-PEX) Pressure Pipe
Table 1202.4

~~F1282—10~~ F1282—2017

Standard Specification for Polyethylene/Aluminum/Polyethylene (PE-AL-PE) Composite Pressure Pipe
Table 1202.4, Table 1210.4, Table 1210.5

~~F1476—07~~ F1476—07(2013)

Specification for Performance of Gasketed Mechanical Couplings for Use in Piping Applications
Table 1202.5, 1203.3.7

~~F1548—01(2006)~~ F1548—2001(2018)

Standard Specification for the Performance of Fittings for Use with Gasketed Mechanical Couplings Used in Piping Applications
Table 1202.5

~~F1807—13~~ F1807—2018

Standard Specification for Metal Insert Fittings Utilizing a Copper Crimp Ring for SDR9 Cross-linked Polyethylene (PEX) Tubing and SDR9 Polethylene of Raised Temperature (PE-RT) Tubing
Table 1202.5, Table 1210.5

F1924—12

Standard Specification for Plastic Mechanical Fittings for Use on Outside Diameter Controlled Polyethylene Gas Distribution Pipe and Tubing
1210.6.6.3

~~F1960—12~~ F1960—2018

Specification for ~~Cold-Expansion~~ Cold-expansion Fittings with PEX Reinforcing Rings for Use with Cross-linked Polyethylene (PEX) Tubing
Table ~~1202.5~~ 1202.5, Table 1210.5

~~F1974—09~~ F1974—09(2015)

Standard Specification for Metal Insert Fittings for Polyethylene/Aluminum/Polyethylene and Cross-linked Polyethylene/Aluminum/Cross-linked Polyethylene Composite Pressure Pipe
Table 1202.5

~~F2080—12~~ F2080—16

Specification for ~~Cold-Expansion~~ Cold-expansion Fittings with Metal ~~Compression-Sleeves~~ Compression-sleeves for Cross-linked Polyethylene (PEX) Pipe

Table ~~1202.5~~ 1202.5, Table 1210.5

~~F2098—08~~ F2098—2015

Standard Specification for Stainless Steel Clamps for Securing SDR9 Cross-linked Polyethylene (PEX) Tubing to Metal Insert and Plastic Insert Fittings

Table ~~1202.5~~ 1202.5, Table 1210.5

~~F2159—11~~ F2159—2018

Standard Specification for Plastic Insert Fittings Utilizing a Copper Crimp Ring for SDR9 Cross-linked Polyethylene (PEX) Tubing and SDR9 Polyethylene of Raised Temperature (PE-RT) Tubing

Table 1202.5, Table 1210.5

~~F2389—10~~ F2389—2017A

Specification for Pressure-rated Polypropylene Piping Systems

Table 1202.4, Table 1202.5, 1203.14.1, ~~1203.15.1,~~ Table 1210.4, Table 1210.5, 1210.6.7.1

~~F2434—09~~ F2434—14

Standard Specification for Metal Insert Fittings Utilizing a Copper Crimp Ring for SDR9 Cross-linked Polyethylene (PEX) Tubing and SDR9 Cross-linked Polyethylene/Aluminum/Cross-linked Polyethylene (PEX-AL-PEX) Tubing

Table 1210.5

~~F2623—08~~ F2623—14

Standard Specification for Polyethylene of Raised Temperature (PE-RT) SDR9 Tubing

Table 1202.4, Table 1210.4

~~F2735—09~~ F2735—2009(2016)

Standard Specification for Plastic Insert Fittings for SDR9 Cross-linked Polyethylene (PEX) and Polyethylene of Raised Temperature (PE-RT) Tubing

Table ~~1202.5~~ 1202.5, Table 1210.5

~~F2769—10~~ F2769—2018

Polyethylene of Raised Temperature (PE-RT) Plastic Hot- and Cold-water Tubing and Distribution Systems

Table 1202.4, Table 1202.5, Table 1210.4, Table 1210.5

~~F2806—10~~ F2806—10(2015)

Standard Specification for Acrylonitrile-Butadiene-Styrene (ABS) Plastic Pipe (Metric SDR-PR)

Table 1202.4

F2855—12

Standard Specification for Chlorinated Poly(Vinyl Chloride)/Aluminum/Chlorinated Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC-AL-CPVC) Composite Pressure Tubing

Table 1202.4

F3226—16

Standard Specification for Metallic Press-connect Fittings for Piping and Tubing Systems

Table 1302.3

F3253—2017

Standard Specification for Crosslinked Polyethylene (PEX) Tubing with Oxygen Barrier for Hot- and Cold-water Hydronic Distribution Systems

Table 1202.4 , Table 1202.5

AWS

American Welding Society
8669 NW 36 Street, #130
~~Doral,~~ Miami, FL 33166

~~A5.8M/A5.8—2011~~ A5.8/A5.8—2011-AMD1

Specifications for Filler Metals for Brazing and Braze Welding
1108.3.1, 1203.3.1, 1303.3.1

AWWA

American Water Work Association
6666 West Quincy Avenue
Denver, CO 80235

C110/A21.10—12

Standard for Ductile Iron & Gray Iron Fittings
Table 1202.5

C115/A21.15—11

Standard for Flanged ~~Ductile-Iron~~ Ductile-iron Pipe with Ductile Iron or ~~Grey-Iron~~ Grey-iron Threaded Flanges
Table 1202.4

~~C151/A21.51—09~~ C151/A21.51—17

~~Standard for~~ Ductile-iron Pipe, Centrifugally Cast ~~for Water~~
Table 1202.4

C153/A21.53—11

Standard for ~~Ductile-Iron~~ Ductile-iron Compact Fittings for Water Service
Table 1202.5

~~C901—08~~ C901—16

Polyethylene (PE) Pressure Pipe and Tubing, 3/4 in. (19 mm) ~~1/2 in. (13 mm)~~ through 3 in. (76 mm) for Water Service
Table 1210.4

CSA

CSA Group
8501 East Pleasant Valley Road
Cleveland, OH 44131-5516

~~ANSI/CSA America FC1—2012~~ ANSI/CSA FC1—2014

Fuel Cell Technologies—Part 3-100: Stationary Fuel Cell Power Systems—Safety
924.1

~~CSA C448 Series—02 CAN/CSA 2002~~ ANSI/CSA/IGSHPA C448 Series—16

Design and Installation of ~~Earth Energy Systems-First Edition; Update 2: October 2009; Consolidated Reprint 10/2009~~ Ground Source Heat Pump Systems for Commercial and Residential Buildings
Table 1210.4, Table ~~1210.5~~ 1210.5, 1210.8

~~CSA B137.1—13~~ B137.1—17

Polyethylene (PE) Pipe, Tubing and Fittings for ~~Cold Water~~Cold-water Pressure Services
Table 1202.5, Table 1210.4, Table 1210.5

~~B137.2—13~~ B137.2—17

Polyvinylchloride (PVC) Injection-moulded Gasketed Fittings for Pressure Applications
Table 1210.5

~~B137.3—13~~ B137.3—17

Rigid Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Pipe for Pressure Applications
Table 1210.5

~~CSA B137.5—13~~ B137.5—17

Cross-linked Polyethylene (PEX) Tubing Systems for Pressure Applications
Table 1202.4, Table 1210.4, Table 1210.5

~~B137.6—13~~ B137.6—17

Chlorinated Polyvinylchloride (CPVC) Pipe, Tubing and Fittings for Hot- and Cold-water Distribution Systems
Table 1210.5

~~B137.9—13~~ B137.9—17

Polyethylene/Aluminum/Polyethylene (PE-AL-PE) Composite ~~Pressure Pipe~~Pressure-pipe Systems
Table 1202.4, Table 1210.4, Table 1210.5

~~B137.10—13~~

~~Cross-linked Polyethylene/Aluminum/Cross-linked Polyethylene (PEX-AL-PEX) Composite Pressure-Pipe Systems~~
~~Table 1202.4~~

~~B137.11—13~~ B137.11—17

Polypropylene (PP-R) Pipe and Fittings for Pressure Applications
Table 1210.4, Table 1210.5

B137.18—17

Polyethylene of Raised Temperature Resistance (PE-RT) Tubing Systems for Pressure Applications
Table 1202.4, Table 1202.5, Table 1210.4, Table 1210.5

C22.2 No. 218.1—13(R2017)

Spas, Hot Tubs and Associated Equipment
916.1

C22.2 No. 236—15

Heating and Cooling Equipment
916.1

~~CSA-C22.2 No. 60335-2-40-2019~~

~~Household And Similar Electrical Appliances - Safety – Part 2-40: Particular Requirements for Electrical Heat Pumps, Air-Conditioners and Dehumidifiers – 3rd Edition~~

~~908.1, 918.1, 918.2, 1101.2~~

DOL

U.S. Department of Labor Occupational Safety and Health Administration
c/o Superintendent of Documents U.S. Government Printing Office
Washington, DC 20402-9325

29 CFR Part 1910.1000 ~~(2009)~~ (2015)

Air Contaminants
502.6

29 CFR Part 1910.1025 ~~(2009)~~ (2015)

Toxic and Hazardous Substances
502.19

FDA

U.S. Food and Drug Administration
10903 New Hampshire Avenue
Silver Springs, MD 20993

FDA Title 15

Federal Hazardous Substances Act
1403.4

FDA Title 21

Code of Federal Regulations, Title 21, Food and Drugs, Chapter 1, Food and Drug Administration, Parts 174–186 (revised as of April 1, 2015)
202, 1403.3

FS

Federal Specifications* General Services Administration
7th & D Streets Specification Section, Room 6039
Washington, DC 20407

WW-P-325B (1976)

Pipe, Bends, Traps, Caps and Plugs; Lead (for Industrial Pressure and Soil and Waste Applications)
Table 1202.4

*Standards are available from the Supt. of Documents, U.S. Government Printing Office, Washington, DC 20402-9325

ICC

International Code Council, Inc.
500 New Jersey Ave NW 6th Floor
Washington, DC 20001

~~IBC—15~~ IBC—21

International Building Code®
201.3, 202, 301.15, 301.16, 301.17, 301.18, 301.19, 302.1, 302.2, 304.8, 304.11, 306.5.1, 308.4.2.2, 308.4.2.4, 313.1.6, 401.4, 401.5, 406.1, 501.3.1, 501.3.2, ~~501.10.2,~~ 502.10, 502.10.1, 502.10.2, 504.2, ~~504.10,~~ 504.11, 505.3, 505.5, 506.3.3, ~~506.3.10,~~ 506.3.11, 506.3.11.1, ~~506.3.12.2,~~ 506.3.13.2, ~~506.4.1,~~ 506.4.2, 506.5.2, 509.1, 510.4, 510.6, 510.6.1.1, 510.6.2, 510.6.3, 510.7, ~~510.7.1.1, 510.7.2, 510.7.3, 510.8, 511.1.5,~~ 513.1, 513.2, 513.3, 513.4.3, 513.5, ~~513.5.2, 513.5.2.1,~~ 513.5.3, 513.5.3.1, 513.5.3.2, 513.6.2, 513.6.3, 513.10.5, 513.11, 513.11.1, 513.12, ~~513.12.2,~~ 513.12.3, ~~513.20,~~ 601.3, 602.2, ~~602.2.1.5.1, 602.2.1.5.2,~~ 602.2.1.6, ~~602.2.1.6.1, 602.2.1.6.2,~~ 602.3, 602.4, 603.1, 603.7, ~~603.10,~~ 603.13, 603.18.2, 604.3, ~~604.5.4, 607.1.1,~~ 607.1.2, 607.1.2.1, 607.2.1, ~~607.3.2.1,~~ 607.3.3.1, 607.3.3.2, 607.5.1, 607.5.2, 607.5.3, 607.5.4, ~~607.5.4.1,~~ 607.5.5, ~~607.5.5.1,~~ 607.5.5.2, 607.5.6, 607.6, 607.6.1, 607.6.2, ~~607.6.2.1,~~ 607.6.3, 701.2, ~~701.4.1, 701.4.2,~~ 801.3, 801.16.1, 801.18.4, 801.18.4.1, 902.1, 908.3, 908.4, 910.3, 924.1, 925.1, 926.1, 927.2, 928.1, 1004.6, 1105.1, 1105.9, 1109.2.5, 1109.5, 1206.4, 1210.8.2, 1305.2.1, 1305.8, ~~1402.4, 1402.4.1~~ 1402.8.1.2, 1402.8.1.3

ICC 900/SRCC Standard 300—20

Solar Thermal System Standard
1002.1, 1401.4, 1401.4.1, 1402.1, 1402.3.1, 1402.4, 1402.8.1.1, 1402.8.1.4, 1402.8.5, 1402.8.5.3, 1403.2

ICC 901/SRCC Standard 100—20

Solar Thermal Collector Standard
1401.4.1, 1402.8.1.1

~~IECC—15~~ IECC—21

International Energy Conservation Code®
301.2, 303.3, 312.1, 401.2, 514.1, 603.8.2, 604.1, 1204.1, ~~1204.2~~ 1204.2, 1209.5, 1402.8.3.1

~~IFC—15~~ IFC—21

International Fire Code®
201.3, 310.1, 311.1, 502.4, ~~502.5,~~ 502.7.2, 502.8.1, 502.9.1, 502.9.5, 502.9.5.2, 502.9.5.3, 502.9.8.2, 502.9.8.3, 502.9.8.5, 502.9.8.6, 502.9.11, 502.10, 502.10.1, 502.10.3, ~~502.16.2,~~ 502.16.2.2, 505.3, 509.1, 510.2.1, 510.2.2, 510.4, ~~510.5,~~ 511.1, 511.1.1, 511.1.5, 513.1, 513.2, 513.6.3, 513.12.1, 513.12.3, 513.12.4, 513.15, 513.16, 513.17, 513.18, 513.19, 606.2.1, 606.4.1, 908.7, 924.1, 926.1, 1101.8, ~~1101.9,~~ 1105.3, 1105.8, ~~1105.9,~~ 1106.4.1, ~~1106.5,~~ 1106.6, 1301.1, 1301.2, 1301.5, 1403.4

~~IFGC—15~~ IFGC—21

International Fuel Gas Code®
101.2, 201.3, 301.6, 701.1, 801.1, 901.1, 906.1, 926.1, 1101.5

~~IPC—15~~ IPC—21

International Plumbing Code®
201.3, 301.11, 307.2.2, 512.2, 908.5, 928.1, 1002.1, 1002.2, 1002.3, 1005.2, 1006.6, 1008.2, 1009.3, 1101.4, 1201.1, 1206.2, 1206.3, 1210.8.1, ~~1401.2~~ 1401.2, 1402.5.2, 1402.5.3, 1402.8.3

~~IRC—15~~ IRC—21

International Residential Code®
101.2

IIAR

International Institute of Ammonia Refrigeration
~~1110 North Glebe Road~~ 1001 N. Fairfax Street, Suite 503
Arlington, VA ~~22201~~22314

~~2—2014~~ ANSI/IIAR 2—2014, Including Addendum A

~~Standard for~~ Safe Design of Closed-circuit Ammonia Refrigeration Systems
1101.1.2, ~~1101.6, 1105.6.3~~ 1107.1

ANSI/IIAR 3—2017

Ammonia Refrigeration Valves
1101.1.2

ANSI/IIAR 4—2020

Installation of Closed-circuit Ammonia Mechanical Refrigeration Systems
1101.1.2

ANSI/IIAR 5—2019

Startup of Closed-circuit Ammonia Refrigeration Systems
1101.1.2

MSS

Manufacturers Standardization Society of the Valve ~~&~~ and Fittings Industry, Inc.
127 Park Street, NE
Vienna, VA 22180

SP 58—2009

Pipe Hangers and Supports—Materials Design and Manufacture, Selection, Application and Installation
305.4

NAIMA

North American Insulation Manufacturers Association
~~44~~ 11 Canal Center Plaza, Suite ~~310~~ 103
Alexandria, VA 22314

AH116—09

Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards
603.5, 603.9

NBBI

National Board of Boiler and Pressure Vessel Inspectors
1055 Crupper Avenue
Columbus, OH 43229-1183

~~NBIC—2011~~ NBIC—2017

National Board Inspection Code, Part 3
1003.3

NFPA

National Fire Protection Association
1 Batterymarch Park
Quincy, MA 02169-7471

2—2020

Hydrogen Technologies Code
502.16.1

~~30A—15~~ 30A—21

Code for Motor Fuel-dispensing Facilities and Repair Garages
304.6

~~31—11~~ 31—20

Standard for the Installation of Oil-burning Equipment
701.1, 801.2.1, 801.18.1, 801.18.2, 920.2, 922.1, 1308.1

~~37—15~~ 37—18

Standard for the Installation and Use of Stationary Combustion Engines and Gas Turbines
915.1, 915.2

~~58—14~~ 58—20

Liquefied Petroleum Gas Code
502.9.10

~~69—14~~ 69—19

Standard on Explosion Prevention Systems
~~510.9.3~~ 510.8.3

~~70—14~~ 70—20

National Electrical Code
~~301.7, 306.3.1, 306.4.1,~~ 511.1.1, 513.11, 513.12.2, ~~602.2.1.1,~~ 927.2, 1104.2.2, 1106.3, ~~1106.4~~ 1106.4, 1402.8.1.4

~~72—13~~ 72—19

National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code
606.3

80—19

Standard for Fire Doors and Other Opening Protectives
607.4.1.2

~~82—14~~ 82—19

~~Standard on~~ Incinerators and Waste and Linen Handling Systems and Equipment
601.1

~~85—15~~ 85—19

Boiler and Combustion Systems Hazards Code
1004.1

~~91—15~~ 91—20

~~Standard for~~ Exhaust Systems for Air Conveying of Vapors, Gases, Mists and Noncombustible Particulate Solids
502.9.5.1, 502.17

~~92—15~~ 92—18

Standard for Smoke Control Systems
513.7, 513.8

~~96—14~~ 96—2021

Standard for Ventilation Control and Fire Protection of Commercial Cooking Operations
507.1

99—21

Health Care Facilities Code
407.1

105—19

Standard for Smoke Door Assemblies and Other Opening Protectives
607.4.1.2

~~211—13~~ 211—19

Standard for Chimneys, Fireplaces, Vents and Solid Fuel-burning Appliances
806.1

~~262—15~~ 262—19

Standard Method of Test for Flame Travel and Smoke of Wires and Cables for Use in Air-handling Spaces
602.2.1.1

~~286—15~~ 286—19

Standard Methods of Fire Tests for Evaluating Contribution of Wall and Ceiling Interior Finish to Room Fire Growth
602.2.1.6

~~704—12~~ 704—17

Standard System for Identification of the Hazards of Materials for Emergency Response
502.8.4, 510.1, Table 1103.1

720—15
Standard for the Installation of Carbon Monoxide (CO) Detection and Warning Equipment
313.5.1, 313.5.2, 313.6

~~853—15~~ 853—20

Standard on Installation of Stationary Fuel Cell Power ~~Plants~~Systems
924.1

NSF

NSF International
789 N. Dixboro Road P.O. Box 130140
Ann Arbor, MI 48105 ~~48113-0140~~

~~NSF 14—2011~~

~~Plastic Piping System Components and Related Materials~~
~~301.4~~

~~NSF 358-1—2011~~ 358-1—2017

Polyethylene Pipe and Fittings for ~~Water Based Ground Source~~ Water-based Ground-source "Geothermal" Heat Pump Systems
Table 1210.4, Table 1210.5

358-2—2017

Polypropylene Pipe and Fittings for Water-based Ground-source "Geothermal" Heat Pump Systems
Table 1210.4, Table 1210.5

358-3—2016

Cross-linked Polyethylene (PEX) Pipe and Fittings for Water-based Ground-source (Geothermal) Heat Pump Systems
Table 1210.4 , Table 1210.5

358-4—2018

Polyethylene of Raised Temperature (PE-RT) Pipe and Fittings for Water-based Ground-source (Geothermal) Heat Pump Systems
Table 1210.4 , Table 1210.5

SMACNA

Sheet Metal ~~&~~ and Air Conditioning Contractors' National ~~Assoc.,~~ Association, Inc.
4201 Lafayette Center Drive
Chantilly, VA ~~20151-1209~~ 20151-1219

~~SMACNA—10~~ SMACNA—2010

Fibrous Glass Duct Construction ~~Standards~~ Standards, 7th Edition
603.5, 603.9

SMACNA—2015

SMACNA Phenolic Duct Construction Standards, 1st Edition (ANSI)
603.5.2

SMACNA/ANSI—2011

Rectangular Industrial Duct Construction Standards, 2nd Edition
510.8.1

SMACNA/ANSI—2013

Round Industrial Duct Construction Standards, 3rd Edition
510.8.1

~~SMACNA/ANSI—2005~~ SMACNA/ANSI—006-2020

HVAC Duct Construction Standards—Metal and ~~Flexible 3rd Edition~~ Flexible, 4th Edition (ANSI)
603.4, Table 603.4, 603.9, 603.10

UL

UL LLC
333 Pfingsten Road
Northbrook, IL 60062-2096

17—2008

Vent or Chimney Connector Dampers for Oil-fired Appliances—with revisions through ~~January 2010~~ September 2013
803.6

~~**58—96 Standard for Steel Underground Tanks for Flammable and Combustible Liquids** . . . . 1309~~

~~**80—09 Standard for Steel Tanks for Oil-burner Fuels and Other Combustible Liquids** . . . . 1309~~

103—2010

Factory-built Chimneys, Residential Type and Building Heating ~~Appliance~~Appliances—with revisions through ~~July 2012~~ March 2017
805.2

109—97

Tube Fittings for Flammable and Combustible Fluids, Refrigeration Service and Marine Use
Table 1101.2

127—2011

Factory-built ~~Fireplaces~~ Fireplaces—with revisions through July 2016
805.3, 903.1, 903.3, 903.4

~~**142—10 Standard for Steel Above-ground Tanks for Flammable and Combustible Liquids** . . . . 1309~~

174—04

Household Electric Storage Tank Water Heaters—with revisions through ~~September 2012~~ December 2016
1002.1

180—2012

Liquid-level Indicating Gauges for Oil Burner Fuels and Other Combustible ~~Liquids~~ Liquids—with revisions through May 2017
1306.4

181—05

Factory-made Air Ducts and Air Connectors—with revisions through ~~October 2008~~ April 2017
512.2, 603.5, 603.6.1, 603.6.2, 603.9, 604.13

181A—2013

Closure Systems for Use with Rigid Air Ducts and Air ~~Connectors~~ Connectors—with revisions through March 2017
603.9

181B—2013

Closure Systems for Use with Flexible Air Ducts and Air ~~Connectors~~ Connectors—with revisions through March 2017
504.9.2, 603.9

197—10

Commercial Electric Cooking Appliances—with revisions through ~~June 2011~~ January 2018
917.1

207—2009

Refrigerant-containing Components and Accessories, ~~Nonelectrical~~ Nonelectrical—with revisions through June 2014
~~1101.2~~ Table 1101.2, 1107.5

217—2015 Single and Multiple Station Smoke Alarms—with revisions through November 2016
313.4.4

263—2011

~~Standard for~~ Fire Test of Building Construction and ~~Materials~~ Materials—with revisions through March 2018
607.3.1, 607.5.2, 607.5.5, 607.6.1, 607.6.2 ~~607.6.2.1~~

~~268—2009~~ 268—2016

Smoke Detectors for Fire Alarm ~~Systems~~ Systems—with revisions through July 2016

313.5.3, 606.1

268A—2008

Smoke Detectors for Duct Application—with revisions through ~~September 2009~~ August 2016
606.1

~~343—2008~~ 343—2017

Pumps for ~~Oil-Burning~~Oil-burning Appliances ~~Appliances—with revisions through June 2013~~
1302.7

~~378—06~~ 378—2006

Draft Equipment—with revisions through ~~January 2010~~ September 2013
804.3, 804.3.8

391—2010

Solid-fuel and Combination-fuel Central and Supplementary Furnaces—with revisions through ~~March 2010~~ June 2014
918.1

412—2011

Refrigeration Unit Coolers—with revisions through August ~~2012~~ 2018
Table 1101.2

427—11

Standard for Refrigerating Units
Table 1101.2

471—2010

Commercial Refrigerators and Freezers—with revisions through ~~December 2012~~ November 2018
Table 1101.2

474—15

Standard for Dehumidifiers
Table 1101.2

484—14

Standard for Room Air Conditioners
Table 1101.2

~~499—05~~ 499—2014

Electric Heating Appliances—with revisions through February ~~2013~~ 2017
912.1, 923.1

507—2017

Electric Fans—with revisions through August 2018
505.2, 930.1

~~508—99~~ 508—2018

Industrial Control Equipment ~~Equipment—with revisions through March 2013~~
307.2.3

~~536—97~~

~~Flexible Metallic Hose—with revisions through June 2003~~
~~1302.8~~

555—06

Fire Dampers—with revisions through ~~May 2012~~ October 2016

607.3.1

~~555C—06~~ 555C—2014

Ceiling Dampers—with revisions through ~~May 2010~~ May 2017
607.3.1

~~555S—99~~ 555S—2014

Smoke Dampers—with revisions through ~~May 2012~~ October 2018
607.3.1

586—2009

~~High-Efficiency,~~High-efficiency, Particulate, Air Filter ~~Units~~ Units—with revisions through December 2017
605.2

641—2010

Type L Low-temperature Venting Systems—with revisions through ~~May 2013~~ April 2018
802.1

~~705—2004~~ 705—2017

~~Standard for~~ Power Ventilators—with revisions through ~~March 2012~~ October 2018
504.5

710—2012

Exhaust Hoods for Commercial Cooking ~~Equipment~~ Equipment—with revisions through June 2018
~~507.1~~ 507.1, 507.2.6

710B—2011

Recirculating ~~Systems~~ Systems—with revisions through August 2014
507.1, 507.2

~~723—2008~~ 723—2018

~~Standard for Test for~~ Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials
202, 510.8, ~~510.9,~~ 602.2, 602.2.1, 602.2.1.6, ~~602.2.1.6.2, 602.2.1.6.3,~~ 602.2.1.7, 602.2.1.8, 604.3, 1204.1

726—95

Oil-fired Boiler Assemblies—with revisions through ~~April 2011~~ October 2013
~~916.1,~~ 1004.1

~~727—06~~ 727—2018

Oil-fired Central Furnace ~~Furnace—with revisions through April 2010~~
918.1

~~729—03~~ 729—2003

Oil-fired Floor Furnaces—with revisions through ~~August 2012~~ November 2016
910.1

~~730—03~~ 730—2003

Oil-fired Wall Furnaces—with revisions through ~~August 2012~~ November 2016
909.1

~~731—95~~ 731—2018

Oil-fired Unit Heaters ~~Heaters—with revisions through August 2012~~
920.1

~~732—95~~ 732—2018

Oil-fired Storage Tank Water Heaters ~~Heaters—with revisions through April 2010~~

1002.1

737—2011

Fireplace Stoves
905.1

~~762—2010~~ 762—2013

Outline of Investigation for Power Ventilators for Restaurant Exhaust Appliances
~~506.5.1~~ 506.5.1, 506.5.2

~~791—06~~ 791—2006

Residential Incinerators—with revisions through ~~April 2010~~ November 2014
907.1

834—04

Heating, Water Supply and Power Boilers Electric—with revisions through ~~January 2013~~ September 2018
1004.1

~~842—07~~ 842—2015

Valves for Flammable Fluids—with revisions through ~~October 2012~~ May 2015
1307.1

~~858—05~~ 858—2014

Household Electric Ranges—with revisions through ~~April 2012~~ June 2018
505.2, 917.1

864—2014

Control Units and Accessories for Fire Alarm Systems—with revisions through October 2018
513.12

867—2011

Electrostatic Air Cleaners—with revisions through ~~February 2013~~ August 2018
605.2

~~875—09~~ 875—2009

Electric Dry Bath Heater—with revisions through ~~November 2011~~ September 2017
914.2

~~896—93~~ 896—1993

Oil-burning Stoves—with revisions through ~~August 2012~~ November 2016
917.1, 922.1

~~900—04~~ 900—2015

Air Filter Units ~~Units—with revisions through February 2012~~
605.2

~~907—94~~ 907—2016

Fireplace Accessories ~~Accessories—with revisions through April 2010~~
902.2

923—2013

Microwave Cooking ~~Appliances~~ Appliances—with revisions through July 2017
505.2, 917.1

959—2010

Medium Heat Appliance Factory-built ~~Chimneys~~ Chimneys—with revisions through June 2014

~~805.5~~ 805.6

971A—2006

Outline of Investigation for Metallic Underground Fuel Pipe
1302.9

1046—2010

Grease Filters for Exhaust Ducts—with revisions through ~~January 2012~~ April 2017
507.2.8

~~1240—2012~~ 1240—2005

Electric Commercial Clothes-Drying Equipment—with revisions through ~~October 2012~~ March 2018
913.1

~~1261—01~~ 1261—2016

Electric Water Heaters for Pools and Tubs—with revisions through ~~July 2012~~ September 2017
916.1

1369—18

Standard for Aboveground Piping for Flammable and Combustible Liquids
1302.9

1370—11

Unvented Alcohol Fuel Burning Decorative Appliances—with revisions through March 25, 2016
929.1

~~1453—04~~ 1453—2016

Electric Booster and Commercial Storage Tank Water Heaters—with revisions through ~~July 2011~~ May 2018
1002.1

~~1479—03~~ 1479—2015

Fire Tests of ~~Through-Penetration~~ Penetration Firestops ~~Firestops—with revisions through October 2012~~
506.3.11.2, 506.3.11.3

1482—2011

Solid-fuel Type Room ~~Heaters~~ Heaters—with revisions through August 2015
905.1

1563—2009

Standard for Electric Spas, Hot Tubs and Associated Equipment—with revisions through October 2017
916.1

~~1618—09~~ 1618—2015

Wall Protectors, Floor Protectors and Hearth Extensions—with revisions through ~~May 2013~~ January 2018
~~308.4.1,~~ 903.2, 905.3

1777—2007

Chimney Liners—with revisions through ~~July 2009~~ April 2014
801.16.1, 801.18.4

1812—2013

~~Standard for~~ Ducted Heat Recovery ~~Ventilators~~ Ventilators—with revisions through July 2018
514.1

1815—2012

~~Standard for~~ Nonducted Heat ~~Recovery~~ Recovery—with revisions through July 2018
514.1

~~1820—04~~ 1820—2004

Fire Test of Pneumatic Tubing for Flame and Smoke Characteristics—with revisions through ~~May 2013~~ July 2017
602.2.1.3

1887—04

Fire Tests of Plastic Sprinkler Pipe for Visible Flame and Smoke Characteristics—with revisions through ~~May 2013~~ July 2017
602.2.1.2

1978—2010

Grease ~~Ducts~~ Ducts—with revisions through April 2017
506.3.1.1, 506.3.2, 506.3.6

1995—2015

Heating and Cooling ~~Equipment~~ Equipment—with revisions through August 2018
908.1, 911.1, 916.1, 918.1, 918.2, Table 1101.2

1996—2009

Electric Duct Heaters—with revisions through ~~November 2011~~ July 2016
~~911.1~~ 911.1, 932.1

~~2024—2011~~ 2024—2014

~~Standard for~~ Safety ~~Optical-Fiber~~Optical-fiber and Communications Cable Raceway—with revisions through ~~April 2011~~ August 2015
602.2.1.1

2034—2017 Single and Multiple Station Carbon Monoxide Alarms—with revisions through September 2018
313.4.2, 313.4.4

~~2043—2008~~ 2043—2013

Fire Test for Heat and Visible Smoke Release for Discrete Products and ~~their~~Their Accessories Installed in Air-handling ~~Spaces~~ Spaces—with revisions through July 2018
~~602.2.1.4.2~~ 602.2.1.4.2, 602.2.1.5

2075—2013

Gas and Vapor Detectors and Sensors—with revisions through December 2017
313.5.1, 313.5.3, 404.1

~~2158—97~~ 2158—2018

Electric Clothes Dryers ~~Dryers—with revisions through March 2009~~
913.1

~~2158A—2010~~ 2158A—2013

Outline of Investigation for Clothes Dryer Transition ~~Duct~~ Duct—with revisions through April 2017
~~504.8.3~~ 504.9.3

~~2162—01~~ 2162—2014

Outline of Investigation for Commercial Wood-fired Baking Ovens—Refractory Type
917.1

2200—2012

Stationary Engine Generator Assemblies—with revisions through ~~June 2013~~ October 2015
915.1

2221—2010

Tests of Fire Resistive Grease Duct Enclosure Assemblies

~~506.3.11.3~~ 506.3.11.3, 506.5.2

~~2518—05~~ 2518—2016

Air Dispersion ~~System~~Systems ~~Materials~~
603.17

~~2523—09~~ 2523—2009

Solid Fuel-fired Hydronic Heating ~~Appliances—with~~ Appliances, Water Heaters, and Boilers—with revisions through ~~February 2013~~ March 2018
1002.1, 1004.1

2846—2014

Fire Test of Plastic Water Distribution Plumbing Pipe for Visible Flame and Smoke Characteristics—with revisions through December 2016
602.2.1.7

8782—17

Outline of Investigation for Pollution Control Units for Commercial Cooking
506.5.2

~~UL~~ UL/CSA 60335-2-40—2019

Household and Similar Electrical Appliances—Safety—Part 2-40: Particular Requirements for Electrical Heat Pumps, Air-Conditioners and Dehumidifiers – 3rd Edition
908.1, 916.1, 918.1, 918.2, Table 1101.2

UL/CSA 60335-2-89—17

Household and Similar Electrical Appliances—Safety—Part 2-89: Particular Requirements for Commercial Refrigerating Appliances with an Incorporated or Remote Refrigerant Unit or Compressor
Table 1101.2

~~Appendix~~APPENDIX A

~~Chimney Connector Pass-Throughs~~CHIMNEY CONNECTOR PASS-THROUGHS

~~(This~~This appendix is informative and is not part of the code.~~code.)~~

User note:

About this appendix: *Appendix A is a depiction of what is prescribed in Table 803.10.4. See Section 803.10.4.*

SECTION A101
CHIMNEY CONNECTOR SYSTEMS

A101.1 General. See Figures A101.1(1) and A101.1(2) for illustrations of *chimney* connector systems.

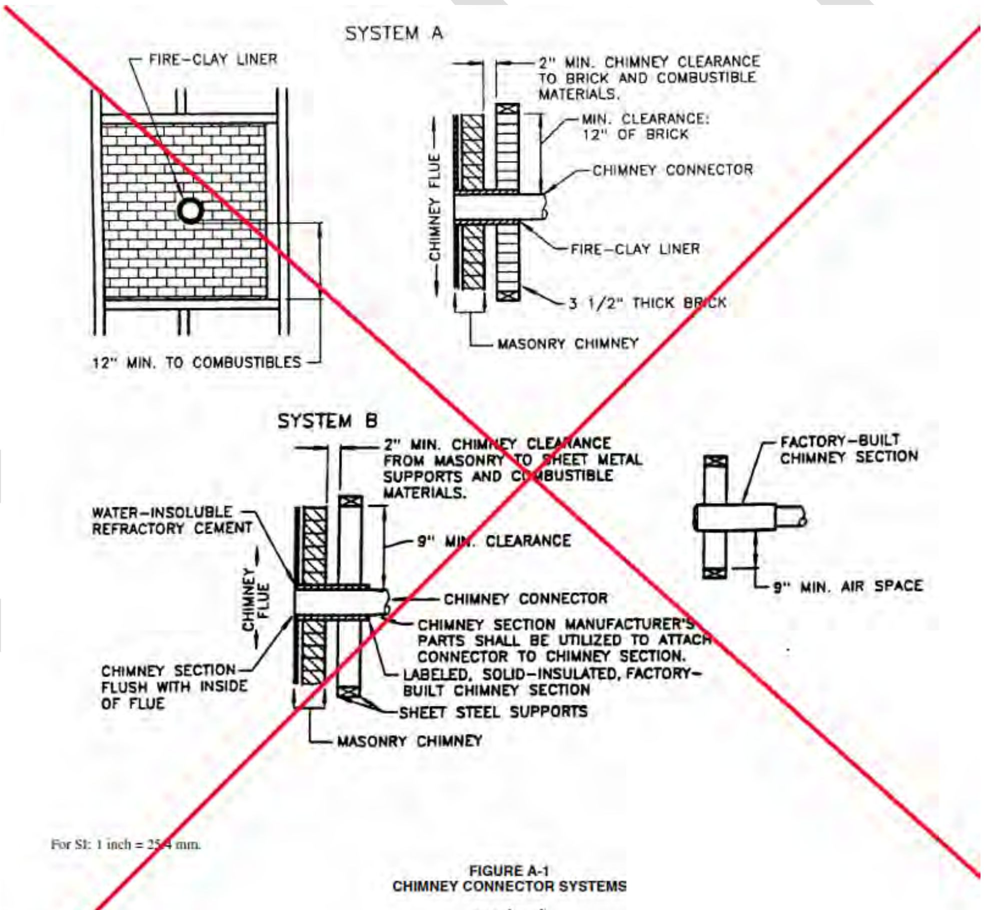


FIGURE A-1
CHIMNEY CONNECTOR SYSTEMS

(continued)

NOTE TO RRC: FIGURE A-1 "CHIMNEY CONNECTOR SYSTEMS" HAS BEEN DELETED AND REPLACED WITH FIGURES A101.1(1) AND A101.1(2) "CHIMNEY CONNECTOR SYSTEMS"

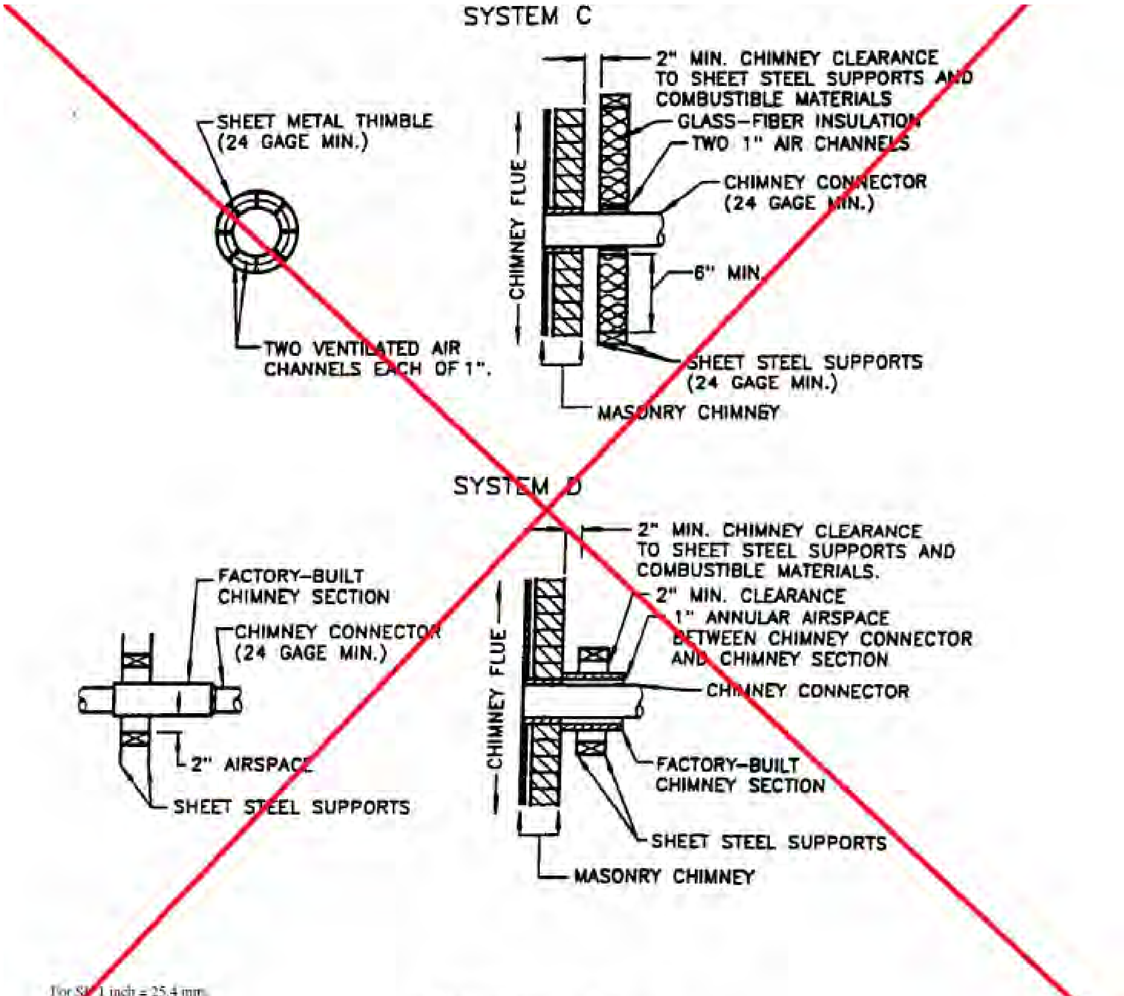
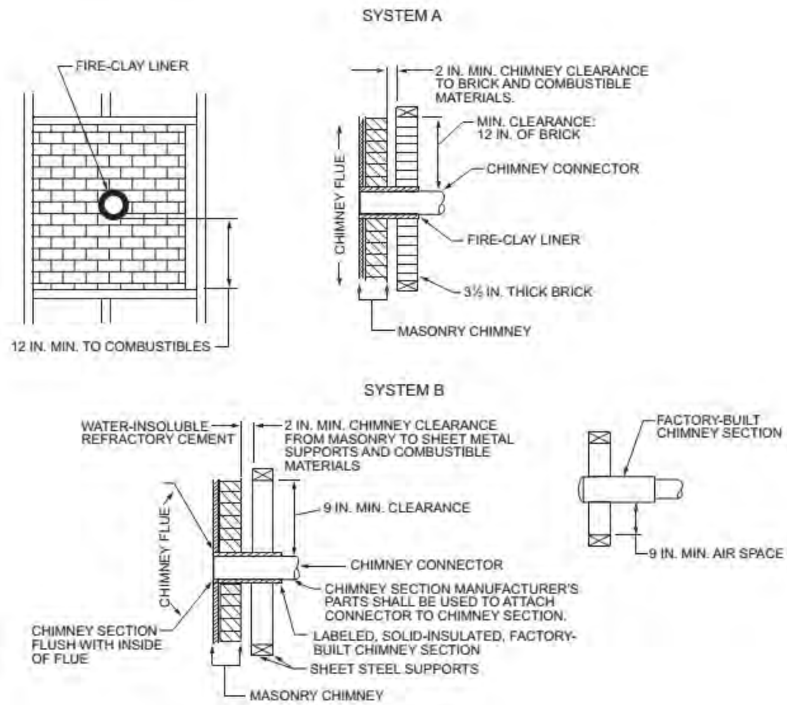


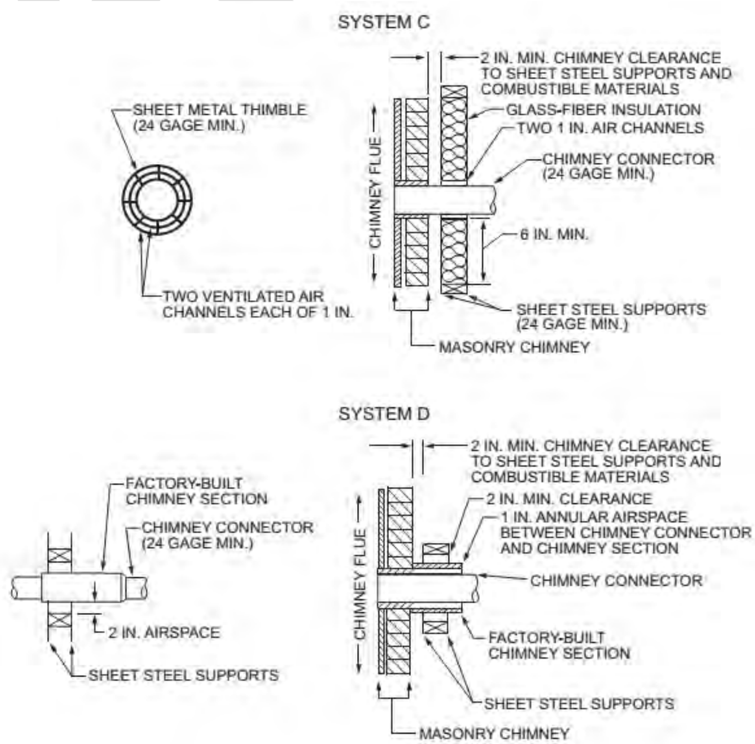
FIGURE A-1—continued
CHIMNEY CONNECTOR SYSTEMS

NOTE to RRC: FIGURE A-1 "CHIMNEY CONNECTOR SYSTEMS" HAS BEEN DELETED AND REPLACED WITH FIGURES A101.1(1) AND A101.1(2) "CHIMNEY CONNECTOR SYSTEMS"



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

FIGURE A101.1(1) CHIMNEY CONNECTOR SYSTEMS



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

FIGURE A101.1(2) CHIMNEY CONNECTOR SYSTEMS

APPENDIX A—CHIMNEY CONNECTOR PASS-THROUGHS

~~Appendix~~APPENDIX B

~~Recommended Permit Fee Schedule~~RECOMMENDED PERMIT FEE SCHEDULE

Deleted.

[A] APPENDIX C

BOARD OF APPEALS

Deleted.

Burgos, Alexander N

From: Liebman, Brian R
Sent: Sunday, April 14, 2024 5:37 PM
To: Rittlinger, David B
Cc: Childs, Nathan D; Burgos, Alexander N
Subject: 2024 NC Mechanical Code Requests for Changes
Attachments: 04.2024 - BCC - NC Mechanical Code - Request for Changes.docx

Follow Up Flag: Follow up
Flag Status: Flagged

Hi all,

Attached, please find my requests for changes on the 2024 NC Mechanical Code. As with the rest, these are due ASAP given the proximity of the meeting.

FYI, I will be out Monday and Tuesday, but will be checking email.

Thanks, and have a great week!
Brian

Brian Liebman
Counsel to the North Carolina Rules Review Commission
Office of Administrative Hearings
(984)236-1948
brian.liebman@oah.nc.gov

Burgos, Alexander N

From:	Rittlinger, David B
Sent:	Sunday, February 18, 2024 10:32 AM
To:	Rules, Oah
Cc:	McGhee, Dana; Burgos, Alexander N; Liebman, Brian R; Holder, Karen; Childs, Nathan D
Subject:	RE: NC Building Code Council - NC Building Code Approved Rules (Code Amendments): 2024 NC Mechanical Code
Attachments:	D-1 20230613 Item B-1 2024 NCMC Rev 1. Form_0400_for_Permanent_Rule_December_2023.pdf; RRC 01_NCMC_2024.docx; RRC 01_NCMC_2024.pdf; D-1 20230613 Item B-1 2024 NCMC Rev 1. Form_0400_for_Permanent_Rule_December_2023.docx
Importance:	High

Brian,
Good morning.
I hope you are well.
To assist you in your review of the 2024 NC Mechanical Code so this code can be considered and voted on at the 2/28/23 RRC meeting, I have updated Chapter 1 from the 1/2/24 original submittal to reflect the comments and responses that have been made to date on the NC Plumbing Code and NC Residential Code. See attached Chapter 1 and 400 Form word and pdf files.
I hope this helps.
Let me know if you have any questions.
Thank you for your work on this.

David B. Rittlinger, PE, LEED AP
Division Chief - Codes & Interpretations

North Carolina Office of State Fire Marshal
1429 Rock Quarry Road, Suite 105
Raleigh, NC 27610
919.647.0008

david.rittlinger@ncdoi.gov

Link to free view of 2018 NC Codes
https://codes.iccsafe.org/codes/north-carolina

From: Rittlinger, David B
Sent: Tuesday, January 2, 2024 3:53 PM
To: Rules, Oah <oah.rules@oah.nc.gov>
Cc: McGhee, Dana <dana.McGhee@oah.nc.gov>; Burgos, Alexander N <alexander.burgos@oah.nc.gov>; Liebman, Brian R <brian.liebman@oah.nc.gov>; Holder, Karen <Karen.Holder@ncdoi.gov>; Childs, Nathan D
Subject: NC Building Code Council - NC Building Code Approved Rules (Code Amendments): 2024 NC Mechanical Code

Good afternoon RRC,

Attached is the NC Building Code Council code amendment that was approved on December 12, 2023 for the 2024 NC Mechanical Code
I have attached a separate pdf and MS Word copy of the amendment to be considered by the RRC as permanent rules.

Documents included:

1. Formatted Review Aide and 2024 North Carolina Mechanical Code: Chapter 1 through Appendix C* (Each individual file)

   TEXT THAT IS ~~STRUCKTHROUGH~~ IS DELETED FROM THE 2018 EDITION TO CREATE THE 2024 EDITION.

   TEXT THAT IS UNDERLINED IS NEW TEXT TO CREATE THE 2024 EDITION.

   *Of note, publishing edits to the Cover page, North Carolina Building Code Council members and committees lists, North Carolina Department of Insurance contact information, Preface, Table of Contents and Index are not included as those are publishing edits that do not contain permanent rule content. These publishing edits contain NCBCC and NCDOI contact information, instructions on how to use the code, and guidance on where to find information in the code for the public-at-large. Coordination of the correct page numbers tied to the Table of Contents and Index cannot be accurately completed until the first draft of publishing is completed for NCDOI-OSFM Engineering & Codes staff review prior to completion of publishing by the International Code Council. NCDOI-OSFM Engineering & Codes staff will be coordinating the publication of all these publishing edits with the International Code Council once the proposed 2024 North Carolina Building Codes are approved.

2. Appendix C Code Change Proposal North Carolina Building Code Council (230613 Item B-1) 2024 North Carolina Mechanical Code (File: B-1 2024 NCMC). A link to the petition can be found here: https://www.ncosfm.gov/b-1-2024-ncmc

3. 2017-2023 Approved Amendments to the 2018 North Carolina Mechanical Code (File: 2017-2023 Approved Amendments 230314-Mechanical Code). A link to these amendments can be found here: https://www.ncosfm.gov/2017-2023-approved-amendments-230314mechanical-code

It is my understanding that these rules will be included in the 2/28/24 RRC agenda for consideration as the deadline for making the 1/31/23 RRC agenda has passed.
Let me know if you have any questions or comments.

Thank you for your work on this.
Have a great day.

David B. Rittlinger, PE, LEED AP
Chief Code Consultant
Code Interpretations Supervisor
Engineering Division

N.C. Department of Insurance
Office of State Fire Marshal
1202 Mail Service Center
Raleigh, NC 27699-1202
919.647.0008
david.rittlinger@ncdoi.gov

Link to free view of 2018 NC Codes
https://codes.iccsafe.org/codes/north-carolina

SUBMISSION FOR PERMANENT RULE

1. Rule-Making Agency: NC Building Code Council

2. Rule citation & name (name not required for repeal):
2024 North Carolina Mechanical Code (230613 Item B-1)

3. Action:
☐ **ADOPTION** ☒ **AMENDMENT** ☐ **REPEAL** ☐ **READOPTION** ☐ **REPEAL through READOPTION**

4. Rule exempt from RRC review?	**5. Rule automatically subject to legislative review?**
☐ **Yes. Cite authority:**	☐ **Yes. Cite authority:**
☒ **No**	☒ **No**

6. Notice for Proposed Rule:

☒ **Notice Required**
Notice of Text published on: August 15, 2023 in NC Register, August 1, 2023 agency website
Link to Agency notice:
Hearing on: September 12, 2023
Adoption by Agency on: December 12, 2023
☐ **Notice not required under G.S.:**
Adoption by Agency on:

7. Rule establishes or increases a fee? (See G.S. 12-3.1)

☐ **Yes**
Agency submitted request for consultation on:
Consultation not required. Cite authority:

☒ **No**

8. Fiscal impact. Check all that apply.

☐ **This Rule was part of a combined analysis.**

☐ **State funds affected**
☐ **Local funds affected**
☐ **Substantial economic impact (≥$1,000,000)**
☐ **Approved by OSBM**
☒ **No fiscal note required**

9. REASON FOR ACTION

9A. What prompted this action? Check all that apply:

☒ **Agency**
☐ **Court order / cite:**
☐ **Federal statute / cite:**
☐ **Federal regulation / cite:**
☐ **Legislation enacted by the General Assembly**
Cite Session Law:
☐ **Petition for rule-making**
☐ **Other:**

9B. Explain: This amendment is proposed to protect the public by updating the code to current standards of practice. This rule is not expected to either have a substantial economic impact or increase local and state funds. A fiscal note has not been prepared.

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2025.
The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

SUBMISSION FOR PERMANENT RULE

10. Rulemaking Coordinator: David B. Rittlinger
David B. Rittlinger
Phone: (919)647-0008
E-Mail: david.rittlinger@ncdoi.gov

Additional agency contact, if any:
Phone:
E-Mail:

11. Signature of Agency Head* or Rule-making Coordinator:

***If this function has been delegated (reassigned) pursuant to G.S. 143B-10(a), submit a copy of the delegation with this form.**

Typed Name: David B. Rittlinger
Title: Interim NCDOI-OSFM Deputy Commissioner of Engineering and Chief Code Consultant

RRC AND OAH USE ONLY

Action taken:

☐ RRC extended period of review:
☐ RRC determined substantial changes:
☐ Withdrawn by agency
☐ Subject to Legislative Review
☐ Other:

Documents included:

1. Formatted Review Aide and 2024 North Carolina Mechanical Code: Chapter 1 through Appendix C*

   TEXT THAT IS ~~STRUCKTHROUGH~~ IS DELETED FROM THE 2018 EDITION TO CREATE THE 2024 EDITION.

   TEXT THAT IS UNDERLINED IS NEW TEXT TO CREATE THE 2024 EDITION.

   *Of note, publishing edits to the Cover page, North Carolina Building Code Council members and committees lists, North Carolina Department of Insurance contact information, Preface, Table of Contents and Index are not included as those are publishing edits that do not contain permanent rule content. These publishing edits contain NCBCC and NCDOI contact information, instructions on how to use the code, and guidance on where to find information in the code for the public-at-large. Coordination of the correct page numbers tied to the Table of Contents and Index cannot be accurately completed until the first draft of publishing is completed for NCDOI-OSFM Engineering & Codes staff review prior to completion of publishing by the International Code Council. NCDOI-OSFM Engineering & Codes staff will be coordinating the publication of all these publishing edits with the International Code Council once the proposed 2024 North Carolina Building Codes are approved.

2. Appendix C Code Change Proposal North Carolina Building Code Council (230613 Item B-1) 2024 North Carolina Mechanical Code (File: B-1 2024 NCMC). A link to the petition can be found here: https://www.ncosfm.gov/b-1-2024-ncmc

3. 2017-2023 Approved Amendments to the 2018 North Carolina Mechanical Code (File: 2017-2023 Approved Amendments 230314-Mechanical Code). A link to these amendments can be found here: https://www.ncosfm.gov/2017-2023-approved-amendments-230314mechanical-code

SUBMISSION FOR PERMANENT RULE

(see attached documents)

CHAPTER 1
SCOPE AND ADMINISTRATION

PART 1—SCOPE AND APPLICATION

SECTION 101
SCOPE AND GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

[A] 101.1 Title. These regulations shall be known as the *North Carolina Mechanical Code* as adopted by the North Carolina Building Code Council on ~~June 13, 2017~~December 12, 2023 to be effective January 1, ~~2019~~2025. References to the *International Codes* shall mean the North Carolina Codes. The North Carolina amendments to the *International Codes* are underlined.

[A] 101.2 Scope. This code shall regulate the design, installation, maintenance, *alteration* and inspection of mechanical systems that are permanently installed and utilized to provide control of environmental conditions and related processes within buildings. This code shall also regulate those mechanical systems, system components, *equipment* and ~~appliances~~*appliances* specifically addressed herein. The installation of fuel gas distribution piping and *equipment*, fuel gas-fired ~~appliances~~*appliances* and fuel gas-fired *appliance* venting systems shall be regulated by the *International Fuel Gas Code*.

Exception: Detached one- and two-family dwellings and ~~multiple single-family dwellings (townhouses)~~ townhouses not more than three stories ~~high~~above grade plane in height with a separate means of egress and their accessory structures not more than three stories above grade plane in height shall comply with the *International Residential Code*.

[A] 101.2.1 Appendices. Provisions in the appendices shall not apply unless specifically adopted or referenced in this code.

[A] 101.3 ~~Intent~~Purpose. The purpose of this code is to establish minimum ~~standards~~requirements to provide a reasonable level of safety, health, property protection and ~~public~~general welfare by regulating and controlling the design, construction, installation, quality of materials, location, operation and maintenance or use of mechanical *equipment* or systems.

[A] 101.4 Severability. If a section, subsection, sentence, clause or phrase of this code is, for any reason, held to be unconstitutional, such decision shall not affect the validity of the remaining portions of this code.

101.5 Requirements of other State agencies, occupational licensing boards or commissions. The *North Carolina State Building Codes* do not include all additional requirements for buildings and structures that may be imposed by other State agencies, occupational licensing boards and commissions. It shall be the responsibility of a permit holder, registered design professional, contractor or occupational license holder to determine whether any additional requirements exist.

SECTION 102
APPLICABILITY

[A] 102.1 General. Where there is a conflict between a general requirement and a specific requirement, the specific requirement shall govern. Where, in a specific case, different sections of this code specify different materials, methods of construction or other requirements, the most restrictive shall govern.

[A] 102.2 Existing installations. Except as otherwise provided for in this chapter, a provision in this code shall not require the removal, *alteration* or abandonment of, nor prevent the continued utilization and maintenance of, a mechanical system lawfully in existence at the time of the adoption of this code.

[A] 102.2.1 Existing buildings. Additions, alterations, renovations or repairs related to building or structural issues shall be regulated by the *International Existing Building Code*.

[A] 102.3 Maintenance. Mechanical systems, both existing and new, and parts thereof shall be maintained in proper operating condition in accordance with the original design and in a safe and sanitary condition. Devices or safeguards that are required by this code shall be maintained in compliance with the edition of the code under which they were installed. The owner or the owner's authorized agent shall be responsible for maintenance of mechanical systems. To determine compliance with this provision, the code official shall have the authority to require a mechanical system to be reinspected.

[A] 102.4 Additions, alterations or repairs. Additions, alterations, renovations or repairs to a mechanical system shall conform to that required for a new mechanical system without requiring the existing mechanical system to comply with all of the requirements of this code. Additions, ~~alterations~~alterations, renovations or repairs shall not cause an existing mechanical system to become unsafe, hazardous or overloaded.

Minor additions, alterations, renovations and repairs to existing mechanical systems shall meet the provisions for new construction, unless such work is done in the same manner and arrangement as was in the existing system, is not hazardous and is *approved*.

[A] 102.5 Change in occupancy. It shall be unlawful to make a change in the *occupancy* of any structure ~~which~~that will subject the structure to any special provision of this code applicable to the new *occupancy* without approval. The code official shall certify that such structure meets the intent of the provisions of law governing ~~building~~*building* construction for the proposed new *occupancy* and that such change of *occupancy* does not result in any hazard to the public health, safety or welfare.

[A] 102.6 Historic buildings. The provisions of this code relating to the construction, *alteration*, repair, enlargement, restoration, relocation or moving of buildings or structures shall not be mandatory for existing buildings or structures identified and classified by the state or local jurisdiction as historic buildings where such buildings or structures are judged by the code official to be safe and in the public interest of health, safety and welfare regarding any proposed construction, *alteration*, repair, enlargement, restoration, relocation or moving of buildings.

[A] 102.7 Moved buildings. Except as determined by Section 102.2, mechanical systems that are a part of buildings or structures moved into or within the jurisdiction shall comply with the provisions of this code for new installations.

[A] 102.8 Referenced codes and standards. The codes and standards referenced herein shall be those that are listed in Chapter 15 and such codes and standards shall be considered as part of the requirements of this code to the prescribed extent of each such reference and as further regulated in Sections 102.8.1 and 102.8.2.

Exception: Where enforcement of a code provision would violate the conditions of the listing of the *equipment* or *appliance*, the conditions of the listing and the manufacturer's installation instructions shall apply.

[A] 102.8.1 Conflicts. Where conflicts occur between provisions of this code and the referenced standards, the provisions of this code shall apply.

[A] 102.8.2 Provisions in referenced codes and standards. Where the extent of the reference to a referenced code or standard includes subject matter that is within the scope of this code, the provisions of this code, as applicable, shall take precedence over the provisions in the referenced code or standard.

[A] 102.9 Requirements not covered by this code. Requirements necessary for the strength, stability or proper operation of an existing or proposed mechanical system, or for the public safety, health and general welfare, not specifically covered by this code, shall be determined by the code official.

[A] 102.10 Other laws. The provisions of this code shall not be deemed to nullify any provisions of local, state or federal law.

[A] 102.11 Application of references. Reference to chapter section numbers, or to provisions not specifically identified by number, shall be construed to refer to such chapter, section or provision of this code.

PART 2—ADMINISTRATION AND ENFORCEMENT

See the North Carolina Administrative Code and Policies for the administration and enforcement of the North Carolina State Building Codes as adopted by the Building Code Council and enforced by State and local code enforcement officials.

~~SECTION 103~~
~~DEPARTMENT OF MECHANICAL INSPECTION~~CODE COMPLIANCE AGENCY

~~Deleted. See the *North Carolina Administrative Code and Policies*.~~

~~SECTION 104~~
~~DUTIES AND POWERS OF THE CODE OFFICIAL~~

~~Deleted. See the *North Carolina Administrative Code and Policies*.~~

SECTION ~~105~~103
APPROVAL

[A] ~~105.1~~103.1 Modifications. Where there are practical difficulties involved in carrying out the provisions of this code, the code official shall have the authority to grant modifications for individual cases upon application of the owner or owner's authorized agent, provided that the code official shall first find that special individual reason makes the strict letter of this code impractical and the modification is in compliance with the intent and purpose of this code and does not lessen health, life and fire safety requirements. The details of action granting modifications shall be recorded and entered in the files of the mechanical inspection department.

[A] ~~105.2~~103.2 Alternative materials, ~~methods, equipment and appliances.~~design and methods of construction and equipment. The provisions of this code are not intended to prevent the installation of any material or to prohibit any design or method of construction not specifically prescribed by this code, provided that any such alternative has been *approved*. An alternative ~~material~~material, design or method of construction shall be *approved* where the code official finds that the proposed design ~~is satisfactory and~~satisfactorily complies with the intent of the provisions of this code, and that the material, method or work offered is, for the purpose intended, not less than the equivalent of that prescribed in this code in quality, strength, effectiveness, fire resistance, durability and safety. Where the alternative material, design or method of construction is not ~~approved~~*approved*, the *code official* shall respond in writing, stating the reasons why the alternative was not ~~approved~~*approved*.

[A] ~~105.2.1~~103.2.1 Research reports. Supporting data, where necessary to assist in the approval of materials or assemblies not specifically provided for in this code, shall consist of valid research reports from *approved* sources.

[A] ~~105.3~~103.3 Required testing. Where there is insufficient evidence of compliance with the provisions of this code, or evidence that a material or method does not conform to the requirements of this code, or in order to substantiate claims for alternative materials or methods, the code official shall have the authority to require tests as evidence of compliance to be made at no expense to the jurisdiction.

[A] ~~105.3.1~~103.3.1 Test methods. Test methods shall be as specified in this code or by other recognized test standards. In the absence of recognized and accepted test methods, the code official shall approve the testing procedures.

[A] ~~105.3.2~~103.3.2 Testing agency. Tests shall be performed by an *approved* agency.

[A] ~~105.3.3~~103.3.3 Test reports. Reports of tests shall be retained by the code official for the period required for retention of public records.

[A] ~~105.4~~103.4 Approved materials and equipment. Materials, *equipment* and devices *approved* by the code official shall be constructed and installed in accordance with such approval.

[A] ~~105.5~~103.5 Material, equipment and appliance reuse. Materials, *equipment*, ~~appliances~~*appliances* and devices shall not be reused unless such elements have been reconditioned, tested and placed in good and proper working condition and *approved*.

See the *North Carolina Administrative Code and Policies* for additional guidance.

SECTION ~~106~~104
PERMITS

[A] ~~106.1~~104.1 Where required. An owner, owner's authorized agent or contractor who desires to erect, install, enlarge, alter, repair, remove, convert or replace a mechanical system, the installation of which is regulated by this code, or to cause such work to be performed, shall first make application to the code official and obtain the required permit for the work.

Exception: Where *equipment* and *appliance* replacements or repairs must be performed in an emergency situation, the permit application shall be submitted within the next working business day of the department of mechanical inspection.

[A] ~~106.2~~104.2 Permits not required. Permits shall not be required for the following:

1. Portable heating *appliances*.
2. Portable ventilation *appliances* and *equipment*.
3. Portable cooling units.
4. Steam, hot water or chilled water piping within any heating or cooling *equipment* or *appliances* regulated by this code.
5. The replacement of any minor part that does not alter the approval of *equipment* or an *appliance* or make such *equipment* or *appliance* unsafe.
6. Portable evaporative coolers.
7. Self-contained refrigeration systems that contain 10 pounds (4.5 kg) or less of refrigerant, or that are actuated by motors of 1 horsepower (0.75 kW) or less.
8. Portable fuel cell *appliances* that are not connected to a fixed piping system and are not interconnected to a power grid.

Exemption from the permit requirements of this code shall not be deemed to grant authorization for work to be done in violation of the provisions of this code or other laws or ordinances of this jurisdiction.

See the *North Carolina Administrative Code and Policies* for additional permitting requirements.

~~SECTION 107~~
~~INSPECTIONS AND TESTINGCONSTRUCTION DOCUMENTS~~ **

~~Deleted. See the *North Carolina Administrative Code and Policies*.~~

~~SECTION 108~~
~~VIOLATIONSNOTICE OF APPROVAL~~ **

~~Deleted. See the *North Carolina Administrative Code and Policies*.~~

** ~~SECTION 109~~
~~MEANS OF APPEALFEES~~

~~Deleted. See the *North Carolina Administrative Code and Policies*.~~

~~SECTION 110~~
~~SERVICE UTILITIES~~ **

~~Deleted. See the *North Carolina Administrative Code and Policies*.~~

** SECTION ~~111~~105
TEMPORARY EQUIPMENT, SYSTEMS AND USES

[A] ~~110.1~~~~111.1~~105.1 General. The code official is authorized to issue a permit for temporary *equipment*, systems and uses. Such permits shall be limited as to time of service, but shall not be permitted for more than 180 days. The code official is authorized to grant extensions for demonstrated cause.

[A] ~~110.2~~~~111.2~~105.2 Conformance. Temporary *equipment*, systems and uses shall conform to the structural strength, fire safety, means of egress, accessibility, light, ventilation and sanitary requirements of this code as necessary to ensure the public health, safety and general welfare.

[A] ~~110.3~~~~111.3~~105.3 Temporary utilities. The code official is authorized to give permission to temporarily supply utilities before an installation has been fully completed and the final certificate of completion has been issued. The part covered by the temporary certificate shall comply with the requirements specified for temporary lighting, heat or power in the code.

[A] ~~110.4~~~~111.4~~105.4 Termination of approval. The code official is authorized to terminate such permit for temporary *equipment*, systems or uses and to order the temporary *equipment*, systems or uses to be discontinued.

** ~~SECTION 112~~
~~INSPECTIONS AND TESTING~~

~~Deleted. See the *North Carolina Administrative Code and Policies*.~~

~~SECTION 113~~
~~MEANS OF APPEALS~~

~~Deleted. See the *North Carolina Administrative Code and Policies*.~~

~~SECTION 114~~
~~BOARD OF APPEALS~~

~~Deleted. See the *North Carolina Administrative Code and Policies*.~~

** ~~SECTION 115~~
~~VIOLATIONS~~

~~Deleted. See the *North Carolina Administrative Code and Policies*.~~

~~SECTION 116~~
~~STOP WORK ORDER~~

~~Deleted. See the *North Carolina Administrative Code and Policies*.~~